

CAY HORSTMANN

# BIG JAVA



## Early Objects

Fifth Edition

## Class Declaration

```
public class CashRegister
{
    private int itemCount;           } Instance variables
    private double totalPrice;

    public void addItem(double price)
    {
        itemCount++;
        totalPrice = totalPrice + price;
    }
    ...
}
```

## Selected Operators and Their Precedence

(See Appendix B for the complete list.)

[]	Array element access
++ -- !	Increment, decrement, Boolean <i>not</i>
* / %	Multiplication, division, remainder
+ -	Addition, subtraction
< <= > >=	Comparisons
== !=	Equal, not equal
&&	Boolean <i>and</i>
	Boolean <i>or</i>
=	Assignment

## Conditional Statement

```
Condition
/
if (floor >= 13)
{
    actualFloor = floor - 1; } Executed when condition is true
}
else if (floor >= 0)   Second condition (optional)
{
    actualFloor = floor;
}
else
{
    System.out.println("Floor negative"); } Executed when
all conditions are
false (optional)
```

## Loop Statements

```
Condition
/
while (balance < TARGET)
{
    year++;
    balance = balance * (1 + rate / 100); } Executed while
condition is true
```

```
Initialization Condition Update
for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
{
    System.out.println(i);
}
```

## Variable and Constant Declarations

Type	Name	Initial value
/	/	/
int	cansPerPack	= 6;
final double	CAN_VOLUME	= 0.335;

## Method Declaration

Modifiers	Return type	Parameter type and name
/ \	/	/ /
public static	double	cubeVolume(double sideLength)
{		
double	volume = sideLength * sideLength * sideLength;	
}	return volume;	

Exits method and  
returns result.

## Mathematical Operations

Math.pow(x, y)	Raising to a power $x^y$
Math.sqrt(x)	Square root $\sqrt{x}$
Math.log10(x)	Decimal log $\log_{10}(x)$
Math.abs(x)	Absolute value $ x $
Math.sin(x)	
Math.cos(x)	
Math.tan(x)	

} Sine, cosine, tangent of  $x$  ( $x$  in radians)

## String Operations

```
String s = "Hello";
int n = s.length(); // 5
char ch = s.charAt(1); // 'e'
String t = s.substring(1, 4); // "ell"
String u = s.toUpperCase(); // "HELLO"
if (u.equals("HELLO")) ... // Use equals, not ==
for (int i = 0; i < s.length(); i++)
{
    char ch = s.charAt(i);
    Process ch
}
```

```
do
{
    System.out.print("Enter a positive integer: ");
    input = in.nextInt();
}
while (input <= 0);
```

Loop body executed  
at least once

Set to a new element in each iteration

An array or collection
/
for (double value : values)
{
sum = sum + value; } Executed for each element
}

# BIG JAVA



## Early Objects

Fifth Edition

CAY HORSTMANN

San Jose State University

WILEY

PUBLISHER	Don Fowley
EXECUTIVE EDITOR	Beth Lang Golub
CONTENT MANAGER	Kevin Holm
EDITORIAL PROGRAM ASSISTANT	Katherine Willis
EXECUTIVE MARKETING MANAGER	Christopher Ruel
CREATIVE DIRECTOR	Harry Nolan
SENIOR DESIGNER	Madelyn Lesure
SENIOR PHOTO EDITOR	Lisa Gee
SENIOR CONTENT EDITOR	Wendy Ashenberg
SENIOR PRODUCT DESIGNER	Jenny Welter
EDITORIAL OPERATIONS MANAGER	Melissa Edwards
PRODUCTION EDITOR	Tim Lindner
PRODUCTION MANAGEMENT SERVICES	Cindy Johnson
COVER PHOTOS	(bird) © FLPA/John Holmes/Age Fotostock America, Inc.; (monkey) © S Sailer/A Sailer/Age Fotostock America, Inc.; (tiger) © Frans Lemmens/SuperStock
INTERIOR DESIGN	Maureen Eide

This book was set in Stempel Garamond by Publishing Services, and printed and bound by R.R. Donnelley & Sons Company.

This book is printed on acid-free paper. ∞

Founded in 1807, John Wiley & Sons, Inc. has been a valued source of knowledge and understanding for more than 200 years, helping people around the world meet their needs and fulfill their aspirations. Our company is built on a foundation of principles that include responsibility to the communities we serve and where we live and work. In 2008, we launched a Corporate Citizenship Initiative, a global effort to address the environmental, social, economic, and ethical challenges we face in our business. Among the issues we are addressing are carbon impact, paper specifications and procurement, ethical conduct within our business and among our vendors, and community and charitable support. For more information, please visit our website: [www.wiley.com/go/citizenship](http://www.wiley.com/go/citizenship).

Copyright © 2014 John Wiley & Sons, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc., 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923 (Web site: [www.copyright.com](http://www.copyright.com)). Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at: [www.wiley.com/go/permissions](http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions).

Evaluation copies are provided to qualified academics and professionals for review purposes only, for use in their courses during the next academic year. These copies are licensed and may not be sold or transferred to a third party. Upon completion of the review period, please return the evaluation copy to Wiley. Return instructions and a free of charge return shipping label are available at: [www.wiley.com/go/returnlabel](http://www.wiley.com/go/returnlabel). If you have chosen to adopt this textbook for use in your course, please accept this book as your complimentary desk copy. Outside of the United States, please contact your local sales representative.

ISBN 978-1-118-43111-5 (Main Book)  
ISBN 978-1-118-42297-7 (Binder-Ready Version)

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

# PREFACE

This book is an introduction to Java and computer programming that focuses on the essentials—and on effective learning. The book is designed to serve a wide range of student interests and abilities and is suitable for a first course in programming for computer scientists, engineers, and students in other disciplines. No prior programming experience is required, and only a modest amount of high school algebra is needed. Here are the key features of this book:

## **Start objects early, teach object orientation gradually.**

In Chapter 2, students learn how to use objects and classes from the standard library. Chapter 3 shows the mechanics of implementing classes from a given specification. Students then use simple objects as they master branches, loops, and arrays. Object-oriented design starts in Chapter 8. This gradual approach allows students to use objects throughout their study of the core algorithmic topics, without teaching bad habits that must be un-learned later.

## **Guidance and worked examples help students succeed.**

Beginning programmers often ask “How do I start? Now what do I do?” Of course, an activity as complex as programming cannot be reduced to cookbook-style instructions. However, step-by-step guidance is immensely helpful for building confidence and providing an outline for the task at hand. “Problem Solving” sections stress the importance of design and planning. “How To” guides help students with common programming tasks. Additional Worked Examples are available online.

## **Practice makes perfect.**

Of course, programming students need to be able to implement nontrivial programs, but they first need to have the confidence that they can succeed. This book contains a substantial number of self-check questions at the end of each section. “Practice It” pointers suggest exercises to try after each section. And additional practice opportunities, including lab exercises and skill-oriented multiple-choice questions are available online.

## **A visual approach motivates the reader and eases navigation.**

Photographs present visual analogies that explain the nature and behavior of computer concepts. Step-by-step figures illustrate complex program operations. Syntax boxes and example tables present a variety of typical and special cases in a compact format. It is easy to get the “lay of the land” by browsing the visuals, before focusing on the textual material.



*Visual features help the reader with navigation.*

## **Focus on the essentials while being technically accurate.**

An encyclopedic coverage is not helpful for a beginning programmer, but neither is the opposite—reducing the material to a list of simplistic bullet points. In this book, the essentials are presented in digestible chunks, with separate notes that go deeper into good practices

or language features when the reader is ready for the additional information. You will not find artificial over-simplifications that give an illusion of knowledge.

### **Reinforce sound engineering practices.**

A multitude of useful tips on software quality and common errors encourage the development of good programming habits. The optional testing track focuses on test-driven development, encouraging students to test their programs systematically.

### **Provide an optional graphics track.**

Graphical shapes are splendid examples of objects. Many students enjoy writing programs that create drawings or use graphical user interfaces. If desired, these topics can be integrated into the course by using the materials at the end of Chapters 2, 3, and 10.

## New to This Edition

### **Problem Solving Strategies**

This edition adds practical, step-by-step illustrations of techniques that can help students devise and evaluate solutions to programming problems. Introduced where they are most relevant, these strategies address barriers to success for many students. Strategies included are:

- Algorithm Design (with pseudocode)
- Tracing Objects
- First Do It By Hand (doing sample calculations by hand)
- Flowcharts
- Selecting Test Cases
- Hand-Tracing
- Storyboards
- Adapting Algorithms
- Discovering Algorithms by Manipulating Physical Objects
- Patterns for Object Data
- Thinking Recursively
- Estimating the Running Time of an Algorithm

### **Optional Science and Business Exercises**

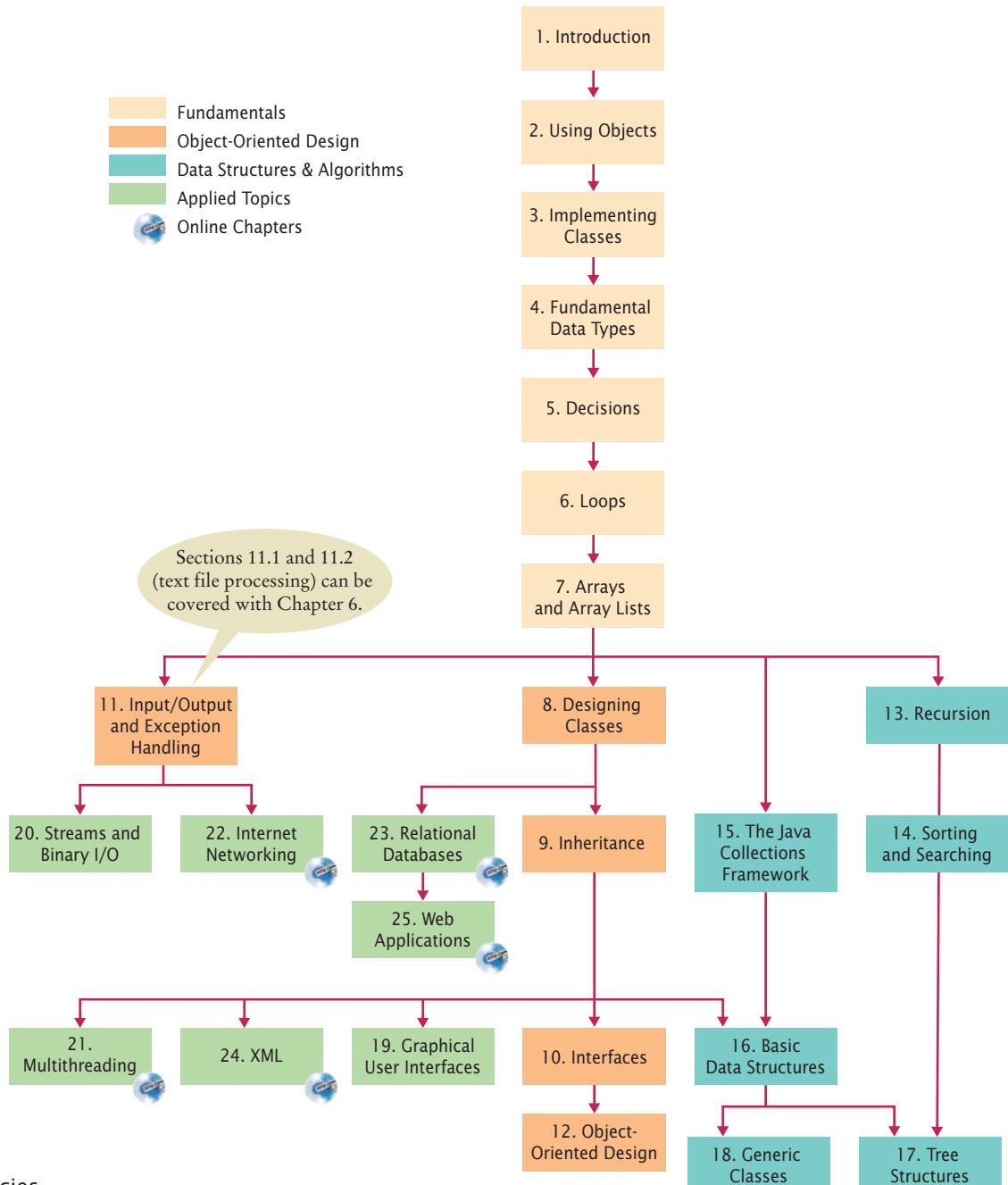
End-of-chapter exercises have been enhanced with problems from scientific and business domains. Designed to engage students, the exercises illustrate the value of programming in applied fields.

### **New and Reorganized Topics**

All chapters were revised and enhanced to respond to user feedback and improve the flow of topics. Loop algorithms are now introduced explicitly in Chapter 6. Additional array algorithms are presented in Chapter 7 and incorporated into the problem-solving sections. Chapter 8 is more clearly focused on the design of a single class, whereas Chapter 12 deals with relationships between classes. The coverage of data structures has been completely reorganized. Chapter 15 covers the use of existing data structures. The implementation of linked lists and stacks is now in Chapter 16, and a greatly enhanced Chapter 17 covers binary search trees, red-black trees, and trees whose nodes have more than two children. New example tables, photographs, and exercises appear throughout the book.

# A Tour of the Book

The book can be naturally grouped into four parts, as illustrated by Figure 1. The organization of chapters offers the same flexibility as the previous edition; dependencies among the chapters are also shown in the figure.



**Figure 1**  
Chapter  
Dependencies

## Part A: Fundamentals (Chapters 1–7)

Chapter 1 contains a brief introduction to computer science and Java programming. Chapter 2 shows how to manipulate objects of predefined classes. In Chapter 3, you will build your own simple classes from given specifications. Fundamental data types, branches, loops, and arrays are covered in Chapters 4–7.

## Part B: Object-Oriented Design (Chapters 8–12)

Chapter 8 takes up the subject of class design in a systematic fashion, and it introduces a very simple subset of the UML notation. The discussion of polymorphism and inheritance is split into two chapters. Chapter 9 covers inheritance and polymorphism, whereas Chapter 10 covers interfaces. Exception handling and basic file input/output are covered in Chapter 11. The exception hierarchy gives a useful example for inheritance. Chapter 12 contains an introduction to object-oriented design, including two significant case studies.

## Part C: Data Structures and Algorithms (Chapters 13–18)

Chapters 13 through 18 contain an introduction to algorithms and data structures, covering recursion, sorting and searching, linked lists, binary trees, and hash tables. These topics may be outside the scope of a one-semester course, but can be covered as desired after Chapter 7 (see Figure 1). Recursion, in Chapter 13, starts with simple examples and progresses to meaningful applications that would be difficult to implement iteratively. Chapter 14 covers quadratic sorting algorithms as well as merge sort, with an informal introduction to big-Oh notation. Each data structure is presented in the context of the standard Java collections library. You will learn the essential abstractions of the standard library (such as iterators, sets, and maps) as well as the performance characteristics of the various collections. Chapter 18 introduces Java generics. This chapter is suitable for advanced students who want to implement their own generic classes and methods.

## Part D: Applied Topics (Chapters 19–25)



Chapters 19 through 25 cover Java programming techniques that definitely go beyond a first course in Java (21–25 are on the book's companion site). Although, as already mentioned, a comprehensive coverage of the Java library would span many volumes, many instructors prefer that a textbook should give students additional reference material valuable beyond their first course. Some institutions also teach a second-semester course that covers more practical programming aspects such as database and network programming, rather than the more traditional in-depth material on data structures and algorithms. This book can be used in a two-semester course to give students an introduction to programming fundamentals and broad coverage of applications. Alternatively, the material in the final chapters can be useful for student projects. The applied topics include graphical user-interface design, advanced file handling, multithreading, and those technologies that are of particular interest to server-side programming: networking, databases, XML, and web applications. The Internet has made it possible to deploy many useful applications on servers, often accessed by nothing more than a browser. This server-centric approach to application development was in part made possible by the Java language and libraries, and today, much of the industrial use of Java is in server-side programming.

## Appendices

Many instructors find it highly beneficial to require a consistent style for all assignments. If the style guide in Appendix I conflicts with instructor sentiment or local customs, however, it is available in electronic form so that it can be modified.

- A. The Basic Latin and Latin-1 Subsets of Unicode
- B. Java Operator Summary
- C. Java Reserved Word Summary
- D. The Java Library
- E. Java Syntax Summary
- F. Tool Summary
- G. Number Systems
- H. UML Summary
- I. Java Language Coding Guidelines
- J. HTML Summary

## Custom Book and eBook Options

*Big Java* may be ordered as a custom print or eBook that includes your choice of chapters—including those from other Horstmann titles. Visit [customselect.wiley.com](http://customselect.wiley.com) to create your custom book order.

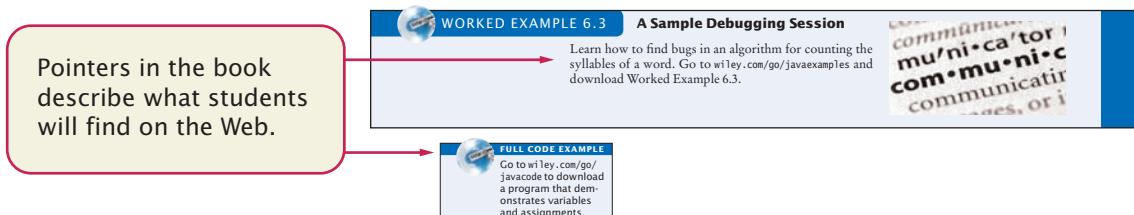
To order the Wiley Select Edition of *Big Java* with all 25 chapters in the printed book, specify ISBN 978-1-119-93670-1 when you order books.

*Big Java* is available in a variety of eBook formats at prices that are significantly lower than the printed book. Please contact your Wiley sales rep for more information or check [www.wiley.com/college/horstmann](http://www.wiley.com/college/horstmann) for available versions.

## Web Resources

This book is complemented by a complete suite of online resources. Go to [www.wiley.com/college/horstmann](http://www.wiley.com/college/horstmann) to visit the online companion sites, which include

- “CodeCheck,” a new online service currently in development by Cay Horstmann that students can use to check their homework assignments and to work on additional practice problems. Visit <http://horstmann.com/codecheck> to learn more and to try it out.
- Source code for all example programs in the book and in online examples.
- Worked Examples that apply the problem-solving steps in the book to other realistic examples.
- Animations of key concepts.
- Lab exercises that apply chapter concepts (with solutions for instructors only).
- Lecture presentation slides (for instructors only).
- Solutions to all review and programming exercises (for instructors only).
- A test bank that focuses on skills, not just terminology (for instructors only). This extensive set of multiple-choice questions can be used with a word processor or imported into a course management system.



# A Walkthrough of the Learning Aids

The pedagogical elements in this book work together to focus on and reinforce key concepts and fundamental principles of programming, with additional tips and detail organized to support and deepen these fundamentals. In addition to traditional features, such as chapter objectives and a wealth of exercises, each chapter contains elements geared to today's visual learner.

Throughout each chapter, **margin notes** show where new concepts are introduced and provide an outline of key ideas.

Additional **full code examples** provides complete programs for students to run and modify.

Annotated **syntax boxes** provide a quick, visual overview of new language constructs.

**Annotations** explain required components and point to more information on common errors or best practices associated with the syntax.

Like a variable in a computer program, a parking space has an identifier and a contents.

254 Chapter 6 Loops

## 6.3 The for Loop

The for loop is used when a value starts from a starting point to an ending point with a constant increment or decrement.

FULL CODE EXAMPLE  
Go to [tiley.com/go/148](#) to download a program that uses common loop algorithms.

It often happens that you want to execute a sequence of statements a given number of times. You can use a `while` loop that is controlled by a counter, as in the following example:

```
int counter = 1; // Initialize the counter
while (counter <= 10) // Check the counter
{
    System.out.println(counter);
    counter++; // Update the counter
}
```

Because this loop type is so common, there is a special form for it, called the `for` loop (see Syntax 6.2).

```
for (int counter = 1; counter <= 10; counter++)
{
    System.out.println(counter);
}
```

Some people call this loop *count-controlled*. In contrast, the `while` loop of the preceding section can be called an *event-controlled* loop because it executes until an event occurs; namely that the balance reaches the target. Another commonly used term for a count-controlled loop is *definite*. You know from the outset that the loop body will be executed a definite number of times; ten times in our example. In contrast, you do not know how many iterations it takes to accumulate a target balance. Such a loop is called *indefinite*.



You can visualize the `for` loop as an orderly sequence of steps.

### Syntax 6.2 for Statement

Syntax `for (initialization; condition; update)`  
{  
    statements  
}

These three expressions should be related.  
See page 259.

This initialization happens once before the loop starts.

The condition is checked before each iteration.

This update is executed after each iteration.

The variable i is defined only in this for loop.  
See page 261.

This loop executes 6 times.  
See page 260.



**Analogy** to everyday objects are used to explain the nature and behavior of concepts such as variables, data types, loops, and more.

**Memorable photos** reinforce analogies and help students remember the concepts.



In the same way that there can be a street named "Main Street" in different cities, a Java program can have multiple variables with the same name.

**Problem Solving sections** teach techniques for generating ideas and evaluating proposed solutions, often using pencil and paper or other artifacts. These sections emphasize that most of the planning and problem solving that makes students successful happens away from the computer.

#### 7.5 Problem Solving: Discovering Algorithms by Manipulating Physical Objects 339

Now how does that help us with our problem, switching the first and the second half of the array?

Let's put the first coin into place, by swapping it with the fifth coin. However, as Java programmers, we will say that we swap the coins in positions 0 and 4:



Next, we swap the coins in positions 1 and 5:



#### HOW TO 6.1

#### Writing a Loop



This How To walks you through the process of implementing a loop statement. We will illustrate the steps with the following example problem.

**Problem Statement** Read twelve temperature values (one for each month) and display the number of the month with the highest temperature. For example, according to [worldclimate.com](http://worldclimate.com), the average maximum temperatures for Death Valley are (in order by month, in degrees Celsius):

18.2 22.6 26.4 31.1 36.6 42.2 45.7 44.5 40.2 33.1 24.2 17.6

In this case, the month with the highest temperature (45.7 degrees Celsius) is July, and the program should display 7.



#### Step 1 Decide what work must be done *inside* the loop.

Every loop needs to do some kind of repetitive work, such as

- Reading another item.
- Updating a value (such as a bank balance or total).
- Incrementing a counter.

If you can't figure out what needs to go inside the loop, start by writing down the steps that

**How To guides** give step-by-step guidance for common programming tasks, emphasizing planning and testing. They answer the beginner's question, "Now what do I do?" and integrate key concepts into a problem-solving sequence.



#### WORKED EXAMPLE 6.1 Credit Card Processing

Learn how to use a loop to remove spaces from a credit card number. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 6.1.



**Worked Examples** apply the steps in the How To to a different example, showing how they can be used to plan, implement, and test a solution to another programming problem.

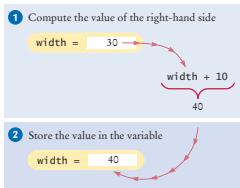
**Table 1** Variable Declarations in Java

Variable Name	Comment
int width = 20;	Declares an integer variable and initializes it with 20.
int perimeter = 4 * width;	The initial value need not be a fixed value. (Of course, width must have been previously declared.)
String greeting = "Hi!";	This variable has the type String and is initialized with the string "Hi".
height = 30;	<b>Error:</b> The type is missing. This statement is not a declaration but an assignment of a new value to an existing variable—see Section 2.2.5.
int width = "20";	<b>Error:</b> You cannot initialize a number with the string "20". (Note the quotation marks.)
int width;	Declares an integer variable without initializing it. This can be a cause for errors—see Common Error 2.1 on page 42.
int width, height;	Declares two integer variables in a single statement. In this book, we will declare each variable in a separate statement.

**Example tables** support beginners with multiple, concrete examples. These tables point out common errors and present another quick reference to the section's topic.

## x Walkthrough

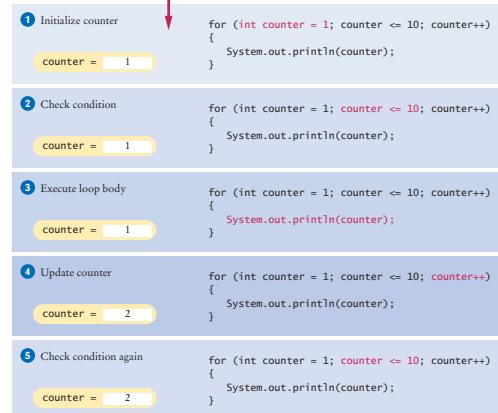
This means “compute the value of `width + 10` ① and store that value in the variable `width` ②” (see Figure 4). In Java, it is not a problem that the variable `width` is used on both sides of the `=` symbol. Of course, in mathematics, the equation `width = width + 10` has no solution.



**Figure 4**  
Executing the Statement  
`width = width + 10`

**Progressive figures** trace code segments to help students visualize the program flow. Color is used consistently to make variables and other elements easily recognizable.

**Figure 3**  
Execution of a  
for Loop



Students can view **animations** of key concepts on the Web.



**Self-check exercises** at the end of each section are designed to make students think through the new material—and can spark discussion in lecture.



Optional **science and business exercises** engage students with realistic applications of Java.

The for loop neatly groups the initialization, condition, and update expressions together. However, it is important to realize that these expressions are not executed together (see Figure 3).

- The initialization is executed once, before the loop is entered. ①
- The condition is checked before each iteration. ② ③

11. Write the for loop of the `Investment` class as a while loop.

12. How many numbers does this loop print?

```
for (int n = 10; n >= 0; n--)
{
    System.out.println(n);
}
```

13. Write a for loop that prints all even numbers between 10 and 20 (inclusive).

14. Write a for loop that computes the sum of the integers from 1 to `n`.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R6.4, R6.10, E6.8, E6.12.

**Business E6.17** *Currency conversion.* Write a program that first asks the user to type today's price for one dollar in Japanese yen, then reads U.S. dollar values and converts each to yen. Use 0 as a sentinel.

	CANADA	CAD	0.9512	0.8868
	CHINA	CNY	0.73165	0.69110
	EURO	EUR	0.65644	0.61000
	JAPAN	JPY	109.00	102.000
	SINGAPORE	SGD	1.37112	1.28390

**Science P6.15** Radioactive decay of radioactive materials can be modeled by the equation  $A = A_0 e^{-ct(\log 2)/b}$ , where  $A$  is the amount of the material at time  $t$ ,  $A_0$  is the amount at time 0, and  $b$  is the half-life.

Technetium-99 is a radioactive isotope that is used in imaging of the brain. It has a half-life of 6 hours. Your program should display the relative amount  $A / A_0$  in a patient body every hour for 24 hours after receiving a dose.



### section\_1/Investment.java

```

1 /**
2  * A class to monitor the growth of an investment that
3  * accumulates interest at a fixed annual rate.
4 */
5 public class Investment
6 {
7     private double balance;
8     private double rate;
9     private int year;
10
11    /**
12     * Constructs an Investment object from a starting balance and
13     * interest rate.
14     * @param aBalance the starting balance
15     * @param aRate the interest rate in percent
16     */
17    public Investment(double aBalance, double aRate)
18    {
19        balance = aBalance;
20        rate = aRate;
21        year = 0;
22    }
23
24    /**
25     * Keeps accumulating interest until a target balance has
26     * been reached.
27     * @param targetBalance the desired balance
28    */

```

**Program listings** are carefully designed for easy reading, going well beyond simple color coding. Methods are set off by a subtle outline.

**Common Errors** describe the kinds of errors that students often make, with an explanation of why the errors occur, and what to do about them.

#### Common Error 7.4



#### Length and Size

Unfortunately, the Java syntax for determining the number of elements in an array, an array list, and a string is not at all consistent. It is a common error to confuse these. You just have to remember the correct syntax for every data type.

Data Type	Number of Elements
Array	a.length
Array list	a.size()
String	a.length()

**Programming Tips** explain good programming practices, and encourage students to be more productive with tips and techniques such as hand-tracing.

#### Programming Tip 5.5



#### Hand-Tracing

A very useful technique for understanding whether a program works correctly is called *hand-tracing*. You simulate the program's activity on a sheet of paper. You can use this method with pseudocode or Java code.

Get an index card, a cocktail napkin, or whatever sheet of paper is within reach. Make a column for each variable. Have the program code ready. Use a marker, such as a paper clip, to mark the current statement. In your mind, execute statements one at a time. Every time the value of a variable changes, cross out the old value and write the new value below the old one.

For example, let's trace the `getTax` method with the data from the program run above.

When the `TaxReturn` object is constructed, the `income` instance variable is set to \$0,000 and `status` is set to `MARRIED`. Then the `getTax` method is called. In lines 31 and 32 of `TaxReturn.java`, `tax1` and `tax2` are initialized to 0.

```
29 public double getTax()
30 {
31     double tax1 = 0;
32     double tax2 = 0;
33 }
```

Because status is not `SINGLE`, we move to the `else` branch of the outer if statement (line 46).

```
34     if (status == SINGLE)
35     {
36         if (income <= RATE1_SINGLE_LIMIT)
37         {
38             tax1 = RATE1 * income;
39         }
40     }
41     else
42     {
43         tax1 = RATE1 * RATE1_SINGLE_LIMIT;
44         tax2 = RATE2 * (income - RATE1_SINGLE_LIMIT);
45     }
46 }
```



*Hand-tracing helps you understand whether a program works correctly.*

income	status	tax1	tax2
\$0,000	MARRIED	0	0

**Special Topics** present optional topics and provide additional explanation of others. New features of Java 7 are also covered in these notes.

#### Special Topic 11.2



**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**  
Go to [wiley.com/go/javaforall](http://wiley.com/go/javaforall) and download a program that demonstrates how to use a file chooser.

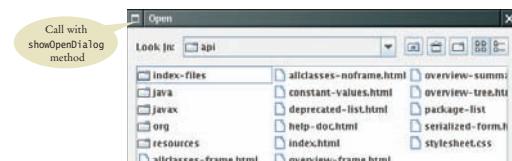
#### File Dialog Boxes

In a program with a graphical user interface, you will want to use a file dialog box (such as the one shown in the figure below) whenever the users of your program need to pick a file. The `JFileChooser` class implements a file dialog box for the Swing user-interface toolkit.

The `JFileChooser` class has many options to fine-tune the display of the dialog box, but in its most basic form it is quite simple. Construct a file chooser object; then call the `showOpenDialog` or `showSaveDialog` method. Both methods show the same dialog box, but the button for selecting a file is labeled "Open" or "Save", depending on which method you call.

For better placement of the dialog box on the screen, you can specify the user-interface component over which to pop up the dialog box. If you don't care where the dialog box pops up, you can simply pass `null`. The `showOpenDialog` and `showSaveDialog` methods return either `JFileChooser.APPROVE_OPTION`, if the user has chosen a file, or `JFileChooser.CANCEL_OPTION`, if the user canceled the selection. If a file was chosen, then you call the `getSelectedFile` method to obtain a `File` object that describes the file. Here is a complete example:

```
JFileChooser chooser = new JFileChooser();
Scanner in = null;
if (chooser.showOpenDialog(null) == JFileChooser.APPROVE_OPTION)
{
    File selectedFile = chooser.getSelectedFile();
    in = new Scanner(selectedFile);
    ...
}
```



#### Computing & Society 1.1 Computers Are Everywhere

When computers were first invented in the 1940s, a computer filled an entire room. The photo below shows the ENIAC (electronic numerical integrator and computer), completed in 1946 at the University of Pennsylvania. The ENIAC was used by the military to compute the trajectories of projectiles. Nowadays, computing facilities of search engines, Internet shops, and social networks fill huge buildings called data centers. At the other end of the spectrum, computers are all around us. Your cell phone has a computer inside, as do many credit cards and fare cards for public transit. A modern car has several computers—to control the engine, brakes, lights, and the radio.

The advent of ubiquitous computing changed many aspects of our lives. Factories used to employ people to do repetitive assembly tasks that are today carried out by computer-controlled robots, operated by a few people who know how to work with those computers. Books, music, and movies are nowadays often consumed on computers, and computers are almost always involved in their production. The book that you are reading right now could not have been written without computers.

**Computing & Society** presents social and historical topics on computing—for interest and to fulfill the “historical and social context” requirements of the ACM/IEEE curriculum guidelines.



## Web Resources

**CodeCheck** “CodeCheck” is a new online service currently in development by Cay Horstmann that students can use to check their homework and to work on additional practice problems. Visit <http://horstmann.com/codecheck> to learn more and to try it out.

**Test Bank** Instructors can use quiz and test questions designed to exercise students’ code reading and writing skills.

10) What is displayed after executing the given code snippet?

```
int[] mymarks = new int[10];
int total = 0;
Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
for (int cnt = 1; cnt <= 10; cnt++)
{
    System.out.print("Enter the marks: ");
    mymarks[cnt] = in.nextInt();
    total = total + mymarks[cnt];
}
System.out.println(total);
```

- a) The code snippet displays the total marks of all ten subjects.
- b) The for loop causes a run-time time error on the first iteration.
- c) The code snippet causes a bounds error.
- d) The code snippet displays zero.

Method	Arguments	Actual	Expected
countSevens	1797	1	fail
countSevens	7777777	6	fail
countSevens	1985	0	pass
countSevens	7	0	fail
countSevens	0	0	pass

**Student files**

Numbers.java

```
1 public class Numbers
2 {
3     /**
4      * Counts the number of digits with value 7 in a given num
5      * @param n any non-negative number
6      * @return the number of digits with value 7 in the decimal representation of n
7     */
8     public int countSevens(int n)
9     {
10        // your work here
11        int count = 0;
12        ...
13    }
14}
```

1.1) Consider the following `Card` class.

```
public class Card
{
    private String name;

    public Card()
    {
        name = "";
    }

    public Card(String n)
    {
        name = n;
    }

    public String getName()
    {
        return name;
    }

    public boolean isExpired()
    {
        return false;
    }

    public String format()
    {
        return "Card holder: " + name;
    }
}
```

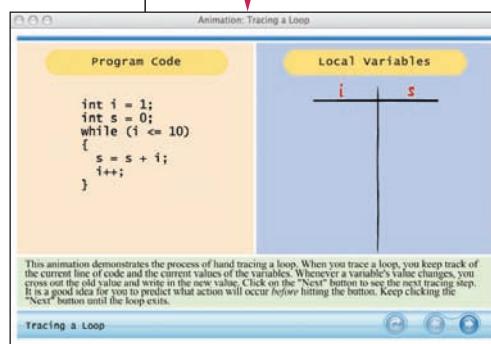
Use this class as a superclass to implement a hierarchy of related classes:

Class	Data
IDCard	ID number
CallingCard	Card number, PIN
DriverLicense	Expiration year

Write declarations for each of the subclasses. For each subclass, supply private instance variables. Leave the bodies of the constructors and the `format` methods blank for now.

**Lab Exercises** These multi-part exercises ask students to apply chapter concepts. They can serve as “warm-ups” in the lab or to provide additional practice.

**Animations** Students can play and replay dynamic explanations of concepts and program flow.



# Acknowledgments

Many thanks to Beth Lang Golub, Don Fowley, Elizabeth Mills, Katherine Willis, Jenny Welter, Wendy Ashenberg, Lisa Gee, Kevin Holm, and Tim Lindner at John Wiley & Sons, and Vickie Piercy at Publishing Services for their help with this project. An especially deep acknowledgment and thanks goes to Cindy Johnson for her hard work, sound judgment, and amazing attention to detail.

I am grateful to Suchindran Chatterjee, *Arizona State University*, Jose Cordova, *University of Louisiana*, Udayan Das, *DeVry University*, James Johnson, Aaron Keen, *California Polytechnic State University San Luis Obispo*, Norm Krumpe, *Miami University Ohio*, Kathy Liszka, *University of Akron*, Kathleen O'Brien, *San Jose State University*, Donald Smith, *Columbia College*, Mark Thomas, *University of Cincinnati*, Laurie White, *Mercer University*, Brent Wilson, *George Fox University*, and David Woolbright, *Columbus State University*, for their excellent contributions to the supplementary materials.

Many thanks to the individuals who reviewed the manuscript for this edition, made valuable suggestions, and brought an embarrassingly large number of errors and omissions to my attention. They include:

Eric Aaron, *Wesleyan University*  
 James Agnew, *Anne Arundel Community College*  
 Greg Ballinger, *Miami Dade College*  
 Jon Beck, *Truman State University*  
 Matt Boutell, *Rose-Hulman Institute of Technology*  
 John Bundy, *DeVry University Chicago*  
 Michael Carney, *Finger Lakes Community College*  
 Christopher Cassa, *Massachusetts Institute of Technology*  
 Dr. Suchindran S. Chatterjee, *Arizona State University*  
 Tina Comston, *Franklin University*  
 Lennie Cooper, *Miami Dade College*  
 Sherif Elfayoumy, *University of North Florida*  
 Henry A Etlinger, *Rochester Institute of Technology*

Guy Helmer, *Iowa State University*  
 Ed Holden, *Rochester Institute of Technology*  
 Steven Janke, *Colorado College*  
 Mark Jones, *Lock Haven University of Pennsylvania*  
 Dr. Mustafa Kamal, *University of Central Missouri*  
 Gary J. Koehler, *University of Florida*  
 Ronald Krawitz, *DeVry University*  
 Norm Krumpe, *Miami University Ohio*  
 Jim Leone, *Rochester Institute of Technology*  
 Kevin Lillis, *St. Ambrose University*  
 Darren Lim, *Siena College*  
 Hong Lin, *DeVry University*  
 Kuber Maharjan, *Purdue University College of Technology at Columbus*  
 Patricia McDermott-Wells, *Florida International University*

Bill Mongan, *Drexel University*  
 George Novacky, *University of Pittsburgh*  
 Mimi Opkins, *California State University Long Beach*  
 Derek Pao, *City University of Hong Kong*  
 Katherine Salch, *Illinois Central College*  
 Javad Shakib, *DeVry University*  
 Charlie Shu, *Franklin University*  
 Joslyn A. Smith, *Florida International University*  
 Robert Strader, *Stephen F. Austin State University*  
 Jonathan S. Weissman, *Finger Lakes Community College*  
 Katherine H. Winters, *University of Tennessee Chattanooga*  
 Tom Wulf, *University of Cincinnati*  
 Qi Yu, *Rochester Institute of Technology*

Every new edition builds on the suggestions and experiences of prior reviewers and users. I am grateful for the invaluable contributions these individuals have made:

- Tim Andersen, *Boise State University*  
Ivan Bajic, *San Diego State University*  
Ted Bangay, *Sheridan Institute of Technology*  
Ian Barland, *Radford University*  
George Basham, *Franklin University*  
Sambit Bhattacharya, *Fayetteville State University*  
Rick Birney, *Arizona State University*  
Paul Bladek, *Edmonds Community College*  
Joseph Bowbeer, *Vizrea Corporation*  
Timothy A. Budd, *Oregon State University*  
Robert P. Burton, *Brigham Young University*  
Frank Butt, *IBM*  
Jerry Cain, *Stanford University*  
Adam Cannon, *Columbia University*  
Nancy Chase, *Gonzaga University*  
Archana Chidanandan, *Rose-Hulman Institute of Technology*  
Vincent Cicirello, *The Richard Stockton College of New Jersey*  
Teresa Cole, *Boise State University*  
Deborah Coleman, *Rochester Institute of Technology*  
Jose Cordova, *University of Louisiana, Monroe*  
Valentino Crespi, *California State University, Los Angeles*  
Jim Cross, *Auburn University*  
Russell Deaton, *University of Arkansas*  
Geoffrey Decker, *Northern Illinois University*  
H. E. Dunsmore, *Purdue University*  
Robert Duvall, *Duke University*  
Eman El-Sheikh, *University of West Florida*  
John Fendrich, *Bradley University*  
David Freer, *Miami Dade College*  
John Fulton, *Franklin University*  
David Geary, *Sabreware, Inc.*  
Margaret Geroch, *Wheeling Jesuit University*  
Ahmad Ghafarian, *North Georgia College & State University*  
Rick Giles, *Acadia University*  
Stacey Grasso, *College of San Mateo*  
Jianchao Han, *California State University, Dominguez Hills*  
Lisa Hansen, *Western New England College*
- Elliott Harold  
Eileen Head, *Binghamton University*  
Cecily Heiner, *University of Utah*  
Brian Howard, *DePauw University*  
Lubomir Ivanov, *Iona College*  
Norman Jacobson, *University of California, Irvine*  
Curt Jones, *Bloomsburg University*  
Aaron Keen, *California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo*  
Mugdha Khaladkar, *New Jersey Institute of Technology*  
Elliot Koffman, *Temple University*  
Kathy Liszka, *University of Akron*  
Hunter Lloyd, *Montana State University*  
Youmin Lu, *Bloomsburg University*  
John S. Mallozzi, *Iona College*  
John Martin, *North Dakota State University*  
Jeanna Matthews, *Clarkson University*  
Scott McElfresh, *Carnegie Mellon University*  
Joan McGrory, *Christian Brothers University*  
Carolyn Miller, *North Carolina State University*  
Sandeep R. Mitra, *State University of New York, Brockport*  
Teng Moh, *San Jose State University*  
John Moore, *The Citadel*  
Jose-Arturo Mora-Soto, Jesica Rivero-Espinosa, and Julio-Angel Cano-Romero, *University of Madrid*  
Faye Navabi, *Arizona State University*  
Parviz Partow-Navid, *California State University, Los Angeles*  
Kevin O'Gorman, *California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo*  
Michael Olan, *Richard Stockton College*  
Kevin Parker, *Idaho State University*  
Jim Perry, *Ulster County Community College*  
Cornel Pokorny, *California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo*  
Roger Priebe, *University of Texas, Austin*  
C. Robert Putnam, *California State University, Northridge*
- Kai Qian, *Southern Polytechnic State University*  
Cyndi Rader, *Colorado School of Mines*  
Neil Rankin, *Worcester Polytechnic Institute*  
Brad Rippe, *Fullerton College*  
Pedro I. Rivera Vega, *University of Puerto Rico, Mayaguez*  
Daniel Rogers, *SUNY Brockport*  
Chaman Lal Sabharwal, *Missouri University of Science and Technology*  
John Santore, *Bridgewater State College*  
Carolyn Schable, *Colorado State University*  
Brent Seales, *University of Kentucky*  
Christian Shin, *SUNY Geneseo*  
Jeffrey Six, *University of Delaware*  
Don Slater, *Carnegie Mellon University*  
Ken Slonneger, *University of Iowa*  
Donald Smith, *Columbia College*  
Stephanie Smullen, *University of Tennessee, Chattanooga*  
Monica Sweat, *Georgia Institute of Technology*  
Peter Stanchev, *Kettering University*  
Shannon Tauro, *University of California, Irvine*  
Ron Taylor, *Wright State University*  
Russell Tessier, *University of Massachusetts, Amherst*  
Jonathan L. Tolstedt, *North Dakota State University*  
David Vineyard, *Kettering University*  
Joseph Vybihal, *McGill University*  
Xiaoming Wei, *Iona College*  
Todd Whittaker, *Franklin University*  
Robert Willhoft, *Roberts Wesleyan College*  
Lea Wittie, *Bucknell University*  
David Womack, *University of Texas at San Antonio*  
David Woolbright, *Columbus State University*  
Catherine Wyman, *DeVry University*  
Arthur Yanushka, *Christian Brothers University*  
Salih Yurttas, *Texas A&M University*

# CONTENTS

PREFACE **iii**

SPECIAL FEATURES **xxii**

## **CHAPTER 1** INTRODUCTION **1**

- 1.1 Computer Programs 2**
- 1.2 The Anatomy of a Computer 3**
- 1.3 The Java Programming Language 6**
- 1.4 Becoming Familiar with Your Programming Environment 8**
- 1.5 Analyzing Your First Program 12**
- 1.6 Errors 15**
- 1.7 Problem Solving: Algorithm Design 16**

## **CHAPTER 2** USING OBJECTS **33**

- 2.1 Objects and Classes 34**
- 2.2 Variables 36**
- 2.3 Calling Methods 43**
- 2.4 Constructing Objects 48**
- 2.5 Accessor and Mutator Methods 50**
- 2.6 The API Documentation 52**
- 2.7 Implementing a Test Program 55**
- 2.8 Object References 57**
- 2.9 Graphical Applications 61**
- 2.10 Ellipses, Lines, Text, and Color 66**

## **CHAPTER 3** IMPLEMENTING CLASSES **81**

- 3.1 Instance Variables and Encapsulation 82**
- 3.2 Specifying the Public Interface of a Class 86**
- 3.3 Providing the Class Implementation 93**
- 3.4 Unit Testing 102**
- 3.5 Problem Solving: Tracing Objects 105**
- 3.6 Local Variables 107**
- 3.7 The this Reference 109**
- 3.8 Shape Classes 112**

**CHAPTER 4 FUNDAMENTAL DATA TYPES 131**

- 4.1 Numbers **132**
- 4.2 Arithmetic **139**
- 4.3 Input and Output **147**
- 4.4 Problem Solving: First Do it By Hand **154**
- 4.5 Strings **156**

**CHAPTER 5 DECISIONS 179**

- 5.1 The if Statement **180**
- 5.2 Comparing Values **186**
- 5.3 Multiple Alternatives **196**
- 5.4 Nested Branches **200**
- 5.5 Problem Solving: Flowcharts **207**
- 5.6 **Problem Solving: Selecting Test Cases 210**
- 5.7 Boolean Variables and Operators **213**
- 5.8 Application: Input Validation **218**

**CHAPTER 6 LOOPS 241**

- 6.1 The while Loop **242**
- 6.2 Problem Solving: Hand-Tracing **249**
- 6.3 The for Loop **254**
- 6.4 The do Loop **262**
- 6.5 Application: Processing Sentinel Values **263**
- 6.6 Problem Solving: Storyboards **269**
- 6.7 Common Loop Algorithms **272**
- 6.8 Nested Loops **279**
- 6.9 Application: Random Numbers and Simulations **283**
- 6.10 **Using a Debugger 286**

**CHAPTER 7 ARRAYS AND ARRAY LISTS 311**

- 7.1 Arrays **312**
- 7.2 The Enhanced for Loop **321**
- 7.3 Common Array Algorithms **322**
- 7.4 Problem Solving: Adapting Algorithms **331**
- 7.5 Problem Solving: Discovering Algorithms by Manipulating Physical Objects **336**
- 7.6 Two-Dimensional Arrays **340**

7.7	Array Lists	347
7.8	Regression Testing	356

**CHAPTER 8 DESIGNING CLASSES 379**

8.1	Discovering Classes	380
8.2	Designing Good Methods	381
8.3	Problem Solving: Patterns for Object Data	390
8.4	Static Variables and Methods	395
8.5	Packages	400
8.6	Unit Test Frameworks	407

**CHAPTER 9 INHERITANCE 421**

9.1	Inheritance Hierarchies	422
9.2	Implementing Subclasses	426
9.3	Overriding Methods	431
9.4	Polymorphism	437
9.5	Object: The Cosmic Superclass	448

**CHAPTER 10 INTERFACES 463**

10.1	Using Interfaces for Algorithm Reuse	464
10.2	Working with Interface Variables	471
10.3	The Comparable Interface	473
10.4	Using Interfaces for Callbacks	477
10.5	Inner Classes	481
10.6	Mock Objects	483
10.7	Event Handling	484
10.8	Building Applications with Buttons	490
10.9	Processing Timer Events	494
10.10	Mouse Events	497

**CHAPTER 11 INPUT/OUTPUT AND EXCEPTION HANDLING 513**

11.1	Reading and Writing Text Files	514
11.2	Text Input and Output	519
11.3	Command Line Arguments	527
11.4	Exception Handling	534
11.5	Application: Handling Input Errors	545

**CHAPTER 12    OBJECT-ORIENTED DESIGN    559**

- 12.1 Classes and Their Responsibilities    **560**
- 12.2 Relationships Between Classes    **563**
- 12.3 Application: Printing an Invoice    **569**

**CHAPTER 13    RECURSION    587**

- 13.1 Triangle Numbers    **588**
- 13.2 Recursive Helper Methods    **596**
- 13.3 The Efficiency of Recursion    **598**
- 13.4 Permutations    **603**
- 13.5 Mutual Recursion    **608**
- 13.6 Backtracking    **614**

**CHAPTER 14    SORTING AND SEARCHING    629**

- 14.1 Selection Sort    **630**
- 14.2 Profiling the Selection Sort Algorithm    **633**
- 14.3 Analyzing the Performance of the Selection Sort Algorithm    **636**
- 14.4 Merge Sort    **641**
- 14.5 Analyzing the Merge Sort Algorithm    **644**
- 14.6 Searching    **648**
- 14.7 Problem Solving: Estimating the Running Time of an Algorithm    **653**
- 14.8 Sorting and Searching in the Java Library    **658**

**CHAPTER 15    THE JAVA COLLECTIONS FRAMEWORK    671**

- 15.1 An Overview of the Collections Framework    **672**
- 15.2 Linked Lists    **675**
- 15.3 Sets    **681**
- 15.4 Maps    **686**
- 15.5 Stacks, Queues, and Priority Queues    **692**
- 15.6 Stack and Queue Applications    **695**

**CHAPTER 16    BASIC DATA STRUCTURES    715**

- 16.1 Implementing Linked Lists    **716**
- 16.2 Implementing Array Lists    **731**
- 16.3 Implementing Stacks and Queues    **735**
- 16.4 Implementing a Hash Table    **741**

**CHAPTER 17** TREE STRUCTURES **761**

<b>17.1</b>	Basic Tree Concepts	<b>762</b>
<b>17.2</b>	Binary Trees	<b>766</b>
<b>17.3</b>	Binary Search Trees	<b>771</b>
<b>17.4</b>	Tree Traversal	<b>780</b>
<b>17.5</b>	Red-Black Trees	<b>786</b>
<b>17.6</b>	Heaps	<b>793</b>
<b>17.7</b>	The Heapsort Algorithm	<b>804</b>

**CHAPTER 18** GENERIC CLASSES **819**

<b>18.1</b>	Generic Classes and Type Parameters	<b>820</b>
<b>18.2</b>	Implementing Generic Types	<b>821</b>
<b>18.3</b>	Generic Methods	<b>825</b>
<b>18.4</b>	Constraining Type Parameters	<b>827</b>
<b>18.5</b>	Type Erasure	<b>831</b>

**CHAPTER 19** GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACES **841**

<b>19.1</b>	Layout Management	<b>842</b>
<b>19.2</b>	Processing Text Input	<b>846</b>
<b>19.3</b>	Choices	<b>852</b>
<b>19.4</b>	Menus	<b>863</b>
<b>19.5</b>	Exploring the Swing Documentation	<b>869</b>

**CHAPTER 20** STREAMS AND BINARY INPUT/OUTPUT **881**

<b>20.1</b>	Readers, Writers, and Streams	<b>882</b>
<b>20.2</b>	Binary Input and Output	<b>883</b>
<b>20.3</b>	Random Access	<b>887</b>
<b>20.4</b>	Object Streams	<b>893</b>

**CHAPTER 21** MULTITHREADING (WEB ONLY)

<b>21.1</b>	Running Threads
<b>21.2</b>	Terminating Threads
<b>21.3</b>	Race Conditions
<b>21.4</b>	Synchronizing Object Access
<b>21.5</b>	Avoiding Deadlocks
<b>21.6</b>	Application: Algorithm Animation

**CHAPTER 22** INTERNET NETWORKING (WEB ONLY)



- 22.1 The Internet Protocol
- 22.2 Application Level Protocols
- 22.3 A Client Program
- 22.4 A Server Program
- 22.5 URL Connections

**CHAPTER 23** RELATIONAL DATABASES (WEB ONLY)



- 23.1 Organizing Database Information
- 23.2 Queries
- 23.3 Installing a Database
- 23.4 Database Programming in Java
- 23.5 Application: Entering an Invoice

**CHAPTER 24** XML (WEB ONLY)



- 24.1 XML Tags and Documents
- 24.2 Parsing XML Documents
- 24.3 Creating XML Documents
- 24.4 Validating XML Documents

**CHAPTER 25** WEB APPLICATIONS (WEB ONLY)



- 25.1 The Architecture of a Web Application
- 25.2 The Architecture of a JSF Application
- 25.3 JavaBeans Components
- 25.4 Navigation Between Pages
- 25.5 JSF Components
- 25.6 A Three-Tier Application

**APPENDICES**

APPENDIX A	THE BASIC LATIN AND LATIN-1 SUBSETS OF UNICODE	A-1
APPENDIX B	JAVA OPERATOR SUMMARY	A-5
APPENDIX C	JAVA RESERVED WORD SUMMARY	A-7
APPENDIX D	THE JAVA LIBRARY	A-9
APPENDIX E	JAVA SYNTAX SUMMARY	A-53
APPENDIX F	TOOL SUMMARY	A-64
APPENDIX G	NUMBER SYSTEMS	A-68
APPENDIX H	UML SUMMARY	A-76

APPENDIX I	JAVA LANGUAGE CODING GUIDELINES	A-79
APPENDIX J	HTML SUMMARY	A-86

GLOSSARY **G-1**

INDEX **I-1**

CREDITS **C-1**

**ALPHABETICAL LIST OF SYNTAX BOXES**

Arrays	313
Array Lists	347
Assignment	41
Calling a Superclass Method	431
Cast	143
Catching Exceptions	536
Class Declaration	89
Comparisons	187
Constant Declaration	136
Constructor with Superclass Initializer	436
Declaring a Generic Class	822
Declaring a Generic Method	826
Declaring an Interface	465
for Statement	254
if Statement	182
Implementing an Interface	467
Importing a Class from a Package	54
Input Statement	147
Instance Variable Declaration	83
Java Program	13
Object Construction	49
Package Specification	402
Subclass Declaration	428
The Enhanced for Loop	322
The finally Clause	540
The instanceof Operator	451
The throws Clause	539
Throwing an Exception	534
Two-Dimensional Array Declaration	341
while Statement	243
Variable Declaration	37

CHAPTER	Common Errors	How Tos and Worked Examples
<b>1</b> Introduction	Omitting Semicolons 14 Misspelling Words 16	Describing an Algorithm with Pseudocode 20 Writing an Algorithm for Tiling a Floor 22
<b>2</b> Using Objects	Using Undeclared or Uninitialized Variables 42 Confusing Variable Declarations and Assignment Statements 42 Trying to Invoke a Constructor Like a Method 50	How Many Days Have You Been Alive?  Working with Pictures 
<b>3</b> Implementing Classes	Declaring a Constructor as void 92 Ignoring Parameter Variables 98 Duplicating Instance Variables in Local Variables 108 Providing Unnecessary Instance Variables 108 Forgetting to Initialize Object References in a Constructor 109	Implementing a Class 98 Making a Simple Menu  Drawing Graphical Shapes 116
<b>4</b> Fundamental Data Types	Unintended Integer Division 144 Unbalanced Parentheses 144	Carrying out Computations 151 Computing the Volume and Surface Area of a Pyramid  Computing Travel Time 
<b>5</b> Decisions	A Semicolon After the if Condition 184 Using == to Compare Strings 192 The Dangling else Problem 204 Combining Multiple Relational Operators 216 Confusing && and    Conditions 216	Implementing an if Statement 193 Extracting the Middle 

Available online at [www.wiley.com/college/horstmann](http://www.wiley.com/college/horstmann).

 Programming Tips		 Special Topics	 Computing & Society		
Backup Copies	11		Computers Are Everywhere	5	
Choose Descriptive Variable Names	43	Testing Classes in an Interactive Environment	56	Computer Monopoly	60
Learn By Trying	47				
Don't Memorize—Use Online Help	55				
The javadoc Utility	92	Calling One Constructor from Another	112	Electronic Voting Machines	104
Do Not Use Magic Numbers	139	Big Numbers	138	The Pentium Floating-Point Bug	146
Spaces in Expressions	145	Combining Assignment and Arithmetic	145	International Alphabets and Unicode	163
Reading Exception Reports	162	Instance Methods and Static Methods	145		
		Using Dialog Boxes for Input and Output	162		
Brace Layout	184	The Conditional Operator	185	Denver's Luggage Handling System	195
Always Use Braces	184	The switch Statement	199	Artificial Intelligence	221
Tabs	185	Block Scope	205		
Avoid Duplication in Branches	186	Enumeration Types	206		
Hand-Tracing	203	Logging	212		
Make a Schedule and Make Time for Unexpected Problems	212	Short-Circuit Evaluation of Boolean Operators	217		
		De Morgan's Law	217		

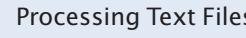
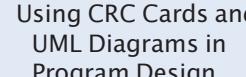


CHAPTER	Common Errors	How Tos and Worked Examples
<b>6 Loops</b>	Don't Think "Are We There Yet?" 247 Infinite Loops 248 Off-by-One Errors 248	Writing a Loop 276  Credit Card Processing  Manipulating the Pixels in an Image  Debugging 289  A Sample Debugging Session
<b>7 Arrays and Array Lists</b>	Bounds Errors 318 Uninitialized and Unfilled Arrays 318 Underestimating the Size of a Data Set 331 Length and Size 356	Working with Arrays 334  Rolling the Dice  A World Population Table
<b>8 Designing Classes</b>	Trying to Access Instance Variables in Static Methods 398 Confusing Dots 403	Programming with Packages 404
<b>9 Inheritance</b>	Replicating Instance Variables from the Superclass 430 Confusing Super- and Subclasses 430 Accidental Overloading 435 Forgetting to Use <code>super</code> When Invoking a Superclass Method 435 Don't Use Type Tests 452	Developing an Inheritance Hierarchy 443  Implementing an Employee Hierarchy for Payroll Processing



	Programming Tips		Special Topics		Computing & Society	
	Use for Loops for Their Intended Purpose Only Choose Loop Bounds That Match Your Task Count Iterations Flowcharts for Loops	259 260 260 263	Variables Declared in a for Loop Header Redirection of Input and Output The Loop-and-a-Half Problem The break and continue Statements	261 266 266 267	Software Piracy The First Bug	253 291
	Use Arrays for Sequences of Related Items Make Parallel Arrays into Arrays of Objects Batch Files and Shell Scripts	318 318 358	Methods with a Variable Number of Arguments Sorting with the Java Library Two-Dimensional Arrays with Variable Row Lengths Multidimensional Arrays The Diamond Syntax in Java 7	319 331 345 347 356	Computer Viruses The Therac-25 Incidents	320 359
	Consistency Minimize the Use of Static Methods	385 397	Call by Value and Call by Reference Static Imports Alternative Forms of Instance and Static Variable Initialization Package Access	386 398 399 404	Personal Computing	406
	Use a Single Class for Variation in Values, Inheritance for Variation in Behavior	426	Calling the Superclass Constructor Dynamic Method Lookup and the Implicit Parameter Abstract Classes Final Methods and Classes Protected Access Inheritance and the <code>toString</code> Method Inheritance and the <code>equals</code> Method	436 440 441 442 442 453 454	Who Controls the Internet?	454



CHAPTER	Common Errors	How Tos and Worked Examples
<b>10</b> Interfaces	 Common Errors Forgetting to Declare Implementing Methods as Public 470 Trying to Instantiate an Interface 470 Modifying Parameter Types in the Implementing Method 489 Trying to Call Listener Methods 490 Forgetting to Attach a Listener 493 Forgetting to Repaint 496	 Investigating Number Sequences
<b>11</b> Input/Output and Exception Handling	Backslashes in File Names 517 Constructing a Scanner with a String 517	 Processing Text Files  Analyzing Baby Names 530
<b>12</b> Object-Oriented Design		 Using CRC Cards and UML Diagrams in Program Design 566  Simulating an Automatic Teller Machine
<b>13</b> Recursion	Infinite Recursion 592 Tracing Through Recursive Methods 592	 Thinking Recursively  Finding Files  Towers of Hanoi 593

Available online at [www.wiley.com/college/horstmann](http://www.wiley.com/college/horstmann).

 Programming Tips		 Special Topics	 Computing & Society		
Don't Use a Container as a Listener	493	Constants in Interfaces The <code>clone</code> Method and the <code>Cloneable</code> Interface Anonymous Classes Keyboard Events Event Adapters	470 475 482 500 501	Open Source and Free Software	502
Throw Early, Catch Late Do Not Squelch Exceptions Do Not Use <code>catch</code> and <code>finally</code> in the Same <code>try</code> Statement Do Throw Specific Exceptions	542 542 542 543	Reading Web Pages File Dialog Boxes Character Encodings Regular Expressions Assertions Automatic Resource Management in Java 7	517 517 518 526 543 544	Encryption Algorithms The Ariane Rocket Incident	533 544
		Attributes and Methods in UML Diagrams Multiplicities Aggregation, Association, and Composition	567 568 568	Databases and Privacy	580
				The Limits of Computation	606



CHAPTER	Common Errors	How Tos and Worked Examples
<b>14</b> Sorting and Searching	The compareTo Method Can Return Any Integer, Not Just –1, 0, and 1 660	Enhancing the Insertion Sort Algorithm 
<b>15</b> The Java Collections Framework		Choosing a Collection Word Frequency Simulating a Queue of Waiting Customers  
<b>16</b> Basic Data Structures		Implementing a Doubly-Linked List 
<b>17</b> Tree Structures		Building a Huffman Tree Implementing a Red-Black Tree  
<b>18</b> Generic Classes	Genericity and Inheritance The Array Store Exception Using Generic Types in a Static Context 829 829 834	Making a Generic Binary Search Tree Class 
<b>19</b> Graphical User Interfaces	By Default, Components have Zero Width and Height 845	Laying Out a User Interface Programming a Working Calculator 859 
<b>20</b> Streams and Binary Input/Output	Negative byte Values 887	Choosing a File Format 896

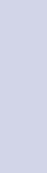


 Programming Tips	 Special Topics	 Computing & Society
	Oh, Omega, and Theta 638 Insertion Sort 639 The Quicksort Algorithm 646 The Parameterized Comparable Interface 660 The Comparator Interface 661	The First Programmer 652
Use Interface References to Manipulate Data Structures 685	Hash Functions 690 Reverse Polish Notation 703	Standardization 680
	Static Classes 730 Open Addressing 749	
	Wildcard Types 830 Reflection 834	
Use a GUI Builder 862	Adding the <code>main</code> Method to the Frame Class 846	



CHAPTER	Common Errors	How Tos and Worked Examples
<b>21</b> Multithreading (WEB ONLY) 	 Calling await Without Calling signalAll Calling signalAll Without Locking the Object  	
<b>22</b> Internet Networking (WEB ONLY) 		Designing Client/Server Programs 
<b>23</b> Relational Databases (WEB ONLY) 	Joining Tables Without Specifying a Link Condition  Constructing Queries from Arbitrary Strings 	Programming a Bank Database 
<b>24</b> XML (WEB ONLY) 	XML Elements Describe Objects, Not Classes 	Designing an XML Document Format Writing an XML Document Writing a DTD   
<b>25</b> Web Applications (WEB ONLY) 		Designing a Managed Bean 



Programming Tips	Special Topics	Computing & Society
 <p>Use the Runnable Interface Check for Thread Interruptions in the run Method of a Thread</p>	 <p>Thread Pools Object Locks and Synchronized Methods The Java Memory Model</p>	
 <p>Use High-Level Libraries</p>		
 <p>Stick with the Standard Avoid Unnecessary Data Replication Don't Replicate Columns in a Table Don't Hardwire Database Connection Parameters into Your Program Let the Database Do the Work</p>	      <p>Primary Keys and Indexes Transactions Object-Relational Mapping</p>	
 <p>Prefer XML Elements over Attributes Avoid Children with Mixed Elements and Text</p>	   <p>Grammars, Parsers, and Compilers Schema Languages Other XML Technologies</p>	
	 <p>Session State and Cookies AJAX</p>	





# INTRODUCTION

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To learn about computers and programming
- To compile and run your first Java program
- To recognize compile-time and run-time errors
- To describe an algorithm with pseudocode



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### 1.1 COMPUTER PROGRAMS 2

### 1.2 THE ANATOMY OF A COMPUTER 3

*Computing & Society 1.1:* Computers Are Everywhere 5

### 1.3 THE JAVA PROGRAMMING LANGUAGE 6

### 1.4 BECOMING FAMILIAR WITH YOUR PROGRAMMING ENVIRONMENT 8

*Programming Tip 1.1:* Backup Copies 11

### 1.5 ANALYZING YOUR FIRST PROGRAM 12

*Syntax 1.1:* Java Program 13

*Common Error 1.1:* Omitting Semicolons 14

### 1.6 ERRORS 15

*Common Error 1.2:* Misspelling Words 16

### 1.7 PROBLEM SOLVING: ALGORITHM DESIGN 16

*How To 1.1:* Describing an Algorithm with Pseudocode 20

*Worked Example 1.1:* Writing an Algorithm for Tiling a Floor 22



Just as you gather tools, study a project, and make a plan for tackling it, in this chapter you will gather up the basics you need to start learning to program. After a brief introduction to computer hardware, software, and programming in general, you will learn how to write and run your first Java program. You will also learn how to diagnose and fix programming errors, and how to use pseudocode to describe an algorithm—a step-by-step description of how to solve a problem—as you plan your computer programs.

## 1.1 Computer Programs

Computers execute very basic instructions in rapid succession.

A computer program is a sequence of instructions and decisions.

Programming is the act of designing and implementing computer programs.

You have probably used a computer for work or fun. Many people use computers for everyday tasks such as electronic banking or writing a term paper. Computers are good for such tasks. They can handle repetitive chores, such as totaling up numbers or placing words on a page, without getting bored or exhausted.

The flexibility of a computer is quite an amazing phenomenon. The same machine can balance your checkbook, lay out your term paper, and play a game. In contrast, other machines carry out a much narrower range of tasks; a car drives and a toaster toasts. Computers can carry out a wide range of tasks because they execute different programs, each of which directs the computer to work on a specific task.

The computer itself is a machine that stores data (numbers, words, pictures), interacts with devices (the monitor, the sound system, the printer), and executes programs. A **computer program** tells a computer, in minute detail, the sequence of steps that are needed to fulfill a task. The physical computer and peripheral devices are collectively called the **hardware**. The programs the computer executes are called the **software**.

Today's computer programs are so sophisticated that it is hard to believe that they are composed of extremely primitive instructions. A typical instruction may be one of the following:

- Put a red dot at a given screen position.
- Add up two numbers.
- If this value is negative, continue the program at a certain instruction.

The computer user has the illusion of smooth interaction because a program contains a huge number of such instructions, and because the computer can execute them at great speed.

The act of designing and implementing computer programs is called **programming**. In this book, you will learn how to program a computer—that is, how to direct the computer to execute tasks.

To write a computer game with motion and sound effects or a word processor that supports fancy fonts and pictures is a complex task that requires a team of many highly-skilled programmers. Your first programming efforts will be more mundane. The concepts and skills you learn in this book form an important foundation, and you should not be disappointed if your first programs do not rival the sophisticated software that is familiar to you. Actually, you will find that there is an immense thrill even in simple programming tasks. It is an amazing experience to see the computer precisely and quickly carry out a task that would take you hours of drudgery, to

make small changes in a program that lead to immediate improvements, and to see the computer become an extension of your mental powers.

### SELF CHECK



1. What is required to play music on a computer?
2. Why is a CD player less flexible than a computer?
3. What does a computer user need to know about programming in order to play a video game?

## 1.2 The Anatomy of a Computer

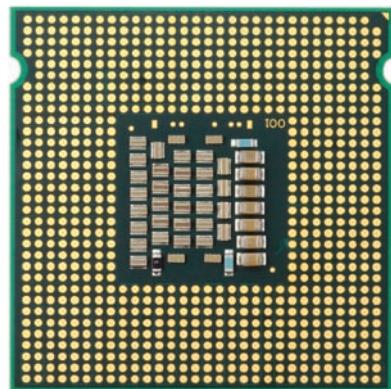
To understand the programming process, you need to have a rudimentary understanding of the building blocks that make up a computer. We will look at a personal computer. Larger computers have faster, larger, or more powerful components, but they have fundamentally the same design.

At the heart of the computer lies the **central processing unit (CPU)** (see Figure 3). The inside wiring of the CPU is enormously complicated. For example, the Intel Core processor (a popular CPU for personal computers at the time of this writing) is composed of several hundred million structural elements, called *transistors*.

The CPU performs program control and data processing. That is, the CPU locates and executes the program instructions; it carries out arithmetic operations such as addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division; it fetches data from external memory or devices and places processed data into storage.

The central processing unit (CPU) performs program control and data processing.

Storage devices include memory and secondary storage.

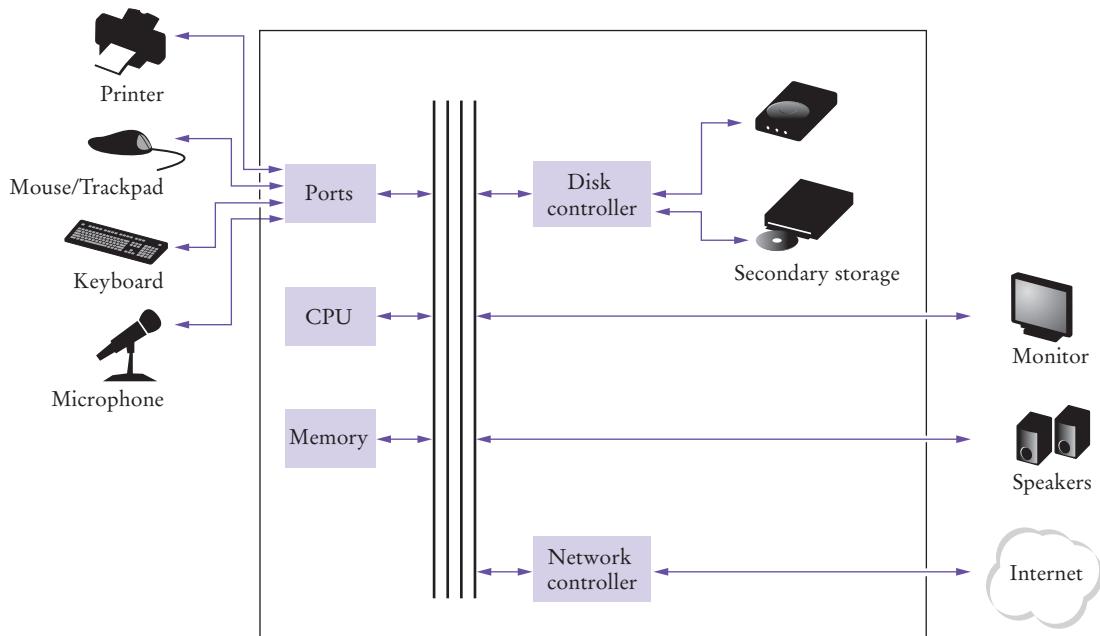


**Figure 1** Central Processing Unit

There are two kinds of storage. Primary storage or memory is made from electronic circuits that can store data, provided they are supplied with electric power. Secondary storage, usually a hard disk (see Figure 2)



**Figure 2** A Hard Disk



**Figure 3** Schematic Design of a Personal Computer

or a solid-state drive, provides slower and less expensive storage that persists without electricity. A hard disk consists of rotating platters, which are coated with a magnetic material. A solid-state drive uses electronic components that can retain information without power, and without moving parts.

To interact with a human user, a computer requires peripheral devices. The computer transmits information (called *output*) to the user through a display screen, speakers, and printers. The user can enter information (called *input*) for the computer by using a keyboard or a pointing device such as a mouse.

Some computers are self-contained units, whereas others are interconnected through **networks**. Through the network cabling, the computer can read data and programs from central storage locations or send data to other computers. To the user of a networked computer, it may not even be obvious which data reside on the computer itself and which are transmitted through the network.

Figure 3 gives a schematic overview of the architecture of a personal computer. Program instructions and data (such as text, numbers, audio, or video) reside in secondary storage or elsewhere on the network. When a program is started, its instructions are brought into memory, where the CPU can read them. The CPU reads and executes one instruction at a time. As directed by these instructions, the CPU reads data, modifies it, and writes it back to memory or secondary storage. Some program instructions will cause the CPU to place dots on the display screen or printer or to vibrate the speaker. As these actions happen many times over and at great speed, the human user will perceive images and sound. Some program instructions read user input from the keyboard, mouse, touch sensor, or microphone. The program analyzes the nature of these inputs and then executes the next appropriate instruction.

**SELF CHECK**

4. Where is a program stored when it is not currently running?
5. Which part of the computer carries out arithmetic operations, such as addition and multiplication?
6. A modern smartphone is a computer, comparable to a desktop computer. Which components of a smartphone correspond to those shown in Figure 3?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R1.2, R1.3.



## Computing & Society 1.1 Computers Are Everywhere

When computers were first invented in the 1940s, a computer filled an entire room. The photo below shows the ENIAC (electronic numerical integrator and computer), completed in 1946 at the University of Pennsylvania. The ENIAC was used by the military to compute the trajectories of projectiles. Nowadays, computing facilities of search engines, Internet shops, and social networks fill huge buildings called data centers. At the other end of the spectrum, computers are all around us. Your cell phone has a computer inside, as do many credit cards and fare cards for public transit. A modern car has several computers—to control the engine, brakes, lights, and the radio.

The advent of ubiquitous computing changed many aspects of our lives. Factories used to employ people to do repetitive assembly tasks that are today carried out by computer-controlled robots, operated by a few people who know how to work with those computers. Books, music, and movies nowadays are often consumed on computers, and computers are almost always involved in their production. The book that you are reading right now

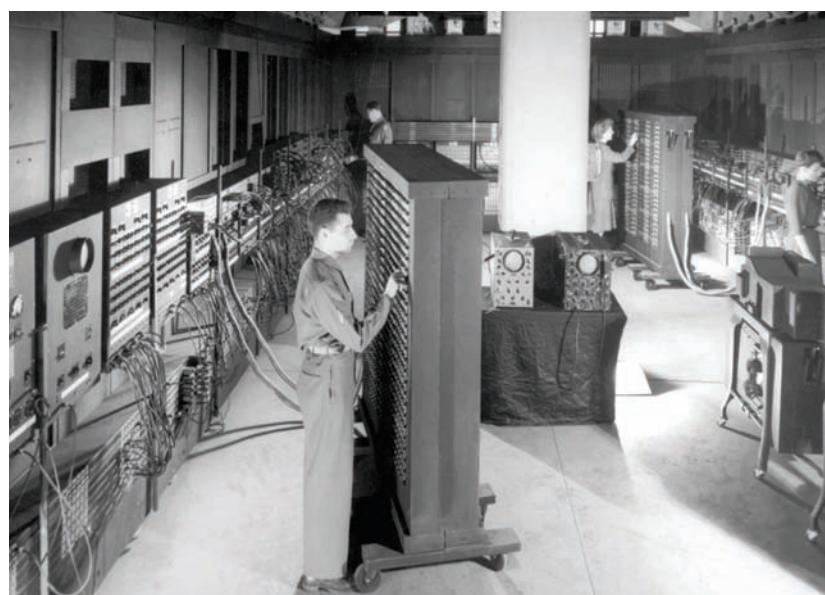


This transit card contains a computer.

could not have been written without computers.

Knowing about computers and how to program them has become an essential skill in many careers. Engineers design computer-controlled cars and medical equipment that preserve lives. Computer scientists develop programs that help people come together to support social causes. For example, activists used social networks to share videos showing abuse by repressive regimes, and this information was instrumental in changing public opinion.

As computers, large and small, become ever more embedded in our everyday lives, it is increasingly important for everyone to understand how they work, and how to work with them. As you use this book to learn how to program a computer, you will develop a good understanding of computing fundamentals that will make you a more informed citizen and, perhaps, a computing professional.



The ENIAC

## 1.3 The Java Programming Language

In order to write a computer program, you need to provide a sequence of instructions that the CPU can execute. A computer program consists of a large number of simple CPU instructions, and it is tedious and error-prone to specify them one by one. For that reason, **high-level programming languages** have been created. In a high-level language, you specify the actions that your program should carry out. A **compiler** translates the high-level instructions into the more detailed instructions (called **machine code**) required by the CPU. Many different programming languages have been designed for different purposes.

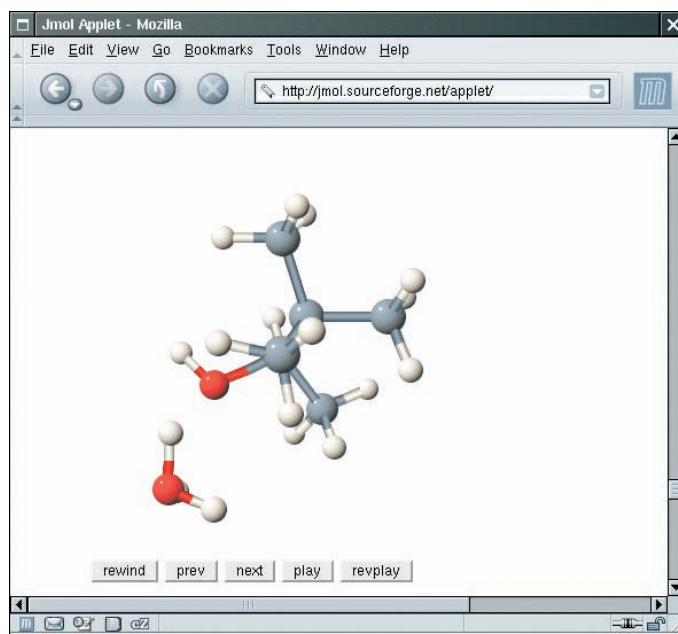
In 1991, a group led by James Gosling and Patrick Naughton at Sun Microsystems designed a programming language, code-named “Green”, for use in consumer devices, such as intelligent television “set-top” boxes. The language was designed to be simple, secure, and usable for many different processor types. No customer was ever found for this technology.



*James Gosling*

Java was originally designed for programming consumer devices, but it was first successfully used to write Internet applets.

Gosling recounts that in 1994 the team realized, “We could write a really cool browser. It was one of the few things in the client/server mainstream that needed some of the weird things we’d done: architecture neutral, real-time, reliable, secure.” Java was introduced to an enthusiastic crowd at the SunWorld exhibition in 1995, together with a browser that ran **applets**—Java code that can be located anywhere on the Internet. Figure 4 shows a typical example of an applet.



**Figure 4** An Applet for Visualizing Molecules Running in a Browser Window (<http://jmol.sourceforge.net/>)

**Table 1** Java Versions

Version	Year	Important New Features
1.0	1996	
1.1	1997	Inner classes
1.2	1998	Swing, Collections framework
1.3	2000	Performance enhancements
1.4	2002	Assertions, XML support
5	2004	Generic classes, enhanced for loop, auto-boxing, enumerations, annotations
6	2006	Library improvements
7	2011	Small language changes and library improvements

Since then, Java has grown at a phenomenal rate. Programmers have embraced the language because it is easier to use than its closest rival, C++. In addition, Java has a rich **library** that makes it possible to write portable programs that can bypass proprietary operating systems—a feature that was eagerly sought by those who wanted to be independent of those proprietary systems and was bitterly fought by their vendors. A “micro edition” and an “enterprise edition” of the Java library allow Java programmers to target hardware ranging from smart cards and cell phones to the largest Internet servers.

Because Java was designed for the Internet, it has two attributes that make it very suitable for beginners: safety and portability.

You can run a Java program in your browser without fear. The safety features of the Java language ensure that a program is terminated if it tries to do something unsafe. Having a safe environment is also helpful for anyone learning Java. When you make an error that results in unsafe behavior, your program is terminated and you receive an accurate error report.

The other benefit of Java is portability. The same Java program will run, without change, on Windows, UNIX, Linux, or Macintosh. In order to achieve portability, the Java compiler does not translate Java programs directly into CPU instructions. Instead, compiled Java programs contain instructions for the Java **virtual machine**, a program that simulates a real CPU. Portability is another benefit for the beginning student. You do not have to learn how to write programs for different platforms.

At this time, Java is firmly established as one of the most important languages for general-purpose programming as well as for computer science instruction. However, although Java is a good language for beginners, it is not perfect, for three reasons.

Because Java was not specifically designed for students, no thought was given to making it really simple to write basic programs. A certain amount of technical machinery is necessary to write even the simplest programs. This is not a problem for professional programmers, but it can be a nuisance for beginning students. As you learn how to program in Java, there will be times when you will be asked to be satisfied with a preliminary explanation and wait for more complete detail in a later chapter.

Java has been extended many times during its life—see Table 1. In this book, we assume that you have Java version 5 or later.

Java was designed to be safe and portable, benefiting both Internet users and students.

Java programs are distributed as instructions for a virtual machine, making them platform-independent.

Java has a very large library. Focus on learning those parts of the library that you need for your programming projects.

Finally, you cannot hope to learn all of Java in one course. The Java language itself is relatively simple, but Java contains a vast set of *library packages* that are required to write useful programs. There are packages for graphics, user-interface design, cryptography, networking, sound, database storage, and many other purposes. Even expert Java programmers cannot hope to know the contents of all of the packages—they just use those that they need for particular projects.

Using this book, you should expect to learn a good deal about the Java language and about the most important packages. Keep in mind that the central goal of this book is not to make you memorize Java minutiae, but to teach you how to think about programming.



7. What are the two most important benefits of the Java language?
8. How long does it take to learn the entire Java library?

**Practice It** Now you can try this exercise at the end of the chapter: R1.5.

## 1.4 Becoming Familiar with Your Programming Environment

Set aside some time to become familiar with the programming environment that you will use for your class work.

An editor is a program for entering and modifying text, such as a Java program.

Many students find that the tools they need as programmers are very different from the software with which they are familiar. You should spend some time making yourself familiar with your programming environment. Because computer systems vary widely, this book can only give an outline of the steps you need to follow. It is a good idea to participate in a hands-on lab, or to ask a knowledgeable friend to give you a tour.

**Step 1** Start the Java development environment.

Computer systems differ greatly in this regard. On many computers there is an **integrated development environment** in which you can write and test your programs. On other computers you first launch an **editor**, a program that functions like a word processor, in which you can enter your Java instructions; you then open a **console window** and type commands to execute your program. You need to find out how to get started with your environment.

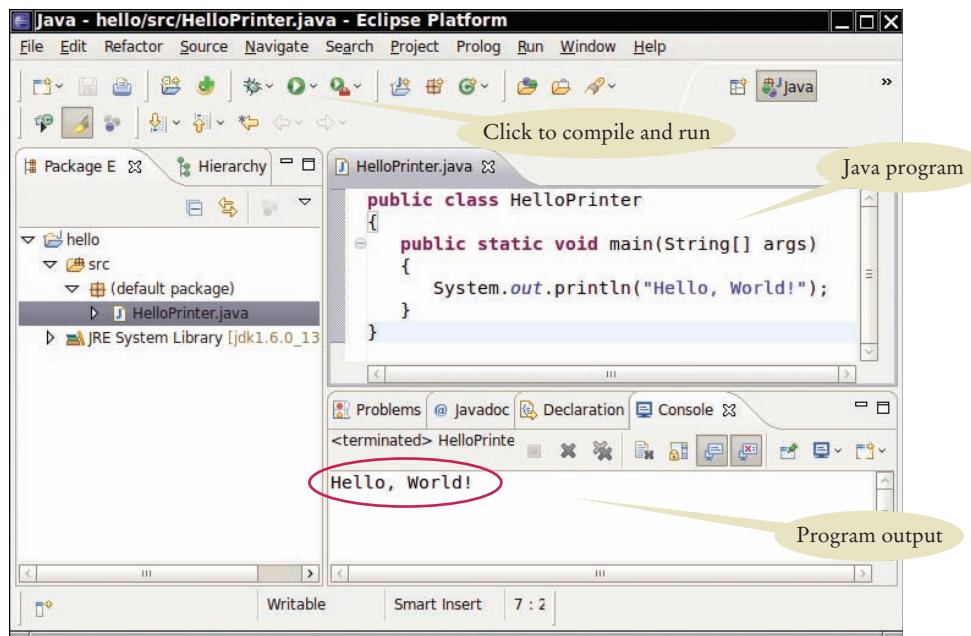
**Step 2** Write a simple program.

The traditional choice for the very first program in a new programming language is a program that displays a simple greeting: “Hello, World!”. Let us follow that tradition. Here is the “Hello, World!” program in Java:

```
public class HelloPrinter
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("Hello, World!");
    }
}
```

We will examine this program in the next section.

**Figure 5**  
Running the HelloPrinter Program in an Integrated Development Environment



No matter which programming environment you use, you begin your activity by typing the program statements into an editor window.

Create a new file and call it `HelloPrinter.java`, using the steps that are appropriate for your environment. (If your environment requires that you supply a project name in addition to the file name, use the name `hello` for the project.) Enter the program instructions *exactly* as they are given above. Alternatively, locate the electronic copy in this book's companion code and paste it into your editor.

As you write this program, pay careful attention to the various symbols, and keep in mind that Java is **case sensitive**. You must enter upper- and lowercase letters exactly as they appear in the program listing. You cannot type `MAIN` or `PrintLn`. If you are not careful, you will run into problems—see Common Error 1.2 on page 16.

Java is case sensitive.  
You must be careful  
about distinguishing  
between upper- and  
lowercase letters.

### Step 3 Run the program.

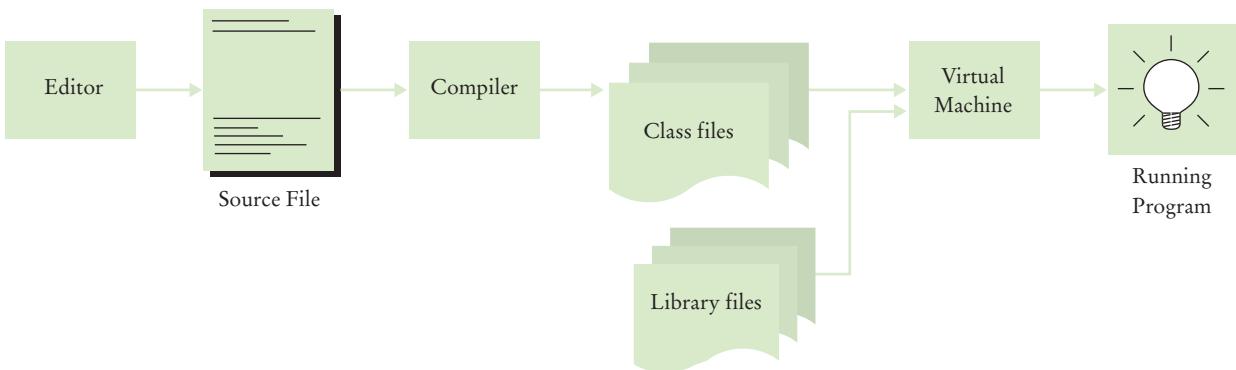
The process for running a program depends greatly on your programming environment. You may have to click a button or enter some commands. When you run the test program, the message

Hello, World!

will appear somewhere on the screen (see Figures 5 and 6).



**Figure 6**  
Running the HelloPrinter Program in a Console Window

**Figure 7** From Source Code to Running Program

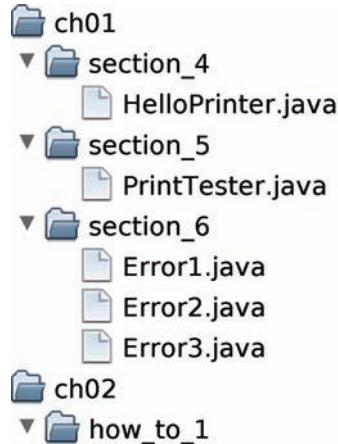
The Java compiler translates source code into class files that contain instructions for the Java virtual machine.

In order to run your program, the Java compiler translates your **source files** (that is, the statements that you wrote) into *class files*. (A class file contains instructions for the Java virtual machine.) After the compiler has translated your **source code** into virtual machine instructions, the virtual machine executes them. During execution, the virtual machine accesses a library of pre-written code, including the implementations of the `System` and `PrintStream` classes that are necessary for displaying the program's output. Figure 7 summarizes the process of creating and running a Java program. In some programming environments, the compiler and virtual machine are essentially invisible to the programmer—they are automatically executed whenever you ask to run a Java program. In other environments, you need to launch the compiler and virtual machine explicitly.

#### Step 4 Organize your work.



As a programmer, you write programs, try them out, and improve them. You store your programs in **files**. Files are stored in **folders** or **directories**. A folder can contain files as well as other folders, which themselves can contain more files and folders (see Figure 8). This hierarchy can be quite large, and you need not be concerned with all of its branches. However, you should create folders for organizing your work. It is a good idea to make a separate folder for your programming class. Inside that folder, make a separate folder for each program.

**Figure 8**  
A Folder Hierarchy

Some programming environments place your programs into a default location if you don't specify a folder yourself. In that case, you need to find out where those files are located.

Be sure that you understand where your files are located in the folder hierarchy. This information is essential when you submit files for grading, and for making backup copies (see Programming Tip 1.1).



### SELF CHECK

9. Where is the `HelloPrinter.java` file stored on your computer?
10. What do you do to protect yourself from data loss when you work on programming projects?

### Practice It

Now you can try this exercise at the end of the chapter: R1.6.

### Programming Tip 1.1



#### Backup Copies

You will spend many hours creating and improving Java programs. It is easy to delete a file by accident, and occasionally files are lost because of a computer malfunction. Retyping the contents of lost files is frustrating and time-consuming. It is therefore crucially important that you learn how to safeguard files and get in the habit of doing so *before* disaster strikes. Backing up files on a memory stick is an easy and convenient storage method for many people. Another increasingly popular form of backup is Internet file storage. Here are a few pointers to keep in mind:

- *Back up often.* Backing up a file takes only a few seconds, and you will hate yourself if you have to spend many hours recreating work that you could have saved easily. I recommend that you back up your work once every thirty minutes.
- *Rotate backups.* Use more than one directory for backups, and rotate them. That is, first back up onto the first directory. Then back up onto the second directory. Then use the third, and then go back to the first. That way you always have three recent backups. If your recent changes made matters worse, you can then go back to the older version.
- *Pay attention to the backup direction.* Backing up involves copying files from one place to another. It is important that you do this right—that is, copy from your work location to the backup location. If you do it the wrong way, you will overwrite a newer file with an older version.
- *Check your backups once in a while.* Double-check that your backups are where you think they are. There is nothing more frustrating than to find out that the backups are not there when you need them.
- *Relax, then restore.* When you lose a file and need to restore it from a backup, you are likely to be in an unhappy, nervous state. Take a deep breath and think through the recovery process before you start. It is not uncommon for an agitated computer user to wipe out the last backup when trying to restore a damaged file.



Develop a strategy for keeping backup copies of your work before disaster strikes.

## 1.5 Analyzing Your First Program



In this section, we will analyze the first Java program in detail. Here again is the source code:

### section\_5/HelloPrinter.java

```

1 public class HelloPrinter
2 {
3     public static void main(String[] args)
4     {
5         // Display a greeting in the console window
6         System.out.println("Hello, World!");
7     }
8 }
9 }
```

The line

```
public class HelloPrinter
```

indicates the declaration of a **class** called `HelloPrinter`.

Every Java program consists of one or more classes. We will discuss classes in more detail in Chapters 2 and 3.

The word **public** denotes that the class is usable by the “public”. You will later encounter **private** features.

In Java, every source file can contain at most one public class, and the name of the public class must match the name of the file containing the class. For example, the class `HelloPrinter` must be contained in a file named `HelloPrinter.java`.

The construction

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    ...
}
```

declares a **method** called `main`. A method contains a collection of programming instructions that describe how to carry out a particular task. Every Java application must have a **main method**. Most Java programs contain other methods besides `main`, and you will see in Chapter 3 how to write other methods.

The term **static** is explained in more detail in Chapter 8, and the meaning of `String[] args` is covered in Chapter 11. At this time, simply consider

```
public class ClassName
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        ...
    }
}
```

as a part of the “plumbing” that is required to create a Java program. Our first program has all instructions inside the `main` method of the class.

The `main` method contains one or more instructions called **statements**. Each statement ends in a semicolon (`;`). When a program runs, the statements in the `main` method are executed one by one.

Classes are the fundamental building blocks of Java programs.

Every Java application contains a class with a `main` method. When the application starts, the instructions in the `main` method are executed.

Each class contains declarations of methods. Each method contains a sequence of instructions.

## Syntax 1.1 Java Program

```

public class HelloPrinter
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("Hello, World!");
    }
}

```

**Every Java program contains a main method with this header.**

**The statements inside the main method are executed when the program runs.**

**Be sure to match the opening and closing braces.**

**Every program contains at least one class. Choose a class name that describes the program action.**

**Each statement ends in a semicolon. See page 14.**

**Replace this statement when you write your own programs.**

In our example program, the `main` method has a single statement:

```
System.out.println("Hello, World!");
```

This statement prints a line of text, namely “Hello, World!”. In this statement, we *call* a method which, for reasons that we will not explain here, is specified by the rather long name `System.out.println`.

We do not have to implement this method—the programmers who wrote the Java library already did that for us. We simply want the method to perform its intended task, namely to print a value.

Whenever you call a method in Java, you need to specify

1. The method you want to use (in this case, `System.out.println`).
2. Any values the method needs to carry out its task (in this case, “Hello, World!”). The technical term for such a value is an **argument**. Arguments are enclosed in parentheses. Multiple arguments are separated by commas.

A sequence of characters enclosed in quotation marks

“Hello, World!”

A string is a sequence of characters enclosed in quotation marks.

is called a **string**. You must enclose the contents of the string inside quotation marks so that the compiler knows you literally mean “Hello, World!”. There is a reason for this requirement. Suppose you need to print the word *main*. By enclosing it in quotation marks, “main”, the compiler knows you mean the sequence of characters *m a i n*, not the method named *main*. The rule is simply that you must enclose all text strings in quotation marks, so that the compiler considers them plain text and does not try to interpret them as program instructions.

You can also print numerical values. For example, the statement

```
System.out.println(3 + 4);
```

evaluates the expression  $3 + 4$  and displays the number 7.

The `System.out.println` method prints a string or a number and then starts a new line. For example, the sequence of statements

```
System.out.println("Hello");
System.out.println("World!");
```

prints two lines of text:

```
Hello
World!
```

There is a second method, `System.out.print`, that you can use to print an item without starting a new line. For example, the output of the two statements

```
System.out.print("00");
System.out.println(3 + 4);
```

is the single line

```
007
```



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program to demonstrate print commands.

#### SELF CHECK



11. How do you modify the `HelloPrinter` program to greet you instead?
12. How would you modify the `HelloPrinter` program to print the word “Hello” vertically?
13. Would the program continue to work if you replaced line 7 with this statement?  
`System.out.println(Hello);`
14. What does the following set of statements print?  
`System.out.print("My lucky number is");
System.out.println(3 + 4 + 5);`
15. What do the following statements print?  
`System.out.println("Hello");
System.out.println("");
System.out.println("World");`

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R1.7, R1.8, E1.5, E1.7.

#### Common Error 1.1



#### Omitting Semicolons

In Java every statement must end in a semicolon. Forgetting to type a semicolon is a common error. It confuses the compiler, because the compiler uses the semicolon to find where one statement ends and the next one starts. The compiler does not use line breaks or closing braces to recognize the end of statements. For example, the compiler considers

```
System.out.println("Hello")
System.out.println("World!");
```

a single statement, as if you had written

```
System.out.println("Hello") System.out.println("World!");
```

Then it doesn’t understand that statement, because it does not expect the word `System` following the closing parenthesis after “Hello”.

The remedy is simple. Scan every statement for a terminating semicolon, just as you would check that every English sentence ends in a period. However, do not add a semicolon at the end of `public class Hello` or `public static void main`. These lines are not statements.

## 1.6 Errors

A compile-time error is a violation of the programming language rules that is detected by the compiler.

Experiment a little with the `HelloPrinter` program. What happens if you make a typing error such as

```
System.out.println("Hello, World!");  
System.out.println("Hello, Word!");
```

In the first case, the compiler will complain. It will say that it has no clue what you mean by `ou`. The exact wording of the error message is dependent on your development environment, but it might be something like “Cannot find symbol `ou`”. This is a **compile-time error**. Something is wrong according to the rules of the language and the compiler finds it. For this reason, compile-time errors are often called **syntax errors**. When the compiler finds one or more errors, it refuses to translate the program into Java virtual machine instructions, and as a consequence you have no program that you can run. You must fix the error and compile again. In fact, the compiler is quite picky, and it is common to go through several rounds of fixing compile-time errors before compilation succeeds for the first time.

If the compiler finds an error, it will not simply stop and give up. It will try to report as many errors as it can find, so you can fix them all at once.

Sometimes, an error throws the compiler off track. Suppose, for example, you forget the quotation marks around a string: `System.out.println(Hello, World!)`. The compiler will not complain about the missing quotation marks. Instead, it will report “Cannot find symbol `Hello`”. Unfortunately, the compiler is not very smart and it does not realize that you meant to use a string. It is up to you to realize that you need to enclose strings in quotation marks.

The error in the second line above is of a different kind. The program will compile and run, but its output will be wrong. It will print

```
Hello, Word!
```

A run-time error causes a program to take an action that the programmer did not intend.

This is a **run-time error**. The program is syntactically correct and does something, but it doesn’t do what it is supposed to do. Because run-time errors are caused by logical flaws in the program, they are often called **logic errors**.

This particular run-time error did not include an error message. It simply produced the wrong output. Some kinds of run-time errors are so severe that they generate an **exception**: an error message from the Java virtual machine. For example, if your program includes the statement

```
System.out.println(1 / 0);
```

you will get a run-time error message “Division by zero”.

During program development, errors are unavoidable. Once a program is longer than a few lines, it would require superhuman concentration to enter it correctly without slipping up once. You will find yourself omitting semicolons or quotation marks more often than you would like, but the compiler will track down these problems for you.

Run-time errors are more troublesome. The compiler will not find them—in fact, the compiler will cheerfully translate any program as long as its syntax is correct—



*Programmers spend a fair amount of time fixing compile-time and run-time errors.*



### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download three programs to illustrate errors.

but the resulting program will do something wrong. It is the responsibility of the program author to test the program and find any run-time errors.

**SELF CHECK**

- 16.** Suppose you omit the "" characters around `Hello, World!` from the `HelloPrinter.java` program. Is this a compile-time error or a run-time error?
- 17.** Suppose you change `println` to `printline` in the `HelloPrinter.java` program. Is this a compile-time error or a run-time error?
- 18.** Suppose you change `main` to `hel1o` in the `HelloPrinter.java` program. Is this a compile-time error or a run-time error?
- 19.** When you used your computer, you may have experienced a program that “crashed” (quit spontaneously) or “hung” (failed to respond to your input). Is that behavior a compile-time error or a run-time error?
- 20.** Why can’t you test a program for run-time errors when it has compiler errors?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R1.9, R1.10, R1.11.

**Common Error 1.2****Misspelling Words**

If you accidentally misspell a word, then strange things may happen, and it may not always be completely obvious from the error messages what went wrong. Here is a good example of how simple spelling errors can cause trouble:

```
public class HelloPrinter
{
    public static void Main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("Hello, World!");
    }
}
```

This class declares a method called `Main`. The compiler will not consider this to be the same as the `main` method, because `Main` starts with an uppercase letter and the Java language is case sensitive. Upper- and lowercase letters are considered to be completely different from each other, and to the compiler `Main` is no better match for `main` than `rain`. The compiler will cheerfully compile your `Main` method, but when the Java virtual machine reads the compiled file, it will complain about the missing `main` method and refuse to run the program. Of course, the message “missing main method” should give you a clue where to look for the error.

If you get an error message that seems to indicate that the compiler or virtual machine is on the wrong track, check for spelling and capitalization. If you misspell the name of a symbol (for example, `ou` instead of `out`), the compiler will produce a message such as “cannot find symbol `ou`”. That error message is usually a good clue that you made a spelling error.

## 1.7 Problem Solving: Algorithm Design

You will soon learn how to program calculations and decision making in Java. But before we look at the mechanics of implementing computations in the next chapter, let’s consider how you can describe the steps that are necessary for finding the solution to a problem.

### 1.7.1 The Algorithm Concept

You may have run across advertisements that encourage you to pay for a computerized service that matches you up with a love partner. Think how this might work. You fill out a form and send it in. Others do the same. The data are processed by a computer program. Is it reasonable to assume that the computer can perform the task of finding the best match for you? Suppose your younger brother, not the computer, had all the forms on his desk. What instructions could you give him? You can't say, "Find the best-looking person who likes inline skating and browsing the Internet". There is no objective standard for good looks, and your brother's opinion (or that of a computer program analyzing the photos of prospective partners) will likely be different from yours. If you can't give written instructions for someone to solve the problem, there is no way the computer can magically find the right solution. The computer can only do what you tell it to do. It just does it faster, without getting bored or exhausted.



*Finding the perfect partner is not a problem that a computer can solve.*

For that reason, a computerized match-making service cannot guarantee to find the optimal match for you. Instead, you may be presented with a set of potential partners who share common interests with you. That is a task that a computer program can solve.

In order for a computer program to provide an answer to a problem that computes an answer, it must follow a sequence of steps that is

- Unambiguous
- Executable
- Terminating

An algorithm for solving a problem is a sequence of steps that is unambiguous, executable, and terminating.

The step sequence is *unambiguous* when there are precise instructions for what to do at each step and where to go next. There is no room for guesswork or personal opinion. A step is *executable* when it can be carried out in practice. For example, a computer can list all people that share your hobbies, but it can't predict who will be your life-long partner. Finally, a sequence of steps is *terminating* if it will eventually come to an end. A program that keeps working without delivering an answer is clearly not useful.

A sequence of steps that is unambiguous, executable, and terminating is called an **algorithm**. Although there is no algorithm for finding a partner, many problems do have algorithms for solving them. The next section gives an example.



*An algorithm is a recipe for finding a solution.*

## 1.7.2 An Algorithm for Solving an Investment Problem

Consider the following investment problem:

You put \$10,000 into a bank account that earns 5 percent interest per year. How many years does it take for the account balance to be double the original?

Could you solve this problem by hand? Sure, you could. You figure out the balance as follows:

year	interest	balance
0		10000
1	$10000.00 \times 0.05 = 500.00$	$10000.00 + 500.00 = 10500.00$
2	$10500.00 \times 0.05 = 525.00$	$10500.00 + 525.00 = 11025.00$
3	$11025.00 \times 0.05 = 551.25$	$11025.00 + 551.25 = 11576.25$
4	$11576.25 \times 0.05 = 578.81$	$11576.25 + 578.81 = 12155.06$

You keep going until the balance is at least \$20,000. Then the last number in the year column is the answer.

Of course, carrying out this computation is intensely boring to you or your younger brother. But computers are very good at carrying out repetitive calculations quickly and flawlessly. What is important to the computer is a description of the steps for finding the solution. Each step must be clear and unambiguous, requiring no guesswork. Here is such a description:

**Start with a year value of 0, a column for the interest, and a balance of \$10,000.**

year	interest	balance
0		10000

**Repeat the following steps while the balance is less than \$20,000**

**Add 1 to the year value.**

**Compute the interest as balance  $\times$  0.05 (i.e., 5 percent interest).**

**Add the interest to the balance.**

year	interest	balance
0		10000
1	500.00	10500.00
14	942.82	19799.32
15	989.96	20789.28

**Report the final year value as the answer.**

These steps are not yet in a language that a computer can understand, but you will soon learn how to formulate them in Java. This informal description is called **pseudocode**. We examine the rules for writing pseudocode in the next section.

### 1.7.3 Pseudocode

Pseudocode is an informal description of a sequence of steps for solving a problem.

There are no strict requirements for pseudocode because it is read by human readers, not a computer program. Here are the kinds of pseudocode statements and how we will use them in this book:

- Use statements such as the following to describe how a value is set or changed:

**total cost = purchase price + operating cost**

**Multiply the balance value by 1.05.**

**Remove the first and last character from the word.**

- Describe decisions and repetitions as follows:

**If total cost 1 < total cost 2**

**While the balance is less than \$20,000**

**For each picture in the sequence**

Use indentation to indicate which statements should be selected or repeated:

**For each car**

**operating cost = 10 x annual fuel cost**

**total cost = purchase price + operating cost**

Here, the indentation indicates that both statements should be executed for each car.

- Indicate results with statements such as:

**Choose car1.**

**Report the final year value as the answer.**

### 1.7.4 From Algorithms to Programs

Understand the problem

Develop and describe an algorithm

Test the algorithm with simple inputs

Translate the algorithm into Java

Compile and test your program

In Section 1.7.2, we developed pseudocode for finding how long it takes to double an investment. Let's double-check that the pseudocode represents an algorithm; that is, that it is unambiguous, executable, and terminating.

Our pseudocode is unambiguous. It simply tells how to update values in each step. The pseudocode is executable because we use a fixed interest rate. Had we said to use the actual interest rate that will be charged in years to come, and not a fixed rate of 5 percent per year, the instructions would not have been executable. There is no way for anyone to know what the interest rate will be in the future. It requires a bit of thought to see that the steps are terminating: With every step, the balance goes up by at least \$500, so eventually it must reach \$20,000.

Therefore, we have found an algorithm to solve our investment problem, and we know we can find the solution by programming a computer. The existence of an algorithm is an essential prerequisite for programming a task. You need to first discover and describe an algorithm for the task before you start programming (see Figure 9). In the chapters that follow, you will learn how to express algorithms in the Java language.

**Figure 9** The Software Development Process



**21.** Suppose the interest rate was 20 percent. How long would it take for the investment to double?

**22.** Suppose your cell phone carrier charges you \$29.95 for up to 300 minutes of calls, and \$0.45 for each additional minute, plus 12.5 percent taxes and fees. Give an algorithm to compute the monthly charge from a given number of minutes.

**23.** Consider the following pseudocode for finding the most attractive photo from a sequence of photos:

Pick the first photo and call it "the best so far".

For each photo in the sequence

If it is more attractive than the "best so far"

Discard "the best so far".

Call this photo "the best so far".

The photo called "the best so far" is the most attractive photo in the sequence.

Is this an algorithm that will find the most attractive photo?

**24.** Suppose each photo in Self Check 23 had a price tag. Give an algorithm for finding the most expensive photo.

**25.** Suppose you have a random sequence of black and white marbles and want to rearrange it so that the black and white marbles are grouped together. Consider this algorithm:

Repeat until sorted

Locate the first black marble that is preceded by a white marble, and switch them.

What does the algorithm do with the sequence O●O●●? Spell out the steps until the algorithm stops.

**26.** Suppose you have a random sequence of colored marbles. Consider this pseudocode:

Repeat until sorted

Locate the first marble that is preceded by a marble of a different color, and switch them.

Why is this not an algorithm?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R1.15, E1.4, P1.1.

## HOW TO 1.1

### Describing an Algorithm with Pseudocode



This is the first of many "How To" sections in this book that give you step-by-step procedures for carrying out important tasks in developing computer programs.

Before you are ready to write a program in Java, you need to develop an algorithm—a method for arriving at a solution for a particular problem. Describe the algorithm in pseudocode: a sequence of precise steps formulated in English. To illustrate, we'll devise an algorithm for this problem:

**Problem Statement** You have the choice of buying two cars. One is more fuel efficient than the other, but also more expensive. You know the price and fuel efficiency (in miles per gallon, mpg) of both cars. You plan to keep the car for ten years. Assume a price of \$4 per gallon of gas and usage of 15,000 miles per year. You will pay cash for the car and not worry about financing costs. Which car is the better deal?



**Step 1** Determine the inputs and outputs.

In our sample problem, we have these inputs:

- **purchase price1** and **fuel efficiency1**, the price and fuel efficiency (in mpg) of the first car
- **purchase price2** and **fuel efficiency2**, the price and fuel efficiency of the second car

We simply want to know which car is the better buy. That is the desired output.

**Step 2** Break down the problem into smaller tasks.

For each car, we need to know the total cost of driving it. Let's do this computation separately for each car. Once we have the total cost for each car, we can decide which car is the better deal.

The total cost for each car is **purchase price + operating cost**.

We assume a constant usage and gas price for ten years, so the operating cost depends on the cost of driving the car for one year.

The operating cost is **10 x annual fuel cost**.

The annual fuel cost is **price per gallon x annual fuel consumed**.

The annual fuel consumed is **annual miles driven / fuel efficiency**. For example, if you drive the car for 15,000 miles and the fuel efficiency is 15 miles/gallon, the car consumes 1,000 gallons.

**Step 3** Describe each subtask in pseudocode.

In your description, arrange the steps so that any intermediate values are computed before they are needed in other computations. For example, list the step

**total cost = purchase price + operating cost**

after you have computed **operating cost**.

Here is the algorithm for deciding which car to buy:

**For each car, compute the total cost as follows:**

**annual fuel consumed = annual miles driven / fuel efficiency**

**annual fuel cost = price per gallon x annual fuel consumed**

**operating cost = 10 x annual fuel cost**

**total cost = purchase price + operating cost**

**If total cost1 < total cost2**

**Choose car1.**

**Else**

**Choose car2.**

**Step 4** Test your pseudocode by working a problem.

We will use these sample values:

Car 1: \$25,000, 50 miles/gallon

Car 2: \$20,000, 30 miles/gallon

Here is the calculation for the cost of the first car:

**annual fuel consumed = annual miles driven / fuel efficiency = 15000 / 50 = 300**

**annual fuel cost = price per gallon x annual fuel consumed = 4 x 300 = 1200**

**operating cost = 10 x annual fuel cost = 10 x 1200 = 12000**

**total cost = purchase price + operating cost = 25000 + 12000 = 37000**

Similarly, the total cost for the second car is \$40,000. Therefore, the output of the algorithm is to choose car 1.

The following Worked Example demonstrates how to use the concepts in this chapter and the steps in the How To feature to solve another problem. In this case, you will see how to develop an algorithm for laying tile in an alternating pattern of colors. You should read the Worked Example to review what you have learned, or for help in tackling another problem.

In future chapters, Worked Examples are provided for you on the book's companion Web site. A brief description of the problem tackled in the example will appear with the reminder to download it from [www.wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://www.wiley.com/go/javaexamples). You will find any code related to the Worked Example included with the companion code for the chapter. When you see the Worked Example description, download the example and the code to learn how the problem was solved.

## WORKED EXAMPLE 1.1

### Writing an Algorithm for Tiling a Floor

**Problem Statement** Write an algorithm for tiling a rectangular bathroom floor with alternating black and white tiles measuring  $4 \times 4$  inches. The floor dimensions, measured in inches, are multiples of 4.

#### Step 1 Determine the inputs and outputs.

The inputs are the floor dimensions ( $\text{length} \times \text{width}$ ), measured in inches. The output is a tiled floor.

#### Step 2 Break down the problem into smaller tasks.

A natural subtask is to lay one row of tiles. If you can solve that task, then you can solve the problem by laying one row next to the other, starting from a wall, until you reach the opposite wall.

How do you lay a row? Start with a tile at one wall. If it is white, put a black one next to it. If it is black, put a white one next to it. Keep going until you reach the opposite wall. The row will contain  $\text{width} / 4$  tiles.



#### Step 3 Describe each subtask in pseudocode.

In the pseudocode, you want to be more precise about exactly where the tiles are placed.

**Place a black tile in the northwest corner.**

**While the floor is not yet filled, repeat the following steps:**

**Repeat this step  $\text{width} / 4 - 1$  times:**

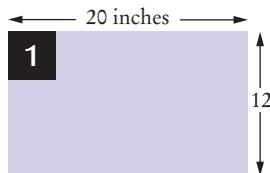
**Place a tile east of the previously placed tile. If the previously placed tile was white, pick a black one; otherwise, a white one.**

**Locate the tile at the beginning of the row that you just placed. If there is space to the south, place a tile of the opposite color below it.**

#### Step 4 Test your pseudocode by working a problem.

Suppose you want to tile an area measuring  $20 \times 12$  inches.

The first step is to place a black tile in the northwest corner.



Next, alternate four tiles until reaching the east wall. ( $\text{width} / 4 - 1 = 20 / 4 - 1 = 4$ )



There is room to the south. Locate the tile at the beginning of the completed row. It is black. Place a white tile south of it.



Complete the row.



There is still room to the south. Locate the tile at the beginning of the completed row. It is white. Place a black tile south of it.



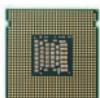
Complete the row.



Now the entire floor is filled, and you are done.

**CHAPTER SUMMARY****Define “computer program” and programming.**

- Computers execute very basic instructions in rapid succession.
- A computer program is a sequence of instructions and decisions.
- Programming is the act of designing and implementing computer programs.

**Describe the components of a computer.**

- The central processing unit (CPU) performs program control and data processing.
- Storage devices include memory and secondary storage.

**Describe the process of translating high-level languages to machine code.**

- Java was originally designed for programming consumer devices, but it was first successfully used to write Internet applets.
- Java was designed to be safe and portable, benefiting both Internet users and students.
- Java programs are distributed as instructions for a virtual machine, making them platform-independent.
- Java has a very large library. Focus on learning those parts of the library that you need for your programming projects.

**Become familiar with your Java programming environment.**

- Set aside some time to become familiar with the programming environment that you will use for your class work.
- An editor is a program for entering and modifying text, such as a Java program.
- Java is case sensitive. You must be careful about distinguishing between upper- and lowercase letters.
- The Java compiler translates source code into class files that contain instructions for the Java virtual machine.
- Develop a strategy for keeping backup copies of your work before disaster strikes.

**Describe the building blocks of a simple program.**

- Classes are the fundamental building blocks of Java programs.
- Every Java application contains a class with a `main` method. When the application starts, the instructions in the `main` method are executed.
- Each class contains declarations of methods. Each method contains a sequence of instructions.
- A method is called by specifying the method and its arguments.
- A string is a sequence of characters enclosed in quotation marks.

**Classify program errors as compile-time and run-time errors.**

- A compile-time error is a violation of the programming language rules that is detected by the compiler.
- A run-time error causes a program to take an action that the programmer did not intend.

**Write pseudocode for simple algorithms.**

- An algorithm for solving a problem is a sequence of steps that is unambiguous, executable, and terminating.
- Pseudocode is an informal description of a sequence of steps for solving a problem.

**STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER**

`java.io.PrintStream`  
    `print`  
    `println`

`java.lang.System`  
    `out`

**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

- ■ **R1.1** Explain the difference between using a computer program and programming a computer.
- ■ **R1.2** Which parts of a computer can store program code? Which can store user data?
- ■ **R1.3** Which parts of a computer serve to give information to the user? Which parts take user input?
- ■ **R1.4** A toaster is a single-function device, but a computer can be programmed to carry out different tasks. Is your cell phone a single-function device, or is it a programmable computer? (Your answer will depend on your cell phone model.)
- ■ **R1.5** Explain two benefits of using Java over machine code.
- ■ **R1.6** On your own computer or on a lab computer, find the exact location (folder or directory name) of
  - a. The sample file `HelloPrinter.java`, which you wrote with the editor
  - b. The Java program launcher `java.exe` or `java`
  - c. The library file `rt.jar` that contains the run-time library
- ■ **R1.7** What does this program print?

```
public class Test
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("39 + 3");
        System.out.println(39 + 3);
    }
}
```

- R1.8** What does this program print? Pay close attention to spaces.

```
public class Test
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.print("Hello");
        System.out.println("World");
    }
}
```

- R1.9** What is the compile-time error in this program?

```
public class Test
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        System.out.println("Hello", "World!");
    }
}
```

- R1.10** Write three versions of the `HelloPrinter.java` program that have different compile-time errors. Write a version that has a run-time error.

- R1.11** How do you discover syntax errors? How do you discover logic errors?

- R1.12** Write an algorithm to settle the following question: A bank account starts out with \$10,000. Interest is compounded monthly at 6 percent per year (0.5 percent per month). Every month, \$500 is withdrawn to meet college expenses. After how many years is the account depleted?

- R1.13** Consider the question in Exercise R1.12. Suppose the numbers (\$10,000, 6 percent, \$500) were user selectable. Are there values for which the algorithm you developed would not terminate? If so, change the algorithm to make sure it always terminates.

- R1.14** In order to estimate the cost of painting a house, a painter needs to know the surface area of the exterior. Develop an algorithm for computing that value. Your inputs are the width, length, and height of the house, the number of windows and doors, and their dimensions. (Assume the windows and doors have a uniform size.)

- R1.15** In How To 1.1, you made assumptions about the price of gas and annual usage to compare cars. Ideally, you would like to know which car is the better deal without making these assumptions. Why can't a computer program solve that problem?

- R1.16** Suppose you put your younger brother in charge of backing up your work. Write a set of detailed instructions for carrying out his task. Explain how often he should do it, and what files he needs to copy from which folder to which location. Explain how he should verify that the backup was carried out correctly.

- R1.17** Write pseudocode for an algorithm that describes how to prepare Sunday breakfast in your household.

- R1.18** The ancient Babylonians had an algorithm for determining the square root of a number  $a$ . Start with an initial guess of  $a / 2$ . Then find the average of your guess  $g$  and  $a / g$ . That's your next guess. Repeat until two consecutive guesses are close enough. Write pseudocode for this algorithm.

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E1.1** Write a program that prints a greeting of your choice, perhaps in a language other than English.
- **E1.2** Write a program that prints the sum of the first ten positive integers,  $1 + 2 + \dots + 10$ .
- **E1.3** Write a program that prints the product of the first ten positive integers,  $1 \times 2 \times \dots \times 10$ . (Use \* to indicate multiplication in Java.)
- **E1.4** Write a program that prints the balance of an account after the first, second, and third year. The account has an initial balance of \$1,000 and earns 5 percent interest per year.
- **E1.5** Write a program that displays your name inside a box on the screen, like this:

Dave

Do your best to approximate lines with characters such as | - +.

- **E1.6** Write a program that prints your name in large letters, such as

```
*   *   **   ****   ***   *   *
*   *   *   *   *   *   *   *   *
*****   *   *   ****   ***   *   *
*   *   *****   *   *   *   *   *
*   *   *   *   *   *   *   *
```

- **E1.7** Write a program that prints a face similar to (but different from) the following:

```
/////
+-----+
(| o o |)
| ^ |
| '-' |
+----+
```

- **E1.8** Write a program that prints an imitation of a Piet Mondrian painting. (Search the Internet if you are not familiar with his paintings.) Use character sequences such as @@ or :: to indicate different colors, and use - and | to form lines.

- **E1.9** Write a program that prints a house that looks exactly like the following:

```
+
+
+
+---+
| .-. |
| || |
+---+
```

- **E1.10** Write a program that prints an animal speaking a greeting, similar to (but different from) the following:

```
( ^ ) / ----
( _ ) < Hello \ '
| | | < Junior |
| | | \ Coder! /
( _ ) -----
```

- **E1.11** Write a program that prints three items, such as the names of your three best friends or favorite movies, on three separate lines.
- **E1.12** Write a program that prints a poem of your choice. If you don't have a favorite poem, search the Internet for "Emily Dickinson" or "e e cummings".
- **E1.13** Write a program that prints the United States flag, using \* and = characters.
- **E1.14** Type in and run the following program:

```
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;

public class DialogViewer
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Hello, World!");
    }
}
```

Then modify the program to show the message "Hello, *your name!*".

- **E1.15** Type in and run the following program:

```
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;

public class DialogViewer
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String name = JOptionPane.showInputDialog("What is your name?");
        System.out.println(name);
    }
}
```

Then modify the program to print "Hello, *name!*", displaying the name that the user typed in.

- **E1.16** Modify the program from Exercise E1.15 so that the dialog continues with the message "My name is Hal! What would you like me to do?" Discard the user's input and display a message such as

I'm sorry, Dave. I'm afraid I can't do that.

Replace Dave with the name that was provided by the user.

- **E1.17** Type in and run the following program:

```
import java.net.URL;
import javax.swing.ImageIcon;
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;

public class Test
{
    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception
    {
        URL imageLocation = new URL(
            "http://horstmann.com/java4everyone/duke.gif");
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Hello", "Title",
            JOptionPane.PLAIN_MESSAGE, new ImageIcon(imageLocation));
    }
}
```

Then modify it to show a different greeting and image.

- **Business E1.18** Write a program that prints a two-column list of your friends' birthdays. In the first column, print the names of your best friends; in the second column, print their birthdays.
- **Business E1.19** In the United States there is no federal sales tax, so every state may impose its own sales taxes. Look on the Internet for the sales tax charged in five U.S. states, then write a program that prints the tax rate for five states of your choice.

#### Sales Tax Rates

Alaska:	0%
Hawaii:	4%
. . .	

- **Business E1.20** To speak more than one language is a valuable skill in the labor market today. One of the basic skills is learning to greet people. Write a program that prints a two-column list with the greeting phrases shown in the following table; in the first column, print the phrase in English, in the second column, print the phrase in a language of your choice. If you don't speak any language other than English, use an online translator or ask a friend.

List of Phrases to Translate
Good morning.
It is a pleasure to meet you.
Please call me tomorrow.
Have a nice day!

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

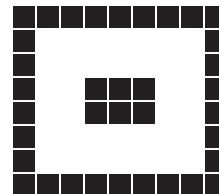
- **P1.1** You want to decide whether you should drive your car to work or take the train. You know the one-way distance from your home to your place of work, and the fuel efficiency of your car (in miles per gallon). You also know the one-way price of a train ticket. You assume the cost of gas at \$4 per gallon, and car maintenance at 5 cents per mile. Write an algorithm to decide which commute is cheaper.
- **P1.2** You want to find out which fraction of your car's use is for commuting to work, and which is for personal use. You know the one-way distance from your home to work. For a particular period, you recorded the beginning and ending mileage on the odometer and the number of work days. Write an algorithm to settle this question.
- **P1.3** The value of  $\pi$  can be computed according to the following formula:

$$\frac{\pi}{4} = 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + \frac{1}{9} - \dots$$

Write an algorithm to compute  $\pi$ . Because the formula is an infinite series and an algorithm must stop after a finite number of steps, you should stop when you have the result determined to six significant digits.

■ **Business P1.4** Imagine that you and a number of friends go to a luxury restaurant, and when you ask for the bill you want to split the amount and the tip (15 percent) between all. Write pseudocode for calculating the amount of money that everyone has to pay. Your program should print the amount of the bill, the tip, the total cost, and the amount each person has to pay. It should also print how much of what each person pays is for the bill and for the tip.

■■■ **P1.5** Write an algorithm to create a tile pattern composed of black and white tiles, with a fringe of black tiles all around and two or three black tiles in the center, equally spaced from the boundary. The inputs to your algorithm are the total number of rows and columns in the pattern.

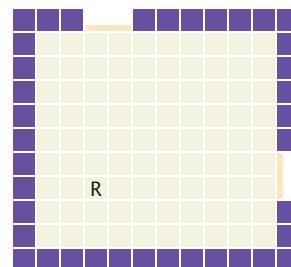


■■■ **P1.6** Suppose you received a loyalty promotion that lets you purchase one item, valued up to \$100, from an online catalog. You want to make the best of the offer. You have a list of all items for sale, some of which are less than \$100, some more. Write an algorithm to produce the item that is closest to \$100. If there is more than one such item, list them all. Remember that a computer will inspect one item at a time—it can't just glance at a list and find the best one.

■■■ **P1.7** Consider a robot that is placed in a room. The robot can do the following:

- Move forward by one unit
- Turn left or right
- Sense what is in front of it: a wall, a window, or neither

Write an algorithm that enables the robot, placed anywhere in the room, to count the number of windows. For example, in the room at right, the robot (marked as R) should find that it has two windows.



■■■ **P1.8** Consider a robot that has been placed in a maze. The right-hand rule tells you how to escape from a maze: Always have the right hand next to a wall, and eventually you will find an exit.



The robot can do the following:

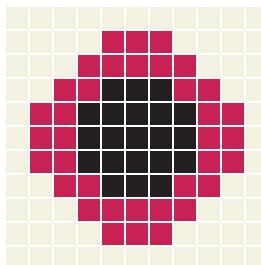
- Move forward by one unit
- Turn left or right
- Sense what is in front of it: a wall, an exit, or neither

Write an algorithm that lets the robot escape the maze. You may assume that there is an exit that is reachable by the right-hand rule. Your challenge is to deal with situations in which the path turns. The robot can't see turns. It can only see what is directly in front of it.

**■■ Science P1.9** A television manufacturer advertises that a television set has a certain size, measured diagonally. You wonder how the set will fit into your living room. Write an algorithm that yields the horizontal and vertical size of the television. Your inputs are the diagonal size and the aspect ratio (the ratio of width to height, usually 16 : 9 for television sets).



**■■■ Science P1.10** Cameras today can correct “red eye” problems caused when the photo flash makes eyes look red. Write pseudocode for an algorithm that can detect red eyes. Your input is a pattern of colors, such as



You are given the number of rows and columns. For any row or column number, you can query the color, which will be red, black, or something else. If you find that the center of the black pixels coincides with the center of the red pixels, you have found a red eye, and your output should be “yes”. Otherwise, your output is “no”.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. A program that reads the data on the CD and sends output to the speakers and the screen.
2. A CD player can do one thing—play music CDs. It cannot execute programs.
3. Nothing.
4. In secondary storage, typically a hard disk.
5. The central processing unit.
6. A smartphone has a CPU and memory, like any computer. A few smartphones have keyboards. Generally, the touchpad is used instead of a mouse. Secondary storage is in the form of a solid state drive. Of course, smartphones have a display, speaker, and microphone. The network connection uses the wireless radio to connect to a cell tower.
7. Safety and portability.
8. No one person can learn the entire library—it is too large.
9. The answer varies among systems. A typical answer might be /home/dave/cs1/hello>Hello-

Printer.java or c:\Users\Dave\Workspace\hello\HelloPrinter.java

10. You back up your files and folders.
11. Change `World` to your name (here, `Dave`):

```
System.out.println("Hello, Dave!");
```

12. 

```
System.out.println("H");
System.out.println("e");
System.out.println("l");
System.out.println("l");
System.out.println("o");
```

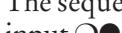
13. No. The compiler would look for an item whose name is `Hello`. You need to enclose `Hello` in quotation marks:

```
System.out.println("Hello");
```

14. The printout is `My lucky number is12`. It would be a good idea to add a space after the `is`.

15. `Hello`  
*a blank line*  
`World`

- 16.** This is a compile-time error. The compiler will complain that it does not know the meanings of the words `Hello` and `World`.
- 17.** This is a compile-time error. The compiler will complain that `System.out` does not have a method called `printline`.
- 18.** This is a run-time error. It is perfectly legal to give the name `hello` to a method, so the compiler won't complain. But when the program is run, the virtual machine will look for a `main` method and won't find one.
- 19.** It is a run-time error. After all, the program had been compiled in order for you to run it.
- 20.** When a program has compiler errors, no class file is produced, and there is nothing to run.
- 21.** 4 years:  
 0 10,000  
 1 12,000  
 2 14,400  
 3 17,280  
 4 20,736
- 22.** Is the number of minutes at most 300?  
 a. If so, the answer is  $\$29.95 \times 1.125 = \$33.70$ .  
 b. If not,
1. Compute the difference: (number of minutes) – 300.
  2. Multiply that difference by 0.45.
  3. Add \$29.95.
  4. Multiply the total by 1.125. That is the answer.
- 23.** No. The step **If it is more attractive than the "best so far"** is not executable because there is no objective way of deciding which of two photos is more attractive.
- 24.** Pick the first photo and call it "the most expensive so far". For each photo in the sequence  
**If it is more expensive than "the most expensive so far"**  
 Discard "the most expensive so far".  
 Call this photo "the most expensive so far".  
 The photo called "the most expensive so far" is the most expensive photo in the sequence.
- 25.** The first black marble that is preceded by a white one is marked in blue:  
  
 Switching the two yields  

- The next black marble to be switched is  
  
 yielding  
  
 The next steps are  
  
  
  
 Now the sequence is sorted.
- 26.** The sequence doesn't terminate. Consider the input . The first two marbles keep getting switched.

# USING OBJECTS

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To learn about variables
- To understand the concepts of classes and objects
- To be able to call methods
- To learn about arguments and return values
- To be able to browse the API documentation
- To implement test programs**
- To understand the difference between objects and object references
- To write programs that display simple shapes



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### 2.1 OBJECTS AND CLASSES 34

### 2.2 VARIABLES 36

*Syntax 2.1:* Variable Declaration 37

*Syntax 2.2:* Assignment 41

*Common Error 2.1:* Using Undeclared or Uninitialized Variables 42

*Common Error 2.2:* Confusing Variable Declarations and Assignment Statements 42

*Programming Tip 2.1:* Choose Descriptive Variable Names 43

### 2.3 CALLING METHODS 43

*Programming Tip 2.2:* Learn By Trying 47

### 2.4 CONSTRUCTING OBJECTS 48

*Syntax 2.3:* Object Construction 49

*Common Error 2.3:* Trying to Invoke a Constructor Like a Method 50

### 2.5 ACCESSOR AND MUTATOR METHODS 50

### 2.6 THE API DOCUMENTATION 52

*Syntax 2.4:* Importing a Class from a Package 54

*Programming Tip 2.3:* Don't Memorize—Use Online Help 55

### 2.7 IMPLEMENTING A TEST PROGRAM 55

*Special Topic 2.1:* Testing Classes in an Interactive Environment 56

*Worked Example 2.1:* How Many Days Have You Been Alive? 🌚

*Worked Example 2.2:* Working with Pictures 📸

### 2.8 OBJECT REFERENCES 57

*Computing & Society 2.1:* Computer Monopoly 60

### 2.9 GRAPHICAL APPLICATIONS 61

### 2.10 ELLIPSES, LINES, TEXT, AND COLOR 66



Most useful programs don't just manipulate numbers and strings. Instead, they deal with data items that are more complex and that more closely represent entities in the real world. Examples of these data items include bank accounts, employee records, and graphical shapes.

The Java language is ideally suited for designing and manipulating such data items, or *objects*. In Java, you implement *classes* that describe the behavior of these objects. In this chapter, you will learn how to manipulate objects that belong to classes that have already been implemented. This will prepare you for the next chapter, in which you will learn how to implement your own classes.

## 2.1 Objects and Classes

When you write a computer program, you put it together from certain “building blocks”. In Java, you build programs from *objects*. Each object has a particular behavior, and you can manipulate it to achieve certain effects.

As an analogy, think of a home builder who constructs a house from certain parts: doors, windows, walls, pipes, a furnace, a water heater, and so on. Each of these elements has a particular function, and they work together to fulfill a common purpose. Note that the home builder is not concerned with how to build a window or a water heater. These elements are readily available, and the builder’s job is to integrate them into the house.

Of course, computer programs are more abstract than houses, and the objects that make up a computer program aren’t as tangible as a window or a water heater. But the analogy holds well: A programmer produces a working program from elements with the desired functionality—the objects. In this chapter, you will learn the basics about using objects written by other programmers.

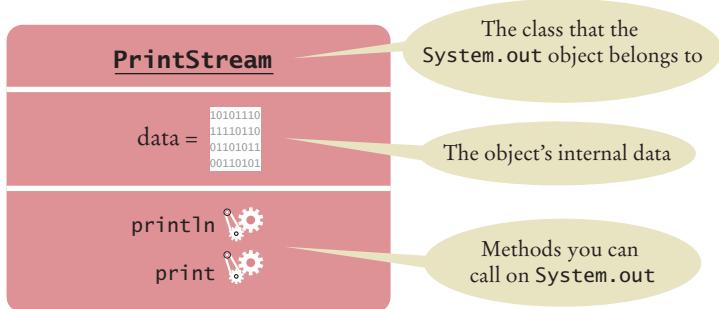


*Each part that a home builder uses, such as a furnace or a water heater, fulfills a particular function. Similarly, you build programs from objects, each of which has a particular behavior.*

### 2.1.1 Using Objects

Objects are entities in your program that you manipulate by calling methods.

An **object** is an entity that you can manipulate by calling one or more of its **methods**. A method consists of a sequence of instructions that can access the internal data of an object. When you call the method, you do not know exactly what those instructions are, or even how the object is organized internally. However, the behavior of the method is well defined, and that is what matters to us when we use it.



**Figure 1** Representation of the `System.out` Object

A method is a sequence of instructions that accesses the data of an object.

For example, you saw in Chapter 1 that `System.out` refers to an object. You manipulate it by calling the `println` method. When the `println` method is called, some activities occur inside the object, and the ultimate effect is that text appears in the console window. You don't know how that happens, and that's OK. What matters is that the method carries out the work that you requested.

Figure 1 shows a representation of the `System.out` object. The internal data is symbolized by a sequence of zeroes and ones. Think of each method (symbolized by the gears) as a piece of machinery that carries out its assigned task.

In general, think of an object as an entity that can do work for you when you call its methods. How the work is done is not important to the programmer using the object.

In the remainder of this chapter, you will see other objects and the methods that they can carry out.

*You can think of a water heater as an object that can carry out the “get hot water” method. When you call that method to enjoy a hot shower, you don’t care whether the water heater uses gas or solar power.*



## 2.1.2 Classes

In Chapter 1, you encountered two objects:

- `System.out`
- “Hello, World!”

A class describes a set of objects with the same behavior.

Each of these objects belongs to a different **class**. The `System.out` object belongs to the `PrintStream` class. The “Hello, World!” object belongs to the `String` class. Of course, there are many more `String` objects, such as “Goodbye” or “Mississippi”. They all have something in common—you can invoke the same methods on all strings. You will see some of these methods in Section 2.3.

As you will see in Chapter 11, you can construct objects of the `PrintStream` class other than `System.out`. Those objects write data to files or other destinations instead of the console. Still, all `PrintStream` objects share common behavior. You can invoke the `println` and `print` methods on any `PrintStream` object, and the printed values are sent to their destination.

Of course, the objects of the `PrintStream` class have a completely different behavior than the objects of the `String` class. You could not call `println` on a `String` object. A string wouldn't know how to send itself to a console window or file.

As you can see, different classes have different responsibilities. A string knows about the letters that it contains, but it does not know how to display them to a human or to save them to a file.



*All objects of a Window class share the same behavior.*

### SELF CHECK



1. In Java, objects are grouped into classes according to their behavior. Would a window object and a water heater object belong to the same class or to different classes? Why?
2. Some light bulbs use a glowing filament, others use a fluorescent gas. If you consider a light bulb a Java object with an “illuminate” method, would you need to know which kind of bulb it is?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R2.1, R2.2.

## 2.2 Variables

Before we continue with the main topic of this chapter—the behavior of objects—we need to go over some basic programming terminology. In the following sections, you will learn about the concepts of variables, types, and assignment.

### 2.2.1 Variable Declarations

When your program manipulates objects, you will want to store the objects and the values that their methods return, so that you can use them later. In a Java program, you use variables to store values. The following statement declares a variable named `width`:

```
int width = 20;
```



## Syntax 2.1 Variable Declaration

**Syntax**

```
typeName variableName = value;
or
typeName variableName;
```

The type specifies what can be done with values stored in this variable.

See page 39 for rules and examples of valid names.

String greeting = "Hello, Dave!";

A variable declaration ends with a semicolon.

Use a descriptive variable name.  
See page 43.

Supplying an initial value is optional, but it is usually a good idea.

A variable is a storage location with a name.

When declaring a variable, you usually specify an initial value.

When declaring a variable, you also specify the type of its values.

A **variable** is a storage location in a computer program. Each variable has a name and holds a value.

A variable is similar to a parking space in a parking garage. The parking space has an identifier (such as “J 053”), and it can hold a vehicle. A variable has a name (such as `width`), and it can hold a value (such as 20). When declaring a variable, you usually want to **initialize** it. That is, you specify the value that should be stored in the variable. Consider again this variable declaration:

```
int width = 20;
```

The variable `width` is initialized with the value 20.

Like a parking space that is restricted to a certain type of vehicle (such as a compact car, motorcycle, or electric vehicle), a variable in Java stores data of a specific type. Java supports quite a few data types: numbers, text strings, files, dates, and many others. You must specify the type whenever you declare a variable (see Syntax 2.1).

The `width` variable is an **integer**, a whole number without a fractional part. In Java, this type is called `int`.

Note that the type comes before the variable name:

```
int width = 20;
```

After you have declared and initialized a variable, you can use it. For example,

```
int width = 20;
System.out.println(width);
int area = width * width;
```

Table 1 shows several examples of variable declarations.



Each parking space is suitable for a particular type of vehicle, just as each variable holds a value of a particular type.

**Table 1** Variable Declarations in Java

Variable Name	Comment
<code>int width = 20;</code>	Declares an integer variable and initializes it with 20.
<code>int perimeter = 4 * width;</code>	The initial value need not be a fixed value. (Of course, <code>width</code> must have been previously declared.)
<code>String greeting = "Hi!";</code>	This variable has the type <code>String</code> and is initialized with the string “Hi”.
 <code>height = 30;</code>	<b>Error:</b> The type is missing. This statement is not a declaration but an assignment of a new value to an existing variable—see Section 2.2.5.
 <code>int width = "20";</code>	<b>Error:</b> You cannot initialize a number with the string “20”. (Note the quotation marks.)
<code>int width;</code>	Declares an integer variable without initializing it. This can be a cause for errors—see Common Error 2.1 on page 42.
<code>int width, height;</code>	Declares two integer variables in a single statement. In this book, we will declare each variable in a separate statement.

## 2.2.2 Types

Use the `int` type for numbers that cannot have a fractional part.

Use the `double` type for floating-point numbers.

Numbers can be combined by arithmetic operators such as `+`, `-`, and `*`.

In Java, there are several different types of numbers. You use the `int` type to denote a whole number without a fractional part. For example, suppose you count the number of cars in a parking lot. The counter must be an integer number—you cannot have a fraction of a car.

When a fractional part is required (such as in the number 22.5), we use **floating-point numbers**. The most commonly used type for floating-point numbers in Java is called `double`. Here is the declaration of a floating-point variable:

```
double milesPerGallon = 22.5;
```

You can combine numbers with the `+` and `-` operators, as in `width + 10` or `width - 1`. To multiply two numbers, use the `*` operator. For example,  $2 \times width$  is written as `2 * width`. Use the `/` operator for division, such as `width / 2`.

As in mathematics, the `*` and `/` operator bind more strongly than the `+` and `-` operators. That is, `width + height * 2` means the sum of `width` and the product `height * 2`. If you want to multiply the sum by 2, use parentheses: `(width + height) * 2`.

Not all types are number types. For example, the value “Hello” has the type `String`. You need to specify that type when you define a variable that holds a string:

```
String greeting = "Hello";
```

A type specifies the operations that can be carried out with its values.

Types are important because they indicate what you can do with a variable. For example, consider the variable `width`. Its type is `int`. Therefore, you can multiply the value that it holds with another number. But the type of `greeting` is `String`. You can’t multiply a string with another number. (You will see in Section 2.3.1 what you can do with strings.)

### 2.2.3 Names

When you declare a variable, you should pick a name that explains its purpose. For example, it is better to use a descriptive name, such as `milesPerGallon`, than a terse name, such as `mpg`.

In Java, there are a few simple rules for the names of variables, methods, and classes:

1. Names must start with a letter or the underscore (`_`) character, and the remaining characters must be letters, numbers, or underscores. (Technically, the `$` symbol is allowed as well, but you should not use it—it is intended for names that are automatically generated by tools.)
2. You cannot use other symbols such as `?` or `%`. Spaces are not permitted inside names either. You can use uppercase letters to denote word boundaries, as in `milesPerGallon`. This naming convention is called *camel case* because the uppercase letters in the middle of the name look like the humps of a camel.)
3. Names are **case sensitive**, that is, `milesPerGallon` and `milespergallon` are different names.
4. You cannot use **reserved words** such as `double` or `class` as names; these words are reserved exclusively for their special Java meanings. (See Appendix C for a listing of all reserved words in Java.)



By convention, variable names should start with a lowercase letter.

It is a convention among Java programmers that names of variables and methods start with a lowercase letter (such as `milesPerGallon`). Class names should start with an uppercase letter (such as `HelloPrinter`). That way, it is easy to tell them apart.

Table 2 shows examples of legal and illegal variable names in Java.

**Table 2** Variable Names in Java

Variable Name	Comment
<code>distance_1</code>	Names consist of letters, numbers, and the underscore character.
<code>x</code>	In mathematics, you use short variable names such as <code>x</code> or <code>y</code> . This is legal in Java, but not very common, because it can make programs harder to understand (see Programming Tip 2.1 on page 43).
 <code>CanVolume</code>	<b>Caution:</b> Names are case sensitive. This variable name is different from <code>canVolume</code> , and it violates the convention that variable names should start with a lowercase letter.
 <code>6pack</code>	<b>Error:</b> Names cannot start with a number.
 <code>can volume</code>	<b>Error:</b> Names cannot contain spaces.
 <code>double</code>	<b>Error:</b> You cannot use a reserved word as a name.
 <code>miles/gal</code>	<b>Error:</b> You cannot use symbols such as <code>/</code> in names.

## 2.2.4 Comments

As your programs get more complex, you should add **comments**, explanations for human readers of your code. For example, here is a comment that explains the value used to initialize a variable:

```
double milesPerGallon = 33.8; // The average fuel efficiency of new U.S. cars in 2011
```

This comment explains the significance of the value 33.8 to a human reader. The compiler does not process comments at all. It ignores everything from a // delimiter to the end of the line.

Use comments to add explanations for humans who read your code. The compiler ignores comments.

It is a good practice to provide comments. This helps programmers who read your code understand your intent. In addition, you will find comments helpful when you review your own programs.

You use the // delimiter for short comments. If you have a longer comment, enclose it between /\* and \*/ delimiters. The compiler ignores these delimiters and everything in between. For example,

```
/*
    In most countries, fuel efficiency is measured in liters per hundred
    kilometer. Perhaps that is more useful—it tells you how much gas you need
    to purchase to drive a given distance. Here is the conversion formula.
*/
double fuelEfficiency = 235.214583 / milesPerGallon;
```

## 2.2.5 Assignment

Use the assignment operator (=) to change the value of a variable.

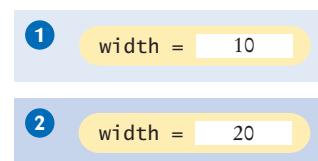
You can change the value of a variable with the assignment operator (=). For example, consider the variable declaration

```
int width = 10; ①
```

If you want to change the value of the variable, simply assign the new value:

```
width = 20; ②
```

The assignment replaces the original value of the variable (see Figure 2).



**Figure 2**  
Assigning a New Value to a Variable



It is an error to use a variable that has never had a value assigned to it. For example, the following assignment statement has an error:

```
int height;
int width = height; // ERROR—uninitialized variable height
```

The compiler will complain about an “**uninitialized variable**” when you use a variable that has never been assigned a value. (See Figure 3.)

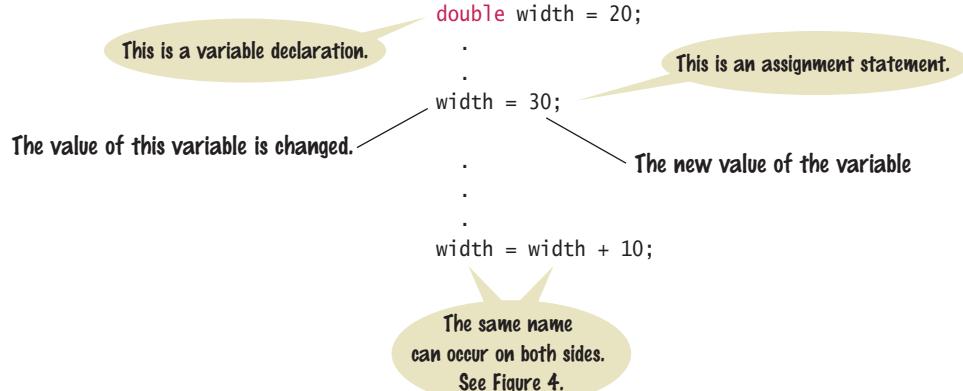
**Figure 3**  
An Uninitialized Variable

```
height = [ ]
```

No value has been assigned.

## Syntax 2.2 Assignment

**Syntax**    *variableName = value;*



All variables must be initialized before you access them.

The assignment operator = does *not* denote mathematical equality.

The remedy is to assign a value to the variable before you use it:

```
int height = 20;
int width = height; // OK
```

The right-hand side of the = symbol can be a mathematical expression. For example,

```
width = height + 10;
```

This means “compute the value of `height + 10` and store that value in the variable `width`”.

In the Java programming language, the = operator denotes an *action*, namely to replace the value of a variable. This usage differs from the mathematical usage of the = symbol as a statement about equality. For example, in Java, the following statement is entirely legal:

```
width = width + 10;
```

This means “compute the value of `width + 10` ① and store that value in the variable `width` ②” (see Figure 4).

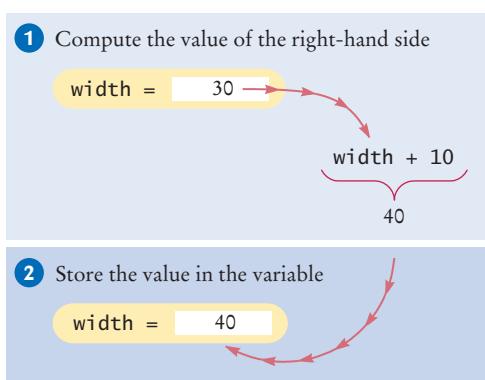
In Java, it is not a problem that the variable `width` is used on both sides of the = symbol. Of course, in mathematics, the equation  $width = width + 10$  has no solution.



### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates variables and assignments.

**Figure 4**  
Executing the Statement  
`width = width + 10`





3. What is wrong with the following variable declaration?  

```
int miles per gallon = 39.4
```
4. Declare and initialize two variables, `unitPrice` and `quantity`, to contain the unit price of a single item and the number of items purchased. Use reasonable initial values.
5. Use the variables declared in Self Check 4 to display the total purchase price.
6. What are the types of the values `0` and `"0"`?
7. Which number type would you use for storing the area of a circle?
8. Which of the following are legal identifiers?  

```
Greeting1
g
void
101dalmatians
Hello, World
<greeting>
```
9. Declare a variable to hold your name. Use camel case in the variable name.
10. Is `12 = 12` a valid expression in the Java language?
11. How do you change the value of the `greeting` variable to `"Hello, Nina!"`?
12. How would you explain assignment using the parking space analogy?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R2.3, R2.4, R2.6.

### Common Error 2.1



#### Using Undeclared or Uninitialized Variables

You must declare a variable before you use it for the first time. For example, the following sequence of statements would not be legal:

```
int perimeter = 4 * width; // ERROR: width not yet declared
int width = 20;
```

In your program, the statements are compiled in order. When the compiler reaches the first statement, it does not know that `width` will be declared in the next line, and it reports an error. The remedy is to reorder the declarations so that each variable is declared before it is used.

A related error is to leave a variable uninitialized:

```
int width;
int perimeter = 4 * width; // ERROR: width not yet initialized
```

The Java compiler will complain that you are using a variable that has not yet been given a value. The remedy is to assign a value to the variable before it is used.

### Common Error 2.2



#### Confusing Variable Declarations and Assignment Statements

Suppose your program declares a variable as follows:

```
int width = 20;
```

If you want to change the value of the variable, you use an assignment statement:

```
width = 30;
```

It is a common error to accidentally use another variable declaration:

```
int width = 30; // ERROR—starts with int and is therefore a declaration
```

But there is already a variable named `width`. The compiler will complain that you are trying to declare another variable with the same name.

### Programming Tip 2.1



### Choose Descriptive Variable Names

In algebra, variable names are usually just one letter long, such as `p` or `A`, maybe with a subscript such as `p1`. You might be tempted to save yourself a lot of typing by using short variable names in your Java programs:

```
int a = w * h;
```

Compare that statement with the following one:

```
int area = width * height;
```

The advantage is obvious. Reading `width` is much easier than reading `w` and then figuring out that it must mean “width”.

In practical programming, descriptive variable names are particularly important when programs are written by more than one person. It may be obvious to you that `w` stands for `width`, but is it obvious to the person who needs to update your code years later? For that matter, will you yourself remember what `w` means when you look at the code a month from now?

## 2.3 Calling Methods

A program performs useful work by calling methods on its objects. In this section, we examine how to supply values in a method, and how to obtain the result of the method.

### 2.3.1 The Public Interface of a Class

You use an object by calling its methods. All objects of a given class share a common set of methods. For example, the `PrintStream` class provides methods for its objects (such as `println` and `print`). Similarly, the `String` class provides methods that you can apply to `String` objects. One of them is the `length` method. The `length` method counts the number of characters in a string. You can apply that method to any object of type `String`. For example, the sequence of statements:

```
String greeting = "Hello, World!";
int numberOfCharacters = greeting.length();
```

sets `numberOfCharacters` to the length of the `String` object “Hello, World!”. After the instructions in the `length` method are executed, `numberOfCharacters` is set to 13. (The quotation marks are not part of the string, and the `length` method does not count them.)

When calling the `length` method, you do not supply any values inside the parentheses. Also note that the `length` method does not produce any visible output. It returns a value that is subsequently used in the program.

Let's look at another method of the `String` class. When you apply the `toUpperCase` method to a `String` object, the method creates another `String` object that contains the characters of the original string, with lowercase letters converted to uppercase. For example, the sequence of statements

```
String river = "Mississippi";
String bigRiver = river.toUpperCase();
sets bigRiver to the String object "MISSISSIPPI".
```

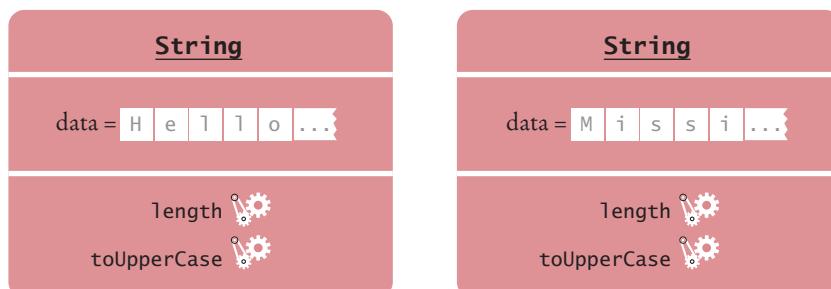
The public interface of a class specifies what you can do with its objects. The hidden implementation describes how these actions are carried out.

The String class declares many other methods besides the length and toUpperCase methods—you will learn about many of them in Chapter 4. Collectively, the methods form the **public interface** of the class, telling you what you can do with the objects of the class. A class also declares a *private implementation*, describing the data inside its objects and the instructions for its methods. Those details are hidden from the programmers who use objects and call methods.

Figure 5 shows two objects of the String class. Each object stores its own data (drawn as boxes that contain characters). Both objects support the same set of methods—the public interface that is specified by the String class.



*The controls of a car form its public interface.  
The private implementation is under the hood.*



**Figure 5** A Representation of Two String Objects

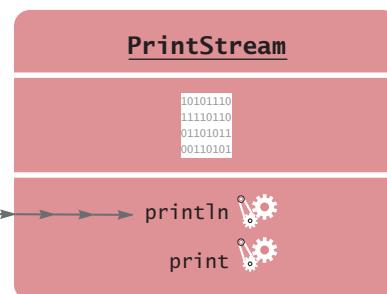
### 2.3.2 Method Arguments

An argument is a value that is supplied in a method call.

Most methods require values that give details about the work that the method needs to do. For example, when you call the `println` method, you must supply the string that should be printed. Computer scientists use the technical term **argument** for method inputs. We say that the string `greeting` is an argument of the method call

```
System.out.println(greeting);
```

Figure 6 illustrates passing the argument to the method.



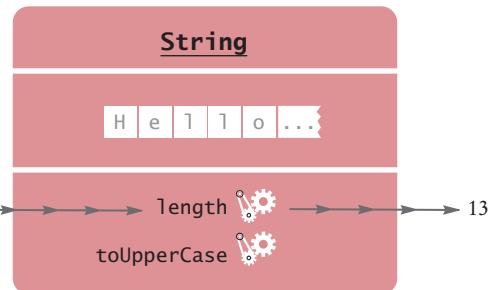
**Figure 6** Passing an Argument to the `println` Method

*At this tailor shop, the customer's measurements and the fabric are the arguments of the sew method. The return value is the finished garment.*



Some methods require multiple arguments; others don't require any arguments at all. An example of the latter is the `length` method of the `String` class (see Figure 7). All the information that the `length` method requires to do its job—namely, the character sequence of the string—is stored in the object that carries out the method.

**Figure 7**  
Invoking the `length`  
Method on a String Object



### 2.3.3 Return Values

The return value of a method is a result that the method has computed.

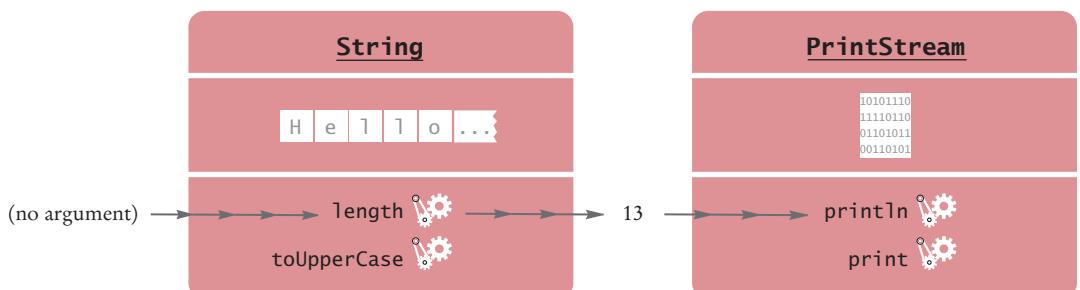
Some methods, such as the `println` method, carry out an action for you. Other methods compute and return a value. For example, the `length` method returns a value, namely the number of characters in the string. You can store the return value in a variable:

```
int numberOfCharacters = greeting.length();
```

You can also use the return value of one method as an argument of another method:

```
System.out.println(greeting.length());
```

The method call `greeting.length()` returns a value—the integer 13. The return value becomes an argument of the `println` method. Figure 8 shows the process.



**Figure 8** Passing the Result of a Method Call to Another Method



Not all methods return values. One example is the `println` method. The `println` method interacts with the operating system, causing characters to appear in a window. But it does not return a value to the code that calls it.

Let us analyze a more complex method call. Here, we will call the `replace` method of the `String` class. The `replace` method carries out a search-and-replace operation, similar to that of a word processor. For example, the call

```
river.replace("issipp", "our")
```

constructs a new string that is obtained by replacing all occurrences of "issipp" in "Mississippi" with "our". (In this situation, there was only one replacement.) The method returns the `String` object "Missouri". You can save that string in a variable:

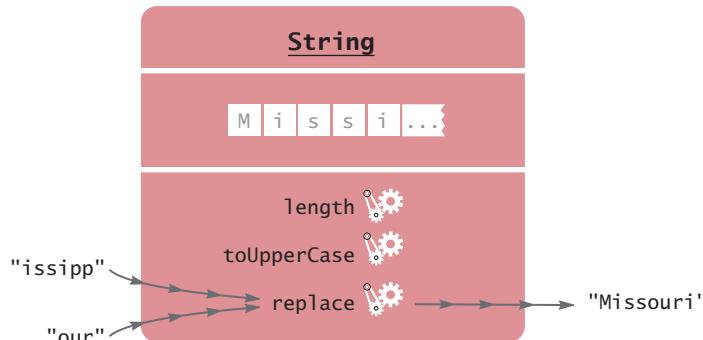
```
river = river.replace("issipp", "our");
```

Or you can pass it to another method:

```
System.out.println(river.replace("issipp", "our"));
```

As Figure 9 shows, this method call

- Is invoked on a `String` object: "Mississippi"
- Has two arguments: the strings "issipp" and "our"
- Returns a value: the string "Missouri"



**Figure 9** Calling the `replace` Method

**Table 3** Method Arguments and Return Values

Example	Comments
<code>System.out.println(greeting)</code>	<code>greeting</code> is an argument of the <code>println</code> method.
<code>greeting.replace("e", "3")</code>	The <code>replace</code> method has two arguments, in this case "e" and "3".
<code>greeting.length()</code>	The <code>length</code> method has no arguments.
<code>int n = greeting.length();</code>	The <code>length</code> method returns an integer value.
<code>System.out.println(n);</code>	The <code>println</code> method returns no value. In the API documentation, its return type is <code>void</code> .
<code>System.out.println(greeting.length());</code>	The return value of one method can become the argument of another.

### 2.3.4 Method Declarations

When a method is declared in a class, the declaration specifies the types of the arguments and the return value. For example, the `String` class declares the `length` method as

```
public int length()
```

That is, there are no arguments, and the return value has the type `int`. (For now, all the methods that we consider will be “public” methods—see Chapter 9 for more restricted methods.)

The `replace` method is declared as

```
public String replace(String target, String replacement)
```

To call the `replace` method, you supply two arguments, `target` and `replacement`, which both have type `String`. The returned value is another string.

When a method returns no value, the return type is declared with the reserved word `void`. For example, the `PrintStream` class declares the `println` method as

```
public void println(String output)
```

Occasionally, a class declares two methods with the same name and different argument types. For example, the `PrintStream` class declares a second method, also called `println`, as

```
public void println(int output)
```

That method is used to print an integer value. We say that the `println` name is **overloaded** because it refers to more than one method.

#### SELF CHECK



13. How can you compute the length of the string “Mississippi”?
14. How can you print out the uppercase version of “Hello, World!”?
15. Is it legal to call `river.println()`? Why or why not?
16. What are the arguments in the method call `river.replace("p", "s")`?
17. What is the result of the call `river.replace("p", "s")`?
18. What is the result of the call `greeting.replace("World", "Dave").length()`?
19. How is the `toUpperCase` method declared in the `String` class?

#### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R2.7, R2.8, R2.9.

#### Programming Tip 2.2



#### Learn By Trying

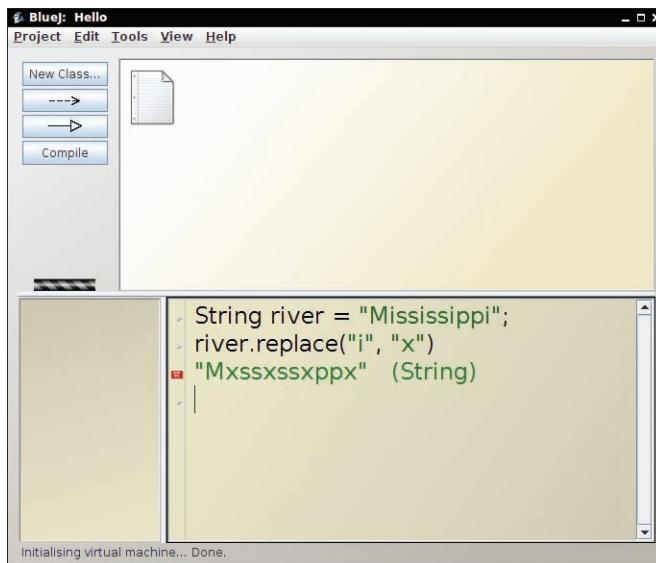
When you learn about a new method, write a small program to try it out. For example, you can go right now to your Java development environment and run this program:

```
public class ReplaceDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        String river = "Mississippi";
        System.out.println(river.replace("issipp", "our"));
    }
}
```

Then you can see with your own eyes what the `replace` method does. Also, you can run experiments. Does `replace` change every match, or only the first one? Try it out:

```
System.out.println(river.replace("i", "x"));
```

Set up your work environment to make this kind of experimentation easy and natural. Keep a file with the blank outline of a Java program around, so you can copy and paste it when needed. Alternatively, some development environments will automatically type the class and `main` method. Find out if yours does. Some environments even let you type commands into a window and show you the result right away, without having to make a `main` method to call `System.out.println` (see Figure 10).



**Figure 10** The Code Pad in BlueJ

## 2.4 Constructing Objects

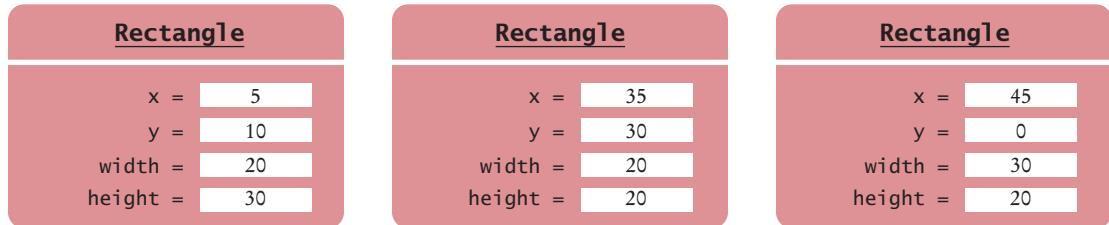
Generally, when you want to use objects in your program, you need to specify their initial properties by *constructing* them.

To learn about object construction, we need to go beyond `String` objects and the `System.out` object. Let us turn to another class in the Java library: the `Rectangle` class. Objects of type `Rectangle` describe rectangular shapes. These objects are useful for a variety of purposes. You can assemble rectangles into bar charts, and you can program simple games by moving rectangles inside a window.

Note that a `Rectangle` object isn't a rectangular shape—it's an object that contains a set of numbers. The numbers *describe* the rectangle (see Figure 11). Each rectangle is described by the *x*- and *y*-coordinates of its top-left corner, its width, and its height.



*Objects of the `Rectangle` class describe rectangular shapes.*



**Figure 11** Rectangle Objects

It is very important that you understand this distinction. In the computer, a `Rectangle` object is a block of memory that holds four numbers, for example  $x = 5$ ,  $y = 10$ ,  $width = 20$ ,  $height = 30$ . In the imagination of the programmer who uses a `Rectangle` object, the object describes a geometric figure.

Use the `new` operator, followed by a class name and arguments, to construct new objects.

To make a new rectangle, you need to specify the  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $width$ , and  $height$  values. Then *invoke the new operator*, specifying the name of the class and the argument(s) required for constructing a new object. For example, you can make a new rectangle with its top-left corner at (5, 10), width 20, and height 30 as follows:

```
new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30)
```

Here is what happens in detail:

1. The `new` operator makes a `Rectangle` object.
2. It uses the arguments (in this case, 5, 10, 20, and 30) to initialize the object's data.
3. It returns the object.

The process of creating a new object is called **construction**. The four values 5, 10, 20, and 30 are called the *construction arguments*.

The `new` expression yields an object, and you need to store the object if you want to use it later. Usually you assign the output of the `new` operator to a variable. For example,

```
Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
```

## Syntax 2.3 Object Construction

**Syntax**    `new ClassName(arguments)`

The `new` expression yields an object.

```
Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
```

Construction arguments

Usually, you save the constructed object in a variable.

```
System.out.println(new Rectangle());
```

You can also pass a constructed object to a method.

Supply the parentheses even when there are no arguments.

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates constructors.

Some classes let you construct objects in multiple ways. For example, you can also obtain a `Rectangle` object by supplying no construction arguments at all (but you must still supply the parentheses):

```
new Rectangle()
```

This expression constructs a (rather useless) rectangle with its top-left corner at the origin (0, 0), width 0, and height 0.

**SELF CHECK**

20. How do you construct a square with center (100, 100) and side length 20?
21. Initialize the variables `box` and `box2` with two rectangles that touch each other.
22. The `getWidth` method returns the width of a `Rectangle` object. What does the following statement print?  
`System.out.println(new Rectangle().getWidth());`
23. The `PrintStream` class has a constructor whose argument is the name of a file. How do you construct a `PrintStream` object with the construction argument "output.txt"?
24. Write a statement to save the object that you constructed in Self Check 23 in a variable.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R2.11, R2.14, R2.16.

**Common Error 2.3****Trying to Invoke a Constructor Like a Method**

Constructors are not methods. You can only use a constructor with the `new` operator, not to reinitialize an existing object:

```
box.Rectangle(20, 35, 20, 30); // Error—can't reinitialize object
```

The remedy is simple: Make a new object and overwrite the current one stored by `box`.

```
box = new Rectangle(20, 35, 20, 30); // OK
```

## 2.5 Accessor and Mutator Methods

An accessor method does not change the internal data of the object on which it is invoked. A mutator method changes the data.

In this section we introduce a useful terminology for the methods of a class. A method that accesses an object and returns some information about it, without changing the object, is called an **accessor method**. In contrast, a method whose purpose is to modify the internal data of an object is called a **mutator method**.

For example, the `length` method of the `String` class is an accessor method. It returns information about a string, namely its length. But it doesn't modify the string at all when counting the characters.

The `Rectangle` class has a number of accessor methods. The `getX`, `getY`, `getWidth`, and `getHeight` methods return the *x*- and *y*-coordinates of the top-left corner, the width, and the height values. For example,

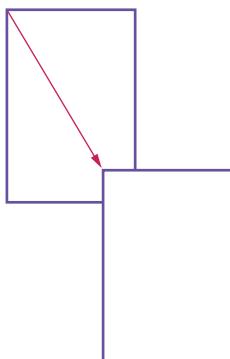
```
double width = box.getWidth();
```

Now let us consider a mutator method. Programs that manipulate rectangles frequently need to move them around, for example, to display animations. The `Rectangle` class has a method for that purpose, called `translate`. (Mathematicians use the term “translation” for a rigid motion of the plane.) This method moves a rectangle by a certain distance in the *x*- and *y*-directions. The method call,

```
box.translate(15, 25);
```

moves the rectangle by 15 units in the *x*-direction and 25 units in the *y*-direction (see Figure 12). Moving a rectangle doesn’t change its width or height, but it changes the top-left corner. Afterward, the rectangle that had its top-left corner at (5, 10) now has it at (20, 35).

This method is a mutator because it modifies the object on which the method is invoked.



**Figure 12** Using the `translate` Method to Move a Rectangle

### SELF CHECK



**25.** What does this sequence of statements print?

```
Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
System.out.println("Before: " + box.getX());
box.translate(25, 40);
System.out.println("After: " + box.getX());
```

**26.** What does this sequence of statements print?

```
Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
System.out.println("Before: " + box.getWidth());
box.translate(25, 40);
System.out.println("After: " + box.getWidth());
```

**27.** What does this sequence of statements print?

```
String greeting = "Hello";
System.out.println(greeting.toUpperCase());
System.out.println(greeting);
```

**28.** Is the `toUpperCase` method of the `String` class an accessor or a mutator?

**29.** Which call to `translate` is needed to move the rectangle declared by `Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30)` so that its top-left corner is the origin (0, 0)?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R2.17, E2.6, E2.8.



### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates accessors and mutators.

## 2.6 The API Documentation

The API (Application Programming Interface) documentation lists the classes and methods of the Java library.

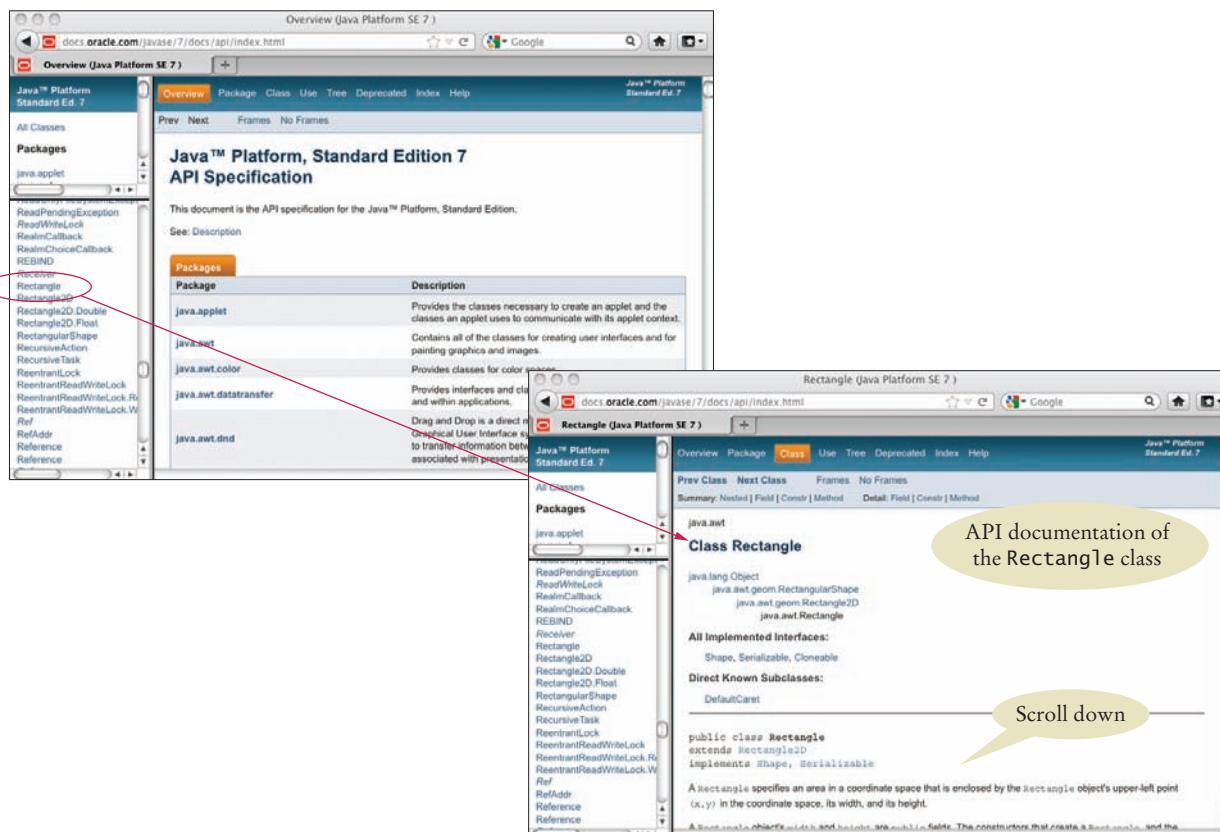
The classes and methods of the Java library are listed in the **API documentation**. The API is the “application programming interface”. A programmer who uses the Java classes to put together a computer program (or *application*) is an *application programmer*. That’s you. In contrast, the programmers who designed and implemented the library classes such as `PrintStream` and `Rectangle` are *system programmers*.

You can find the API documentation on the Web. Point your web browser to <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/api/index.html>. An abbreviated version of the API documentation is provided in Appendix D that may be easier to use at first, but you should eventually move on to the real thing.

### 2.6.1 Browsing the API Documentation

The API documentation documents all classes in the Java library—there are thousands of them (see Figure 13, top). Most of the classes are rather specialized, and only a few are of interest to the beginning programmer.

Locate the `Rectangle` link in the left pane, preferably by using the search function of your browser. Click on the link, and the right pane shows all the features of the `Rectangle` class (see Figure 13, bottom).



**Figure 13** The API Documentation of the Standard Java Library

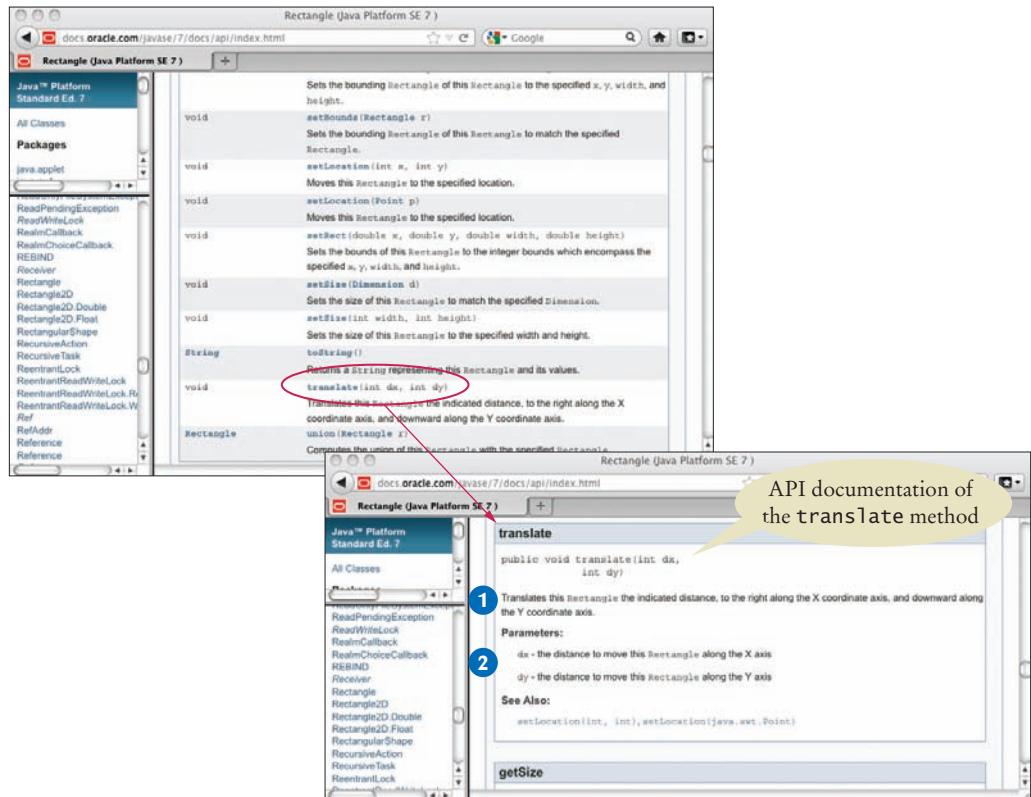


Figure 14 The Method Summary for the Rectangle Class

The API documentation for each class starts out with a section that describes the purpose of the class. Then come summary tables for the constructors and methods (see Figure 14, top). Click on a method's link to get a detailed description (see Figure 14, bottom).

The detailed description of a method shows

- The action that the method carries out. ①
- The types and names of the parameter variables that receive the arguments when the method is called. ②
- The value that it returns (or the reserved word `void` if the method doesn't return any value).

As you can see, the `Rectangle` class has quite a few methods. While occasionally intimidating for the beginning programmer, this is a strength of the standard library. If you ever need to do a computation involving rectangles, chances are that there is a method that does all the work for you.

For example, suppose you want to change the width or height of a rectangle. If you browse through the API documentation, you will find a `setSize` method with the description "Sets the size of this Rectangle to the specified width and height." The method has two arguments, described as

- `width` - the new width for this `Rectangle`
- `height` - the new height for this `Rectangle`

We can use this information to change the `box` object so that it is a square of side length 40. The name of the method is `setSize`, and we supply two arguments: the new width and height:

```
box.setSize(40, 40);
```

## 2.6.2 Packages

The API documentation contains another important piece of information about each class. The classes in the standard library are organized into **packages**. A package is a collection of classes with a related purpose. The `Rectangle` class belongs to the package `java.awt` (where `awt` is an abbreviation for “Abstract Windowing Toolkit”), which contains many classes for drawing windows and graphical shapes. You can see the package name `java.awt` in Figure 13, just above the class name.

Java classes are grouped into packages. Use the `import` statement to use classes that are declared in other packages.

To use the `Rectangle` class from the `java.awt` package, you must *import* the package. Simply place the following line at the top of your program:

```
import java.awt.Rectangle;
```

Why don’t you have to import the `System` and `String` classes? Because the `System` and `String` classes are in the `java.lang` package, and all classes from this package are automatically imported, so you never need to import them yourself.

## Syntax 2.4 Importing a Class from a Package

*Syntax*    `import packageName.ClassName;`

Package name      Class name

Import statements  
must be at the top of  
the source file.

```
import java.awt.Rectangle;
```

You can look up the package name  
in the API documentation.

### SELF CHECK



30. Look at the API documentation of the `String` class. Which method would you use to obtain the string "hello, world!" from the string "Hello, World!"?
31. In the API documentation of the `String` class, look at the description of the `trim` method. What is the result of applying `trim` to the string " Hello, Space ! "? (Note the spaces in the string.)
32. Look into the API documentation of the `Rectangle` class. What is the difference between the methods `void translate(int x, int y)` and `void setLocation(int x, int y)`?
33. The `Random` class is declared in the `java.util` package. What do you need to do in order to use that class in your program?

- 34.** In which package is the `BigInteger` class located? Look it up in the API documentation.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R2.18, E2.4, E2.11.

#### Programming Tip 2.3



#### Don't Memorize—Use Online Help

The Java library has thousands of classes and methods. It is neither necessary nor useful trying to memorize them. Instead, you should become familiar with using the API documentation. Because you will need to use the API documentation all the time, it is best to download and install it onto your computer, particularly if your computer is not always connected to the Internet. You can download the documentation from <http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html>.

## 2.7 Implementing a Test Program

A test program verifies that methods behave as expected.

In this section, we discuss the steps that are necessary to implement a test program. The purpose of a test program is to verify that one or more methods have been implemented correctly. A test program calls methods and checks that they return the expected results. Writing test programs is a very important skill.

In this section, we will develop a simple program that tests a method in the `Rectangle` class using these steps:

1. Provide a tester class.
2. Supply a `main` method.
3. Inside the `main` method, construct one or more objects.
4. Apply methods to the objects.
5. Display the results of the method calls.
6. Display the values that you expect to get.

Our sample test program tests the behavior of the `translate` method. Here are the key steps (which have been placed inside the `main` method of the `MoveTester` class).

```
Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);

// Move the rectangle
box.translate(15, 25);

// Print information about the moved rectangle
System.out.print("x: ");
System.out.println(box.getX());
System.out.println("Expected: 20");
```

We print the value that is returned by the `getX` method, and then we print a message that describes the value we expect to see.

This is a very important step. You want to spend some time thinking about the expected result before you run a test program. This thought process will help you understand how your program should behave, and it can help you track down errors at an early stage. Finding and fixing errors early is a very effective strategy that can save you a great deal of time.

Determining the expected result in advance is an important part of testing.

In our case, the rectangle has been constructed with the top-left corner at (5, 10). The  $x$ -direction is moved by 15, so we expect an  $x$ -value of  $5 + 15 = 20$  after the move. Here is the program that tests the moving of a rectangle:

### section\_7/MoveTester.java

```

1 import java.awt.Rectangle;
2
3 public class MoveTester
4 {
5     public static void main(String[] args)
6     {
7         Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
8
9         // Move the rectangle
10        box.translate(15, 25);
11
12        // Print information about the moved rectangle
13        System.out.print("x: ");
14        System.out.println(box.getX());
15        System.out.println("Expected: 20");
16
17        System.out.print("y: ");
18        System.out.println(box.getY());
19        System.out.println("Expected: 35");
20    }
21 }
```

### Program Run

```

x: 20
Expected: 20
y: 35
Expected: 35
```

#### SELF CHECK



35. Suppose we had called `box.translate(25, 15)` instead of `box.translate(15, 25)`. What are the expected outputs?
36. Why doesn't the `MoveTester` program need to print the width and height of the rectangle?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E2.1, E2.7, E2.13.

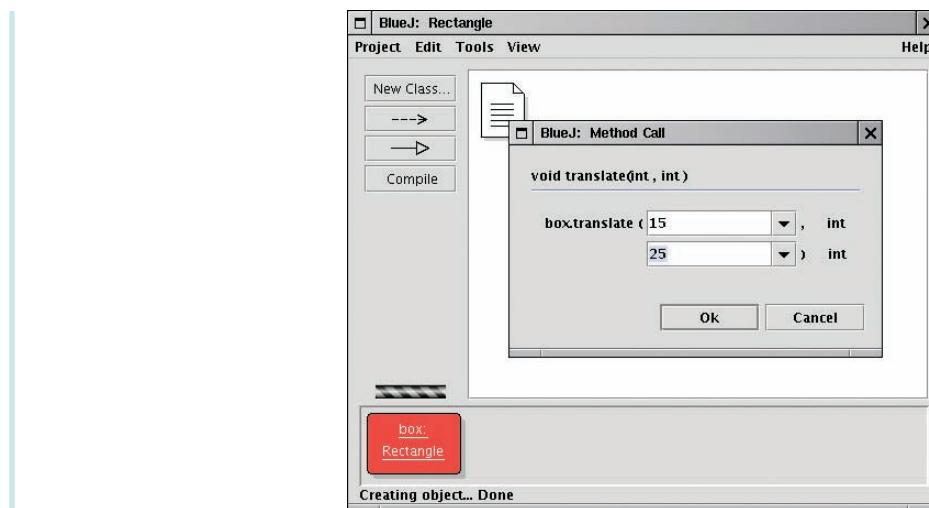
#### Special Topic 2.1



### Testing Classes in an Interactive Environment

Some development environments are specifically designed to help students explore objects without having to provide tester classes. These environments can be very helpful for gaining insight into the behavior of objects, and for promoting object-oriented thinking. The BlueJ environment (shown in the figure) displays objects as blobs on a workbench.

You can construct new objects, put them on the workbench, invoke methods, and see the return values, all without writing a line of code. You can download BlueJ at no charge from [www.bluej.org](http://www.bluej.org). Another excellent environment for interactively exploring objects is Dr. Java at [drjava.sourceforge.net](http://drjava.sourceforge.net).



Testing a Method Call in BlueJ

**WORKED EXAMPLE 2.1****How Many Days Have You Been Alive?**

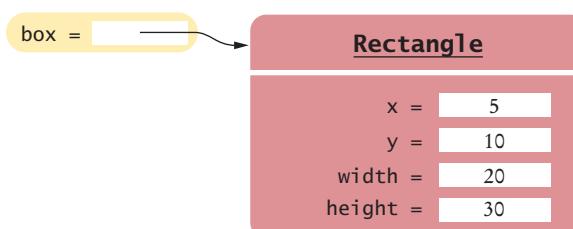
Explore the API of a class `Day` that represents a calendar day. Using that class, learn to write a program that computes how many days have elapsed since the day you were born. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 2.1.

**WORKED EXAMPLE 2.2****Working with Pictures**

Learn how to use the API of a `Picture` class to edit photos. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 2.2.

## 2.8 Object References

In Java, an object variable (that is, a variable whose type is a class) does not actually hold an object. It merely holds the *memory location* of an object. The object itself is stored elsewhere—see Figure 15.

**Figure 15** An Object Variable Containing an Object Reference

An object reference describes the location of an object.



Multiple object variables can contain references to the same object.

There is a reason for this behavior. Objects can be very large. It is more efficient to store only the memory location instead of the entire object.

We use the technical term **object reference** to denote the memory location of an object. When a variable contains the memory location of an object, we say that it *refers* to an object. For example, after the statement

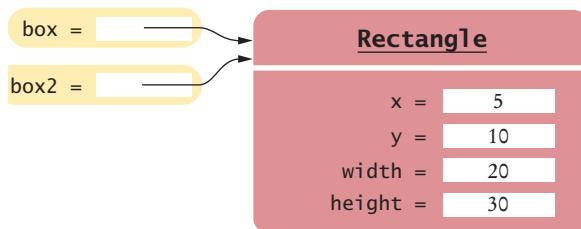
```
Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
```

the variable `box` refers to the `Rectangle` object that the `new` operator constructed. Technically speaking, the `new` operator returned a reference to the new object, and that reference is stored in the `box` variable.

It is very important that you remember that the `box` variable *does not contain* the object. It *refers* to the object. Two object variables can refer to the same object:

```
Rectangle box2 = box;
```

Now you can access the same `Rectangle` object as `box` and as `box2`, as shown in Figure 16.



**Figure 16** Two Object Variables Referring to the Same Object

In Java, numbers are not objects. Number variables actually store numbers. When you declare

```
int luckyNumber = 13;
```

then the `luckyNumber` variable holds the number 13, not a reference to the number (see Figure 17). The reason is again efficiency. Because numbers require little storage, it is more efficient to store them directly in a variable.

`luckyNumber = 13`

**Figure 17** A Number Variable Stores a Number

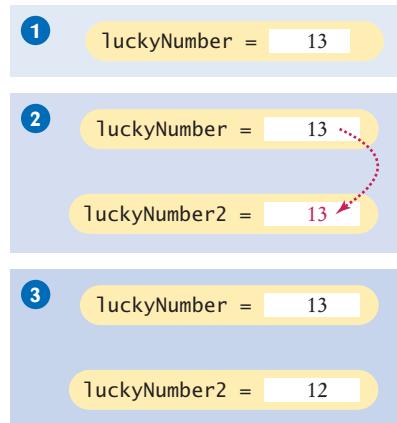
Number variables store numbers.  
Object variables store references.

You can see the difference between number variables and object variables when you make a copy of a variable. When you copy a number, the original and the copy of the number are independent values. But when you copy an object reference, both the original and the copy are references to the same object.

Consider the following code, which copies a number and then changes the copy (see Figure 18):

```
int luckyNumber = 13; ①
int luckyNumber2 = luckyNumber; ②
luckyNumber2 = 12; ③
```

Now the variable `luckyNumber` contains the value 13, and `luckyNumber2` contains 12.

**Figure 18** Copying Numbers**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**

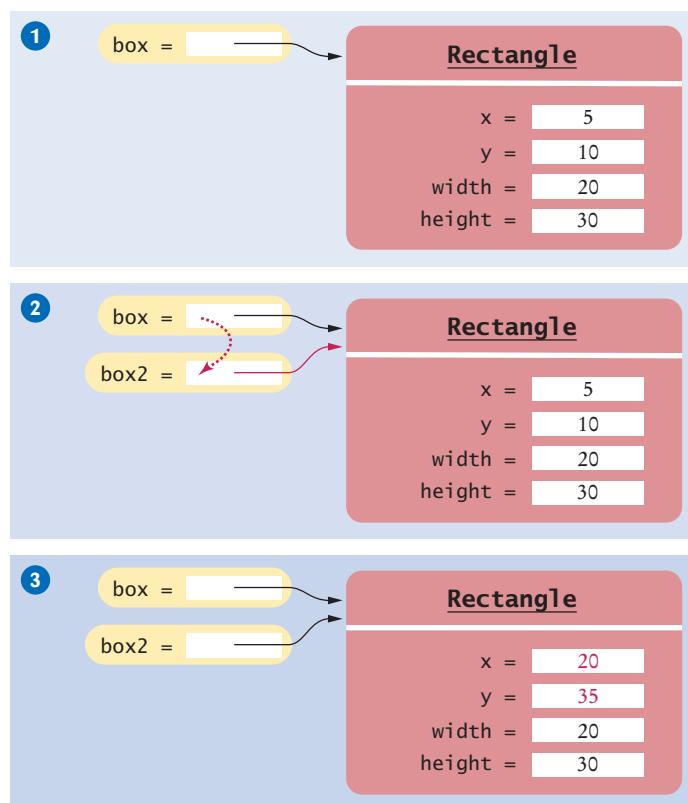
Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates the difference between copying numbers and object references.



Now consider the seemingly analogous code with `Rectangle` objects (see Figure 19).

```
Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30); ①
Rectangle box2 = box; ②
box2.translate(15, 25); ③
```

Because `box` and `box2` refer to the same rectangle after step ②, both variables refer to the moved rectangle after the call to the `translate` method.

**Figure 19** Copying Object References

You need not worry too much about the difference between objects and object references. Much of the time, you will have the correct intuition when you think of the “object box” rather than the technically more accurate “object reference stored in variable box”. The difference between objects and object references only becomes apparent when you have multiple variables that refer to the same object.

**SELF CHECK**

37. What is the effect of the assignment `String greeting2 = greeting`?
38. After calling `greeting2.toUpperCase()`, what are the contents of `greeting` and `greeting2`?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R2.15, R2.19.



## Computing & Society 2.1 Computer Monopoly

When International Business Machines Corporation (IBM), a successful manufacturer of punched-card equipment for tabulating data, first turned its attention to designing computers in the early 1950s, its planners assumed that there was a market for perhaps 50 such devices, for installation by the government, the military, and a few of the country's largest corporations. Instead, they sold about 1,500 machines of their System 650 model and went on to build and sell more powerful computers.

These computers, called mainframes, were huge. They filled rooms, which had to be climate-controlled to protect the delicate equipment. IBM was not the first company to build mainframe computers; that honor belongs to the Univac Corporation. However, IBM soon became the major player, partially because of its technical excellence and attention to customer needs and partially because it exploited its strengths and structured its products and services in a way that made it difficult for customers to mix them with those of other vendors.

As all of IBM's competitors fell on hard times, the U.S. government brought an antitrust suit against IBM in 1969. In the United States, it is legal to be a monopoly supplier, but it is not legal to use one's monopoly in one market to gain supremacy in another. IBM was accused of forcing customers to buy bundles of computers,

software, and peripherals, making it impossible for other vendors of software and peripherals to compete.

The suit went to trial in 1975 and dragged on until 1982, when it was abandoned, largely because new waves of smaller computers had made it irrelevant.

In fact, when IBM offered its first personal computers, its operating system was supplied by an outside vendor, Microsoft, which became so dominant that it too was sued by the U.S. government for abusing its monopoly position in 1998. Microsoft was accused of bundling its web browser with its operating system. At the time, Microsoft allegedly threatened hardware makers that they would not receive a Windows license if they distributed the competing Netscape browser. In 2000, the company was found guilty of antitrust violations, and the judge ordered it broken up into an operating systems unit and an applications unit. The breakup was reversed on appeal, and a settlement in 2001 was largely unsuccessful

in establishing alternatives for desktop software.

Now the computing landscape is shifting once again, toward mobile devices and cloud computing. As you observe that change, you may well see new monopolies in the making. When a software vendor needs the permission of a hardware vendor in order to place a product into an “app store”, or when a maker of a digital book reader tries to coerce publishers into a particular pricing structure, the question arises whether such conduct is illegal exploitation of a monopoly position.



A Mainframe Computer

## 2.9 Graphical Applications

The following optional sections teach you how to write *graphical applications*: applications that display drawings inside a window. The drawings are made up of shape objects: rectangles, ellipses, and lines. The shape objects provide another source of examples, and many students enjoy the visual feedback.

### 2.9.1 Frame Windows

To show a frame, construct a `JFrame` object, set its size, and make it visible.

A graphical application shows information inside a **frame**: a window with a title bar, as shown in Figure 20. In this section, you will learn how to display a frame. In Section 2.9.2, you will learn how to create a drawing inside the frame.



*A graphical application shows information inside a frame.*

To show a frame, carry out the following steps:

1. Construct an object of the `JFrame` class:

```
JFrame frame = new JFrame();
```

2. Set the size of the frame:

```
frame.setSize(300, 400);
```

This frame will be 300 pixels wide and 400 pixels tall. If you omit this step the frame will be 0 by 0 pixels, and you won't be able to see it. (Pixels are the tiny dots from which digital images are composed.)

3. If you'd like, set the title of the frame:

```
frame.setTitle("An empty frame");
```

If you omit this step, the title bar is simply left blank.

4. Set the “default close operation”:

```
frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
```

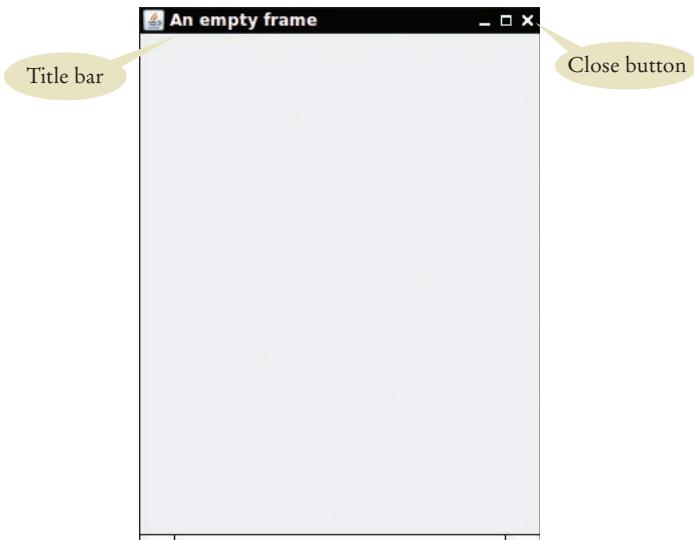
When the user closes the frame, the program automatically exits. Don't omit this step. If you do, the program keeps running even after the frame is closed.

5. Make the frame visible:

```
frame.setVisible(true);
```

The simple program below shows all of these steps. It produces the empty frame shown in Figure 20.

The `JFrame` class is a part of the `javax.swing` package. Swing is the nickname for the graphical user interface library in Java. The “`x`” in `javax` denotes the fact that Swing started out as a Java *extension* before it was added to the standard library.



**Figure 20** A Frame Window

We will go into much greater detail about Swing programming in Chapters 3, 10, and 19. For now, consider this program to be the essential plumbing that is required to show a frame.

### section\_9\_1/EmptyFrameViewer.java

```
1 import javax.swing.JFrame;
2
3 public class EmptyFrameViewer
4 {
5     public static void main(String[] args)
6     {
7         JFrame frame = new JFrame();
8         frame.setSize(300, 400);
9         frame.setTitle("An empty frame");
10        frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
11        frame.setVisible(true);
12    }
13 }
```

## 2.9.2 Drawing on a Component

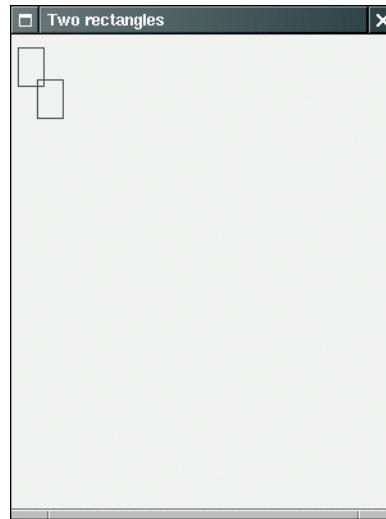
In this section, you will learn how to make shapes appear inside a frame window. The first drawing will be exceedingly modest: just two rectangles (see Figure 21). You'll soon see how to produce more interesting drawings. The purpose of this example is to show you the basic outline of a program that creates a drawing.

You cannot draw directly onto a frame. Instead, drawing happens in a **component** object. In the Swing toolkit, the **JComponent** class represents a blank component.

Because we don't want to add a blank component, we have to modify the **JComponent** class and specify how the component should be painted. The solution is to declare a new class that extends the **JComponent** class. You will learn about the process of extending classes in Chapter 9.

In order to display a drawing in a frame, declare a class that extends the **JComponent** class.

**Figure 21**  
Drawing Rectangles



For now, simply use the following code as a template:

```
public class RectangleComponent extends JComponent
{
    public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
    {
        Drawing instructions
    }
}
```

Place drawing instructions inside the `paintComponent` method. That method is called whenever the component needs to be repainted.

Use a cast to recover the `Graphics2D` object from the `Graphics` argument of the `paintComponent` method.

The `extends` reserved word indicates that our component class, `RectangleComponent`, can be used like a `JComponent`. However, the `RectangleComponent` class will be different from the plain `JComponent` class in one respect: Its `paintComponent` method will contain instructions to draw the rectangles.

When the component is shown for the first time, the `paintComponent` method is called automatically. The method is also called when the window is resized, or when it is shown again after it was hidden.

The `paintComponent` method receives an object of type `Graphics` as its argument. The `Graphics` object stores the graphics state—the current color, font, and so on—that are used for drawing operations. However, the `Graphics` class is not very useful. When programmers clamored for a more object-oriented approach to drawing graphics, the designers of Java created the `Graphics2D` class, which extends the `Graphics` class. Whenever the Swing toolkit calls the `paintComponent` method, it actually passes an object of type `Graphics2D` as the argument. Because we want to use the more sophisticated methods to draw two-dimensional graphics objects, we need to use the `Graphics2D` class. This is accomplished by using a **cast**:

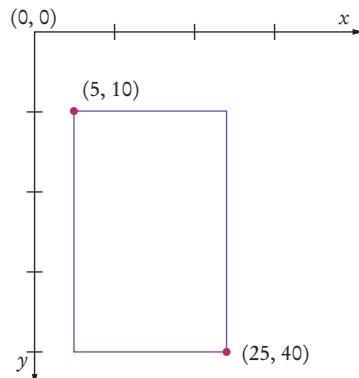
```
public class RectangleComponent extends JComponent
{
    public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
    {
        // Recover Graphics2D
        Graphics2D g2 = (Graphics2D) g;
        . .
    }
}
```

Chapter 9 has more information about casting. For now, you should simply include the cast at the top of your `paintComponent` methods.

Now you are ready to draw shapes. The `draw` method of the `Graphics2D` class can draw shapes, such as rectangles, ellipses, line segments, polygons, and arcs. Here we draw a rectangle:

```
public class RectangleComponent extends JPanel
{
    public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
    {
        . . .
        Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
        g2.draw(box);
        . . .
    }
}
```

When positioning the shapes, you need to pay attention to the coordinate system. It is different from the one used in mathematics. The origin  $(0, 0)$  is at the upper-left corner of the component, and the  $y$ -coordinate grows downward.



Following is the source code for the `RectangleComponent` class. Note that the `paintComponent` method of the `RectangleComponent` class draws two rectangles. As you can see from the `import` statements, the `Graphics` and `Graphics2D` classes are part of the `java.awt` package.

### **section\_9\_2/RectangleComponent.java**

```
1 import java.awt.Graphics;
2 import java.awt.Graphics2D;
3 import java.awt.Rectangle;
4 import javax.swing.JPanel;
5
6 /**
7  * A component that draws two rectangles.
8 */
9 public class RectangleComponent extends JPanel
{
10
11     public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
12     {
13         // Recover Graphics2D
14         Graphics2D g2 = (Graphics2D) g;
```

```

16 // Construct a rectangle and draw it
17 Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
18 g2.draw(box);
19
20 // Move rectangle 15 units to the right and 25 units down
21 box.translate(15, 25);
22
23 // Draw moved rectangle
24 g2.draw(box);
25
26 }

```

### 2.9.3 Displaying a Component in a Frame

In a graphical application, you need a frame to show the application, and you need a component for the drawing. In this section, you will see how to combine the two. Follow these steps:

1. Construct a frame object and configure it.
2. Construct an object of your component class:

```
RectangleComponent component = new RectangleComponent();
```

3. Add the component to the frame:

```
frame.add(component);
```

4. Make the frame visible.

The following listing shows the complete process.

#### **section\_9\_3/RectangleViewer.java**

```

1 import javax.swing.JFrame;
2
3 public class RectangleViewer
4 {
5     public static void main(String[] args)
6     {
7         JFrame frame = new JFrame();
8
9         frame.setSize(300, 400);
10        frame.setTitle("Two rectangles");
11        frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
12
13        RectangleComponent component = new RectangleComponent();
14        frame.add(component);
15
16        frame.setVisible(true);
17    }
18 }

```

Note that the rectangle drawing program consists of two classes:

- The `RectangleComponent` class, whose `paintComponent` method produces the drawing.
- The `RectangleViewer` class, whose `main` method constructs a frame and a `RectangleComponent`, adds the component to the frame, and makes the frame visible.



39. How do you display a square frame with a title bar that reads “Hello, World!”?
40. How can a program display two frames at once?
41. How do you modify the program to draw two squares?
42. How do you modify the program to draw one rectangle and one square?
43. What happens if you call `g.draw(box)` instead of `g2.draw(box)`?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R2.20, R2.24, E2.17.

## 2.10 Ellipses, Lines, Text, and Color

In Section 2.9 you learned how to write a program that draws rectangles. In the following sections, you will learn how to draw other shapes: ellipses and lines. With these graphical elements, you can draw quite a few interesting pictures.

### 2.10.1 Ellipses and Circles

To draw an ellipse, you specify its bounding box (see Figure 22) in the same way that you would specify a rectangle, namely by the  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates of the top-left corner and the width and height of the box.

However, there is no simple `Ellipse2D` class that you can use. Instead, you must use one of the two classes `Ellipse2D.Float` and `Ellipse2D.Double`, depending on whether you want to store the ellipse coordinates as single- or double-precision floating-point values. Because the latter are more convenient to use in Java, we will always use the `Ellipse2D.Double` class.

Here is how you construct an ellipse:

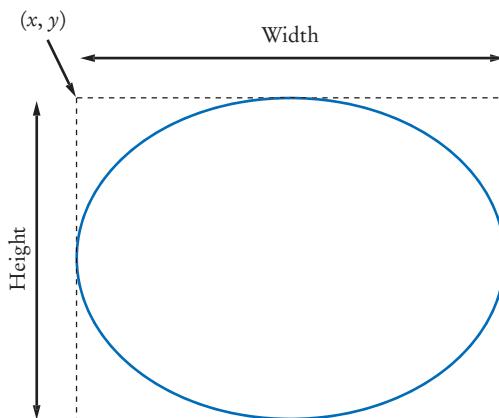
```
Ellipse2D.Double ellipse = new Ellipse2D.Double(x, y, width, height);
```

The class name `Ellipse2D.Double` looks different from the class names that you have encountered up to now. It consists of two class names `Ellipse2D` and `Double` separated



You can make simple drawings out of lines, rectangles, and circles.

The `Ellipse2D.Double` and `Line2D.Double` classes describe graphical shapes.



**Figure 22** An Ellipse and Its Bounding Box

by a period (.). This indicates that `Ellipse2D.Double` is a so-called **inner class** inside `Ellipse2D`. When constructing and using ellipses, you don't actually need to worry about the fact that `Ellipse2D.Double` is an inner class—just think of it as a class with a long name. However, in the `import` statement at the top of your program, you must be careful that you import only the outer class:

```
import java.awt.geom.Ellipse2D;
```

Drawing an ellipse is easy: Use exactly the same draw method of the `Graphics2D` class that you used for drawing rectangles.

```
g2.draw(ellipse);
```

To draw a circle, simply set the width and height to the same values:

```
Ellipse2D.Double circle = new Ellipse2D.Double(x, y, diameter, diameter);
g2.draw(circle);
```

Notice that  $(x, y)$  is the top-left corner of the bounding box, not the center of the circle.

## 2.10.2 Lines

To draw a line, use an object of the `Line2D.Double` class. A line is constructed by specifying its two end points. You can do this in two ways. Give the  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates of both end points:

```
Line2D.Double segment = new Line2D.Double(x1, y1, x2, y2);
```

Or specify each end point as an object of the `Point2D.Double` class:

```
Point2D.Double from = new Point2D.Double(x1, y1);
Point2D.Double to = new Point2D.Double(x2, y2);
```

```
Line2D.Double segment = new Line2D.Double(from, to);
```

The second option is more object-oriented and is often more useful, particularly if the point objects can be reused elsewhere in the same drawing.

## 2.10.3 Drawing Text

The `drawString` method draws a string, starting at its basepoint.

You often want to put text inside a drawing, for example, to label some of the parts. Use the `drawString` method of the `Graphics2D` class to draw a string anywhere in a window. You must specify the string and the  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates of the basepoint of the first character in the string (see Figure 23). For example,

```
g2.drawString("Message", 50, 100);
```



**Figure 23** Basepoint and Baseline

## 2.10.4 Colors

When you first start drawing, all shapes and strings are drawn with a black pen. To change the color, you need to supply an object of type `Color`. Java uses the RGB color model. That is, you specify a color by the amounts of the primary colors—red, green, and blue—that make up the color. The amounts are given as integers between 0 (primary color not present) and 255 (maximum amount present). For example,

```
Color magenta = new Color(255, 0, 255);
```

constructs a `Color` object with maximum red, no green, and maximum blue, yielding a bright purple color called magenta.

For your convenience, a variety of colors have been declared in the `Color` class. Table 4 shows those colors and their RGB values. For example, `Color.PINK` has been declared to be the same color as `new Color(255, 175, 175)`.

To draw a shape in a different color, first set the color of the `Graphics2D` object, then call the `draw` method:

```
g2.setColor(Color.RED);
g2.draw(circle); // Draws the shape in red
```

If you want to color the inside of the shape, use the `fill` method instead of the `draw` method. For example,

```
g2.fill(circle);
```

fills the inside of the circle with the current color.

When you set a new color in the graphics context, it is used for subsequent drawing operations.

**Table 4 Predefined Colors**

Color	RGB Values
Color.BLACK	0, 0, 0
Color.BLUE	0, 0, 255
Color.CYAN	0, 255, 255
Color.GRAY	128, 128, 128
Color.DARK_GRAY	64, 64, 64
Color.LIGHT_GRAY	192, 192, 192
Color.GREEN	0, 255, 0
Color.MAGENTA	255, 0, 255
Color.ORANGE	255, 200, 0
Color.PINK	255, 175, 175
Color.RED	255, 0, 0
Color.WHITE	255, 255, 255
Color.YELLOW	255, 255, 0



**Figure 24** An Alien Face

The following program puts all these shapes to work, creating a simple drawing (see Figure 24).

### section\_10/FaceComponent.java

```
1 import java.awt.Color;
2 import java.awt.Graphics;
3 import java.awt.Graphics2D;
4 import java.awt.Rectangle;
5 import java.awt.geom.Ellipse2D;
6 import java.awt.geom.Line2D;
7 import javax.swing.JComponent;
8
9 /**
10  * A component that draws an alien face.
11 */
12 public class FaceComponent extends JComponent
13 {
14     public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
15     {
16         // Recover Graphics2D
17         Graphics2D g2 = (Graphics2D) g;
18
19         // Draw the head
20         Ellipse2D.Double head = new Ellipse2D.Double(5, 10, 100, 150);
21         g2.draw(head);
22
23         // Draw the eyes
24         g2.setColor(Color.GREEN);
25         Rectangle eye = new Rectangle(25, 70, 15, 15);
26         g2.fill(eye);
27         eye.translate(50, 0);
28         g2.fill(eye);
29
30         // Draw the mouth
31         Line2D.Double mouth = new Line2D.Double(30, 110, 80, 110);
32         g2.setColor(Color.RED);
33         g2.draw(mouth);
34
35         // Draw the greeting
36         g2.setColor(Color.BLUE);
37         g2.drawString("Hello, World!", 5, 175);
38     }
39 }
```

**section\_10/FaceViewer.java**

```

1 import javax.swing.JFrame;
2
3 public class FaceViewer
4 {
5     public static void main(String[] args)
6     {
7         JFrame frame = new JFrame();
8         frame.setSize(150, 250);
9         frame.setTitle("An Alien Face");
10        frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
11
12        FaceComponent component = new FaceComponent();
13        frame.add(component);
14
15        frame.setVisible(true);
16    }
17}

```

**SELF CHECK**

44. Give instructions to draw a circle with center (100, 100) and radius 25.
45. Give instructions to draw a letter "V" by drawing two line segments.
46. Give instructions to draw a string consisting of the letter "V".
47. What are the RGB color values of `Color.BLUE`?
48. How do you draw a yellow square on a red background?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R2.25, E2.18, E2.19.

**CHAPTER SUMMARY****Identify objects, methods, and classes.**

- Objects are entities in your program that you manipulate by calling methods.
- A method is a sequence of instructions that accesses the data of an object.
- A class describes a set of objects with the same behavior.

**Write variable declarations and assignments.**

- A variable is a storage location with a name.
- When declaring a variable, you usually specify an initial value.
- When declaring a variable, you also specify the type of its values.
- Use the `int` type for numbers that cannot have a fractional part.
- Use the `double` type for floating-point numbers.
- Numbers can be combined by arithmetic operators such as `+`, `-`, and `*`.
- By convention, variable names should start with a lowercase letter.
- Use comments to add explanations for humans who read your code. The compiler ignores comments.



- Use the assignment operator (=) to change the value of a variable.
- All variables must be initialized before you access them.
- The assignment operator = does *not* denote mathematical equality.

### **Recognize arguments and return values of methods.**

- The public interface of a class specifies what you can do with its objects. The hidden implementation describes how these actions are carried out.
- An argument is a value that is supplied in a method call.
- The return value of a method is a result that the method has computed.



### **Use constructors to construct new objects.**



- Use the new operator, followed by a class name and arguments, to construct new objects.

### **Classify methods as accessor and mutator methods.**

- An accessor method does not change the internal data of the object on which it is invoked. A mutator method changes the data.

### **Use the API documentation for finding method descriptions and packages.**

- The API (Application Programming Interface) documentation lists the classes and methods of the Java library.
- Java classes are grouped into packages. Use the import statement to use classes that are declared in other packages.

### **Write programs that test the behavior of methods.**

- A test program verifies that methods behave as expected.
- Determining the expected result in advance is an important part of testing.

### **Describe how multiple object references can refer to the same object.**



- An object reference describes the location of an object.
- Multiple object variables can contain references to the same object.
- Number variables store numbers. Object variables store references.

### **Write programs that display frame windows.**

- To show a frame, construct a JFrame object, set its size, and make it visible.
- In order to display a drawing in a frame, declare a class that extends the JPanel class.



- Place drawing instructions inside the `paintComponent` method. That method is called whenever the component needs to be repainted.
- Use a cast to recover the `Graphics2D` object from the `Graphics` argument of the `paintComponent` method.

### Use the Java API for drawing simple figures.



- The `Ellipse2D.Double` and `Line2D.Double` classes describe graphical shapes.
- The `drawString` method draws a string, starting at its basepoint.
- When you set a new color in the graphics context, it is used for subsequent drawing operations.

### STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER

<code>java.awt.Color</code>	<code>java.awt.Rectangle</code>
<code>java.awt.Component</code>	<code>getX</code>
<code>getHeight</code>	<code>getY</code>
<code>getWidth</code>	<code>getHeight</code>
<code>setSize</code>	<code>getWidth</code>
<code>setVisible</code>	<code>setSize</code>
<code>java.awt.Frame</code>	<code>translate</code>
<code>setTitle</code>	<code>java.lang.String</code>
<code>java.awt.geom.Ellipse2D.Double</code>	<code>length</code>
<code>java.awt.geom.Line2D.Double</code>	<code>replace</code>
<code>java.awt.geom.Point2D.Double</code>	<code>toLowerCase</code>
<code>java.awt.Graphics</code>	<code>toUpperCase</code>
<code>setColor</code>	<code>javax.swing.JComponent</code>
<code>java.awt.Graphics2D</code>	<code>paintComponent</code>
<code>draw</code>	<code>javax.swing.JFrame</code>
<code>drawString</code>	<code>setDefaultCloseOperation</code>
<code>fill</code>	

### REVIEW QUESTIONS

- **R2.1** Explain the difference between an object and a class.
- **R2.2** What is the *public interface* of a class? How does it differ from the *implementation* of a class?
- **R2.3** Declare and initialize variables for holding the price and the description of an article that is available for sale.
- **R2.4** What is the value of `mystery` after this sequence of statements?

```
int mystery = 1;
mystery = 1 - 2 * mystery;
mystery = mystery + 1;
```

- **R2.5** What is wrong with the following sequence of statements?

```
int mystery = 1;
mystery = mystery + 1;
int mystery = 1 - 2 * mystery;
```

- R2.6 Explain the difference between the = symbol in Java and in mathematics.
- R2.7 Give an example of a method that has an argument of type int. Give an example of a method that has a return value of type int. Repeat for the type String.
- R2.8 Write Java statements that initialize a string message with "Hello" and then change it to "HELLO". Use the toUpperCase method.
- R2.9 Write Java statements that initialize a string message with "Hello" and then change it to "hello". Use the replace method.
- R2.10 Explain the difference between an object and an object variable.
- R2.11 Give the Java code for constructing an *object* of class Rectangle, and for declaring an *object variable* of class Rectangle.
- R2.12 Give Java code for objects with the following descriptions:
  - a. A rectangle with center (100, 100) and all side lengths equal to 50
  - b. A string with the contents "Hello, Dave"

Create objects, not object variables.
- R2.13 Repeat Exercise R2.12, but now declare object variables that are initialized with the required objects.
- R2.14 Write a Java statement to initialize a variable square with a rectangle object whose top left corner is (10, 20) and whose sides all have length 40. Then write a statement that replaces square with a rectangle of the same size and top left corner (20, 20).
- R2.15 Write Java statements that initialize two variables square1 and square2 to refer to the same square with center (20, 20) and side length 40.
- R2.16 Find the errors in the following statements:
  - a. Rectangle r = (5, 10, 15, 20);
  - b. double width = Rectangle(5, 10, 15, 20).getWidth();
  - c. Rectangle r;  
r.translate(15, 25);
  - d. r = new Rectangle();  
r.translate("far, far away!");
- R2.17 Name two accessor methods and two mutator methods of the Rectangle class.
- R2.18 Consult the API documentation to find methods for
  - Concatenating two strings, that is, making a string consisting of the first string, followed by the second string.
  - Removing leading and trailing white space of a string.
  - Converting a rectangle to a string.
  - Computing the smallest rectangle that contains two given rectangles.
  - Returning a random floating-point number.

For each method, list the class in which it is defined, the return type, the method name, and the types of the arguments.
- R2.19 Explain the difference between an object and an object reference.
- Graphics R2.20 What is the difference between a console application and a graphical application?

- **Graphics R2.21** Who calls the `paintComponent` method of a component? When does the call to the `paintComponent` method occur?
- **Graphics R2.22** Why does the argument of the `paintComponent` method have type `Graphics` and not `Graphics2D`?
- **Graphics R2.23** What is the purpose of a graphics context?
- **Graphics R2.24** Why are separate viewer and component classes used for graphical programs?
- **Graphics R2.25** How do you specify a text color?

### PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **Testing E2.1** Write an `AreaTester` program that constructs a `Rectangle` object and then computes and prints its area. Use the `getWidth` and `getHeight` methods. Also print the expected answer.
- **Testing E2.2** Write a `PerimeterTester` program that constructs a `Rectangle` object and then computes and prints its perimeter. Use the `getWidth` and `getHeight` methods. Also print the expected answer.
- E2.3** Write a program that constructs a rectangle with area 42 and a rectangle with perimeter 42. Print the widths and heights of both rectangles.
- **Testing E2.4** Look into the API documentation of the `Rectangle` class and locate the method
 

```
void add(int newx, int newy)
```

 Read through the method documentation. Then determine the result of the following statements:
 

```
Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
box.add(0, 0);
```

 Write a program `AddTester` that prints the expected and actual location, width, and height of `box` after the call to `add`.
- **Testing E2.5** Write a program `ReplaceTester` that encodes a string by replacing all letters "i" with "!" and all letters "s" with "\$". Use the `replace` method. Demonstrate that you can correctly encode the string "Mississippi". Print both the actual and expected result.
- **E2.6** Write a program `HollePrinter` that switches the letters "e" and "o" in a string. Use the `replace` method repeatedly. Demonstrate that the string "Hello, World!" turns into "Holle, Werld!"
- **Testing E2.7** The `StringBuilder` class has a method for reversing a string. In a `ReverseTester` class, construct a `StringBuilder` from a given string (such as "desserts"), call the `reverse` method followed by the `toString` method, and print the result. Also print the expected value.
- **E2.8** In the Java library, a color is specified by its red, green, and blue components between 0 and 255 (see Table 4 on page 68). Write a program `BrighterDemo` that constructs a `Color` object with red, green, and blue values of 50, 100, and 150. Then apply the `brighter` method of the `Color` class and print the red, green, and blue values of the resulting color. (You won't actually see the color—see Exercise E2.9 on how to display the color.)



- Graphics E2.9** Repeat Exercise E2.8, but place your code into the following class. Then the color will be displayed.

```

import java.awt.Color;
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class BrighterDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        JFrame frame = new JFrame();
        frame.setSize(200, 200);
        Color myColor = ...;
        frame.getContentPane().setBackground(myColor);
        frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
        frame.setVisible(true);
    }
}

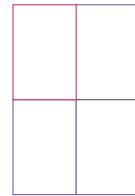
```

- E2.10** Repeat Exercise E2.8, but apply the darker method of the `Color` class twice to the object `Color.RED`. Call your class `DarkerDemo`.
- E2.11** The `Random` class implements a *random number generator*, which produces sequences of numbers that appear to be random. To generate random integers, you construct an object of the `Random` class, and then apply the `nextInt` method. For example, the call `generator.nextInt(6)` gives you a random number between 0 and 5. Write a program `DieSimulator` that uses the `Random` class to simulate the cast of a die, printing a random number between 1 and 6 every time that the program is run.
- E2.12** Write a program `RandomPrice` that prints a random price between \$10.00 and \$19.95 every time the program is run.
- Testing E2.13** Look at the API of the `Point` class and find out how to construct a `Point` object. In a `PointTester` program, construct two points with coordinates  $(3, 4)$  and  $(-3, -4)$ . Find the distance between them, using the `distance` method. Print the distance, as well as the expected value. (Draw a sketch on graph paper to find the value you will expect.)
- E2.14** Using the `Day` class of Worked Example 2.1, write a `DayTester` program that constructs a `Day` object representing today, adds ten days to it, and then computes the difference between that day and today. Print the difference and the expected value.
- E2.15** Using the `Picture` class of Worked Example 2.2, write a `HalfSizePicture` program that loads a picture and shows it at half the original size, centered in the window.
- E2.16** Using the `Picture` class of Worked Example 2.2, write a `DoubleSizePicture` program that loads a picture, doubles its size, and shows the center of the picture in the window.
- Graphics E2.17** Write a graphics program that draws two squares, both with the same center. Provide a class `TwoSquareViewer` and a class `TwoSquareComponent`.
- Graphics E2.18** Write a program that draws two solid squares: one in pink and one in purple. Use a standard color for one of them and a custom color for the other. Provide a class `TwoSquareViewer` and a class `TwoSquareComponent`.
- Graphics E2.19** Write a graphics program that draws your name in red, contained inside a blue rectangle. Provide a class `NameViewer` and a class `NameComponent`.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

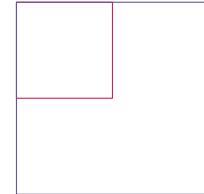
- P2.1** Write a program called `FourRectanglePrinter` that constructs a `Rectangle` object, prints its location by calling `System.out.println(box)`, and then translates and prints it three more times, so that, if the rectangles were drawn, they would form one large rectangle, as shown at right.

Your program will not produce a drawing. It will simply print the locations of the four rectangles.



- P2.2** Write a `GrowSquarePrinter` program that constructs a `Rectangle` object `square` representing a square with top-left corner (100, 100) and side length 50, prints its location by calling `System.out.println(square)`, applies the `translate` and `grow` methods, and calls `System.out.println(square)` again. The calls to `translate` and `grow` should modify the square so that it has twice the size and the same top-left corner as the original. If the squares were drawn, they would look like the figure at right.

Your program will not produce a drawing. It will simply print the locations of `square` before and after calling the mutator methods.



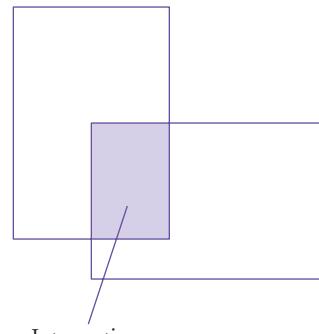
Look up the description of the `grow` method in the API documentation.

- P2.3** The `intersection` method computes the *intersection* of two rectangles—that is, the rectangle that would be formed by two overlapping rectangles if they were drawn, as shown at right.

You call this method as follows:

```
Rectangle r3 = r1.intersection(r2);
```

Write a program `IntersectionPrinter` that constructs two rectangle objects, prints them as described in Exercise P2.1, and then prints the rectangle object that describes the intersection. Then the program should print the result of the `intersection` method when the rectangles do not overlap. Add a comment to your program that explains how you can tell whether the resulting rectangle is empty.



- Graphics P2.4** In this exercise, you will explore a simple way of visualizing a `Rectangle` object. The `setBounds` method of the `JFrame` class moves a frame window to a given rectangle. Complete the following program to visually show the `translate` method of the `Rectangle` class:

```
import java.awt.Rectangle;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;

public class TranslateDemo
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        // Construct a frame and show it
        JFrame frame = new JFrame();
        frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
```

```

frame.setVisible(true);

// Your work goes here:
// Construct a rectangle and set the frame bounds

JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(frame, "Click OK to continue");

// Your work goes here:
// Move the rectangle and set the frame bounds again
}
}

```

- P2.5** Write a program `LotteryPrinter` that picks a combination in a lottery. In this lottery, players can choose 6 numbers (possibly repeated) between 1 and 49. Construct an object of the `Random` class and invoke an appropriate method to generate each number. (In a real lottery, repetitions aren't allowed, but we haven't yet discussed the programming constructs that would be required to deal with that problem.) Your program should print out a sentence such as "Play this combination—it'll make you rich!", followed by a lottery combination.



- P2.6** Using the `Day` class of Worked Example 1, write a program that generates a `Day` object representing February 28 of this year, and three more such objects that represent February 28 of the next three years. Advance each object by one day, and print each object. Also print the expected values:

```

2012-02-29
Expected: 2012-02-29
2013-03-01
Expected: 2013-03-01
...

```

- P2.7** The `GregorianCalendar` class describes a point in time, as measured by the Gregorian calendar, the standard calendar that is commonly used throughout the world today. You construct a `GregorianCalendar` object from a year, month, and day of the month, like this:

```

GregorianCalendar cal = new GregorianCalendar(); // Today's date
GregorianCalendar eckertsBirthday = new GregorianCalendar(1919,
    Calendar.APRIL, 9);

```

Use the values `Calendar.JANUARY` . . . `Calendar.DECEMBER` to specify the month.

The `add` method can be used to add a number of days to a `GregorianCalendar` object:

```
cal.add(Calendar.DAY_OF_MONTH, 10); // Now cal is ten days from today
```

This is a mutator method—it changes the `cal` object.

The `get` method can be used to query a given `GregorianCalendar` object:

```

int dayOfMonth = cal.get(Calendar.DAY_OF_MONTH);
int month = cal.get(Calendar.MONTH);
int year = cal.get(Calendar.YEAR);
int weekday = cal.get(Calendar.DAY_OF_WEEK);
// 1 is Sunday, 2 is Monday, . . . , 7 is Saturday

```

Your task is to write a program that prints:

- The date and weekday that is 100 days from today.
- The weekday of your birthday.
- The date that is 10,000 days from your birthday.

Use the birthday of a computer scientist if you don't want to reveal your own birthday.

*Hint:* The GregorianCalendar class is complex, and it is a really good idea to write a few test programs to explore the API before tackling the whole problem. Start with a program that constructs today's date, adds ten days, and prints out the day of the month and the weekday.

**■■■ Testing P2.8** Write a program LineDistanceTester that constructs a line joining the points (100, 100) and (200, 200), then constructs points (100, 200), (150, 150), and (250, 50). Print the distance from the line to each of the three points, using the ptSegDist method of the Line2D class. Also print the expected values. (Draw a sketch on graph paper to find what values you expect.)

**■■ Graphics P2.9** Repeat Exercise P2.8, but now write a graphical application that shows the line and the points. Draw each point as a tiny circle. Use the drawString method to draw each distance next to the point, using calls

```
g2.drawString("Distance: " + distance, p.getX(), p.getY());
```

**■■ Graphics P2.10** Write a graphics program that draws 12 strings, one each for the 12 standard colors (except Color.WHITE), each in its own color. Provide a class ColorNameViewer and a class ColorNameComponent.

**■■ Graphics P2.11** Write a program to plot the face at right. Provide a class FaceViewer and a class FaceComponent.



**■■ Graphics P2.12** Write a graphical program that draws a traffic light.

**■■ Graphics P2.13** Run the following program:

```
import java.awt.Color;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JLabel;

public class FrameViewer
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        JFrame frame = new JFrame();
        frame.setSize(200, 200);
        JLabel label = new JLabel("Hello, World!");
        label.setOpaque(true);
        label.setBackground(Color.PINK);
        frame.add(label);
        frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
        frame.setVisible(true);
    }
}
```

Modify the program as follows:

- Double the frame size.
- Change the greeting to “Hello, *your name!*”.
- Change the background color to pale green (see Exercise E2.9).
- For extra credit, add an image of yourself. (*Hint:* Construct an `ImageIcon`.)

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

- 1.** Objects with the same behavior belong to the same class. A window lets in light while protecting a room from the outside wind and heat or cold. A water heater has completely different behavior. It heats water. They belong to different classes.
- 2.** When one calls a method, one is not concerned with how it does its job. As long as a light bulb illuminates a room, it doesn’t matter to the occupant how the photons are produced.
- 3.** There are three errors:
  - You cannot have spaces in variable names.
  - The variable type should be `double` because it holds a fractional value.
  - There is a semicolon missing at the end of the statement.
- 4.** `double unitPrice = 1.95;`  
`int quantity = 2;`
- 5.** `System.out.print("Total price: ");`  
`System.out.println(unitPrice * quantity);`
- 6.** `int` and `String`
- 7.** `double`
- 8.** Only the first two are legal identifiers.
- 9.** `String myName = "John Q. Public";`
- 10.** No, the left-hand side of the `=` operator must be a variable.
- 11.** `greeting = "Hello, Nina!";`  
 Note that  
`String greeting = "Hello, Nina!";`  
 is not the right answer—that statement declares a new variable.
- 12.** Assignment would occur when one car is replaced by another in the parking space.
- 13.** `river.length()` or `"Mississippi".length()`
- 14.** `System.out.println(greeting.toUpperCase());`  
 or  
`System.out.println(`  
 `"Hello, World!".toUpperCase());`
- 15.** It is not legal. The variable `river` has type `String`. The `println` method is not a method of the `String` class.
- 16.** The arguments are the strings “`p`” and “`s`”.
- 17.** `"Missississi"`
- 18.** 12
- 19.** As `public String toUpperCase()`, with no argument and return type `String`.
- 20.** `new Rectangle(90, 90, 20, 20)`
- 21.** `Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);`  
`Rectangle box2 = new Rectangle(25, 10, 20, 30);`
- 22.** 0
- 23.** `new PrintStream("output.txt");`
- 24.** `PrintStream out = new PrintStream("output.txt");`
- 25.** Before: 5  
 After: 30
- 26.** Before: 20  
 After: 20  
 Moving the rectangle does not affect its width or height. You can change the width and height with the `setSize` method.
- 27.** HELLO  
 hello  
 Note that calling `toUpperCase` doesn’t modify the string.
- 28.** An accessor—it doesn’t modify the original string but returns a new string with uppercase letters.
- 29.** `box.translate(-5, -10)`, provided the method is called immediately after storing the new rectangle into `box`.

- 30.** `toLowerCase`
- 31.** "Hello, Space !"—only the leading and trailing spaces are trimmed.
- 32.** The arguments of the `translate` method tell how far to move the rectangle in the *x*- and *y*-directions. The arguments of the `setLocation` method indicate the new *x*- and *y*-values for the top-left corner.  
For example, `box.move(1, 1)` moves the box one pixel down and to the right. `box.setLocation(1, 1)` moves box to the top-left corner of the screen.
- 33.** Add the statement `import java.util.Random;` at the top of your program.
- 34.** In the `java.math` package.
- 35.** `x: 30, y: 25`
- 36.** Because the `translate` method doesn't modify the shape of the rectangle.
- 37.** Now `greeting` and `greeting2` both refer to the same `String` object.
- 38.** Both variables still refer to the same string, and the string has not been modified. Recall that the `toUpperCase` method constructs a new string that contains uppercase characters, leaving the original string unchanged.
- 39.** Modify the `EmptyFrameViewer` program as follows:
- ```
frame.setSize(300, 300);
frame.setTitle("Hello, World!");
```
- 40.** Construct two `JFrame` objects, set each of their sizes, and call `setVisible(true)` on each of them.
- 41.** Change line 17 of `RectangleComponent` to  
`Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 20);`
- 42.** Replace the call to `box.translate(15, 25)` with  
`box = new Rectangle(20, 35, 20, 20);`
- 43.** The compiler complains that `g` doesn't have a `draw` method.
- 44.** `g2.draw(new Ellipse2D.Double(75, 75, 50, 50));`
- 45.** `Line2D.Double segment1
 = new Line2D.Double(0, 0, 10, 30);
g2.draw(segment1);
Line2D.Double segment2
 = new Line2D.Double(10, 30, 20, 0);
g2.draw(segment2);`
- 46.** `g2.drawString("V", 0, 30);`
- 47.** `0, 0, 255`
- 48.** First fill a big red square, then fill a small yellow square inside:  
`g2.setColor(Color.RED);
g2.fill(new Rectangle(0, 0, 200, 200));
g2.setColor(Color.YELLOW);
g2.fill(new Rectangle(50, 50, 100, 100));`

# IMPLEMENTING CLASSES

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To become familiar with the process of implementing classes
- To be able to implement and test simple methods
- To understand the purpose and use of constructors
- To understand how to access instance variables and local variables
- To be able to write javadoc comments
- To implement classes for drawing graphical shapes

## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### 3.1 INSTANCE VARIABLES AND ENCAPSULATION 82

*Syntax 3.1:* Instance Variable Declaration 83

### 3.2 SPECIFYING THE PUBLIC INTERFACE OF A CLASS 86

*Syntax 3.2:* Class Declaration 89

*Common Error 3.1:* Declaring a Constructor as void 92

*Programming Tip 3.1:* The javadoc Utility 92

### 3.3 PROVIDING THE CLASS IMPLEMENTATION 93

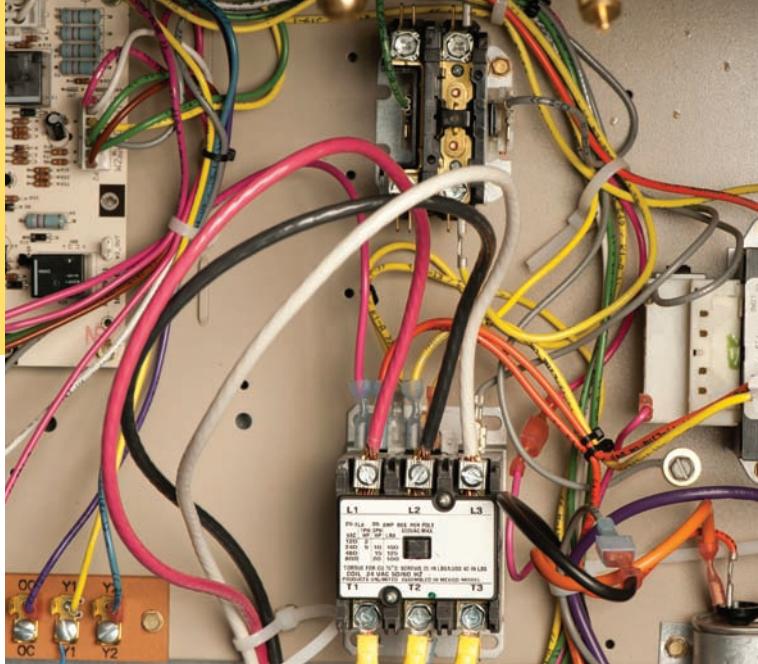
*Common Error 3.2:* Ignoring Parameter Variables 98

*How To 3.1:* Implementing a Class 98

*Worked Example 3.1:* Making a Simple Menu 

### 3.4 UNIT TESTING 102

*Computing & Society 3.1:* Electronic Voting Machines 104



### 3.5 PROBLEM SOLVING: TRACING OBJECTS 105

### 3.6 LOCAL VARIABLES 107

*Common Error 3.3:* Duplicating Instance Variables in Local Variables 108

*Common Error 3.4:* Providing Unnecessary Instance Variables 108

*Common Error 3.5:* Forgetting to Initialize Object References in a Constructor 109

### 3.7 THE THIS REFERENCE 109

*Special Topic 3.1:* Calling One Constructor from Another 112

### 3.8 SHAPE CLASSES 112

*How To 3.2:* Drawing Graphical Shapes 116



In this chapter, you will learn how to implement your own classes. You will start with a given design that specifies the public interface of the class—that is, the methods through which programmers can manipulate the objects of the class. Then you will learn the steps to completing the class—creating the internal “workings” like the inside of an air conditioner shown here. You need to implement the methods, which entails finding a data representation for the objects and supplying the instructions for each method. You need to document your efforts so that other programmers can understand and use your creation. And you need to provide a tester to validate that your class works correctly.

## 3.1 Instance Variables and Encapsulation

In Chapter 2, you learned how to use objects from existing classes. In this chapter, you will start implementing your own classes. We begin with a very simple example that shows you how objects store their data, and how methods access the data of an object. Our first example is a class that models a *tally counter*, a mechanical device that is used to count people—for example, to find out how many people attend a concert or board a bus (see Figure 1).



**Figure 1** A Tally Counter

### 3.1.1 Instance Variables

Whenever the operator clicks the button of a tally counter, the counter value advances by one. We model this operation with a `click` method of a `Counter` class. A physical counter has a display to show the current value. In our simulation, we use a `getValue` method to get the current value. For example,

```
Counter tally = new Counter();
tally.click();
tally.click();
int result = tally.getValue(); // Sets result to 2
```

When implementing the `Counter` class, you need to determine the data that each counter object contains. In this simple example, that is very straightforward. Each counter needs a variable that keeps track of the number of simulated button clicks.

An object stores its data in **instance variables**. An *instance* of a class is an object of the class. Thus, an instance variable is a storage location that is present in each object of the class.

You specify instance variables in the class declaration:

```
public class Counter
{
    private int value;
}
```

An object's instance variables store the data required for executing its methods.

## Syntax 3.1 Instance Variable Declaration

```
Syntax    public class ClassName
{            private typeName variableName;
    ...
}
```

Instance variables should always be private.

```
public class Counter
{            private int value;
    ...
}
```

Each object of this class has a separate copy of this instance variable.

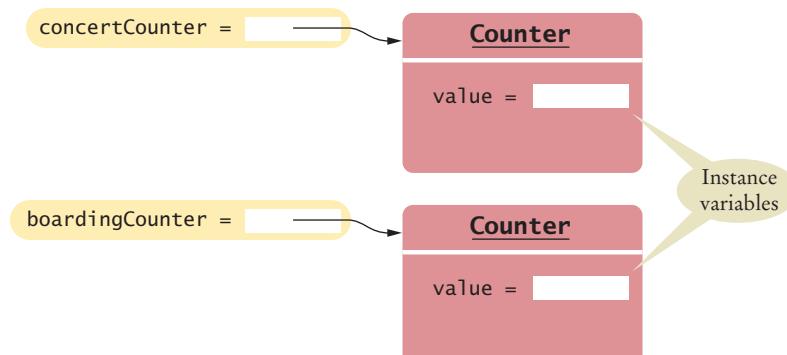
Type of the variable

An instance variable declaration consists of the following parts:

- An **access specifier** (**private**)
- The **type** of the instance variable (such as **int**)
- The name of the instance variable (such as **value**)

Each object of a class has its own set of instance variables.

Each object of a class has its own set of instance variables. For example, if `concertCounter` and `boardingCounter` are two objects of the `Counter` class, then each object has its own `value` variable (see Figure 2). As you will see in Section 3.3, the instance variable `value` is set to 0 when a `Counter` object is constructed.



**Figure 2**  
Instance Variables



These clocks have common behavior, but each of them has a different state. Similarly, objects of a class can have their instance variables set to different values.

### 3.1.2 The Methods of the Counter Class

In this section, we will look at the implementation of the methods of the Counter class.

The `click` method advances the counter value by 1. You have seen the method header syntax in Chapter 2. Now, focus on the body of the method inside the braces.

```
public void click()
{
    value = value + 1;
}
```

Note how the `click` method accesses the instance variable `value`. *Which* instance variable? The one belonging to the object on which the method is invoked. For example, consider the call

```
concertCounter.click();
```

This call advances the `value` variable of the `concertCounter` object.

The `getValue` method returns the current value:

```
public int getValue()
{
    return value;
}
```

The `return` statement is a special statement that terminates the method call and returns a result (the `return value`) to the method's caller.

Instance variables are generally declared with the access specifier `private`. That specifier means that they can be accessed only by the methods of the *same class*, not by any other method. For example, the `value` variable can be accessed by the `click` and `getValue` methods of the `Counter` class but not by a method of another class. Those other methods need to use the `Counter` class methods if they want to manipulate a counter's internal data.

Private instance variables can only be accessed by methods of the same class.

### 3.1.3 Encapsulation

In the preceding section, you learned that you should hide instance variables by making them private. Why would a programmer want to hide something?

The strategy of information hiding is not unique to computer programming—it is used in many engineering disciplines. Consider the thermostat that you find in your home. It is a device that allows a user to set temperature preferences and that controls the furnace and the air conditioner. If you ask your contractor what is inside the thermostat, you will likely get a shrug.

The thermostat is a *black box*, something that magically does its thing. A contractor would never open the control module—it contains electronic parts that can only be serviced at the factory. In general, engineers use the term “black box” to describe any device whose inner workings are hidden. Note that a black box is not totally mysterious. Its interface with the outside world is well-defined. For example, the contractor understands how the thermostat must be connected with the furnace and air conditioner.

The process of hiding implementation details while publishing an interface is called **encapsulation**. In Java, the `class` construct provides encapsulation. The public methods of a class are the interface through which the private implementation is manipulated.

Encapsulation is the process of hiding implementation details and providing methods for data access.

Why do contractors use prefabricated components such as thermostats and furnaces? These “black boxes” greatly simplify the work of the contractor. In ancient times, builders had to know how to construct furnaces from brick and mortar, and how to produce some rudimentary temperature controls. Nowadays, a contractor just makes a trip to the hardware store, without needing to know what goes on inside the components.

Similarly, a programmer using a class is not burdened by unnecessary detail, as you know from your own experience. In Chapter 2, you used classes for strings, streams, and windows without worrying how these classes are implemented.



*A thermostat functions as a “black box” whose inner workings are hidden.*

Encapsulation allows a programmer to use a class without having to know its implementation.

Information hiding makes it simpler for the implementor of a class to locate errors and change implementations.



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a demonstration of the Counter class.

Encapsulation also helps with diagnosing errors. A large program may consist of hundreds of classes and thousands of methods, but if there is an error with the internal data of an object, you only need to look at the methods of one class. Finally, encapsulation makes it possible to change the implementation of a class without having to tell the programmers who use the class.

In Chapter 2, you learned to be an object user. You saw how to obtain objects, how to manipulate them, and how to assemble them into a program. In that chapter, you treated objects as black boxes. Your role was roughly analogous to the contractor who installs a new thermostat.

In this chapter, you will move on to implementing classes. In these sections, your role is analogous to the hardware manufacturer who puts together a thermostat from buttons, sensors, and other electronic parts. You will learn the necessary Java programming techniques that enable your objects to carry out the desired behavior.

#### section\_1/Counter.java

```

1  /**
2   * This class models a tally counter.
3  */
4  public class Counter
5  {
6      private int value;
7
8      /**
9       * Gets the current value of this counter.
10      @return the current value
11     */
12     public int getValue()
13     {
14         return value;
15     }
16
17     /**
18      * Advances the value of this counter by 1.
19     */
20     public void click()
21     {
22         value = value + 1;
23     }

```

```

25     /**
26      Resets the value of this counter to 0.
27 */
28 public void reset()
29 {
30     value = 0;
31 }
32

```

**SELF CHECK**

- Supply the body of a method `public void unclick()` that undoes an unwanted button click.
- Suppose you use a class `Clock` with private instance variables `hours` and `minutes`. How can you access these variables in your program?
- Consider the `Counter` class. A counter's value starts at 0 and is advanced by the `click` method, so it should never be negative. Suppose you found a negative `value` variable during testing. Where would you look for the error?
- In Chapters 1 and 2, you used `System.out` as a black box to cause output to appear on the screen. Who designed and implemented `System.out`?
- Suppose you are working in a company that produces personal finance software. You are asked to design and implement a class for representing bank accounts. Who will be the users of your class?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R3.1, R3.3, E3.1.

## 3.2 Specifying the Public Interface of a Class

In the following sections, we will discuss the process of specifying the public interface of a class. Imagine that you are a member of a team that works on banking software. A fundamental concept in banking is a *bank account*. Your task is to design a `BankAccount` class that can be used by other programmers to manipulate bank accounts. What methods should you provide? What information should you give the programmers who use this class? You will want to settle these questions before you implement the class.

### 3.2.1 Specifying Methods

In order to implement a class, you first need to know which methods are required.

You need to know exactly what operations of a bank account need to be implemented. Some operations are essential (such as taking deposits), whereas others are not important (such as giving a gift to a customer who opens a bank account). Deciding which operations are essential is not always an easy task. We will revisit that issue in Chapters 8 and 12. For now, we will assume that a competent designer has decided that the following are considered the essential operations of a bank account:

- Deposit money
- Withdraw money
- Get the current balance

In Java, you call a method when you want to apply an operation to an object. To figure out the exact specification of the method calls, imagine how a programmer would carry out the bank account operations. We'll assume that the variable `harrysChecking` contains a reference to an object of type `BankAccount`. We want to support method calls such as the following:

```
harrysChecking.deposit(2240.59);
harrysChecking.withdraw(500);
double currentBalance = harrysChecking.getBalance();
```

The first two methods are mutators. They modify the balance of the bank account and don't return a value. The third method is an accessor. It returns a value that you store in a variable or pass to a method.

From the sample calls, we decide the `BankAccount` class should declare three methods:

- `public void deposit(double amount)`
- `public void withdraw(double amount)`
- `public double getBalance()`

Recall from Chapter 2 that `double` denotes the double-precision floating-point type, and `void` indicates that a method does not return a value.

Here we only give the method *headers*. When you declare a method, you also need to provide the method **body**, which consists of statements that are executed when the method is called.

```
public void deposit(double amount)
{
    method body—implementation filled in later
}
```

We will supply the method bodies in Section 3.3.

Note that the methods have been declared as `public`, indicating that all other methods in a program can call them. Occasionally, it can be useful to have `private` methods. They can only be called from other methods of the same class.

Some people like to fill in the bodies so that they compile, like this:

```
public double getBalance()
{
    // TODO: fill in implementation
    return 0;
}
```

That is a good idea if you compose your specification in your development environment—you won't get warnings about incorrect code.

### 3.2.2 Specifying Constructors

Constructors set the initial data for objects.

As you know from Chapter 2, constructors are used to initialize objects. In Java, a **constructor** is very similar to a method, with two important differences:

- The name of the constructor is always the same as the name of the class (e.g., `BankAccount`).
- Constructors have no return type (not even `void`).

We want to be able to construct bank accounts that initially have a zero balance, as well as accounts that have a given initial balance.

The constructor name is always the same as the class name.

For this purpose, we specify two constructors:

- `public BankAccount()`
- `public BankAccount(double initialBalance)`

They are used as follows:

```
BankAccount harrysChecking = new BankAccount();
BankAccount mom'sSavings = new BankAccount(5000);
```

Don't worry about the fact that there are two constructors with the same name—*all* constructors of a class have the same name, that is, the name of the class. The compiler can tell them apart because they take different arguments. The first constructor takes no arguments at all. Such a constructor is called a **no-argument constructor**. The second constructor takes an argument of type `double`.

Just like a method, a constructor also has a body—a sequence of statements that is executed when a new object is constructed.

```
public BankAccount()
{
    constructor body—implementation filled in later
}
```

The statements in the constructor body will set the instance variables of the object that is being constructed—see Section 3.3.

When declaring a class, you place all constructor and method declarations inside, like this:

```
public class BankAccount
{
    private instance variables—filled in later

    // Constructors
    public BankAccount()
    {
        implementation—filled in later
    }

    public BankAccount(double initialBalance)
    {
        implementation—filled in later
    }

    // Methods
    public void deposit(double amount)
    {
        implementation—filled in later
    }

    public void withdraw(double amount)
    {
        implementation—filled in later
    }

    public double getBalance()
    {
        implementation—filled in later
    }
}
```

## Syntax 3.2 Class Declaration

**Syntax**

```
accessSpecifier class ClassName
{
    instance variables
    constructors
    methods
}
```

```
public class Counter
{
    private int value;

    public Counter(int initialValue) { value = initialValue; }

    public void click() { value = value + 1; }

    public int getValue() { return value; }
}
```

The public constructors and methods of a class form the **public interface** of the class. These are the operations that any programmer can use to create and manipulate BankAccount objects.

### 3.2.3 Using the Public Interface

Our BankAccount class is simple, but it allows programmers to carry out all of the important operations that commonly occur with bank accounts. For example, consider this program segment, authored by a programmer who uses the BankAccount class. These statements transfer an amount of money from one bank account to another:

```
// Transfer from one account to another
double transferAmount = 500;
momsSavings.withdraw(transferAmount);
harrysChecking.deposit(transferAmount);
```

And here is a program segment that adds interest to a savings account:

```
double interestRate = 5; // 5 percent interest
double interestAmount = momSavings.getBalance() * interestRate / 100;
momSavings.deposit(interestAmount);
```

As you can see, programmers can use objects of the BankAccount class to carry out meaningful tasks, without knowing how the BankAccount objects store their data or how the BankAccount methods do their work.

Of course, as implementors of the BankAccount class, we will need to supply the private implementation. We will do so in Section 3.3. First, however, an important step remains: *documenting* the public interface. That is the topic of the next section.

### 3.2.4 Commenting the Public Interface

When you implement classes and methods, you should get into the habit of thoroughly *commenting* their behaviors. In Java there is a very useful standard form for

Use documentation comments to describe the classes and public methods of your programs.

**documentation comments.** If you use this form in your classes, a program called `javadoc` can automatically generate a neat set of HTML pages that describe them. (See Programming Tip 3.1 on page 92 for a description of this utility.)

A documentation comment is placed before the class or method declaration that is being documented. It starts with a `/**`, a special comment delimiter used by the `javadoc` utility. Then you describe the method's *purpose*. Then, for each argument, you supply a line that starts with `@param`, followed by the name of the variable that holds the argument (which is called a **parameter variable**). Supply a short explanation for each argument after the variable name. Finally, you supply a line that starts with `@return`, describing the return value. You omit the `@param` tag for methods that have no arguments, and you omit the `@return` tag for methods whose return type is `void`.

The `javadoc` utility copies the *first* sentence of each comment to a summary table in the HTML documentation. Therefore, it is best to write that first sentence with some care. It should start with an uppercase letter and end with a period. It does not have to be a grammatically complete sentence, but it should be meaningful when it is pulled out of the comment and displayed in a summary.

Here are two typical examples:

```
/**
 * Withdraws money from the bank account.
 * @param amount the amount to withdraw
 */
public void withdraw(double amount)
{
    implementation—filled in later
}

/**
 * Gets the current balance of the bank account.
 * @return the current balance
 */
public double getBalance()
{
    implementation—filled in later
}
```

The comments you have just seen explain individual *methods*. Supply a brief comment for each *class*, too, explaining its purpose. Place the documentation comment above the class declaration:

```
/**
 * A bank account has a balance that can be changed by
 * deposits and withdrawals.
 */
public class BankAccount
{
    . . .
}
```

Your first reaction may well be “Whoa! Am I supposed to write all this stuff?” Sometimes, documentation comments seem pretty repetitive, but in most cases, they are informative. Even with seemingly repetitive comments, you should take the time to write them.

It is always a good idea to write the method comment *first*, before writing the code in the method body. This is an excellent test to see that you firmly understand what

you need to program. If you can't explain what a class or method does, you aren't ready to implement it.

What about very simple methods? You can easily spend more time pondering whether a comment is too trivial to write than it takes to write it. In practical programming, very simple methods are rare. It is harmless to have a trivial method overcommented, whereas a complicated method without any comment can cause real grief to future maintenance programmers. According to the standard Java documentation style, *every* class, *every* method, *every* parameter variable, and *every* return value should have a comment.

Provide documentation comments for every class, every method, every parameter variable, and every return value.

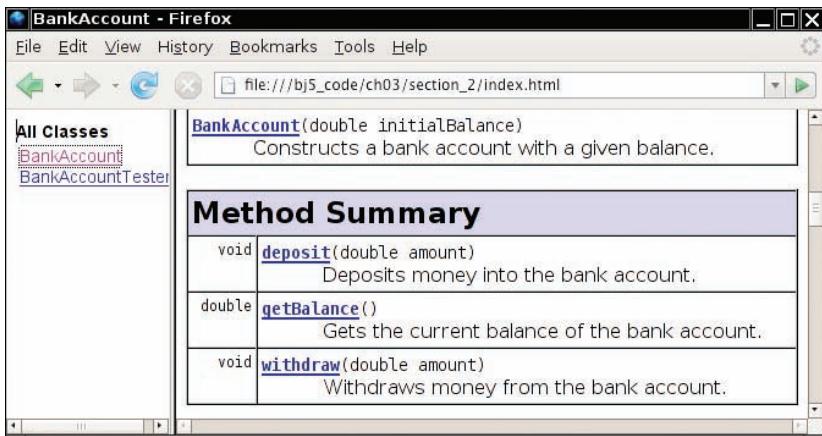


Figure 3 A Method Summary Generated by javadoc



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download the BankAccount class with documentation but without implementation.

The javadoc utility formats your comments into a neat set of documents that you can view in a web browser. It makes good use of the seemingly repetitive phrases. The first sentence of the comment is used for a *summary table* of all methods of your class (see Figure 3). The @param and @return comments are neatly formatted in the detail description of each method (see Figure 4). If you omit any of the comments, then javadoc generates documents that look strangely empty.



Figure 4 Method Detail Generated by javadoc

This documentation format should look familiar. The programmers who implement the Java library use javadoc themselves. They too document every class, every method, every parameter variable, and every return value, and then use javadoc to extract the documentation in HTML format.

### SELF CHECK



6. How can you use the methods of the public interface to *empty* the harrysChecking bank account?
7. What is wrong with this sequence of statements?  

```
BankAccount harrysChecking = new BankAccount(10000);
System.out.println(harrysChecking.withdraw(500));
```
8. Suppose you want a more powerful bank account abstraction that keeps track of an *account number* in addition to the balance. How would you change the public interface to accommodate this enhancement?
9. Suppose we enhance the BankAccount class so that each account has an account number. Supply a documentation comment for the constructor  

```
public BankAccount(int accountNumber, double initialBalance)
```
10. Why is the following documentation comment questionable?

```
/**
 * Each account has an account number.
 * @return the account number of this account
 */
public int getAccountNumber()
```

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R3.7, R3.8, R3.9.

### Common Error 3.1



#### Declaring a Constructor as void

Do not use the `void` reserved word when you declare a constructor:

```
public void BankAccount() // Error—don't use void!
```

This would declare a method with return type `void` and *not* a constructor. Unfortunately, the Java compiler does not consider this a syntax error.

### Programming Tip 3.1



#### The javadoc Utility

Always insert documentation comments in your code, whether or not you use javadoc to produce HTML documentation. Most people find the HTML documentation convenient, so it is worth learning how to run javadoc. Some programming environments (such as BlueJ) can execute javadoc for you. Alternatively, you can invoke the javadoc utility from a shell window, by issuing the command

```
javadoc MyClass.java
```

or, if you want to document multiple Java files,

```
javadoc *.java
```

The javadoc utility produces files such as `MyClass.html` in HTML format, which you can inspect in a browser. If you know HTML (see Appendix H), you can embed HTML tags into the

comments to specify fonts or add images. Perhaps most importantly, javadoc automatically provides *hyperlinks* to other classes and methods.

You can run javadoc before implementing any methods. Just leave all the method bodies empty. Don't run the compiler—it would complain about missing return values. Simply run javadoc on your file to generate the documentation for the public interface that you are about to implement.

The javadoc tool is wonderful because it does one thing right: It allows you to put the documentation *together with your code*. That way, when you update your programs, you can see right away which documentation needs to be updated. Hopefully, you will update it right then and there. Afterward, run javadoc again and get updated information that is timely and nicely formatted.

## 3.3 Providing the Class Implementation

Now that you understand the specification of the public interface of the `BankAccount` class, let's provide the implementation.

### 3.3.1 Providing Instance Variables

The private implementation of a class consists of instance variables, and the bodies of constructors and methods.

First, we need to determine the data that each bank account object contains. In the case of our simple bank account class, each object needs to store a single value, the current balance. (A more complex bank account class might store additional data—perhaps an account number, the interest rate paid, the date for mailing out the next statement, and so on.)

```
public class BankAccount
{
    private double balance;
    // Methods and constructors below
    ...
}
```

In general, it can be challenging to find a good set of instance variables. Ask yourself what an object needs to remember so that it can carry out any of its methods.

*Like a wilderness explorer who needs to carry all items that may be needed, an object needs to store the data required for its method calls.*



### 3.3.2 Providing Constructors

A **constructor** has a simple job: to initialize the instance variables of an object.

Recall that we designed the `BankAccount` class to have two constructors. The first constructor simply sets the balance to zero:

```
public BankAccount()
{
    balance = 0;
}
```

The second constructor sets the balance to the value supplied as the construction argument:

```
public BankAccount(double initialBalance)
{
    balance = initialBalance;
}
```

To see how these constructors work, let us trace the statement

```
BankAccount harrysChecking = new BankAccount(1000);
```

one step at a time.

Here are the steps that are carried out when the statement executes (see Figure 5):

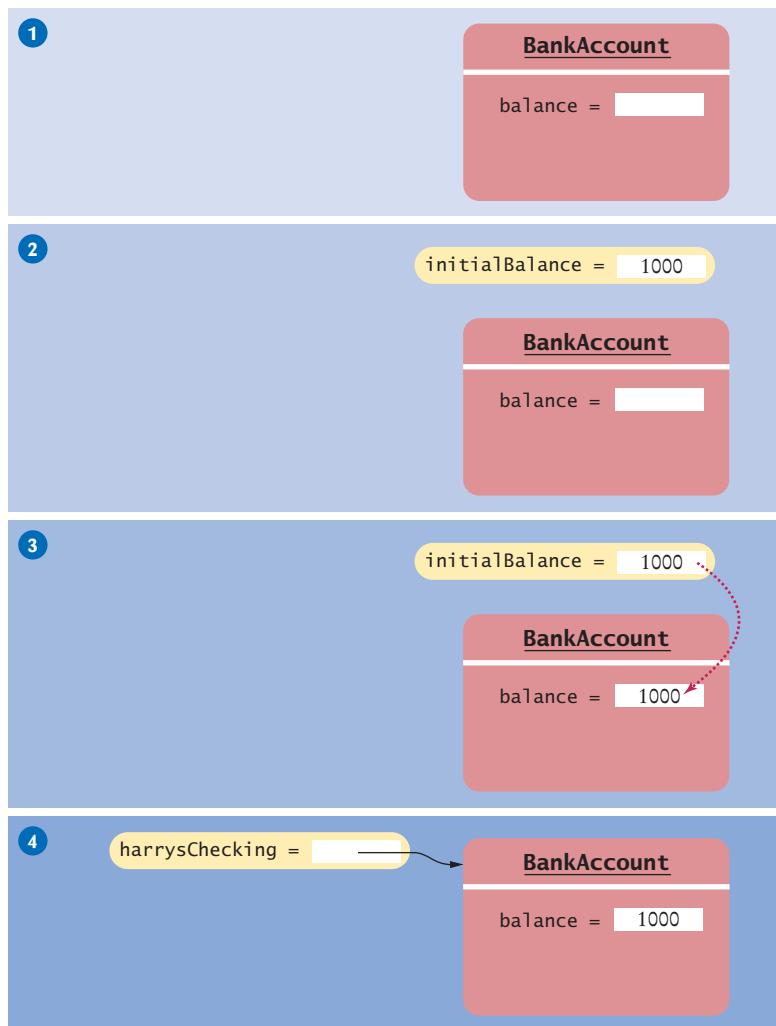
- Create a new object of type `BankAccount`. ①
- Call the second constructor (because an argument is supplied in the constructor call).
- Set the parameter variable `initialBalance` to 1000. ②
- Set the `balance` instance variable of the newly created object to `initialBalance`. ③
- Return an object reference, that is, the memory location of the object, as the value of the new expression.
- Store that object reference in the `harrysChecking` variable. ④

In general, when you implement constructors, be sure that each constructor initializes all instance variables, and that you make use of all parameter variables (see Common Error 3.2 on page 98).

*A constructor is like a set of assembly instructions for an object.*



**Figure 5**  
How a Constructor Works



### 3.3.3 Providing Methods

In this section, we finish implementing the methods of the `BankAccount` class.

When you implement a method, ask yourself whether it is an accessor or mutator method. A mutator method needs to update the instance variables in some way. An accessor method retrieves or computes a result.

Here is the `deposit` method. It is a mutator method, updating the balance:

```
public void deposit(double amount)
{
    balance = balance + amount;
}
```

The `withdraw` method is very similar to the `deposit` method:

```
public void withdraw(double amount)
{
    balance = balance - amount;
}
```

**Table 1** Implementing Classes

| Example                                      | Comments                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| public class BankAccount { . . . }           | This is the start of a class declaration. Instance variables, methods, and constructors are placed inside the braces.                             |
| private double balance;                      | This is an instance variable of type <code>double</code> . Instance variables should be declared as <code>private</code> .                        |
| public double getBalance() { . . . }         | This is a method declaration. The body of the method must be placed inside the braces.                                                            |
| . . . { return balance; }                    | This is the body of the <code>getBalance</code> method. The <code>return</code> statement returns a value to the caller of the method.            |
| public void deposit(double amount) { . . . } | This is a method with a parameter variable ( <code>amount</code> ). Because the method is declared as <code>void</code> , it has no return value. |
| . . . { balance = balance + amount; }        | This is the body of the <code>deposit</code> method. It does not have a <code>return</code> statement.                                            |
| public BankAccount() { . . . }               | This is a constructor declaration. A constructor has the same name as the class and no return type.                                               |
| . . . { balance = 0; }                       | This is the body of the constructor. A constructor should initialize the instance variables.                                                      |

There is one method left, `getBalance`. Unlike the `deposit` and `withdraw` methods, which modify the instance variable of the object on which they are invoked, the `getBalance` method returns a value:

```
public double getBalance()
{
    return balance;
}
```

We have now completed the implementation of the `BankAccount` class—see the code listing below. There is only one step remaining: testing that the class works correctly. That is the topic of the next section.

### section\_3/BankAccount.java

```
1  /**
2   * A bank account has a balance that can be changed by
3   * deposits and withdrawals.
4  */
5  public class BankAccount
6  {
7      private double balance;
8
9      /**
10      * Constructs a bank account with a zero balance.
11      */
12      public BankAccount()
13      {
14          balance = 0;
15      }
16  }
```

```

16
17  /**
18   * Constructs a bank account with a given balance.
19   * @param initialBalance the initial balance
20  */
21  public BankAccount(double initialBalance)
22  {
23      balance = initialBalance;
24  }
25
26  /**
27   * Deposits money into the bank account.
28   * @param amount the amount to deposit
29  */
30  public void deposit(double amount)
31  {
32      balance = balance + amount;
33  }
34
35  /**
36   * Withdraws money from the bank account.
37   * @param amount the amount to withdraw
38  */
39  public void withdraw(double amount)
40  {
41      balance = balance - amount;
42  }
43
44  /**
45   * Gets the current balance of the bank account.
46   * @return the current balance
47  */
48  public double getBalance()
49  {
50      return balance;
51  }
52 }
```

**SELF CHECK**

11. Suppose we modify the `BankAccount` class so that each bank account has an account number. How does this change affect the instance variables?
12. Why does the following code not succeed in robbing mom's bank account?

```
public class BankRobber
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        BankAccount momsSavings = new BankAccount(1000);
        momsSavings.balance = 0;
    }
}
```
13. The `Rectangle` class has four instance variables: `x`, `y`, `width`, and `height`. Give a possible implementation of the `getWidth` method.
14. Give a possible implementation of the `translate` method of the `Rectangle` class.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R3.4, R3.10, E3.4.

## Common Error 3.2



## Ignoring Parameter Variables

A surprisingly common beginner's error is to ignore parameter variables of methods or constructors. This usually happens when an assignment gives an example with specific values. For example, suppose you are asked to provide a class `Letter` with a recipient and a sender, and you are given a sample letter like this:

Dear John:

I am sorry we must part.  
I wish you all the best.

Sincerely,

Mary

Now look at this incorrect attempt:

```
public class Letter
{
    private String recipient;
    private String sender;

    public Letter(String aRecipient, String aSender)
    {
        recipient = "John"; // Error—should use parameter variable
        sender = "Mary"; // Same error
    }
    ...
}
```

The constructor ignores the names of the recipient and sender arguments that were provided to the constructor. If a user constructs a

`new Letter("John", "Yoko")`

the sender is still set to "Mary", which is bound to be embarrassing.

The constructor should use the parameter variables, like this:

```
public Letter(String aRecipient, String aSender)
{
    recipient = aRecipient;
    sender = aSender;
}
```

## HOW TO 3.1



## Implementing a Class

This "How To" section tells you how you implement a class from a given specification.

**Problem Statement** Implement a class that models a self-service cash register. The customer scans the price tags and deposits money in the machine. The machine dispenses the change.



**Step 1** Find out which methods you are asked to supply.

In a simulation, you won't have to provide every feature that occurs in the real world—there are too many. In the cash register example, we don't deal with sales tax or credit card payments. The assignment tells you *which aspects* of the self-service cash register your class should simulate. Make a list of them:

- Process the price of each purchased item.
- Receive payment.
- Calculate the amount of change due to the customer.

**Step 2** Specify the public interface.

Turn the list in Step 1 into a set of methods, with specific types for the parameter variables and the return values. Many programmers find this step simpler if they write out method calls that are applied to a sample object, like this:

```
CashRegister register = new CashRegister();
register.recordPurchase(29.95);
register.recordPurchase(9.95);
register.receivePayment(50);
double change = register.giveChange();
```

Now we have a specific list of methods:

- public void recordPurchase(double amount)
- public void receivePayment(double amount)
- public double giveChange()

To complete the public interface, you need to specify the constructors. Ask yourself what information you need in order to construct an object of your class. Sometimes you will want two constructors: one that sets all instance variables to a default and one that sets them to user-supplied values.

In the case of the cash register example, we can get by with a single constructor that creates an empty register. A more realistic cash register might start out with some coins and bills so that we can give exact change, but that is well beyond the scope of our assignment.

Thus, we add a single constructor:

- public CashRegister()

**Step 3** Document the public interface.

Here is the documentation, with comments, that describes the class and its methods:

```
/**
 * A cash register totals up sales and computes change due.
 */
public class CashRegister
{
    /**
     * Constructs a cash register with no money in it.
     */
    public CashRegister()
    {

    }

    /**
     * Records the sale of an item.
     * @param amount the price of the item
     */
    public void recordPurchase(double amount)
{}
```

```

    }

    /**
     * Processes a payment received from the customer.
     * @param amount the amount of the payment
     */
    public void receivePayment(double amount)
    {
    }

    /**
     * Computes the change due and resets the machine for the next customer.
     * @return the change due to the customer
     */
    public double giveChange()
    {
    }
}

```

**Step 4** Determine instance variables.

Ask yourself what information an object needs to store to do its job. Remember, the methods can be called in any order. The object needs to have enough internal memory to be able to process every method using just its instance variables and the parameter variables. Go through each method, perhaps starting with a simple one or an interesting one, and ask yourself what you need to carry out the method's task. Make instance variables to store the information that the method needs.

Just as importantly, don't introduce unnecessary instance variables (see Common Error 3.3). If a value can be computed from other instance variables, it is generally better to compute it on demand than to store it.

In the cash register example, you need to keep track of the total purchase amount and the payment. You can compute the change due from these two amounts.

```

public class CashRegister
{
    private double purchase;
    private double payment;
    ...
}

```

**Step 5** Implement constructors and methods.

Implement the constructors and methods in your class, one at a time, starting with the easiest ones. Here is the implementation of the recordPurchase method:

```

public void recordPurchase(double amount)
{
    purchase = purchase + amount;
}

```

The receivePayment method looks almost the same,

```

public void receivePayment(double amount)
{
    payment = payment + amount;
}

```

but why does the method add the amount, instead of simply setting `payment = amount`? A customer might provide two separate payments, such as two \$10 bills, and the machine must process them both. Remember, methods can be called more than once, and they can be called in any order.

Finally, here is the `giveChange` method. This method is a bit more sophisticated—it computes the change due, and it also resets the cash register for the next sale.

```
public double giveChange()
{
    double change = payment - purchase;
    purchase = 0;
    payment = 0;
    return change;
}
```

If you find that you have trouble with the implementation, you may need to rethink your choice of instance variables. It is common for a beginner to start out with a set of instance variables that cannot accurately reflect the state of an object. Don't hesitate to go back and add or modify instance variables.

You can find the complete implementation in the `how_to_1` directory of the book's companion code.

### Step 6

Test your class.

Write a short tester program and execute it. The tester program should carry out the method calls that you found in Step 2.

```
public class CashRegisterTester
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        CashRegister register = new CashRegister();

        register.recordPurchase(29.50);
        register.recordPurchase(9.25);
        register.receivePayment(50);

        double change = register.giveChange();

        System.out.println(change);
        System.out.println("Expected: 11.25");
    }
}
```

The output of this test program is:

```
11.25
Expected: 11.25
```



### WORKED EXAMPLE 3.1

#### Making a Simple Menu

Learn how to implement a class that constructs simple text-based menus. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 3.1.



## 3.4 Unit Testing

A unit test verifies that a class works correctly in isolation, outside a complete program.

To test a class, use an environment for interactive testing, or write a tester class to execute test instructions.

In the preceding section, we completed the implementation of the `BankAccount` class. What can you do with it? Of course, you can compile the file `BankAccount.java`. However, you can't *execute* the resulting `BankAccount.class` file. It doesn't contain a `main` method. That is normal—most classes don't contain a `main` method.

In the long run, your class may become a part of a larger program that interacts with users, stores data in files, and so on. However, before integrating a class into a program, it is always a good idea to test it in isolation. Testing in isolation, outside a complete program, is called **unit testing**.

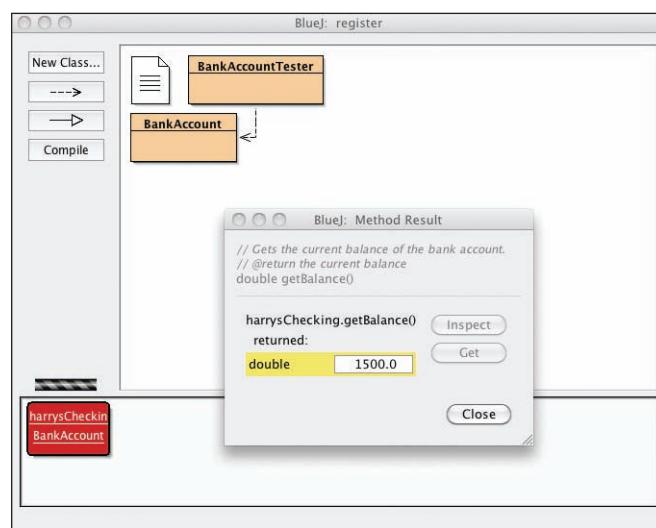
To test your class, you have two choices. Some interactive development environments have commands for constructing objects and invoking methods (see Special Topic 2.1). Then you can test a class simply by constructing an object, calling methods, and verifying that you get the expected return values. Figure 6 shows the result of calling the `getBalance` method on a `BankAccount` object in BlueJ.

Alternatively, you can write a *tester class*. A tester class is a class with a `main` method that contains statements to run methods of another class. As discussed in Section 2.7, a tester class typically carries out the following steps:

1. Construct one or more objects of the class that is being tested.
2. Invoke one or more methods.
3. Print out one or more results.
4. Print the expected results.



An engineer tests a part in isolation.  
This is an example of unit testing.



**Figure 6** The Return Value of the `getBalance` Method in BlueJ

The `MoveTester` class in Section 2.7 is a good example of a tester class. That class runs methods of the `Rectangle` class—a class in the Java library.

Following is a class to run methods of the `BankAccount` class. The `main` method constructs an object of type `BankAccount`, invokes the `deposit` and `withdraw` methods, and then displays the remaining balance on the console.

We also print the value that we expect to see. In our sample program, we deposit \$2,000 and withdraw \$500. We therefore expect a balance of \$1,500.

### section\_4/BankAccountTester.java

```
1  /**
2   * A class to test the BankAccount class.
3  */
4  public class BankAccountTester
5  {
6      /**
7       * Tests the methods of the BankAccount class.
8       * @param args not used
9      */
10     public static void main(String[] args)
11     {
12         BankAccount harrysChecking = new BankAccount();
13         harrysChecking.deposit(2000);
14         harrysChecking.withdraw(500);
15         System.out.println(harrysChecking.getBalance());
16         System.out.println("Expected: 1500");
17     }
18 }
```

### Program Run

```
1500
Expected: 1500
```

To produce a program, you need to combine the `BankAccount` and the `BankAccountTester` classes. The details for building the program depend on your compiler and development environment. In most environments, you need to carry out these steps:

1. Make a new subfolder for your program.
2. Make two files, one for each class.
3. Compile both files.
4. Run the test program.

Many students are surprised that such a simple program contains two classes. However, this is normal. The two classes have entirely different purposes. The `BankAccount` class describes objects that compute bank balances. The `BankAccountTester` class runs a test that puts a `BankAccount` object through its paces.



### SELF CHECK

15. When you run the `BankAccountTester` program, how many objects of class `BankAccount` are constructed? How many objects of type `BankAccountTester`?
16. Why is the `BankAccountTester` class unnecessary in development environments that allow interactive testing, such as BlueJ?

### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E3.3, E3.10.



## Computing & Society 3.1 Electronic Voting Machines

In the 2000 presidential elections in the United States, votes were tallied by a variety of machines. Some machines processed cardboard ballots into which voters punched holes to indicate their choices (see below). When voters were not careful, remains of paper—the now infamous “chads”—were partially stuck in the punch cards, causing votes to be miscounted. A manual recount was necessary, but it was not carried out everywhere due to time constraints and procedural wrangling. The election was very close, and there remain doubts in the minds of many people whether the election outcome would have been different if the voting machines had accurately counted the intent of the voters.



Punch Card Ballot

Subsequently, voting machine manufacturers have argued that electronic voting machines would avoid the problems caused by punch cards or optically scanned forms. In an electronic voting machine, voters indicate their preferences by pressing buttons or touching icons on a computer screen. Typically, each voter is presented with a summary screen for review before casting the ballot. The process is very similar to using a bank’s automated teller machine.

It seems plausible that these machines make it more likely that a vote is counted in the same way that the voter intends. However, there has been significant controversy surrounding some types of electronic

voting machines. If a machine simply records the votes and prints out the totals after the election has been completed, then how do you know that the machine worked correctly? Inside the machine is a computer that executes a program, and, as you may know from your own experience, programs can have bugs.

In fact, some electronic voting machines do have bugs. There have been isolated cases where machines reported tallies that were impossible. When a machine reports far more or far fewer votes than voters, then it is clear that it malfunctioned. Unfortunately, it is then impossible to find out the actual votes. Over time, one would expect these bugs to be fixed in the software. More insidiously, if the results are plausible, nobody may ever investigate.

Many computer scientists have spoken out on this issue and confirmed that it is impossible, with today’s technology, to tell that software is error free and has not been tampered with. Many of them recommend that electronic voting machines should employ a *voter verifiable audit trail*. (A good source of information is <http://verifiedvoting.org>.) Typically, a voter-verifiable machine prints out a ballot. Each voter has a chance to review the printout, and then deposits it in an

old-fashioned ballot box. If there is a problem with the electronic equipment, the printouts can be scanned or counted by hand.

As this book is written, this concept is strongly resisted both by manufacturers of electronic voting machines and by their customers, the cities and counties that run elections. Manufacturers are reluctant to increase the cost of the machines because they may not be able to pass the cost increase on to their customers, who tend to have tight budgets. Election officials fear problems with malfunctioning printers, and some of them have publicly stated that they actually prefer equipment that eliminates bothersome recounts.

What do you think? You probably use an automated bank teller machine to get cash from your bank account. Do you review the paper record that the machine issues? Do you check your bank statement? Even if you don’t, do you put your faith in other people who double-check their balances, so that the bank won’t get away with widespread cheating?

Is the integrity of banking equipment more important or less important than that of voting machines? Won’t every voting process have some room for error and fraud anyway? Is the added cost for equipment, paper, and staff time reasonable to combat a potentially slight risk of malfunction and fraud? Computer scientists cannot answer these questions—an informed society must make these tradeoffs. But, like all professionals, they have an obligation to speak out and give accurate testimony about the capabilities and limitations of computing equipment.



Touch Screen Voting Machine

## 3.5 Problem Solving: Tracing Objects

Researchers have studied why some students have an easier time learning how to program than others. One important skill of successful programmers is the ability to simulate the actions of a program with pencil and paper. In this section, you will see how to develop this skill by tracing method calls on objects.

Write the methods on the front of a card and the instance variables on the back.

Use an index card or a sticky note for each object. On the front, write the methods that the object can execute. On the back, make a table for the values of the instance variables.

Here is a card for a CashRegister object:

| <b>CashRegister reg1</b><br>recordPurchase<br>receivePayment<br>giveChange | <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;">reg1.purchase</th><th style="text-align: center;">reg1.payment</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="height: 40px;"></td><td style="height: 40px;"></td></tr> </tbody> </table> | reg1.purchase | reg1.payment |  |  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------------|--|--|
| reg1.purchase                                                              | reg1.payment                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |               |              |  |  |
|                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |               |              |  |  |
| front                                                                      | back                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |               |              |  |  |

In a small way, this gives you a feel for encapsulation. An object is manipulated through its public interface (on the front of the card), and the instance variables are hidden in the back.

When an object is constructed, fill in the initial values of the instance variables:

| reg1.purchase | reg1.payment |
|---------------|--------------|
| 0             | 0            |

Update the values of the instance variables when a mutator method is called.

Whenever a mutator method is executed, cross out the old values and write the new ones below. Here is what happens after a call to the recordPurchase method:

| reg1.purchase         | reg1.payment |
|-----------------------|--------------|
| <del>0</del><br>19.95 | 0            |

If you have more than one object in your program, you will have multiple cards, one for each object:

| reg1.purchase | reg1.payment | reg2.purchase      | reg2.payment |
|---------------|--------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 0<br>19.95    | 0<br>19.95   | 0<br>29.50<br>9.25 | 0<br>50.00   |

These diagrams are also useful when you design a class. Suppose you are asked to enhance the `CashRegister` class to compute the sales tax. Add methods `recordTaxablePurchase` and `getSalesTax` to the front of the card. Now turn the card over, look over the instance variables, and ask yourself whether the object has sufficient information to compute the answer. Remember that each object is an autonomous unit. Any value that can be used in a computation must be

- An instance variable.
- A method argument.
- A static variable (uncommon; see Section 8.4).

To compute the sales tax, we need to know the tax rate and the total of the taxable items. (Food items are usually not subject to sales tax.) We don't have that information available. Let us introduce additional instance variables for the tax rate and the taxable total. The tax rate can be set in the constructor (assuming it stays fixed for the lifetime of the object). When adding an item, we need to be told whether the item is taxable. If so, we add its price to the taxable total.

For example, consider the following statements.

```
CashRegister reg3(7.5); // 7.5 percent sales tax
reg3.recordPurchase(3.95); // Not taxable
reg3.recordTaxablePurchase(19.95); // Taxable
```

When you record the effect on a card, it looks like this:

| reg3.purchase | reg3.taxablePurchase | reg3.payment | reg3.taxRate |
|---------------|----------------------|--------------|--------------|
| 0<br>3.95     | 0<br>19.95           | 0            | 7.5          |

With this information, we can compute the tax. It is `taxablePurchase x taxRate / 100`. Tracing the object helped us understand the need for additional instance variables.

#### SELF CHECK



17. Consider a `Car` class that simulates fuel consumption in a car. We will assume a fixed efficiency (in miles per gallon) that is supplied in the constructor. There are methods for adding gas, driving a given distance, and checking the amount of gas left in the tank. Make a card for a `Car` object, choosing suitable instance variables and showing their values after the object was constructed.

- 18.** Trace the following method calls:

```
Car myCar(25);
myCar.addGas(20);
myCar.drive(100);
myCar.drive(200);
myCar.addGas(5);
```

- 19.** Suppose you are asked to simulate the odometer of the car, by adding a method `getMilesDriven`. Add an instance variable to the object's card that is suitable for computing this method's result.
- 20.** Trace the methods of Self Check 18, updating the instance variable that you added in Self Check 19.



**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R3.18, R3.19, R3.20.

## 3.6 Local Variables

Local variables are declared in the body of a method.



When a method exits, its local variables are removed.

Instance variables are initialized to a default value, but you must initialize local variables.



FULL CODE EXAMPLE  
Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a demonstration of local variables.

In this section, we discuss the behavior of *local* variables. A **local variable** is a variable that is declared in the body of a method. For example, the `giveChange` method in How To 3.1 declares a local variable `change`:

```
public double giveChange()
{
    double change = payment - purchase;
    purchase = 0;
    payment = 0;
    return change;
}
```

Parameter variables are similar to local variables, but they are declared in method headers. For example, the following method declares a parameter variable `amount`:

```
public void receivePayment(double amount)
```

Local and parameter variables belong to methods. When a method runs, its local and parameter variables come to life. When the method exits, they are removed immediately. For example, if you call `register.giveChange()`, then a variable `change` is created. When the method exits, that variable is removed.

In contrast, instance variables belong to objects, not methods. When an object is constructed, its instance variables are created. The instance variables stay alive until no method uses the object any longer. (The Java virtual machine contains an agent called a **garbage collector** that periodically reclaims objects when they are no longer used.)

An important difference between instance variables and local variables is initialization. You must **initialize** all local variables. If you don't initialize a local variable, the compiler complains when you try to use it. (Note that parameter variables are initialized when the method is called.)

Instance variables are initialized with a default value before a constructor is invoked. Instance variables that are numbers are initialized to 0. Object references are set to a special value called `null`. If an object reference is `null`, then it refers to no object at all. We will discuss the `null` value in greater detail in Section 5.2.5.



- 21.** What do local variables and parameter variables have in common? In which essential aspect do they differ?
- 22.** Why was it necessary to introduce the local variable `change` in the `giveChange` method? That is, why didn't the method simply end with the statement `return payment - purchase;`
- 23.** Consider a `CashRegister` object `reg1` whose `payment` instance variable has the value 20 and whose `purchase` instance variable has the value 19.5. Trace the call `reg1.giveChange()`. Include the local variable `change`. Draw an X in its column when the variable ceases to exist.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R3.14, R3.15.

### Common Error 3.3



#### Duplicating Instance Variables in Local Variables

Beginning programmers commonly add types to assignment statements, thereby changing them into local variable declarations. For example,

```
public double giveChange()
{
    double change = payment - purchase;
    double purchase = 0; // ERROR! This declares a local variable.
    double payment = 0; // ERROR! The instance variable is not updated.
    return change;
}
```

Another common error is to declare a parameter variable with the same name as an instance variable. For example, consider this `BankAccount` constructor:

```
public BankAccount(double balance)
{
    balance = balance; // ERROR! Does not set the instance variable
}
```

This constructor simply sets the parameter variable to itself, leaving it unchanged. A simple remedy is to come up with a different name for the parameter variable:

```
public BankAccount(double initialBalance)
{
    balance = initialBalance; // OK
}
```

### Common Error 3.4



#### Providing Unnecessary Instance Variables

A common beginner's mistake is to use instance variables when local variables would be more appropriate. For example, consider the `change` variable of the `giveChange` method. It is not needed anywhere else—that's why it is local to the method. But what if it had been declared as an instance variable?

```
public class CashRegister
{
    private double purchase;
    private double payment;
    private double change; // Not appropriate
```

```

public double giveChange()
{
    change = payment - purchase;
    purchase = 0;
    payment = 0;
    return change;
}
...
}

```

This class will work, but there is a hidden danger. Other methods can read and write to the `change` instance variable, which can be a source of confusion.

Use instance variables for values that an object needs to remember between method calls. Use local variables for values that don't need to be retained when a method has completed.

### Common Error 3.5



### Forgetting to Initialize Object References in a Constructor

Just as it is a common error to forget to initialize a local variable, it is easy to forget about instance variables. Every constructor needs to ensure that all instance variables are set to appropriate values.

If you do not initialize an instance variable, the Java compiler will initialize it for you. Numbers are initialized with 0, but object references—such as string variables—are set to the `null` reference.

Of course, 0 is often a convenient default for numbers. However, `null` is hardly ever a convenient default for objects. Consider this “lazy” constructor for a modified version of the `BankAccount` class:

```

public class BankAccount
{
    private double balance;
    private String owner;
    ...
    public BankAccount(double initialBalance)
    {
        balance = initialBalance;
    }
}

```

Then `balance` is initialized, but the `owner` variable is set to a `null` reference. This can be a problem—it is illegal to call methods on the `null` reference.

To avoid this problem, it is a good idea to initialize every instance variable:

```

public BankAccount(double initialBalance)
{
    balance = initialBalance;
    owner = "None";
}

```

## 3.7 The this Reference

When you call a method, you pass two kinds of inputs to the method:

- The object on which you invoke the method
- The method arguments

For example, when you call

```
momsSavings.deposit(500);
```

the deposit method needs to know the account object (`momsSavings`) as well as the amount that is being deposited (500).

When you implement the method, you provide a parameter variable for each argument. But you don't need to provide a parameter variable for the object on which the method is being invoked. That object is called the **implicit parameter**. All other parameter variables (such as the amount to be deposited in our example) are called **explicit parameters**.

Look again at the code of the deposit method:

```
public void deposit(double amount)
{
    balance = balance + amount;
}
```

Here, `amount` is an explicit parameter. You don't see the implicit parameter—that is why it is called “implicit”. But consider what `balance` means exactly. After all, our program may have multiple `BankAccount` objects, and *each of them* has its own balance.

Because we are depositing the money into `momsSavings`, `balance` must mean `momsSavings.balance`. In general, when you refer to an instance variable inside a method, it means the instance variable of the implicit parameter.

In any method, you can access the implicit parameter—the object on which the method is called—with the reserved word `this`. For example, in the preceding method invocation, `this` refers to the same object as `momsSavings` (see Figure 7).

The statement

```
balance = balance + amount;
```

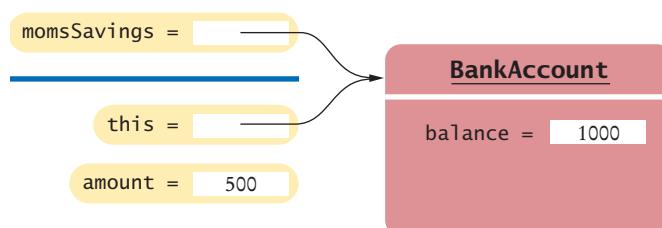
actually means

```
this.balance = this.balance + amount;
```

When you refer to an instance variable in a method, the compiler automatically applies it to the `this` reference. Some programmers actually prefer to manually insert the `this` reference before every instance variable because they find it makes the code clearer. Here is an example:

```
public BankAccount(double initialBalance)
{
    this.balance = initialBalance;
}
```

You may want to try it out and see if you like that style.



**Figure 7** The Implicit Parameter of a Method Call

The this reference can also be used to distinguish between instance variables and local or parameter variables. Consider the constructor

```
public BankAccount(double balance)
{
    this.balance = balance;
}
```

A local variable shadows an instance variable with the same name. You can access the instance variable name through the this reference.

The expression `this.balance` clearly refers to the `balance` instance variable. However, the expression `balance` by itself seems ambiguous. It could denote either the parameter variable or the instance variable. The Java language specifies that in this situation the local variable wins out. It “shadows” the instance variable. Therefore,

```
this.balance = balance;
```

means: “Set the instance variable `balance` to the parameter variable `balance`”.

There is another situation in which it is important to understand implicit parameters. Consider the following modification to the `BankAccount` class. We add a method to apply the monthly account fee:

```
public class BankAccount
{
    .
    .
    public void monthlyFee()
    {
        withdraw(10); // Withdraw $10 from this account
    }
}
```

A method call without an implicit parameter is applied to the same object.

That means to withdraw from the *same* bank account object that is carrying out the `monthlyFee` operation. In other words, the implicit parameter of the `withdraw` method is the (invisible) implicit parameter of the `monthlyFee` method.

If you find it confusing to have an invisible parameter, you can use the `this` reference to make the method easier to read:

```
public class BankAccount
{
    .
    .
    public void monthlyFee()
    {
        this.withdraw(10); // Withdraw $10 from this account
    }
}
```

You have now seen how to use objects and implement classes, and you have learned some important technical details about variables and method parameters. The remainder of this chapter continues the optional graphics track. In the next chapter, you will learn more about the most fundamental data types of the Java language.

#### SELF CHECK



**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**  
Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates the this reference.

24. How many implicit and explicit parameters does the `withdraw` method of the `BankAccount` class have, and what are their names and types?
25. In the `deposit` method, what is the meaning of `this.amount`? Or, if the expression has no meaning, why not?
26. How many implicit and explicit parameters does the `main` method of the `BankAccountTester` class have, and what are they called?

#### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R3.11, R3.12.

## Special Topic 3.1

**Calling One Constructor from Another**

Consider the `BankAccount` class. It has two constructors: a no-argument constructor to initialize the balance with zero, and another constructor to supply an initial balance. Rather than explicitly setting the balance to zero, one constructor can call another constructor of the same class instead. There is a shorthand notation to achieve this result:

```
public class BankAccount
{
    public BankAccount(double initialBalance)
    {
        balance = initialBalance;
    }

    public BankAccount()
    {
        this(0);
    }
    ...
}
```

The command `this(0);` means “Call another constructor of this class and supply the value 0”. Such a call to another constructor can occur only as the *first line in a constructor*.

This syntax is a minor convenience. We will not use it in this book. Actually, the use of the reserved word `this` is a little confusing. Normally, `this` denotes a reference to the implicit parameter, but if `this` is followed by parentheses, it denotes a call to another constructor of the same class.

## 3.8 Shape Classes

It is a good idea to make a class for any part of a drawing that can occur more than once.

In this section, we continue the optional graphics track by discussing how to organize complex drawings in a more object-oriented fashion.

When you produce a drawing that has multiple shapes, or parts made of multiple shapes, such as the car in Figure 8, it is a good idea to make a separate class for each part. The class should have a `draw` method that draws the shape, and a constructor to set the position of the shape. For example, here is the outline of the `Car` class:

```
public class Car
{
    public Car(int x, int y)
    {
        // Remember position
        ...
    }

    public void draw(Graphics2D g2)
    {
        // Drawing instructions
        ...
    }
}
```

You will find the complete class declaration at the end of this section. The `draw` method contains a rather long sequence of instructions for drawing the body, roof, and tires.



**Figure 8** The Car Component Draws Two Car Shapes

To figure out how to draw a complex shape, make a sketch on graph paper.

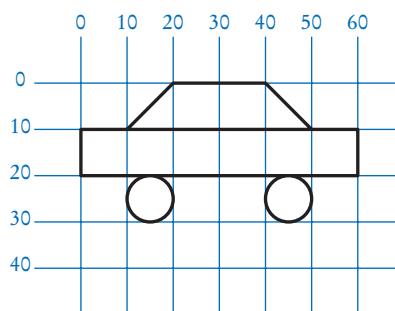
The coordinates of the car parts seem a bit arbitrary. To come up with suitable values, draw the image on graph paper and read off the coordinates (Figure 9).

The program that produces Figure 8 is composed of three classes.

- The `Car` class is responsible for drawing a single car. Two objects of this class are constructed, one for each car.
- The `CarComponent` class displays the drawing.
- The `CarViewer` class shows a frame that contains a `CarComponent`.

Let us look more closely at the `CarComponent` class. The `paintComponent` method draws two cars. We place one car in the top-left corner of the window, and the other car in the bottom-right corner. To compute the bottom-right position, we call the `getWidth` and `getHeight` methods of the `JComponent` class. These methods return the dimensions of the component. We subtract the dimensions of the car to determine the position of `car2`:

```
Car car1 = new Car(0, 0);
int x = getWidth() - 60;
int y = getHeight() - 30;
Car car2 = new Car(x, y);
```



**Figure 9**  
Using Graph Paper to Find Shape Coordinates

Pay close attention to the call to `getWidth` inside the `paintComponent` method of `CarComponent`. The method call has no implicit parameter, which means that the method is applied to the same object that executes the `paintComponent` method. The component simply obtains *its own* width.

Run the program and resize the window. Note that the second car always ends up at the bottom-right corner of the window. Whenever the window is resized, the `paintComponent` method is called and the car position is recomputed, taking the current component dimensions into account.

### section\_8/CarComponent.java

```
1 import java.awt.Graphics;
2 import java.awt.Graphics2D;
3 import javax.swing.JComponent;
4
5 /**
6  * This component draws two car shapes.
7 */
8 public class CarComponent extends JComponent
9 {
10    public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
11    {
12        Graphics2D g2 = (Graphics2D) g;
13
14        Car car1 = new Car(0, 0);
15
16        int x = getWidth() - 60;
17        int y = getHeight() - 30;
18
19        Car car2 = new Car(x, y);
20
21        car1.draw(g2);
22        car2.draw(g2);
23    }
24}
```

### section\_8/Car.java

```
1 import java.awt.Graphics2D;
2 import java.awt.Rectangle;
3 import java.awt.geom.Ellipse2D;
4 import java.awt.geom.Line2D;
5 import java.awt.geom.Point2D;
6
7 /**
8  * A car shape that can be positioned anywhere on the screen.
9 */
10 public class Car
11 {
12    private int xLeft;
13    private int yTop;
14
15    /**
16     * Constructs a car with a given top-left corner.
17     * @param x the x-coordinate of the top-left corner
18     * @param y the y-coordinate of the top-left corner
19     */
20    public Car(int x, int y)
21    {
```

```
22         xLeft = x;
23         yTop = y;
24     }
25
26     /**
27      * Draws the car.
28      * @param g2 the graphics context
29     */
30     public void draw(Graphics2D g2)
31     {
32         Rectangle body = new Rectangle(xLeft, yTop + 10, 60, 10);
33         Ellipse2D.Double frontTire
34             = new Ellipse2D.Double(xLeft + 10, yTop + 20, 10, 10);
35         Ellipse2D.Double rearTire
36             = new Ellipse2D.Double(xLeft + 40, yTop + 20, 10, 10);
37
38         // The bottom of the front windshield
39         Point2D.Double r1 = new Point2D.Double(xLeft + 10, yTop + 10);
40         // The front of the roof
41         Point2D.Double r2 = new Point2D.Double(xLeft + 20, yTop);
42         // The rear of the roof
43         Point2D.Double r3 = new Point2D.Double(xLeft + 40, yTop);
44         // The bottom of the rear windshield
45         Point2D.Double r4 = new Point2D.Double(xLeft + 50, yTop + 10);
46
47         Line2D.Double frontWindshield = new Line2D.Double(r1, r2);
48         Line2D.Double roofTop = new Line2D.Double(r2, r3);
49         Line2D.Double rearWindshield = new Line2D.Double(r3, r4);
50
51         g2.draw(body);
52         g2.draw(frontTire);
53         g2.draw(rearTire);
54         g2.draw(frontWindshield);
55         g2.draw(roofTop);
56         g2.draw(rearWindshield);
57     }
58 }
```

### section\_8/CarViewer.java

```
1  import javax.swing.JFrame;
2
3  public class CarViewer
4  {
5      public static void main(String[] args)
6      {
7          JFrame frame = new JFrame();
8
9          frame.setSize(300, 400);
10         frame.setTitle("Two cars");
11         frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
12
13         CarComponent component = new CarComponent();
14         frame.add(component);
15
16         frame.setVisible(true);
17     }
18 }
```



27. Which class needs to be modified to have the two cars positioned next to each other?
28. Which class needs to be modified to have the car tires painted in black, and what modification do you need to make?
29. How do you make the cars twice as big?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E3.16, E3.21.

## HOW TO 3.2

### Drawing Graphical Shapes



Suppose you want to write a program that displays graphical shapes such as cars, aliens, charts, or any other images that can be obtained from rectangles, lines, and ellipses. These instructions give you a step-by-step procedure for decomposing a drawing into parts and implementing a program that produces the drawing.

**Problem Statement** Create a program that draws a national flag.

**Step 1** Determine the shapes that you need for the drawing.

You can use the following shapes:

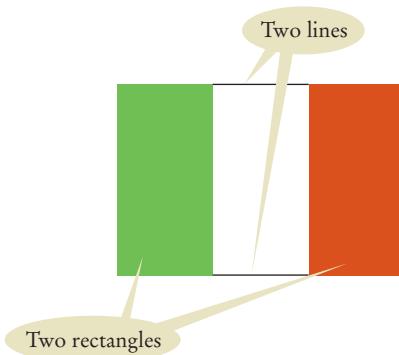
- Squares and rectangles
- Circles and ellipses
- Lines

The outlines of these shapes can be drawn in any color, and you can fill the insides of these shapes with any color. You can also use text to label parts of your drawing.

Some national flags consist of three equally wide sections of different colors, side by side.



You could draw such a flag using three rectangles. But if the middle rectangle is white, as it is, for example, in the flag of Italy (green, white, red), it is easier and looks better to draw a line on the top and bottom of the middle portion:



**Step 2** Find the coordinates for the shapes.

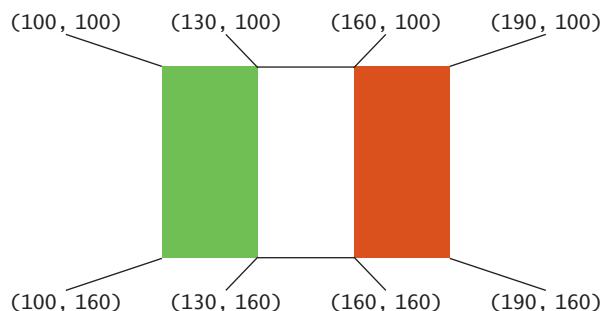
You now need to find the exact positions for the geometric shapes.

- For rectangles, you need the  $x$ - and  $y$ -position of the top-left corner, the width, and the height.
- For ellipses, you need the top-left corner, width, and height of the bounding rectangle.
- For lines, you need the  $x$ - and  $y$ -positions of the start and end points.
- For text, you need the  $x$ - and  $y$ -position of the basepoint.

A commonly-used size for a window is 300 by 300 pixels. You may not want the flag crammed all the way to the top, so perhaps the upper-left corner of the flag should be at point (100, 100).

Many flags, such as the flag of Italy, have a width : height ratio of 3 : 2. (You can often find exact proportions for a particular flag by doing a bit of Internet research on one of several Flags of the World sites.) For example, if you make the flag 90 pixels wide, then it should be 60 pixels tall. (Why not make it 100 pixels wide? Then the height would be  $100 \cdot 2 / 3 \approx 67$ , which seems more awkward.)

Now you can compute the coordinates of all the important points of the shape:

**Step 3** Write Java statements to draw the shapes.

In our example, there are two rectangles and two lines:

```
Rectangle leftRectangle = new Rectangle(100, 100, 30, 60);
Rectangle rightRectangle = new Rectangle(160, 100, 30, 60);
Line2D.Double topLine = new Line2D.Double(130, 100, 160, 100);
Line2D.Double bottomLine = new Line2D.Double(130, 160, 160, 160);
```

If you are more ambitious, then you can express the coordinates in terms of a few variables. In the case of the flag, we have arbitrarily chosen the top-left corner and the width. All other coordinates follow from those choices. If you decide to follow the ambitious approach, then the rectangles and lines are determined as follows:

```
Rectangle leftRectangle = new Rectangle(
    xLeft, yTop,
    width / 3, width * 2 / 3);
Rectangle rightRectangle = new Rectangle(
    xLeft + 2 * width / 3, yTop,
    width / 3, width * 2 / 3);
Line2D.Double topLine = new Line2D.Double(
    xLeft + width / 3, yTop,
    xLeft + width * 2 / 3, yTop);
Line2D.Double bottomLine = new Line2D.Double(
    xLeft + width / 3, yTop + width * 2 / 3,
    xLeft + width * 2 / 3, yTop + width * 2 / 3);
```

Now you need to fill the rectangles and draw the lines. For the flag of Italy, the left rectangle is green and the right rectangle is red. Remember to switch colors before the filling and drawing operations:

```
g2.setColor(Color.GREEN);
g2.fill(leftRectangle);
g2.setColor(Color.RED);
g2.fill(rightRectangle);
g2.setColor(Color.BLACK);
g2.draw(topLine);
g2.draw(bottomLine);
```

**Step 4** Combine the drawing statements with the component “plumbing”.

```
public class MyComponent extends JComponent
{
    public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
    {
        Graphics2D g2 = (Graphics2D) g;
        // Drawing instructions
        . . .
    }
}
```

In our simple example, you could add all shapes and drawing instructions inside the `paintComponent` method:

```
public class ItalianFlagComponent extends JComponent
{
    public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
    {
        Graphics2D g2 = (Graphics2D) g;
        Rectangle leftRectangle = new Rectangle(100, 100, 30, 60);
        . . .
        g2.setColor(Color.GREEN);
        g2.fill(leftRectangle);
        . . .
    }
}
```

That approach is acceptable for simple drawings, but it is not very object-oriented. After all, a flag is an object. It is better to make a separate class for the flag. Then you can draw different flags at different positions. Specify the sizes in a constructor and supply a `draw` method:

```
public class ItalianFlag
{
    private int xLeft;
    private int yTop;
    private int width;

    public ItalianFlag(int x, int y, int aWidth)
    {
        xLeft = x;
        yTop = y;
        width = aWidth;
    }

    public void draw(Graphics2D g2)
    {
        Rectangle leftRectangle = new Rectangle(
            xLeft, yTop,
            width / 3, width * 2 / 3);
        . . .
    }
}
```

```

        . . .
        g2.setColor(Color.GREEN);
        g2.fill(leftRectangle);
        . . .
    }
}

```

You still need a separate class for the component, but it is very simple:

```

public class ItalianFlagComponent extends JComponent
{
    public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
    {
        Graphics2D g2 = (Graphics2D) g;
        ItalianFlag flag = new ItalianFlag(100, 100, 90);
        flag.draw(g2);
    }
}

```

### Step 5 Write the viewer class.

Provide a viewer class, with a `main` method in which you construct a frame, add your component, and make your frame visible. The viewer class is completely routine; you only need to change a single line to show a different component.

```

public class ItalianFlagViewer
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        JFrame frame = new JFrame();

        frame.setSize(300, 400);
        frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);

        ItalianFlagComponent component = new ItalianFlagComponent();
        frame.add(component);

        frame.setVisible(true);
    }
}

```



**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**  
Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download the complete flag drawing program.

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### Understand instance variables and the methods that access them.

- An object's instance variables store the data required for executing its methods.
- Each object of a class has its own set of instance variables.
- Private instance variables can only be accessed by methods of the same class.
- Encapsulation is the process of hiding implementation details and providing methods for data access.
- Encapsulation allows a programmer to use a class without having to know its implementation.
- Information hiding makes it simpler for the implementor of a class to locate errors and change implementations.



**Write method and constructor headers that describe the public interface of a class.**

- In order to implement a class, you first need to know which methods are required.
- Constructors set the initial data for objects.
- The constructor name is always the same as the class name.
- Use documentation comments to describe the classes and public methods of your programs.
- Provide documentation comments for every class, every method, every parameter variable, and every return value.

**Implement a class.**

- The private implementation of a class consists of instance variables, and the bodies of constructors and methods.

**Write tests that verify that a class works correctly.**

- A unit test verifies that a class works correctly in isolation, outside a complete program.
- To test a class, use an environment for interactive testing, or write a tester class to execute test instructions.

**Use the technique of object tracing for visualizing object behavior.**

- Write the methods on the front of a card and the instance variables on the back.
- Update the values of the instance variables when a mutator method is called.

**Compare initialization and lifetime of instance, local, and parameter variables.**

- Local variables are declared in the body of a method.
- When a method exits, its local variables are removed.
- Instance variables are initialized to a default value, but you must initialize local variables.

**Recognize the use of the implicit parameter in method declarations.**

- Use of an instance variable name in a method denotes the instance variable of the implicit parameter.
- The `this` reference denotes the implicit parameter.
- A local variable shadows an instance variable with the same name. You can access the instance variable name through the `this` reference.
- A method call without an implicit parameter is applied to the same object.

**Implement classes that draw graphical shapes.**

- It is a good idea to make a class for any part of a drawing that can occur more than once.
- To figure out how to draw a complex shape, make a sketch on graph paper.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

- **R3.1** What is the public interface of the Counter class in Section 3.1? How does it differ from the implementation of the class?
- **R3.2** What is encapsulation? Why is it useful?
- **R3.3** Instance variables are a part of the hidden implementation of a class, but they aren't actually hidden from programmers who have the source code of the class. Explain to what extent the `private` reserved word provides information hiding.
- **R3.4** Consider a class Grade that represents a letter grade, such as A+ or B. Give two choices of instance variables that can be used for implementing the Grade class.
- ■ **R3.5** Consider a class Time that represents a point in time, such as 9 A.M. or 3:30 P.M. Give two different sets of instance variables that can be used for implementing the Time class.
- ■ **R3.6** Suppose the implementor of the Time class of Exercise R3.5 changes from one implementation strategy to another, keeping the public interface unchanged. What do the programmers who use the Time class need to do?
- ■ **R3.7** You can read the `value` instance variable of the Counter class with the `getValue` accessor method. Should there be a `setValue` mutator method to change it? Explain why or why not.
- ■ **R3.8**
  - Show that the `BankAccount(double initialBalance)` constructor is not strictly necessary. That is, if we removed that constructor from the public interface, how could a programmer still obtain `BankAccount` objects with an arbitrary balance?
  - Conversely, could we keep only the `BankAccount(double initialBalance)` constructor and remove the `BankAccount()` constructor?
- ■ **R3.9** Why does the `BankAccount` class not have a `reset` method?
- ■ **R3.10** What happens in our implementation of the `BankAccount` class when more money is withdrawn from the account than the current balance?
- ■ **R3.11** What is the `this` reference? Why would you use it?
- ■ **R3.12** What does the following method do? Give an example of how you can call the method.

```
public class BankAccount
{
    public void mystery(BankAccount that, double amount)
    {
        this.balance = this.balance - amount;
        that.balance = that.balance + amount;
    }
    . . . // Other bank account methods
}
```
- ■ **R3.13** Suppose you want to implement a class `TimeDepositAccount`. A time deposit account has a fixed interest rate that should be set in the constructor, together with the initial balance. Provide a method to get the current balance. Provide a method to add the earned interest to the account. This method should have no arguments because the interest rate is already known. It should have no return value because you already

provided a method for obtaining the current balance. It is not possible to deposit additional funds into this account. Provide a withdraw method that removes the entire balance. Partial withdrawals are not allowed.

- **R3.14** Consider the following implementation of a class Square:

```
public class Square
{
    private int sideLength;
    private int area; // Not a good idea

    public Square(int length)
    {
        sideLength = length;
    }

    public int getArea()
    {
        area = sideLength * sideLength;
        return area;
    }
}
```

Why is it not a good idea to introduce an instance variable for the area? Rewrite the class so that area is a local variable.

- ■ **R3.15** Consider the following implementation of a class Square:

```
public class Square
{
    private int sideLength;
    private int area;

    public Square(int initialLength)
    {
        sideLength = initialLength;
        area = sideLength * sideLength;
    }

    public int getArea() { return area; }
    public void grow() { sideLength = 2 * sideLength; }
}
```

What error does this class have? How would you fix it?

- ■ **Testing R3.16** Provide a unit test class for the Counter class in Section 3.1.

- ■ **Testing R3.17** Read Exercise E3.9, but do not implement the Car class yet. Write a tester class that tests a scenario in which gas is added to the car, the car is driven, more gas is added, and the car is driven again. Print the actual and expected amount of gas in the tank.

- **R3.18** Using the object tracing technique described in Section 3.5, trace the program at the end of Section 3.4.

- ■ **R3.19** Using the object tracing technique described in Section 3.5, trace the program in How To 3.1.

- ■ **R3.20** Using the object tracing technique described in Section 3.5, trace the program in Worked Example 3.1.

- ... R3.21** Design a modification of the `BankAccount` class in which the first five transactions per month are free and a \$1 fee is charged for every additional transaction. Provide a method that deducts the fee at the end of a month. What additional instance variables do you need? Using the object tracing technique described in Section 3.5, trace a scenario that shows how the fees are computed over two months.
- Graphics R3.22** Suppose you want to extend the car viewer program in Section 3.8 to show a suburban scene, with several cars and houses. Which classes do you need?
- Graphics R3.23** Explain why the calls to the `getWidth` and `getHeight` methods in the `CarComponent` class have no explicit parameter.
- Graphics R3.24** How would you modify the `Car` class in order to show cars of varying sizes?

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- E3.1** We want to add a button to the tally counter in Section 3.1 that allows an operator to undo an accidental button click. Provide a method

```
public void undo()
```

that simulates such a button. As an added precaution, make sure that clicking the undo button more often than the click button has no effect. (*Hint:* The call `Math.max(n, 0)` returns `n` if `n` is greater than zero, zero otherwise.)

- E3.2** Simulate a tally counter that can be used to admit a limited number of people. First, the limit is set with a call

```
public void setLimit(int maximum)
```

If the click button is clicked more often than the limit, it has no effect. (*Hint:* The call `Math.min(n, limit)` returns `n` if `n` is less than `limit`, and `limit` otherwise.).

- Testing E3.3** Write a `BankAccountTester` class whose `main` method constructs a bank account, deposits \$1,000, withdraws \$500, withdraws another \$400, and then prints the remaining balance. Also print the expected result.

- E3.4** Add a method

```
public void addInterest(double rate)
```

to the `BankAccount` class that adds interest at the given rate. For example, after the statements

```
BankAccount momSavings = new BankAccount(1000);
momSavings.addInterest(10); // 10 percent interest
```

the balance in `momSavings` is \$1,100. Also supply a `BankAccountTester` class that prints the actual and expected balance.

- E3.5** Write a class `SavingsAccount` that is similar to the `BankAccount` class, except that it has an added instance variable `interest`. Supply a constructor that sets both the initial balance and the interest rate. Supply a method `addInterest` (with no explicit parameter) that adds interest to the account. Write a `SavingsAccountTester` class that constructs a savings account with an initial balance of \$1,000 and an interest rate of 10 percent. Then apply the `addInterest` method and print the resulting balance. Also compute the expected result by hand and print it.

- **E3.6** Add a method `printReceipt` to the `CashRegister` class. The method should print the prices of all purchased items and the total amount due. *Hint:* You will need to form a string of all prices. Use the `concat` method of the `String` class to add additional items to that string. To turn a price into a string, use the call `String.valueOf(price)`.
- **E3.7** After closing time, the store manager would like to know how much business was transacted during the day. Modify the `CashRegister` class to enable this functionality. Supply methods `getSalesTotal` and `getSalesCount` to get the total amount of all sales and the number of sales. Supply a method `reset` that resets any counters and totals so that the next day's sales start from zero.
- **E3.8** Implement a class `Employee`. An employee has a name (a string) and a salary (a double). Provide a constructor with two arguments

```
public Employee(String employeeName, double currentSalary)  
and methods
```

```
public String getName()  
public double getSalary()  
public void raiseSalary(double byPercent)
```

These methods return the name and salary, and raise the employee's salary by a certain percentage. Sample usage:

```
Employee harry = new Employee("Hacker, Harry", 50000);  
harry.raiseSalary(10); // Harry gets a 10 percent raise
```

Supply an `EmployeeTester` class that tests all methods.

- **E3.9** Implement a class `Car` with the following properties. A car has a certain fuel efficiency (measured in miles/gallon or liters/km—pick one) and a certain amount of fuel in the gas tank. The efficiency is specified in the constructor, and the initial fuel level is 0. Supply a method `drive` that simulates driving the car for a certain distance, reducing the amount of gasoline in the fuel tank. Also supply methods `getGasInTank`, returning the current amount of gasoline in the fuel tank, and `addGas`, to add gasoline to the fuel tank. Sample usage:

```
Car myHybrid = new Car(50); // 50 miles per gallon  
myHybrid.addGas(20); // Tank 20 gallons  
myHybrid.drive(100); // Drive 100 miles  
double gasLeft = myHybrid.getGasInTank(); // Get gas remaining in tank
```

You may assume that the `drive` method is never called with a distance that consumes more than the available gas. Supply a `CarTester` class that tests all methods.

- **E3.10** Implement a class `Product`. A product has a name and a price, for example `new Product("Toaster", 29.95)`. Supply methods `getName`, `getPrice`, and `reducePrice`. Supply a program `ProductPrinter` that makes two products, prints the name and price, reduces their prices by \$5.00, and then prints the prices again.
- **E3.11** Provide a class for authoring a simple letter. In the constructor, supply the names of the sender and the recipient:

```
public Letter(String from, String to)
```

Supply a method

```
public void addLine(String line)
```

to add a line of text to the body of the letter.

Supply a method

```
public String getText()
```

that returns the entire text of the letter. The text has the form:

```
Dear recipient name:  
blank line  
first line of the body  
second line of the body  
...  
last line of the body  
blank line  
Sincerely,  
blank line  
sender name
```

Also supply a class LetterPrinter that prints this letter.

Dear John:

I am sorry we must part.  
I wish you all the best.

Sincerely,

Mary

Construct an object of the Letter class and call addLine twice.

*Hints:* (1) Use the concat method to form a longer string from two shorter strings.  
(2) The special string "\n" represents a new line. For example, the statement

```
body = body.concat("Sincerely, ").concat("\n");
```

adds a line containing the string "Sincerely," to the body.

- E3.12** Write a class Bug that models a bug moving along a horizontal line. The bug moves either to the right or left. Initially, the bug moves to the right, but it can turn to change its direction. In each move, its position changes by one unit in the current direction. Provide a constructor

```
public Bug(int initialPosition)
```

and methods

```
public void turn()  
public void move()  
public int getPosition()
```

Sample usage:

```
Bug bugsy = new Bug(10);  
bugsy.move(); // Now the position is 11  
bugsy.turn();  
bugsy.move(); // Now the position is 10
```

Your BugTester should construct a bug, make it move and turn a few times, and print the actual and expected position.

- E3.13** Implement a class Moth that models a moth flying along a straight line. The moth has a position, which is the distance from a fixed origin. When the moth moves toward a point of light, its new position is halfway between its old position and the position of the light source. Supply a constructor

```
public Moth(double initialPosition)
```

and methods

```
public void moveToLight(double lightPosition)
public double getPosition()
```

Your `MothTester` should construct a moth, move it toward a couple of light sources, and check that the moth's position is as expected.

**■■ Graphics E3.14** Write a program that fills the window with a large ellipse, with a black outline and filled with your favorite color. The ellipse should touch the window boundaries, even if the window is resized. Call the `getWidth` and `getHeight` methods of the `JComponent` class in the `paintComponent` method.

**■■ Graphics E3.15** Draw a shooting target—a set of concentric rings in alternating black and white colors. *Hint:* Fill a black circle, then fill a smaller white circle on top, and so on. Your program should be composed of classes `Target`, `TargetComponent`, and `TargetViewer`.



**■■ Graphics E3.16** Write a program that draws a picture of a house. It could be as simple as the accompanying figure, or if you like, make it more elaborate (3-D, skyscraper, marble columns in the entryway, whatever). Implement a class `House` and supply a method `draw(Graphics2D g2)` that draws the house.



**■■ Graphics E3.17** Extend Exercise E3.16 by supplying a `House` constructor for specifying the position and size. Then populate your screen with a few houses of different sizes.

**■■ Graphics E3.18** Change the car viewer program in Section 3.8 to make the cars appear in different colors. Each `Car` object should store its own color. Supply modified `Car` and `CarComponent` classes.

**■■ Graphics E3.19** Change the `Car` class so that the size of a car can be specified in the constructor. Change the `CarComponent` class to make one of the cars appear twice the size of the original example.

**■■ Graphics E3.20** Write a program to plot the string “HELLO”, using only lines and circles. Do not call `drawString`, and do not use `System.out`. Make classes `LetterH`, `LetterE`, `LetterL`, and `LetterO`.

**■■ Graphics E3.21** Write a program that displays the Olympic rings. Color the rings in the Olympic colors. Provide classes `OlympicRing`, `OlympicRingViewer` and `OlympicRingComponent`.



**■■ Graphics E3.22** Make a bar chart to plot the following data set. Label each bar. Make the bars horizontal for easier labeling. Provide a class `BarChartViewer` and a class `BarChartComponent`.

| Bridge Name       | Longest Span (ft) |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| Golden Gate       | 4,200             |
| Brooklyn          | 1,595             |
| Delaware Memorial | 2,150             |
| Mackinac          | 3,800             |

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- ■ ■ **P3.1** Enhance the CashRegister class so that it counts the purchased items. Provide a getItemCount method that returns the count.

- ■ ■ **P3.2** Support computing sales tax in the CashRegister class. The tax rate should be supplied when constructing a CashRegister object. Add recordTaxablePurchase and getTotalTax methods. (Amounts added with recordPurchase are not taxable.) The giveChange method should correctly reflect the sales tax that is charged on taxable items.

- ■ ■ **P3.3** Implement a class Balloon. A balloon starts out with radius 0. Supply a method

```
public void inflate(double amount)
```

that increases the radius by the given amount. Supply a method

```
public double getVolume()
```

that returns the current volume of the balloon. Use `Math.PI` for the value of  $\pi$ . To compute the cube of a value  $r$ , just use  $r * r * r$ .

- ■ ■ **P3.4** Implement a class Student. For the purpose of this exercise, a student has a name and a total quiz score. Supply an appropriate constructor and methods `getName()`, `addQuiz(int score)`, `getTotalScore()`, and `getAverageScore()`. To compute the average, you also need to store the *number of quizzes* that the student took.

Supply a `StudentTester` class that tests all methods.

- ■ ■ **P3.5** Write a class Battery that models a rechargeable battery. A battery has a constructor

```
public Battery(double capacity)
```

where capacity is a value measured in milliampere hours. A typical AA battery has a capacity of 2000 to 3000 mAh. The method

```
public void drain(double amount)
```

drains the capacity of the battery by the given amount. The method

```
public void charge()
```

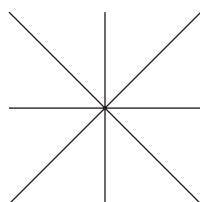
charges the battery to its original capacity.

The method

```
public double getRemainingCapacity()
```

gets the remaining capacity of the battery.

- ■ **Graphics P3.6** Write a program that draws three stars. Use classes Star, StarComponent, and StarViewer. Each star should look like this:



- ■ **P3.7** Implement a class RoachPopulation that simulates the growth of a roach population. The constructor takes the size of the initial roach population. The breed method simulates a period in which the roaches breed, which doubles their population. The

`spray(double percent)` method simulates spraying with insecticide, which reduces the population by the given percentage. The `getRoaches` method returns the current number of roaches. A program called `RoachSimulation` simulates a population that starts out with 10 roaches. Breed, spray to reduce the population by 10 percent, and print the roach count. Repeat three more times.

- **P3.8** Implement a `VotingMachine` class that can be used for a simple election. Have methods to clear the machine state, to vote for a Democrat, to vote for a Republican, and to get the tallies for both parties.

- **P3.9** In this project, you will enhance the `BankAccount` class and see how abstraction and encapsulation enable evolutionary changes to software.

Begin with a simple enhancement: charging a fee for every deposit and withdrawal. Supply a mechanism for setting the fee and modify the `deposit` and `withdraw` methods so that the fee is levied. Test your resulting class and check that the fee is computed correctly.

Now make a more complex change. The bank will allow a fixed number of free transactions (deposits or withdrawals) every month, and charge for transactions exceeding the free allotment. The charge is not levied immediately but at the end of the month.

Supply a new method `deductMonthlyCharge` to the `BankAccount` class that deducts the monthly charge and resets the transaction count. (*Hint:* Use `Math.max(actual transaction count, free transaction count)` in your computation.)

Produce a test program that verifies that the fees are calculated correctly over several months.

- **P3.10** In this project, you will explore an object-oriented alternative to the “Hello, World” program in Chapter 1.

Begin with a simple `Greeter` class that has a single method, `sayHello`. That method should *return* a string, not print it. Create two objects of this class and invoke their `sayHello` methods. Of course, both objects return the same answer.

Enhance the `Greeter` class so that each object produces a customized greeting. For example, the object constructed as `new Greeter("Dave")` should say "Hello, Dave". (Use the `concat` method to combine strings to form a longer string, or peek ahead at Section 4.5 to see how you can use the `+` operator for the same purpose.)

Add a method `sayGoodbye` to the `Greeter` class.

Finally, add a method `refuseHelp` to the `Greeter` class. It should return a string such as "I am sorry, Dave. I am afraid I can't do that."

If you use BlueJ, place two `Greeter` objects on the workbench (one that greets the world and one that greets Dave) and invoke methods on them. Otherwise, write a tester program that constructs these objects, invokes methods, and prints the results.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

- 1.** public void unclick()  
 {  
     value = value - 1;  
 }
- 2.** You can only access them by invoking the methods of the Clock class.
- 3.** In one of the methods of the Counter class.
- 4.** The programmers who designed and implemented the Java library.
- 5.** Other programmers who work on the personal finance application.
- 6.** harrysChecking.withdraw(  
 harrysChecking.getBalance())
- 7.** The withdraw method has return type void. It doesn't return a value. Use the getBalance method to obtain the balance after the withdrawal.
- 8.** Add an accountNumber parameter variable to the constructors, and add a getAccountNumber method. There is no need for a setAccountNumber method—the account number never changes after construction.
- 9.**

```
/**  
 * Constructs a new bank account with a given  
 * initial balance.  
 * @param accountNumber the account number for  
 * this account  
 * @param initialBalance the initial balance for  
 * this account  
 */
```
- 10.** The first sentence of the method description should describe the method—it is displayed in isolation in the summary table.
- 11.** An instance variable needs to be added to the class:
- ```
private int accountNumber;
```
- 12.** Because the balance instance variable is accessed from the main method of BankRobber. The compiler will report an error because main is not a method of the BankAccount class and has no access to BankAccount instance variables.
- 13.** public int getWidth()  
 {  
     return width;  
 }
- 14.** There is more than one correct answer. One possible implementation is as follows:
- ```
public void translate(int dx, int dy)  

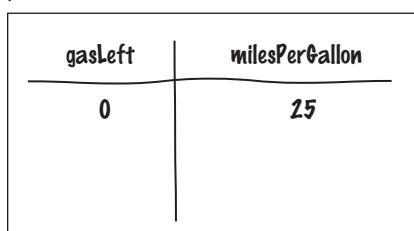
{  

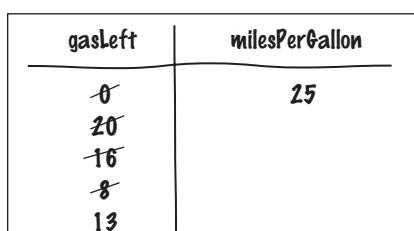
    int newx = x + dx;  

    x = newx;  

    int newy = y + dy;  

    y = newy;  

}
```
- 15.** One BankAccount object, no BankAccountTester object. The purpose of the BankAccountTester class is merely to hold the main method.
- 16.** In those environments, you can issue interactive commands to construct BankAccount objects, invoke methods, and display their return values.
- 17.**   
**Car myCar**  
**Car(mpg)**  
**addGas(amount)**  
**drive(distance)**  
**getGasLeft**
- front**   

|         |                |
|---------|----------------|
| gasLeft | milesPerGallon |
| 0       | 25             |
- back**   

|         |                |
|---------|----------------|
| gasLeft | milesPerGallon |
| 0       | 25             |
| 20      |                |
| 16      |                |
| 8       |                |
| 13      |                |

19.

| gasLeft | milesPerGallon | totalMiles |
|---------|----------------|------------|
| 0       | 25             | 0          |

20.

| gasLeft | milesPerGallon | totalMiles |
|---------|----------------|------------|
| 0       | 25             | 0          |
| 20      |                |            |
| 16      |                | 100        |
| 8       |                | 300        |
| 13      |                |            |

21. Variables of both categories belong to methods—they come alive when the method is called, and they die when the method exits. They differ in their initialization. Parameter variables are initialized with the values supplied as arguments in the call; local variables must be explicitly initialized.
22. After computing the change due, payment and purchase were set to zero. If the method returned payment - purchase, it would always return zero.

23.

| reg1.purchase | reg1.payment | change   |
|---------------|--------------|----------|
| 19.5          | 20           |          |
| 0             | 0            | 0.5<br>X |

24. One implicit parameter, called `this`, of type `BankAccount`, and one explicit parameter, called `amount`, of type `double`.
25. It is not a legal expression. `this` is of type `BankAccount` and the `BankAccount` class has no instance variable named `amount`.
26. No implicit parameter—the `main` method is not invoked on any object—and one explicit parameter, called `args`.
27. `CarComponent`
28. In the `draw` method of the `Car` class, call  
`g2.fill(frontTire);`  
`g2.fill(rearTire);`
29. Double all measurements in the `draw` method of the `Car` class.

# FUNDAMENTAL DATA TYPES

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To understand integer and floating-point numbers
- To recognize the limitations of the numeric types
- To become aware of causes for overflow and roundoff errors
- To understand the proper use of constants
- To write arithmetic expressions in Java
- To use the String type to manipulate character strings
- To write programs that read input and produce formatted output



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### 4.1 NUMBERS 132

*Syntax 4.1:* Constant Declaration 136

*Special Topic 4.1:* Big Numbers 138

*Programming Tip 4.1:* Do Not Use Magic Numbers 139

### 4.2 ARITHMETIC 139

*Syntax 4.2:* Cast 143

*Common Error 4.1:* Unintended Integer Division 144

*Common Error 4.2:* Unbalanced Parentheses 144

*Programming Tip 4.2:* Spaces in Expressions 145

*Special Topic 4.2:* Combining Assignment and Arithmetic 145

*Special Topic 4.3:* Instance Methods and Static Methods 145

*Computing & Society 4.1:* The Pentium Floating-Point Bug 146

### 4.3 INPUT AND OUTPUT 147

*Syntax 4.3:* Input Statement 147

*How To 4.1:* Carrying Out Computations 151

*Worked Example 4.1:* Computing the Volume and Surface Area of a Pyramid

### 4.4 PROBLEM SOLVING: FIRST DO IT BY HAND 154

*Worked Example 4.2:* Computing Travel Time

### 4.5 STRINGS 156

*Programming Tip 4.3:* Reading Exception Reports 162

*Special Topic 4.4:* Using Dialog Boxes for Input and Output 162

*Computing & Society 4.2:* International Alphabets and Unicode 163



Numbers and character strings (such as the ones on this display board) are important data types in any Java program. In this chapter, you will learn how to work with numbers and text, and how to write simple programs that perform useful tasks with them. We also cover the important topic of input and output, which enables you to implement interactive programs.

## 4.1 Numbers

We start this chapter with information about numbers. The following sections tell you how to choose the most appropriate number types for your numeric values, and how to work with constants—numeric values that do not change.

### 4.1.1 Number Types

Java has eight primitive types, including four integer types and two floating-point types.

In Java, every value is either a reference to an object, or it belongs to one of the eight **primitive types** shown in Table 1.

Six of the primitive types are number types; four of them for integers and two for floating-point numbers.

Each of the number types has a different range. Appendix G explains why the range limits are related to powers of two. The largest number that can be represented in an `int` is denoted by `Integer.MAX_VALUE`. Its value is about 2.14 billion. Similarly, the smallest integer is `Integer.MIN_VALUE`, about -2.14 billion.

Table 1 Primitive Types

| Type                 | Description                                                                                                                                                         | Size    |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| <code>int</code>     | The integer type, with range<br>$-2,147,483,648$ ( <code>Integer.MIN_VALUE</code> ) . . . $2,147,483,647$<br>( <code>Integer.MAX_VALUE</code> , about 2.14 billion) | 4 bytes |
| <code>byte</code>    | The type describing a single byte, with range $-128 \dots 127$                                                                                                      | 1 byte  |
| <code>short</code>   | The short integer type, with range $-32,768 \dots 32,767$                                                                                                           | 2 bytes |
| <code>long</code>    | The long integer type, with range<br>$-9,223,372,036,854,775,808 \dots 9,223,372,036,854,775,807$                                                                   | 8 bytes |
| <code>double</code>  | The double-precision floating-point type, with a range of about $\pm 10^{308}$ and about 15 significant decimal digits                                              | 8 bytes |
| <code>float</code>   | The single-precision floating-point type, with a range of about $\pm 10^{38}$ and about 7 significant decimal digits                                                | 4 bytes |
| <code>char</code>    | The character type, representing code units in the Unicode encoding scheme (see Computing & Society 4.2 on page 163)                                                | 2 bytes |
| <code>boolean</code> | The type with the two truth values <code>false</code> and <code>true</code> (see Chapter 5)                                                                         | 1 bit   |

**Table 2** Number Literals in Java

| Number  | Type   | Comment                                                                                                                |
|---------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6       | int    | An integer has no fractional part.                                                                                     |
| -6      | int    | Integers can be negative.                                                                                              |
| 0       | int    | Zero is an integer.                                                                                                    |
| 0.5     | double | A number with a fractional part has type double.                                                                       |
| 1.0     | double | An integer with a fractional part .0 has type double.                                                                  |
| 1E6     | double | A number in exponential notation: $1 \times 10^6$ or 1000000. Numbers in exponential notation always have type double. |
| 2.96E-2 | double | Negative exponent: $2.96 \times 10^{-2} = 2.96 / 100 = 0.0296$                                                         |
| 100,000 |        | <b>Error:</b> Do not use a comma as a decimal separator.                                                               |
| 3 1/2   |        | <b>Error:</b> Do not use fractions; use decimal notation: 3.5                                                          |

When a value such as 6 or 0.335 occurs in a Java program, it is called a **number literal**. If a number literal has a decimal point, it is a floating-point number; otherwise, it is an integer. Table 2 shows how to write integer and floating-point literals in Java.

Generally, you will use the `int` type for integer quantities. Occasionally, however, calculations involving integers can *overflow*. This happens if the result of a computation exceeds the range for the number type. For example,

```
int n = 1000000;
System.out.println(n * n); // Prints -727379968, which is clearly wrong
```

The product `n * n` is  $10^{12}$ , which is larger than the largest integer (about  $2 \cdot 10^9$ ). The result is truncated to fit into an `int`, yielding a value that is completely wrong. Unfortunately, there is no warning when an integer overflow occurs.

If you run into this problem, the simplest remedy is to use the `long` type. Special Topic 4.1 on page 138 shows you how to use the `BigInteger` type in the unlikely event that even the `long` type overflows.

Overflow is not usually a problem for double-precision floating-point numbers. The `double` type has a range of about  $\pm 10^{308}$ . Floating-point numbers have a different problem—limited precision. The `double` type has about 15 significant digits, and there are many numbers that cannot be accurately represented as `double` values.

When a value cannot be represented exactly, it is rounded to the nearest match. Consider this example:

```
double f = 4.35;
System.out.println(100 * f); // Prints 434.99999999999994
```

A numeric computation overflows if the result falls outside the range for the number type.

Rounding errors occur when an exact representation of a floating-point number is not possible.



If a computation yields an integer that is larger than the largest int value (about 2.14 billion), it overflows.

*Floating-point numbers have limited precision.  
Not every value can be represented precisely,  
and roundoff errors can occur.*



The problem arises because computers represent numbers in the binary number system. In the binary number system, there is no exact representation of the fraction  $1/10$ , just as there is no exact representation of the fraction  $1/3 = 0.33333$  in the decimal number system. (See Appendix G for more information.)

For this reason, the `double` type is not appropriate for financial calculations. In this book, we will continue to use `double` values for bank balances and other financial quantities so that we keep our programs as simple as possible. However, professional programs need to use the `BigDecimal` type for this purpose—see Special Topic 4.1.

In Java, it is legal to assign an integer value to a floating-point variable:

```
int dollars = 100;
double balance = dollars; // OK
```

But the opposite assignment is an error: You cannot assign a floating-point expression to an integer variable.

```
double balance = 13.75;
int dollars = balance; // Error
```

You will see in Section 4.2.5 how to convert a value of type `double` into an integer.

In this book, we do not use the `float` type. It has less than 7 significant digits, which greatly increases the risk of **roundoff errors**. Some programmers use `float` to save on memory if they need to store a huge set of numbers that do not require much precision.

### 4.1.2 Constants

In many programs, you need to use numerical **constants**—values that do not change and that have a special significance for a computation.

A typical example for the use of constants is a computation that involves coin values, such as the following:

```
payment = dollars + quarters * 0.25 + dimes * 0.1
        + nickels * 0.05 + pennies * 0.01;
```

Most of the code is self-documenting. However, the four numeric quantities, 0.25, 0.1, 0.05, and 0.01 are included in the arithmetic expression without any explanation. Of course, in this case, you know that the value of a nickel is five cents, which explains the 0.05, and so on. However, the next person who needs to maintain this code may live in another country and may not know that a nickel is worth five cents.

Thus, it is a good idea to use symbolic names for all values, even those that appear obvious. Here is a clearer version of the computation of the total:

```
double quarterValue = 0.25;
double dimeValue = 0.1;
double nickelValue = 0.05;
double pennyValue = 0.01;
```

```
payment = dollars + quarters * quarterValue + dimes * dimeValue
+ nickels * nickelValue + pennies * pennyValue;
```

There is another improvement we can make. There is a difference between the `nickels` and `nickelValue` variables. The `nickels` variable can truly vary over the life of the program, as we calculate different payments. But `nickelValue` is always 0.05.

In Java, constants are identified with the reserved word `final`. A variable tagged as `final` can never change after it has been set. If you try to change the value of a `final` variable, the compiler will report an error and your program will not compile.

Many programmers use all-uppercase names for constants (`final` variables), such as `NICKEL_VALUE`. That way, it is easy to distinguish between variables (with mostly lowercase letters) and constants. We will follow this convention in this book. However, this rule is a matter of good style, not a requirement of the Java language. The compiler will not complain if you give a `final` variable a name with lowercase letters.

Here is an improved version of the code that computes the value of a payment.

```
final double QUARTER_VALUE = 0.25;
final double DIME_VALUE = 0.1;
final double NICKEL_VALUE = 0.05;
final double PENNY_VALUE = 0.01;
payment = dollars + quarters * QUARTER_VALUE + dimes * DIME_VALUE
+ nickels * NICKEL_VALUE + pennies * PENNY_VALUE;
```

Frequently, constant values are needed in several methods. Then you should declare them together with the instance variables of a class and tag them as `static` and `final`. As before, `final` indicates that the value is a constant. The `static` reserved word means that the constant belongs to the class—this is explained in greater detail in Chapter 8.)

```
public class CashRegister
{
    // Constants
    public static final double QUARTER_VALUE = 0.25;
    public static final double DIME_VALUE = 0.1;
    public static final double NICKEL_VALUE = 0.05;
    public static final double PENNY_VALUE = 0.01;

    // Instance variables
    private double purchase;
    private double payment;

    // Methods
    ...
}
```

We declared the constants as `public`. There is no danger in doing this because constants cannot be modified. Methods of other classes can access a public constant by first specifying the name of the class in which it is declared, then a period, then the name of the constant, such as `CashRegister.NICKEL_VALUE`.

The `Math` class from the standard library declares a couple of useful constants:

```
public class Math
{
    ...
    public static final double E = 2.7182818284590452354;
    public static final double PI = 3.14159265358979323846;
}
```

You can refer to these constants as `Math.PI` and `Math.E` in any method. For example,

```
double circumference = Math.PI * diameter;
```

A `final` variable is a constant. Once its value has been set, it cannot be changed.

Use named constants to make your programs easier to read and maintain.

## Syntax 4.1 Constant Declaration

**Syntax** Declared in a method: `final typeName variableName = expression;`  
 Declared in a class: `accessSpecifier static final typeName variableName = expression;`

Declared in a method

`final double NICKEL_VALUE = 0.05;`

The final reserved word indicates that this value cannot be modified.

Use uppercase letters for constants.

Declared in a class

`public static final double LITERS_PER_GALLON = 3.785;`

The sample program below puts constants to work. The program shows a refinement of the `CashRegister` class of How To 3.1. The public interface of that class has been modified in order to solve a common business problem.

Busy cashiers sometimes make mistakes totaling up coin values. Our `CashRegister` class features a method whose inputs are the *coin counts*. For example, the call

`register.receivePayment(1, 2, 1, 1, 4);`

processes a payment consisting of one dollar, two quarters, one dime, one nickel, and four pennies. The `receivePayment` method figures out the total value of the payment, \$1.69. As you can see from the code listing, the method uses named constants for the coin values.

### section\_1/CashRegister.java

```

1  /**
2   * A cash register totals up sales and computes change due.
3  */
4  public class CashRegister
5  {
6      public static final double QUARTER_VALUE = 0.25;
7      public static final double DIME_VALUE = 0.1;
8      public static final double NICKEL_VALUE = 0.05;
9      public static final double PENNY_VALUE = 0.01;
10
11     private double purchase;
12     private double payment;
13
14     /**
15      Constructs a cash register with no money in it.
16     */
17     public CashRegister()
18     {
19         purchase = 0;
20         payment = 0;

```

```

21    }
22
23    /**
24     * Records the purchase price of an item.
25     * @param amount the price of the purchased item
26     */
27    public void recordPurchase(double amount)
28    {
29        purchase = purchase + amount;
30    }
31
32    /**
33     * Processes the payment received from the customer.
34     * @param dollars the number of dollars in the payment
35     * @param quarters the number of quarters in the payment
36     * @param dimes the number of dimes in the payment
37     * @param nickels the number of nickels in the payment
38     * @param pennies the number of pennies in the payment
39     */
40    public void receivePayment(int dollars, int quarters,
41                               int dimes, int nickels, int pennies)
42    {
43        payment = dollars + quarters * QUARTER_VALUE + dimes * DIME_VALUE
44        + nickels * NICKEL_VALUE + pennies * PENNY_VALUE;
45    }
46
47    /**
48     * Computes the change due and resets the machine for the next customer.
49     * @return the change due to the customer
50     */
51    public double giveChange()
52    {
53        double change = payment - purchase;
54        purchase = 0;
55        payment = 0;
56        return change;
57    }
58 }
```

### section\_1/CashRegisterTester.java

```

1    /**
2     * This class tests the CashRegister class.
3     */
4    public class CashRegisterTester
5    {
6        public static void main(String[] args)
7        {
8            CashRegister register = new CashRegister();
9
10            register.recordPurchase(0.75);
11            register.recordPurchase(1.50);
12            register.receivePayment(2, 0, 5, 0, 0);
13            System.out.print("Change: ");
14            System.out.println(register.giveChange());
15            System.out.println("Expected: 0.25");
16
17            register.recordPurchase(2.25);
18            register.recordPurchase(19.25);
19            register.receivePayment(23, 2, 0, 0, 0);
```

```

20     System.out.print("Change: ");
21     System.out.println(register.giveChange());
22     System.out.println("Expected: 2.0");
23 }
24

```

### Program Run

```

Change: 0.25
Expected: 0.25
Change: 2.0
Expected: 2.0

```

#### SELF CHECK



- Which are the most commonly used number types in Java?
- Suppose you want to write a program that works with population data from various countries. Which Java data type should you use?
- Which of the following initializations are incorrect, and why?
  - `int dollars = 100.0;`
  - `double balance = 100;`
- What is the difference between the following two statements?  
`final double CM_PER_INCH = 2.54;`  
 and  
`public static final double CM_PER_INCH = 2.54;`
- What is wrong with the following statement sequence?  
`double diameter = . . . ;`  
`double circumference = 3.14 * diameter;`

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R4.1, R4.21, E4.20.

#### Special Topic 4.1



### Big Numbers

If you want to compute with really large numbers, you can use big number objects. Big number objects are objects of the `BigInteger` and `BigDecimal` classes in the `java.math` package. Unlike the number types such as `int` or `double`, big number objects have essentially no limits on their size and precision. However, computations with big number objects are much slower than those that involve number types. Perhaps more importantly, you can't use the familiar arithmetic operators such as `(+ - *)` with them. Instead, you have to use methods called `add`, `subtract`, and `multiply`. Here is an example of how to create a `BigInteger` object and how to call the `multiply` method:

```

BigInteger n = new BigInteger("1000000");
BigInteger r = n.multiply(n);
System.out.println(r); // Prints 1000000000000

```

The `BigDecimal` type carries out floating-point computations without roundoff errors. For example,

```

BigDecimal d = new BigDecimal("4.35");
BigDecimal e = new BigDecimal("100");
BigDecimal f = d.multiply(e);
System.out.println(f); // Prints 435.00

```

## Programming Tip 4.1

**Do Not Use Magic Numbers**

A **magic number** is a numeric constant that appears in your code without explanation. For example, consider the following scary example that actually occurs in the Java library source:

```
h = 31 * h + ch;
```

Why 31? The number of days in January? One less than the number of bits in an integer? Actually, this code computes a “hash code” from a string—a number that is derived from the characters in such a way that different strings are likely to yield different hash codes. The value 31 turns out to scramble the character values nicely.

A better solution is to use a named constant:

```
final int HASH_MULTIPLIER = 31;
h = HASH_MULTIPLIER * h + ch;
```

You should never use magic numbers in your code. Any number that is not completely self-explanatory should be declared as a named constant. Even the most reasonable cosmic constant is going to change one day. You think there are 365 days in a year? Your customers on Mars are going to be pretty unhappy about your silly prejudice. Make a constant

```
final int DAYS_PER_YEAR = 365;
```



*We prefer programs that are easy to understand over those that appear to work by magic.*

## 4.2 Arithmetic

In this section, you will learn how to carry out arithmetic calculations in Java.

### 4.2.1 Arithmetic Operators



Java supports the same four basic arithmetic operations as a calculator—addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division—but it uses different symbols for the multiplication and division **operators**.

You must write `a * b` to denote multiplication. Unlike in mathematics, you cannot write `a b`, `a · b`, or `a × b`. Similarly, division is always indicated with the `/` operator, never `a ÷` or a fraction bar. For example,  $\frac{a+b}{2}$  becomes `(a + b) / 2`.

The combination of variables, literals, operators, and/or method calls is called an **expression**. For example, `(a + b) / 2` is an expression.

Parentheses are used just as in algebra: to indicate in which order the parts of the expression should be computed. For example, in the expression `(a + b) / 2`, the sum `a + b` is computed first, and then the sum is divided by 2. In contrast, in the expression

$$a + b / 2$$

only `b` is divided by 2, and then the sum of `a` and `b / 2` is formed. As in regular algebraic notation, multiplication and division have a *higher precedence* than addition and subtraction. For example, in the expression `a + b / 2`, the `/` is carried out first, even though the `+` operation occurs further to the left (see Appendix B).

If you mix integer and floating-point values in an arithmetic expression, the result is a floating-point value. For example, `7 + 4.0` is the floating-point value `11.0`.

Mixing integers and floating-point values in an arithmetic expression yields a floating-point value.

## 4.2.2 Increment and Decrement

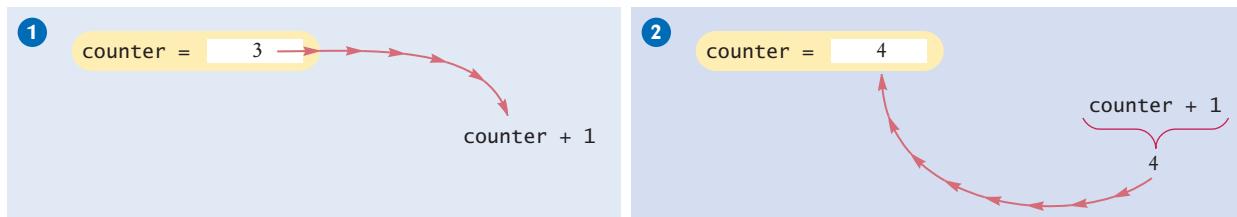
The `++` operator adds 1 to a variable; the `--` operator subtracts 1.

Changing a variable by adding or subtracting 1 is so common that there is a special shorthand for it. The `++` operator increments a variable (see Figure 1):

```
counter++; // Adds 1 to the variable counter
```

Similarly, the `--` operator decrements a variable:

```
counter--; // Subtracts 1 from counter
```



**Figure 1** Incrementing a Variable

## 4.2.3 Integer Division and Remainder

If both arguments of `/` are integers, the remainder is discarded.

Division works as you would expect, as long as at least one of the numbers involved is a floating-point number. That is,

```
7.0 / 4.0  
7 / 4.0  
7.0 / 4
```

all yield 1.75. However, if *both* numbers are integers, then the result of the **integer division** is always an integer, with the remainder discarded. That is,

```
7 / 4
```

evaluates to 1 because 7 divided by 4 is 1 with a remainder of 3 (which is discarded). This can be a source of subtle programming errors—see Common Error 4.1.

If you are interested in the remainder only, use the `%` operator:

```
7 % 4
```

The `%` operator computes the remainder of an integer division.

is 3, the remainder of the integer division of 7 by 4. The `%` symbol has no analog in algebra. It was chosen because it looks similar to `/`, and the remainder operation is related to division. The operator is called **modulus**. (Some people call it *modulo* or *mod*.) It has no relationship with the percent operation that you find on some calculators.

Here is a typical use for the integer `/` and `%` operations. Suppose you have an amount of pennies in a piggybank:

```
int pennies = 1729;
```

You want to determine the value in dollars and cents. You obtain the dollars through an integer division by 100:

```
int dollars = pennies / 100; // Sets dollars to 17
```



*Integer division and the `%` operator yield the dollar and cent values of a piggybank full of pennies.*

**Table 3** Integer Division and Remainder

| Expression<br>(where n = 1729) | Value | Comment                                                                        |
|--------------------------------|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| n % 10                         | 9     | n % 10 is always the last digit of n.                                          |
| n / 10                         | 172   | This is always n without the last digit.                                       |
| n % 100                        | 29    | The last two digits of n.                                                      |
| n / 10.0                       | 172.9 | Because 10.0 is a floating-point number, the fractional part is not discarded. |
| -n % 10                        | -9    | Because the first argument is negative, the remainder is also negative.        |
| n % 2                          | 1     | n % 2 is 0 if n is even, 1 or -1 if n is odd.                                  |

The integer division discards the remainder. To obtain the remainder, use the % operator:

```
int cents = pennies % 100; // Sets cents to 29
```

See Table 3 for additional examples.

#### 4.2.4 Powers and Roots

The Java library declares many mathematical functions, such as Math.sqrt (square root) and Math.pow (raising to a power).

In Java, there are no symbols for powers and roots. To compute them, you must call methods. To take the square root of a number, you use the Math.sqrt method. For example,  $\sqrt{x}$  is written as Math.sqrt(x). To compute  $x^n$ , you write Math.pow(x, n).

In algebra, you use fractions, exponents, and roots to arrange expressions in a compact two-dimensional form. In Java, you have to write all expressions in a linear arrangement. For example, the mathematical expression

$$b \times \left(1 + \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$$

becomes

```
b * Math.pow(1 + r / 100, n)
```

Figure 2 shows how to analyze such an expression. Table 4 shows additional mathematical methods.

$$b \times \left(1 + \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$$

**Figure 2**  
Analyzing an Expression

**Table 4** Mathematical Methods

| Method                         | Returns                                                                      | Method                         | Returns                                                           |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>Math.sqrt(x)</code>      | Square root of $x$ ( $\geq 0$ )                                              | <code>Math.abs(x)</code>       | Absolute value $ x $                                              |
| <code>Math.pow(x, y)</code>    | $x^y$ ( $x > 0$ , or $x = 0$ and $y > 0$ , or $x < 0$ and $y$ is an integer) | <code>Math.max(x, y)</code>    | The larger of $x$ and $y$                                         |
| <code>Math.sin(x)</code>       | Sine of $x$ ( $x$ in radians)                                                | <code>Math.min(x, y)</code>    | The smaller of $x$ and $y$                                        |
| <code>Math.cos(x)</code>       | Cosine of $x$                                                                | <code>Math.exp(x)</code>       | $e^x$                                                             |
| <code>Math.tan(x)</code>       | Tangent of $x$                                                               | <code>Math.log(x)</code>       | Natural log ( $\ln(x)$ , $x > 0$ )                                |
| <code>Math.round(x)</code>     | Closest integer to $x$ (as a <code>long</code> )                             | <code>Math.log10(x)</code>     | Decimal log ( $\log_{10}(x)$ , $x > 0$ )                          |
| <code>Math.ceil(x)</code>      | Smallest integer $\geq x$ (as a <code>double</code> )                        | <code>Math.floor(x)</code>     | Largest integer $\leq x$ (as a <code>double</code> )              |
| <code>Math.toRadians(x)</code> | Convert $x$ degrees to radians (i.e., returns $x \cdot \pi/180$ )            | <code>Math.toDegrees(x)</code> | Convert $x$ radians to degrees (i.e., returns $x \cdot 180/\pi$ ) |

## 4.2.5 Converting Floating-Point Numbers to Integers

Occasionally, you have a value of type `double` that you need to convert to the type `int`. It is an error to assign a floating-point value to an integer:

```
double balance = total + tax;
int dollars = balance; // Error: Cannot assign double to int
```

The compiler disallows this assignment because it is potentially dangerous:

- The fractional part is lost.
- The magnitude may be too large. (The largest integer is about 2 billion, but a floating-point number can be much larger.)

You use a cast (`(typeName)`) to convert a value to a different type.

You must use the `cast` operator (`int`) to convert a convert floating-point value to an integer. Write the cast operator before the expression that you want to convert:

```
double balance = total + tax;
int dollars = (int) balance;
```

The cast (`int`) converts the floating-point value `balance` to an integer by discarding the fractional part. For example, if `balance` is 13.75, then `dollars` is set to 13.

When applying the cast operator to an arithmetic expression, you need to place the expression inside parentheses:

```
int dollars = (int) (total + tax);
```

Discarding the fractional part is not always appropriate. If you want to round a floating-point number to the nearest whole number, use the `Math.round` method. This method returns a `long` integer, because large floating-point numbers cannot be stored in an `int`.

```
long rounded = Math.round(balance);
```

If `balance` is 13.75, then `rounded` is set to 14.

### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates casts, rounding, and the `%` operator.

## Syntax 4.2 Cast

**Syntax** `(typeName) expression`

This is the type of the expression after casting.

These parentheses are a part of the cast operator.

`(int) (balance * 100)`

Use parentheses here if the cast is applied to an expression with arithmetic operators.

If you know that the result can be stored in an `int` and does not require a `long`, you can use a cast:

```
int rounded = (int) Math.round(balance);
```

**Table 5** Arithmetic Expressions

| Mathematical Expression            | Java Expression                       | Comments                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $\frac{x + y}{2}$                  | <code>(x + y) / 2</code>              | The parentheses are required; $x + y / 2$ computes $x + \frac{y}{2}$ .                        |
| $\frac{xy}{2}$                     | <code>x * y / 2</code>                | Parentheses are not required; operators with the same precedence are evaluated left to right. |
| $\left(1 + \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$ | <code>Math.pow(1 + r / 100, n)</code> | Use <code>Math.pow(x, n)</code> to compute $x^n$ .                                            |
| $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$                 | <code>Math.sqrt(a * a + b * b)</code> | $a * a$ is simpler than <code>Math.pow(a, 2)</code> .                                         |
| $\frac{i + j + k}{3}$              | <code>(i + j + k) / 3.0</code>        | If $i, j$ , and $k$ are integers, using a denominator of 3.0 forces floating-point division.  |
| $\pi$                              | <code>Math.PI</code>                  | <code>Math.PI</code> is a constant declared in the <code>Math</code> class.                   |

### SELF CHECK



6. A bank account earns interest once per year. In Java, how do you compute the interest earned in the first year? Assume variables `percent` and `balance` of type `double` have already been declared.
7. In Java, how do you compute the side length of a square whose area is stored in the variable `area`?
8. The volume of a sphere is given by

$$V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$$

If the radius is given by a variable `radius` of type `double`, write a Java expression for the volume.

9. What is the value of  $1729 / 100$  and  $1729 \% 100$ ?
10. If  $n$  is a positive number, what is  $(n / 10) \% 10$ ?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R4.4, R4.6, E4.4, E4.23.

### Common Error 4.1



#### Unintended Integer Division

It is unfortunate that Java uses the same symbol, namely `/`, for both integer and floating-point division. These are really quite different operations. It is a common error to use **integer division** by accident. Consider this segment that computes the average of three integers:

```
int score1 = 10;
int score2 = 4;
int score3 = 9;

double average = (score1 + score2 + score3) / 3; // Error
System.out.println("Average score: " + average); // Prints 7.0, not 7.6666666666666667
```

What could be wrong with that? Of course, the average of `score1`, `score2`, and `score3` is

$$\frac{\text{score1} + \text{score2} + \text{score3}}{3}$$

Here, however, the `/` does not mean division in the mathematical sense. It denotes integer division because both 3 and the sum of `score1 + score2 + score3` are integers. Because the scores add up to 23, the average is computed to be 7, the result of the integer division of 23 by 3. That integer 7 is then moved into the floating-point variable `average`. The remedy is to make the numerator or denominator into a floating-point number:

```
double total = score1 + score2 + score3;
double average = total / 3;
or
double average = (score1 + score2 + score3) / 3.0;
```

### Common Error 4.2



#### Unbalanced Parentheses

Consider the expression

`((a + b) * t) / 2 * (1 - t)`

What is wrong with it? Count the parentheses. There are three `(` and two `)`. The parentheses are *unbalanced*. This kind of typing error is very common with complicated expressions. Now consider this expression.

`(a + b) * t) / (2 * (1 - t)`

This expression has three `(` and three `)`, but it still is not correct. In the middle of the expression,

`(a + b) * t) / (2 * (1 - t)`  
↑

there is only one `(` but two `)`, which is an error. In the middle of an expression, the count of `(` must be greater than or equal to the count of `)`, and at the end of the expression the two counts must be the same.

Here is a simple trick to make the counting easier without using pencil and paper. It is difficult for the brain to keep two counts simultaneously. Keep only one count when scanning the expression. Start with 1 at the first opening parenthesis, add 1 whenever



you see an opening parenthesis, and subtract one whenever you see a closing parenthesis. Say the numbers aloud as you scan the expression. If the count ever drops below zero, or is not zero at the end, the parentheses are unbalanced. For example, when scanning the previous expression, you would mutter

```
(a + b) * t) / (2 * (1 - t)
 1   0   -1
```

and you would find the error.

### Programming Tip 4.2



### Spaces in Expressions

It is easier to read

```
x1 = (-b + Math.sqrt(b * b - 4 * a * c)) / (2 * a);
```

than

```
x1=(-b+Math.sqrt(b*b-4*a*c))/(2*a);
```

Simply put spaces around all operators + - \* / % =. However, don't put a space after a *unary* minus: a – used to negate a single quantity, such as -b. That way, it can be easily distinguished from a *binary* minus, as in a - b.

It is customary not to put a space after a method name. That is, write `Math.sqrt(x)` and not `Math.sqrt (x)`.

### Special Topic 4.2



### Combining Assignment and Arithmetic

In Java, you can combine arithmetic and assignment. For example, the instruction

```
balance += amount;
```

is a shortcut for

```
balance = balance + amount;
```

Similarly,

```
total *= 2;
```

is another way of writing

```
total = total * 2;
```

Many programmers find this a convenient shortcut. If you like it, go ahead and use it in your own code. For simplicity, we won't use it in this book, though.

### Special Topic 4.3



### Instance Methods and Static Methods

In the preceding section, you encountered the `Math` class, which contains a collection of helpful methods for carrying out mathematical computations. These methods do not operate on an object. That is, you don't call

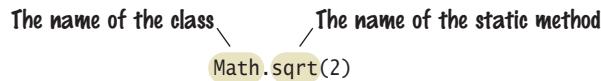
```
double root = 2.sqrt(); // Error
```

In Java, numbers are not objects, so you can never invoke a method on a number. Instead, you pass a number as an argument (explicit parameter) to a method, enclosing the number in parentheses after the method name:

```
double root = Math.sqrt(2);
```

Such methods are called **static methods**. (The term “static” is a historical holdover from the C and C++ programming languages. It has nothing to do with the usual meaning of the word.)

Static methods do not operate on objects, but they are still declared inside classes. When calling the method, you specify the class to which the `sqrt` method belongs:



In contrast, a method that is invoked on an object is called an **instance method**. As a rule of thumb, you use static methods when you manipulate numbers. You will learn more about the distinction between static and instance methods in Chapter 8.



## Computing & Society 4.1 The Pentium Floating-Point Bug

In 1994, Intel Corporation released what was then its most powerful processor, the Pentium. Unlike previous generations of its processors, it had a very fast floating-point unit. Intel's goal was to compete aggressively with the makers of higher-end processors for engineering workstations. The Pentium was a huge success immediately.

In the summer of 1994, Dr. Thomas Nicely of Lynchburg College in Virginia ran an extensive set of computations to analyze the sums of reciprocals of certain sequences of prime numbers. The results were not always what his theory predicted, even after he took into account the inevitable roundoff errors. Then Dr. Nicely noted that the same program did produce the correct results when running on the slower 486 processor that preceded the Pentium in Intel's lineup. This should not have happened. The optimal round-off behavior of floating-point calculations has been standardized by the Institute for Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) and Intel claimed to adhere to the IEEE standard in both the 486 and the Pentium processors. Upon further checking, Dr. Nicely discovered that indeed there was a very small set of numbers for which the product of two numbers was computed differently on the two processors. For example,

$$4,195,835 - ((4,195,835/3,145,727) \times 3,145,727)$$

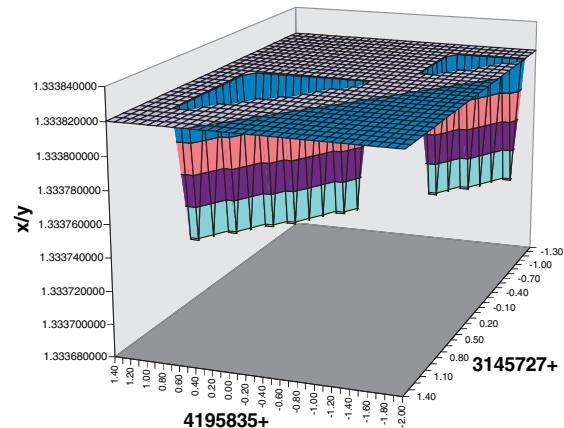
is mathematically equal to 0, and it did compute as 0 on a 486 processor. On his Pentium processor the result was 256.

As it turned out, Intel had independently discovered the bug in its testing and had started to produce chips that fixed it. The bug was caused by an error in a table that was used to speed up the floating-point multiplication algorithm of the processor. Intel determined that the problem was exceedingly rare. They claimed that under normal use, a typical consumer would only notice the problem once every 27,000 years. Unfortunately for Intel, Dr. Nicely had not been a normal user.

Now Intel had a real problem on its hands. It figured that the cost of replacing all Pentium processors that it had sold so far would cost a great deal of money. Intel already had more orders for the chip than it could produce, and it would be particularly galling to have to give out the scarce chips as free replacements instead of selling them. Intel's management decided to punt on the issue and initially offered to replace the processors only for those customers who could prove that their work required absolute precision in mathematical calculations. Naturally, that did not go over well with the hundreds of thousands of customers who had paid retail prices of \$700 and more for a Pentium chip and did not want to live with the nagging feeling that perhaps, one day, their income tax program would produce a faulty return.

Ultimately, Intel caved in to public demand and replaced all defective chips, at a cost of about 475 million dollars.

Pentium FDIV error



*This graph shows a set of numbers for which the original Pentium processor obtained the wrong quotient.*

## 4.3 Input and Output

In the following sections, you will see how to read user input and how to control the appearance of the output that your programs produce.

### 4.3.1 Reading Input



A supermarket scanner reads bar codes. The Java Scanner reads numbers and text.

Use the Scanner class to read keyboard input in a console window.

You can make your programs more flexible if you ask the program user for inputs rather than using fixed values. Consider, for example, a program that processes prices and quantities of soda containers. Prices and quantities are likely to fluctuate. The program user should provide them as inputs.

When a program asks for user input, it should first print a message that tells the user which input is expected. Such a message is called a **prompt**.

```
System.out.print("Please enter the number of bottles: "); // Display prompt
```

Use the `print` method, not `println`, to display the prompt. You want the input to appear after the colon, not on the following line. Also remember to leave a space after the colon.

Because output is sent to `System.out`, you might think that you use `System.in` for input. Unfortunately, it isn't quite that simple. When Java was first designed, not much attention was given to reading keyboard input. It was assumed that all programmers would produce graphical user interfaces with text fields and menus. `System.in` was given a minimal set of features and must be combined with other classes to be useful.

To read keyboard input, you use a class called `Scanner`. You obtain a `Scanner` object by using the following statement:

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
```

Once you have a scanner, you use its `nextInt` method to read an integer value:

```
System.out.print("Please enter the number of bottles: ");
int bottles = in.nextInt();
```

### Syntax 4.3 Input Statement

**Include this line so you can use the Scanner class.**

```
import java.util.Scanner;
```

**Create a Scanner object to read keyboard input.**

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
```

*Don't use println here.*

**Display a prompt in the console window.**

```
System.out.print("Please enter the number of bottles: ");
```

**Define a variable to hold the input value.**

```
int bottles = in.nextInt();
```

*The program waits for user input, then places the input into the variable.*

When the `nextInt` method is called, the program waits until the user types a number and presses the Enter key. After the user supplies the input, the number is placed into the `bottles` variable, and the program continues.

To read a floating-point number, use the `nextDouble` method instead:

```
System.out.print("Enter price: ");
double price = in.nextDouble();
```

The `Scanner` class belongs to the package `java.util`. When using the `Scanner` class, import it by placing the following declaration at the top of your program file:

```
import java.util.Scanner;
```

### 4.3.2 Formatted Output

When you print the result of a computation, you often want to control its appearance. For example, when you print an amount in dollars and cents, you usually want it to be rounded to two significant digits. That is, you want the output to look like

`Price per liter: 1.22`

instead of

`Price per liter: 1.215962441314554`

The following command displays the price with two digits after the decimal point:

```
System.out.printf("%.2f", price);
```

You can also specify a *field width*:

```
System.out.printf("%10.2f", price);
```

The price is printed using ten characters: six spaces followed by the four characters `1.22`.

The construct `%10.2f` is called a *format specifier*: it describes how a value should be formatted. The letter `f` at the end of the format specifier indicates that we are displaying a floating-point number. Use `d` for an integer and `s` for a string; see Table 6 for examples. A format string contains format specifiers and literal characters. Any characters that are not format specifiers are printed verbatim. For example, the command

```
System.out.printf("Price per liter:%10.2f", price);
```

prints

`Price per liter: 1.22`

You use the `printf` method to line up your output in neat columns.

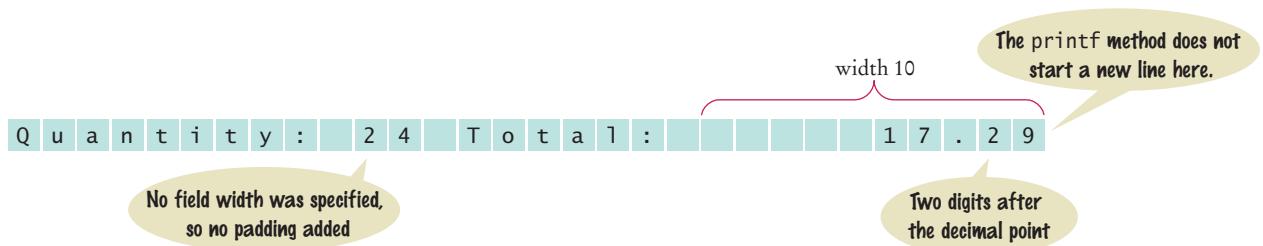
|             | COMMENCEMENT |     |      | TERM  | EXPIRATION |     |
|-------------|--------------|-----|------|-------|------------|-----|
|             | Month        | Day | Year |       | Month      | Day |
| Ornewark    | June         | 4   | 1926 | 5 yrs | June       | 14  |
| Saxenwark   | April        | 24  | 1926 | 5 yrs | April      | 24  |
| Salager     | Mar          | 14  | 1926 | 5 yrs | Mar        | 14  |
| Salager     | Feb          | 9   | 1926 | all   | Mar        | 14  |
| Cold Spring | Oct          | 20  | 1926 | 5 yrs | Oct        | 20  |
| Col. O. Boe | March        | 15  | 1926 | 5 yrs | Mar        | 15  |
| Quinn       | Nov.         | 14  | 1926 | 5 yrs | Nov        | 14  |
| Sr.         | Sept         | 5   | 1926 | 5 yrs | Sept       | 5   |
| Dodge       | May          | 22  | 1926 | 5 yrs | May        | 22  |
| T           | Mar          | 14  | 1926 |       | Oct        | 25  |
| Egan        | Mar          | 14  | 1926 | 5 yrs | Mar        | 14  |

**Table 6 FormatSpecifier Examples**

| Format String  | Sample Output | Comments                                                                               |
|----------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| "%d"           | 24            | Use d with an integer.                                                                 |
| "%5d"          | 24            | Spaces are added so that the field width is 5.                                         |
| "Quantity:%5d" | Quantity: 24  | Characters inside a format string but outside a format specifier appear in the output. |
| "%f"           | 1.21997       | Use f with a floating-point number.                                                    |
| "%.2f"         | 1.22          | Prints two digits after the decimal point.                                             |
| "%7.2f"        | 1.22          | Spaces are added so that the field width is 7.                                         |
| "%s"           | Hello         | Use s with a string.                                                                   |
| "%d %.2f"      | 24 1.22       | You can format multiple values at once.                                                |

You can print multiple values with a single call to the `printf` method. Here is a typical example:

```
System.out.printf("Quantity: %d Total: %10.2f", quantity, total);
```



The `printf` method, like the `print` method, does not start a new line after the output. If you want the next output to be on a separate line, you can call `System.out.println()`. Alternatively, Section 4.5.4 shows you how to add a newline character to the format string.

Our next example program will prompt for the price of a six-pack of soda and a two-liter bottle, and then print out the price per liter for both. The program puts to work what you just learned about reading input and formatting output.

*What is the better deal? A six-pack of 12-ounce cans or a two-liter bottle?*



**section\_3/Volume.java**

```

1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 /**
4     This program prints the price per liter for a six-pack of cans and
5     a two-liter bottle.
6 */
7 public class Volume
8 {
9     public static void main(String[] args)
10    {
11        // Read price per pack
12
13        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
14
15        System.out.print("Please enter the price for a six-pack: ");
16        double packPrice = in.nextDouble();
17
18        // Read price per bottle
19
20        System.out.print("Please enter the price for a two-liter bottle: ");
21        double bottlePrice = in.nextDouble();
22
23        final double CANS_PER_PACK = 6;
24        final double CAN_VOLUME = 0.355; // 12 oz. = 0.355 l
25        final double BOTTLE_VOLUME = 2;
26
27        // Compute and print price per liter
28
29        double packPricePerLiter = packPrice / (CANS_PER_PACK * CAN_VOLUME);
30        double bottlePricePerLiter = bottlePrice / BOTTLE_VOLUME;
31
32        System.out.printf("Pack price per liter: %.2f", packPricePerLiter);
33        System.out.println();
34
35        System.out.printf("Bottle price per liter: %.2f", bottlePricePerLiter);
36        System.out.println();
37    }
38 }
```

**Program Run**

```

Please enter the price for a six-pack: 2.95
Please enter the price for a two-liter bottle: 2.85
Pack price per liter: 1.38
Bottle price per liter: 1.43

```

**SELF CHECK**

11. Write statements to prompt for and read the user's age using a Scanner variable named `in`.
12. What is wrong with the following statement sequence?

```

System.out.print("Please enter the unit price: ");
double unitPrice = in.nextDouble();
int quantity = in.nextInt();

```

**13.** What is problematic about the following statement sequence?

```
System.out.print("Please enter the unit price: ");
double unitPrice = in.nextInt();
```

**14.** What is problematic about the following statement sequence?

```
System.out.print("Please enter the number of cans");
int cans = in.nextInt();
```

**15.** What is the output of the following statement sequence?

```
int volume = 10;
System.out.printf("The volume is %5d", volume);
```

**16.** Using the `printf` method, print the values of the integer variables `bottles` and `cans` so that the output looks like this:

```
Bottles:      8
Cans:        24
```

The numbers to the right should line up. (You may assume that the numbers have at most 8 digits.)

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R4.11, E4.6, E4.7.

## HOW TO 4.1

### Carrying Out Computations



Many programming problems require arithmetic computations. This How To shows you how to turn a problem statement into pseudocode and, ultimately, a Java program.

**Problem Statement** Suppose you are asked to write a program that simulates a vending machine. A customer selects an item for purchase and inserts a bill into the vending machine. The vending machine dispenses the purchased item and gives change. We will assume that all item prices are multiples of 25 cents, and the machine gives all change in dollar coins and quarters. Your task is to compute how many coins of each type to return.

#### Step 1 Understand the problem: What are the inputs? What are the desired outputs?

In this problem, there are two inputs:

- The denomination of the bill that the customer inserts
- The price of the purchased item

There are two desired outputs:

- The number of dollar coins that the machine returns
- The number of quarters that the machine returns

#### Step 2 Work out examples by hand.

This is a very important step. If you can't compute a couple of solutions by hand, it's unlikely that you'll be able to write a program that automates the computation.

Let's assume that a customer purchased an item that cost \$2.25 and inserted a \$5 bill. The customer is due \$2.75, or two dollar coins and three quarters, in change.

That is easy for you to see, but how can a Java program come to the same conclusion? The key is to work in pennies, not dollars. The change due the customer is 275 pennies. Dividing by 100 yields 2, the number of dollars. Dividing the remainder (75) by 25 yields 3, the number of quarters.

**Step 3** Write pseudocode for computing the answers.

In the previous step, you worked out a specific instance of the problem. You now need to come up with a method that works in general.

Given an arbitrary item price and payment, how can you compute the coins due? First, compute the change due in pennies:

**change due = 100 x bill value - item price in pennies**

To get the dollars, divide by 100 and discard the remainder:

**dollar coins = change due / 100 (without remainder)**

The remaining change due can be computed in two ways. If you are familiar with the modulus operator, you can simply compute

**change due = change due % 100**

Alternatively, subtract the penny value of the dollar coins from the change due:

**change due = change due - 100 x dollar coins**

To get the quarters due, divide by 25:

**quarters = change due / 25**

**Step 4** Declare the variables and constants that you need, and specify their types.

Here, we have five variables:

- billValue
- itemPrice
- changeDue
- dollarCoins
- quarters

Should we introduce constants to explain 100 and 25 as `PENNIES_PER_DOLLAR` and `PENNIES_PER_QUARTER`? Doing so will make it easier to convert the program to international markets, so we will take this step.

It is very important that `changeDue` and `PENNIES_PER_DOLLAR` are of type `int` because the computation of `dollarCoins` uses integer division. Similarly, the other variables are integers.

**Step 5** Turn the pseudocode into Java statements.

If you did a thorough job with the pseudocode, this step should be easy. Of course, you have to know how to express mathematical operations (such as powers or integer division) in Java.

```
changeDue = PENNIES_PER_DOLLAR * billValue - itemPrice;
dollarCoins = changeDue / PENNIES_PER_DOLLAR;
changeDue = changeDue % PENNIES_PER_DOLLAR;
quarters = changeDue / PENNIES_PER_QUARTER;
```

**Step 6** Provide input and output.

Before starting the computation, we prompt the user for the bill value and item price:

```
System.out.print("Enter bill value (1 = $1 bill, 5 = $5 bill, etc.): ");
billValue = in.nextInt();
System.out.print("Enter item price in pennies: ");
itemPrice = in.nextInt();
```

When the computation is finished, we display the result. For extra credit, we use the `printf` method to make sure that the output lines up neatly.

```
System.out.printf("Dollar coins: %6d", dollarCoins);
System.out.printf("Quarters:      %6d", quarters);
```

*A vending machine takes bills and gives change in coins.*



### Step 7

Provide a class with a `main` method.

Your computation needs to be placed into a class. Find an appropriate name for the class that describes the purpose of the computation. In our example, we will choose the name `VendingMachine`.

Inside the class, supply a `main` method.

In the `main` method, you need to declare constants and variables (Step 4), carry out computations (Step 5), and provide input and output (Step 6). Clearly, you will want to first get the input, then do the computations, and finally show the output. Declare the constants at the beginning of the method, and declare each variable just before it is needed.

Here is the complete program, `how_to_1/VendingMachine.java`:

```
import java.util.Scanner;

/**
 * This program simulates a vending machine that gives change.
 */
public class VendingMachine
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);

        final int PENNIES_PER_DOLLAR = 100;
        final int PENNIES_PER_QUARTER = 25;

        System.out.print("Enter bill value (1 = $1 bill, 5 = $5 bill, etc.): ");
        int billValue = in.nextInt();
        System.out.print("Enter item price in pennies: ");
        int itemPrice = in.nextInt();

        // Compute change due

        int changeDue = PENNIES_PER_DOLLAR * billValue - itemPrice;
        int dollarCoins = changeDue / PENNIES_PER_DOLLAR;
        changeDue = changeDue % PENNIES_PER_DOLLAR;
        int quarters = changeDue / PENNIES_PER_QUARTER;

        // Print change due

        System.out.printf("Dollar coins: %6d", dollarCoins);
        System.out.println();
    }
}
```

```

        System.out.printf("Quarters:      %6d", quarters);
        System.out.println();
    }
}

```

**Program Run**

```

Enter bill value (1 = $1 bill, 5 = $5 bill, etc.): 5
Enter item price in pennies: 225
Dollar coins:      2
Quarters:         3

```

**WORKED EXAMPLE 4.1****Computing the Volume and Surface Area of a Pyramid**

Learn how to design a class for computing the volume and surface area of a pyramid. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 4.1.



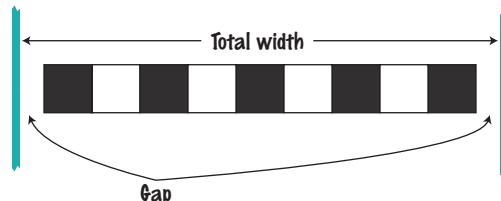
## 4.4 Problem Solving: First Do It By Hand

A very important step for developing an algorithm is to first carry out the computations *by hand*. If you can't compute a solution yourself, it's unlikely that you'll be able to write a program that automates the computation.

To illustrate the use of hand calculations, consider the following problem.

A row of black and white tiles needs to be placed along a wall. For aesthetic reasons, the architect has specified that the first and last tile shall be black.

Your task is to compute the number of tiles needed and the gap at each end, given the space available and the width of each tile.



Pick concrete values for a typical situation to use in a hand calculation.

To make the problem more concrete, let's assume the following dimensions:

- Total width: 100 inches
- Tile width: 5 inches

The obvious solution would be to fill the space with 20 tiles, but that would not work—the last tile would be white.

Instead, look at the problem this way: The first tile must always be black, and then we add some number of white/black pairs:



The first tile takes up 5 inches, leaving 95 inches to be covered by pairs. Each pair is 10 inches wide. Therefore the number of pairs is  $95 / 10 = 9.5$ . However, we need to discard the fractional part since we can't have fractions of tile pairs.

Therefore, we will use 9 tile pairs or 18 tiles, plus the initial black tile. Altogether, we require 19 tiles.

The tiles span  $19 \times 5 = 95$  inches, leaving a total gap of  $100 - 19 \times 5 = 5$  inches.

The gap should be evenly distributed at both ends. At each end, the gap is  $(100 - 19 \times 5) / 2 = 2.5$  inches.

This computation gives us enough information to devise an algorithm with arbitrary values for the total width and tile width.

**number of pairs = integer part of (total width - tile width) / (2 x tile width)**

**number of tiles = 1 + 2 x number of pairs**

**gap at each end = (total width - number of tiles x tile width) / 2**

As you can see, doing a hand calculation gives enough insight into the problem that it becomes easy to develop an algorithm.

### SELF CHECK

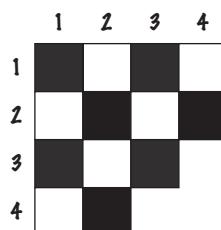
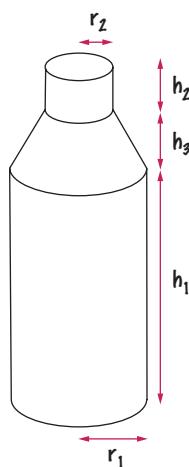


17. Translate the pseudocode for computing the number of tiles and the gap width into Java.
18. Suppose the architect specifies a pattern with black, gray, and white tiles, like this:



Again, the first and last tile should be black. How do you need to modify the algorithm?

19. A robot needs to tile a floor with alternating black and white tiles. Develop an algorithm that yields the color (0 for black, 1 for white), given the row and column number. Start with specific values for the row and column, and then generalize.



20. For a particular car, repair and maintenance costs in year 1 are estimated at \$100; in year 10, at \$1,500. Assuming that the repair cost increases by the same amount every year, develop pseudocode to compute the repair cost in year 3 and then generalize to year  $n$ .
21. The shape of a bottle is approximated by two cylinders of radius  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  and heights  $h_1$  and  $h_2$ , joined by a cone section of height  $h_3$ .

Using the formulas for the volume of a cylinder,  $V = \pi r^2 h$ , and a cone section,

$$V = \pi \frac{(r_1^2 + r_1 r_2 + r_2^2)h}{3},$$

develop pseudocode to compute the volume of the bottle. Using an actual bottle with known volume as a sample, make a hand calculation of your pseudocode.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R4.16, R4.18, R4.19.



### WORKED EXAMPLE 4.2

### Computing Travel Time

Learn how to develop a hand calculation to compute the time that a robot requires to retrieve an item from rocky terrain. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 4.2.



## 4.5 Strings

Strings are sequences of characters.

Many programs process text, not numbers. Text consists of **characters**: letters, numbers, punctuation, spaces, and so on. A **string** is a sequence of characters. For example, the string "Harry" is a sequence of five characters.



### 4.5.1 The String Type

You can declare variables that hold strings.

```
String name = "Harry";
```

We distinguish between string variables (such as the variable `name` declared above) and **string literals** (character sequences enclosed in quotes, such as "Harry"). A string variable is simply a variable that can hold a string, just as an integer variable can hold an integer. A string literal denotes a particular string, just as a number literal (such as 2) denotes a particular number.

The number of characters in a string is called the *length* of the string. For example, the length of "Harry" is 5. As you saw in Section 2.3, you can compute the length of a string with the `length` method.

```
int n = name.length();
```

The `length` method yields the number of characters in a string.

A string of length 0 is called the *empty string*. It contains no characters and is written as "".

## 4.5.2 Concatenation

Use the + operator to *concatenate* strings; that is, to put them together to yield a longer string.

Given two strings, such as "Harry" and "Morgan", you can **concatenate** them to one long string. The result consists of all characters in the first string, followed by all characters in the second string. In Java, you use the + operator to concatenate two strings.

For example,

```
String fName = "Harry";
String lName = "Morgan";
String name = fName + lName;
```

results in the string

"HarryMorgan"

What if you'd like the first and last name separated by a space? No problem:

```
String name = fName + " " + lName;
```

This statement concatenates three strings: fName, the string literal " ", and lName. The result is

"Harry Morgan"

When the expression to the left or the right of a + operator is a string, the other one is automatically forced to become a string as well, and both strings are concatenated.

For example, consider this code:

```
String jobTitle = "Agent";
int employeeId = 7;
String bond = jobTitle + employeeId;
```

Because jobTitle is a string, employeeId is converted from the integer 7 to the string "7". Then the two strings "Agent" and "7" are concatenated to form the string "Agent7".

This concatenation is very useful for reducing the number of System.out.print instructions. For example, you can combine

```
System.out.print("The total is ");
System.out.println(total);
```

to the single call

```
System.out.println("The total is " + total);
```

The concatenation "The total is " + total computes a single string that consists of the string "The total is ", followed by the string equivalent of the number total.

Whenever one of the arguments of the + operator is a string, the other argument is converted to a string.

Use the next method of the Scanner class to read a string containing a single word.

## 4.5.3 String Input

You can read a string from the console:

```
System.out.print("Please enter your name: ");
String name = in.next();
```

When a string is read with the next method, only one word is read. For example, suppose the user types

Harry Morgan

as the response to the prompt. This input consists of two words. The call in.next() yields the string "Harry". You can use another call to in.next() to read the second word.

### 4.5.4 Escape Sequences

To include a quotation mark in a literal string, precede it with a backslash (\), like this:

```
"He said \"Hello\""
```

The backslash is not included in the string. It indicates that the quotation mark that follows should be a part of the string and not mark the end of the string. The sequence \" is called an **escape sequence**.

To include a backslash in a string, use the escape sequence \\, like this:

```
"C:\\Temp\\\\Secret.txt"
```

Another common escape sequence is \n, which denotes a **newline** character. Printing a newline character causes the start of a new line on the display. For example, the statement

```
System.out.print("*\\n**\\n***\\n");
```

prints the characters

```
*  
**  
***
```

on three separate lines.

You often want to add a newline character to the end of the format string when you use `System.out.printf`:

```
System.out.printf("Price: %10.2f\\n", price);
```

### 4.5.5 Strings and Characters

Strings are sequences of **Unicode** characters (see Computing & Society 4.2). In Java, a **character** is a value of the type `char`. Characters have numeric values. You can find the values of the characters that are used in Western European languages in Appendix A. For example, if you look up the value for the character 'H', you can see that it is actually encoded as the number 72.

Character literals are delimited by single quotes, and you should not confuse them with strings.

- 'H' is a character, a value of type `char`.
- "H" is a string containing a single character, a value of type `String`.



*A string is a sequence of characters.*

String positions are counted starting with 0.

The `charAt` method returns a `char` value from a string. The first string position is labeled 0, the second one 1, and so on.

|   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| H | a | r | r | y |
| 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |

The position number of the last character (4 for the string "Harry") is always one less than the length of the string.

For example, the statement

```
String name = "Harry";
char start = name.charAt(0);
char last = name.charAt(4);
```

sets start to the value 'H' and last to the value 'y'.

### 4.5.6 Substrings

Use the `substring` method to extract a part of a string.

Once you have a string, you can extract substrings by using the `substring` method. The method call

```
str.substring(start, pastEnd)
```

returns a string that is made up of the characters in the string str, starting at position start, and containing all characters up to, but not including, the position pastEnd. Here is an example:

```
String greeting = "Hello, World!";
String sub = greeting.substring(0, 5); // sub is "Hello"
```

Here the `substring` operation makes a string that consists of the first five characters taken from the string `greeting`.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|
| H | e | l | l | o | , | W | o | r | l | d  | !  |    |
| 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |

Let's figure out how to extract the substring "World". Count characters starting at 0, not 1. You find that W has position number 7. The first character that you don't want, !, is the character at position 12. Therefore, the appropriate `substring` command is

```
String sub2 = greeting.substring(7, 12);
```

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|
| H | e | l | l | o | , | W | o | r | l | d  | !  |    |
| 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |

^  
5

It is curious that you must specify the position of the first character that you do want and then the first character that you don't want. There is one advantage to this setup. You can easily compute the length of the substring: It is `pastEnd - start`. For example, the string "World" has length  $12 - 7 = 5$ .

If you omit the end position when calling the `substring` method, then all characters from the starting position to the end of the string are copied. For example,

```
String tail = greeting.substring(7); // Copies all characters from position 7 on
sets tail to the string "World!".
```

Following is a simple program that puts these concepts to work. The program asks for your name and that of your significant other. It then prints out your initials.

The operation `first.substring(0, 1)` makes a string consisting of one character, taken from the start of `first`. The program does the same for the `second`. Then it concatenates the resulting one-character strings with the string literal `"&"` to get a string of length 3, the `initials` string. (See Figure 3.)

```

first = R o d o l f o
        0 1 2 3 4 5 6
second = S a l l y
         0 1 2 3 4
initials = R & S
          0 1 2
    
```

**Figure 3** Building the initials String



*Initials are formed from the first letter of each name.*

### section\_5/Initials.java

```

1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 /**
4  * This program prints a pair of initials.
5 */
6 public class Initials
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
11
12        // Get the names of the couple
13
14        System.out.print("Enter your first name: ");
15        String first = in.next();
16        System.out.print("Enter your significant other's first name: ");
17        String second = in.next();
18
19        // Compute and display the inscription
20
21        String initials = first.substring(0, 1)
22            + "&" + second.substring(0, 1);
23        System.out.println(initials);
24    }
25 }
    
```

### Program Run

```

Enter your first name: Rodolfo
Enter your significant other's first name: Sally
R&S
    
```

**Table 7 String Operations**

| Statement                                                                           | Result                                                         | Comment                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| string str = "Ja";<br>str = str + "va";                                             | str is set to "Java"                                           | When applied to strings, + denotes concatenation.                                                        |
| System.out.println("Please" + " enter your name: ");                                | Prints<br>Please enter your name:                              | Use concatenation to break up strings that don't fit into one line.                                      |
| team = 49 + "ers"                                                                   | team is set to "49ers"                                         | Because "ers" is a string, 49 is converted to a string.                                                  |
| String first = in.next();<br>String last = in.next();<br>(User input: Harry Morgan) | first contains "Harry"<br>last contains "Morgan"               | The next method places the next word into the string variable.                                           |
| String greeting = "H & S";<br>int n = greeting.length();                            | n is set to 5                                                  | Each space counts as one character.                                                                      |
| String str = "Sally";<br>char ch = str.charAt(1);                                   | ch is set to 'a'                                               | This is a char value, not a String. Note that the initial position is 0.                                 |
| String str = "Sally";<br>String str2 = str.substring(1, 4);                         | str2 is set to "all"                                           | Extracts the substring starting at position 1 and ending before position 4.                              |
| String str = "Sally";<br>String str2 = str.substring(1);                            | str2 is set to "ally"                                          | If you omit the end position, all characters from the position until the end of the string are included. |
| String str = "Sally";<br>String str2 = str.substring(1, 2);                         | str2 is set to "a"                                             | Extracts a String of length 1; contrast with str.charAt(1).                                              |
| String last = str.substring(str.length() - 1);                                      | last is set to the string containing the last character in str | The last character has position str.length() - 1.                                                        |

**SELF CHECK**

22. What is the length of the string "Java Program"?

23. Consider this string variable.

```
String str = "Java Program";
```

Give a call to the substring method that returns the substring "gram".

24. Use string concatenation to turn the string variable str from Self Check 23 into "Java Programming".

25. What does the following statement sequence print?

```
String str = "Harry";
int n = str.length();
String mystery = str.substring(0, 1) + str.substring(n - 1, n);
System.out.println(mystery);
```

26. Give an input statement to read a name of the form "John Q. Public".

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R4.8, R4.12, E4.14, P4.6.

**Programming Tip 4.3****Reading Exception Reports**

You will often have programs that terminate and display an error message, such as

```
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.StringIndexOutOfBoundsException:  
    String index out of range: -4  
    at java.lang.String.substring(String.java:1444)  
    at Homework1.main(Homework1.java:16)
```

If this happens to you, don't say "it didn't work," or "my program died." Instead, read the error message. Admittedly, the format of the exception report is not very friendly. But it is actually easy to decipher it.

When you have a close look at the error message, you will notice two pieces of useful information:

1. The name of the exception, such as `StringIndexOutOfBoundsException`
2. The line number of the code that contained the statement that caused the exception, such as `Homework1.java:16`

The name of the exception is always in the first line of the report, and it ends in `Exception`. If you get a `StringIndexOutOfBoundsException`, then there was a problem with accessing an invalid position in a string. That is useful information.

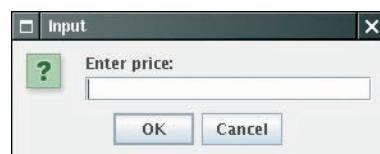
The line number of the offending code is a little harder to determine. The exception report contains the entire **stack trace**—that is, the names of all methods that were pending when the exception hit. The first line of the stack trace is the method that actually generated the exception. The last line of the stack trace is a line in `main`. Often, the exception was thrown by a method that is in the standard library. Look for the first line in your code that appears in the exception report. For example, skip the line that refers to

```
java.lang.String.substring(String.java:1444)
```

The next line in our example mentions a line number in your code, `Homework1.java`. Once you have the line number in your code, open up the file, go to that line, and look at it! Also look at the name of the exception. In most cases, these two pieces of information will make it completely obvious what went wrong, and you can easily fix your error.

**Special Topic 4.4****Using Dialog Boxes for Input and Output**

Most program users find the console window rather old-fashioned. The easiest alternative is to create a separate pop-up window for each input.



An Input Dialog Box

Call the static `showInputDialog` method of the `JOptionPane` class, and supply the string that prompts the input from the user. For example,

```
String input = JOptionPane.showInputDialog("Enter price:");
```

That method returns a `String` object. Of course, often you need the input as a number. Use the `Integer.parseInt` and `Double.parseDouble` methods to convert the string to a number:

```
double price = Double.parseDouble(input);
```

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a complete program that uses option panes for input and output.



You can also display output in a dialog box:

```
JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, "Price: " + price);
```



## Computing & Society 4.2 International Alphabets and Unicode

The English alphabet is pretty simple: upper- and lowercase *a* to *z*. Other European languages have accent marks and special characters. For example, German has three so-called *umlaut* characters, ä, ö, ü, and a *double-s* character ß. These are not optional frills; you couldn't write a page of German text without using these characters a few times. German keyboards have keys for these characters.



*The German Keyboard Layout*

Many countries don't use the Roman script at all. Russian, Greek, Hebrew,

Arabic, and Thai letters, to name just a few, have completely different shapes. To complicate matters, Hebrew and Arabic are typed from right to left. Each of these alphabets has about as many characters as the English alphabet.



*Hebrew, Arabic, and English*

The Chinese languages as well as Japanese and Korean use Chinese characters. Each character represents an idea or thing. Words are made up of one or more of these ideographic characters. Over 70,000 ideographs are known.

Starting in 1987, a consortium of hardware and software manufacturers developed a uniform encoding

scheme called Unicode that is capable of encoding text in essentially all written languages of the world. An early version of Unicode used 16 bits for each character. The Java `char` type corresponds to that encoding.

Today Unicode has grown to a 21-bit code, with definitions for over 100,000 characters ([www.unicode.org](http://www.unicode.org)). There are even plans to add codes for extinct languages, such as Egyptian hieroglyphics. Unfortunately, that means that a Java `char` value does not always correspond to a Unicode character. Some characters in languages such as Chinese or ancient Egyptian occupy two `char` values.



*The Chinese Script*

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### Choose appropriate types for representing numeric data.

- Java has eight primitive types, including four integer types and two floating-point types.
- A numeric computation overflows if the result falls outside the range for the number type.
- Rounding errors occur when an exact conversion between numbers is not possible.
- A *final* variable is a constant. Once its value has been set, it cannot be changed.
- Use named constants to make your programs easier to read and maintain.



## **Write arithmetic expressions in Java.**



- Mixing integers and floating-point values in an arithmetic expression yields a floating-point value.
  - The `++` operator adds 1 to a variable; the `--` operator subtracts 1.
  - If both arguments of `/` are integers, the remainder is discarded.
  - The `%` operator computes the remainder of an integer division.
  - The Java library declares many mathematical functions, such as `Math.sqrt` (square root) and `Math.pow` (raising to a power).
  - You use a cast (`typeName`) to convert a value to a different type.

**Write programs that read user input and print formatted output.**



- Use the Scanner class to read keyboard input in a console window.
  - Use the printf method to specify how values should be formatted.

**Carry out hand calculations when developing an algorithm.**



- Pick concrete values for a typical situation to use in a hand calculation.

## **Write programs that process strings.**



- Strings are sequences of characters.
  - The `length` method yields the number of characters in a string.
  - Use the `+` operator to *concatenate* strings; that is, to put them together to yield a longer string.
  - Whenever one of the arguments of the `+` operator is a string, the other argument is converted to a string.
  - Use the `next` method of the `Scanner` class to read a string containing a single word.
  - String positions are counted starting with 0.
  - Use the `substring` method to extract a part of a string.



## STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER

|                                  |                        |                                   |                                      |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <code>java.io.PrintStream</code> | <code>exp</code>       | <code>java.lang.String</code>     | <code>java.math.BigInteger</code>    |
| <code>printf</code>              | <code>log</code>       | <code>charAt</code>               | <code>add</code>                     |
| <code>java.lang.Double</code>    | <code>log10</code>     | <code>length</code>               | <code>multiply</code>                |
| <code>parseDouble</code>         | <code>max</code>       | <code>substring</code>            | <code>subtract</code>                |
| <code>java.lang.Integer</code>   | <code>min</code>       | <code>java.lang.System</code>     | <code>java.util.Scanner</code>       |
| <code>MAX_VALUE</code>           | <code>pow</code>       | <code>in</code>                   | <code>next</code>                    |
| <code>MIN_VALUE</code>           | <code>round</code>     | <code>java.math.BigDecimal</code> | <code>nextDouble</code>              |
| <code>parseInt</code>            | <code>sin</code>       | <code>add</code>                  | <code>nextInt</code>                 |
| <code>java.lang.Math</code>      | <code>sqrt</code>      | <code>multiply</code>             | <code>javax.swing.JOptionPane</code> |
| <code>PI</code>                  | <code>tan</code>       | <code>subtract</code>             | <code>showInputDialog</code>         |
| <code>abs</code>                 | <code>toDegrees</code> |                                   | <code>showMessageDialog</code>       |
| <code>cos</code>                 | <code>toRadians</code> |                                   |                                      |

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

- **R4.1** Write declarations for storing the following quantities. Choose between integers and floating-point numbers. Declare constants when appropriate.

- The number of days per week
- The number of days until the end of the semester
- The number of centimeters in an inch
- The height of the tallest person in your class, in centimeters

- **R4.2** What is the value of `mystery` after this sequence of statements?

```
int mystery = 1;
mystery = 1 - 2 * mystery;
mystery = mystery + 1;
```

- **R4.3** What is wrong with the following sequence of statements?

```
int mystery = 1;
mystery = mystery + 1;
int mystery = 1 - 2 * mystery;
```

- ■ **R4.4** Write the following Java expressions in mathematical notation.

- `dm = m * (Math.sqrt(1 + v / c) / Math.sqrt(1 - v / c) - 1);`
- `volume = Math.PI * r * r * h;`
- `volume = 4 * Math.PI * Math.pow(r, 3) / 3;`
- `z = Math.sqrt(x * x + y * y);`

- ■ **R4.5** Write the following mathematical expressions in Java.

$$s = s_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2} g t^2$$

$$G = 4\pi^2 \frac{a^3}{p^2(m_1 + m_2)}$$

$$FV = PV \cdot \left(1 + \frac{\text{INT}}{100}\right)^{\text{YRS}}$$

$$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos \gamma}$$

- ■ **R4.6** What are the values of the following expressions? In each line, assume that

```
double x = 2.5;
double y = -1.5;
int m = 18;
int n = 4;
```

- `x + n * y - (x + n) * y`
- `m / n + m % n`
- `5 * x - n / 5`
- `1 - (1 - (1 - (1 - n))))`
- `Math.sqrt(Math.sqrt(n))`

■ R4.7 What are the values of the following expressions, assuming that  $n$  is 17 and  $m$  is 18?

- a.  $n / 10 + n \% 10$
- b.  $n \% 2 + m \% 2$
- c.  $(m + n) / 2$
- d.  $(m + n) / 2.0$
- e.  $(int) (0.5 * (m + n))$
- f.  $(int) Math.round(0.5 * (m + n))$

■ R4.8 What are the values of the following expressions? In each line, assume that

```
String s = "Hello";
String t = "World";
a. s.length() + t.length()
b. s.substring(1, 2)
c. s.substring(s.length() / 2, s.length())
d. s + t
e. t + s
```

■ R4.9 Find at least five *compile-time* errors in the following program.

```
public class HasErrors
{
    public static void main()
    {
        System.out.print("Please enter two numbers:")
        x = in.readDouble;
        y = in.readDouble;
        System.out.println("The sum is " + x + y);
    }
}
```

■ R4.10 Find three *run-time* errors in the following program.

```
public class HasErrors
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int x = 0;
        int y = 0;
        Scanner in = new Scanner("System.in");
        System.out.print("Please enter an integer:");
        x = in.nextInt();
        System.out.print("Please enter another integer: ");
        x = in.nextInt();
        System.out.println("The sum is " + x + y);
    }
}
```

■ R4.11 Consider the following code:

```
CashRegister register = new CashRegister();
register.recordPurchase(19.93);
register.receivePayment(20, 0, 0, 0, 0);
System.out.print("Change: ");
System.out.println(register.giveChange());
```

The code segment prints the total as 0.0700000000000028. Explain why. Give a recommendation to improve the code so that users will not be confused.



- **R4.12** Explain the differences between 2, 2.0, '2', "2", and "2.0".
  - **R4.13** Explain what each of the following program segments computes.
    - a.  $x = 2;$   
 $y = x + x;$
    - b.  $s = "2";$   
 $t = s + s;$
  - ■ **R4.14** Write pseudocode for a program that reads a word and then prints the first character, the last character, and the characters in the middle. For example, if the input is Harry, the program prints H y arr.
  - ■ **R4.15** Write pseudocode for a program that reads a name (such as Harold James Morgan) and then prints a monogram consisting of the initial letters of the first, middle, and last name (such as HJM).
  - ■ ■ **R4.16** Write pseudocode for a program that computes the first and last digit of a number. For example, if the input is 23456, the program should print 2 and 6. *Hint: %, Math.log10.*
  - **R4.17** Modify the pseudocode for the program in How To 4.1 so that the program gives change in quarters, dimes, and nickels. You can assume that the price is a multiple of 5 cents. To develop your pseudocode, first work with a couple of specific values.
  - **R4.18** A cocktail shaker is composed of three cone sections.  
Using realistic values for the radii and heights, compute the total volume, using the formula given in Self Check 21 for a cone section. Then develop an algorithm that works for arbitrary dimensions.
  - ■ ■ **R4.19** You are cutting off a piece of pie like this, where  $c$  is the length of the straight part (called the chord length) and  $b$  is the height of the piece.  
There is an approximate formula for the area:
- $$A \approx \frac{2}{3}cb + \frac{b^3}{2c}$$
- However,  $b$  is not so easy to measure, whereas the diameter  $d$  of a pie is usually well-known. Calculate the area where the diameter of the pie is 12 inches and the chord length of the segment is 10 inches. Generalize to an algorithm that yields the area for any diameter and chord length.
- 
- ■ ■ **R4.20** The following pseudocode describes how to obtain the name of a day, given the day number (0 = Sunday, 1 = Monday, and so on.)  

```

Declare a string called names containing "SunMonTueWedThuFriSat".
Compute the starting position as 3 x the day number.
Extract the substring of names at the starting position with length 3.

```

Check this pseudocode, using the day number 4. Draw a diagram of the string that is being computed, similar to Figure 3.
  - ■ ■ **R4.21** The following pseudocode describes how to swap two letters in a word.  

```

We are given a string str and two positions i and j. (i comes before j)
Set first to the substring from the start of the string to the last position before i.

```

**Set middle to the substring from positions  $i + 1$  to  $j - 1$ .**

**Set last to the substring from position  $j + 1$  to the end of the string.**

**Concatenate the following five strings: first, the string containing just the character at position  $j$ , middle, the string containing just the character at position  $i$ , and last.**

Check this pseudocode, using the string "Gateway" and positions 2 and 4. Draw a diagram of the string that is being computed, similar to Figure 3.

- R4.22 How do you get the first character of a string? The last character? How do you remove the first character? The last character?

- R4.23 Write a program that prints the values

```
3 * 1000 * 1000 * 1000
3.0 * 1000 * 1000 * 1000
```

Explain the results.

### PRACTICE EXERCISES

- E4.1 Write a program that displays the dimensions of a letter-size ( $8.5 \times 11$  inches) sheet of paper in millimeters. There are 25.4 millimeters per inch. Use constants and comments in your program.

- E4.2 Write a program that computes and displays the perimeter of a letter-size ( $8.5 \times 11$  inches) sheet of paper and the length of its diagonal.

- E4.3 Write a program that reads a number and displays the square, cube, and fourth power. Use the `Math.pow` method only for the fourth power.

- E4.4 Write a program that prompts the user for two integers and then prints

- The sum
- The difference
- The product
- The average
- The distance (absolute value of the difference)
- The maximum (the larger of the two)
- The minimum (the smaller of the two)

*Hint:* The `max` and `min` functions are declared in the `Math` class.

- E4.5 Enhance the output of Exercise E4.4 so that the numbers are properly aligned:

|             |       |
|-------------|-------|
| Sum:        | 45    |
| Difference: | -5    |
| Product:    | 500   |
| Average:    | 22.50 |
| Distance:   | 5     |
| Maximum:    | 25    |
| Minimum:    | 20    |

- E4.6 Write a program that prompts the user for a measurement in meters and then converts it to miles, feet, and inches.

■ **E4.7** Write a program that prompts the user for a radius and then prints

- The area and circumference of a circle with that radius
- The volume and surface area of a sphere with that radius

■ ■ **E4.8** Write a program that asks the user for the lengths of a rectangle's sides. Then print

- The area and perimeter of the rectangle
- The length of the diagonal (use the Pythagorean theorem)

■ ■ **E4.9** Improve the program discussed in How To 4.1 to allow input of quarters in addition to bills.

■ ■ ■ **E4.10** Write a program that asks the user to input

- The number of gallons of gas in the tank
- The fuel efficiency in miles per gallon
- The price of gas per gallon

Then print the cost per 100 miles and how far the car can go with the gas in the tank.

■ ■ ■ ■ **E4.11** *File names and extensions.* Write a program that prompts the user for the drive letter (C), the path (\Windows\System), the file name (Readme), and the extension (txt). Then print the complete file name C:\Windows\System\Readme.txt. (If you use UNIX or a Macintosh, skip the drive name and use / instead of \ to separate directories.)

■ ■ ■ ■ ■ **E4.12** Write a program that reads a number between 1,000 and 999,999 from the user, where the user enters a comma in the input. Then print the number without a comma.

Here is a sample dialog; the user input is in color:

```
Please enter an integer between 1,000 and 999,999: 23,456
23456
```

*Hint:* Read the input as a string. Measure the length of the string. Suppose it contains  $n$  characters. Then extract substrings consisting of the first  $n - 4$  characters and the last three characters.

■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ **E4.13** Write a program that reads a number between 1,000 and 999,999 from the user and prints it with a comma separating the thousands. Here is a sample dialog; the user input is in color:

```
Please enter an integer between 1000 and 999999: 23456
23,456
```

■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ **E4.14** *Printing a grid.* Write a program that prints the following grid to play tic-tac-toe.

```
+---+---+
|   |   |
+---+---+
|   |   |
+---+---+
|   |   |
+---+---+
```

Of course, you could simply write seven statements of the form

```
System.out.println("+-+-+-+");
```

You should do it the smart way, though. Declare string variables to hold two kinds of patterns: a comb-shaped pattern and the bottom line. Print the comb three times and the bottom line once.

- E4.15** Write a program that reads in an integer and breaks it into a sequence of individual digits. For example, the input 16384 is displayed as

```
1 6 3 8 4
```

You may assume that the input has no more than five digits and is not negative.

- E4.16** Write a program that reads two times in military format (0900, 1730) and prints the number of hours and minutes between the two times. Here is a sample run. User input is in color.

```
Please enter the first time: 0900
Please enter the second time: 1730
8 hours 30 minutes
```

Extra credit if you can deal with the case where the first time is later than the second:

```
Please enter the first time: 1730
Please enter the second time: 0900
15 hours 30 minutes
```

- E4.17** Writing large letters. A large letter H can be produced like this:

```
*   *
*   *
*****
*   *
*   *
```

It can be declared as a string literal like this:

```
final String LETTER_H = "*   *\n*   *\n*****\n*   *\n*   *";
```

(The \n escape sequence denotes a “newline” character that causes subsequent characters to be printed on a new line.) Do the same for the letters E, L, and O. Then write the message

```
H
E
L
L
O
```

in large letters.

- E4.18** Write a program that transforms numbers 1, 2, 3, ..., 12 into the corresponding month names January, February, March, ..., December. Hint: Make a very long string "January February March ... ", in which you add spaces such that each month name has *the same length*. Then use substring to extract the month you want.

- E4.19** Write a program that prints a Christmas tree:

```
      ^
     / \
    /   \
   /     \
  /       \
 /         \
-----
```

```
"   "
"   "
"   "
```

Remember to use escape sequences.



**E4.20** Enhance the CashRegister class by adding separate methods enterDollars, enterQuarters, enterDimes, enterNickels, and enterPennies.

Use this tester class:

```
public class CashRegisterTester
{
    public static void main (String[] args)
    {
        CashRegister register = new CashRegister();
        register.recordPurchase(20.37);
        register.enterDollars(20);
        register.enterQuarters(2);
        System.out.println("Change: " + register.giveChange());
        System.out.println("Expected: 0.13");
    }
}
```

**■■ E4.21** Implement a class IceCreamCone with methods getSurfaceArea() and getVolume(). In the constructor, supply the height and radius of the cone. Be careful when looking up the formula for the surface area—you should only include the outside area along the side of the cone since the cone has an opening on the top to hold the ice cream.

**■■ E4.22** Implement a class SodaCan whose constructor receives the height and diameter of the soda can. Supply methods getVolume and getSurfaceArea. Supply a SodaCanTester class that tests your class.

**■■■ E4.23** Implement a class Balloon that models a spherical balloon that is being filled with air. The constructor constructs an empty balloon. Supply these methods:

- void addAir(double amount) adds the given amount of air
- double getVolume() gets the current volume
- double getSurfaceArea() gets the current surface area
- double getRadius() gets the current radius

Supply a BalloonTester class that constructs a balloon, adds 100 cm<sup>3</sup> of air, tests the three accessor methods, adds another 100 cm<sup>3</sup> of air, and tests the accessor methods again.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

**■■■ P4.1** Write a program that helps a person decide whether to buy a hybrid car. Your program's inputs should be:

- The cost of a new car
- The estimated miles driven per year
- The estimated gas price
- The efficiency in miles per gallon
- The estimated resale value after 5 years

Compute the total cost of owning the car for five years. (For simplicity, we will not take the cost of financing into account.)



Obtain realistic prices for a new and used hybrid and a comparable car from the Web. Run your program twice, using today's gas price and 15,000 miles per year. Include pseudocode and the program runs with your assignment.

- P4.2** Easter Sunday is the first Sunday after the first full moon of spring. To compute the date, you can use this algorithm, invented by the mathematician Carl Friedrich Gauss in 1800:

1. Let  $y$  be the year (such as 1800 or 2001).
2. Divide  $y$  by 19 and call the remainder  $a$ . Ignore the quotient.
3. Divide  $y$  by 100 to get a quotient  $b$  and a remainder  $c$ .
4. Divide  $b$  by 4 to get a quotient  $d$  and a remainder  $e$ .
5. Divide  $8 * b + 13$  by 25 to get a quotient  $g$ . Ignore the remainder.
6. Divide  $19 * a + b - d - g + 15$  by 30 to get a remainder  $h$ . Ignore the quotient.
7. Divide  $c$  by 4 to get a quotient  $j$  and a remainder  $k$ .
8. Divide  $a + 11 * h$  by 319 to get a quotient  $m$ . Ignore the remainder.
9. Divide  $2 * e + 2 * j - k - h + m + 32$  by 7 to get a remainder  $r$ . Ignore the quotient.
10. Divide  $h - m + r + 90$  by 25 to get a quotient  $n$ . Ignore the remainder.
11. Divide  $h - m + r + n + 19$  by 32 to get a remainder  $p$ . Ignore the quotient.

Then Easter falls on day  $p$  of month  $n$ . For example, if  $y$  is 2001:

$$\begin{array}{lll} a = 6 & h = 18 & n = 4 \\ b = 20, \ c = 1 & j = 0, \ k = 1 & p = 15 \\ d = 5, \ e = 0 & m = 0 & \\ g = 6 & r = 6 & \end{array}$$

Therefore, in 2001, Easter Sunday fell on April 15. Write a program that prompts the user for a year and prints out the month and day of Easter Sunday.

- P4.3** In this project, you will perform calculations with triangles. A triangle is defined by the  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates of its three corner points.

Your job is to compute the following properties of a given triangle:

- the lengths of all sides
- the angles at all corners
- the perimeter
- the area

Implement a `Triangle` class with appropriate methods. Supply a program that prompts a user for the corner point coordinates and produces a nicely formatted table of the triangle properties.

- P4.4** The `CashRegister` class has an unfortunate limitation: It is closely tied to the coin system in the United States and Canada. Research the system used in most of Europe. Your goal is to produce a cash register that works with euros and cents. Rather than designing another limited `CashRegister` implementation for the European market, you should design a separate `Coin` class and a cash register that can work with coins of all types.

- Business P4.5** The following pseudocode describes how a bookstore computes the price of an order from the total price and the number of the books that were ordered.

**Read the total book price and the number of books.**  
**Compute the tax (7.5 percent of the total book price).**  
**Compute the shipping charge (\$2 per book).**  
**The price of the order is the sum of the total book price, the tax, and the shipping charge.**  
**Print the price of the order.**

Translate this pseudocode into a Java program.

- ■ **Business P4.6** The following pseudocode describes how to turn a string containing a ten-digit phone number (such as "4155551212") into a more readable string with parentheses and dashes, like this: "(415) 555-1212".

**Take the substring consisting of the first three characters and surround it with "(" and ")". This is the area code.**  
**Concatenate the area code, the substring consisting of the next three characters, a hyphen, and the substring consisting of the last four characters. This is the formatted number.**

Translate this pseudocode into a Java program that reads a telephone number into a string variable, computes the formatted number, and prints it.

- ■ **Business P4.7** The following pseudocode describes how to extract the dollars and cents from a price given as a floating-point value. For example, a price 2.95 yields values 2 and 95 for the dollars and cents.

**Assign the price to an integer variable dollars.**  
**Multiply the difference price - dollars by 100 and add 0.5.**  
**Assign the result to an integer variable cents.**

Translate this pseudocode into a Java program. Read a price and print the dollars and cents. Test your program with inputs 2.95 and 4.35.

- ■ **Business P4.8** *Giving change.* Implement a program that directs a cashier how to give change. The program has two inputs: the amount due and the amount received from the customer. Display the dollars, quarters, dimes, nickels, and pennies that the customer should receive in return. In order to avoid roundoff errors, the program user should supply both amounts in pennies, for example 274 instead of 2.74.



- ■ **Business P4.9** An online bank wants you to create a program that shows prospective customers how their deposits will grow. Your program should read the initial balance and the annual interest rate. Interest is compounded monthly. Print out the balances after the first three months. Here is a sample run:

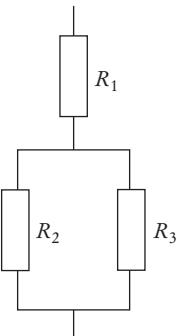
```
Initial balance: 1000
Annual interest rate in percent: 6.0
After first month:    1005.00
After second month:   1010.03
After third month:    1015.08
```

- ■ **Business P4.10** A video club wants to reward its best members with a discount based on the member's number of movie rentals and the number of new members referred by the member. The discount is in percent and is equal to the sum of the rentals and the referrals, but it cannot exceed 75 percent. (*Hint: Math.min.*) Write a program *Discount-Calculator* to calculate the value of the discount.

Here is a sample run:

```
Enter the number of movie rentals: 56
Enter the number of members referred to the video club: 3
The discount is equal to: 59.00 percent.
```

- **Science P4.11** Consider the following circuit.



Write a program that reads the resistances of the three resistors and computes the total resistance, using Ohm's law.

- **Science P4.12** The dew point temperature  $T_d$  can be calculated (approximately) from the relative humidity  $RH$  and the actual temperature  $T$  by

$$T_d = \frac{b \cdot f(T, RH)}{a - f(T, RH)}$$

$$f(T, RH) = \frac{a \cdot T}{b + T} + \ln(RH)$$

where  $a = 17.27$  and  $b = 237.7^\circ\text{C}$ .

Write a program that reads the relative humidity (between 0 and 1) and the temperature (in degrees C) and prints the dew point value. Use the Java function `log` to compute the natural logarithm.

- **Science P4.13** The pipe clip temperature sensors shown here are robust sensors that can be clipped directly onto copper pipes to measure the temperature of the liquids in the pipes.



Each sensor contains a device called a *thermistor*. Thermistors are semiconductor devices that exhibit a temperature-dependent resistance described by:

$$R = R_0 e^{\beta \left( \frac{1}{T} - \frac{1}{T_0} \right)}$$

where  $R$  is the resistance (in  $\Omega$ ) at the temperature  $T$  (in  $^\circ\text{K}$ ), and  $R_0$  is the resistance (in  $\Omega$ ) at the temperature  $T_0$  (in  $^\circ\text{K}$ ).  $\beta$  is a constant that depends on the material used

to make the thermistor. Thermistors are specified by providing values for  $R_0$ ,  $T_0$ , and  $\beta$ .

The thermistors used to make the pipe clip temperature sensors have  $R_0 = 1075 \Omega$  at  $T_0 = 85^\circ\text{C}$ , and  $\beta = 3969^\circ\text{K}$ . (Notice that  $\beta$  has units of  $^\circ\text{K}$ . Recall that the temperature in  $^\circ\text{K}$  is obtained by adding 273 to the temperature in  $^\circ\text{C}$ .) The liquid temperature, in  $^\circ\text{C}$ , is determined from the resistance  $R$ , in  $\Omega$ , using

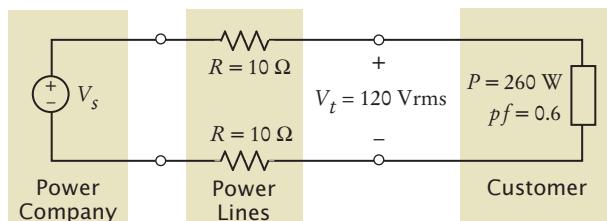
$$T = \frac{\beta T_0}{T_0 \ln\left(\frac{R}{R_0}\right) + \beta} - 273$$

Write a Java program that prompts the user for the thermistor resistance  $R$  and prints a message giving the liquid temperature in  $^\circ\text{C}$ .

- \*\*\* Science P4.24** The circuit shown below illustrates some important aspects of the connection between a power company and one of its customers. The customer is represented by three parameters,  $V_t$ ,  $P$ , and  $pf$ .  $V_t$  is the voltage accessed by plugging into a wall outlet. Customers depend on having a dependable value of  $V_t$  in order for their appliances to work properly. Accordingly, the power company regulates the value of  $V_t$  carefully.



$P$  describes the amount of power used by the customer and is the primary factor in determining the customer's electric bill. The power factor,  $pf$ , is less familiar. (The power factor is calculated as the cosine of an angle so that its value will always be between zero and one.) In this problem you will be asked to write a Java program to investigate the significance of the power factor.

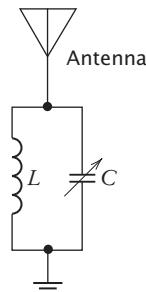


In the figure, the power lines are represented, somewhat simplistically, as resistances in Ohms. The power company is represented as an AC voltage source. The source voltage,  $V_s$ , required to provide the customer with power  $P$  at voltage  $V_t$  can be determined using the formula

$$V_s = \sqrt{\left(V_t + \frac{2RP}{V_t}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{2RP}{pfV_t}\right)^2 (1-pf^2)}$$

( $V_s$  has units of Vrms.) This formula indicates that the value of  $V_s$  depends on the value of  $pf$ . Write a Java program that prompts the user for a power factor value and then prints a message giving the corresponding value of  $V_s$ , using the values for  $P$ ,  $R$ , and  $V_t$  shown in the figure above.

- **Science P4.25** Consider the following tuning circuit connected to an antenna, where  $C$  is a variable capacitor whose capacitance ranges from  $C_{\min}$  to  $C_{\max}$ .



The tuning circuit selects the frequency  $f = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{LC}}$ . To design this circuit for a given frequency, take  $C = \sqrt{C_{\min}C_{\max}}$  and calculate the required inductance  $L$  from  $f$  and  $C$ . Now the circuit can be tuned to any frequency in the range  $f_{\min} = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{LC_{\max}}}$  to  $f_{\max} = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{LC_{\min}}}$ .

Write a Java program to design a tuning circuit for a given frequency, using a variable capacitor with given values for  $C_{\min}$  and  $C_{\max}$ . (A typical input is  $f = 16.7$  MHz,  $C_{\min} = 14$  pF, and  $C_{\max} = 365$  pF.) The program should read in  $f$  (in Hz),  $C_{\min}$  and  $C_{\max}$  (in F), and print the required inductance value and the range of frequencies to which the circuit can be tuned by varying the capacitance.

- **Science P4.26** According to the Coulomb force law, the electric force between two charged particles of charge  $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$  Coulombs, that are a distance  $r$  meters apart, is  $F = \frac{Q_1 Q_2}{4\pi\epsilon r^2}$  Newtons, where  $\epsilon = 8.854 \times 10^{-12}$  Farads/meter. Write a program that calculates the force on a pair of charged particles, based on the user input of  $Q_1$  Coulombs,  $Q_2$  Coulombs, and  $r$  meters, and then computes and displays the electric force.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

- 1.** `int` and `double`.
  - 2.** The world's most populous country, China, has about  $1.2 \times 10^9$  inhabitants. Therefore, individual population counts could be held in an `int`. However, the world population is over  $6 \times 10^9$ . If you compute totals or averages of multiple countries, you can exceed the largest `int` value. Therefore, `double` is a better choice. You could also use `long`, but there is no benefit because the exact population of a country is not known at any point in time.
  - 3.** The first initialization is incorrect. The right hand side is a value of type `double`, and it is not legal to initialize an `int` variable with a `double` value. The second initialization is correct—an `int` value can always be converted to a `double`.
  - 4.** The first declaration is used inside a method, the second inside a class.
  - 5.** Two things: You should use a named constant, not the “magic number” 3.14, and 3.14 is not an accurate representation of  $\pi$ .
  - 6.** `double interest = balance * percent / 100;`
  - 7.** `double sideLength = Math.sqrt(area);`
  - 8.** `4 * PI * Math.pow(radius, 3) / 3`  
or `(4.0 / 3) * PI * Math.pow(radius, 3),`  
but not `(4 / 3) * PI * Math.pow(radius, 3)`
  - 9.** 17 and 29
  - 10.** It is the second-to-last digit of `n`. For example, if `n` is 1729, then `n / 10` is 172, and `(n / 10) % 10` is 2.
  - 11.** `System.out.print("How old are you? ");`  
`int age = in.nextInt();`
  - 12.** There is no prompt that alerts the program user to enter the quantity.
  - 13.** The second statement calls `nextInt`, not `nextDouble`. If the user were to enter a price such as 1.95, the program would be terminated with an “input mismatch exception”.
  - 14.** There is no colon and space at the end of the prompt. A dialog would look like this:  
  
`Please enter the number of cans`6
  - 15.** The total volume is 10  
There are four spaces between `is` and 10. One space originates from the format string (the
- space between `s` and `%`), and three spaces are added before 10 to achieve a field width of 5.
- 16.** Here is a simple solution:
- ```
System.out.printf("Bottles: %8d\n", bottles);
System.out.printf("Cans:    %8d\n", cans);
```
- Note the spaces after `Cans:`. Alternatively, you can use format specifiers for the strings. You can even combine all output into a single statement:
- ```
System.out.printf("%-9s%8d\n%-9s%8d\n",
  "Bottles: ", bottles, "Cans: ", cans);
```
- 17.** `int pairs = (totalWidth - tileSize)
 / (2 * tileSize);
int tiles = 1 + 2 * pairs;
double gap = (totalWidth -
 tiles * tileSize) / 2.0;`
- Be sure that `pairs` is declared as an `int`.
- 18.** Now there are groups of four tiles (gray/white/gray/black) following the initial black tile. Therefore, the algorithm is now
- $$\text{number of groups} = \text{integer part of } (\text{total width} - \text{tile width}) / (4 \times \text{tile width})$$
- $$\text{number of tiles} = 1 + 4 \times \text{number of groups}$$
- The formula for the gap is not changed.
- 19.** The answer depends only on whether the row and column numbers are even or odd, so let's first take the remainder after dividing by 2. Then we can enumerate all expected answers:
- | Row % 2 | Column % 2 | Color |
|---------|------------|-------|
| 0       | 0          | 0     |
| 0       | 1          | 1     |
| 1       | 0          | 1     |
| 1       | 1          | 0     |
- In the first three entries of the table, the color is simply the sum of the remainders. In the fourth entry, the sum would be 2, but we want a zero. We can achieve that by taking another remainder operation:
- $$\text{color} = ((\text{row} \% 2) + (\text{column} \% 2)) \% 2$$
- 20.** In nine years, the repair costs increased by \$1,400. Therefore, the increase per year is  $\$1,400 / 9 \approx \$156$ . The repair cost in year 3 would be  $\$100 + 2 \times \$156 = \$412$ . The repair cost in year `n` is  $\$100 + n \times \$156$ . To avoid accumulation of roundoff errors, it is actually

a good idea to use the original expression that yielded \$156, that is,

$$\text{Repair cost in year } n = 100 + n \times 1400 / 9$$

- 21.** The pseudocode follows from the equations:

$$\text{bottom volume} = \pi \times r_1^2 \times h_1$$

$$\text{top volume} = \pi \times r_2^2 \times h_2$$

$$\text{middle volume} = \pi \times (r_1^2 + r_1 \times r_2 + r_2^2) \times h_3 / 3$$

$$\text{total volume} = \text{bottom volume} + \text{top volume} + \text{middle volume}$$

Measuring a typical wine bottle yields

$$r_1 = 3.6, r_2 = 1.2, h_1 = 15, h_2 = 7, h_3 = 6$$

(all in centimeters). Therefore,

$$\text{bottom volume} = 610.73$$

$$\text{top volume} = 31.67$$

$$\text{middle volume} = 135.72$$

$$\text{total volume} = 778.12$$

The actual volume is 750 ml, which is close enough to our computation to give confidence that it is correct.

- 22.** The length is 12. The space counts as a character.

- 23.** `str.substring(8, 12)` or `str.substring(8)`

- 24.** `str = str + "ming";`

- 25.** Hy

- 26.** `String first = in.next();`  
`String middle = in.next();`  
`String last = in.next();`

# DECISIONS

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To implement decisions using if statements
- To compare integers, floating-point numbers, and strings
- To write statements using the Boolean data type
- To develop strategies for testing your programs
- To validate user input



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### 5.1 THE IF STATEMENT 180

Syntax 5.1: if Statement 182

Programming Tip 5.1: Brace Layout 184

Programming Tip 5.2: Always Use Braces 184

Common Error 5.1: A Semicolon After the if Condition 184

Programming Tip 5.3: Tabs 185

Special Topic 5.1: The Conditional Operator 185

Programming Tip 5.4: Avoid Duplication in Branches 186

### 5.2 COMPARING VALUES 186

Syntax 5.2: Comparisons 187

Common Error 5.2: Using == to Compare Strings 192

How To 5.1: Implementing an if Statement 193

Worked Example 5.1: Extracting the Middle Computing & Society 5.1: Denver's Luggage

Handling System 195

### 5.3 MULTIPLE ALTERNATIVES 196

Special Topic 5.2: The switch Statement 199

### 5.4 NESTED BRANCHES 200

Programming Tip 5.5: Hand-Tracing 203

Common Error 5.3: The Dangling else Problem 204

Special Topic 5.3: Block Scope 205

Special Topic 5.4: Enumeration Types 206

### 5.5 PROBLEM SOLVING: FLOWCHARTS 207

### 5.6 PROBLEM SOLVING: SELECTING TEST CASES 210

Programming Tip 5.6: Make a Schedule and Make Time for Unexpected Problems 212

Special Topic 5.5: Logging 212

### 5.7 BOOLEAN VARIABLES AND OPERATORS 213

Common Error 5.4: Combining Multiple Relational Operators 216

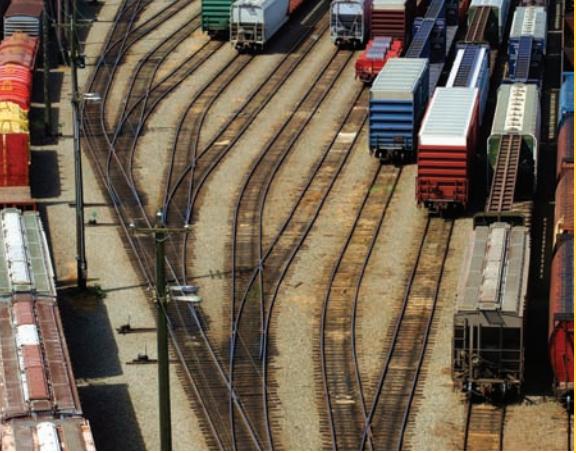
Common Error 5.5: Confusing && and || Conditions 216

Special Topic 5.6: Short-Circuit Evaluation of Boolean Operators 217

Special Topic 5.7: De Morgan's Law 217

### 5.8 APPLICATION: INPUT VALIDATION 218

Computing & Society 5.2: Artificial Intelligence 221



One of the essential features of computer programs is their ability to make decisions. Like a train that changes tracks depending on how the switches are set, a program can take different actions depending on inputs and other circumstances.

In this chapter, you will learn how to program simple and complex decisions. You will apply what you learn to the task of checking user input.

## 5.1 The if Statement

The `if` statement allows a program to carry out different actions depending on the nature of the data to be processed.

The `if` statement is used to implement a decision (see Syntax 5.1). When a condition is fulfilled, one set of statements is executed. Otherwise, another set of statements is executed.

Here is an example using the `if` statement: In many countries, the number 13 is considered unlucky. Rather than offending superstitious tenants, building owners sometimes skip the thirteenth floor; floor 12 is immediately followed by floor 14. Of course, floor 13 is not usually left empty or, as some conspiracy theorists believe, filled with secret offices and research labs. It is simply called floor 14. The computer that controls the building elevators needs to compensate for this foible and adjust all floor numbers above 13.

Let's simulate this process in Java. We will ask the user to type in the desired floor number and then compute the actual floor. When the input is above 13, then we need to decrement the input to obtain the actual floor. For example, if the user provides an input of 20, the program determines the actual floor to be 19. Otherwise, it simply uses the supplied floor number.

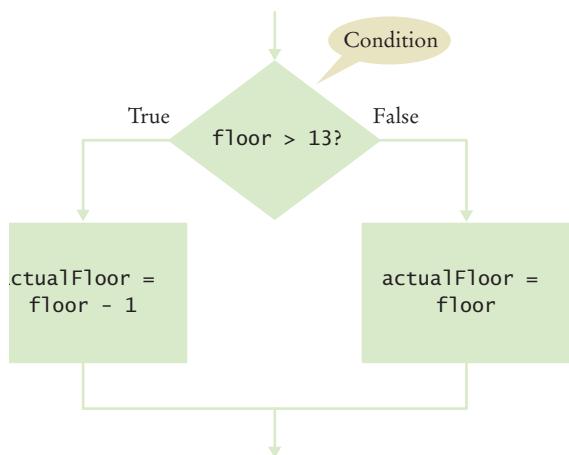
```
int actualFloor;  
  
if (floor > 13)  
{  
    actualFloor = floor - 1;  
}  
else  
{  
    actualFloor = floor;  
}
```



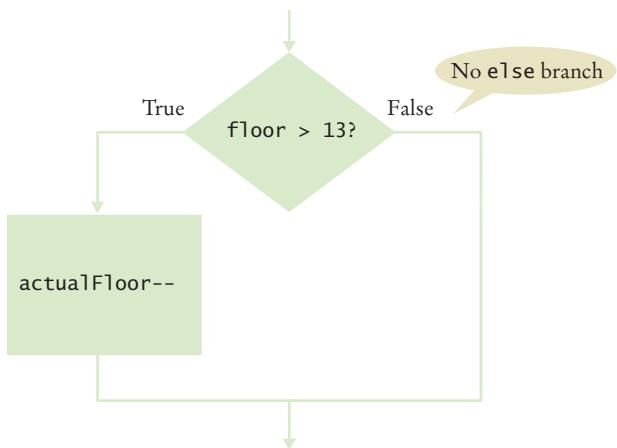
*This elevator panel “skips” the thirteenth floor. The floor is not actually missing—the computer that controls the elevator adjusts the floor numbers above 13.*

The flowchart in Figure 1 shows the branching behavior.

In our example, each branch of the `if` statement contains a single statement. You can include as many statements in each branch as you like. Sometimes, it happens that



**Figure 1**  
Flowchart for if Statement



**Figure 2**  
Flowchart for if Statement with No else Branch

there is nothing to do in the `else` branch of the statement. In that case, you can omit it entirely, such as in this example:

```

int actualFloor = floor;

if (floor > 13)
{
    actualFloor--;
} // No else needed
  
```

See Figure 2 for the flowchart.



An if statement is like a fork in the road. Depending upon a decision, different parts of the program are executed.

## Syntax 5.1 if Statement

**Syntax**

```
if (condition)
{
    statements
}
```

```
if (condition) { statements1 }
else { statements2 }
```

Braces are not required if the branch contains a single statement, but it's good to always use them.

See page 184.

Omit the else branch if there is nothing to do.

Lining up braces is a good idea.  
See page 184.

A condition that is true or false.  
Often uses relational operators:  
 $= =$   $!=$   $<$   $\leq$   $>$   $\geq$  (See page 187.)

Don't put a semicolon here!  
See page 184.

```
if (floor > 13)
{
    actualFloor = floor - 1;
}
else
{
    actualFloor = floor;
}
```

If the condition is true, the statement(s) in this branch are executed in sequence; if the condition is false, they are skipped.

If the condition is false, the statement(s) in this branch are executed in sequence; if the condition is true, they are skipped.

The following program puts the if statement to work. This program asks for the desired floor and then prints out the actual floor.

### section\_1/ElevatorSimulation.java

```

1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 /**
4  * This program simulates an elevator panel that skips the 13th floor.
5 */
6 public class ElevatorSimulation
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
11         System.out.print("Floor: ");
12         int floor = in.nextInt();
13
14         // Adjust floor if necessary
15
16         int actualFloor;
17         if (floor > 13)
18         {
19             actualFloor = floor - 1;
20         }
21         else
22         {

```

```

23     actualFloor = floor;
24 }
25
26     System.out.println("The elevator will travel to the actual floor "
27         + actualFloor);
28 }
29 }
```

**Program Run**

Floor: 20  
The elevator will travel to the actual floor 19

**SELF CHECK**

1. In some Asian countries, the number 14 is considered unlucky. Some building owners play it safe and skip *both* the thirteenth and the fourteenth floor. How would you modify the sample program to handle such a building?
2. Consider the following if statement to compute a discounted price:

```

if (originalPrice > 100)
{
    discountedPrice = originalPrice - 20;
}
else
{
    discountedPrice = originalPrice - 10;
}
```

What is the discounted price if the original price is 95? 100? 105?

3. Compare this if statement with the one in Self Check 2:

```

if (originalPrice < 100)
{
    discountedPrice = originalPrice - 10;
}
else
{
    discountedPrice = originalPrice - 20;
}
```

Do the two statements always compute the same value? If not, when do the values differ?

4. Consider the following statements to compute a discounted price:

```

discountedPrice = originalPrice;
if (originalPrice > 100)
{
    discountedPrice = originalPrice - 10;
}
```

What is the discounted price if the original price is 95? 100? 105?

5. The variables fuelAmount and fuelCapacity hold the actual amount of fuel and the size of the fuel tank of a vehicle. If less than 10 percent is remaining in the tank, a status light should show a red color; otherwise it shows a green color. Simulate this process by printing out either "red" or "green".

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R5.5, R5.6, E5.9.

**Programming Tip 5.1****Brace Layout**

The compiler doesn't care where you place braces. In this book, we follow the simple rule of making { and } line up.

```
if (floor > 13)
{
    floor--;
}
```

This style makes it easy to spot matching braces. Some programmers put the opening brace on the same line as the if:

```
if (floor > 13) {
    floor--;
}
```



*Properly lining up your code makes your programs easier to read.*

This style makes it harder to match the braces, but it saves a line of code, allowing you to view more code on the screen without scrolling. There are passionate advocates of both styles.

It is important that you pick a layout style and stick with it consistently within a given programming project. Which style you choose may depend on your personal preference or a coding style guide that you need to follow.

**Programming Tip 5.2****Always Use Braces**

When the body of an if statement consists of a single statement, you need not use braces. For example, the following is legal:

```
if (floor > 13)
    floor--;
```

However, it is a good idea to always include the braces:

```
if (floor > 13)
{
    floor--;
}
```

The braces make your code easier to read. They also make it easier for you to maintain the code because you won't have to worry about adding braces when you add statements inside an if statement.

**Common Error 5.1****A Semicolon After the if Condition**

The following code fragment has an unfortunate error:

```
if (floor > 13) ; // ERROR
{
    floor--;
}
```

There should be no semicolon after the if condition. The compiler interprets this statement as follows: If floor is greater than 13, execute the statement that is denoted by a single semicolon, that is, the do-nothing statement. The statement enclosed in braces is no longer a part of the if

statement. It is always executed. In other words, even if the value of `floor` is not above 13, it is decremented.

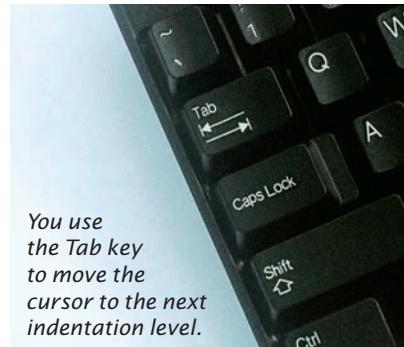
### Programming Tip 5.3



#### Tabs

Block-structured code has the property that nested statements are indented by one or more levels:

```
public class ElevatorSimulation
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int floor;
        . .
        if (floor > 13)
        {
            floor--;
        }
        . .
    }
    |   |
    0 1 2 3  Indentation level
```



How do you move the cursor from the leftmost column to the appropriate indentation level? A perfectly reasonable strategy is to hit the space bar a sufficient number of times. With most editors, you can use the Tab key instead. A tab moves the cursor to the next indentation level. Some editors even have an option to fill in the tabs automatically.

While the Tab key is nice, some editors use *tab characters* for alignment, which is not so nice. Tab characters can lead to problems when you send your file to another person or a printer. There is no universal agreement on the width of a tab character, and some software will ignore tab characters altogether. It is therefore best to save your files with spaces instead of tabs. Most editors have a setting to automatically convert all tabs to spaces. Look at the documentation of your development environment to find out how to activate this useful setting.

### Special Topic 5.1



#### The Conditional Operator

Java has a *conditional operator* of the form

`condition ? value1 : value2`

The value of that expression is either `value1` if the test passes or `value2` if it fails. For example, we can compute the actual floor number as

```
actualFloor = floor > 13 ? floor - 1 : floor;
```

which is equivalent to

```
if (floor > 13) { actualFloor = floor - 1; } else { actualFloor = floor; }
```

You can use the conditional operator anywhere that a value is expected, for example:

```
System.out.println("Actual floor: " + (floor > 13 ? floor - 1 : floor));
```

We don't use the conditional operator in this book, but it is a convenient construct that you will find in many Java programs.

## Programming Tip 5.4

**Avoid Duplication in Branches**

Look to see whether you *duplicate code* in each branch. If so, move it out of the if statement. Here is an example of such duplication:

```
if (floor > 13)
{
    actualFloor = floor - 1;
    System.out.println("Actual floor: " + actualFloor);
}
else
{
    actualFloor = floor;
    System.out.println("Actual floor: " + actualFloor);
}
```

The output statement is exactly the same in both branches. This is not an error—the program will run correctly. However, you can simplify the program by moving the duplicated statement, like this:

```
if (floor > 13)
{
    actualFloor = floor - 1;
}
else
{
    actualFloor = floor;
}
System.out.println("Actual floor: " + actualFloor);
```

Removing duplication is particularly important when programs are maintained for a long time. When there are two sets of statements with the same effect, it can easily happen that a programmer modifies one set but not the other.

## 5.2 Comparing Values

Use relational operators  
(< <= > >= == !=)  
to compare numbers.

Every if statement contains a condition. In many cases, the condition involves comparing two values. In the following sections, you will learn how to implement comparisons in Java.

Relational operators compare values. The == operator tests for equality.

### 5.2.1 Relational Operators

A **relational operator** tests the relationship between two values. An example is the > operator that we used in the test `floor > 13`. Java has six relational operators (see Table 1).

*In Java, you use a relational operator to check whether one value is greater than another.*



**Table 1** Relational Operators

| Java | Math Notation | Description           |
|------|---------------|-----------------------|
| >    | >             | Greater than          |
| >=   | $\geq$        | Greater than or equal |
| <    | <             | Less than             |
| <=   | $\leq$        | Less than or equal    |
| ==   | =             | Equal                 |
| !=   | $\neq$        | Not equal             |

As you can see, only two Java relational operators (`>` and `<`) look as you would expect from the mathematical notation. Computer keyboards do not have keys for  $\leq$ ,  $\geq$ , or  $\neq$ , but the `>=`, `<=`, and `!=` operators are easy to remember because they look similar. The `==` operator is initially confusing to most newcomers to Java.

In Java, `=` already has a meaning, namely assignment. The `==` operator denotes equality testing:

```
floor = 13; // Assign 13 to floor
if (floor == 13) // Test whether floor equals 13
```

You must remember to use `==` inside tests and to use `=` outside tests.

## Syntax 5.2 Comparisons

The diagram illustrates the use of comparison operators in Java, specifically focusing on `>`, `>=`, `==`, and the `equals` method for strings.

- These quantities are compared.**
- Check that you have the right direction:** `>` (greater than) or `<` (less than)
- Check the boundary condition:** `>` (greater) or `>=` (greater or equal)?
- Use `==`, not `=`.**
- One of: `==` `!=` `<` `<=` `>` `>=` (See Table 1.)**
- Checks for equality.**
- String input;**  
`if (input.equals("Y"))`
- Use `equals` to compare strings. (See page 189.)**
- double x; double y; final double EPSILON = 1E-14;**  
`if (Math.abs(x - y) < EPSILON)`
- Checks that these floating-point numbers are very close.**
- See page 188.**

The relational operators in Table 1 have a lower precedence than the arithmetic operators. That means you can write arithmetic expressions on either side of the relational operator without using parentheses. For example, in the expression

```
floor - 1 < 13
```

both sides (`floor - 1` and `13`) of the `<` operator are evaluated, and the results are compared. Appendix B shows a table of the Java operators and their precedence.

## 5.2.2 Comparing Floating-Point Numbers

You have to be careful when comparing floating-point numbers in order to cope with roundoff errors. For example, the following code multiplies the square root of 2 by itself and then subtracts 2.

```
double r = Math.sqrt(2);
double d = r * r - 2;
if (d == 0)
{
    System.out.println("sqrt(2) squared minus 2 is 0");
}
else
{
    System.out.println("sqrt(2) squared minus 2 is not 0 but " + d);
}
```

Even though the laws of mathematics tell us that  $(\sqrt{2})^2 - 2$  equals 0, this program fragment prints

```
sqrt(2) squared minus 2 is not 0 but 4.440892098500626E-16
```

Unfortunately, such roundoff errors are unavoidable. It plainly does not make sense in most circumstances to compare floating-point numbers exactly. Instead, test whether they are *close enough*.

To test whether a number  $x$  is close to zero, you can test whether the absolute value  $|x|$  (that is, the number with its sign removed) is less than a very small threshold number. That threshold value is often called  $\epsilon$  (the Greek letter epsilon). It is common to set  $\epsilon$  to  $10^{-14}$  when testing `double` numbers.

Similarly, you can test whether two numbers are approximately equal by checking whether their difference is close to 0.

$$|x - y| \leq \epsilon$$

In Java, we program the test as follows:

```
final double EPSILON = 1E-14;
if (Math.abs(x - y) <= EPSILON)
{
    // x is approximately equal to y
}
```

## 5.2.3 Comparing Strings

To test whether two strings are equal to each other, you must use the method called `equals`:

```
if (string1.equals(string2)) . . .
```

When comparing floating-point numbers, don't test for equality. Instead, check whether they are close enough.

Do not use the `==` operator to compare strings. Use the `equals` method instead.

The `compareTo` method compares strings in lexicographic order.

c a r

c a r t

c a t

Lettters r comes  
match before t

*Lexicographic  
Ordering*

Do not use the `==` operator to compare strings. The comparison

```
if (string1 == string2) // Not useful
```

has an unrelated meaning. It tests whether the two strings are stored in the same memory location. You can have strings with identical contents stored in different locations, so this test never makes sense in actual programming; see Common Error 5.2 on page 192.

If two strings are not identical, you still may want to know the relationship between them. The `compareTo` method compares strings in **lexicographic order**. This ordering is very similar to the way in which words are sorted in a dictionary. If

```
string1.compareTo(string2) < 0
```

then the string `string1` comes before the string `string2` in the dictionary. For example, this is the case if `string1` is "Harry", and `string2` is "Hello".

Conversely, if

```
string1.compareTo(string2) > 0
```

then `string1` comes after `string2` in dictionary order.

Finally, if

```
string1.compareTo(string2) == 0
```

then `string1` and `string2` are equal.

There are a few technical differences between the ordering in a dictionary and the lexicographic ordering in Java. In Java:

- All uppercase letters come before the lowercase letters. For example, "Z" comes before "a".
- The space character comes before all printable characters.
- Numbers come before letters.
- For the ordering of punctuation marks, see Appendix A.

When comparing two strings, you compare the first letters of each word, then the second letters, and so on, until one of the strings ends or you find the first letter pair that doesn't match.

If one of the strings ends, the longer string is considered the "larger" one. For example, compare "car" with "cart". The first three letters match, and we reach the end of the first string. Therefore "car" comes before "cart" in lexicographic ordering.

When you reach a mismatch, the string containing the "larger" character is considered "larger". For example, compare "cat" with "cart". The first two letters match. Because t comes after r, the string "cat" comes after "cart" in the lexicographic ordering.



*To see which of two terms comes first in the dictionary,  
consider the first letter in which they differ.*

## 5.2.4 Comparing Objects

If you compare two object references with the `==` operator, you test whether the references refer to the same object. Here is an example:

```
Rectangle box1 = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
Rectangle box2 = box1;
Rectangle box3 = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
```

The comparison

```
box1 == box2
```

is true. Both object variables refer to the same object. But the comparison

```
box1 == box3
```

is false. The two object variables refer to different objects (see Figure 3). It does not matter that the objects have identical contents.

You can use the `equals` method to test whether two rectangles have the same contents, that is, whether they have the same upper-left corner and the same width and height. For example, the test

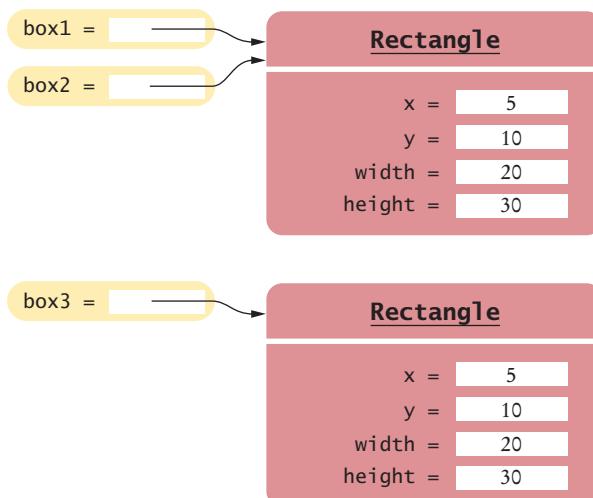
```
box1.equals(box3)
```

is true.

However, you must be careful when using the `equals` method. It works correctly only if the implementors of the class have supplied it. The `Rectangle` class has an `equals` method that is suitable for comparing rectangles.

For your own classes, you need to supply an appropriate `equals` method. You will learn how to do that in Chapter 9. Until that point, you should not use the `equals` method to compare objects of your own classes.

**Figure 3**  
Comparing Object References



## 5.2.5 Testing for null

The `null` reference refers to no object.

An object reference can have the special value `null` if it refers to no object at all. It is common to use the `null` value to indicate that a value has never been set. For example,

```

String middleInitial = null; // Not set
if ( . . . )
{
    middleInitial = middleName.substring(0, 1);
}

```

You use the `==` operator (and not `equals`) to test whether an object reference is a `null` reference:

```

if (middleInitial == null)
{
    System.out.println(firstName + " " + lastName);
}
else
{
    System.out.println(firstName + " " + middleInitial + ". " + lastName);
}

```

Note that the **null reference** is not the same as the empty string `""`. The empty string is a valid string of length 0, whereas a `null` indicates that a string variable refers to no string at all.

Table 2 summarizes how to compare values in Java.



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates comparisons of numbers and strings

**Table 2 Relational Operator Examples**

| Expression                                          | Value | Comment                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>3 &lt;= 4</code>                              | true  | 3 is less than 4; <code>&lt;=</code> tests for “less than or equal”.                                                                                |
| <code>3 =&lt; 4</code>                              | Error | The “less than or equal” operator is <code>&lt;=</code> , not <code>=&lt;</code> . The “less than” symbol comes first.                              |
| <code>3 &gt; 4</code>                               | false | <code>&gt;</code> is the opposite of <code>&lt;=</code> .                                                                                           |
| <code>4 &lt; 4</code>                               | false | The left-hand side must be strictly smaller than the right-hand side.                                                                               |
| <code>4 &lt;= 4</code>                              | true  | Both sides are equal; <code>&lt;=</code> tests for “less than or equal”.                                                                            |
| <code>3 == 5 - 2</code>                             | true  | <code>==</code> tests for equality.                                                                                                                 |
| <code>3 != 5 - 1</code>                             | true  | <code>!=</code> tests for inequality. It is true that 3 is not $5 - 1$ .                                                                            |
| <code>3 = 6 / 2</code>                              | Error | Use <code>==</code> to test for equality.                                                                                                           |
| <code>1.0 / 3.0 == 0.333333333</code>               | false | Although the values are very close to one another, they are not exactly equal. See Section 5.2.2.                                                   |
| <code>"10" &gt; 5</code>                            | Error | You cannot compare a string to a number.                                                                                                            |
| <code>"Tomato".substring(0, 3).equals("Tom")</code> | true  | Always use the <code>equals</code> method to check whether two strings have the same contents.                                                      |
| <code>"Tomato".substring(0, 3) == ("Tom")</code>    | false | Never use <code>==</code> to compare strings; it only checks whether the strings are stored in the same location. See Common Error 5.2 on page 192. |



- 6.** Which of the following conditions are true, provided `a` is 3 and `b` is 4?
- `a + 1 <= b`
  - `a + 1 >= b`
  - `a + 1 != b`
- 7.** Give the opposite of the condition  
`floor > 13`
- 8.** What is the error in this statement?
- ```
if (scoreA = scoreB)
{
    System.out.println("Tie");
}
```
- 9.** Supply a condition in this `if` statement to test whether the user entered a Y:
- ```
System.out.println("Enter Y to quit.");
String input = in.next();
if (... )
{
    System.out.println("Goodbye.");
}
```
- 10.** Give two ways of testing that a string `str` is the empty string.
- 11.** What is the value of `s.length()` if `s` is
- the empty string ""?
  - the string " " containing a space?
  - `null`?
- 12.** Which of the following comparisons are syntactically incorrect? Which of them are syntactically correct, but logically questionable?
- ```
String a = "1";
String b = "one";
double x = 1;
double y = 3 * (1.0 / 3);
```
- `a == "1"`
  - `a == null`
  - `a.equals("")`
  - `a == b`
  - `a == x`
  - `x == y`
  - `x - y == null`
  - `x.equals(y)`

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R5.4, R5.7, E5.13.

### Common Error 5.2



#### Using == to Compare Strings

If you write

```
if (nickname == "Rob")
```

then the test succeeds only if the variable `nickname` refers to the exact same location as the string literal "Rob".

The test will pass if a string variable was initialized with the same string literal:

```
String nickname = "Rob";
.
.
if (nickname == "Rob") // Test is true
```

However, if the string with the letters R o b has been assembled in some other way, then the test will fail:

```
String name = "Robert";
String nickname = name.substring(0, 3);
.
.
if (nickname == "Rob") // Test is false
```

In this case, the `substring` method produces a string in a different memory location. Even though both strings have the same contents, the comparison fails.

You must remember never to use `==` to compare strings. Always use `equals` to check whether two strings have the same contents.

## HOW TO 5.1



### Implementing an if Statement

This How To walks you through the process of implementing an `if` statement. We will illustrate the steps with the following example problem.

**Problem Statement** The university bookstore has a Kilobyte Day sale every October 24, giving an 8 percent discount on all computer accessory purchases if the price is less than \$128, and a 16 percent discount if the price is at least \$128. Write a program that asks the cashier for the original price and then prints the discounted price.

#### Step 1 Decide upon the branching condition.

In our sample problem, the obvious choice for the condition is:

`original price < 128?`

That is just fine, and we will use that condition in our solution.

But you could equally well come up with a correct solution if you choose the opposite condition: Is the original price at least \$128? You might choose this condition if you put yourself into the position of a shopper who wants to know when the bigger discount applies.

#### Step 2 Give pseudocode for the work that needs to be done when the condition is true.

In this step, you list the action or actions that are taken in the “positive” branch. The details depend on your problem. You may want to print a message, compute values, or even exit the program.

In our example, we need to apply an 8 percent discount:

`discounted price = 0.92 x original price`



*Sales discounts are often higher for expensive products. Use the `if` statement to implement such a decision.*

**Step 3** Give pseudocode for the work (if any) that needs to be done when the condition is *not* true.

What do you want to do in the case that the condition of Step 1 is not satisfied? Sometimes, you want to do nothing at all. In that case, use an `if` statement without an `else` branch.

In our example, the condition tested whether the price was less than \$128. If that condition is *not* true, the price is at least \$128, so the higher discount of 16 percent applies to the sale:

$$\text{discounted price} = 0.84 \times \text{original price}$$

**Step 4** Double-check relational operators.

First, be sure that the test goes in the right *direction*. It is a common error to confuse `>` and `<`. Next, consider whether you should use the `<` operator or its close cousin, the `<=` operator.

What should happen if the original price is exactly \$128? Reading the problem carefully, we find that the lower discount applies if the original price is *less than* \$128, and the higher discount applies when it is *at least* \$128. A price of \$128 should therefore *not* fulfill our condition, and we must use `<`, not `<=`.

**Step 5** Remove duplication.

Check which actions are common to both branches, and move them outside. (See Programming Tip 5.4 on page 186.)

In our example, we have two statements of the form

$$\text{discounted price} = \underline{\quad} \times \text{original price}$$

They only differ in the discount rate. It is best to just set the rate in the branches, and to do the computation afterwards:

```
If original price < 128
    discount rate = 0.92
Else
    discount rate = 0.84
discounted price = discount rate × original price
```

**Step 6** Test both branches.

Formulate two test cases, one that fulfills the condition of the `if` statement, and one that does not. Ask yourself what should happen in each case. Then follow the pseudocode and act each of them out.

In our example, let us consider two scenarios for the original price: \$100 and \$200. We expect that the first price is discounted by \$8, the second by \$32.

When the original price is 100, then the condition `100 < 128` is true, and we get

```
discount rate = 0.92
discounted price = 0.92 × 100 = 92
```

When the original price is 200, then the condition `200 < 128` is false, and

```
discount rate = 0.84
discounted price = 0.84 × 200 = 168
```

In both cases, we get the expected answer.

**Step 7** Assemble the `if` statement in Java.

Type the skeleton

```
if ()
{
}
else
{
```

```
}
```

and fill it in, as shown in Syntax 5.1 on page 182. Omit the `else` branch if it is not needed.

In our example, the completed statement is

```
if (originalPrice < 128)
{
    discountRate = 0.92;
}
else
{
    discountRate = 0.84;
}
discountedPrice = discountRate * originalPrice;
```



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download the complete program for calculating a discounted price.



#### WORKED EXAMPLE 5.1

#### Extracting the Middle

Learn how to extract the middle character from a string, or the two middle characters if the length of the string is even. Go to [www.wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://www.wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 5.1.

c	r	a	t	e
0	1	2	3	4



#### Computing & Society 5.1 Denver's Luggage Handling System

Making decisions is an essential part of any computer program. Nowhere is this more obvious than in a computer system that helps sort luggage at an airport. After scanning the luggage identification codes, the system sorts the items and routes them to different conveyor belts. Human operators then place the items onto trucks. When the city of Denver built a huge airport to replace an outdated and congested facility, the luggage system contractor went a step further. The new system was designed to replace the human operators with robotic carts. Unfortunately, the system plainly did not work. It was plagued by mechanical problems, such as luggage falling onto the tracks and jamming carts. Equally frustrating were the software glitches. Carts would uselessly accumulate at some locations when they were needed elsewhere.

The airport had been scheduled to open in 1993, but without a functioning luggage system, the opening was delayed for over a year while the contractor tried to fix the problems. The contractor never succeeded, and ultimately a manual system was installed. The delay cost the city and airlines close to a billion dollars, and the contractor, once the leading luggage systems vendor in the United States, went bankrupt.

Clearly, it is very risky to build a large system based on a technology that has never been tried on a smaller scale. As robots and the software that controls them get better over time, they will take on a larger share of luggage handling in the future. But it is likely that this will happen in an incremental fashion.



*The Denver airport originally had a fully automatic system for moving luggage, replacing human operators with robotic carts. Unfortunately, the system never worked and was dismantled before the airport was opened.*

## 5.3 Multiple Alternatives

Multiple if statements can be combined to evaluate complex decisions.

*The 1989 Loma Prieta earthquake that damaged the Bay Bridge in San Francisco and destroyed many buildings measured 7.1 on the Richter scale.*



In Section 5.1, you saw how to program a two-way branch with an `if` statement. In many situations, there are more than two cases. In this section, you will see how to implement a decision with multiple alternatives.

For example, consider a program that displays the effect of an earthquake, as measured by the Richter scale (see Table 3).

**Table 3** Richter Scale

Value	Effect
8	Most structures fall
7	Many buildings destroyed
6	Many buildings considerably damaged, some collapse
4.5	Damage to poorly constructed buildings

The Richter scale is a measurement of the strength of an earthquake. Every step in the scale, for example from 6.0 to 7.0, signifies a tenfold increase in the strength of the quake.

In this case, there are five branches: one each for the four descriptions of damage, and one for no destruction. Figure 4 shows the flowchart for this multiple-branch statement.

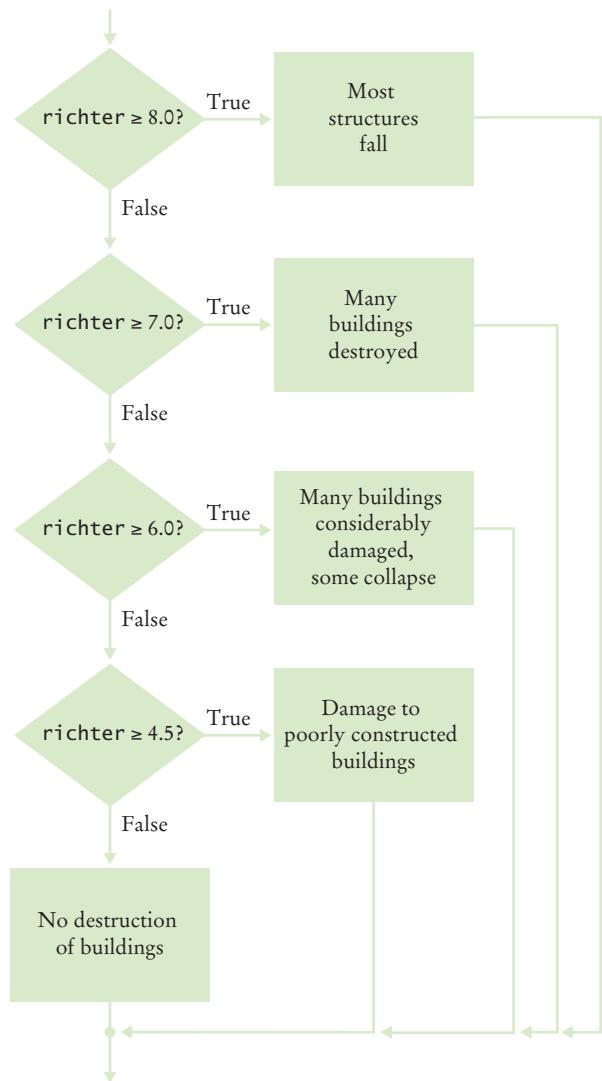
You use multiple `if` statements to implement multiple alternatives, like this:

```
if (richter >= 8.0)
{
    description = "Most structures fall";
}
else if (richter >= 7.0)
{
    description = "Many buildings destroyed";
}
else if (richter >= 6.0)
{
    description = "Many buildings considerably damaged, some collapse";
}
else if (richter >= 4.5)
{
    description = "Damage to poorly constructed buildings";
}
else
{
    description = "No destruction of buildings";
}
```



As soon as one of the four tests succeeds, the effect is displayed, and no further tests are attempted. If none of the four cases applies, the final `else` clause applies, and a default message is printed.

**Figure 4**  
Multiple Alternatives



Here you must sort the conditions and test against the largest cutoff first.  
Suppose we reverse the order of tests:

```

if (richter >= 4.5) // Tests in wrong order
{
    description = "Damage to poorly constructed buildings";
}
else if (richter >= 6.0)
{
    description = "Many buildings considerably damaged, some collapse";
}
else if (richter >= 7.0)
{
    description = "Many buildings destroyed";
}
  
```

```

    }
else if (richter >= 8.0)
{
    description = "Most structures fall";
}

```

When using multiple if statements, test general conditions after more specific conditions.

This does not work. Suppose the value of richter is 7.1. That value is at least 4.5, matching the first case. The other tests will never be attempted.

The remedy is to test the more specific conditions first. Here, the condition richter  $\geq 8.0$  is more specific than the condition richter  $\geq 7.0$ , and the condition richter  $\geq 4.5$  is more general (that is, fulfilled by more values) than either of the first two.

In this example, it is also important that we use an if/else if/else sequence, not just multiple independent if statements. Consider this sequence of independent tests.

```

if (richter >= 8.0) // Didn't use else
{
    description = "Most structures fall";
}
if (richter >= 7.0)
{
    description = "Many buildings destroyed";
}
if (richter >= 6.0)
{
    description = "Many buildings considerably damaged, some collapse";
}
if (richter >= 4.5)
{
    "Damage to poorly constructed buildings";
}

```

Now the alternatives are no longer exclusive. If richter is 7.1, then the last three tests all match. The description variable is set to three different strings, ending up with the wrong one.



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download the program for printing earthquake descriptions.



#### SELF CHECK

13. In a game program, the scores of players A and B are stored in variables scoreA and scoreB. Assuming that the player with the larger score wins, write an if/else if/else sequence that prints out "A won", "B won", or "Game tied".
14. Write a conditional statement with three branches that sets s to 1 if x is positive, to -1 if x is negative, and to 0 if x is zero.
15. How could you achieve the task of Self Check 14 with only two branches?
16. Beginners sometimes write statements such as the following:

```

if (price > 100)
{
    discountedPrice = price - 20;
}
else if (price <= 100)
{
    discountedPrice = price - 10;
}

```

Explain how this code can be improved.

17. Suppose the user enters -1 into the earthquake program. What is printed?

- 18.** Suppose we want to have the earthquake program check whether the user entered a negative number. What branch would you add to the `if` statement, and where?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R5.22, E5.10, E5.24.

## Special Topic 5.2



### The switch Statement

An `if/else if/else` sequence that compares a *value* against several alternatives can be implemented as a `switch` statement. For example,

```
int digit = . . .;
switch (digit)
{
    case 1: digitName = "one"; break;
    case 2: digitName = "two"; break;
    case 3: digitName = "three"; break;
    case 4: digitName = "four"; break;
    case 5: digitName = "five"; break;
    case 6: digitName = "six"; break;
    case 7: digitName = "seven"; break;
    case 8: digitName = "eight"; break;
    case 9: digitName = "nine"; break;
    default: digitName = ""; break;
}
```



*The switch statement lets you choose from a fixed set of alternatives.*

This is a shortcut for

```
int digit = . . .;
if (digit == 1) { digitName = "one"; }
else if (digit == 2) { digitName = "two"; }
else if (digit == 3) { digitName = "three"; }
else if (digit == 4) { digitName = "four"; }
else if (digit == 5) { digitName = "five"; }
else if (digit == 6) { digitName = "six"; }
else if (digit == 7) { digitName = "seven"; }
else if (digit == 8) { digitName = "eight"; }
else if (digit == 9) { digitName = "nine"; }
else { digitName = ""; }
```

It isn't much of a shortcut, but it has one advantage—it is obvious that all branches test the *same* value, namely `digit`.

The `switch` statement can be applied only in narrow circumstances. The values in the `case` clauses must be constants. They can be integers or characters. As of Java 7, strings are permitted as well. You cannot use a `switch` statement to branch on floating-point values.

Every branch of the `switch` should be terminated by a `break` instruction. If the `break` is missing, execution *falls through* to the next branch, and so on, until a `break` or the end of the `switch` is reached. In practice, this fall-through behavior is rarely useful, but it is a common cause of errors. If you accidentally forget a `break` statement, your program compiles but executes unwanted code. Many programmers consider the `switch` statement somewhat dangerous and prefer the `if` statement.

We leave it to you to use the `switch` statement for your own code or not. At any rate, you need to have a reading knowledge of `switch` in case you find it in other programmers' code.

## 5.4 Nested Branches

When a decision statement is contained inside the branch of another decision statement, the statements are *nested*.

It is often necessary to include an if statement inside another. Such an arrangement is called a *nested* set of statements.

Here is a typical example: In the United States, different tax rates are used depending on the taxpayer's marital status. There are different tax schedules for single and for married taxpayers. Married taxpayers add their income together and pay taxes on the total. Table 4 gives the tax rate computations, using a simplification of the schedules that were in effect for the 2008 tax year. A different tax rate applies to each "bracket". In this schedule, the income in the first bracket is taxed at 10 percent, and the income in the second bracket is taxed at 25 percent. The income limits for each bracket depend on the marital status.

**Table 4** Federal Tax Rate Schedule

If your status is Single and if the taxable income is	the tax is	of the amount over
at most \$32,000	10%	\$0
over \$32,000	$\$3,200 + 25\%$	\$32,000
If your status is Married and if the taxable income is	the tax is	of the amount over
at most \$64,000	10%	\$0
over \$64,000	$\$6,400 + 25\%$	\$64,000

Nested decisions are required for problems that have two levels of decision making.

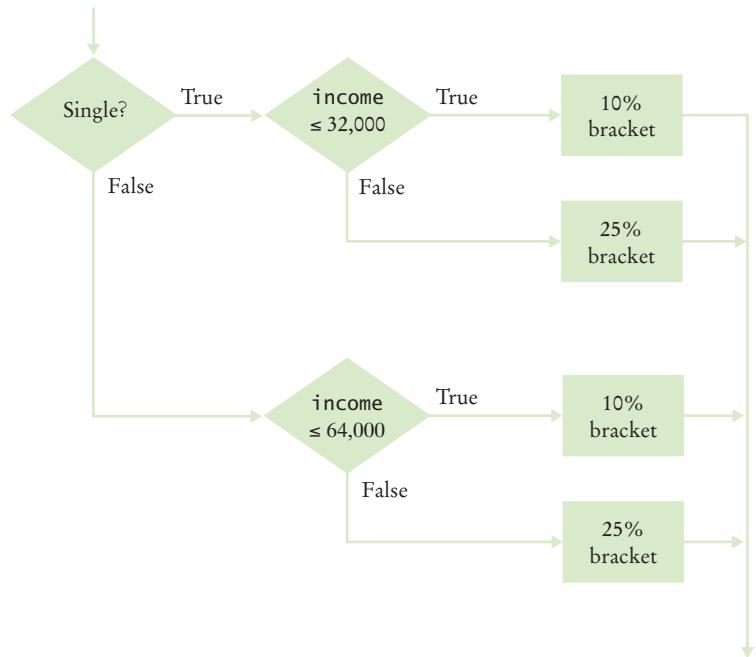
Now compute the taxes due, given a marital status and an income figure. The key point is that there are two *levels* of decision making. First, you must branch on the marital status. Then, for each marital status, you must have another branch on income level.

The two-level decision process is reflected in two levels of if statements in the program at the end of this section. (See Figure 5 for a flowchart.) In theory, nesting can go deeper than two levels. A three-level decision process (first by state, then by marital status, then by income level) requires three nesting levels.



Computing income taxes requires multiple levels of decisions.



**Figure 5** Income Tax Computation**section\_4/TaxReturn.java**

```

1  /**
2   * A tax return of a taxpayer in 2008.
3  */
4  public class TaxReturn
5  {
6      public static final int SINGLE = 1;
7      public static final int MARRIED = 2;
8
9      private static final double RATE1 = 0.10;
10     private static final double RATE2 = 0.25;
11     private static final double RATE1_SINGLE_LIMIT = 32000;
12     private static final double RATE1_MARRIED_LIMIT = 64000;
13
14     private double income;
15     private int status;
16
17     /**
18      Constructs a TaxReturn object for a given income and
19      marital status.
20      @param anIncome the taxpayer income
21      @param aStatus either SINGLE or MARRIED
22     */
23     public TaxReturn(double anIncome, int aStatus)
24     {
25         income = anIncome;
26         status = aStatus;
27     }
28
29     public double getTax()
30     {
  
```

```

31     double tax1 = 0;
32     double tax2 = 0;
33
34     if (status == SINGLE)
35     {
36         if (income <= RATE1_SINGLE_LIMIT)
37         {
38             tax1 = RATE1 * income;
39         }
40         else
41         {
42             tax1 = RATE1 * RATE1_SINGLE_LIMIT;
43             tax2 = RATE2 * (income - RATE1_SINGLE_LIMIT);
44         }
45     }
46     else
47     {
48         if (income <= RATE1_MARRIED_LIMIT)
49         {
50             tax1 = RATE1 * income;
51         }
52         else
53         {
54             tax1 = RATE1 * RATE1_MARRIED_LIMIT;
55             tax2 = RATE2 * (income - RATE1_MARRIED_LIMIT);
56         }
57     }
58
59     return tax1 + tax2;
60 }
61 }
```

**section\_4/TaxCalculator.java**

```

1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 /**
4  * This program calculates a simple tax return.
5 */
6 public class TaxCalculator
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
11
12        System.out.print("Please enter your income: ");
13        double income = in.nextDouble();
14
15        System.out.print("Are you married? (Y/N) ");
16        String input = in.next();
17        int status;
18        if (input.equals("Y"))
19        {
20            status = TaxReturn.MARRIED;
21        }
22        else
23        {
24            status = TaxReturn.SINGLE;
25        }
26        TaxReturn aTaxReturn = new TaxReturn(income, status);
```

```

27     System.out.println("Tax: "
28         + aTaxReturn.getTax());
29     }
30 }
```

### Program Run

```

Please enter your income: 80000
Are you married? (Y/N) Y
Tax: 10400.0
```

#### SELF CHECK



19. What is the amount of tax that a single taxpayer pays on an income of \$32,000?
20. Would that amount change if the first nested if statement changed from
 

```

if (income <= RATE1_SINGLE_LIMIT)
to
if (income < RATE1_SINGLE_LIMIT)
```
21. Suppose Harry and Sally each make \$40,000 per year. Would they save taxes if they married?
22. How would you modify the TaxCalculator.java program in order to check that the user entered a correct value for the marital status (i.e., Y or N)?
23. Some people object to higher tax rates for higher incomes, claiming that you might end up with less money after taxes when you get a raise for working hard. What is the flaw in this argument?

#### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R5.9, R5.21, E5.14, E5.17.

#### Programming Tip 5.5



#### Hand-Tracing

A very useful technique for understanding whether a program works correctly is called *hand-tracing*. You simulate the program's activity on a sheet of paper. You can use this method with pseudocode or Java code.

Get an index card, a cocktail napkin, or whatever sheet of paper is within reach. Make a column for each variable. Have the program code ready. Use a marker, such as a paper clip, to mark the current statement. In your mind, execute statements one at a time. Every time the value of a variable changes, cross out the old value and write the new value below the old one.

For example, let's trace the `getTax` method with the data from the program run above.

When the `TaxReturn` object is constructed, the `income` instance variable is set to 80,000 and `status` is set to MARRIED. Then the `getTax` method is called. In lines 31 and 32 of `TaxReturn.java`, `tax1` and `tax2` are initialized to 0.

```

29 public double getTax()
30 {
31     double tax1 = 0;
32     double tax2 = 0;
33 }
```



*Hand-tracing helps you understand whether a program works correctly.*

income	status	tax1	tax2
80000	MARRIED	0	0

Because `status` is not `SINGLE`, we move to the `else` branch of the outer if statement (line 46).

```

34     if (status == SINGLE)
35     {
36         if (income <= RATE1_SINGLE_LIMIT)
37         {
38             tax1 = RATE1 * income;
39         }
40     else
41     {
42         tax1 = RATE1 * RATE1_SINGLE_LIMIT;
43         tax2 = RATE2 * (income - RATE1_SINGLE_LIMIT);
44     }
45 }
46 else
47 {

```

Because `income` is not `<= 64000`, we move to the `else` branch of the inner if statement (line 52).

```

48     if (income <= RATE1_MARRIED_LIMIT)
49     {
50         tax1 = RATE1 * income;
51     }
52 else
53 {
54     tax1 = RATE1 * RATE1_MARRIED_LIMIT;
55     tax2 = RATE2 * (income - RATE1_MARRIED_LIMIT);
56 }

```

The values of `tax1` and `tax2` are updated.

```

53     {
54         tax1 = RATE1 * RATE1_MARRIED_LIMIT;
55         tax2 = RATE2 * (income - RATE1_MARRIED_LIMIT);
56     }

```

income	status	tax1	tax2
80000	MARRIED	0	0
		6400	4000

Their sum is returned and the method ends.

```

58
59     return tax1 + tax2;
60 }

```

Because the program trace shows the expected return value (\$10,400), it successfully demonstrates that this test case works correctly.

income	status	tax1	tax2	return value
80000	MARRIED	0	0	
		6400	4000	10400

### Common Error 5.3



### The Dangling else Problem

When an `if` statement is nested inside another `if` statement, the following error may occur.

```

double shippingCharge = 5.00; // $5 inside continental U.S.
if (country.equals("USA"))
    if (state.equals("HI"))
        shippingCharge = 10.00; // Hawaii is more expensive
    else // Pitfall!
        shippingCharge = 20.00; // As are foreign shipments

```

The indentation level seems to suggest that the `else` is grouped with the test `country.equals("USA")`. Unfortunately, that is not the case. The compiler ignores all indentation and matches the `else` with the preceding `if`. That is, the code is actually

```

double shippingCharge = 5.00; // $5 inside continental U.S.
if (country.equals("USA"))
    if (state.equals("HI"))
        shippingCharge = 10.00; // Hawaii is more expensive
    else // Pitfall!
        shippingCharge = 20.00; // As are foreign shipments

```

That isn't what you want. You want to group the `else` with the first `if`.

The ambiguous `else` is called a *dangling else*. You can avoid this pitfall if you always use braces, as recommended in Programming Tip 5.2 on page 184:

```
double shippingCharge = 5.00; // $5 inside continental U.S.
if (country.equals("USA"))
{
    if (state.equals("HI"))
    {
        shippingCharge = 10.00; // Hawaii is more expensive
    }
}
else
{
    shippingCharge = 20.00; // As are foreign shipments
}
```

### Special Topic 5.3



### Block Scope

A *block* is a sequence of statements that is enclosed in braces. For example, consider this statement:

```
if (status == TAXABLE)
{
    double tax = price * TAX_RATE;
    price = price + tax;
}
```

The highlighted part is a block. You can declare a variable in a block, such as the `tax` variable in this example. Such a variable is only visible inside the block.

```
{
    double tax = price * TAX_RATE; // Variable declared inside a block
    price = price + tax;
}
// You can no longer access the tax variable here
```

In fact, the variable is only created after the program enters the block, and it is removed as soon as the program exits the block. Such a variable is said to have *block scope*. In general, the *scope* of a variable is the part of the program in which the variable can be accessed. A variable with block scope is visible only inside a block.

It is considered good design to minimize the scope of a variable. This reduces the possibility of accidental modification and name conflicts. For example, as long as the `tax` variable is not



*In the same way that there can be a street named "Main Street" in different cities, a Java program can have multiple variables with the same name.*

needed outside the block, it is a good idea to declare it inside the block. However, if you need the variable outside the block, you must define it outside. For example,

```
double tax = 0;
if (status == TAXABLE)
{
    tax = price * TAX_RATE;
}
price = price + tax;
```

Here, the tax variable is used outside the block of the `if` statement, and you must declare it outside.

In Java, the scope of a local variable can never contain the declaration of another local variable with the same name. For example, the following is an error:

```
double tax = 0;
if (status == TAXABLE)
{
    double tax = price * TAX_RATE;
    // Error: Cannot declare another variable with the same name
    price = price + tax;
}
```

However, you can have local variables with identical names if their scopes do not overlap, such as

```
if (Math.random() > 0.5)
{
    Rectangle r = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
    . .
} // Scope of r ends here
else
{
    int r = 5;
    // OK—it is legal to declare another r here
    . .
}
```

These variables are independent from each other. You can have local variables with the same name, as long as their scopes don't overlap.

## Special Topic 5.4



### Enumeration Types

In many programs, you use variables that can hold one of a finite number of values. For example, in the tax return class, the `status` instance variable holds one of the values `SINGLE` or `MARRIED`. We arbitrarily declared `SINGLE` as the number 1 and `MARRIED` as 2. If, due to some programming error, the `status` variable is set to another integer value (such as -1, 0, or 3), then the programming logic may produce invalid results.

In a simple program, this is not really a problem. But as programs grow over time, and more cases are added (such as the “married filing separately” status), errors can slip in. Java version 5.0 introduces a remedy: **enumeration types**. An enumeration type has a finite set of values, for example

```
public enum FilingStatus { SINGLE, MARRIED, MARRIED_FILING_SEPARATELY }
```

You can have any number of values, but you must include them all in the `enum` declaration.

You can declare variables of the enumeration type:

```
FilingStatus status = FilingStatus.SINGLE;
```

If you try to assign a value that isn't a `FilingStatus`, such as 2 or "S", then the compiler reports an error.

Use the `==` operator to compare enumeration values, for example:

```
if (status == FilingStatus.SINGLE) . . .
```

Place the `enum` declaration inside the class that implements your program, such as

```
public class TaxReturn
{
    public enum FilingStatus { SINGLE, MARRIED, MARRIED_FILING_SEPARATELY }
    . .
}
```

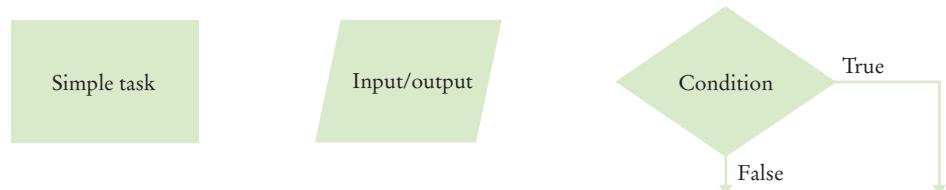
## 5.5 Problem Solving: Flowcharts

Flow charts are made up of elements for tasks, input/output, and decisions.

You have seen examples of flowcharts earlier in this chapter. A flowchart shows the structure of decisions and tasks that are required to solve a problem. When you have to solve a complex problem, it can help to draw a flowchart to visualize the flow of control.

The basic flowchart elements are shown in Figure 6.

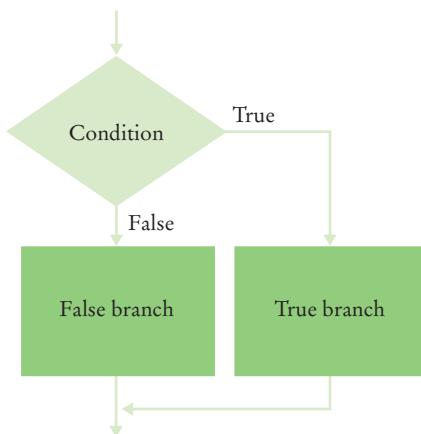
**Figure 6**  
Flowchart Elements



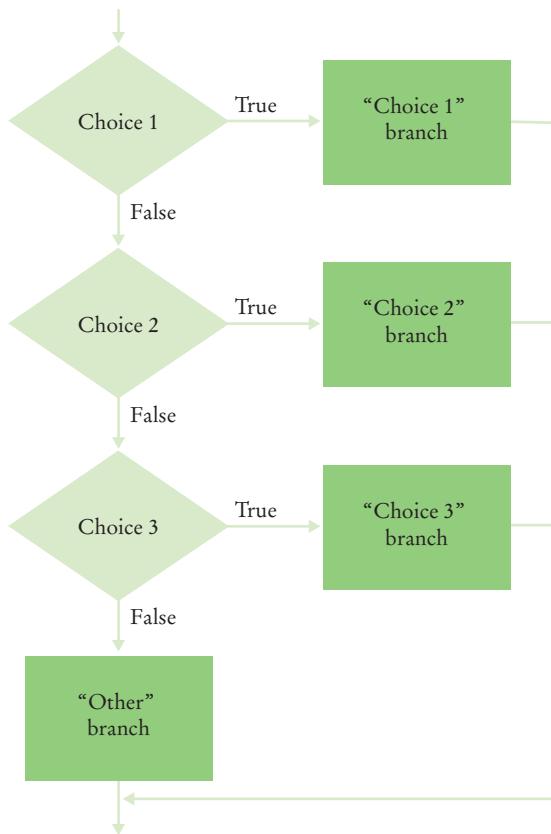
Each branch of a decision can contain tasks and further decisions.

The basic idea is simple enough. Link tasks and input/output boxes in the sequence in which they should be executed. Whenever you need to make a decision, draw a diamond with two outcomes (see Figure 7).

**Figure 7**  
Flowchart with Two Outcomes



**Figure 8**  
Flowchart with Multiple Choices

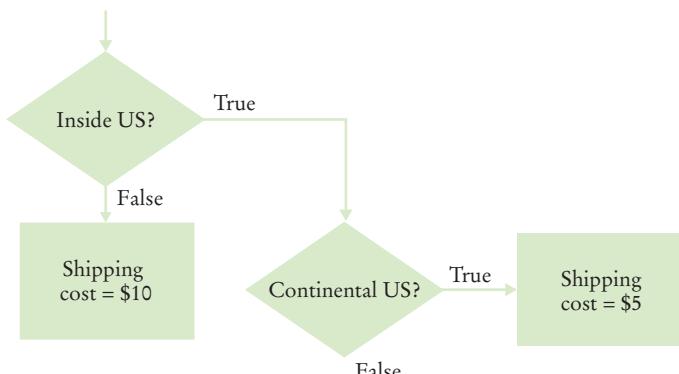


Each branch can contain a sequence of tasks and even additional decisions. If there are multiple choices for a value, lay them out as in Figure 8.

There is one issue that you need to be aware of when drawing flowcharts. Unconstrained branching and merging can lead to “spaghetti code”, a messy network of possible pathways through a program.

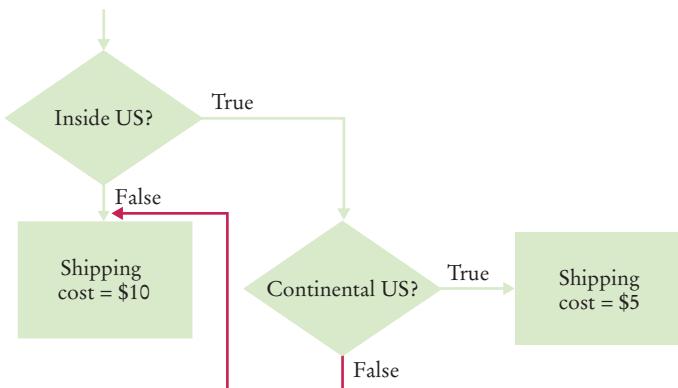
There is a simple rule for avoiding spaghetti code: Never point an arrow *inside another branch*.

To understand the rule, consider this example: Shipping costs are \$5 inside the United States, except that to Hawaii and Alaska they are \$10. International shipping costs are also \$10. You might start out with a flowchart like the following:

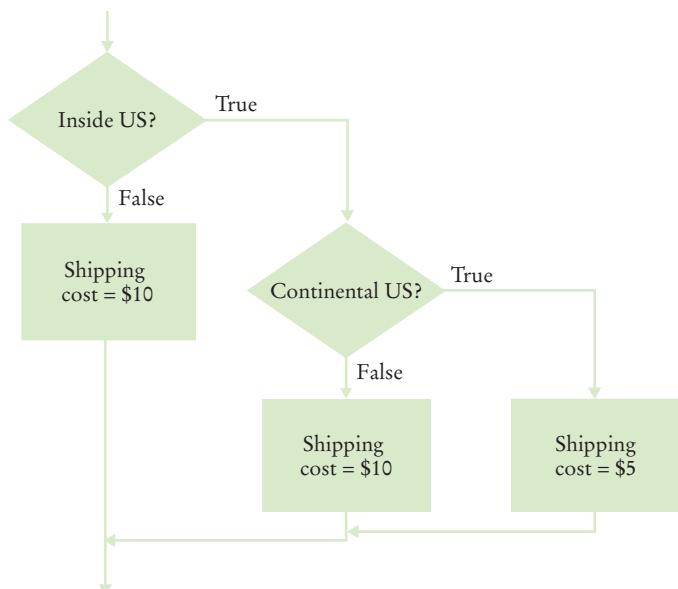


Never point an arrow inside another branch.

Now you may be tempted to reuse the “shipping cost = \$10” task:



Don’t do that! The red arrow points inside a different branch. Instead, add another task that sets the shipping cost to \$10, like this:



Not only do you avoid spaghetti code, but it is also a better design. In the future it may well happen that the cost for international shipments is different from that to Alaska and Hawaii.

Flowcharts can be very useful for getting an intuitive understanding of the flow of an algorithm. However, they get large rather quickly when you add more details. At that point, it makes sense to switch from flowcharts to pseudocode.



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that computes shipping costs.

*Spaghetti code has so many pathways that it becomes impossible to understand.*

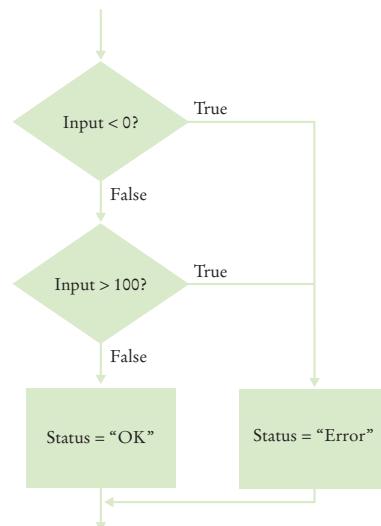


**SELF CHECK**

24. Draw a flowchart for a program that reads a value `temp` and prints “Frozen” if it is less than zero.
25. What is wrong with the flowchart at right?
26. How do you fix the flowchart of Self Check 25?
27. Draw a flowchart for a program that reads a value `x`. If it is less than zero, print “Error”. Otherwise, print its square root.
28. Draw a flowchart for a program that reads a value `temp`. If it is less than zero, print “Ice”. If it is greater than 100, print “Steam”. Otherwise, print “Liquid”.

**Practice It**

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R5.12, R5.13, R5.14.



## 5.6 Problem Solving: Selecting Test Cases

Black-box testing describes a testing method that does not take the structure of the implementation into account.

White-box testing uses information about the structure of a program.

Code coverage is a measure of how many parts of a program have been tested.

Testing the functionality of a program without consideration of its internal structure is called **black-box testing**. This is an important part of testing, because, after all, the users of a program do not know its internal structure. If a program works perfectly on all inputs, then it surely does its job.

However, it is impossible to ensure absolutely that a program will work correctly on all inputs just by supplying a finite number of test cases. As the famous computer scientist Edsger Dijkstra pointed out, testing can show only the presence of bugs—not their absence. To gain more confidence in the correctness of a program, it is useful to consider its internal structure. Testing strategies that look inside a program are called **white-box testing**. Performing unit tests of each method is a part of white-box testing.

You want to make sure that each part of your program is exercised at least once by one of your test cases. This is called **code coverage**. If some code is never executed by any of your test cases, you have no way of knowing whether that code would perform correctly if it ever were executed by user input. That means that you need to look at every `if/else` branch to see that each of them is reached by some test case. Many conditional branches are in the code only to take care of strange and abnormal inputs, but they still do something. It is a common phenomenon that they end up doing something incorrectly, but those faults are never discovered during testing, because nobody supplied the strange and abnormal inputs. The remedy is to ensure that each part of the code is covered by some test case.

For example, in testing the `getTax` method of the `TaxReturn` class, you want to make sure that every `if` statement is entered for at least one test case. You should test both single and married taxpayers, with incomes in each of the three tax brackets.

When you select test cases, you should make it a habit to include **boundary test cases**: legal values that lie at the boundary of the set of acceptable inputs.

**Boundary test cases**  
are test cases that are  
at the boundary of  
acceptable inputs.

Here is a plan for obtaining a comprehensive set of test cases for the tax program:

- There are two possibilities for the marital status and two tax brackets for each status, yielding four test cases.
- Test a handful of *boundary* conditions, such as an income that is at the boundary between two brackets, and a zero income.
- If you are responsible for error checking (which is discussed in Section 5.8), also test an invalid input, such as a negative income.

Make a list of the test cases and the expected outputs:

Test Case	Married	Expected Output	Comment
30,000	N	3,000	10% bracket
72,000	N	13,200	3,200 + 25% of 40,000
50,000	Y	5,000	10% bracket
104,000	Y	16,400	6,400 + 25% of 40,000
32,000	N	3,200	boundary case
0		0	boundary case

It is a good idea to  
design test cases  
before implementing  
a program.

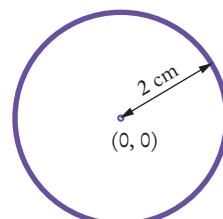
When you develop a set of test cases, it is helpful to have a flowchart of your program (see Section 5.5). Check off each branch that has a test case. Include test cases for the boundary cases of each decision. For example, if a decision checks whether an input is less than 100, test with an input of 100.

It is always a good idea to design test cases *before* starting to code. Working through the test cases gives you a better understanding of the algorithm that you are about to implement.

### SELF CHECK



29. Using Figure 1 on page 181 as a guide, follow the process described in this section to design a set of test cases for the `ElevatorSimulation.java` program in Section 5.1.
30. What is a boundary test case for the algorithm in How To 5.1 on page 193? What is the expected output?
31. Using Figure 4 on page 197 as a guide, follow the process described in Section 5.6 to design a set of test cases for the `Earthquake.java` program in Section 5.3.
32. Suppose you are designing a part of a program for a medical robot that has a sensor returning an *x*- and *y*-location (measured in cm). You need to check whether the sensor location is inside the circle, outside the circle, or on the boundary (specifically, having a distance of less than 1 mm from the boundary). Assume the circle has center  $(0, 0)$  and a radius of 2 cm. Give a set of test cases.



**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R5.15, R5.16.

## Programming Tip 5.6



### Make a Schedule and Make Time for Unexpected Problems

Commercial software is notorious for being delivered later than promised. For example, Microsoft originally promised that its Windows Vista operating system would be available late in 2003, then in 2005, then in March 2006; it finally was released in January 2007. Some of the early promises might not have been realistic. It was in Microsoft's interest to let prospective customers expect the imminent availability of the product. Had customers known the actual delivery date, they might have switched to a different product in the meantime. Undeniably, though, Microsoft had not anticipated the full complexity of the tasks it had set itself to solve.

Microsoft can delay the delivery of its product, but it is likely that you cannot. As a student or a programmer, you are expected to manage your time wisely and to finish your assignments on time. You can probably do simple programming exercises the night before the due date, but an assignment that looks twice as hard may well take four times as long, because more things can go wrong. You should therefore make a schedule whenever you start a programming project.

First, estimate realistically how much time it will take you to:

- Design the program logic.
- Develop test cases.
- Type the program in and fix syntax errors.
- Test and debug the program.

For example, for the income tax program I might estimate an hour for the design; 30 minutes for developing test cases; an hour for data entry and fixing syntax errors; and an hour for testing and debugging. That is a total of 3.5 hours. If I work two hours a day on this project, it will take me almost two days.

Then think of things that can go wrong. Your computer might break down. You might be stumped by a problem with the computer system. (That is a particularly important concern for beginners. It is *very* common to lose a day over a trivial problem just because it takes time to track down a person who knows the magic command to overcome it.) As a rule of thumb, *double* the time of your estimate. That is, you should start four days, not two days, before the due date. If nothing went wrong, great; you have the program done two days early. When the inevitable problem occurs, you have a cushion of time that protects you from embarrassment and failure.



*Make a schedule for your programming work and build in time for problems.*

## Special Topic 5.5



### Logging

Sometimes you run a program and you are not sure where it spends its time. To get a printout of the program flow, you can insert **trace messages** into the program, such as this one:

```
if (status == SINGLE)
{
    System.out.println("status is SINGLE");
    . .
}
```

However, there is a problem with using `System.out.println` for trace messages. When you are done testing the program, you need to remove all print statements that produce trace messages. If you find another error, however, you need to stick the print statements back in.

To overcome this problem, you should use the `Logger` class, which allows you to turn off the trace messages without removing them from the program.

Instead of printing directly to `System.out`, use the global logger object that is returned by the call `Logger.getGlobal()`. (Prior to Java 7, you obtained the global logger as `Logger.getLogger("global")`.) Then call the `info` method:

```
Logger.getGlobal().info("status is SINGLE");
```

By default, the message is printed. But if you call

```
Logger.getGlobal().setLevel(Level.OFF);
```

Logging messages can be deactivated when testing is complete.

at the beginning of the `main` method of your program, all log message printing is suppressed. Set the level to `Level.INFO` to turn logging of `info` messages on again. Thus, you can turn off the log messages when your program works fine, and you can turn them back on if you find another error. In other words, using `Logger.getGlobal().info` is just like `System.out.println`, except that you can easily activate and deactivate the logging.

The `Logger` class has many other options for industrial-strength logging. Check out the API documentation if you want to have more control over logging.

## 5.7 Boolean Variables and Operators

The Boolean type `boolean` has two values, `false` and `true`.



A Boolean variable is also called a flag because it can be either up (true) or down (false).

Sometimes, you need to evaluate a logical condition in one part of a program and use it elsewhere. To store a condition that can be true or false, you use a *Boolean variable*. Boolean variables are named after the mathematician George Boole (1815–1864), a pioneer in the study of logic.

In Java, the `boolean` data type has exactly two values, denoted `false` and `true`. These values are not strings or integers; they are special values, just for Boolean variables. Here is a declaration of a Boolean variable:

```
boolean failed = true;
```

You can use the value later in your program to make a decision:

```
if (failed) // Only executed if failed has been set to true
{
    ...
}
```

When you make complex decisions, you often need to combine Boolean values. An operator that combines Boolean conditions is called a **Boolean operator**. In Java, the `&&` operator (called *and*) yields `true` only when both conditions are `true`. The `||` operator (called *or*) yields the result `true` if at least one of the conditions is `true`.

A	B	A & B	A	B	A    B	A	!A
true	true	true	true	true	true	true	false
true	false	false	true	false	true	false	true
false	true	false	false	true	true		
false	false	false	false	false	false		

Figure 9 Boolean Truth Tables

*At this geyser in Iceland, you can see ice, liquid water, and steam.*



Java has two Boolean operators that combine conditions: `&& (and)` and `|| (or)`.

Suppose you write a program that processes temperature values, and you want to test whether a given temperature corresponds to liquid water. (At sea level, water freezes at 0 degrees Celsius and boils at 100 degrees.) Water is liquid if the temperature is greater than zero *and* less than 100:

```
if (temp > 0 && temp < 100) { System.out.println("Liquid"); }
```

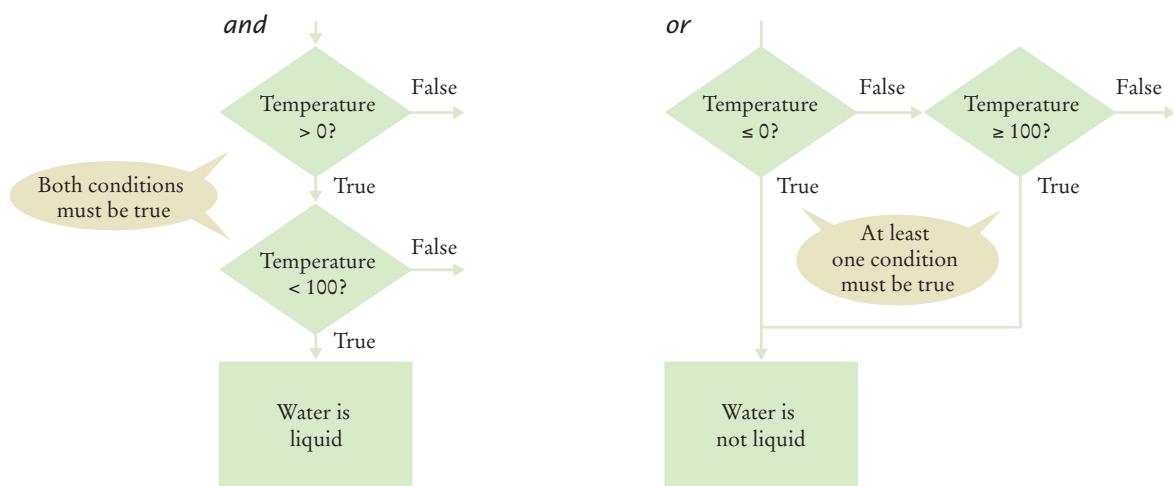
The condition of the test has two parts, joined by the `&&` operator. Each part is a Boolean value that can be true or false. The combined expression is true if both individual expressions are true. If either one of the expressions is false, then the result is also false (see Figure 9).

The Boolean operators `&&` and `||` have a lower precedence than the relational operators. For that reason, you can write relational expressions on either side of the Boolean operators without using parentheses. For example, in the expression

```
temp > 0 && temp < 100
```

the expressions `temp > 0` and `temp < 100` are evaluated first. Then the `&&` operator combines the results. Appendix B shows a table of the Java operators and their precedence.

Conversely, let's test whether water is *not* liquid at a given temperature. That is the case when the temperature is at most 0 *or* at least 100.



**Figure 10** Flowcharts for *and* and *or* Combinations



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program comparing numbers using Boolean expressions.

**Table 5** Boolean Operator Examples

Expression	Value	Comment
<code>0 &lt; 200 &amp;&amp; 200 &lt; 100</code>	false	Only the first condition is true.
<code>0 &lt; 200    200 &lt; 100</code>	true	The first condition is true.
<code>0 &lt; 200    100 &lt; 200</code>	true	The <code>  </code> is not a test for “either-or”. If both conditions are true, the result is true.
<code>0 &lt; x &amp;&amp; x &lt; 100    x == -1</code>	( <code>0 &lt; x &amp;&amp; x &lt; 100</code> ) <code>   x == -1</code>	The <code>&amp;&amp;</code> operator has a higher precedence than the <code>  </code> operator (see Appendix B).
🚫 <code>0 &lt; x &lt; 100</code>	Error	<b>Error:</b> This expression does not test whether <code>x</code> is between 0 and 100. The expression <code>0 &lt; x</code> is a Boolean value. You cannot compare a Boolean value with the integer 100.
🚫 <code>x &amp;&amp; y &gt; 0</code>	Error	<b>Error:</b> This expression does not test whether <code>x</code> and <code>y</code> are positive. The left-hand side of <code>&amp;&amp;</code> is an integer, <code>x</code> , and the right-hand side, <code>y &gt; 0</code> , is a Boolean value. You cannot use <code>&amp;&amp;</code> with an integer argument.
<code>!(0 &lt; 200)</code>	false	<code>0 &lt; 200</code> is true, therefore its negation is false.
<code>frozen == true</code>	frozen	There is no need to compare a Boolean variable with <code>true</code> .
<code>frozen == false</code>	<code>!frozen</code>	It is clearer to use <code>!</code> than to compare with <code>false</code> .

Use the `||` (*or*) operator to combine the expressions:

```
if (temp <= 0 || temp >= 100) { System.out.println("Not liquid"); }
```

Figure 10 shows flowcharts for these examples.

Sometimes you need to *invert* a condition with the *not* Boolean operator. The `!` operator takes a single condition and evaluates to `true` if that condition is `false` and to `false` if the condition is `true`. In this example, output occurs if the value of the Boolean variable `frozen` is `false`:

```
if (!frozen) { System.out.println("Not frozen"); }
```

Table 5 illustrates additional examples of evaluating Boolean operators.

To invert a condition,  
use the `!` (*not*)  
operator.



### SELF CHECK

33. Suppose `x` and `y` are two integers. How do you test whether both of them are zero?
34. How do you test whether at least one of them is zero?
35. How do you test whether *exactly one of them* is zero?
36. What is the value of `!!frozen`?
37. What is the advantage of using the type `boolean` rather than strings "false"/"true" or integers 0/1?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R5.29, E5.22, E5.23.

**Common Error 5.4****Combining Multiple Relational Operators**

Consider the expression

```
if (0 <= temp <= 100) // Error
```

This looks just like the mathematical test  $0 \leq \text{temp} \leq 100$ . But in Java, it is a compile-time error.

Let us dissect the condition. The first half,  $0 \leq \text{temp}$ , is a test with an outcome true or false. The outcome of that test (true or false) is then compared against 100. This seems to make no sense. Is true larger than 100 or not? Can one compare truth values and numbers? In Java, you cannot. The Java compiler rejects this statement.

Instead, use `&&` to combine two separate tests:

```
if (0 <= temp && temp <= 100) . . .
```

Another common error, along the same lines, is to write

```
if (input == 1 || 2) . . . // Error
```

to test whether `input` is 1 or 2. Again, the Java compiler flags this construct as an error. You cannot apply the `||` operator to numbers. You need to write two Boolean expressions and join them with the `||` operator:

```
if (input == 1 || input == 2) . . .
```

**Common Error 5.5****Confusing `&&` and `||` Conditions**

It is a surprisingly common error to confuse *and* and *or* conditions. A value lies between 0 and 100 if it is at least 0 *and* at most 100. It lies outside that range if it is less than 0 *or* greater than 100. There is no golden rule; you just have to think carefully.

Often the *and* or *or* is clearly stated, and then it isn't too hard to implement it. But sometimes the wording isn't as explicit. It is quite common that the individual conditions are nicely set apart in a bulleted list, but with little indication of how they should be combined.

Consider these instructions for filing a tax return. You can claim single filing status if any one of the following is true:

- You were never married.
- You were legally separated or divorced on the last day of the tax year.
- You were widowed, and did not remarry.

Because the test passes if *any one* of the conditions is true, you must combine the conditions with *or*.

Elsewhere, the same instructions state that you may use the more advantageous status of married filing jointly if all five of the following conditions are true:

- Your spouse died less than two years ago and you did not remarry.
- You have a child whom you can claim as dependent.
- That child lived in your home for all of the tax year.
- You paid over half the cost of keeping up your home for this child.
- You filed a joint return with your spouse the year he or she died.

Because *all* of the conditions must be true for the test to pass, you must combine them with an *and*.

**Special Topic 5.6****Short-Circuit Evaluation of Boolean Operators**

The `&&` and `||` operators are computed using short-circuit evaluation. In other words, logical expressions are evaluated from left to right, and evaluation stops as soon as the truth value is determined. When an `&&` is evaluated and the first condition is false, the second condition is not evaluated, because it does not matter what the outcome of the second test is.

For example, consider the expression

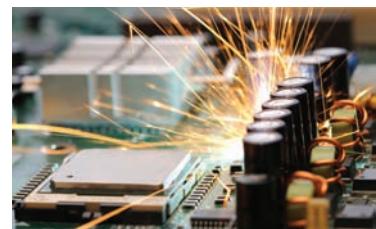
```
quantity > 0 && price / quantity < 10
```

Suppose the value of `quantity` is zero. Then the test `quantity > 0` fails, and the second test is not attempted. That is just as well, because it is illegal to divide by zero.

Similarly, when the first condition of an `||` expression is true, then the remainder is not evaluated because the result must be true.

This process is called **short-circuit evaluation**.

The `&&` and `||` operators are computed using **short-circuit evaluation**: As soon as the truth value is determined, no further conditions are evaluated.



*In a short circuit, electricity travels along the path of least resistance. Similarly, short-circuit evaluation takes the fastest path for computing the result of a Boolean expression.*

**Special Topic 5.7****De Morgan's Law**

Humans generally have a hard time comprehending logical conditions with `not` operators applied to `and/or` expressions. **De Morgan's Law**, named after the logician Augustus De Morgan (1806–1871), can be used to simplify these Boolean expressions.

Suppose we want to charge a higher shipping rate if we don't ship within the continental United States:

```
if (!(country.equals("USA") && !state.equals("AK") && !state.equals("HI")))
{
    shippingCharge = 20.00;
}
```

This test is a little bit complicated, and you have to think carefully through the logic. When it is *not* true that the country is USA *and* the state is not Alaska *and* the state is not Hawaii, then charge \$20.00. Huh? It is not true that some people won't be confused by this code.

The computer doesn't care, but it takes human programmers to write and maintain the code. Therefore, it is useful to know how to simplify such a condition.

De Morgan's Law has two forms: one for the negation of an *and* expression and one for the negation of an *or* expression:

`!(A && B)` is the same as `!A || !B`

`!(A || B)` is the same as `!A && !B`

De Morgan's Law tells you how to negate `&&` and `||` conditions.

Pay particular attention to the fact that the *and* and *or* operators are *reversed* by moving the `not` inward. For example, the negation of "the state is Alaska *or* it is Hawaii",

```
!(state.equals("AK") || state.equals("HI"))
```

is "the state is not Alaska *and* it is not Hawaii":

```
!state.equals("AK") && !state.equals("HI")
```

Now apply the law to our shipping charge computation:

```
!(country.equals("USA")
  && !state.equals("AK")
  && !state.equals("HI"))
```

is equivalent to

```
!country.equals("USA")
|| !state.equals("AK")
|| !state.equals("HI")
```

Because two `!` cancel each other out, the result is the simpler test

```
!country.equals("USA")
|| state.equals("AK")
|| state.equals("HI")
```

In other words, higher shipping charges apply when the destination is outside the United States or to Alaska or Hawaii.

To simplify conditions with negations of *and* or *or* expressions, it is usually a good idea to apply De Morgan's Law to move the negations to the innermost level.

## 5.8 Application: Input Validation



*Like a quality control worker, you want to make sure that user input is correct before processing it.*

An important application for the `if` statement is *input validation*. Whenever your program accepts user input, you need to make sure that the user-supplied values are valid before you use them in your computations.

Consider our elevator simulation program. Assume that the elevator panel has buttons labeled 1 through 20 (but not 13). The following are illegal inputs:

- The number 13
- Zero or a negative number
- A number larger than 20
- An input that is not a sequence of digits, such as `five`

In each of these cases, we want to give an error message and exit the program. It is simple to guard against an input of 13:

```
if (floor == 13)
{
    System.out.println("Error: There is no thirteenth floor.");
```

Here is how you ensure that the user doesn't enter a number outside the valid range:

```
if (floor <= 0 || floor > 20)
{
    System.out.println("Error: The floor must be between 1 and 20.");
```

However, dealing with an input that is not a valid integer is a more serious problem. When the statement

```
floor = in.nextInt();
```

is executed, and the user types in an input that is not an integer (such as `five`), then the integer variable `floor` is not set. Instead, a run-time exception occurs and the program is terminated. To avoid this problem, you should first call the `hasNextInt` method

Call the `hasNextInt` or `hasNextDouble` method to ensure that the next input is a number.

which checks whether the next input is an integer. If that method returns true, you can safely call `nextInt`. Otherwise, print an error message and exit the program:

```
if (in.hasNextInt())
{
    int floor = in.nextInt();
    Process the input value.
}
else
{
    System.out.println("Error: Not an integer.");
}
```

Here is the complete elevator simulation program with input validation:

section 8/ElevatorSimulation2.java

```
1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 /**
4  * This program simulates an elevator panel that skips the 13th floor, checking for
5  * input errors.
6 */
7 public class ElevatorSimulation2
8 {
9     public static void main(String[] args)
10    {
11        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
12        System.out.print("Floor: ");
13        if (in.hasNextInt())
14        {
15            // Now we know that the user entered an integer
16
17            int floor = in.nextInt();
18
19            if (floor == 13)
20            {
21                System.out.println("Error: There is no thirteenth floor.");
22            }
23            else if (floor <= 0 || floor > 20)
24            {
25                System.out.println("Error: The floor must be between 1 and 20.");
26            }
27            else
28            {
29                // Now we know that the input is valid
30
31                int actualFloor = floor;
32                if (floor > 13)
33                {
34                    actualFloor = floor - 1;
35                }
36
37                System.out.println("The elevator will travel to the actual floor "
38                               + actualFloor);
39            }
40        }
41        else
42        {
43            System.out.println("Error: Not an integer.");
44        }
45    }
46}
```

```

44     }
45     }
46 }
```

### Program Run

```

Floor: 13
Error: There is no thirteenth floor.
```

#### SELF CHECK



- 38.** In the ElevatorSimulation2 program, what is the output when the input is
- 100?
  - 1?
  - 20?
  - thirteen?

- 39.** Your task is to rewrite lines 19–26 of the ElevatorSimulation2 program so that there is a single if statement with a complex condition. What is the condition?

```

if ( . . . )
{
    System.out.println("Error: Invalid floor number");
}
```

- 40.** In the Sherlock Holmes story “The Adventure of the Sussex Vampire”, the inimitable detective uttered these words: “Matilda Briggs was not the name of a young woman, Watson, ... It was a ship which is associated with the giant rat of Sumatra, a story for which the world is not yet prepared.” Over a hundred years later, researchers found giant rats in Western New Guinea, another part of Indonesia.

Suppose you are charged with writing a program that processes rat weights. It contains the statements

```
System.out.print("Enter weight in kg: ");
double weight = in.nextDouble();
```

What input checks should you supply?



*When processing inputs, you want to reject values that are too large. But how large is too large? These giant rats, found in Western New Guinea, are about five times the size of a city rat.*

- 41.** Run the following test program and supply inputs 2 and three at the prompts. What happens? Why?

```

import java.util.Scanner
public class Test
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Enter an integer: ");
        int m = in.nextInt();
        System.out.print("Enter another integer: ");
        int n = in.nextInt();
        System.out.println(m + " " + n);
    }
}
```

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R5.3, R5.32, E5.12.



## Computing & Society 5.2 Artificial Intelligence

When one uses a sophisticated computer program such as a tax preparation package, one is bound to attribute some intelligence to the computer. The computer asks sensible questions and makes computations that we find a mental challenge. After all, if doing one's taxes were easy, we wouldn't need a computer to do it for us.

As programmers, however, we know that all this apparent intelligence is an illusion. Human programmers have carefully "coached" the software in all possible scenarios, and it simply replays the actions and decisions that were programmed into it.

Would it be possible to write computer programs that are genuinely intelligent in some sense? From the earliest days of computing, there was a sense that the human brain might be nothing but an immense computer, and that it might well be feasible to program computers to imitate some processes of human thought. Serious research into *artificial intelligence* began in the mid-1950s, and the first twenty years brought some impressive successes. Programs that play chess—surely an activity that appears to require remarkable intellectual powers—have become so good that they now routinely beat all but the best human players. As far back as 1975, an *expert-system* program called Mycin gained fame for being better in diagnosing meningitis in patients than the average physician.

However, there were serious setbacks as well. From 1982 to 1992, the Japanese government embarked on a massive research project, funded at over 40 billion Japanese yen. It was known as the *Fifth-Generation Project*. Its goal was to develop new hardware and software to greatly improve the performance of expert system software. At its outset, the project created fear in other countries that the Japanese computer industry was about to become the undisputed leader in the field. However, the end results were disappointing and did little to bring

artificial intelligence applications to market.

From the very outset, one of the stated goals of the AI community was to produce software that could translate text from one language to another, for example from English to Russian. That undertaking proved to be enormously complicated. Human language appears to be much more subtle and interwoven with the human experience than had originally been thought. Even the grammar-checking tools that come with word-processing programs today are more of a gimmick than a useful tool, and analyzing grammar is just the first step in translating sentences.

The CYC (from encyclopedia) project, started by Douglas Lenat in 1984, tries to codify the implicit assumptions that underlie human speech and writing. The team members started out analyzing news articles and asked themselves what unmentioned facts are necessary to actually understand the sentences. For example, consider the sentence, "Last fall she enrolled in Michigan State". The reader automatically realizes that "fall" is not related to falling down in this context, but refers to the season. While there is a state of Michigan, here Michigan State denotes the university. A priori, a computer program has none of this

knowledge. The goal of the CYC project is to extract and store the requisite facts—that is, (1) people enroll in universities; (2) Michigan is a state; (3) many states have universities named X State University, often abbreviated as X State; (4) most people enroll in a university in the fall. By 1995, the project had codified about 100,000 common-sense concepts and about a million facts of knowledge relating them. Even this massive amount of data has not proven sufficient for useful applications.

In recent years, artificial intelligence technology has seen substantial advances. One of the most astounding examples is the outcome of a series of "grand challenges" for autonomous vehicles posed by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA). Competitors were invited to submit a computer-controlled vehicle that had to complete an obstacle course without a human driver or remote control. The first event, in 2004, was a disappointment, with none of the entrants finishing the route. In 2005, five vehicles completed a grueling 212 km course in the Mojave desert. Stanford's Stanley came in first, with an average speed of 30 km/h. In 2007, DARPA moved the competition to an "urban" environment, an abandoned air force base. Vehicles had to be able to interact with each other, following California traffic laws. As Stanford's Sebastian Thrun explained: "In the last Grand Challenge, it didn't really matter whether an obstacle was a rock or a bush, because either way you'd just drive around it. The current challenge is to move from just sensing the environment to understanding it."



Winner of the 2007 DARPA Urban Challenge

**CHAPTER SUMMARY****Use the if statement to implement a decision.**

- The if statement allows a program to carry out different actions depending on the nature of the data to be processed.

**Implement comparisons of numbers and objects.**

- Use relational operators (`< <= > >= == !=`) to compare numbers.
- Relational operators compare values. The `==` operator tests for equality.
- When comparing floating-point numbers, don't test for equality. Instead, check whether they are close enough.
- Do not use the `==` operator to compare strings. Use the `equals` method instead.
- The `compareTo` method compares strings in lexicographic order.
- The `==` operator tests whether two object references are identical. To compare the contents of objects, you need to use the `equals` method.
- The `null` reference refers to no object.

**Implement complex decisions that require multiple if statements.**

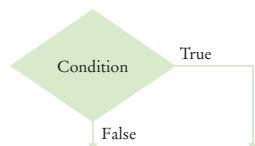
- Multiple if statements can be combined to evaluate complex decisions.
- When using multiple if statements, test general conditions after more specific conditions.

**Implement decisions whose branches require further decisions.**

- When a decision statement is contained inside the branch of another decision statement, the statements are *nested*.
- Nested decisions are required for problems that have two levels of decision making.

**Draw flowcharts for visualizing the control flow of a program.**

- Flow charts are made up of elements for tasks, input/output, and decisions.
- Each branch of a decision can contain tasks and further decisions.
- Never point an arrow inside another branch.



**Design test cases for your programs.**

- Black-box testing describes a testing method that does not take the structure of the implementation into account.
- White-box testing uses information about the structure of a program.
- Code coverage is a measure of how many parts of a program have been tested.
- Boundary test cases are test cases that are at the boundary of acceptable inputs.
- It is a good idea to design test cases before implementing a program.
- Logging messages can be deactivated when testing is complete.

**Use the Boolean data type to store and combine conditions that can be true or false.**

- The Boolean type `boolean` has two values, `false` and `true`.
- Java has two Boolean operators that combine conditions: `&&` (*and*) and `||` (*or*).
- To invert a condition, use the `!` (*not*) operator.
- The `&&` and `||` operators are computed using **short-circuit evaluation**: As soon as the truth value is determined, no further conditions are evaluated.
- De Morgan's Law tells you how to negate `&&` and `||` conditions.

**Apply if statements to detect whether user input is valid.**

- Call the `hasNextInt` or `hasNextDouble` method to ensure that the next input is a number.

**STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER**

```
java.awt.Rectangle
equals
java.lang.String
equals
compareTo
java.util.Scanner
hasNextDouble
hasNextInt
```

```
java.util.logging.Level
INFO
OFF
java.util.logging.Logger
getGlobal
info
setLevel
```

**REVIEW QUESTIONS****■ R5.1** What is the value of each variable after the if statement?

- `int n = 1; int k = 2; int r = n;  
if (k < n) { r = k; }`
- `int n = 1; int k = 2; int r;  
if (n < k) { r = k; }  
else { r = k + n; }`
- `int n = 1; int k = 2; int r = k;  
if (r < k) { n = r; }  
else { k = n; }`
- `int n = 1; int k = 2; int r = 3;  
if (r < n + k) { r = 2 * n; }  
else { k = 2 * r; }`

**■■ R5.2** Explain the difference between

```
s = 0;
if (x > 0) { s++; }
if (y > 0) { s++; }
```

and

```
s = 0;
if (x > 0) { s++; }
else if (y > 0) { s++; }
```

**■■ R5.3** Find the errors in the following if statements.

- `if x > 0 then System.out.print(x);`
- `if (1 + x > Math.pow(x, Math.sqrt(2))) { y = y + x; }`
- `if (x = 1) { y++; }`
- `x = in.nextInt();
if (in.hasNextInt())
{
 sum = sum + x;
}
else
{
 System.out.println("Bad input for x");
}`
- `String letterGrade = "F";
if (grade >= 90) { letterGrade = "A"; }
if (grade >= 80) { letterGrade = "B"; }
if (grade >= 70) { letterGrade = "C"; }
if (grade >= 60) { letterGrade = "D"; }`

**■ R5.4** What do these code fragments print?

- `int n = 1;
int m = -1;
if (n < -m) { System.out.print(n); }
else { System.out.print(m); }`
- `int n = 1;
int m = -1;
if (-n >= m) { System.out.print(n); }
else { System.out.print(m); }`
- `double x = 0;
double y = 1;
if (Math.abs(x - y) < 1) { System.out.print(x); }
else { System.out.print(y); }`
- `double x = Math.sqrt(2);
double y = 2;
if (x * x == y) { System.out.print(x); }
else { System.out.print(y); }`

**■■ R5.5** Suppose `x` and `y` are variables of type `double`. Write a code fragment that sets `y` to `x` if `x` is positive and to 0 otherwise.**■■ R5.6** Suppose `x` and `y` are variables of type `double`. Write a code fragment that sets `y` to the absolute value of `x` without calling the `Math.abs` function. Use an `if` statement.**■■ R5.7** Explain why it is more difficult to compare floating-point numbers than integers. Write Java code to test whether an integer `n` equals 10 and whether a floating-point number `x` is approximately equal to 10.

- **R5.8** It is easy to confuse the = and == operators. Write a test program containing the statement

```
if (floor = 13)
```

What error message do you get? Write another test program with the statement

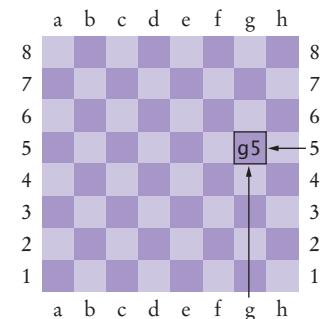
```
count == 0;
```

What does your compiler do when you compile the program?

- ■ **R5.9** Each square on a chess board can be described by a letter and number, such as g5 in the example at right.

The following pseudocode describes an algorithm that determines whether a square with a given letter and number is dark (black) or light (white).

```
If the letter is an a, c, e, or g
  If the number is odd
    color = "black"
  Else
    color = "white"
Else
  If the number is even
    color = "black"
  Else
    color = "white"
```



Using the procedure in Programming Tip 5.5, trace this pseudocode with input g5.

- ■ **Testing R5.10** Give a set of four test cases for the algorithm of Exercise R5.9 that covers all branches.

- ■ **R5.11** In a scheduling program, we want to check whether two appointments overlap. For simplicity, appointments start at a full hour, and we use military time (with hours 0–24). The following pseudocode describes an algorithm that determines whether the appointment with start time **start1** and end time **end1** overlaps with the appointment with start time **start2** and end time **end2**.

```
If start1 > start2
  s = start1
Else
  s = start2
If end1 < end2
  e = end1
Else
  e = end2
If s < e
  The appointments overlap.
Else
  The appointments don't overlap.
```

Trace this algorithm with an appointment from 10–12 and one from 11–13, then with an appointment from 10–11 and one from 12–13.

- **R5.12** Draw a flow chart for the algorithm in Exercise R5.11.

- **R5.13** Draw a flow chart for the algorithm in Exercise E5.13.

- R5.14 Draw a flow chart for the algorithm in Exercise E5.14.
- Testing R5.15 Develop a set of test cases for the algorithm in Exercise R5.11.
- Testing R5.16 Develop a set of test cases for the algorithm in Exercise E5.14.
- R5.17 Write pseudocode for a program that prompts the user for a month and day and prints out whether it is one of the following four holidays:
  - New Year's Day (January 1)
  - Independence Day (July 4)
  - Veterans Day (November 11)
  - Christmas Day (December 25)
- R5.18 Write pseudocode for a program that assigns letter grades for a quiz, according to the following table:
 

Score	Grade
90-100	A
80-89	B
70-79	C
60-69	D
< 60	F
- R5.19 Explain how the lexicographic ordering of strings in Java differs from the ordering of words in a dictionary or telephone book. *Hint:* Consider strings such as IBM, wiley.com, Century 21, and While-U-Wait.
- R5.20 Of the following pairs of strings, which comes first in lexicographic order?
  - a. "Tom", "Jerry"
  - b. "Tom", "Tomato"
  - c. "church", "Churchill"
  - d. "car manufacturer", "carburetor"
  - e. "Harry", "hairy"
  - f. "Java", "Car"
  - g. "Tom", "Tom"
  - h. "Car", "Carl"
  - i. "car", "bar"
- R5.21 Explain the difference between an if/else if/else sequence and nested if statements. Give an example of each.
- R5.22 Give an example of an if/else if/else sequence where the order of the tests does not matter. Give an example where the order of the tests matters.
- R5.23 Rewrite the condition in Section 5.3 to use < operators instead of >= operators. What is the impact on the order of the comparisons?
- Testing R5.24 Give a set of test cases for the tax program in Exercise P5.2. Manually compute the expected results.
- R5.25 Make up a Java code example that shows the dangling else problem using the following statement: A student with a GPA of at least 1.5, but less than 2, is on probation. With less than 1.5, the student is failing.

- R5.26 Complete the following truth table by finding the truth values of the Boolean expressions for all combinations of the Boolean inputs p, q, and r.

p	q	r	(p && q)    !r	!(p && (q    !r))
false	false	false		
false	false	true		
false	true	false		
...				
5 more combinations				
...				

- R5.27 True or false?  $A \&\& B$  is the same as  $B \&\& A$  for any Boolean conditions A and B.
- R5.28 The “advanced search” feature of many search engines allows you to use Boolean operators for complex queries, such as “(cats OR dogs) AND NOT pets”. Contrast these search operators with the Boolean operators in Java.
- R5.29 Suppose the value of b is `false` and the value of x is 0. What is the value of each of the following expressions?
- a. `b && x == 0`
  - b. `b || x == 0`
  - c. `!b && x == 0`
  - d. `!b || x == 0`
  - e. `b && x != 0`
  - f. `b || x != 0`
  - g. `!b && x != 0`
  - h. `!b || x != 0`
- R5.30 Simplify the following expressions. Here, b is a variable of type `boolean`.
- a. `b == true`
  - b. `b == false`
  - c. `b != true`
  - d. `b != false`
- R5.31 Simplify the following statements. Here, b is a variable of type `boolean` and n is a variable of type `int`.
- a. `if (n == 0) { b = true; } else { b = false; }`  
*(Hint: What is the value of `n == 0`?)*
  - b. `if (n == 0) { b = false; } else { b = true; }`
  - c. `b = false; if (n > 1) { if (n < 2) { b = true; } }`
  - d. `if (n < 1) { b = true; } else { b = n > 2; }`
- R5.32 What is wrong with the following program?

```
System.out.print("Enter the number of quarters: ");
int quarters = in.nextInt();
if (in.hasNextInt())
{
    total = total + quarters * 0.25;
    System.out.println("Total: " + total);
```

```

    }
else
{
    System.out.println("Input error.");
}

```

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E5.1** Write a program that reads an integer and prints whether it is negative, zero, or positive.
- **E5.2** Write a program that reads a floating-point number and prints “zero” if the number is zero. Otherwise, print “positive” or “negative”. Add “small” if the absolute value of the number is less than 1, or “large” if it exceeds 1,000,000.
- **E5.3** Write a program that reads an integer and prints how many digits the number has, by checking whether the number is  $\geq 10$ ,  $\geq 100$ , and so on. (Assume that all integers are less than ten billion.) If the number is negative, first multiply it with  $-1$ .
- **E5.4** Write a program that reads three numbers and prints “all the same” if they are all the same, “all different” if they are all different, and “neither” otherwise.
- **E5.5** Write a program that reads three numbers and prints “increasing” if they are in increasing order, “decreasing” if they are in decreasing order, and “neither” otherwise. Here, “increasing” means “strictly increasing”, with each value larger than its predecessor. The sequence 3 4 4 would not be considered increasing.
- **E5.6** Repeat Exercise E5.5, but before reading the numbers, ask the user whether increasing/decreasing should be “strict” or “lenient”. In lenient mode, the sequence 3 4 4 is increasing and the sequence 4 4 4 is both increasing and decreasing.
- **E5.7** Write a program that reads in three integers and prints “in order” if they are sorted in ascending *or* descending order, or “not in order” otherwise. For example,

```

1 2 5   in order
1 5 2   not in order
5 2 1   in order
1 2 2   in order

```

- **E5.8** Write a program that reads four integers and prints “two pairs” if the input consists of two matching pairs (in some order) and “not two pairs” otherwise. For example,

```

1 2 2 1   two pairs
1 2 2 3   not two pairs
2 2 2 2   two pairs

```

- **Business E5.9** Write a program that reads in the name and salary of an employee. Here the salary will denote an *hourly* wage, such as \$9.25. Then ask how many hours the employee worked in the past week. Be sure to accept fractional hours. Compute the pay. Any overtime work (over 40 hours per week) is paid at 150 percent of the regular wage. Print a paycheck for the employee. In your solution, implement a class Paycheck.
- **E5.10** Write a program that reads a temperature value and the letter C for Celsius or F for Fahrenheit. Print whether water is liquid, solid, or gaseous at the given temperature at sea level.

- **E5.11** The boiling point of water drops by about one degree centigrade for every 300 meters (or 1,000 feet) of altitude. Improve the program of Exercise E5.10 to allow the user to supply the altitude in meters or feet.
- **E5.12** Add error handling to Exercise E5.11. If the user does not enter a number when expected, or provides an invalid unit for the altitude, print an error message and end the program.
- ■ **E5.13** When two points in time are compared, each given as hours (in military time, ranging from 0 and 23) and minutes, the following pseudocode determines which comes first.

```

If hour1 < hour2
    time1 comes first.
Else if hour1 and hour2 are the same
    If minute1 < minute2
        time1 comes first.
    Else if minute1 and minute2 are the same
        time1 and time2 are the same.
    Else
        time2 comes first.
Else
    time2 comes first.

```

Write a program that prompts the user for two points in time and prints the time that comes first, then the other time. In your program, supply a class `Time` and a method

```
public int compareTo(Time other)
```

that returns `-1` if the time comes before the other, `0` if both are the same, and `1` otherwise.

- ■ **E5.14** The following algorithm yields the season (Spring, Summer, Fall, or Winter) for a given month and day.

```

If month is 1, 2, or 3, season = "Winter"
Else if month is 4, 5, or 6, season = "Spring"
Else if month is 7, 8, or 9, season = "Summer"
Else if month is 10, 11, or 12, season = "Fall"
If month is divisible by 3 and day >= 21
    If season is "Winter", season = "Spring"
    Else if season is "Spring", season = "Summer"
    Else if season is "Summer", season = "Fall"
    Else season = "Winter"

```



Write a program that prompts the user for a month and day and then prints the season, as determined by this algorithm. Use a class `Date` with a method `getSeason`.

- ■ **E5.15** Write a program that translates a letter grade into a number grade. Letter grades are A, B, C, D, and F, possibly followed by + or -. Their numeric values are 4, 3, 2, 1, and 0. There is no F+ or F-. A + increases the numeric value by 0.3, a - decreases it by 0.3. However, an A+ has value 4.0.

```

Enter a letter grade: B-
The numeric value is 2.7.

```

Use a class `Grade` with a method `getNumericGrade`.

- E5.16** Write a program that translates a number between 0 and 4 into the closest letter grade. For example, the number 2.8 (which might have been the average of several grades) would be converted to B-. Break ties in favor of the better grade; for example 2.85 should be a B.

Use a class Grade with a method `getNumericGrade`.

- E5.17** The original U.S. income tax of 1913 was quite simple. The tax was

- 1 percent on the first \$50,000.
- 2 percent on the amount over \$50,000 up to \$75,000.
- 3 percent on the amount over \$75,000 up to \$100,000.
- 4 percent on the amount over \$100,000 up to \$250,000.
- 5 percent on the amount over \$250,000 up to \$500,000.
- 6 percent on the amount over \$500,000.

There was no separate schedule for single or married taxpayers. Write a program that computes the income tax according to this schedule.

- E5.18** Write a program that takes user input describing a playing card in the following shorthand notation:

A	Ace
2 ... 10	Card values
J	Jack
Q	Queen
K	King
D	Diamonds
H	Hearts
S	Spades
C	Clubs

Your program should print the full description of the card. For example,

```
Enter the card notation: QS
Queen of Spades
```

Implement a class Card whose constructor takes the card notation string and whose `getDescription` method returns a description of the card. If the notation string is not in the correct format, the `getDescription` method should return the string "Unknown".

- E5.19** Write a program that reads in three floating-point numbers and prints the largest of the three inputs. For example:

```
Please enter three numbers: 4 9 2.5
The largest number is 9.
```

- E5.20** Write a program that reads in three strings and sorts them lexicographically.

```
Enter three strings: Charlie Able Baker
Able
Baker
Charlie
```

- E5.21** Write a program that reads in two floating-point numbers and tests whether they are the same up to two decimal places. Here are two sample runs.

```
Enter two floating-point numbers: 2.0 1.99998
They are the same up to two decimal places.
Enter two floating-point numbers: 2.0 1.98999
They are different.
```

- E5.22** Write a program that prompts the user to provide a single character from the alphabet. Print Vowel or Consonant, depending on the user input. If the user input is not a letter (between a and z or A and Z), or is a string of length > 1, print an error message.

- E5.23** Write a program that asks the user to enter a month (1 for January, 2 for February, etc.) and then prints the number of days in the month. For February, print “28 days”.

```
Enter a month: 5
30 days
```

Use a class Month with a method

```
public int getLength()
```

Do not use a separate if/else branch for each month. Use Boolean operators.

- Business E5.24** A supermarket awards coupons depending on how much a customer spends on groceries. For example, if you spend \$50, you will get a coupon worth eight percent of that amount. The following table shows the percent used to calculate the coupon awarded for different amounts spent. Write a program that calculates and prints the value of the coupon a person can receive based on groceries purchased.

Here is a sample run:

```
Please enter the cost of your groceries: 14
You win a discount coupon of $ 1.12. (8% of your purchase)
```

Money Spent	Coupon Percentage
Less than \$10	No coupon
From \$10 to \$60	8%
More than \$60 to \$150	10%
More than \$150 to \$210	12%
More than \$210	14%

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- P5.1** Write a program that prompts for the day and month of the user’s birthday and then prints a horoscope. Make up fortunes for programmers, like this:



```
Please enter your birthday (month and day): 6 16
Gemini are experts at figuring out the behavior of complicated programs.
You feel where bugs are coming from and then stay one step ahead. Tonight,
your style wins approval from a tough critic.
```

Each fortune should contain the name of the astrological sign. (You will find the names and date ranges of the signs at a distressingly large number of sites on the Internet.) Use a class Date with a method getFortune.

- P5.2** Write a program that computes taxes for the following schedule.

If your status is Single and if the taxable income is over	but not over	the tax is	of the amount over
\$0	\$8,000	10%	\$0
\$8,000	\$32,000	\$800 + 15%	\$8,000
\$32,000		\$4,400 + 25%	\$32,000
If your status is Married and if the taxable income is over	but not over	the tax is	of the amount over
\$0	\$16,000	10%	\$0
\$16,000	\$64,000	\$1,600 + 15%	\$16,000
\$64,000		\$8,800 + 25%	\$64,000

- P5.3** The TaxReturn.java program uses a simplified version of the 2008 U.S. income tax schedule. Look up the tax brackets and rates for the current year, for both single and married filers, and implement a program that computes the actual income tax.
- P5.4** *Unit conversion.* Write a unit conversion program that asks the users from which unit they want to convert (fl. oz, gal, oz, lb, in, ft, mi) and to which unit they want to convert (ml, l, g, kg, mm, cm, m, km). Reject incompatible conversions (such as gal → km). Ask for the value to be converted, then display the result:
- ```
Convert from? gal
Convert to? ml
Value? 2.5
2.5 gal = 9462.5 ml
```
- P5.5** A year with 366 days is called a leap year. Leap years are necessary to keep the calendar synchronized with the sun because the earth revolves around the sun once every 365.25 days. Actually, that figure is not entirely precise, and for all dates after 1582 the *Gregorian correction* applies. Usually years that are divisible by 4 are leap years, for example 1996. However, years that are divisible by 100 (for example, 1900) are not leap years, but years that are divisible by 400 are leap years (for example, 2000). Write a program that asks the user for a year and computes whether that year is a leap year. Provide a class Year with a method `isLeapYear`. Use a single `if` statement and Boolean operators.
- P5.6** *Roman numbers.* Write a program that converts a positive integer into the Roman number system. The Roman number system has digits

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| I | 1     |
| V | 5     |
| X | 10    |
| L | 50    |
| C | 100   |
| D | 500   |
| M | 1,000 |

Numbers are formed according to the following rules:

- Only numbers up to 3,999 are represented.
- As in the decimal system, the thousands, hundreds, tens, and ones are expressed separately.
- The numbers 1 to 9 are expressed as

|     |   |      |   |
|-----|---|------|---|
| I   | 1 | VI   | 6 |
| II  | 2 | VII  | 7 |
| III | 3 | VIII | 8 |
| IV  | 4 | IX   | 9 |
| V   | 5 |      |   |



As you can see, an I preceding a V or X is subtracted from the value, and you can never have more than three I's in a row.

- Tens and hundreds are done the same way, except that the letters X, L, C and C, D, M are used instead of I, V, X, respectively.

Your program should take an input, such as 1978, and convert it to Roman numerals, MCMLXXVIII.

**■■■ P5.7** French country names are feminine when they end with the letter e, masculine otherwise, except for the following which are masculine even though they end with e:

- le Belize
- le Cambodge
- le Mexique
- le Mozambique
- le Zaïre
- le Zimbabwe

Write a program that reads the French name of a country and adds the article: le for masculine or la for feminine, such as le Canada or la Belgique.

However, if the country name starts with a vowel, use l'; for example, l'Afghanistan. For the following plural country names, use les:

- les Etats-Unis
- les Pays-Bas

**■■■ Business P5.8** Write a program to simulate a bank transaction. There are two bank accounts: checking and savings. First, ask for the initial balances of the bank accounts; reject negative balances. Then ask for the transactions; options are deposit, withdrawal, and transfer. Then ask for the account; options are checking and savings. Reject transactions that overdraw an account. At the end, print the balances of both accounts.

**■■■ Business P5.9** When you use an automated teller machine (ATM) with your bank card, you need to use a personal identification number (PIN) to access your account. If a user fails more than three times when entering the PIN, the machine will block the card. Assume that the user's PIN is "1234" and write a program that asks the user for the PIN no more than three times, and does the following:

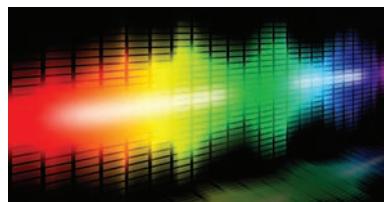


- If the user enters the right number, print a message saying, “Your PIN is correct”, and end the program.
- If the user enters a wrong number, print a message saying, “Your PIN is incorrect” and, if you have asked for the PIN less than three times, ask for it again.
- If the user enters a wrong number three times, print a message saying “Your bank card is blocked” and end the program.

■ **Business P5.10** Calculating the tip when you go to a restaurant is not difficult, but your restaurant wants to suggest a tip according to the service diners receive. Write a program that calculates a tip according to the diner’s satisfaction as follows:

- Ask for the diners’ satisfaction level using these ratings: 1 = Totally satisfied, 2 = Satisfied, 3 = Dissatisfied.
- If the diner is totally satisfied, calculate a 20 percent tip.
- If the diner is satisfied, calculate a 15 percent tip.
- If the diner is dissatisfied, calculate a 10 percent tip.
- Report the satisfaction level and tip in dollars and cents.

■ **Science P5.11** Write a program that prompts the user for a wavelength value and prints a description of the corresponding part of the electromagnetic spectrum, as given in the following table.



| Electromagnetic Spectrum |                                          |                                            |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Type                     | Wavelength (m)                           | Frequency (Hz)                             |
| Radio Waves              | $> 10^{-1}$                              | $< 3 \times 10^9$                          |
| Microwaves               | $10^{-3}$ to $10^{-1}$                   | $3 \times 10^9$ to $3 \times 10^{11}$      |
| Infrared                 | $7 \times 10^{-7}$ to $10^{-3}$          | $3 \times 10^{11}$ to $4 \times 10^{14}$   |
| Visible light            | $4 \times 10^{-7}$ to $7 \times 10^{-7}$ | $4 \times 10^{14}$ to $7.5 \times 10^{14}$ |
| Ultraviolet              | $10^{-8}$ to $4 \times 10^{-7}$          | $7.5 \times 10^{14}$ to $3 \times 10^{16}$ |
| X-rays                   | $10^{-11}$ to $10^{-8}$                  | $3 \times 10^{16}$ to $3 \times 10^{19}$   |
| Gamma rays               | $< 10^{-11}$                             | $> 3 \times 10^{19}$                       |

■ **Science P5.12** Repeat Exercise P5.11, modifying the program so that it prompts for the frequency instead.

■■ **Science P5.13** Repeat Exercise P5.11, modifying the program so that it first asks the user whether the input will be a wavelength or a frequency.

■■■ **Science P5.14** A minivan has two sliding doors. Each door can be opened by either a dashboard switch, its inside handle, or its outside handle. However, the inside handles do not work if a child lock switch is activated. In order for the sliding doors to open, the gear shift must be in park, *and* the master unlock switch must be activated. (This book’s author is the long-suffering owner of just such a vehicle.)



Your task is to simulate a portion of the control software for the vehicle. The input is a sequence of values for the switches and the gear shift, in the following order:

- Dashboard switches for left and right sliding door, child lock, and master unlock (0 for off or 1 for activated)
- Inside and outside handles on the left and right sliding doors (0 or 1)
- The gear shift setting (one of P N D 1 2 3 R).

A typical input would be 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 0 P.

Print “left door opens” and/or “right door opens” as appropriate. If neither door opens, print “both doors stay closed”.

**■ Science P5.15** Sound level  $L$  in units of decibel (dB) is determined by



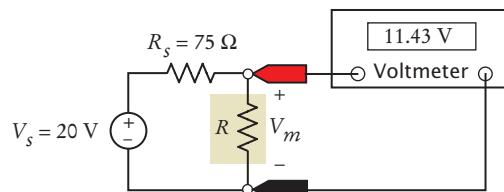
$$L = 20 \log_{10}(p/p_0)$$

where  $p$  is the sound pressure of the sound (in Pascals, abbreviated Pa), and  $p_0$  is a reference sound pressure equal to  $20 \times 10^{-6}$  Pa (where  $L$  is 0 dB). The following table gives descriptions for certain sound levels.

|                                   |        |
|-----------------------------------|--------|
| Threshold of pain                 | 130 dB |
| Possible hearing damage           | 120 dB |
| Jack hammer at 1 m                | 100 dB |
| Traffic on a busy roadway at 10 m | 90 dB  |
| Normal conversation               | 60 dB  |
| Calm library                      | 30 dB  |
| Light leaf rustling               | 0 dB   |

Write a program that reads a value and a unit, either dB or Pa, and then prints the closest description from the list above.

**■ ■ Science P5.16** The electric circuit shown below is designed to measure the temperature of the gas in a chamber.



The resistor  $R$  represents a temperature sensor enclosed in the chamber. The resistance  $R$ , in  $\Omega$ , is related to the temperature  $T$ , in  $^{\circ}\text{C}$ , by the equation

$$R = R_0 + kT$$

In this device, assume  $R_0 = 100 \Omega$  and  $k = 0.5$ . The voltmeter displays the value of the voltage,  $V_m$ , across the sensor. This voltage  $V_m$  indicates the temperature,  $T$ , of the gas according to the equation

$$T = \frac{R}{k} - \frac{R_0}{k} = \frac{R_s}{k} \frac{V_m}{V_s - V_m} - \frac{R_0}{k}$$

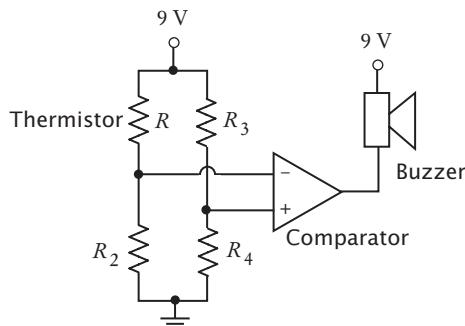
Suppose the voltmeter voltage is constrained to the range  $V_{\min} = 12$  volts  $\leq V_m \leq V_{\max} = 18$  volts. Write a program that accepts a value of  $V_m$  and checks that it's between 12 and 18. The program should return the gas temperature in degrees Celsius when  $V_m$  is between 12 and 18 and an error message when it isn't.

- **Science P5.17** Crop damage due to frost is one of the many risks confronting farmers. The figure below shows a simple alarm circuit designed to warn of frost. The alarm circuit uses a device called a thermistor to sound a buzzer when the temperature drops below freezing. Thermistors are semiconductor devices that exhibit a temperature dependent resistance described by the equation



$$R = R_0 e^{\beta \left( \frac{1}{T} - \frac{1}{T_0} \right)}$$

where  $R$  is the resistance, in  $\Omega$ , at the temperature  $T$ , in  $^{\circ}\text{K}$ , and  $R_0$  is the resistance, in  $\Omega$ , at the temperature  $T_0$ , in  $^{\circ}\text{K}$ .  $\beta$  is a constant that depends on the material used to make the thermistor.



The circuit is designed so that the alarm will sound when

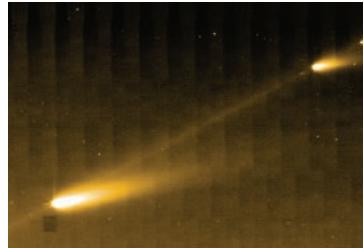
$$\frac{R_2}{R + R_2} < \frac{R_4}{R_3 + R_4}$$

The thermistor used in the alarm circuit has  $R_0 = 33,192 \Omega$  at  $T_0 = 40 ^{\circ}\text{C}$ , and  $\beta = 3,310 ^{\circ}\text{K}$ . (Notice that  $\beta$  has units of  $^{\circ}\text{K}$ . The temperature in  $^{\circ}\text{K}$  is obtained by adding 273° to the temperature in  $^{\circ}\text{C}$ .) The resistors  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ , and  $R_4$  have a resistance of  $156.3 \text{ k}\Omega = 156,300 \Omega$ .

Write a Java program that prompts the user for a temperature in  $^{\circ}\text{F}$  and prints a message indicating whether or not the alarm will sound at that temperature.

- **Science P5.18** A mass  $m = 2$  kilograms is attached to the end of a rope of length  $r = 3$  meters. The mass is whirled around at high speed. The rope can withstand a maximum tension of  $T = 60$  Newtons. Write a program that accepts a rotation speed  $v$  and determines whether such a speed will cause the rope to break. Hint:  $T = m v^2 / r$ .
- **Science P5.19** A mass  $m$  is attached to the end of a rope of length  $r = 3$  meters. The rope can only be whirled around at speeds of 1, 10, 20, or 40 meters per second. The rope can withstand a maximum tension of  $T = 60$  Newtons. Write a program where the user enters the value of the mass  $m$ , and the program determines the greatest speed at which it can be whirled without breaking the rope. Hint:  $T = m v^2 / r$ .

**■■ Science P5.20** The average person can jump off the ground with a velocity of 7 mph without fear of leaving the planet. However, if an astronaut jumps with this velocity while standing on Halley's Comet, will the astronaut ever come back down? Create a program that allows the user to input a launch velocity (in mph) from the surface of Halley's Comet and determine whether a jumper will return to the surface. If not, the program should calculate how much more massive the comet must be in order to return the jumper to the surface.



*Hint:* Escape velocity is  $v_{\text{escape}} = \sqrt{2 \frac{GM}{R}}$ , where  $G = 6.67 \times 10^{-11} \text{ N m}^2/\text{kg}^2$  is the gravitational constant,  $M = 1.3 \times 10^{22} \text{ kg}$  is the mass of Halley's comet, and  $R = 1.153 \times 10^6 \text{ m}$  is its radius.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

**1.** Change the if statement to

```
if (floor > 14)
{
    actualFloor = floor - 2;
}
```

**2.** 85. 90. 85.

**3.** The only difference is if originalPrice is 100. The statement in Self Check 2 sets discountedPrice to 90; this one sets it to 80.

**4.** 95. 100. 95.

**5.** if (fuelAmount < 0.10 \* fuelCapacity)
{
 System.out.println("red");
}
else
{
 System.out.println("green");
}

**6.** (a) and (b) are both true, (c) is false.

**7.** floor <= 13

**8.** The values should be compared with ==, not =.

**9.** input.equals("Y")

**10.** str.equals("") or str.length() == 0

**11.** (a) 0; (b) 1; (c) An exception occurs.

**12.** Syntactically incorrect: e, g, h. Logically questionable: a, d, f.

**13.** if (scoreA > scoreB)

```
{
    System.out.println("A won");
}
else if (scoreA < scoreB)
{
    System.out.println("B won");
}
else
{
    System.out.println("Game tied");
}
```

**14.** if (x > 0) { s = 1; }
else if (x < 0) { s = -1; }
else { s = 0; }

**15.** You could first set s to one of the three values:

```
s = 0;
if (x > 0) { s = 1; }
else if (x < 0) { s = -1; }
```

**16.** The if (price <= 100) can be omitted (leaving just else), making it clear that the else branch is the sole alternative.

**17.** No destruction of buildings.

**18.** Add a branch before the final else:

```
else if (richter < 0)
{
    System.out.println("Error: Negative input");
}
```

**19.** 3200.

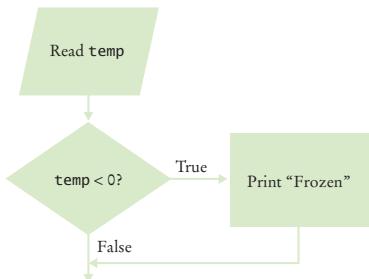
- 20.** No. Then the computation is  $0.10 \times 32000 + 0.25 \times (32000 - 32000)$ .
- 21.** No. Their individual tax is \$5,200 each, and if they married, they would pay \$10,400. Actually, taxpayers in higher tax brackets (which our program does not model) may pay higher taxes when they marry, a phenomenon known as the *marriage penalty*.

- 22.** Change else in line 22 to

```
else if (maritalStatus.equals("N"))
and add another branch after line 25:
else
{
    System.out.println(
        "Error: Please answer Y or N.");
}
```

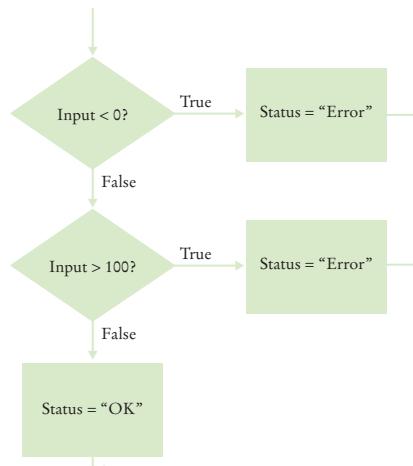
- 23.** The higher tax rate is only applied on the income in the higher bracket. Suppose you are single and make \$31,900. Should you try to get a \$200 raise? Absolutely: you get to keep 90 percent of the first \$100 and 75 percent of the next \$100.

**24.**

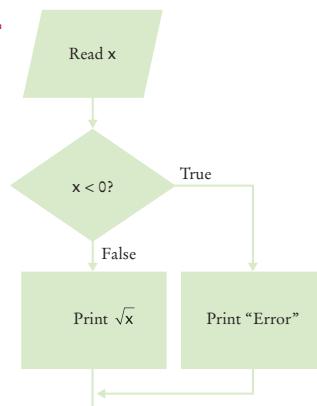


- 25.** The “True” arrow from the first decision points into the “True” branch of the second decision, creating spaghetti code.

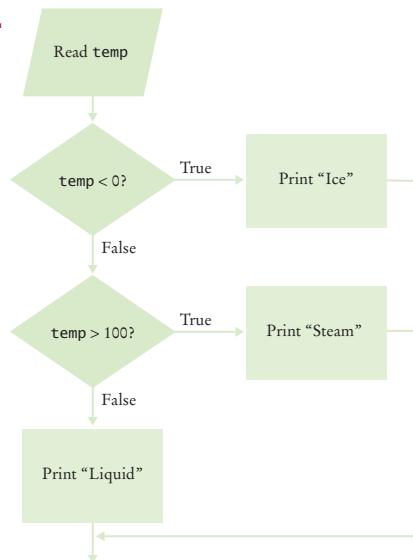
- 26.** Here is one solution. In Section 5.7, you will see how you can combine the conditions for a more elegant solution.



**27.**



**28.**



**29.** Test Case    Expected Output

|    |    | Comment                                                                                          |
|----|----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 12 | 12 | Below 13th floor                                                                                 |
| 14 | 13 | Above 13th floor                                                                                 |
| 13 | ?  | The specification is not clear—See Section 5.8 for a version of this program with error handling |

- 30.** A boundary test case is a price of \$128. A 16 percent discount should apply because the problem statement states that the larger discount applies if the price is *at least* \$128. Thus, the expected output is \$107.52.

**31.** Test Case    Expected Output

|     |                          | Comment                                                                                                                        |
|-----|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9   | Most structures fall     |                                                                                                                                |
| 7.5 | Many buildings destroyed |                                                                                                                                |
| 6.5 | Many buildings ...       |                                                                                                                                |
| 5   | Damage to poorly...      |                                                                                                                                |
| 3   | No destruction...        |                                                                                                                                |
| 8.0 | Most structures fall     | Boundary case. In this program, boundary cases are not as significant because the behavior of an earthquake changes gradually. |
| -1  |                          | The specification is not clear—see Self Check 18 for a version of this program with error handling.                            |

**32.** Test Case    Expected Output

|                |                 | Comment                              |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|
| (0.5, 0.5)     | inside          |                                      |
| (4, 2)         | outside         |                                      |
| (0, 2)         | on the boundary | Exactly on the boundary              |
| (1.414, 1.414) | on the boundary | Close to the boundary                |
| (0, 1.9)       | inside          | Not less than 1 mm from the boundary |
| (0, 2.1)       | outside         | Not less than 1 mm from the boundary |

**33.**  $x == 0 \&& y == 0$

**34.**  $x == 0 || y == 0$

**35.**  $(x == 0 \&& y != 0) || (y == 0 \&& x != 0)$

**36.** The same as the value of frozen.

**37.** You are guaranteed that there are no other values. With strings or integers, you would need to check that no values such as "maybe" or -1 enter your calculations.

- 38.** (a) Error: The floor must be between 1 and 20.

(b) Error: The floor must be between 1 and 20.

(c) 19 (d) Error: Not an integer.

- 39.**  $\text{floor} == 13 || \text{floor} <= 0 || \text{floor} > 20$

- 40.** Check for `in.hasNextDouble()`, to make sure a researcher didn't supply an input such as oh my. Check for `weight <= 0`, because any rat must surely have a positive weight. We don't know how giant a rat could be, but the New Guinea rats weighed no more than 2 kg. A regular house rat (*rattus rattus*) weighs up to 0.2 kg, so we'll say that any weight  $> 10$  kg was surely an input error, perhaps confusing grams and kilograms. Thus, the checks are

```
if (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    double weight = in.nextDouble();
    if (weight < 0)
    {
        System.out.println(
            "Error: Weight cannot be negative.");
    }
    else if (weight > 10)
    {
        System.out.println(
            "Error: Weight > 10 kg.");
    }
    else
    {
        Process valid weight.
    }
}
else
{
    System.out.print("Error: Not a number");
}
```

- 41.** The second input fails, and the program terminates without printing anything.



# LOOPS

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To implement while, for, and do loops
- To hand-trace the execution of a program
- To learn to use common loop algorithms
- To understand nested loops
- To implement programs that read and process data sets
- To use a computer for simulations
- To learn about the debugger



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### 6.1 THE WHILE LOOP 242

*Syntax 6.1:* while Statement 243

*Common Error 6.1:* Don't Think "Are We There Yet?" 247

*Common Error 6.2:* Infinite Loops 248

*Common Error 6.3:* Off-by-One Errors 248

### 6.2 PROBLEM SOLVING: HAND-TRACING 249

*Computing & Society 6.1:* Software Piracy 253

### 6.3 THE FOR LOOP 254

*Syntax 6.2:* for Statement 254

*Programming Tip 6.1:* Use for Loops for Their Intended Purpose Only 259

*Programming Tip 6.2:* Choose Loop Bounds That Match Your Task 260

*Programming Tip 6.3:* Count Iterations 260

*Special Topic 6.1:* Variables Declared in a for Loop Header 261

### 6.4 THE DO LOOP 262

*Programming Tip 6.4:* Flowcharts for Loops 263

### 6.5 APPLICATION: PROCESSING SENTINEL VALUES 263

*Special Topic 6.2:* Redirection of Input and Output 266

*Special Topic 6.3:* The "Loop and a Half" Problem 266

*Special Topic 6.4:* The break and continue Statements 267

### 6.6 PROBLEM SOLVING: STORYBOARDS 269

### 6.7 COMMON LOOP ALGORITHMS 272

*How To 6.1:* Writing a Loop 276

*Worked Example 6.1:* Credit Card Processing 

### 6.8 NESTED LOOPS 279

*Worked Example 6.2:* Manipulating the Pixels in an Image 

### 6.9 APPLICATION: RANDOM NUMBERS AND SIMULATIONS 283

### 6.10 USING A DEBUGGER 286

*How To 6.2:* Debugging 289

*Worked Example 6.3:* A Sample

Debugging Session 

*Computing & Society 6.2:* The First Bug 291



In a loop, a part of a program is repeated over and over, until a specific goal is reached. Loops are important for calculations that require repeated steps and for processing input consisting of many data items. In this chapter, you will learn about loop statements in Java, as well as techniques for writing programs that process input and simulate activities in the real world.

## 6.1 The while Loop

In this section, you will learn about *loop statements* that repeatedly execute instructions until a goal has been reached.

Recall the investment problem from Chapter 1. You put \$10,000 into a bank account that earns 5 percent interest per year. How many years does it take for the account balance to be double the original investment?

In Chapter 1 we developed the following algorithm for this problem:

Start with a year value of 0, a column for the interest, and a balance of \$10,000.

| year | interest | balance  |
|------|----------|----------|
| 0    |          | \$10,000 |

Repeat the following steps while the balance is less than \$20,000.

Add 1 to the year value.

Compute the interest as balance  $\times$  0.05 (i.e., 5 percent interest).

Add the interest to the balance.

Report the final year value as the answer.

You now know how to declare and update the variables in Java. What you don't yet know is how to carry out "Repeat steps while the balance is less than \$20,000".



*Because the interest earned also earns interest, a bank balance grows exponentially.*

*In a particle accelerator, subatomic particles traverse a loop-shaped tunnel multiple times, gaining the speed required for physical experiments. Similarly, in computer science, statements in a loop are executed while a condition is true.*



**Figure 1** Flowchart of a while Loop

A loop executes instructions repeatedly while a condition is true.

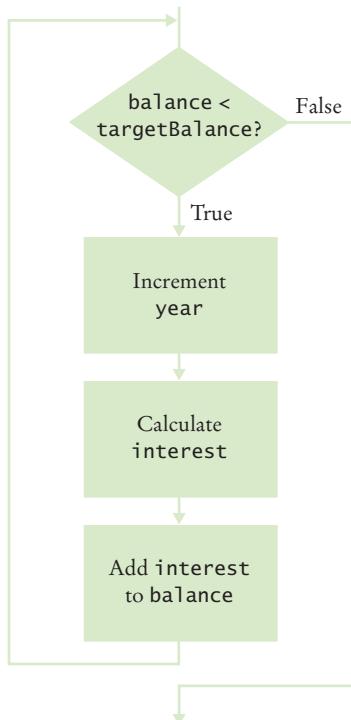
In Java, the `while` statement implements such a repetition (see Syntax 6.1). It has the form

```
while (condition)
{
    statements
}
```

As long as the condition remains true, the statements inside the `while` statement are executed. These statements are called the **body** of the `while` statement.

In our case, we want to increment the year counter and add interest while the balance is less than the target balance of \$20,000:

```
while (balance < targetBalance)
{
    year++;
    double interest = balance * RATE / 100;
    balance = balance + interest;
}
```



A `while` statement is an example of a **loop**. If you draw a flowchart, the flow of execution loops again to the point where the condition is tested (see Figure 1).

## Syntax 6.1 while Statement

**Syntax**

```
while (condition)
{
    statements
}
```

This variable is declared outside the loop and updated in the loop.

If the condition never becomes false, an infinite loop occurs.  
See page 248.

This variable is created in each loop iteration.

double balance = 0;

Beware of "off-by-one" errors in the loop condition.  
See page 248.

Don't put a semicolon here!  
See page 184.

while (balance < targetBalance)

{

    double interest = balance \* RATE / 100;
    balance = balance + interest;

These statements are executed while the condition is true.

}

Lining up braces is a good idea.  
See page 184.

Braces are not required if the body contains a single statement, but it's good to always use them.  
See page 184.

When you declare a variable *inside* the loop body, the variable is created for each iteration of the loop and removed after the end of each iteration. For example, consider the `interest` variable in this loop:

```
while (balance < targetBalance)
{
    year++;
    double interest = balance * RATE / 100;
    balance = balance + interest;
}
// interest no longer declared here
```

A new interest variable  
is created in each iteration.

**1** Check the loop condition

balance = 10000

year = 0

The condition is true

```
while (balance < targetBalance)
{
    year++;
    double interest = balance * RATE / 100;
    balance = balance + interest;
}
```

**2** Execute the statements in the loop

balance = 10500

year = 1

interest = 500

```
while (balance < targetBalance)
{
    year++;
    double interest = balance * RATE / 100;
    balance = balance + interest;
}
```

**3** Check the loop condition again

balance = 10500

year = 1

The condition is still true

```
while (balance < targetBalance)
{
    year++;
    double interest = balance * RATE / 100;
    balance = balance + interest;
}
```

⋮

**4** After 15 iterations

balance = 20789.28

year = 15

The condition is  
no longer true

```
while (balance < targetBalance)
{
    year++;
    double interest = balance * RATE / 100;
    balance = balance + interest;
}
```

**5** Execute the statement following the loop

balance = 20789.28

year = 15

```
while (balance < targetBalance)
{
    year++;
    double interest = balance * RATE / 100;
    balance = balance + interest;
}
System.out.println(year);
```

**Figure 2**  
Execution of the  
Investment Loop

In contrast, the `balance` and `year` variables were declared outside the loop body. That way, the same variable is used for all iterations of the loop.

Here is the program that solves the investment problem. Figure 2 illustrates the program's execution.

### section\_1/Investment.java

```

1  /**
2   * A class to monitor the growth of an investment that
3   * accumulates interest at a fixed annual rate.
4  */
5  public class Investment
6  {
7      private double balance;
8      private double rate;
9      private int year;
10
11 /**
12  * Constructs an Investment object from a starting balance and
13 * interest rate.
14 * @param aBalance the starting balance
15 * @param aRate the interest rate in percent
16 */
17 public Investment(double aBalance, double aRate)
18 {
19     balance = aBalance;
20     rate = aRate;
21     year = 0;
22 }
23
24 /**
25 * Keeps accumulating interest until a target balance has
26 * been reached.
27 * @param targetBalance the desired balance
28 */
29 public void waitForBalance(double targetBalance)
30 {
31     while (balance < targetBalance)
32     {
33         year++;
34         double interest = balance * rate / 100;
35         balance = balance + interest;
36     }
37 }
38
39 /**
40 * Gets the current investment balance.
41 * @return the current balance
42 */
43 public double getBalance()
44 {
45     return balance;
46 }
47
48 /**
49 * Gets the number of years this investment has accumulated
50 * interest.
51 * @return the number of years since the start of the investment

```

```

52     */
53     public int getYears()
54     {
55         return year;
56     }
57 }
```

**section\_1/InvestmentRunner.java**

```

1 /**
2      This program computes how long it takes for an investment
3      to double.
4 */
5 public class InvestmentRunner
6 {
7     public static void main(String[] args)
8     {
9         final double INITIAL_BALANCE = 10000;
10        final double RATE = 5;
11        Investment invest = new Investment(INITIAL_BALANCE, RATE);
12        invest.waitForBalance(2 * INITIAL_BALANCE);
13        int years = invest.getYears();
14        System.out.println("The investment doubled after "
15                           + years + " years");
16    }
17 }
```

**Program Run**

The investment doubled after 15 years.

**SELF CHECK**

- How many years does it take for the investment to triple? Modify the program and run it.
- If the interest rate is 10 percent per year, how many years does it take for the investment to double? Modify the program and run it.
- Modify the program so that the balance after each year is printed. How did you do that?
- Suppose we change the program so that the condition of the `while` loop is  
`while (balance <= targetBalance)`  
What is the effect on the program? Why?
- What does the following loop print?

```

int n = 1;
while (n < 100)
{
    n = 2 * n;
    System.out.print(n + " ");
}
```

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R6.1, R6.5, E6.13.

**Table 1** while Loop Examples

| Loop                                                                                              | Output                                  | Explanation                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre>i = 0; sum = 0; while (sum &lt; 10) {     i++; sum = sum + i;     Print i and sum; }</pre>   | 1 1<br>2 3<br>3 6<br>4 10               | When <code>sum</code> is 10, the loop condition is false, and the loop ends.                                                                                                              |
| <pre>i = 0; sum = 0; while (sum &lt; 10) {     i++; sum = sum - i;     Print i and sum; }</pre>   | 1 -1<br>2 -3<br>3 -6<br>4 -10<br>. . .  | Because <code>sum</code> never reaches 10, this is an “infinite loop” (see Common Error 6.2 on page 248).                                                                                 |
| <pre>i = 0; sum = 0; while (sum &lt; 0) {     i++; sum = sum - i;     Print i and sum; }</pre>    | (No output)                             | The statement <code>sum &lt; 0</code> is false when the condition is first checked, and the loop is never executed.                                                                       |
| <pre>i = 0; sum = 0; while (sum &gt;= 10) {     i++; sum = sum + i;     Print i and sum; }</pre>  | (No output)                             | The programmer probably thought, “Stop when the sum is at least 10.” However, the loop condition controls when the loop is executed, not when it ends (see Common Error 6.1 on page 247). |
| <pre>i = 0; sum = 0; while (sum &lt; 10) ; {     i++; sum = sum + i;     Print i and sum; }</pre> | (No output, program does not terminate) | Note the semicolon before the <code>{</code> . This loop has an empty body. It runs forever, checking whether <code>sum &lt; 10</code> and doing nothing in the body.                     |

**Common Error 6.1****Don't Think "Are We There Yet?"**

When doing something repetitive, most of us want to know when we are done. For example, you may think, “I want to get at least \$20,000,” and set the loop condition to

```
balance >= targetBalance
```

But the `while` loop thinks the opposite: How long am I allowed to keep going? The correct loop condition is

```
while (balance < targetBalance)
```

In other words: “Keep at it while the balance is less than the target.”

*When writing a loop condition, don't ask, “Are we there yet?” The condition determines how long the loop will keep going.*



## Common Error 6.2

**Infinite Loops**

A very annoying loop error is an *infinite loop*: a loop that runs forever and can be stopped only by killing the program or restarting the computer. If there are output statements in the program, then reams and reams of output flash by on the screen. Otherwise, the program just sits there and *hangs*, seeming to do nothing. On some systems, you can kill a hanging program by hitting Ctrl + C. On others, you can close the window in which the program runs.

A common reason for infinite loops is forgetting to update the variable that controls the loop:

```
int year = 1;
while (year <= 20)
{
    double interest = balance * RATE / 100;
    balance = balance + interest;
}
```

Here the programmer forgot to add a `year++` command in the loop. As a result, the year always stays at 1, and the loop never comes to an end.

Another common reason for an infinite loop is accidentally incrementing a counter that should be decremented (or vice versa). Consider this example:

```
int year = 20;
while (year > 0)
{
    double interest = balance * RATE / 100;
    balance = balance + interest;
    year++;
}
```

The `year` variable really should have been decremented, not incremented. This is a common error because incrementing counters is so much more common than decrementing that your fingers may type the `++` on autopilot. As a consequence, `year` is always larger than 0, and the loop never ends. (Actually, `year` may eventually exceed the largest representable positive integer and *wrap around* to a negative number. Then the loop ends—of course, with a completely wrong result.)



*Like this hamster who can't stop running in the treadmill, an infinite loop never ends.*

## Common Error 6.3

**Off-by-One Errors**

Consider our computation of the number of years that are required to double an investment:

```
int year = 0;
while (balance < targetBalance)
{
    year++;
    balance = balance * (1 + RATE / 100);
}
System.out.println("The investment doubled after "
+ year + " years.");
```

Should `year` start at 0 or at 1? Should you test for `balance < targetBalance` or for `balance <= targetBalance`? It is easy to be *off by one* in these expressions.

Some people try to solve **off-by-one errors** by randomly inserting +1 or -1 until the program seems to work—a terrible strategy. It can take a long time to compile and test all the various possibilities. Expending a small amount of mental effort is a real time saver.

Fortunately, off-by-one errors are easy to avoid, simply by thinking through a couple of test cases and using the information from the test cases to come up with a rationale for your decisions.

Should year start at 0 or at 1? Look at a scenario with simple values: an initial balance of \$100 and an interest rate of 50 percent. After year 1, the balance is \$150, and after year 2 it is \$225, or over \$200. So the investment doubled after 2 years. The loop executed two times, incrementing year each time. Hence year must start at 0, not at 1.

An off-by-one error is a common error when programming loops. Think through simple test cases to avoid this type of error.

| year | balance |
|------|---------|
| 0    | \$100   |
| 1    | \$150   |
| 2    | \$225   |

In other words, the `balance` variable denotes the balance after the end of the year. At the outset, the `balance` variable contains the balance after year 0 and not after year 1.

Next, should you use a < or <= comparison in the test? This is harder to figure out, because it is rare for the balance to be exactly twice the initial balance. There is one case when this happens, namely when the interest is 100 percent. The loop executes once. Now year is 1, and `balance` is exactly equal to `2 * INITIAL_BALANCE`. Has the investment doubled after one year? It has. Therefore, the loop should not execute again. If the test condition is `balance < targetBalance`, the loop stops, as it should. If the test condition had been `balance <= targetBalance`, the loop would have executed once more.

In other words, you keep adding interest while the balance *has not yet doubled*.

## 6.2 Problem Solving: Hand-Tracing

Hand-tracing is a simulation of code execution in which you step through instructions and track the values of the variables.

In Programming Tip 5.5, you learned about the method of hand-tracing. When you hand-trace code or pseudocode, you write the names of the variables on a sheet of paper, mentally execute each step of the code, and update the variables.

It is best to have the code written or printed on a sheet of paper. Use a marker, such as a paper clip, to mark the current line. Whenever a variable changes, cross out the old value and write the new value below. When a program produces output, also write down the output in another column.

Consider this example. What value is displayed?

```
int n = 1729;
int sum = 0;
while (n > 0)
{
    int digit = n % 10;
    sum = sum + digit;
    n = n / 10;
}
System.out.println(sum);
```

There are three variables: `n`, `sum`, and `digit`.

| <code>n</code> | <code>sum</code> | <code>digit</code> |
|----------------|------------------|--------------------|
|                |                  |                    |
|                |                  |                    |

The first two variables are initialized with 1729 and 0 before the loop is entered.

```

clip int n = 1729;
int sum = 0;
while (n > 0)
{
    int digit = n % 10;
    sum = sum + digit;
    n = n / 10;
}
System.out.println(sum);

```

| <code>n</code> | <code>sum</code> | <code>digit</code> |
|----------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1729           | 0                |                    |
|                |                  |                    |
|                |                  |                    |
|                |                  |                    |
|                |                  |                    |

Because `n` is greater than zero, enter the loop. The variable `digit` is set to 9 (the remainder of dividing 1729 by 10). The variable `sum` is set to  $0 + 9 = 9$ .

```

clip int n = 1729;
int sum = 0;
while (n > 0)
{
    int digit = n % 10;
    sum = sum + digit;
    n = n / 10;
}
System.out.println(sum);

```

| <code>n</code> | <code>sum</code> | <code>digit</code> |
|----------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1729           | 0                |                    |
|                | 9                | 9                  |
|                |                  |                    |
|                |                  |                    |
|                |                  |                    |
|                |                  |                    |

Finally in this iteration, `n` becomes 172. (Recall that the remainder in the division  $1729 / 10$  is discarded because both arguments are integers.)

Cross out the old values and write the new ones under the old ones.

```

clip int n = 1729;
int sum = 0;
while (n > 0)
{
    int digit = n % 10;
    sum = sum + digit;
    n = n / 10;
}
System.out.println(sum);

```

| <code>n</code> | <code>sum</code> | <code>digit</code> |
|----------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1729           | 0                |                    |
| 172            | 9                | 9                  |
|                |                  |                    |
|                |                  |                    |
|                |                  |                    |
|                |                  |                    |

Now check the loop condition again.

```

clip int n = 1729;
int sum = 0;
while (n > 0)
{
    int digit = n % 10;
    sum = sum + digit;
    n = n / 10;
}
System.out.println(sum);

```

Because  $n$  is still greater than zero, repeat the loop. Now digit becomes 2, sum is set to  $9 + 2 = 11$ , and  $n$  is set to 17.

| $n$  | sum | digit |
|------|-----|-------|
| 1729 | 0   |       |
| 172  | 9   | 9     |
| 17   | 11  | 2     |
|      |     |       |
|      |     |       |
|      |     |       |

Repeat the loop once again, setting digit to 7, sum to  $11 + 7 = 18$ , and  $n$  to 1.

| $n$  | sum | digit |
|------|-----|-------|
| 1729 | 0   |       |
| 172  | 9   | 9     |
| 17   | 11  | 2     |
| 1    | 18  | 7     |
|      |     |       |
|      |     |       |
|      |     |       |

Enter the loop for one last time. Now digit is set to 1, sum to 19, and  $n$  becomes zero.

| $n$  | sum | digit |
|------|-----|-------|
| 1729 | 0   |       |
| 172  | 9   | 9     |
| 17   | 11  | 2     |
| 1    | 18  | 7     |
| 0    | 19  | 1     |
|      |     |       |
|      |     |       |

```
int n = 1729;
int sum = 0;
while (n > 0)
{
    int digit = n % 10;
    sum = sum + digit;
    n = n / 10;
}
System.out.println(sum);
```

Because  $n$  equals zero,  
this condition is not true.

The condition  $n > 0$  is now false. Continue with the statement after the loop.

```
int n = 1729;
int sum = 0;
while (n > 0)
{
    int digit = n % 10;
    sum = sum + digit;
    n = n / 10;
}
System.out.println(sum);
```

| $n$  | sum | digit | output |
|------|-----|-------|--------|
| 1729 | 0   |       |        |
| 172  | 9   | 9     |        |
| 17   | 11  | 2     |        |
| 1    | 18  | 7     |        |
| 0    | 19  | 1     | 19     |
|      |     |       |        |
|      |     |       |        |

This statement is an output statement. The value that is output is the value of sum, which is 19.



Of course, you can get the same answer by just running the code. However, hand-tracing can give you an *insight* that you would not get if you simply ran the code. Consider again what happens in each iteration:

- We extract the last digit of  $n$ .
- We add that digit to  $sum$ .
- We strip the digit off  $n$ .

Hand-tracing can help you understand how an unfamiliar algorithm works.

Hand-tracing can show errors in code or pseudocode.

In other words, the loop forms the sum of the digits in  $n$ . You now know what the loop does for any value of  $n$ , not just the one in the example. (Why would anyone want to form the sum of the digits? Operations of this kind are useful for checking the validity of credit card numbers and other forms of ID numbers.)

Hand-tracing does not just help you understand code that works correctly. It is a powerful technique for finding errors in your code. When a program behaves in a way that you don't expect, get out a sheet of paper and track the values of the variables as you mentally step through the code.

You don't need a working program to do hand-tracing. You can hand-trace pseudocode. In fact, it is an excellent idea to hand-trace your pseudocode before you go to the trouble of translating it into actual code, to confirm that it works correctly.

### SELF CHECK



- 6.** Hand-trace the following code, showing the value of  $n$  and the output.

```
int n = 5;
while (n >= 0)
{
    n--;
    System.out.print(n);
}
```

- 7.** Hand-trace the following code, showing the value of  $n$  and the output. What potential error do you notice?

```
int n = 1;
while (n <= 3)
{
    System.out.print(n + " ");
    n++;
}
```

- 8.** Hand-trace the following code, assuming that  $a$  is 2 and  $n$  is 4. Then explain what the code does for arbitrary values of  $a$  and  $n$ .

```
int r = 1;
int i = 1;
while (i <= n)
{
    r = r * a;
    i++;
}
```

- 9.** Trace the following code. What error do you observe?

```
int n = 1;
while (n != 50)
{
    System.out.println(n);
    n = n + 10;
}
```

- 10.** The following pseudocode is intended to count the number of digits in the number  $n$ :

```

count = 1
temp = n
while (temp > 10)
        Increment count.
        Divide temp by 10.0.

```

Trace the pseudocode for  $n = 123$  and  $n = 100$ . What error do you find?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R6.3, R6.6.



## Computing & Society 6.1 Software Piracy

As you read this, you will have written a few computer programs and experienced firsthand how much effort it takes to write even the humblest of programs. Writing a real software product, such as a financial application or a computer game, takes a lot of time and money. Few people, and fewer companies, are going to spend that kind of time and money if they don't have a reasonable chance to make more money from their effort. (Actually, some companies give away their software in the hope that users will upgrade to more elaborate paid versions. Other companies give away the software that enables users to read and use files but sell the software needed to create those files. Finally, there are individuals who donate their time, out of enthusiasm, and produce programs that you can copy freely.)

When selling software, a company must rely on the honesty of its customers. It is an easy matter for an unscrupulous person to make copies of computer programs without paying for them. In most countries that is illegal. Most governments provide legal protection, such as copyright laws and patents, to encourage the development of new products. Countries that tolerate widespread piracy have found that they have an ample cheap supply of foreign software, but no local manufacturers willing to design good soft-

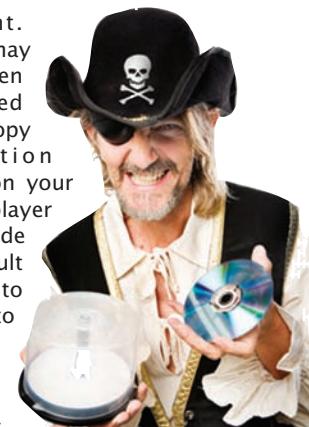
ware for their own citizens, such as word processors in the local script or financial programs adapted to the local tax laws.

When a mass market for software first appeared, vendors were enraged by the money they lost through piracy. They tried to fight back by various schemes to ensure that only the legitimate owner could use the software, such as *dongles*—devices that must be attached to a printer port before the software will run. Legitimate users hated these measures. They paid for the software, but they had to suffer through inconveniences, such as having multiple dongles stick out from their computer. In the United States, market pressures forced most vendors to give up on these copy protection schemes, but they are still commonplace in other parts of the world.

Because it is so easy and inexpensive to pirate software, and the chance of being found out is minimal, you have to make a moral choice for yourself. If a package that you would really like to have is too expensive for your budget, do you steal it, or do you stay honest and get by with a more affordable product?

Of course, piracy is not limited to software. The same issues arise for other digital products as well. You may have had the opportunity to obtain copies of songs or movies without

payment. Or you may have been frustrated by a copy protection device on your music player that made it difficult for you to listen to songs that you paid for. Admittedly, it can be difficult to have a lot of sympathy for a musical ensemble whose publisher charges a lot of money for what seems to have been very little effort on their part, at least when compared to the effort that goes into designing and implementing a software package. Nevertheless, it seems only fair that artists and authors receive some compensation for their efforts. How to pay artists, authors, and programmers fairly, without burdening honest customers, is an unsolved problem at the time of this writing, and many computer scientists are engaged in research in this area.



## 6.3 The for Loop

The for loop is used when a value runs from a starting point to an ending point with a constant increment or decrement.

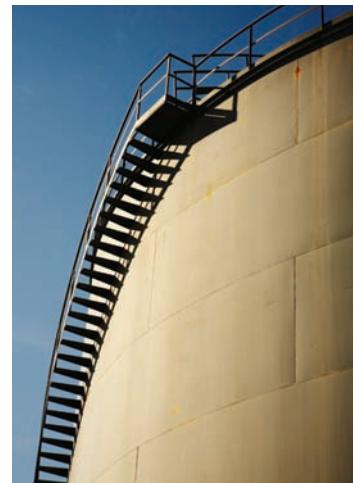
It often happens that you want to execute a sequence of statements a given number of times. You can use a while loop that is controlled by a counter, as in the following example:

```
int counter = 1; // Initialize the counter
while (counter <= 10) // Check the counter
{
    System.out.println(counter);
    counter++; // Update the counter
}
```

Because this loop type is so common, there is a special form for it, called the for loop (see Syntax 6.2).

```
for (int counter = 1; counter <= 10; counter++)
{
    System.out.println(counter);
}
```

Some people call this loop *count-controlled*. In contrast, the while loop of the preceding section can be called an *event-controlled* loop because it executes until an event occurs; namely that the balance reaches the target. Another commonly used term for a count-controlled loop is *definite*. You know from the outset that the loop body will be executed a definite number of times; ten times in our example. In contrast, you do not know how many iterations it takes to accumulate a target balance. Such a loop is called *indefinite*.



You can visualize the for loop as an orderly sequence of steps.

### Syntax 6.2 for Statement

**Syntax**

```
for (initialization; condition; update)
{
    statements
}
```

These three  
expressions should be related.  
See page 259.

This *initialization*  
happens once  
before the loop starts.

The *condition* is  
checked before  
each iteration.

This *update* is  
executed after  
each iteration.

The variable *i* is  
defined only in this for loop.  
See page 261.

```
for (int i = 5; i <= 10; i++)
{
    sum = sum + i;
}
```

This loop executes 6 times.  
See page 260.



The `for` loop neatly groups the initialization, condition, and update expressions together. However, it is important to realize that these expressions are not executed together (see Figure 3).

- The initialization is executed once, before the loop is entered. ①
- The condition is checked before each iteration. ② ⑤
- The update is executed after each iteration. ④

|                                                                                  |                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>① Initialize counter<br/><br/>counter = <input type="text" value="1"/></p>    | <pre>for (int counter = 1; counter &lt;= 10; counter++) {     System.out.println(counter); }</pre> |
| <p>② Check condition<br/><br/>counter = <input type="text" value="1"/></p>       | <pre>for (int counter = 1; counter &lt;= 10; counter++) {     System.out.println(counter); }</pre> |
| <p>③ Execute loop body<br/><br/>counter = <input type="text" value="1"/></p>     | <pre>for (int counter = 1; counter &lt;= 10; counter++) {     System.out.println(counter); }</pre> |
| <p>④ Update counter<br/><br/>counter = <input type="text" value="2"/></p>        | <pre>for (int counter = 1; counter &lt;= 10; counter++) {     System.out.println(counter); }</pre> |
| <p>⑤ Check condition again<br/><br/>counter = <input type="text" value="2"/></p> | <pre>for (int counter = 1; counter &lt;= 10; counter++) {     System.out.println(counter); }</pre> |

**Figure 3**  
Execution of a  
for Loop

A `for` loop can count down instead of up:

```
for (int counter = 10; counter >= 0; counter--) . . .
```

The increment or decrement need not be in steps of 1:

```
for (int counter = 0; counter <= 10; counter = counter + 2) . . .
```

See Table 2 on page 258 for additional variations.

So far, we have always declared the counter variable in the loop initialization:

```
for (int counter = 1; counter <= 10; counter++)
{
    . . .
}
// counter no longer declared here
```

Such a variable is declared for all iterations of the loop, but you cannot use it after the loop. If you declare the counter variable before the loop, you can continue to use it after the loop:

```
int counter;
for (counter = 1; counter <= 10; counter++)
{
    ...
}
// counter still declared here
```

A common use of the for loop is to traverse all characters of a string:

```
for (int i = 0; i < str.length(); i++)
{
    char ch = str.charAt(i);
    Process ch.
}
```

Note that the counter variable *i* starts at 0, and the loop is terminated when *i* reaches the length of the string. For example, if *str* has length 5, *i* takes on the values 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4. These are the valid positions in the string.

Here is another typical use of the for loop. We want to compute the growth of our savings account over a period of years, as shown in this table:

| Year | Balance  |
|------|----------|
| 1    | 10500.00 |
| 2    | 11025.00 |
| 3    | 11576.25 |
| 4    | 12155.06 |
| 5    | 12762.82 |

The for loop pattern applies because the variable *year* starts at 1 and then moves in constant increments until it reaches the target:

```
for (int year = 1; year <= numberofYears; year++)
{
    Update balance.
}
```

Following is the complete program. Figure 4 shows the corresponding flowchart.

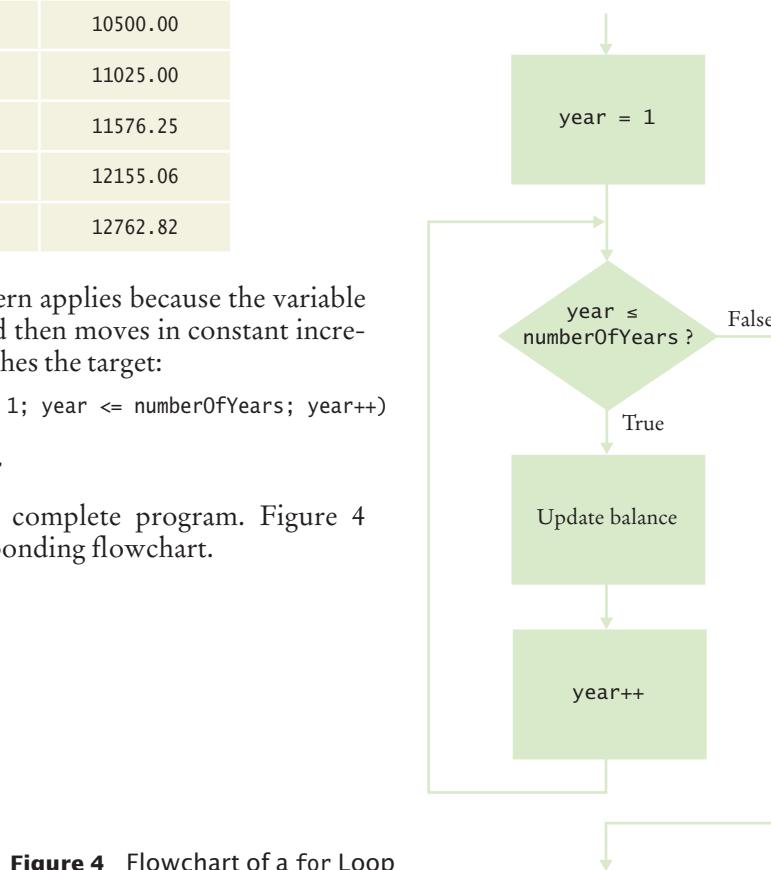


Figure 4 Flowchart of a for Loop

**section\_3/Investment.java**

```

1  /**
2   * A class to monitor the growth of an investment that
3   * accumulates interest at a fixed annual rate.
4  */
5  public class Investment
6  {
7      private double balance;
8      private double rate;
9      private int year;
10
11     /**
12      Constructs an Investment object from a starting balance and
13      interest rate.
14      @param aBalance the starting balance
15      @param aRate the interest rate in percent
16     */
17     public Investment(double aBalance, double aRate)
18     {
19         balance = aBalance;
20         rate = aRate;
21         year = 0;
22     }
23
24     /**
25      Keeps accumulating interest until a target balance has
26      been reached.
27      @param targetBalance the desired balance
28     */
29     public void waitForBalance(double targetBalance)
30     {
31         while (balance < targetBalance)
32         {
33             year++;
34             double interest = balance * rate / 100;
35             balance = balance + interest;
36         }
37     }
38
39     /**
40      Keeps accumulating interest for a given number of years.
41      @param numberOfYears the number of years to wait
42     */
43     public void waitYears(int numberOfYears)
44     {
45         for (int i = 1; i <= numberOfYears; i++)
46         {
47             double interest = balance * rate / 100;
48             balance = balance + interest;
49         }
50         year = year + n;
51     }
52
53     /**
54      Gets the current investment balance.
55      @return the current balance
56     */
57     public double getBalance()
58     {

```

```

59     return balance;
60 }
61
62 /**
63  Gets the number of years this investment has accumulated
64  interest.
65  @return the number of years since the start of the investment
66 */
67 public int getYears()
68 {
69     return year;
70 }
71 }
```

### section\_3/InvestmentRunner.java

```

1 /**
2  This program computes how much an investment grows in
3  a given number of years.
4 */
5 public class InvestmentRunner
6 {
7     public static void main(String[] args)
8     {
9         final double INITIAL_BALANCE = 10000;
10        final double RATE = 5;
11        final int YEARS = 20;
12        Investment invest = new Investment(INITIAL_BALANCE, RATE);
13        invest.waitYears(YEARS);
14        double balance = invest.getBalance();
15        System.out.printf("The balance after %d years is %.2f\n",
16                          YEARS, balance);
17    }
18 }
```

### Program Run

The balance after 20 years is 26532.98

**Table 2** for Loop Examples

| Loop                               | Values of i                                            | Comment                                                                        |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| for (i = 0; i <= 5; i++)           | 0 1 2 3 4 5                                            | Note that the loop is executed 6 times. (See Programming Tip 6.3 on page 260.) |
| for (i = 5; i >= 0; i--)           | 5 4 3 2 1 0                                            | Use i-- for decreasing values.                                                 |
| for (i = 0; i < 9; i = i + 2)      | 0 2 4 6 8                                              | Use i = i + 2 for a step size of 2.                                            |
| for (i = 0; i != 9; i = i + 2)     | 0 2 4 6 8 10 12 14 ...<br>(infinite loop)              | You can use < or <= instead of != to avoid this problem.                       |
| for (i = 1; i <= 20; i = i * 2)    | 1 2 4 8 16                                             | You can specify any rule for modifying i, such as doubling it in every step.   |
| for (i = 0; i < str.length(); i++) | 0 1 2 ... until the last valid index of the string str | In the loop body, use the expression str.charAt(i) to get the ith character.   |

**SELF CHECK**

- 11.** Write the `for` loop of the `Investment` class as a `while` loop.
- 12.** How many numbers does this loop print?  

```
for (int n = 10; n >= 0; n--)
{
    System.out.println(n);
}
```
- 13.** Write a `for` loop that prints all even numbers between 10 and 20 (inclusive).
- 14.** Write a `for` loop that computes the sum of the integers from 1 to `n`.
- 15.** How would you modify the `InvestmentRunner.java` program to print the balances after 20, 40, ..., 100 years?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R6.4, R6.10, E6.8, E6.12.

**Programming Tip 6.1****Use for Loops for Their Intended Purpose Only**

A `for` loop is an *idiom* for a loop of a particular form. A value runs from the start to the end, with a constant increment or decrement.

The compiler won't check whether the initialization, condition, and update expressions are related. For example, the following loop is legal:

```
// Confusing—unrelated expressions
for (System.out.print("Inputs: "); in.hasNextDouble(); sum = sum + x)
{
    x = in.nextDouble();
}
```

However, programmers reading such a `for` loop will be confused because it does not match their expectations. Use a `while` loop for iterations that do not follow the `for` idiom.

You should also be careful not to update the loop counter in the body of a `for` loop. Consider the following example:

```
for (int counter = 1; counter <= 100; counter++)
{
    if (counter % 10 == 0) // Skip values that are divisible by 10
    {
        counter++; // Bad style—you should not update the counter in a for loop
    }
    System.out.println(counter);
}
```

Updating the counter inside a `for` loop is confusing because the counter is updated *again* at the end of the loop iteration. In some loop iterations, `counter` is incremented once, in others twice. This goes against the intuition of a programmer who sees a `for` loop.

If you find yourself in this situation, you can either change from a `for` loop to a `while` loop, or implement the “skipping” behavior in another way. For example:

```
for (int counter = 1; counter <= 100; counter++)
{
    if (counter % 10 != 0) // Skip values that are divisible by 10
    {
        System.out.println(counter);
    }
}
```

## Programming Tip 6.2

**Choose Loop Bounds That Match Your Task**

Suppose you want to print line numbers that go from 1 to 10. Of course, you will use a loop:

```
for (int i = 1; i <= 10; i++)
```

The values for *i* are bounded by the relation  $1 \leq i \leq 10$ . Because there are  $\leq$  on both bounds, the bounds are called **symmetric bounds**.

When traversing the characters in a string, it is more natural to use the bounds

```
for (int i = 0; i < str.length(); i++)
```

In this loop, *i* traverses all valid positions in the string. You can access the *i*th character as `str.charAt(i)`. The values for *i* are bounded by  $0 \leq i < str.length()$ , with a  $\leq$  to the left and a  $<$  to the right. That is appropriate, because `str.length()` is not a valid position. Such bounds are called **asymmetric bounds**.

In this case, it is not a good idea to use symmetric bounds:

```
for (int i = 0; i <= str.length() - 1; i++) // Use < instead
```

The asymmetric form is easier to understand.

## Programming Tip 6.3

**Count Iterations**

Finding the correct lower and upper bounds for an iteration can be confusing. Should you start at 0 or at 1? Should you use  $\leq b$  or  $< b$  as a termination condition?

Counting the number of iterations is a very useful device for better understanding a loop. Counting is easier for loops with asymmetric bounds. The loop

```
for (int i = a; i < b; i++)
```

is executed  $b - a$  times. For example, the loop traversing the characters in a string,

```
for (int i = 0; i < str.length(); i++)
```

runs `str.length()` times. That makes perfect sense, because there are `str.length()` characters in a string.

The loop with symmetric bounds,

```
for (int i = a; i <= b; i++)
```

is executed  $b - a + 1$  times. That “+1” is the source of many programming errors.

For example,

```
for (int i = 0; i <= 10; i++)
```

runs 11 times. Maybe that is what you want; if not, start at 1 or use  $< 10$ .

One way to visualize this “+1” error is by looking at a fence. Each section has one fence post to the left, and there is a final post on the right of the last section. Forgetting to count the last value is often called a “fence post error”.



*How many posts do you need for a fence with four sections? It is easy to be “off by one” with problems such as this one.*

## Special Topic 6.1

**Variables Declared in a for Loop Header**

As mentioned, it is legal in Java to declare a variable in the header of a `for` loop. Here is the most common form of this syntax:

```
for (int i = 1; i <= n; i++)
{
    ...
}

// i no longer defined here
```

The scope of the variable extends to the end of the `for` loop. Therefore, `i` is no longer defined after the loop ends. If you need to use the value of the variable beyond the end of the loop, then you need to declare it outside the loop. In this loop, you don't need the value of `i`—you know it is `n + 1` when the loop is finished. (Actually, that is not quite true—it is possible to break out of a loop before its end; see Special Topic 6.4 on page 267). When you have two or more exit conditions, though, you may still need the variable. For example, consider the loop

```
for (i = 1; balance < targetBalance && i <= n; i++)
{
    ...
}
```

You want the balance to reach the target but you are willing to wait only a certain number of years. If the balance doubles sooner, you may want to know the value of `i`. Therefore, in this case, it is not appropriate to declare the variable in the loop header.

Note that the variables named `i` in the following pair of `for` loops are independent:

```
for (int i = 1; i <= 10; i++)
{
    System.out.println(i * i);
}
for (int i = 1; i <= 10; i++) // Declares a new variable i
{
    System.out.println(i * i * i);
}
```

In the loop header, you can declare multiple variables, as long as they are of the same type, and you can include multiple update expressions, separated by commas:

```
for (int i = 0, j = 10; i <= 10; i++, j--)
{
    ...
}
```

However, many people find it confusing if a `for` loop controls more than one variable. I recommend that you not use this form of the `for` statement (see Programming Tip 6.2 on page 260). Instead, make the `for` loop control a single counter, and update the other variable explicitly:

```
int j = 10;
for (int i = 0; i <= 10; i++)
{
    ...
    j--;
}
```

## 6.4 The do Loop

The do loop is appropriate when the loop body must be executed at least once.

Sometimes you want to execute the body of a loop at least once and perform the loop test after the body is executed. The do loop serves that purpose:

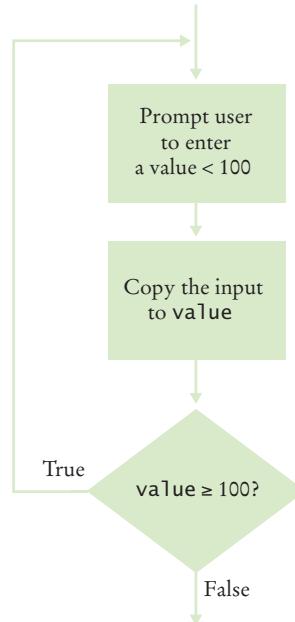
```
do
{
    statements
}
while (condition);
```

The body of the do loop is executed first, then the condition is tested.

Some people call such a loop a *post-test loop* because the condition is tested after completing the loop body. In contrast, while and for loops are *pre-test loops*. In those loop types, the condition is tested before entering the loop body.

A typical example for a do loop is input validation. Suppose you ask a user to enter a value < 100. If the user doesn't pay attention and enters a larger value, you ask again, until the value is correct. Of course, you cannot test the value until the user has entered it. This is a perfect fit for the do loop (see Figure 5):

```
int value;
do
{
    System.out.print("Enter an integer < 100: ");
    value = in.nextInt();
}
while (value >= 100);
```



**Figure 5** Flowchart of a do Loop

### SELF CHECK



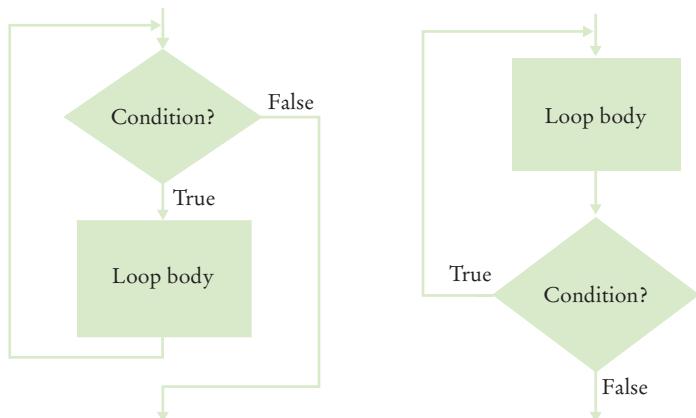
16. Suppose that we want to check for inputs that are at least 0 and at most 100. Modify the do loop for this check.
17. Rewrite the input check do loop using a while loop. What is the disadvantage of your solution?
18. Suppose Java didn't have a do loop. Could you rewrite any do loop as a while loop?
19. Write a do loop that reads integers and computes their sum. Stop when reading the value 0.
20. Write a do loop that reads integers and computes their sum. Stop when reading a zero or the same value twice in a row. For example, if the input is 1 2 3 4 4, then the sum is 14 and the loop stops.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R6.9, R6.16, R6.17.

## Programming Tip 6.4

**Flowcharts for Loops**

In Section 5.5, you learned how to use flowcharts to visualize the flow of control in a program. There are two types of loops that you can include in a flowchart; they correspond to a `while` loop and a `do` loop in Java. They differ in the placement of the condition—either before or after the loop body.



As described in Section 5.5, you want to avoid “spaghetti code” in your flowcharts. For loops, that means that you never want to have an arrow that points inside a loop body.

## 6.5 Application: Processing Sentinel Values

In this section, you will learn how to write loops that read and process a sequence of input values.

A sentinel value denotes the end of a data set, but it is not part of the data.

Whenever you read a sequence of inputs, you need to have some method of indicating the end of the sequence. Sometimes you are lucky and no input value can be zero. Then you can prompt the user to keep entering numbers, or 0 to finish the sequence. If zero is allowed but negative numbers are not, you can use -1 to indicate termination.

Such a value, which is not an actual input, but serves as a signal for termination, is called a **sentinel**.

Let's put this technique to work in a program that computes the average of a set of salary values. In our sample program, we will use -1 as a sentinel. An employee would surely not work for a negative salary, but there may be volunteers who work for free.



*In the military, a sentinel guards a border or passage. In computer science, a sentinel value denotes the end of an input sequence or the border between input sequences.*

Inside the loop, we read an input. If the input is not `-1`, we process it. In order to compute the average, we need the total sum of all salaries, and the number of inputs.

```
salary = in.nextDouble();
if (salary != -1)
{
    sum = sum + salary;
    count++;
}
```

We stay in the loop while the sentinel value is not detected.

```
while (salary != -1)
{
    . . .
}
```

There is just one problem: When the loop is entered for the first time, no data value has been read. We must make sure to initialize `salary` with some value other than the sentinel:

```
double salary = 0;
// Any value other than -1 will do
```

After the loop has finished, we compute and print the average. Here is the complete program:

### **section\_5/SentinelDemo.java**

```
1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 /**
4     This program prints the average of salary values that are terminated with a sentinel.
5 */
6 public class SentinelDemo
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10        double sum = 0;
11        int count = 0;
12        double salary = 0;
13        System.out.print("Enter salaries, -1 to finish: ");
14        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
15
16        // Process data until the sentinel is entered
17
18        while (salary != -1)
19        {
20            salary = in.nextDouble();
21            if (salary != -1)
22            {
23                sum = sum + salary;
24                count++;
25            }
26        }
27
28        // Compute and print the average
29
30        if (count > 0)
31        {
32            double average = sum / count;
33        }
34    }
35}
```

```

33     System.out.println("Average salary: " + average);
34 }
35 else
36 {
37     System.out.println("No data");
38 }
39 }
40 }
```

### Program Run

```
Enter salaries, -1 to finish: 10 10 40 -1
Average salary: 20
```

You can use a Boolean variable to control a loop. Set the variable before entering the loop, then set it to the opposite to leave the loop.

Some programmers don't like the "trick" of initializing the input variable with a value other than the sentinel. Another approach is to use a Boolean variable:

```

System.out.print("Enter salaries, -1 to finish: ");
boolean done = false;
while (!done)
{
    value = in.nextDouble();
    if (value == -1)
    {
        done = true;
    }
    else
    {
        Process value.
    }
}
```

Special Topic 6.4 on page 267 shows an alternative mechanism for leaving such a loop.

Now consider the case in which any number (positive, negative, or zero) can be an acceptable input. In such a situation, you must use a sentinel that is not a number (such as the letter Q). As you have seen in Section 5.8, the condition

```
in.hasNextDouble()
```

is `false` if the next input is not a floating-point number. Therefore, you can read and process a set of inputs with the following loop:

```

System.out.print("Enter values, Q to quit: ");
while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    value = in.nextDouble();
    Process value.
}
```

### SELF CHECK



- 21.** What does the `SentinelDemo.java` program print when the user immediately types `-1` when prompted for a value?
- 22.** Why does the `SentinelDemo.java` program have *two* checks of the form  
`salary != -1`
- 23.** What would happen if the declaration of the `salary` variable in `SentinelDemo.java` was changed to  
`double salary = -1;`

- 24.** In the last example of this section, we prompt the user “Enter values, Q to quit.” What happens when the user enters a different letter?
- 25.** What is wrong with the following loop for reading a sequence of values?

```
System.out.print("Enter values, Q to quit: ");
do
{
    double value = in.nextDouble();
    sum = sum + value;
    count++;
}
while (in.hasNextDouble());
```

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R6.13, E6.17, E6.18.

### Special Topic 6.2



#### Redirection of Input and Output

Consider the `SentinelDemo` program that computes the average value of an input sequence. If you use such a program, then it is quite likely that you already have the values in a file, and it seems a shame that you have to type them all in again. The command line interface of your operating system provides a way to link a file to the input of a program, as if all the characters in the file had actually been typed by a user. If you type

```
java SentinelDemo < numbers.txt
```

the program is executed, but it no longer expects input from the keyboard. All input commands get their input from the file `numbers.txt`. This process is called **input redirection**.

Input redirection is an excellent tool for testing programs. When you develop a program and fix its bugs, it is boring to keep entering the same input every time you run the program. Spend a few minutes putting the inputs into a file, and use redirection.

You can also redirect output. In this program, that is not terribly useful. If you run

```
java SentinelDemo < numbers.txt > output.txt
```

the file `output.txt` contains the input prompts and the output, such as

```
Enter salaries, -1 to finish: Enter salaries, -1 to finish:
Enter salaries, -1 to finish: Enter salaries, -1 to finish:
Average salary: 15
```

However, redirecting output is obviously useful for programs that produce lots of output. You can format or print the file containing the output.

Use input redirection to  
read input from a file.  
Use output redirection to  
capture program output  
in a file.

### Special Topic 6.3



#### The “Loop and a Half” Problem

Reading input data sometimes requires a loop such as the following, which is somewhat unsightly:

```
boolean done = false;
while (!done)
{
    String input = in.next();
    if (input.equals("Q"))
    {
        done = true;
```

```

    }
else
{
    Process data.
}
}
}

```

The true test for loop termination is in the middle of the loop, not at the top. This is called a “loop and a half”, because one must go halfway into the loop before knowing whether one needs to terminate.

Some programmers dislike the introduction of an additional Boolean variable for loop control. Two Java language features can be used to alleviate the “loop and a half” problem. I don’t think either is a superior solution, but both approaches are fairly common, so it is worth knowing about them when reading other people’s code.

You can combine an assignment and a test in the loop condition:

```

while (!(input = in.next()).equals("Q"))
{
    Process data.
}

```

The expression

```
(input = in.next()).equals("Q")
```

means, “First call `in.next()`, then assign the result to `input`, then test whether it equals “Q”. This is an expression with a side effect. The primary purpose of the expression is to serve as a test for the `while` loop, but it also does some work—namely, reading the input and storing it in the variable `input`. In general, it is a bad idea to use side effects, because they make a program hard to read and maintain. In this case, however, that practice is somewhat seductive, because it eliminates the control variable `done`, which also makes the code hard to read and maintain.

The other solution is to exit the loop from the middle, either by a `return` statement or by a `break` statement (see Special Topic 6.4 on page 267).

```

public void processInput(Scanner in)
{
    while (true)
    {
        String input = in.next();
        if (input.equals("Q"))
        {
            return;
        }
        Process data.
    }
}

```

## Special Topic 6.4



### The break and continue Statements

You already encountered the `break` statement in Special Topic 5.2, where it was used to exit a `switch` statement. In addition to breaking out of a `switch` statement, a `break` statement can also be used to exit a `while`, `for`, or `do` loop.

For example, the `break` statement in the following loop terminates the loop when the end of input is reached.

```

while (true)
{

```

```

String input = in.next();
if (input.equals("Q"))
{
    break;
}
double x = Double.parseDouble(input);
data.add(x);
}

```

A loop with `break` statements can be difficult to understand because you have to look closely to find out how to exit the loop. However, when faced with the bother of introducing a separate loop control variable, some programmers find that `break` statements are beneficial in the “loop and a half” case. This issue is often the topic of heated (and quite unproductive) debate. In this book, we won’t use the `break` statement, and we leave it to you to decide whether you like to use it in your own programs.

In Java, there is a second form of the `break` statement that is used to break out of a nested statement. The statement `break label;` immediately jumps to the *end* of the statement that is tagged with a label. Any statement (including `if` and block statements) can be tagged with a label—the syntax is

*label:* *statement*

The labeled `break` statement was invented to break out of a set of nested loops.

```

outerloop:
while (outer loop condition)
{
    ...
    while (inner loop condition)
    {
        ...
        if (something really bad happened)
        {
            break outerloop;
        }
    }
}

```

**Jumps here if something really bad happened.**

Naturally, this situation is quite rare. We recommend that you try to introduce additional methods instead of using complicated nested loops.

Finally, there is the `continue` statement, which jumps to the end of the *current iteration* of the loop. Here is a possible use for this statement:

```

while (!done)
{
    String input = in.next();
    if (input.equals("Q"))
    {
        done = true;
        continue; // Jump to the end of the loop body
    }
    double x = Double.parseDouble(input);
    data.add(x);
    // continue statement jumps here
}

```

By using the `continue` statement, you don’t need to place the remainder of the loop code inside an `else` clause. This is a minor benefit. Few programmers use this statement.

## 6.6 Problem Solving: Storyboards

A storyboard consists of annotated sketches for each step in an action sequence.

Developing a storyboard helps you understand the inputs and outputs that are required for a program.

When you design a program that interacts with a user, you need to make a plan for that interaction. What information does the user provide, and in which order? What information will your program display, and in which format? What should happen when there is an error? When does the program quit?

This planning is similar to the development of a movie or a computer game, where *storyboards* are used to plan action sequences. A storyboard is made up of panels that show a sketch of each step. Annotations explain what is happening and note any special situations. Storyboards are also used to develop software—see Figure 6.

Making a storyboard is very helpful when you begin designing a program. You need to ask yourself which information you need in order to compute the answers that the program user wants. You need to decide how to present those answers. These are important considerations that you want to settle before you design an algorithm for computing the answers.

Let's look at a simple example. We want to write a program that helps users with questions such as "How many tablespoons are in a pint?" or "How many inches are 30 centimeters?"

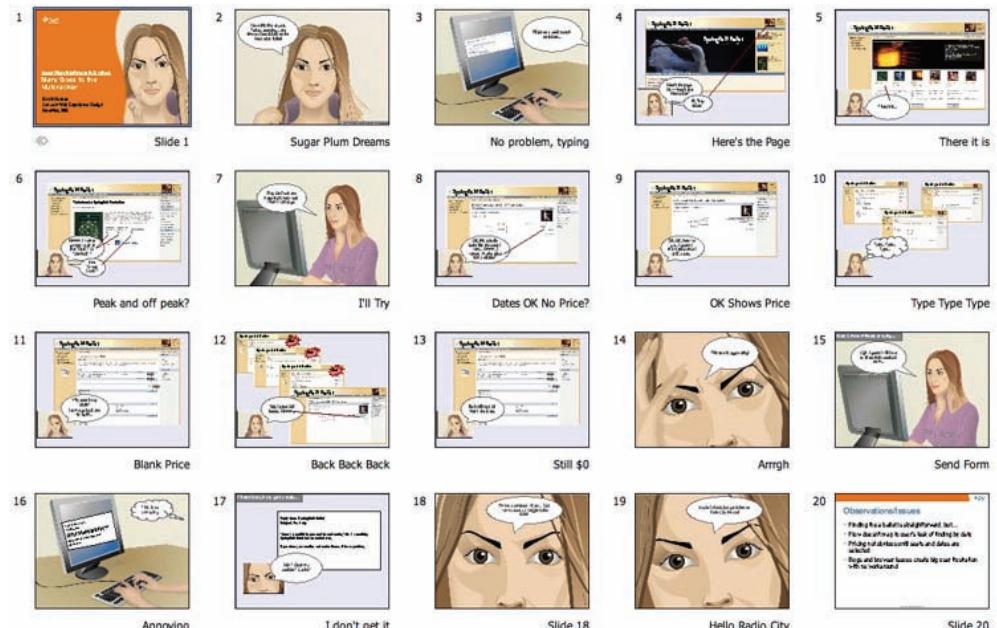
What information does the user provide?

- The quantity and unit to convert from
- The unit to convert to

What if there is more than one quantity? A user may have a whole table of centimeter values that should be converted into inches.

What if the user enters units that our program doesn't know how to handle, such as ångström?

What if the user asks for impossible conversions, such as inches to gallons?



**Figure 6**  
Storyboard for the Design of a Web Application

Let's get started with a storyboard panel. It is a good idea to write the user inputs in a different color. (Underline them if you don't have a color pen handy.)

### Converting a Sequence of Values

What unit do you want to convert from? **cm**

What unit do you want to convert to? **in**

Enter values, terminated by zero

**30**

**30 cm = 11.81 in**

**100**

**100 cm = 39.37 in**

**0**

What unit do you want to convert from?

Allows conversion of multiple values

Format makes clear what got converted

The storyboard shows how we deal with a potential confusion. A user who wants to know how many inches are 30 centimeters may not read the first prompt carefully and specify inches. But then the output is "30 in = 76.2 cm", alerting the user to the problem.

The storyboard also raises an issue. How is the user supposed to know that "cm" and "in" are valid units? Would "centimeter" and "inches" also work? What happens when the user enters a wrong unit? Let's make another storyboard to demonstrate error handling.

### Handling Unknown Units (needs improvement)

What unit do you want to convert from? **cm**

What unit do you want to convert to? **inches**

Sorry, unknown unit.

What unit do you want to convert to? **inch**

Sorry, unknown unit.

What unit do you want to convert to? **grrr**

To eliminate frustration, it is better to list the units that the user can supply.

From unit (in, ft, mi, mm, cm, m, km, oz, lb, g, kg, tsp, tbsp, pint, gall): **cm**

To unit: **in**

No need to list the units again

We switched to a shorter prompt to make room for all the unit names. Exercise R6.22 explores a different alternative.

There is another issue that we haven't addressed yet. How does the user quit the program? The first storyboard suggests that the program will go on forever.

We can ask the user after seeing the sentinel that terminates an input sequence.

**Exiting the Program**

From unit (in, ft, mi, mm, cm, m, km, oz, lb, g, kg, tsp, tbs, pint, gal): **cm**

To unit: **in**

Enter values, terminated by zero

**30**

**30 cm = 11.81 in**

**0**

More conversions (y, n)? **n**

(Program exits)

Sentinel triggers the prompt to exit

**SELF CHECK**

26. Provide a storyboard panel for a program that reads a number of test scores and prints the average score. The program only needs to process one set of scores. Don't worry about error handling.
27. Google has a simple interface for converting units. You just type the question, and you get the answer.

Google

How many inches in 30 cm

Advanced Search

Web  Show options...

Results 1 - 10 of about 4,180,000 for How many Inches In 30 cm. (0.24 seconds)



**30 centimeters = 11.810236 inches**

[More about calculator.](#)

Make storyboards for an equivalent interface in a Java program. Show a scenario in which all goes well, and show the handling of two kinds of errors.

28. Consider a modification of the program in Self Check 26. Suppose we want to drop the lowest score before computing the average. Provide a storyboard for the situation in which a user only provides one score.
29. What is the problem with implementing the following storyboard in Java?

**Computing Multiple Averages**

Enter scores: **90 80 90 100 80**

The average is **88**

Enter scores: **100 70 70 100 80**

The average is **88**

Enter scores: **-1**

-1 is used as a sentinel to exit the program

(Program exits)

30. Produce a storyboard for a program that compares the growth of a \$10,000 investment for a given number of years under two interest rates.

**Practice It**

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R6.21, R6.22, R6.23.

## 6.7 Common Loop Algorithms

In the following sections, we discuss some of the most common algorithms that are implemented as loops. You can use them as starting points for your loop designs.

### 6.7.1 Sum and Average Value

Computing the sum of a number of inputs is a very common task. Keep a *running total*, a variable to which you add each input value. Of course, the total should be initialized with 0.

```
double total = 0;
while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    double input = in.nextDouble();
    total = total + input;
}
```

Note that the total variable is declared outside the loop. We want the loop to update a single variable. The input variable is declared inside the loop. A separate variable is created for each input and removed at the end of each loop iteration.

To compute an average, count how many values you have, and divide by the count. Be sure to check that the count is not zero.

```
double total = 0;
int count = 0;
while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    double input = in.nextDouble();
    total = total + input;
    count++;
}
double average = 0;
if (count > 0)
{
    average = total / count;
}
```

To compute an average, keep a total and a count of all values.

### 6.7.2 Counting Matches

To count values that fulfill a condition, check all values and increment a counter for each match.

You often want to know how many values fulfill a particular condition. For example, you may want to count how many spaces are in a string. Keep a *counter*, a variable that is initialized with 0 and incremented whenever there is a match.

```
int spaces = 0;
for (int i = 0; i < str.length(); i++)
{
    char ch = str.charAt(i);
    if (ch == ' ')
    {
        spaces++;
    }
}
```

For example, if str is "My Fair Lady", spaces is incremented twice (when i is 2 and 7).

Note that the `spaces` variable is declared outside the loop. We want the loop to update a single variable. The `ch` variable is declared inside the loop. A separate variable is created for each iteration and removed at the end of each loop iteration.

This loop can also be used for scanning inputs. The following loop reads text a word at a time and counts the number of words with at most three letters:

```
int shortWords = 0;
while (in.hasNext())
{
    String input = in.next();
    if (input.length() <= 3)
    {
        shortWords++;
    }
}
```

*In a loop that counts matches, a counter is incremented whenever a match is found.*



### 6.7.3 Finding the First Match

If your goal is to find a match, exit the loop when the match is found.

When you count the values that fulfill a condition, you need to look at all values. However, if your task is to find a match, then you can stop as soon as the condition is fulfilled.

Here is a loop that finds the first space in a string. Because we do not visit all elements in the string, a `while` loop is a better choice than a `for` loop:

```
boolean found = false;
char ch = '?';
int position = 0;
while (!found && position < str.length())
{
    ch = str.charAt(position);
    if (ch == ' ') { found = true; }
    else { position++; }
}
```

If a match was found, then `found` is `true`, `ch` is the first matching character, and `position` is the index of the first match. If the loop did not find a match, then `found` remains `false` after the end of the loop.

Note that the variable `ch` is declared *outside* the `while` loop because you may want to use the input after the loop has finished. If it had been declared inside the loop body, you would not be able to use it outside the loop.



*When searching, you look at items until a match is found.*

### 6.7.4 Prompting Until a Match is Found

In the preceding example, we searched a string for a character that matches a condition. You can apply the same process to user input. Suppose you are asking a user to enter a positive value  $< 100$ . Keep asking until the user provides a correct input:

```
boolean valid = false;
double input = 0;
while (!valid)
{
    System.out.print("Please enter a positive value < 100: ");
    input = in.nextDouble();
    if (0 < input && input < 100) { valid = true; }
    else { System.out.println("Invalid input."); }
}
```

Note that the variable `input` is declared *outside* the `while` loop because you will want to use the `input` after the loop has finished.

### 6.7.5 Maximum and Minimum

To find the largest value, update the largest value seen so far whenever you see a larger one.

```
double largest = in.nextDouble();
while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    double input = in.nextDouble();
    if (input > largest)
    {
        largest = input;
    }
}
```

This algorithm requires that there is at least one input.

To compute the smallest value, simply reverse the comparison:

```
double smallest = in.nextDouble();
while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    double input = in.nextDouble();
    if (input < smallest)
    {
        smallest = input;
    }
}
```

*To find the height of the tallest bus rider, remember the largest value so far, and update it whenever you see a taller one.*



### 6.7.6 Comparing Adjacent Values

To compare adjacent inputs, store the preceding input in a variable.

When processing a sequence of values in a loop, you sometimes need to compare a value with the value that just preceded it. For example, suppose you want to check whether a sequence of inputs, such as 1 7 2 9 9 4 9, contains adjacent duplicates.

Now you face a challenge. Consider the typical loop for reading a value:

```
double input;
while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    input = in.nextDouble();
    ...
}
```

How can you compare the current input with the preceding one? At any time, `input` contains the current input, overwriting the previous one.

The answer is to store the previous input, like this:

```
double input = 0;
while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    double previous = input;
    input = in.nextDouble();
    if (input == previous)
    {
        System.out.println("Duplicate input");
    }
}
```



*When comparing adjacent values, store the previous value in a variable.*

One problem remains. When the loop is entered for the first time, `input` has not yet been read. You can solve this problem with an initial input operation outside the loop:

```
double input = in.nextDouble();
while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    double previous = input;
    input = in.nextDouble();
    if (input == previous)
    {
        System.out.println("Duplicate input");
    }
}
```



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that uses common loop algorithms.

#### SELF CHECK



31. What total is computed when no user input is provided in the algorithm in Section 6.7.1?
32. How do you compute the total of all positive inputs?
33. What are the values of `position` and `ch` when no match is found in the algorithm in Section 6.7.3?
34. What is wrong with the following loop for finding the position of the first space in a string?

```
boolean found = false;
for (int position = 0; !found && position < str.length(); position++)
{
```

```

char ch = str.charAt(position);
if (ch == ' ') { found = true; }
}

```

- 35.** How do you find the position of the *last* space in a string?
- 36.** What happens with the algorithm in Section 6.7.6 when no input is provided at all? How can you overcome that problem?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E6.5, E6.9, E6.10.

## HOW TO 6.1

### Writing a Loop



This How To walks you through the process of implementing a loop statement. We will illustrate the steps with the following example problem.

**Problem Statement** Read twelve temperature values (one for each month) and display the number of the month with the highest temperature. For example, according to [worldclimate.com](http://worldclimate.com), the average maximum temperatures for Death Valley are (in order by month, in degrees Celsius):

18.2 22.6 26.4 31.1 36.6 42.2 45.7 44.5 40.2 33.1 24.2 17.6

In this case, the month with the highest temperature (45.7 degrees Celsius) is July, and the program should display 7.



#### Step 1 Decide what work must be done *inside* the loop.

Every loop needs to do some kind of repetitive work, such as

- Reading another item.
- Updating a value (such as a bank balance or total).
- Incrementing a counter.

If you can't figure out what needs to go inside the loop, start by writing down the steps that you would take if you solved the problem by hand. For example, with the temperature reading problem, you might write

**Read first value.**

**Read second value.**

**If second value is higher than the first, set highest temperature to that value, highest month to 2.**

**Read next value.**

**If value is higher than the first and second, set highest temperature to that value, highest month to 3.**

**Read next value.**

**If value is higher than the highest temperature seen so far, set highest temperature to that value, highest month to 4.**

...

Now look at these steps and reduce them to a set of *uniform* actions that can be placed into the loop body. The first action is easy:

**Read next value.**

The next action is trickier. In our description, we used tests “higher than the first”, “higher than the first and second”, “higher than the highest temperature seen so far”. We need to settle on one test that works for all iterations. The last formulation is the most general.

Similarly, we must find a general way of setting the highest month. We need a variable that stores the current month, running from 1 to 12. Then we can formulate the second loop action:

If value is higher than the highest temperature, set highest temperature to that value,  
highest month to current month.

Altogether our loop is

```
Repeat
  Read next value.
  If value is higher than the highest temperature,
    set highest temperature to that value,
    set highest month to current month.
  Increment current month.
```

### Step 2

Specify the loop condition.

What goal do you want to reach in your loop? Typical examples are

- Has a counter reached its final value?
- Have you read the last input value?
- Has a value reached a given threshold?

In our example, we simply want the current month to reach 12.

### Step 3

Determine the loop type.

We distinguish between two major loop types. A *count-controlled* loop is executed a definite number of times. In an *event-controlled* loop, the number of iterations is not known in advance—the loop is executed until some event happens.

Count-controlled loops can be implemented as `for` statements. For other loops, consider the loop condition. Do you need to complete one iteration of the loop body before you can tell when to terminate the loop? In that case, choose a `do` loop. Otherwise, use a `while` loop.

Sometimes, the condition for terminating a loop changes in the middle of the loop body. In that case, you can use a Boolean variable that specifies when you are ready to leave the loop. Follow this pattern:

```
boolean done = false;
while (!done)
{
  Do some work.
  If all work has been completed
  {
    done = true;
  }
  else
  {
    Do more work.
  }
}
```

Such a variable is called a **flag**.

In summary,

- If you know in advance how many times a loop is repeated, use a `for` loop.
- If the loop body must be executed at least once, use a `do` loop.
- Otherwise, use a `while` loop.

In our example, we read 12 temperature values. Therefore, we choose a `for` loop.

### Step 4

Set up variables for entering the loop for the first time.

List all variables that are used and updated in the loop, and determine how to initialize them. Commonly, counters are initialized with 0 or 1, totals with 0.

In our example, the variables are

**current month**  
**highest value**  
**highest month**

We need to be careful how we set up the highest temperature value. We can't simply set it to 0. After all, our program needs to work with temperature values from Antarctica, all of which may be negative.

A good option is to set the highest temperature value to the first input value. Of course, then we need to remember to read in only 11 more values, with the current month starting at 2.

We also need to initialize the highest month with 1. After all, in an Australian city, we may never find a month that is warmer than January.

### Step 5

Process the result after the loop has finished.

In many cases, the desired result is simply a variable that was updated in the loop body. For example, in our temperature program, the result is the highest month. Sometimes, the loop computes values that contribute to the final result. For example, suppose you are asked to average the temperatures. Then the loop should compute the sum, not the average. After the loop has completed, you are ready to compute the average: divide the sum by the number of inputs.

Here is our complete loop.

```
Read first value; store as highest value.
highest month = 1
For current month from 2 to 12
    Read next value.
    If value is higher than the highest value
        Set highest value to that value.
        Set highest month to current month.
```

### Step 6

Trace the loop with typical examples.

Hand trace your loop code, as described in Section 6.2. Choose example values that are not too complex—executing the loop 3–5 times is enough to check for the most common errors. Pay special attention when entering the loop for the first and last time.

Sometimes, you want to make a slight modification to make tracing feasible. For example, when hand-tracing the investment doubling problem, use an interest rate of 20 percent rather than 5 percent. When hand-tracing the temperature loop, use 4 data values, not 12.

Let's say the data are 22.6 36.6 44.5 24.2. Here is the walkthrough:

| current month | current value | highest month | highest value |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1             |               | 1             | 22.6          |
| 2             | 36.6          | 2             | 36.6          |
| 3             | 44.5          | 3             | 44.5          |
| 4             | 24.2          |               |               |

The trace demonstrates that **highest month** and **highest value** are properly set.

### Step 7

Implement the loop in Java.

Here's the loop for our example. Exercise E6.4 asks you to complete the program.

```
double highestValue;
highestValue = in.nextDouble();
int highestMonth = 1;
```

```

for (int currentMonth = 2; currentMonth <= 12; currentMonth++)
{
    double nextValue = in.nextDouble();
    if (nextValue > highestValue)
    {
        highestValue = nextValue;
        highestMonth = currentMonth;
    }
}
System.out.println(highestMonth);

```



### WORKED EXAMPLE 6.1

### Credit Card Processing

Learn how to use a loop to remove spaces from a credit card number. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 6.1.



## 6.8 Nested Loops

When the body of a loop contains another loop, the loops are nested. A typical use of nested loops is printing a table with rows and columns.

In Section 5.4, you saw how to nest two `if` statements. Similarly, complex iterations sometimes require a **nested loop**: a loop inside another loop statement. When processing tables, nested loops occur naturally. An outer loop iterates over all rows of the table. An inner loop deals with the columns in the current row.

In this section you will see how to print a table. For simplicity, we will simply print the powers of  $x$ ,  $x^n$ , as in the table at right.

Here is the pseudocode for printing the table:

```

Print table header.
For x from 1 to 10
    Print table row.
    Print new line.

```

How do you print a table row? You need to print a value for each exponent. This requires a second loop.

```

For n from 1 to 4
    Print  $x^n$ .

```

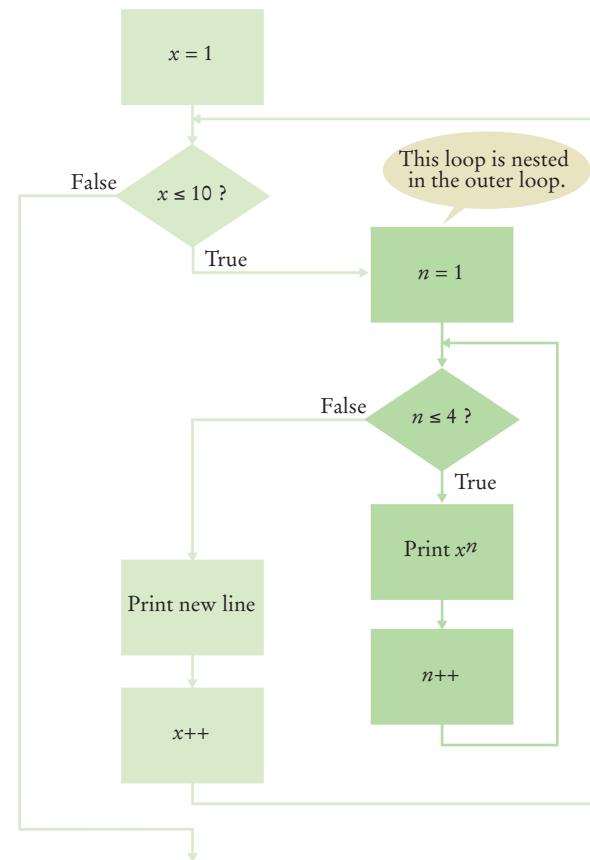
This loop must be placed inside the preceding loop. We say that the inner loop is *nested* inside the outer loop.

| $x^1$ | $x^2$ | $x^3$ | $x^4$ |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1     | 1     | 1     | 1     |
| 2     | 4     | 8     | 16    |
| 3     | 9     | 27    | 81    |
| ...   | ...   | ...   | ...   |
| 10    | 100   | 1000  | 10000 |



The hour and minute displays in a digital clock are an example of nested loops. The hours loop 12 times, and for each hour, the minutes loop 60 times.

**Figure 7**  
Flowchart of a Nested Loop



There are 10 rows in the outer loop. For each  $x$ , the program prints four columns in the inner loop (see Figure 7). Thus, a total of  $10 \times 4 = 40$  values are printed.

Following is the complete program. Note that we also use two loops to print the table header. However, those loops are not nested.

### section\_8/PowerTable.java

```

1  /**
2   * This program prints a table of powers of x.
3  */
4  public class PowerTable
5  {
6      public static void main(String[] args)
7      {
8          final int NMAX = 4;
9          final double XMAX = 10;
10
11         // Print table header
12
13         for (int n = 1; n <= NMAX; n++)
14         {
15             System.out.printf("%10d", n);
16         }
17         System.out.println();
  
```

```

18   for (int n = 1; n <= NMAX; n++)
19   {
20     System.out.printf("%10s", "x ");
21   }
22   System.out.println();
23
24   // Print table body
25
26   for (double x = 1; x <= XMAX; x++)
27   {
28     // Print table row
29
30     for (int n = 1; n <= NMAX; n++)
31     {
32       System.out.printf("%10.0f", Math.pow(x, n));
33     }
34     System.out.println();
35   }
36 }
37 }
```

**Program Run**

| 1  | 2   | 3    | 4     |
|----|-----|------|-------|
| x  | x   | x    | x     |
| 1  | 1   | 1    | 1     |
| 2  | 4   | 8    | 16    |
| 3  | 9   | 27   | 81    |
| 4  | 16  | 64   | 256   |
| 5  | 25  | 125  | 625   |
| 6  | 36  | 216  | 1296  |
| 7  | 49  | 343  | 2401  |
| 8  | 64  | 512  | 4096  |
| 9  | 81  | 729  | 6561  |
| 10 | 100 | 1000 | 10000 |

**SELF CHECK**

37. Why is there a statement `System.out.println();` in the outer loop but not in the inner loop?
38. How would you change the program to display all powers from  $x^0$  to  $x^5$ ?
39. If you make the change in Self Check 38, how many values are displayed?
40. What do the following nested loops display?

```

for (int i = 0; i < 3; i++)
{
  for (int j = 0; j < 4; j++)
  {
    System.out.print(i + j);
  }
  System.out.println();
}
```

41. Write nested loops that make the following pattern of brackets:

```

[] [] [] []
[] [] [] []
[] [] [] []
```

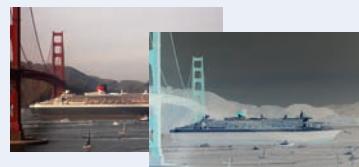
**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R6.27, E6.14, E6.16.

**Table 3** Nested Loop Examples

| Nested Loops                                                                                                                                                                          | Output                   | Explanation                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <pre>for (i = 1; i &lt;= 3; i++) {     for (j = 1; j &lt;= 4; j++) { Print "*" }     System.out.println(); }</pre>                                                                    | ****<br>****<br>****     | Prints 3 rows of 4 asterisks each.                       |
| <pre>for (i = 1; i &lt;= 4; i++) {     for (j = 1; j &lt;= 3; j++) { Print "*" }     System.out.println(); }</pre>                                                                    | ***<br>***<br>***<br>*** | Prints 4 rows of 3 asterisks each.                       |
| <pre>for (i = 1; i &lt;= 4; i++) {     for (j = 1; j &lt;= i; j++) { Print "*" }     System.out.println(); }</pre>                                                                    | *                        | Prints 4 rows of lengths 1, 2, 3, and 4.                 |
| <pre>for (i = 1; i &lt;= 3; i++) {     for (j = 1; j &lt;= 5; j++)     {         if (j % 2 == 0) { Print "*" }         else { Print "-" }     }     System.out.println(); }</pre>     | -*-*-<br>-*-*-<br>-*-*-  | Prints asterisks in even columns, dashes in odd columns. |
| <pre>for (i = 1; i &lt;= 3; i++) {     for (j = 1; j &lt;= 5; j++)     {         if (i % 2 == j % 2) { Print "*" }         else { Print " " }     }     System.out.println(); }</pre> | * * *<br>* *<br>* * *    | Prints a checkerboard pattern.                           |

**WORKED EXAMPLE 6.2****Manipulating the Pixels in an Image**

Learn how to use nested loops for manipulating the pixels in an image. The outer loop traverses the rows of the image, and the inner loop accesses each pixel of a row. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 6.2.



# 6.9 Application: Random Numbers and Simulations

In a simulation, you use the computer to simulate an activity.

A *simulation program* uses the computer to simulate an activity in the real world (or an imaginary one). Simulations are commonly used for predicting climate change, analyzing traffic, picking stocks, and many other applications in science and business. In many simulations, one or more loops are used to modify the state of a system and observe the changes. You will see examples in the following sections.

## 6.9.1 Generating Random Numbers

Many events in the real world are difficult to predict with absolute precision, yet we can sometimes know the average behavior quite well. For example, a store may know from experience that a customer arrives every five minutes. Of course, that is an average—customers don’t arrive in five minute intervals. To accurately model customer traffic, you want to take that random fluctuation into account. Now, how can you run such a simulation in the computer?

The `Random` class of the Java library implements a *random number generator* that produces numbers that appear to be completely random. To generate random numbers, you construct an object of the `Random` class, and then apply one of the following methods:

| Method                    | Returns                                                                            |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>nextInt(n)</code>   | A random integer between the integers 0 (inclusive) and <code>n</code> (exclusive) |
| <code>nextDouble()</code> | A random floating-point number between 0 (inclusive) and 1 (exclusive)             |

For example, you can simulate the cast of a die as follows:

```
Random generator = new Random();
int d = 1 + generator.nextInt(6);
```

The call `generator.nextInt(6)` gives you a random number between 0 and 5 (inclusive). Add 1 to obtain a number between 1 and 6.

To give you a feeling for the random numbers, run the following program a few times.

### section\_9\_1/Die.java



```
1 import java.util.Random;
2
3 /**
4  * This class models a die that, when cast, lands on a
5  * random face.
6 */
7 public class Die
8 {
9     private Random generator;
10    private int sides;
```

```

11  /**
12   * Constructs a die with a given number of sides.
13   * @param s the number of sides, e.g., 6 for a normal die
14   */
15  public Die(int s)
16  {
17      sides = s;
18      generator = new Random();
19  }
20
21 /**
22  * Simulates a throw of the die.
23  * @return the face of the die
24  */
25  public int cast()
26  {
27      return 1 + generator.nextInt(sides);
28  }
29 }
30 }
```

**section\_9\_1/DieSimulator.java**

```

1 /**
2  * This program simulates casting a die ten times.
3 */
4 public class DieSimulator
5 {
6     public static void main(String[] args)
7     {
8         Die d = new Die(6);
9         final int TRIES = 10;
10        for (int i = 1; i <= TRIES; i++)
11        {
12            int n = d.cast();
13            System.out.print(n + " ");
14        }
15        System.out.println();
16    }
17 }
```

**Typical Program Run**

6 5 6 3 2 6 3 4 4 1

**Typical Program Run (Second Run)**

3 2 2 1 6 5 3 4 1 2

As you can see, this program produces a different stream of simulated die casts every time it is run.

Actually, the numbers are not completely random. They are drawn from very long sequences of numbers that don't repeat for a long time. These sequences are computed from fairly simple formulas; they just behave like random numbers. For that reason, they are often called **pseudorandom numbers**. Generating good sequences of numbers that behave like truly random sequences is an important and well-studied problem in computer science. We won't investigate this issue further, though; we'll just use the random numbers produced by the `Random` class.

### 6.9.2 The Monte Carlo Method

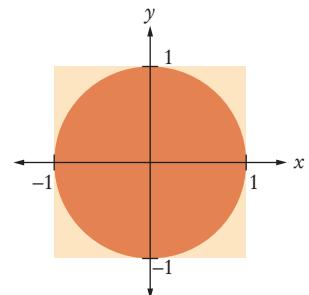
The Monte Carlo method is an ingenious method for finding approximate solutions to problems that cannot be precisely solved. (The method is named after the famous casino in Monte Carlo.) Here is a typical example. It is difficult to compute the number  $\pi$ , but you can approximate it quite well with the following simulation.



Simulate shooting a dart into a square surrounding a circle of radius 1. That is easy: generate random  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates between  $-1$  and  $1$ .

If the generated point lies inside the circle, we count it as a *hit*. That is the case when  $x^2 + y^2 \leq 1$ . Because our shots are entirely random, we expect that the ratio of *hits / tries* is approximately equal to the ratio of the areas of the circle and the square, that is,  $\pi / 4$ . Therefore, our estimate for  $\pi$  is  $4 \times \text{hits} / \text{tries}$ . This method yields an estimate for  $\pi$ , using nothing but simple arithmetic.

To generate a random floating-point value between  $-1$  and  $1$ , you compute:



```
double r = generator.nextDouble(); // 0 ≤ r < 1
double x = -1 + 2 * r; // -1 ≤ x < 1
```

As  $r$  ranges from 0 (inclusive) to 1 (exclusive),  $x$  ranges from  $-1 + 2 \times 0 = -1$  (inclusive) to  $-1 + 2 \times 1 = 1$  (exclusive). In our application, it does not matter that  $x$  never reaches 1. The points that fulfill the equation  $x = 1$  lie on a line with area 0.

Here is the program that carries out the simulation:

#### section\_9\_2/MonteCarlo.java

```

1 import java.util.Random;
2
3 /**
4  * This program computes an estimate of pi by simulating dart throws onto a square.
5 */
6 public class MonteCarlo
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10         final int TRIES = 10000;
11         Random generator = new Random();
12
13         int hits = 0;
14         for (int i = 1; i <= TRIES; i++)
15         {
16             // Generate two random numbers between -1 and 1
17
18             double r = generator.nextDouble();
19             double x = -1 + 2 * r; // Between -1 and 1
20             r = generator.nextDouble();
21             double y = -1 + 2 * r;
22
23             if (x*x + y*y <= 1)
24                 hits++;
25
26         }
27
28         System.out.println("Estimate of pi: " + (4.0 * hits / TRIES));
29     }
30 }
```

```

23         // Check whether the point lies in the unit circle
24
25         if (x * x + y * y <= 1) { hits++; }
26     }
27
28     /*
29      The ratio hits / tries is approximately the same as the ratio
30      circle area / square area = pi / 4
31     */
32
33     double piEstimate = 4.0 * hits / TRIES;
34     System.out.println("Estimate for pi: " + piEstimate);
35   }
36 }
```

**Program Run**

Estimate for pi: 3.1504

**SELF CHECK**

42. How do you simulate a coin toss with the `Random` class?
43. How do you simulate the picking of a random playing card?
44. How would you modify the `DieSimulator` program to simulate tossing a pair of dice?
45. In many games, you throw a pair of dice to get a value between 2 and 12. What is wrong with this simulated throw of a pair of dice?  
`int sum = 2 + generator.nextInt(11);`
46. How do you generate a random floating-point number  $\geq 0$  and  $< 100$ ?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R6.28, E6.7, E6.19.

## 6.10 Using a Debugger

As you have undoubtedly realized by now, computer programs rarely run perfectly the first time. At times, it can be quite frustrating to find the bugs. Of course, you can insert print commands, run the program, and try to analyze the printout. If the printout does not clearly point to the problem, you may need to add and remove print commands and run the program again. That can be a time-consuming process.

Modern development environments contain special programs, called **debuggers**, that help you locate bugs by letting you follow the execution of a program. You can stop and restart your program and see the contents of variables whenever your program is temporarily stopped. At each stop, you have the choice of what variables to inspect and how many program steps to run until the next stop.

Some people feel that debuggers are just a tool to make programmers lazy. Admittedly some people write sloppy programs and then fix them up with a debugger, but the majority of programmers make an honest effort to write the best program they can before trying to run it through a debugger. These programmers realize that a debugger, while more convenient than print commands, is not cost-free. It does take time to set up and carry out an effective debugging session.

In actual practice, you cannot avoid using a debugger. The larger your programs get, the harder it is to debug them simply by inserting print commands. The time invested in learning about a debugger will be amply repaid in your programming career.

A debugger is a program that you can use to execute another program and analyze its run-time behavior.

Like compilers, debuggers vary widely from one system to another. Some are quite primitive and require you to memorize a small set of arcane commands; others have an intuitive window interface. Figure 8 shows the debugger in the Eclipse development environment, downloadable for free from the Eclipse Foundation ([eclipse.org](http://eclipse.org)). Other integrated environments, such as BlueJ, also include debuggers. A free stand-alone debugger called JSwat is available from [code.google.com/p/jswat](http://code.google.com/p/jswat).

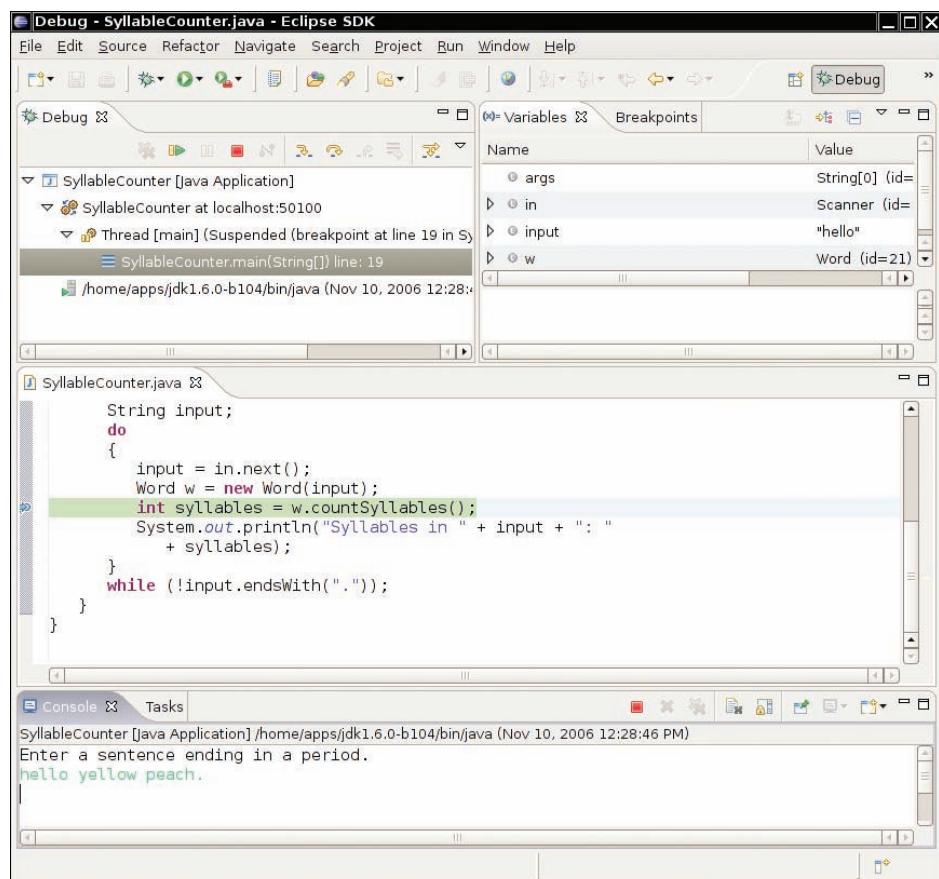
You will have to find out how to prepare a program for debugging and how to start a debugger on your system. If you use an integrated development environment (with an editor, compiler, and debugger), this step is usually easy. You build the program in the usual way and pick a command to start debugging. On some systems, you must manually build a debug version of your program and invoke the debugger.

Once you have started the debugger, you can go a long way with just three debugging commands: “set breakpoint”, “single step”, and “inspect variable”. The names and keystrokes or mouse clicks for these commands differ widely, but all debuggers support these basic commands. You can find out how, either from the documentation or a lab manual, or by asking someone who has used the debugger before.

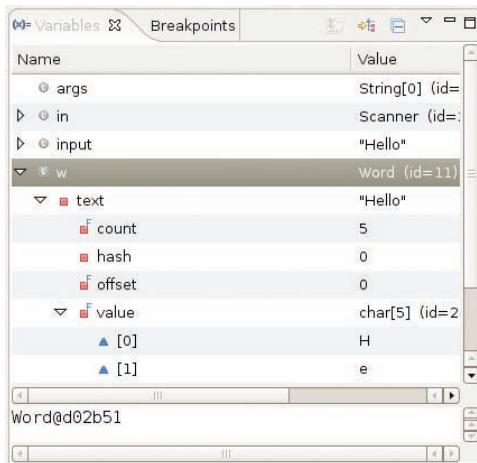
When you start the debugger, it runs at full speed until it reaches a **breakpoint**. Then execution stops, and the breakpoint that causes the stop is displayed (Figure 8). You can now inspect variables and step through the program one line at a time, or continue running the program at full speed until it reaches the next breakpoint. When the program terminates, the debugger stops as well.

You can make effective use of a debugger by mastering just three concepts: breakpoints, single-stepping, and inspecting variables.

When a debugger executes a program, the execution is suspended whenever a breakpoint is reached.



**Figure 8**  
Stopping at a Breakpoint

**Figure 9** Inspecting Variables

Breakpoints stay active until you remove them, so you should periodically clear the breakpoints that you no longer need.

Once the program has stopped, you can look at the current values of variables. Again, the method for selecting the variables differs among debuggers. Some debuggers always show you a window with the current local variables. On other debuggers you issue a command such as “inspect variable” and type in or click on the variable. The debugger then displays the contents of the variable. If all variables contain what you expected, you can run the program until the next point where you want to stop.

When inspecting objects, you often need to give a command to “open up” the object, for example by clicking on a tree node. Once the object is opened up, you see its instance variables (see Figure 9).

Running to a breakpoint gets you there speedily, but you don’t know how the program got there. You can also step through the program one line at a time. Then you know how the program flows, but it can take a long time to step through it. The *single-step command* executes the current line and stops at the next program line. Most debuggers have two single-step commands, one called *step into*, which steps inside method calls, and one called *step over*, which skips over method calls.

For example, suppose the current line is

```
String input = in.next();
Word w = new Word(input);
int syllables = w.countSyllables();
System.out.println("Syllables in " + input + ": " + syllables);
```

When you step over method calls, you get to the next line:

```
String input = in.next();
Word w = new Word(input);
int syllables = w.countSyllables();
System.out.println("Syllables in " + input + ": " + syllables);
```

However, if you step into method calls, you enter the first line of the `countSyllables` method.

```
public int countSyllables()
{
    int count = 0;
```

The single-step command executes the program one line at a time.

```
int end = text.length() - 1;  
    ...  
}
```

You should step *into* a method to check whether it carries out its job correctly. You should step *over* a method if you know it works correctly.

Finally, when the program has finished running, the debug session is also finished. To debug the program again, you must restart it in the debugger.

A debugger can be an effective tool for finding and removing bugs in your program. However, it is no substitute for good design and careful programming. If the debugger does not find any errors, it does not mean that your program is bug-free. Testing and debugging can only show the presence of bugs, not their absence.

### SELF CHECK



47. In the debugger, you are reaching a call to `System.out.println`. Should you step into the method or step over it?
48. In the debugger, you are reaching the beginning of a method with a couple of loops inside. You want to find out the return value that is computed at the end of the method. Should you set a breakpoint, or should you step through the method?
49. When using the debugger, you find that a variable has an unexpected value. How can you go backwards to see when the variable changed?
50. When using a debugger, should you insert statements to print the values of variables?
51. Instead of using a debugger, could you simply trace a program by hand?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R6.30, R6.31, R6.32.

## HOW TO 6.2



### Debugging

Knowing all about the mechanics of debugging may still leave you helpless when you fire up a debugger to look at a sick program. This How To presents a number of strategies that you can use to recognize bugs and their causes.

#### Step 1

Reproduce the error.

As you test your program, you notice that it sometimes does something wrong. It gives the wrong output, it seems to print something random, it goes in an infinite loop, or it crashes. Find out exactly how to reproduce that behavior. What numbers did you enter? Where did you click with the mouse?

Run the program again; type in exactly the same numbers, and click with the mouse on the same spots (or as close as you can get). Does the program exhibit the same behavior? If so, then it makes sense to fire up a debugger to study this particular problem. Debuggers are good for analyzing particular failures. They aren't terribly useful for studying a program in general.

#### Step 2

Simplify the error.

Before you start up a debugger, it makes sense to spend a few minutes trying to come up with a simpler input that also produces an error. Can you use shorter words or simpler numbers and still have the program misbehave? If so, use those values during your debugging session.

**Step 3** Divide and conquer.

Use the divide-and-conquer technique to locate the point of failure of a program.

Now that you have a particular failure, you want to get as close to the failure as possible. The key point of debugging is to locate the code that produces the failure. Just as with real insect pests, finding the bug can be hard, but once you find it, squashing it is usually the easy part. Suppose your program dies with a division by 0. Because there are many division operations in a typical program, it is often not feasible to set breakpoints to all of them. Instead, use a technique of *divide and conquer*. Step over the methods in `main`, but don't step inside them. Eventually, the failure will happen again. Now you know which method contains the bug: It is the last method that was called from `main` before the program died. Restart the debugger and go back to that line in `main`, then step inside that method. Repeat the process.

Eventually, you will have pinpointed the line that contains the bad division. Maybe it is obvious from the code why the denominator is not correct. If not, you need to find the location where it is computed. Unfortunately, you can't go back in the debugger. You need to restart the program and move to the point where the denominator computation happens.

**Step 4**

During debugging, compare the actual contents of variables against the values you know they should have.

Know what your program should do.

A debugger shows you what the program does. You must know what the program *should* do, or you will not be able to find bugs. Before you trace through a loop, ask yourself how many iterations you expect the program to make. Before you inspect a variable, ask yourself what you expect to see. If you have no clue, set aside some time and think first. Have a calculator handy to make independent computations. When you know what the value should be, inspect the variable. If the value is what you expected, you must look further for the bug. If the value is different, you may be on to something. Double-check your computation. If you are sure your value is correct, find out why your program comes up with a different value.

In many cases, program bugs are the result of simple errors such as loop termination conditions that are off by one. Quite often, however, programs make computational errors. Maybe they are supposed to add two numbers, but by accident the code was written to subtract them. Programs don't make a special effort to ensure that everything is a simple integer (and neither do real-world problems). You will need to make some calculations with large integers or nasty floating-point numbers. Sometimes these calculations can be avoided if you just ask yourself, "Should this quantity be positive? Should it be larger than that value?" Then inspect variables to verify those theories.

**Step 5** Look at all details.

When you debug a program, you often have a theory about what the problem is. Nevertheless, keep an open mind and look at all details. What strange messages are displayed? Why does the program take another unexpected action? These details count. When you run a debugging session, you really are a detective who needs to look at every clue available.

If you notice another failure on the way to the problem that you are about to pin down, don't just say, "I'll come back to it later". That very failure may be the original cause for your current problem. It is better to make a note of the current problem, fix what you just found, and then return to the original mission.

**Step 6** Make sure you understand each bug before you fix it.

Once you find that a loop makes too many iterations, it is very tempting to apply a "Band-Aid" solution and subtract 1 from a variable so that the particular problem doesn't appear again. Such a quick fix has an overwhelming probability of creating trouble elsewhere. You really need to have a thorough understanding of how the program should be written before you apply a fix.

It does occasionally happen that you find bug after bug and apply fix after fix, and the problem just moves around. That usually is a symptom of a larger problem with the program logic. There is little you can do with the debugger. You must rethink the program design and reorganize it.



## WORKED EXAMPLE 6.3

## A Sample Debugging Session

Learn how to find bugs in an algorithm for counting the syllables of a word. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 6.3.



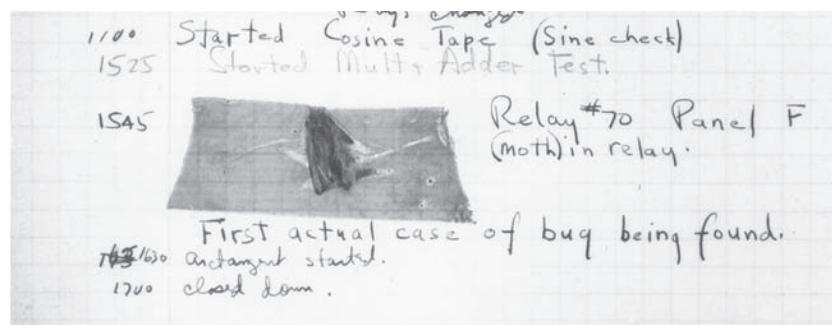
## Computing &amp; Society 6.2 The First Bug

According to legend, the first bug was found in the Mark II, a huge electromechanical computer at Harvard University. It really was caused by a bug—a moth was trapped in a relay switch.

Actually, from the note that the operator left in the log book next to the moth (see the photo), it appears as if the term “bug” had already been in active use at the time.

The pioneering computer scientist Maurice Wilkes wrote, “Somehow, at the Moore School and afterwards, one had always assumed there would be no particular difficulty in getting pro-

grams right. I can remember the exact instant in time at which it dawned on me that a great part of my future life would be spent finding mistakes in my own programs.”



The First Bug

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

## Explain the flow of execution in a loop.

- A loop executes instructions repeatedly while a condition is true.
- An off-by-one error is a common error when programming loops. Think through simple test cases to avoid this type of error.



## Use the technique of hand-tracing to analyze the behavior of a program.

- Hand-tracing is a simulation of code execution in which you step through instructions and track the values of the variables.
- Hand-tracing can help you understand how an unfamiliar algorithm works.
- Hand-tracing can show errors in code or pseudocode.



**Use for loops for implementing count-controlled loops.**

- The for loop is used when a value runs from a starting point to an ending point with a constant increment or decrement.

**Choose between the while loop and the do loop.**

- The do loop is appropriate when the loop body must be executed at least once.

**Implement loops that read sequences of input data.**

- A sentinel value denotes the end of a data set, but it is not part of the data.
- You can use a Boolean variable to control a loop. Set the variable to true before entering the loop, then set it to false to leave the loop.
- Use input redirection to read input from a file. Use output redirection to capture program output in a file.

**Use the technique of storyboarding for planning user interactions.**

- A storyboard consists of annotated sketches for each step in an action sequence.
- Developing a storyboard helps you understand the inputs and outputs that are required for a program.

**Know the most common loop algorithms.**

- To compute an average, keep a total and a count of all values.
- To count values that fulfill a condition, check all values and increment a counter for each match.
- If your goal is to find a match, exit the loop when the match is found.
- To find the largest value, update the largest value seen so far whenever you see a larger one.
- To compare adjacent inputs, store the preceding input in a variable.

**Use nested loops to implement multiple levels of iteration.**

- When the body of a loop contains another loop, the loops are nested. A typical use of nested loops is printing a table with rows and columns.

**Apply loops to the implementation of simulations.**

- In a simulation, you use the computer to simulate an activity.
- You can introduce randomness by calling the random number generator.



### Use a debugger to analyze your programs.

- A debugger is a program that you can use to execute another program and analyze its run-time behavior.
- You can make effective use of a debugger by mastering just three concepts: breakpoints, single-stepping, and inspecting variables.
- When a debugger executes a program, the execution is suspended whenever a breakpoint is reached.
- The single-step command executes the program one line at a time.
- Use the divide-and-conquer technique to locate the point of failure of a program.
- During debugging, compare the actual contents of variables against the values you know they should have.

### STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER

```
java.util.Random
    nextDouble
    nextInt
```

### REVIEW QUESTIONS

- R6.1** Write a while loop that prints
- All squares less than n. For example, if n is 100, print 0 1 4 9 16 25 36 49 64 81.
  - All positive numbers that are divisible by 10 and less than n. For example, if n is 100, print 10 20 30 40 50 60 70 80 90
  - All powers of two less than n. For example, if n is 100, print 1 2 4 8 16 32 64.
- R6.2** Write a loop that computes
- The sum of all even numbers between 2 and 100 (inclusive).
  - The sum of all squares between 1 and 100 (inclusive).
  - The sum of all odd numbers between a and b (inclusive).
  - The sum of all odd digits of n. (For example, if n is 32677, the sum would be  $3 + 7 + 7 = 17$ .)
- R6.3** Provide trace tables for these loops.
- ```
int i = 0; int j = 10; int n = 0;
while (i < j) { i++; j--; n++; }
```
  - ```
int i = 0; int j = 0; int n = 0;
while (i < 10) { i++; n = n + i + j; j++; }
```
  - ```
int i = 10; int j = 0; int n = 0;
while (i > 0) { i--; j++; n = n + i - j; }
```
  - ```
int i = 0; int j = 10; int n = 0;
while (i != j) { i = i + 2; j = j - 2; n++; }
```

**R6.4** What do these loops print?

- a. `for (int i = 1; i < 10; i++) { System.out.print(i + " "); }`
- b. `for (int i = 1; i < 10; i += 2) { System.out.print(i + " "); }`
- c. `for (int i = 10; i > 1; i--) { System.out.print(i + " "); }`
- d. `for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++) { System.out.print(i + " "); }`
- e. `for (int i = 1; i < 10; i = i * 2) { System.out.print(i + " "); }`
- f. `for (int i = 1; i < 10; i++) { if (i % 2 == 0) { System.out.print(i + " "); } }`

**R6.5** What is an infinite loop? On your computer, how can you terminate a program that executes an infinite loop?**R6.6** Write a program trace for the pseudocode in Exercise E6.6, assuming the input values are 4 7 -2 -5 0.**R6.7** What is an “off-by-one” error? Give an example from your own programming experience.**R6.8** What is a sentinel value? Give a simple rule when it is appropriate to use a numeric sentinel value.**R6.9** Which loop statements does Java support? Give simple rules for when to use each loop type.**R6.10** How many iterations do the following loops carry out? Assume that *i* is not changed in the loop body.

- a. `for (int i = 1; i <= 10; i++) . . .`
- b. `for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++) . . .`
- c. `for (int i = 10; i > 0; i--) . . .`
- d. `for (int i = -10; i <= 10; i++) . . .`
- e. `for (int i = 10; i >= 0; i++) . . .`
- f. `for (int i = -10; i <= 10; i = i + 2) . . .`
- g. `for (int i = -10; i <= 10; i = i + 3) . . .`

**R6.11** Write pseudocode for a program that prints a calendar such as the following.

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Su | M  | T  | W  | Th | F  | Sa |
|    | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  |    |    |
| 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 |
| 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 |
| 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 |
| 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |    |

**R6.12** Write pseudocode for a program that prints a Celsius/Fahrenheit conversion table such as the following.

| Celsius |   | Fahrenheit |
|---------|---|------------|
| 0       |   | 32         |
| 10      |   | 50         |
| 20      |   | 68         |
| .       | . | .          |
| 100     |   | 212        |

**R6.13** Write pseudocode for a program that reads a student record, consisting of the student’s first and last name, followed by a sequence of test scores and a sentinel of -1.

The program should print the student's average score. Then provide a trace table for this sample input:

```
Harry Morgan 94 71 86 95 -1
```

- R6.14** Write pseudocode for a program that reads a sequence of student records and prints the total score for each student. Each record has the student's first and last name, followed by a sequence of test scores and a sentinel of `-1`. The sequence is terminated by the word `END`. Here is a sample sequence:

```
Harry Morgan 94 71 86 95 -1
Sally Lin 99 98 100 95 90 -1
END
```

Provide a trace table for this sample input.

- R6.15** Rewrite the following `for` loop into a `while` loop.

```
int s = 0;
for (int i = 1; i <= 10; i++)
{
    s = s + i;
}
```

- R6.16** Rewrite the following `do` loop into a `while` loop.

```
int n = in.nextInt();
double x = 0;
double s;
do
{
    s = 1.0 / (1 + n * n);
    n++;
    x = x + s;
}
while (s > 0.01);
```

- R6.17** Provide trace tables of the following loops.

- ```
int s = 1;
int n = 1;
while (s < 10) { s = s + n; }
n++;
```
- ```
int s = 1;
for (int n = 1; n < 5; n++) { s = s + n; }
```
- ```
int s = 1;
int n = 1;
do
{
    s = s + n;
    n++;
}
while (s < 10 * n);
```

- R6.18** What do the following loops print? Work out the answer by tracing the code, not by using the computer.

- ```
int s = 1;
for (int n = 1; n <= 5; n++)
{
    s = s + n;
    System.out.print(s + " ");
}
```

**b.**

```

int s = 1;
for (int n = 1; s <= 10; System.out.print(s + " "))
{
    n = n + 2;
    s = s + n;
}

c.
int s = 1;
int n;
for (n = 1; n <= 5; n++)
{
    s = s + n;
    n++;
}
System.out.print(s + " " + n);

```

- **R6.19** What do the following program segments print? Find the answers by tracing the code, not by using the computer.

**a.**

```

int n = 1;
for (int i = 2; i < 5; i++) { n = n + i; }
System.out.print(n);

b.
int i;
double n = 1 / 2;
for (i = 2; i <= 5; i++) { n = n + 1.0 / i; }
System.out.print(i);

c.
double x = 1;
double y = 1;
int i = 0;
do
{
    y = y / 2;
    x = x + y;
    i++;
}
while (x < 1.8);
System.out.print(i);

d.
double x = 1;
double y = 1;
int i = 0;
while (y >= 1.5)
{
    x = x / 2;
    y = x + y;
    i++;
}
System.out.print(i);

```

- ■ **R6.20** Give an example of a for loop where symmetric bounds are more natural. Give an example of a for loop where asymmetric bounds are more natural.

- **R6.21** Add a storyboard panel for the conversion program in Section 6.6 on page 269 that shows a scenario where a user enters incompatible units.

- **R6.22** In Section 6.6, we decided to show users a list of all valid units in the prompt. If the program supports many more units, this approach is unworkable. Give a storyboard panel that illustrates an alternate approach: If the user enters an unknown unit, a list of all known units is shown.

- **R6.23** Change the storyboards in Section 6.6 to support a menu that asks users whether they want to convert units, see program help, or quit the program. The menu should be displayed at the beginning of the program, when a sequence of values has been converted, and when an error is displayed.
- **R6.24** Draw a flow chart for a program that carries out unit conversions as described in Section 6.6.
- **R6.25** In Section 6.7.5, the code for finding the largest and smallest input initializes the largest and smallest variables with an input value. Why can't you initialize them with zero?
- **R6.26** What are nested loops? Give an example where a nested loop is typically used.

**■■ R6.27** The nested loops

```
for (int i = 1; i <= height; i++)
{
    for (int j = 1; j <= width; j++) { System.out.print("*"); }
    System.out.println();
}
```

display a rectangle of a given width and height, such as

```
*****
*****
*****
*****
```

Write a *single* for loop that displays the same rectangle.

- **R6.28** Suppose you design an educational game to teach children how to read a clock. How do you generate random values for the hours and minutes?
- **R6.29** In a travel simulation, Harry will visit one of his friends that are located in three states. He has ten friends in California, three in Nevada, and two in Utah. How do you produce a random number between 1 and 3, denoting the destination state, with a probability that is proportional to the number of friends in each state?
- **Testing R6.30** Explain the differences between these debugger operations:
  - Stepping into a method
  - Stepping over a method
- **Testing R6.31** Explain in detail how to inspect the string stored in a String object in your debugger.
- **Testing R6.32** Explain in detail how to inspect the information stored in a Rectangle object in your debugger.
- **Testing R6.33** Explain in detail how to use your debugger to inspect the balance stored in a BankAccount object.
- **Testing R6.34** Explain the divide-and-conquer strategy to get close to a bug in a debugger.

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E6.1** Write programs with loops that compute
  - a. The sum of all even numbers between 2 and 100 (inclusive).
  - b. The sum of all squares between 1 and 100 (inclusive).

- c. All powers of 2 from  $2^0$  up to  $2^{20}$ .
- d. The sum of all odd numbers between a and b (inclusive), where a and b are inputs.
- e. The sum of all odd digits of an input. (For example, if the input is 32677, the sum would be  $3 + 7 + 7 = 17$ .)

- ■ E6.2** Write programs that read a sequence of integer inputs and print
  - a. The smallest and largest of the inputs.
  - b. The number of even and odd inputs.
  - c. Cumulative totals. For example, if the input is 1 7 2 9, the program should print 1 8 10 19.
  - d. All adjacent duplicates. For example, if the input is 1 3 3 4 5 5 6 6 6 2, the program should print 3 5 6.
- ■ E6.3** Write programs that read a line of input as a string and print
  - a. Only the uppercase letters in the string.
  - b. Every second letter of the string.
  - c. The string, with all vowels replaced by an underscore.
  - d. The number of vowels in the string.
  - e. The positions of all vowels in the string.
- ■ E6.4** Complete the program in How To 6.1 on page 276. Your program should read twelve temperature values and print the month with the highest temperature.

- ■ E6.5** Write a program that reads a set of floating-point values. Ask the user to enter the values (prompting only a single time for the values), then print
  - the average of the values.
  - the smallest of the values.
  - the largest of the values.
  - the range, that is the difference between the smallest and largest.

Your program should use a class `DataSet`. That class should have a method

```
public void add(double value)
```

and methods `getAverage`, `getSmallest`, `getLargest`, and `getRange`.

- E6.6** Translate the following pseudocode for finding the minimum value from a set of inputs into a Java program.

```

Set a Boolean variable "first" to true.
While another value has been read successfully
  If first is true
    Set the minimum to the value.
    Set first to false.
  Else if the value is less than the minimum
    Set the minimum to the value.
Print the minimum.
  
```

- **E6.7** Translate the following pseudocode for randomly permuting the characters in a string into a Java program.



**Read a word.**  
**Repeat word.length() times**  
 Pick a random position *i* in the word, but not the last position.  
 Pick a random position *j* > *i* in the word.  
 Swap the letters at positions *j* and *i*.  
**Print the word.**

To swap the letters, construct substrings as follows:



Then replace the string with

```
first + word.charAt(j) + middle + word.charAt(i) + last
```

- **E6.8** Write a program that reads a word and prints each character of the word on a separate line. For example, if the user provides the input "Harry", the program prints

```
H  
a  
r  
r  
y
```

- **E6.9** Write a program that reads a word and prints the word in reverse. For example, if the user provides the input "Harry", the program prints

```
yrrah
```

- **E6.10** Write a program that reads a word and prints the number of vowels in the word. For this exercise, assume that a e i o u y are vowels. For example, if the user provides the input "Harry", the program prints 2 vowels.

- **E6.11** Write a program that reads a word and prints all substrings, sorted by length. For example, if the user provides the input "rum", the program prints

```
r  
u  
m  
ru  
um  
rum
```

- **E6.12** Write a program that prints all powers of 2 from  $2^0$  up to  $2^{20}$ .

- **E6.13** Write a program that reads a number and prints all of its *binary digits*: Print the remainder `number % 2`, then replace the number with `number / 2`. Keep going until the number is 0. For example, if the user provides the input 13, the output should be

```
1  
0  
1  
1
```

- **E6.14** Write a program that prints a multiplication table, like this:

```

1   2   3   4   5   6   7   8   9   10
2   4   6   8   10  12  14  16  18  20
3   6   9   12  15  18  21  24  27  30
.
.
.
10  20  30  40  50  60  70  80  90  100

```

- ■ **E6.15** Write a program that reads an integer and displays, using asterisks, a filled and hollow square, placed next to each other. For example if the side length is 5, the program should display

```

***** *****
***** * *
***** * *
***** * *
***** *****

```

- ■ **E6.16** Write a program that reads an integer and displays, using asterisks, a filled diamond of the given side length. For example, if the side length is 4, the program should display

```

*
**
*****
*****
*****
**
*

```

- ■ **Business E6.17** *Currency conversion.* Write a program that first asks the user to type today's price for one dollar in Japanese yen, then reads U.S. dollar values and converts each to yen. Use 0 as a sentinel.

|  |                  |     |         |         |
|--|------------------|-----|---------|---------|
|  | <b>CANADA</b>    | CAD | 0.9512  | 0.8883  |
|  | <b>CHINA</b>     | CNY | 8.23169 | 0.60910 |
|  | <b>EURO</b>      | EUR | 0.6644  | 0.6100  |
|  | <b>JAPAN</b>     | JPY | 109.00  | 102.00  |
|  | <b>SINGAPORE</b> | SGD | 1.13112 | 1.12630 |
|  | <b>HONG KONG</b> | HKD | 100.43  | 96.4072 |
|  |                  |     | 116.46  | 106.75  |

- ■ **Business E6.18** Write a program that first asks the user to type in today's price of one dollar in Japanese yen, then reads U.S. dollar values and converts each to Japanese yen. Use 0 as the sentinel value to denote the end of dollar inputs. Then the program reads a sequence of yen amounts and converts them to dollars. The second sequence is terminated by another zero value.

- ■ **E6.19** *The Monty Hall Paradox.* Marilyn vos Savant described the following problem (loosely based on a game show hosted by Monty Hall) in a popular magazine: "Suppose you're on a game show, and you're given the choice of three doors: Behind one door is a car; behind the others, goats. You pick a door, say No. 1, and the host, who knows what's behind the doors, opens another door, say No. 3, which has a goat. He then says to you, "Do you want to pick door No. 2?" Is it to your advantage to switch your choice?"

Ms. vos Savant proved that it is to your advantage, but many of her readers, including some mathematics professors, disagreed, arguing that the probability would not change because another door was opened.

Your task is to simulate this game show. In each iteration, randomly pick a door number between 1 and 3 for placing the car. Randomly have the player pick a door.

Randomly have the game show host pick a door having a goat (but not the door that the player picked). Increment a counter for strategy 1 if the player wins by switching to the host's choice, and increment a counter for strategy 2 if the player wins by sticking with the original choice. Run 1,000 iterations and print both counters.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- P6.1** *Mean and standard deviation.* Write a program that reads a set of floating-point data values. Choose an appropriate mechanism for prompting for the end of the data set. When all values have been read, print out the count of the values, the average, and the standard deviation. The average of a data set  $\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$  is  $\bar{x} = \sum x_i / n$ , where  $\sum x_i = x_1 + \dots + x_n$  is the sum of the input values. The standard deviation is

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\sum (x_i - \bar{x})^2}{n - 1}}$$

However, this formula is not suitable for the task. By the time the program has computed  $\bar{x}$ , the individual  $x_i$  are long gone. Until you know how to save these values, use the numerically less stable formula

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\sum x_i^2 - \frac{1}{n}(\sum x_i)^2}{n - 1}}$$

You can compute this quantity by keeping track of the count, the sum, and the sum of squares as you process the input values.

Your program should use a class `DataSet`. That class should have a method

```
public void add(double value)
```

and methods `getAverage` and `getStandardDeviation`.

- P6.2** The *Fibonacci numbers* are defined by the sequence

$$\begin{aligned}f_1 &= 1 \\f_2 &= 1 \\f_n &= f_{n-1} + f_{n-2}\end{aligned}$$

Reformulate that as

```
fold1 = 1;
fold2 = 1;
fnew = fold1 + fold2;
```



*Fibonacci numbers describe the growth of a rabbit population.*

After that, discard `fold2`, which is no longer needed, and set `fold2` to `fold1` and `fold1` to `fnew`. Repeat an appropriate number of times.

Implement a program that prompts the user for an integer  $n$  and prints the  $n$ th Fibonacci number, using the above algorithm.

- P6.3 *Factoring of integers.* Write a program that asks the user for an integer and then prints out all its factors. For example, when the user enters 150, the program should print

```
2
3
5
5
```

Use a class `FactorGenerator` with a constructor `FactorGenerator(int numberToFactor)` and methods `nextFactor` and `hasMoreFactors`. Supply a class `FactorPrinter` whose `main` method reads a user input, constructs a `FactorGenerator` object, and prints the factors.

- P6.4 *Prime numbers.* Write a program that prompts the user for an integer and then prints out all prime numbers up to that integer. For example, when the user enters 20, the program should print

```
2
3
5
7
11
13
17
19
```

Recall that a number is a prime number if it is not divisible by any number except 1 and itself.

Use a class `PrimeGenerator` with methods `nextPrime` and `isPrime`. Supply a class `PrimePrinter` whose `main` method reads a user input, constructs a `PrimeGenerator` object, and prints the primes.

- P6.5 *The game of Nim.* This is a well-known game with a number of variants. The following variant has an interesting winning strategy. Two players alternately take marbles from a pile. In each move, a player chooses how many marbles to take. The player must take at least one but at most half of the marbles. Then the other player takes a turn. The player who takes the last marble loses.

Write a program in which the computer plays against a human opponent. Generate a random integer between 10 and 100 to denote the initial size of the pile. Generate a random integer between 0 and 1 to decide whether the computer or the human takes the first turn. Generate a random integer between 0 and 1 to decide whether the computer plays *smart* or *stupid*. In stupid mode the computer simply takes a random legal value (between 1 and  $n/2$ ) from the pile whenever it has a turn. In smart mode the computer takes off enough marbles to make the size of the pile a power of two minus 1—that is, 3, 7, 15, 31, or 63. That is always a legal move, except when the size of the pile is currently one less than a power of two. In that case, the computer makes a random legal move.

You will note that the computer cannot be beaten in smart mode when it has the first move, unless the pile size happens to be 15, 31, or 63. Of course, a human player who has the first turn and knows the winning strategy can win against the computer.

- P6.6 *The Drunkard's Walk.* A drunkard in a grid of streets randomly picks one of four directions and stumbles to the next intersection, then again randomly picks one of four directions, and so on. You might think that on average the drunkard doesn't move very far because the choices cancel each other out, but that is not the case.

Represent locations as integer pairs  $(x, y)$ . Implement the drunkard's walk over 100 intersections, starting at  $(0, 0)$ , and print the ending location.

- **P6.7** A simple random generator is obtained by the formula

$$r_{\text{new}} = (a \cdot r_{\text{old}} + b) \% m$$

and then setting  $r_{\text{old}}$  to  $r_{\text{new}}$ . If  $m$  is chosen as  $2^{32}$ , then you can compute

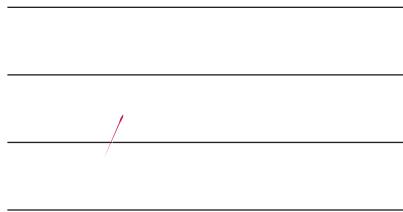
$$r_{\text{new}} = a \cdot r_{\text{old}} + b$$

because the truncation of an overflowing result to the `int` type is equivalent to computing the remainder.

Write a program that asks the user to enter a value for  $r_{\text{old}}$ . (Such a value is often called a *seed*). Then print the first 100 random integers generated by this formula, using  $a = 32310901$  and  $b = 1729$ .

- ■ **P6.8** *The Buffon Needle Experiment.* The following experiment was devised by Comte Georges-Louis Leclerc de Buffon (1707–1788), a French naturalist. A needle of length 1 inch is dropped onto paper that is ruled with lines 2 inches apart. If the needle drops onto a line, we count it as a *hit*. (See Figure 10.) Buffon discovered that the quotient *tries/hits* approximates  $\pi$ .

**Figure 10**  
The Buffon Needle Experiment



For the Buffon needle experiment, you must generate two random numbers: one to describe the starting position and one to describe the angle of the needle with the  $x$ -axis. Then you need to test whether the needle touches a grid line.

Generate the *lower* point of the needle. Its  $x$ -coordinate is irrelevant, and you may assume its  $y$ -coordinate  $y_{\text{low}}$  to be any random number between 0 and 2. The angle  $\alpha$  between the needle and the  $x$ -axis can be any value between 0 degrees and 180 degrees ( $\pi$  radians). The upper end of the needle has  $y$ -coordinate

$$y_{\text{high}} = y_{\text{low}} + \sin \alpha$$

The needle is a hit if  $y_{\text{high}}$  is at least 2, as shown in Figure 11. Stop after 10,000 tries and print the quotient *tries/hits*. (This program is not suitable for computing the value of  $\pi$ . You need  $\pi$  in the computation of the angle.)



**Figure 11**  
A Hit in the Buffon Needle Experiment

- Business P6.9** Your company has shares of stock it would like to sell when their value exceeds a certain target price. Write a program that reads the target price and then reads the current stock price until it is at least the target price. Your program should use a Scanner to read a sequence of double values from standard input. Once the minimum is reached, the program should report that the stock price exceeds the target price.
- Business P6.10** Write an application to pre-sell a limited number of cinema tickets. Each buyer can buy as many as 4 tickets. No more than 100 tickets can be sold. Implement a program called `TicketSeller` that prompts the user for the desired number of tickets and then displays the number of remaining tickets. Repeat until all tickets have been sold, and then display the total number of buyers.
- Business P6.11** You need to control the number of people who can be in an oyster bar at the same time. Groups of people can always leave the bar, but a group cannot enter the bar if they would make the number of people in the bar exceed the maximum of 100 occupants. Write a program that reads the sizes of the groups that arrive or depart. Use negative numbers for departures. After each input, display the current number of occupants. As soon as the bar holds the maximum number of people, report that the bar is full and exit the program.
- Science P6.12** In a predator-prey simulation, you compute the populations of predators and prey, using the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{prey}_{n+1} &= \text{prey}_n \times (1 + A - B \times \text{pred}_n) \\ \text{pred}_{n+1} &= \text{pred}_n \times (1 - C + D \times \text{prey}_n) \end{aligned}$$

Here,  $A$  is the rate at which prey birth exceeds natural death,  $B$  is the rate of predation,  $C$  is the rate at which predator deaths exceed births without food, and  $D$  represents predator increase in the presence of food.

Write a program that prompts users for these rates, the initial population sizes, and the number of periods. Then print the populations for the given number of periods. As inputs, try  $A = 0.1$ ,  $B = C = 0.01$ , and  $D = 0.00002$  with initial prey and predator populations of 1,000 and 20.



- Science P6.13** *Projectile flight.* Suppose a cannonball is propelled straight into the air with a starting velocity  $v_0$ . Any calculus book will state that the position of the ball after  $t$  seconds is  $s(t) = -\frac{1}{2}gt^2 + v_0t$ , where  $g = 9.81 \text{ m/s}^2$  is the gravitational force of the earth. No calculus textbook ever mentions why someone would want to carry out such an obviously dangerous experiment, so we will do it in the safety of the computer.

In fact, we will confirm the theorem from calculus by a simulation. In our simulation, we will consider how the ball moves in very short time intervals  $\Delta t$ . In a short time interval the velocity  $v$  is nearly constant, and we can compute the distance the ball moves as  $\Delta s = v\Delta t$ . In our program, we will simply set

```
const double DELTA_T = 0.01;
```



and update the position by

$$s = s + v * \text{DELTA\_T};$$

The velocity changes constantly—in fact, it is reduced by the gravitational force of the earth. In a short time interval,  $\Delta v = -g\Delta t$ , we must keep the velocity updated as

$$v = v - g * \text{DELTA\_T};$$

In the next iteration the new velocity is used to update the distance.

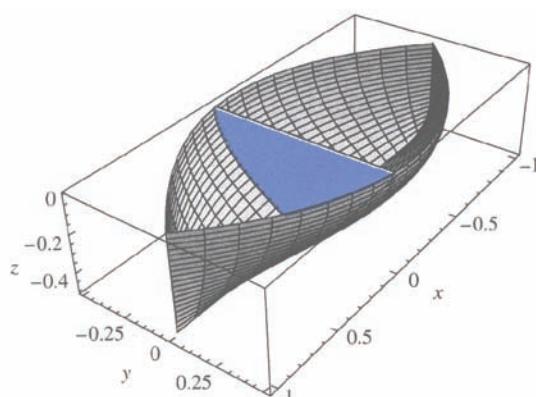
Now run the simulation until the cannonball falls back to the earth. Get the initial velocity as an input (100 m/s is a good value). Update the position and velocity 100 times per second, but print out the position only every full second. Also printout the values from the exact formula  $s(t) = -\frac{1}{2}gt^2 + v_0t$  for comparison.

*Note:* You may wonder whether there is a benefit to this simulation when an exact formula is available. Well, the formula from the calculus book is *not* exact. Actually, the gravitational force diminishes the farther the cannonball is away from the surface of the earth. This complicates the algebra sufficiently that it is not possible to give an exact formula for the actual motion, but the computer simulation can simply be extended to apply a variable gravitational force. For cannonballs, the calculus-book formula is actually good enough, but computers are necessary to compute accurate trajectories for higher-flying objects such as ballistic missiles.

**\*\*\* Science P6.14** A simple model for the hull of a ship is given by

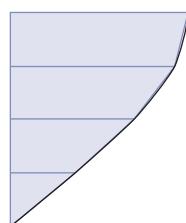
$$|y| = \frac{B}{2} \left[ 1 - \left( \frac{2x}{L} \right)^2 \right] \left[ 1 - \left( \frac{z}{T} \right)^2 \right]$$

where  $B$  is the beam,  $L$  is the length, and  $T$  is the draft. (*Note:* There are two values of  $y$  for each  $x$  and  $z$  because the hull is symmetric from starboard to port.)



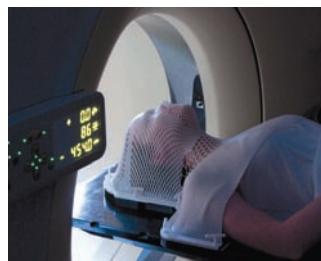
The cross-sectional area at a point  $x$  is called the “section” in nautical parlance. To compute it, let  $z$  go from 0 to  $-T$  in  $n$  increments, each of size  $T/n$ . For each value of  $z$ , compute the value for  $y$ . Then sum the areas of trapezoidal strips. At right are the strips where  $n = 4$ .

Write a program that reads in values for  $B$ ,  $L$ ,  $T$ ,  $x$ , and  $n$  and then prints out the cross-sectional area at  $x$ .



**■ Science P6.15** Radioactive decay of radioactive materials can be modeled by the equation  $A = A_0 e^{-t(\log 2/b)}$ , where  $A$  is the amount of the material at time  $t$ ,  $A_0$  is the amount at time 0, and  $b$  is the half-life.

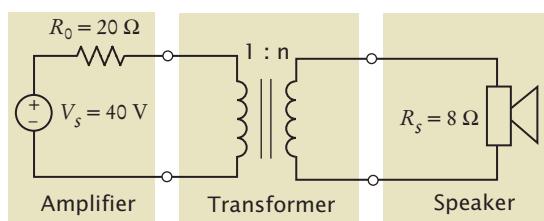
Technetium-99 is a radioisotope that is used in imaging of the brain. It has a half-life of 6 hours. Your program should display the relative amount  $A / A_0$  in a patient body every hour for 24 hours after receiving a dose.



**■■■ Science P6.16** The photo at left shows an electric device called a “transformer”. Transformers are often constructed by wrapping coils of wire around a ferrite core. The figure below illustrates a situation that occurs in various audio devices such as cell phones and music players. In this circuit, a transformer is used to connect a speaker to the output of an audio amplifier.



stockphoto



The symbol used to represent the transformer is intended to suggest two coils of wire. The parameter  $n$  of the transformer is called the “turns ratio” of the transformer. (The number of times that a wire is wrapped around the core to form a coil is called the number of turns in the coil. The turns ratio is literally the ratio of the number of turns in the two coils of wire.)

When designing the circuit, we are concerned primarily with the value of the power delivered to the speakers—that power causes the speakers to produce the sounds we want to hear. Suppose we were to connect the speakers directly to the amplifier without using the transformer. Some fraction of the power available from the amplifier would get to the speakers. The rest of the available power would be lost in the amplifier itself. The transformer is added to the circuit to increase the fraction of the amplifier power that is delivered to the speakers.

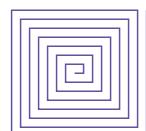
The power,  $P_s$ , delivered to the speakers is calculated using the formula

$$P_s = R_s \left( \frac{nV_s}{n^2R_0 + R_s} \right)^2$$

Write a program that models the circuit shown and varies the turns ratio from 0.01 to 2 in 0.01 increments, then determines the value of the turns ratio that maximizes the power delivered to the speakers.

**■ Graphics P6.17** Write a graphical application that displays a checkerboard with 64 squares, alternating white and black.

**■■■ Graphics P6.18** Write a graphical application that draws a spiral, such as this one:



**■■ Graphics P6.19** It is easy and fun to draw graphs of curves with the Java graphics library. Simply draw 100 line segments joining the points  $(x, f(x))$  and  $(x + d, f(x + d))$ , where  $x$  ranges from  $x_{\min}$  to  $x_{\max}$  and  $d = (x_{\max} - x_{\min})/100$ .

Draw the curve  $f(x) = 0.00005x^3 - 0.03x^2 + 4x + 200$ , where  $x$  ranges from 0 to 400 in this fashion.

**■■■ Graphics P6.20** Draw a picture of the “four-leaved rose” whose equation in polar coordinates is  $r = \cos(2\theta)$ . Let  $\theta$  go from 0 to  $2\pi$  in 100 steps. Each time, compute  $r$  and then compute the  $(x, y)$  coordinates from the polar coordinates by using the formula

$$x = r \cdot \cos(\theta), y = r \cdot \sin(\theta)$$

### ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

**1.** 23 years.

**2.** 8 years.

**3.** Add a statement

```
System.out.println(balance);
```

as the last statement in the `while` loop.

**4.** The program prints the same output. This is because the balance after 14 years is slightly below \$20,000, and after 15 years, it is slightly above \$20,000.

**5.** 2 4 8 16 32 64 128

Note that the value 128 is printed even though it is larger than 100.

**6.** n output

|    |    |
|----|----|
| 5  |    |
| 4  | 4  |
| 3  | 3  |
| 2  | 2  |
| 1  | 1  |
| 0  | 0  |
| -1 | -1 |

**7.** n output

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| 1 | 1,       |
| 2 | 1, 2,    |
| 3 | 1, 2, 3, |
| 4 |          |

There is a comma after the last value. Usually, commas are between values only.

**8.** a n r i

|   |   |    |   |
|---|---|----|---|
| 2 | 4 | 1  | 1 |
|   |   | 2  | 2 |
|   |   | 4  | 3 |
|   |   | 8  | 4 |
|   |   | 16 | 5 |

The code computes  $a^n$ .

**9.** n output

|     |    |
|-----|----|
| 1   | 1  |
| 11  | 11 |
| 21  | 21 |
| 31  | 31 |
| 41  | 41 |
| 51  | 51 |
| 61  | 61 |
| ... |    |

This is an infinite loop.  $n$  is never equal to 50.

**10.** count temp

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 1 | 123  |
| 2 | 12.3 |
| 3 | 1.23 |

This yields the correct answer. The number 123 has 3 digits.

count temp

|   |      |
|---|------|
| 1 | 100  |
| 2 | 10.0 |

This yields the wrong answer. The number 100 also has 3 digits. The loop condition should have been `while (temp >= 10)`.

**11.** int year = 1;

while (year <= numberOfYears)

{

double interest = balance \* RATE / 100;

balance = balance + interest;

year++;

}

**12.** 11 numbers: 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

**13.** for (int i = 10; i <= 20; i = i + 2)

{

System.out.println(i);

}

- 14.**
- ```
int sum = 0;
for (int i = 1; i <= n; i++)
{
    sum = sum + i;
}
```
- 15.**
- ```
final int PERIODS = 5;
for (int i = 1; i <= PERIODS; i++)
{
    invest.waitYears(YEARS);
    System.out.printf(
        "The balance after %d years is %.2f\n",
        invest.getYears(), invest.getBalance());
}
```
- 16.**
- ```
do
{
    System.out.print(
        "Enter a value between 0 and 100: ");
    value = in.nextInt();
}
while (value < 0 || value > 100);
```
- 17.**
- ```
int value = 100;
while (value >= 100)
{
    System.out.print("Enter a value < 100: ");
    value = in.nextInt();
}
```
- Here, the variable `value` had to be initialized with an artificial value to ensure that the loop is entered at least once.
- 18.** Yes. The do loop
- ```
do { body } while (condition);
```
- is equivalent to this while loop:
- ```
boolean first = true;
while (first || condition)
{
    body;
    first = false;
}
```
- 19.**
- ```
int x;
int sum = 0;
do
{
    x = in.nextInt();
    sum = sum + x;
}
while (x != 0);
```
- 20.**
- ```
int x = 0;
int previous;
do
{
    previous = x;
    x = in.nextInt();
    sum = sum + x;
}
while (x != 0 && previous != x);
```

- 21.** No data
- 22.** The first check ends the loop after the sentinel has been read. The second check ensures that the sentinel is not processed as an input value.
- 23.** The while loop would never be entered. The user would never be prompted for input. Because `count` stays 0, the program would then print "No data".
- 24.** The `nextDouble` method also returns `false`. A more accurate prompt would have been: "Enter values, a key other than a digit to quit." But that might be more confusing to the program user who would need to ponder which key to choose.
- 25.** If the user doesn't provide any numeric input, the first call to `in.nextDouble()` will fail.

**26. Computing the average**

```
Enter scores, Q to quit: 90 80 90 100 80 Q
The average is 88
(Program exits)
```

**27. Simple conversion**

Only one value can be converted

```
Your conversion question: How many in are 30 cm
30 cm = 11.81 in
(Program exits) Run program again for another question
```

*Unknown unit*

```
Your conversion question: How many inches are 30 cm?
Unknown unit: inches
Known units are in, ft, mi, mm, cm, m, km, oz, lb, g, kg, tsp, tbsp, pint, gal
(Program exits)
```

*Program doesn't understand question syntax*

```
Your conversion question: What is an ångström?
Please formulate your question as "How many (unit) are (value) (unit)?"
(Program exits)
```

**28. One score is not enough**

```
Enter scores, Q to quit: 90 Q
Error: At least two scores are required.
(Program exits)
```

- 29.** It would not be possible to implement this interface using the Java features we have covered up to this point. There is no way for the program to know when the first set of inputs ends. (When you read numbers with `value = in.nextDouble()`, it is your choice

whether to put them on a single line or multiple lines.)

**30.** Comparing two interest rates

| First interest rate in percent: 5   |          |          |
|-------------------------------------|----------|----------|
| Second interest rate in percent: 10 |          |          |
| Years:                              | 5%       | 10%      |
| 0                                   | 10000.00 | 10000.00 |
| 1                                   | 10500.00 | 11000.00 |
| 2                                   | 11025.00 | 12100.00 |
| 3                                   | 11576.25 | 13310.00 |
| 4                                   | 12155.06 | 14641.00 |
| 5                                   | 12762.82 | 16105.10 |

This row clarifies that 1 means the end of the first year

**31.** The total is zero.

**32.** double total = 0;  
while (in.hasNextDouble())  
{  
 double input = in.nextDouble();  
 if (input > 0) { total = total + input; }  
}

**33.** position is str.length() and ch is unchanged from its initial value, '?'. Note that ch must be initialized with some value—otherwise the compiler will complain about a possibly uninitialized variable.

**34.** The loop will stop when a match is found, but you cannot access the match because neither position nor ch are defined outside the loop.

**35.** Start the loop at the end of string:

```
boolean found = false;  
int i = str.length() - 1;  
while (!found && i >= 0)  
{  
    char ch = str.charAt(i);  
    if (ch == ' ') { found = true; }  
    else { i--; }  
}
```

**36.** The initial call to in.nextDouble() fails, terminating the program. One solution is to do all input in the loop and introduce a Boolean variable that checks whether the loop is entered for the first time.

```
double input = 0;  
boolean first = true;  
while (in.hasNextDouble())  
{  
    double previous = input;  
    input = in.nextDouble();  
    if (first) { first = false; }  
    else if (input == previous)  
    {
```

```
        System.out.println("Duplicate input");  
    }  
}
```

- 37.** All values in the inner loop should be displayed on the same line.  
**38.** Change lines 13, 18, and 30 to for (int n = 0; n <= NMAX; n++). Change NMAX to 5.  
**39.** 60: The outer loop is executed 10 times, and the inner loop 6 times.

**40.** 0123  
1234  
2345

**41.** for (int i = 1; i <= 3; i++)  
{  
 for (int j = 1; j <= 4; j++)  
 {  
 System.out.print("[ ]");  
 }  
 System.out.println();  
}

**42.** Compute generator.nextInt(2), and use 0 for heads, 1 for tails, or the other way around.

**43.** Compute generator.nextInt(4) and associate the numbers 0...3 with the four suits. Then compute generator.nextInt(13) and associate the numbers 0...12 with Jack, Ace, 2...10, Queen, and King.

**44.** Construct two Die objects:

```
Die d1 = new Die(6);  
Die d2 = new Die(6);
```

Then cast and print both of them:

```
System.out.println(  
    d1.cast() + " " + d2.cast());
```

**45.** The call will produce a value between 2 and 12, but all values have the same probability. When throwing a pair of dice, the number 7 is six times as likely as the number 2. The correct formula is

```
int sum = generator.nextInt(6)  
    + generator.nextInt(6) + 2;
```

**46.** generator.nextDouble() \* 100.0

**47.** You should step over it because you are not interested in debugging the internals of the println method.

**48.** You should set a breakpoint. Stepping through loops can be tedious.

**49.** Unfortunately, most debuggers do not support going backwards. Instead, you must restart the

- program. Try setting breakpoints at the lines in which the variable is changed.
- 50.** No, there is no need. You can just inspect the variables in the debugger.
- 51.** For short programs, you certainly could. But when programs get longer, it would be very time-consuming to trace them manually.

# ARRAYS AND ARRAY LISTS

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To collect elements using arrays and array lists
- To use the enhanced for loop for traversing arrays and array lists
- To learn common algorithms for processing arrays and array lists
- To work with two-dimensional arrays
- To understand the concept of regression testing**



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

|                                                                         |     |  |                                                                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| <b>7.1 ARRAYS</b>                                                       | 312 |  | <b>7.5 PROBLEM SOLVING: DISCOVERING ALGORITHMS BY MANIPULATING PHYSICAL OBJECTS</b> | 336 |
| <i>Syntax 7.1:</i> Arrays                                               | 313 |  |                                                                                     |     |
| <i>Common Error 7.1:</i> Bounds Errors                                  | 318 |  |                                                                                     |     |
| <i>Common Error 7.2:</i> Uninitialized and Unfilled Arrays              | 318 |  |                                                                                     |     |
| <i>Programming Tip 7.1:</i> Use Arrays for Sequences of Related Items   | 318 |  |                                                                                     |     |
| <i>Programming Tip 7.2:</i> Make Parallel Arrays into Arrays of Objects | 318 |  |                                                                                     |     |
| <i>Special Topic 7.1:</i> Methods with a Variable Number of Arguments   | 319 |  | <b>7.6 TWO-DIMENSIONAL ARRAYS</b>                                                   | 340 |
| <i>Computing &amp; Society 7.1:</i> Computer Viruses                    | 320 |  | <i>Syntax 7.3:</i> Two-Dimensional Array Declaration                                | 341 |
| <b>7.2 THE ENHANCED FOR LOOP</b>                                        | 321 |  | <i>Worked Example 7.2:</i> A World Population Table                                 | 342 |
| <i>Syntax 7.2:</i> The Enhanced for Loop                                | 322 |  | <i>Special Topic 7.3:</i> Two-Dimensional Arrays with Variable Row Lengths          | 345 |
| <b>7.3 COMMON ARRAY ALGORITHMS</b>                                      | 322 |  | <i>Special Topic 7.4:</i> Multidimensional Arrays                                   | 347 |
| <i>Common Error 7.3:</i> Underestimating the Size of a Data Set         | 331 |  |                                                                                     |     |
| <i>Special Topic 7.2:</i> Sorting with the Java Library                 | 331 |  | <b>7.7 ARRAY LISTS</b>                                                              | 347 |
| <b>7.4 PROBLEM SOLVING: ADAPTING ALGORITHMS</b>                         | 331 |  | <i>Syntax 7.4:</i> Array Lists                                                      | 347 |
| <i>How To 7.1:</i> Working with Arrays                                  | 334 |  | <i>Common Error 7.4:</i> Length and Size                                            | 356 |
| <i>Worked Example 7.1:</i> Rolling the Dice                             | 334 |  | <i>Special Topic 7.5:</i> The Diamond Syntax in Java 7                              | 356 |
|                                                                         |     |  | <b>7.8 REGRESSION TESTING</b>                                                       | 356 |
|                                                                         |     |  | <i>Programming Tip 7.3:</i> Batch Files and Shell Scripts                           | 358 |
|                                                                         |     |  | <i>Computing &amp; Society 7.2:</i> The Therac-25 Incidents                         | 359 |



In many programs, you need to collect large numbers of values. In Java, you use the array and array list constructs for this purpose. Arrays have a more concise syntax, whereas array lists can automatically grow to any desired size. In this chapter, you will learn about arrays, array lists, and common algorithms for processing them.

## 7.1 Arrays

We start this chapter by introducing the array data type. Arrays are the fundamental mechanism in Java for collecting multiple values. In the following sections, you will learn how to declare arrays and how to access array elements.

### 7.1.1 Declaring and Using Arrays

Suppose you write a program that reads a sequence of values and prints out the sequence, marking the largest value, like this:

```
32  
54  
67.5  
29  
35  
80  
115 <= largest value  
44.5  
100  
65
```

You do not know which value to mark as the largest one until you have seen them all. After all, the last value might be the largest one. Therefore, the program must first store all values before it can print them.

Could you simply store each value in a separate variable? If you know that there are ten values, then you could store the values in ten variables `value1`, `value2`, `value3`, ..., `value10`. However, such a sequence of variables is not very practical to use. You would have to write quite a bit of code ten times, once for each of the variables. In Java, an **array** is a much better choice for storing a sequence of values of the same type.

Here we create an array that can hold ten values of type `double`:

```
new double[10]
```

The number of elements (here, 10) is called the *length* of the array.

The `new` operator constructs the array. You will want to store the array in a variable so that you can access it later.

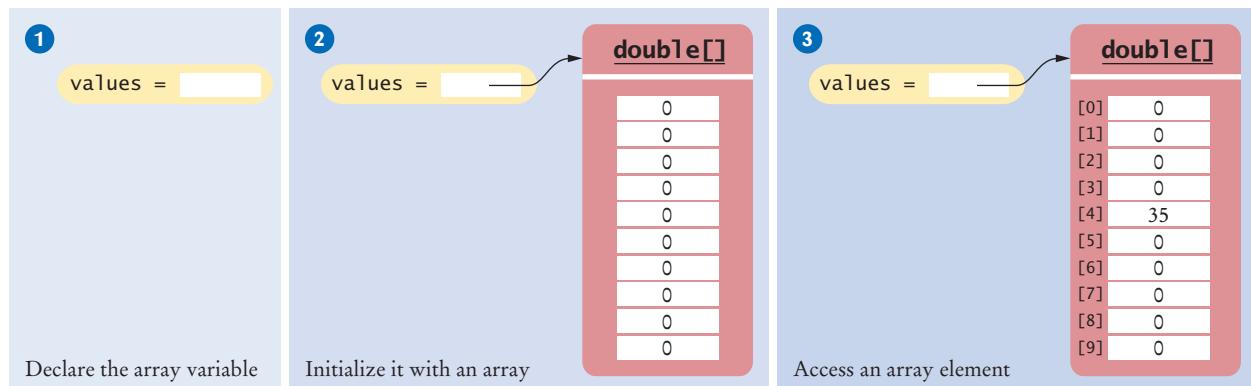
The type of an array variable is the type of the element to be stored, followed by `[]`. In this example, the type is `double[]`, because the element type is `double`.

Here is the declaration of an array variable of type `double[]` (see Figure 1):

```
double[] values; ①
```

When you declare an array variable, it is not yet initialized. You need to initialize the variable with the array:

```
double[] values = new double[10]; ②
```

**Figure 1** An Array of Size 10

Now `values` is initialized with an array of 10 numbers. By default, each number in the array is 0.

When you declare an array, you can specify the initial values. For example,

```
double[] moreValues = { 32, 54, 67.5, 29, 35, 80, 115, 44.5, 100, 65 };
```

When you supply initial values, you don't use the `new` operator. The compiler determines the length of the array by counting the initial values.

To access a value in an array, you specify which "slot" you want to use. That is done with the `[]` operator:

```
values[4] = 35; 3
```

Now the number 4 slot of `values` is filled with 35 (see Figure 1). This "slot number" is called an *index*. Each slot in an array contains an *element*.

Because `values` is an array of double values, each element `values[i]` can be used like any variable of type `double`. For example, you can display the element with index 4 with the following command:

```
System.out.println(values[4]);
```

Individual elements in an array are accessed by an integer index `i`, using the notation `array[i]`.

An array element can be used like any variable.

## Syntax 7.1

### Arrays

**Syntax** To construct an array: `new typeName[length]`

To access an element: `arrayReference[index]`

**Type of array variable** `double[]` **Name of array variable** `values` = `new double[10];`

**Element type** `double` **Length** `10`

**List of initial values** `{ 32, 54, 67.5, 29, 35 }`

**Use brackets to access an element.** `values[i] = 0;`

**The index must be  $\geq 0$  and  $<$  the length of the array.**  
See page 318.

Before continuing, we must take care of an important detail of Java arrays. If you look carefully at Figure 1, you will find that the *fifth* element was filled when we changed `values[4]`. In Java, the elements of arrays are numbered *starting at 0*. That is, the legal elements for the `values` array are

- `values[0]`, the first element
- `values[1]`, the second element
- `values[2]`, the third element
- `values[3]`, the fourth element
- `values[4]`, the fifth element
- ...
- `values[9]`, the tenth element

In other words, the declaration

```
double[] values = new double[10];
```

creates an array with ten elements. In this array, an index can be any integer ranging from 0 to 9.

An array index must be at least zero and less than the size of the array.

A bounds error, which occurs if you supply an invalid array index, can cause your program to terminate.

You have to be careful that the index stays within the valid range. Trying to access an element that does not exist in the array is a serious error. For example, if `values` has ten elements, you are not allowed to access `values[20]`. Attempting to access an element whose index is not within the valid index range is called a **bounds error**. The compiler does not catch this type of error. When a bounds error occurs at run time, it causes a run-time exception.

Here is a very common bounds error:

```
double[] values = new double[10];
values[10] = value;
```

There is no `values[10]` in an array with ten elements—the index can range from 0 to 9.

To avoid bounds errors, you will want to know how many elements are in an array. The expression `values.length` yields the length of the `values` array. Note that there are no parentheses following `length`.



Like a mailbox that is identified by a box number, an array element is identified by an index.

**Table 1 Declaring Arrays**

|                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>int[] numbers = new int[10];</code>                                                                                     | An array of ten integers. All elements are initialized with zero.                                               |
| <code>final int LENGTH = 10; int[] numbers = new int[LENGTH];</code>                                                          | It is a good idea to use a named constant instead of a “magic number”.                                          |
| <code>int length = in.nextInt(); double[] data = new double[length];</code>                                                   | The length need not be a constant.                                                                              |
| <code>int[] squares = { 0, 1, 4, 9, 16 };</code>                                                                              | An array of five integers, with initial values.                                                                 |
| <code>String[] friends = { "Emily", "Bob", "Cindy" };</code>                                                                  | An array of three strings.                                                                                      |
|  <code>double[] data = new int[10];</code> | <b>Error:</b> You cannot initialize a <code>double[]</code> variable with an array of type <code>int[]</code> . |

Use the expression `array.length` to find the number of elements in an array.

The following code ensures that you only access the array when the index variable `i` is within the legal bounds:

```
if (0 <= i && i < values.length) { values[i] = value; }
```

Arrays suffer from a significant limitation: *their length is fixed*. If you start out with an array of 10 elements and later decide that you need to add additional elements, then you need to make a new array and copy all elements of the existing array into the new array. We will discuss this process in detail in Section 7.3.9.

To visit all elements of an array, use a variable for the index. Suppose `values` has ten elements and the integer variable `i` is set to 0, 1, 2, and so on, up to 9. Then the expression `values[i]` yields each element in turn. For example, this loop displays all elements in the `values` array:

```
for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
{
    System.out.println(values[i]);
}
```

Note that in the loop condition the index is *less than* 10 because there is no element corresponding to `values[10]`.

## 7.1.2 Array References

An array reference specifies the location of an array. Copying the reference yields a second reference to the same array.

If you look closely at Figure 1, you will note that the variable `values` does not store any numbers. Instead, the array is stored elsewhere and the `values` variable holds a **reference** to the array. (The reference denotes the location of the array in memory.) You have already seen this behavior with objects in Section 2.8. When you access an object or array, you need not be concerned about the fact that Java uses references. This only becomes important when you copy a reference.

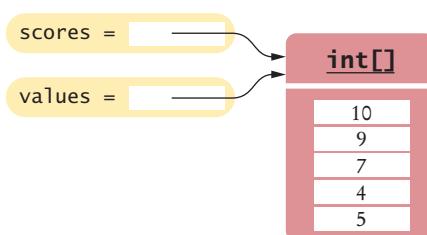
When you copy an array variable into another, both variables refer to the same array (see Figure 2).

```
int[] scores = { 10, 9, 7, 4, 5 };
int[] values = scores; // Copying array reference
```

You can modify the array through either of the variables:

```
scores[3] = 10;
System.out.println(values[3]); // Prints 10
```

Section 7.3.9 shows how you can make a copy of the *contents* of the array.



**Figure 2**  
Two Array Variables Referencing the Same Array

Arrays can occur as method arguments and return values.

### 7.1.3 Using Arrays with Methods

Arrays can be method arguments and return values, just like any other values.

When you define a method with an array argument, you provide a parameter variable for the array. For example, the following method adds scores to a student object:

```
public void addScores(int[] values)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++)
    {
        totalScore = totalScore + values[i];
    }
}
```

To call this method, you have to provide an array:

```
int[] scores = { 10, 9, 7, 10 };
fred.addScores(scores);
```

Conversely, a method can return an array. For example, a `Student` class can have a method

```
public int[] getScores()
```

that returns an array with all of the student's scores.

### 7.1.4 Partially Filled Arrays



With a partially filled array, you need to remember how many elements are filled.

With a partially filled array, keep a companion variable for the current size.

An array cannot change size at run time. This is a problem when you don't know in advance how many elements you need. In that situation, you must come up with a good guess on the maximum number of elements that you need to store. For example, we may decide that we sometimes want to store more than ten elements, but never more than 100:

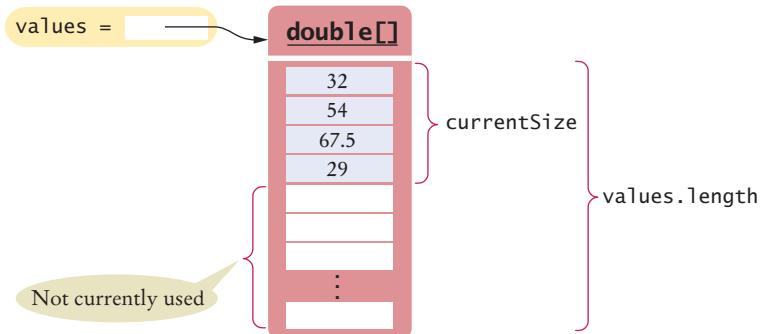
```
final int LENGTH = 100;
double[] values = new double[LENGTH];
```

In a typical program run, only a part of the array will be occupied by actual elements. We call such an array a **partially filled array**. You must keep a *companion variable* that counts how many elements are actually used. In Figure 3 we call the companion variable `currentSize`.

The following loop collects inputs and fills up the `values` array:

```
int currentSize = 0;
Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    if (currentSize < values.length)
    {
        values[currentSize] = in.nextDouble();
        currentSize++;
    }
}
```

At the end of this loop, `currentSize` contains the actual number of elements in the array. Note that you have to stop accepting inputs if the `currentSize` companion variable reaches the array length.

**Figure 3** A Partially Filled Array**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates array operations.

**SELF CHECK**

To process the gathered array elements, you again use the companion variable, not the array length. This loop prints the partially filled array:

```
for (int i = 0; i < currentSize; i++)
{
    System.out.println(values[i]);
}
```

1. Declare an array of integers containing the first five prime numbers.
2. Assume the array `primes` has been initialized as described in Self Check 1. What does it contain after executing the following loop?  
`for (int i = 0; i < 2; i++)
{
 primes[4 - i] = primes[i];
}`
3. Assume the array `primes` has been initialized as described in Self Check 1. What does it contain after executing the following loop?  
`for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++)
{
 primes[i]++;
}`
4. Given the declaration  
`int[] values = new int[10];`  
 write statements to put the integer 10 into the elements of the array `values` with the lowest and the highest valid index.
5. Declare an array called `words` that can hold ten elements of type `String`.
6. Declare an array containing two strings, "Yes", and "No".
7. Can you produce the output on page 312 without storing the inputs in an array, by using an algorithm similar to the algorithm for finding the maximum in Section 6.7.5?
8. Declare a method of a class `Lottery` that returns a combination of `n` numbers. You don't need to implement the method.

**Practice It**

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R7.1, R7.2, R7.6, E7.1.

**Common Error 7.1****Bounds Errors**

Perhaps the most common error in using arrays is accessing a nonexistent element.

```
double[] values = new double[10];
values[10] = 5.4;
// Error—values has 10 elements, and the index can range from 0 to 9
```

If your program accesses an array through an out-of-bounds index, there is no compiler error message. Instead, the program will generate an exception at run time.

**Common Error 7.2****Uninitialized and Unfilled Arrays**

A common error is to allocate an array variable, but not an actual array.

```
double[] values;
values[0] = 29.95; // Error—values not initialized
```

Array variables work exactly like object variables—they are only references to the actual array. To construct the actual array, you must use the `new` operator:

```
double[] values = new double[10];
```

Another common error is to allocate an array of objects and expect it to be filled with objects.

```
BankAccount[] accounts = new BankAccount[10]; // Contains ten null references
```

This array contains `null` references, not default bank accounts. You need to remember to fill the array, for example:

```
for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
{
    accounts[i] = new BankAccount();
}
```

**Programming Tip 7.1****Use Arrays for Sequences of Related Items**

Arrays are intended for storing sequences of values with the same meaning. For example, an array of test scores makes perfect sense:

```
int[] scores = new int[NUMBER_OF_SCORES];
```

But an array

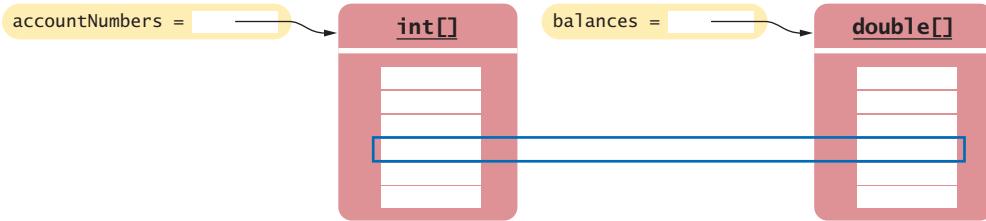
```
int[] personalData = new int[3];
```

that holds a person's age, bank balance, and shoe size in positions 0, 1, and 2 is bad design. It would be tedious for the programmer to remember which of these data values is stored in which array location. In this situation, it is far better to use three separate variables.

**Programming Tip 7.2****Make Parallel Arrays into Arrays of Objects**

Programmers who are familiar with arrays, but unfamiliar with object-oriented programming, sometimes distribute information across separate arrays. Here is a typical example: A program needs to manage bank data, consisting of account numbers and balances. Don't store the account numbers and balances in separate arrays.

```
// Don't do this
int[] accountNumbers;
double[] balances;
```



**Figure 4** Avoid Parallel Arrays

Arrays such as these are called **parallel arrays** (see Figure 4). The  $i$ th slice ( $\text{accountNumbers}[i]$  and  $\text{balances}[i]$ ) contains data that need to be processed together.

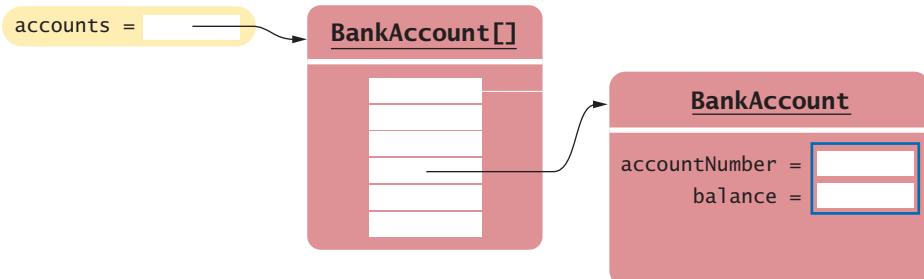
If you find yourself using two arrays that have the same length, ask yourself whether you couldn't replace them with a single array of a class type. Look at a slice and find the concept that it represents. Then make the concept into a class. In our example each slice contains an account number and a balance, describing a bank account. Therefore, it is an easy matter to use a single array of objects

Avoid parallel arrays by changing them into arrays of objects.

```
BankAccount[] accounts;
```

(See Figure 5.)

Why is this beneficial? Think ahead. Maybe your program will change and you will need to store the owner of the bank account as well. It is a simple matter to update the `BankAccount` class. It may well be quite complicated to add a new array and make sure that all methods that accessed the original two arrays now also correctly access the third one.



**Figure 5** Reorganizing Parallel Arrays into an Array of Objects

### Special Topic 7.1



### Methods with a Variable Number of Arguments

It is possible to declare methods that receive a variable number of arguments. For example, we can write a method that can add an arbitrary number of scores to a student:

```
fred.addScores(10, 7); // This method call has two arguments
fred.addScores(1, 7, 2, 9); // Another call to the same method, now with four arguments
```

The method must be declared as

```
public void addScores(int... values)
```

The `int...` type indicates that the method can receive any number of `int` arguments. The `values` parameter variable is actually an `int[]` array that contains all arguments that were passed to the method.

The method implementation traverses the values array and processes the elements:

```
public void addScores(int... values)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++) // values is an int[]
    {
        totalScore = totalScore + values[i];
    }
}
```



## Computing & Society 7.1 Computer Viruses

In November 1988, Robert Morris, a student at Cornell University, launched a so-called virus program that infected a significant fraction of computers connected to the Internet (which was much smaller then than it is now).

In order to attack a computer, a virus has to find a way to get its instructions executed. This particular program carried out a “buffer overrun” attack, providing an unexpectedly large input to a program on another machine. That program allocated an array of 512 characters, under the assumption that nobody would ever provide such a long input. Unfortunately, that program was written in the C programming language. C, unlike Java, does not check that an array index is less than the length of the array. If you write into an array using an index that is too large, you simply overwrite memory locations that belong to some other objects. C programmers are supposed to provide safety checks, but that had not happened in the program under attack. The virus program purposefully filled the 512-character array with 536 bytes. The excess 24 bytes overwrote a return address, which the attacker knew was stored just after the array. When the method that read the input was finished, it didn’t return to its caller but to code supplied by the virus (see the figure). The virus was thus able to execute its code on a remote machine and infect it.

In Java, as in C, all programmers must be very careful not to overrun array boundaries. However, in Java, this error causes a run-time exception, and it never corrupts memory outside the array. This is one of the safety features of Java. One may well

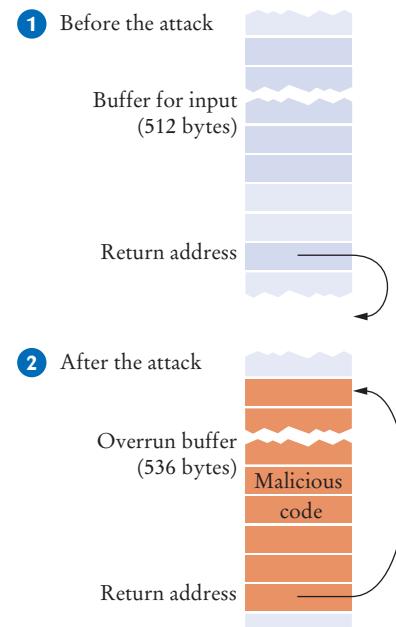
speculate what would possess the virus author to spend weeks designing a program that disabled thousands of computers. It appears that the break-in was fully intended by the author, but the disabling of the computers was a bug caused by continuous reinfection. Morris was sentenced to 3 years probation, 400 hours of community service, and a \$10,000 fine.

In recent years, computer attacks have intensified and the motives have become more sinister. Instead of disabling computers, viruses often take permanent residence in the attacked computers. Criminal enterprises rent out the processing power of millions of hijacked computers for sending spam e-mail. Other viruses monitor every keystroke and send those that look like credit card numbers or banking passwords to their master.

Typically, a machine gets infected because a user executes code downloaded from the Internet, clicking on an icon or link that purports to be a game or video clip. Antivirus programs check all downloaded programs against an ever-growing list of known viruses.

When you use a computer for managing your finances, you need to be aware of the risk of infection. If a virus reads your banking password and empties your account, you will have a hard time convincing your financial institution that it wasn’t your act, and you will most likely lose your money. Keep your operating system and antivirus program up to date, and don’t click on suspicious links on a web page or your e-mail inbox. Use banks that require “two-factor authentication” for major transactions, such as a callback on your cell phone.

Viruses are even used for military purposes. In 2010, a virus, dubbed Stuxnet, spread through Microsoft Windows and infected USB sticks. The virus looked for Siemens industrial computers and reprogrammed them in subtle ways. It appears that the virus was designed to damage the centrifuges of the Iranian nuclear enrichment operation. The computers controlling the centrifuges were not connected to the Internet, but they were configured with USB sticks, some of which were infected. It is rumored that the virus was developed by U.S. and Israeli intelligence agencies, and that it was successful in slowing down the Iranian nuclear program.



A “Buffer Overrun” Attack

## 7.2 The Enhanced for Loop

You can use the enhanced for loop to visit all elements of an array.

Often, you need to visit all elements of an array. The *enhanced for loop* makes this process particularly easy to program.

Here is how you use the enhanced for loop to total up all elements in an array named `values`:

```
double[] values = . . .;
double total = 0;
for (double element : values)
{
    total = total + element;
}
```

The loop body is executed for each element in the array `values`. At the beginning of each loop iteration, the next element is assigned to the variable `element`. Then the loop body is executed. You should read this loop as “for each element in `values`”.

This loop is equivalent to the following for loop and an explicit index variable:

```
for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++)
{
    double element = values[i];
    total = total + element;
}
```

Note an important difference between the enhanced for loop and the basic for loop. In the enhanced for loop, the *element variable* is assigned `values[0]`, `values[1]`, and so on. In the basic for loop, the *index variable* `i` is assigned 0, 1, and so on.

Keep in mind that the enhanced for loop has a very specific purpose: getting the elements of a collection, from the beginning to the end. It is not suitable for all array algorithms. In particular, the enhanced for loop does not allow you to modify the contents of an array. The following loop does not fill an array with zeroes:

```
for (double element : values)
{
    element = 0; // ERROR: this assignment does not modify array elements
}
```

When the loop is executed, the variable `element` is set to `values[0]`. Then `element` is set to 0, then to `values[1]`, then to 0, and so on. The `values` array is not modified. The remedy is simple: Use a basic for loop:

```
for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++)
{
    values[i] = 0; // OK
}
```



### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates the enhanced for loop.

*The enhanced for loop is a convenient mechanism for traversing all elements in a collection.*



## Syntax 7.2 The Enhanced for Loop

```
Syntax   for (typeName variable : collection)
{           statements
}
```

This variable is set in each loop iteration.  
It is only defined inside the loop.

These statements  
are executed for each  
element.

```
        for (double element : values)
{           statements
}
```

An array

The variable  
contains an element,  
not an index.

### SELF CHECK



9. What does this enhanced for loop do?

```
int counter = 0;
for (double element : values)
{
    if (element == 0) { counter++; }
}
```

10. Write an enhanced for loop that prints all elements in the array *values*.  
 11. Write an enhanced for loop that multiplies all elements in a *double*[] array named *factors*, accumulating the result in a variable named *product*.  
 12. Why is the enhanced for loop not an appropriate shortcut for the following basic for loop?

```
for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++) { values[i] = i * i; }
```

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R7.7, R7.8, R7.9.

## 7.3 Common Array Algorithms

In the following sections, we discuss some of the most common algorithms for working with arrays. If you use a partially filled array, remember to replace *values.length* with the companion variable that represents the current size of the array.

### 7.3.1 Filling

This loop fills an array with squares (0, 1, 4, 9, 16, ...). Note that the element with index 0 contains  $0^2$ , the element with index 1 contains  $1^2$ , and so on.

```
for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++)
{
    values[i] = i * i;
}
```

### 7.3.2 Sum and Average Value

You have already encountered this algorithm in Section 6.7.1. When the values are located in an array, the code looks much simpler:

```
double total = 0;
for (double element : values)
{
    total = total + element;
}
double average = 0;
if (values.length > 0) { average = total / values.length; }
```

### 7.3.3 Maximum and Minimum



Use the algorithm from Section 6.7.5 that keeps a variable for the largest element already encountered. Here is the implementation of that algorithm for an array:

```
double largest = values[0];
for (int i = 1; i < values.length; i++)
{
    if (values[i] > largest)
    {
        largest = values[i];
    }
}
```

Note that the loop starts at 1 because we initialize `largest` with `values[0]`.

To compute the smallest element, reverse the comparison.

These algorithms require that the array contain at least one element.

### 7.3.4 Element Separators

When separating elements, don't place a separator before the first element.

When you display the elements of an array, you usually want to separate them, often with commas or vertical lines, like this:

32 | 54 | 67.5 | 29 | 35

Note that there is one fewer separator than there are numbers. Print the separator before each element in the sequence *except the initial one* (with index 0) like this:

```
for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++)
{
    if (i > 0)
    {
        System.out.print(" | ");
    }
    System.out.print(values[i]);
}
```



To print five elements, you need four separators.

If you want comma separators, you can use the `Arrays.toString` method. (You'll need to import `java.util.Arrays`.) The expression

`Arrays.toString(values)`

returns a string describing the contents of the array `values` in the form

[32, 54, 67.5, 29, 35]

The elements are surrounded by a pair of brackets and separated by commas. This method can be convenient for debugging:

```
System.out.println("values=" + Arrays.toString(values));
```

### 7.3.5 Linear Search



To search for a specific element, visit the elements and stop when you encounter the match.

A linear search inspects elements in sequence until a match is found.

You often need to search for the position of a specific element in an array so that you can replace or remove it. Visit all elements until you have found a match or you have come to the end of the array. Here we search for the position of the first element in an array that is equal to 100:

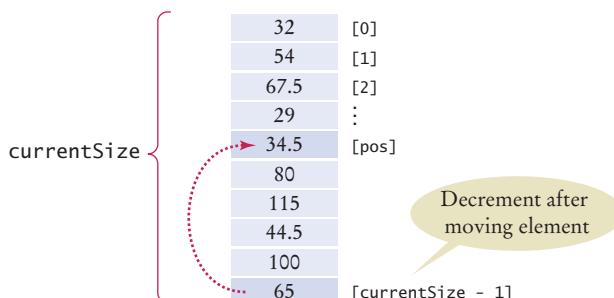
```
int searchedValue = 100;
int pos = 0;
boolean found = false;
while (pos < values.length && !found)
{
    if (values[pos] == searchedValue)
    {
        found = true;
    }
    else
    {
        pos++;
    }
}
if (found) { System.out.println("Found at position: " + pos); }
else { System.out.println("Not found"); }
```

This algorithm is called **linear search** or *sequential search* because you inspect the elements in sequence. If the array is sorted, you can use the more efficient **binary search** algorithm. We discuss binary search in Chapter 14.

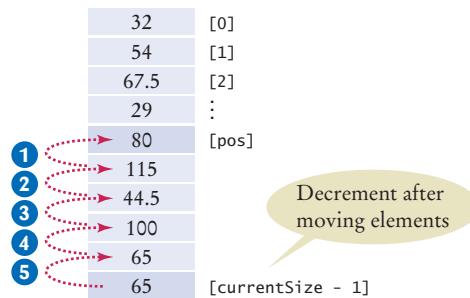
### 7.3.6 Removing an Element

Suppose you want to remove the element with index `pos` from the array `values`. As explained in Section 7.1.4, you need a companion variable for tracking the number of elements in the array. In this example, we use a companion variable called `currentSize`.

If the elements in the array are not in any particular order, simply overwrite the element to be removed with the *last* element of the array, then decrement the `currentSize` variable. (See Figure 6.)



**Figure 6**  
Removing an Element in an Unordered Array



**Figure 7**  
Removing an Element in an Ordered Array

```
values[pos] = values[currentSize - 1];
currentSize--;
```



The situation is more complex if the order of the elements matters. Then you must move all elements following the element to be removed to a lower index, and then decrement the variable holding the size of the array. (See Figure 7.)

```
for (int i = pos + 1; i < currentSize; i++)
{
    values[i - 1] = values[i];
}
currentSize--;
```

### 7.3.7 Inserting an Element



In this section, you will see how to insert an element into an array. Note that you need a companion variable for tracking the array size, as explained in Section 7.1.4.

If the order of the elements does not matter, you can simply insert new elements at the end, incrementing the variable tracking the size.

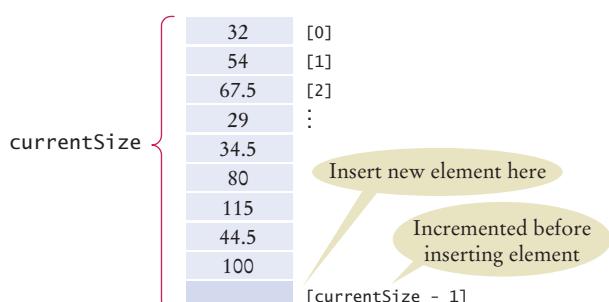
```
if (currentSize < values.length)
{
    currentSize++;
    values[currentSize - 1] = newElement;
}
```

It is more work to insert an element at a particular position in the middle of an array. First, move all elements after the insertion location to a higher index. Then insert the new element (see Figure 9).

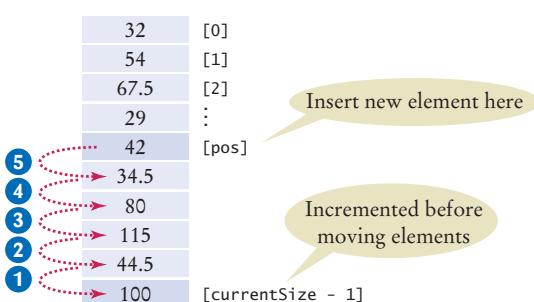
Note the order of the movement: When you remove an element, you first move the next element to a lower index, then the one after that, until you finally get to the end of the array. When you insert an element, you start at the end of the array, move that element to a higher index, then move the one before that, and so on until you finally get to the insertion location.

```
if (currentSize < values.length)
{
    currentSize++;
    for (int i = currentSize - 1; i > pos; i--)
    {
        values[i] = values[i - 1];
    }
    values[pos] = newElement;
}
```

Before inserting  
an element, move  
elements to the end  
of the array *starting  
with the last one*.



**Figure 8**  
Inserting an Element in an Unordered Array



**Figure 9**  
Inserting an Element in an Ordered Array

### 7.3.8 Swapping Elements

You often need to swap elements of an array. For example, you can sort an array by repeatedly swapping elements that are not in order.

Consider the task of swapping the elements at positions  $i$  and  $j$  of an array `values`. We'd like to set `values[i]` to `values[j]`. But that overwrites the value that is currently stored in `values[i]`, so we want to save that first:

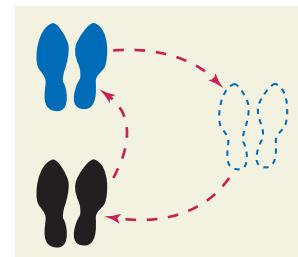
Use a temporary variable when swapping two elements.

```
double temp = values[i];
values[i] = values[j];
```

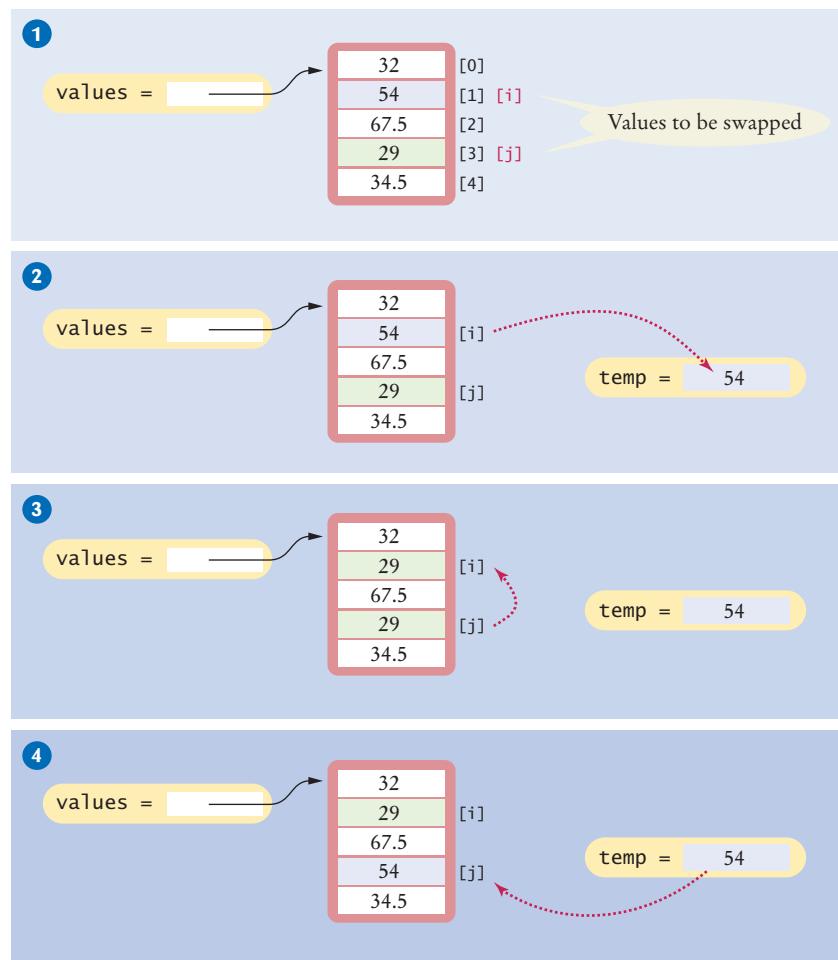
Now we can set `values[j]` to the saved value.

```
values[j] = temp;
```

Figure 10 shows the process.



*To swap two elements, you need a temporary variable.*



**Figure 10** Swapping Array Elements

### 7.3.9 Copying Arrays

Array variables do not themselves hold array elements. They hold a reference to the actual array. If you copy the reference, you get another reference to the same array (see Figure 11):

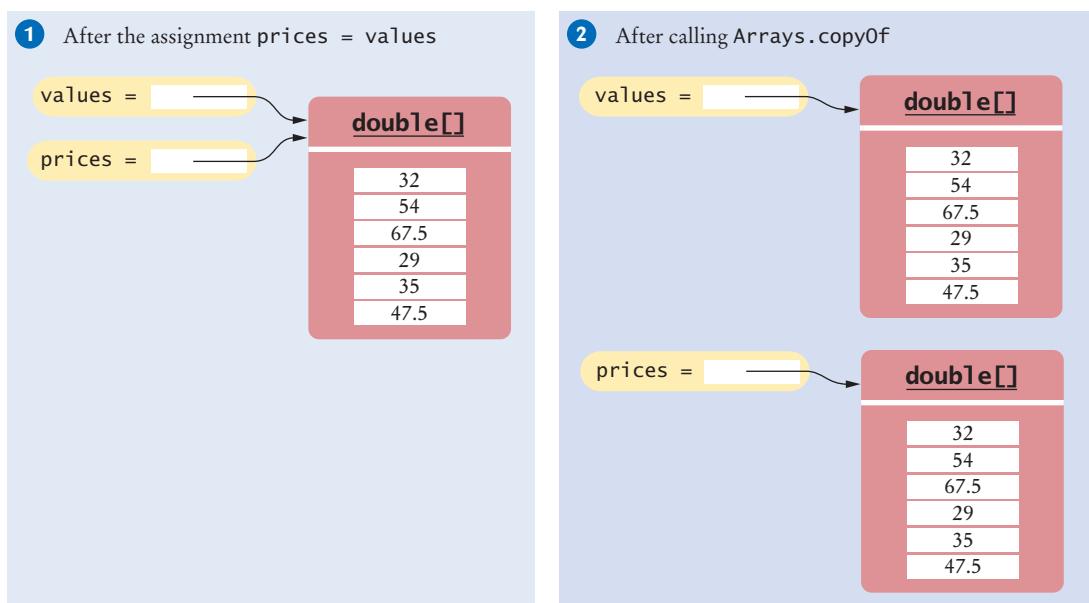
```
double[] values = new double[6];
. . . // Fill array
double[] prices = values; ①
```

Use the `Arrays.copyOf` method to copy the elements of an array into a new array.

If you want to make a true copy of an array, call the `Arrays.copyOf` method (as shown in Figure 11).

```
double[] prices = Arrays.copyOf(values, values.length); ②
```

The call `Arrays.copyOf(values, n)` allocates an array of length  $n$ , copies the first  $n$  elements of `values` (or the entire `values` array if  $n > \text{values.length}$ ) into it, and returns the new array.



**Figure 11** Copying an Array Reference versus Copying an Array

In order to use the `Arrays` class, you need to add the following statement to the top of your program:

```
import java.util.Arrays;
```

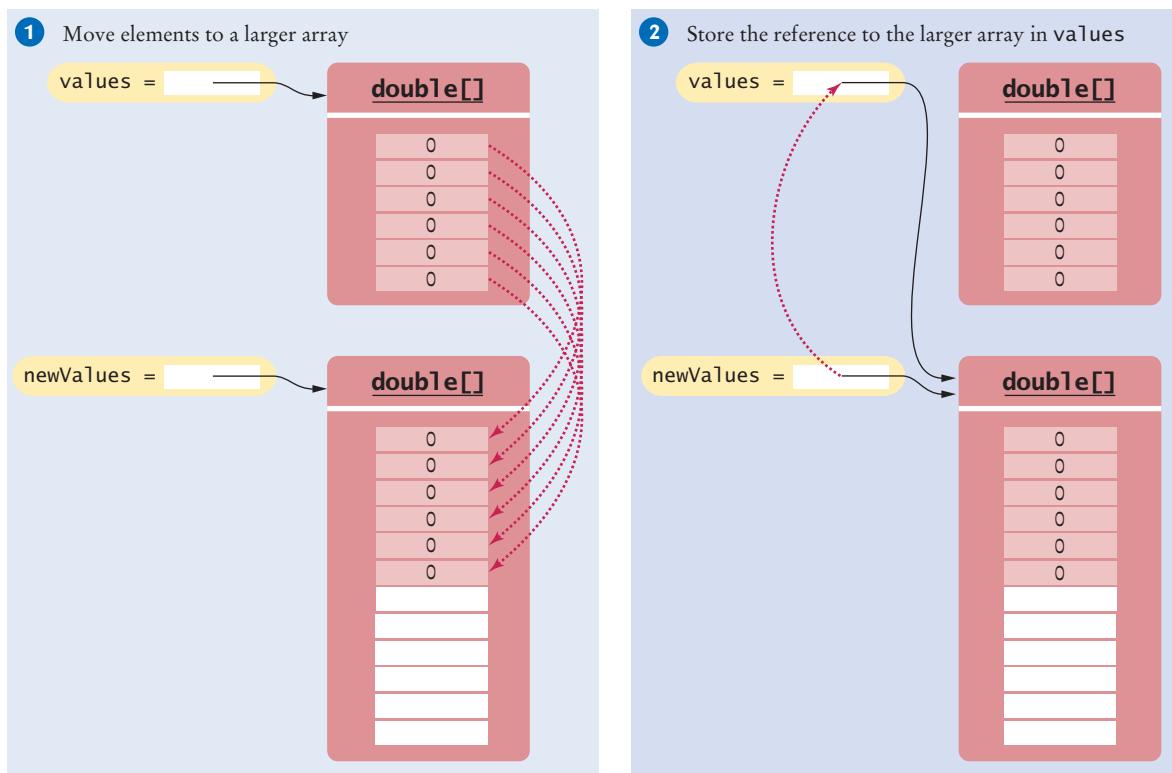
Another use for `Arrays.copyOf` is to grow an array that has run out of space. The following statements have the effect of doubling the length of an array (see Figure 12):

```
double[] newValues = Arrays.copyOf(values, 2 * values.length); ①
values = newValues; ②
```

The `copyOf` method was added in Java 6. If you use Java 5, replace

```
double[] newValues = Arrays.copyOf(values, n)
```

with

**Figure 12** Growing an Array

```
double[] newValues = new double[n];
for (int i = 0; i < n && i < values.length; i++)
{
    newValues[i] = values[i];
```

### 7.3.10 Reading Input

If you know how many inputs the user will supply, it is simple to place them into an array:

```
double[] inputs = new double[NUMBER_OF_INPUTS];
for (i = 0; i < inputs.length; i++)
{
    inputs[i] = in.nextDouble();
```

However, this technique does not work if you need to read a sequence of arbitrary length. In that case, add the inputs to an array until the end of the input has been reached.

```
int currentSize = 0;
while (in.hasNextDouble() && currentSize < inputs.length)
{
    inputs[currentSize] = in.nextDouble();
    currentSize++;
}
```

Now `inputs` is a partially filled array, and the companion variable `currentSize` is set to the number of inputs.

However, this loop silently throws away inputs that don't fit into the array. A better approach is to grow the array to hold all inputs.

```
double[] inputs = new double[INITIAL_SIZE];
int currentSize = 0;
while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    // Grow the array if it has been completely filled
    if (currentSize >= inputs.length)
    {
        inputs = Arrays.copyOf(inputs, 2 * inputs.length); // Grow the inputs array
    }

    inputs[currentSize] = in.nextDouble();
    currentSize++;
}
```

When you are done, you can discard any excess (unfilled) elements:

```
inputs = Arrays.copyOf(inputs, currentSize);
```

The following program puts these algorithms to work, solving the task that we set ourselves at the beginning of this chapter: to mark the largest value in an input sequence.

### **section\_3/LargestInArray.java**

```
1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 /**
4     This program reads a sequence of values and prints them, marking the largest value.
5 */
6 public class LargestInArray
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10         final int LENGTH = 100;
11         double[] values = new double[LENGTH];
12         int currentSize = 0;
13
14         // Read inputs
15
16         System.out.println("Please enter values, Q to quit:");
17         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
18         while (in.hasNextDouble() && currentSize < values.length)
19         {
20             values[currentSize] = in.nextDouble();
21             currentSize++;
22         }
23
24         // Find the largest value
25
26         double largest = values[0];
27         for (int i = 1; i < currentSize; i++)
28         {
29             if (values[i] > largest)
30             {
31                 largest = values[i];
32             }
33         }
34 }
```

```

34      // Print all values, marking the largest
35
36
37      for (int i = 0; i < currentSize; i++)
38      {
39          System.out.print(values[i]);
40          if (values[i] == largest)
41          {
42              System.out.print(" <== largest value");
43          }
44          System.out.println();
45      }
46  }
47 }
```

**Program Run**

```

Please enter values, Q to quit:
34.5 80 115 44.5 Q
34.5
80
115 <== largest value
44.5
```

**SELF CHECK**

- 13.** Given these inputs, what is the output of the LargestInArray program?  
20 10 20 Q
- 14.** Write a loop that counts how many elements in an array are equal to zero.
- 15.** Consider the algorithm to find the largest element in an array. Why don't we initialize largest and i with zero, like this?

```

double largest = 0;
for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++)
{
    if (values[i] > largest)
    {
        largest = values[i];
    }
}
```

- 16.** When printing separators, we skipped the separator before the initial element. Rewrite the loop so that the separator is printed *after* each element, except for the last element.
- 17.** What is wrong with these statements for printing an array with separators?

```

System.out.print(values[0]);
for (int i = 1; i < values.length; i++)
{
    System.out.print(", " + values[i]);
}
```

- 18.** When finding the position of a match, we used a `while` loop, not a `for` loop. What is wrong with using this loop instead?

```

for (pos = 0; pos < values.length && !found; pos++)
{
    if (values[pos] > 100)
    {
        found = true;
    }
}
```

```
}
```

- 19.** When inserting an element into an array, we moved the elements with larger index values, starting at the end of the array. Why is it wrong to start at the insertion location, like this?

```
for (int i = pos; i < currentSize - 1; i++)
{
    values[i + 1] = values[i];
}
```

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R7.15, R7.18, E7.8.

### Common Error 7.3



### Underestimating the Size of a Data Set

Programmers commonly underestimate the amount of input data that a user will pour into an unsuspecting program. Suppose you write a program to search for text in a file. You store each line in a string, and keep an array of strings. How big do you make the array? Surely nobody is going to challenge your program with an input that is more than 100 lines. Really? It is very easy to feed in the entire text of *Alice in Wonderland* or *War and Peace* (which are available on the Internet). All of a sudden, your program has to deal with tens or hundreds of thousands of lines. You either need to allow for large inputs or politely reject the excess input.

### Special Topic 7.2



### Sorting with the Java Library

Sorting an array efficiently is not an easy task. You will learn in Chapter 14 how to implement efficient sorting algorithms. Fortunately, the Java library provides an efficient `sort` method.

To sort an array `values`, call

```
Arrays.sort(values);
```

If the array is partially filled, call

```
Arrays.sort(values, 0, currentSize);
```



## 7.4 Problem Solving: Adapting Algorithms

By combining fundamental algorithms, you can solve complex programming tasks.

In Section 7.3, you were introduced to a number of fundamental array algorithms. These algorithms form the building blocks for many programs that process arrays. In general, it is a good problem-solving strategy to have a repertoire of fundamental algorithms that you can combine and adapt.

Consider this example problem: You are given the quiz scores of a student. You are to compute the final quiz score, which is the sum of all scores after dropping the lowest one. For example, if the scores are

8 7 8.5 9.5 7 4 10

then the final score is 50.

We do not have a ready-made algorithm for this situation. Instead, consider which algorithms may be related. These include:

- Calculating the sum (Section 7.3.2)
- Finding the minimum value (Section 7.3.3)
- Removing an element (Section 7.3.6)

We can formulate a plan of attack that combines these algorithms:

**Find the minimum.**

**Remove it from the array.**

**Calculate the sum.**

Let's try it out with our example. The minimum of

| [0] | [1] | [2] | [3] | [4] | [5] | [6] |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 8   | 7   | 8.5 | 9.5 | 7   | 4   | 10  |

is 4. How do we remove it?

Now we have a problem. The removal algorithm in Section 7.3.6 locates the element to be removed by using the *position* of the element, not the value.

But we have another algorithm for that:

- Linear search (Section 7.3.5)

We need to fix our plan of attack:

**Find the minimum value.**

**Find its position.**

**Remove that position from the array.**

**Calculate the sum.**

Will it work? Let's continue with our example.

We found a minimum value of 4. Linear search tells us that the value 4 occurs at position 5.

| [0] | [1] | [2] | [3] | [4] | [5] | [6] |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 8   | 7   | 8.5 | 9.5 | 7   | 4   | 10  |

We remove it:

| [0] | [1] | [2] | [3] | [4] | [5] |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 8   | 7   | 8.5 | 9.5 | 7   | 10  |

Finally, we compute the sum:  $8 + 7 + 8.5 + 9.5 + 7 + 10 = 50$ .

This walkthrough demonstrates that our strategy works.

Can we do better? It seems a bit inefficient to find the minimum and then make another pass through the array to obtain its position.

We can adapt the algorithm for finding the minimum to yield the position of the minimum. Here is the original algorithm:

```
double smallest = values[0];
for (int i = 1; i < values.length; i++)
{
    if (values[i] < smallest)
    {
        smallest = values[i];
    }
}
```

You should be familiar with the implementation of fundamental algorithms so that you can adapt them.

}

When we find the smallest value, we also want to update the position:

```
if (values[i] < smallest)
{
    smallest = values[i];
    smallestPosition = i;
}
```

In fact, then there is no reason to keep track of the smallest value any longer. It is simply `values[smallestPosition]`. With this insight, we can adapt the algorithm as follows:

```
int smallestPosition = 0;
for (int i = 1; i < values.length; i++)
{
    if (values[i] < values[smallestPosition])
    {
        smallestPosition = i;
    }
}
```

With this adaptation, our problem is solved with the following strategy:

- Find the position of the minimum.**
- Remove it from the array.**
- Calculate the sum.**

The next section shows you a technique for discovering a new algorithm when none of the fundamental algorithms can be adapted to a task.

### SELF CHECK



20. Section 7.3.6 has two algorithms for removing an element. Which of the two should be used to solve the task described in this section?
21. It isn't actually necessary to *remove* the minimum in order to compute the total score. Describe an alternative.
22. How can you print the number of positive and negative values in a given array, using one or more of the algorithms in Section 6.7?
23. How can you print all positive values in an array, separated by commas?
24. Consider the following algorithm for collecting all matches in an array:

```
int matchesSize = 0;
for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++)
{
    if (values[i] fulfills the condition)
    {
        matches[matchesSize] = values[i];
        matchesSize++;
    }
}
```

How can this algorithm help you with Self Check 23?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R7.24, R7.25.



### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that computes the score using the adapted algorithm for finding the minimum.

**HOW TO 7.1****Working with Arrays**

In many data processing situations, you need to process a sequence of values. This How To walks you through the steps for storing input values in an array and carrying out computations with the array elements.

**Problem Statement** Consider again the problem from Section 7.4: A final quiz score is computed by adding all the scores, except for the lowest one. For example, if the scores are

8 7 8.5 9.5 7 5 10

then the final score is 50.



**Step 1** Decompose your task into steps.

You will usually want to break down your task into multiple steps, such as

- Reading the data into an array.
- Processing the data in one or more steps.
- Displaying the results.

When deciding how to process the data, you should be familiar with the array algorithms in Section 7.3. Most processing tasks can be solved by using one or more of these algorithms.

In our sample problem, we will want to read the data. Then we will remove the minimum and compute the total. For example, if the input is 8 7 8.5 9.5 7 5 10, we will remove the minimum of 5, yielding 8 7 8.5 9.5 7 10. The sum of those values is the final score of 50.

Thus, we have identified three steps:

- Read inputs.**
- Remove the minimum.**
- Calculate the sum.**

**Step 2** Determine which algorithm(s) you need.

Sometimes, a step corresponds to exactly one of the basic array algorithms in Section 7.3. That is the case with calculating the sum (Section 7.3.2) and reading the inputs (Section 7.3.10). At other times, you need to combine several algorithms. To remove the minimum value, you can find the minimum value (Section 7.3.3), find its position (Section 7.3.5), and remove the element at that position (Section 7.3.6).

We have now refined our plan as follows:

- Read inputs.**
- Find the minimum.**
- Find its position.**
- Remove the minimum.**
- Calculate the sum.**

This plan will work—see Section 7.4. But here is an alternate approach. It is easy to compute the sum and subtract the minimum. Then we don't have to find its position. The revised plan is

- Read inputs.**
- Find the minimum.**
- Calculate the sum.**
- Subtract the minimum.**

**Step 3** Use classes and methods to structure the program.

Even though it may be possible to put all steps into the `main` method, this is rarely a good idea. It is better to carry out each processing step in a separate method. It is also a good idea to come up with a class that is responsible for collecting and processing the data.

In our example, let's provide a class `Student`. A student has an array of scores.

```
public class Student
{
    private double[] scores;
    private double scoresSize;
    ...
    public Student(int capacity) { . . . }
    public boolean addScore(double score) { . . . }
    public double finalScore() { . . . }
}
```

A second class, `ScoreAnalyzer`, is responsible for reading the user input and displaying the result. Its `main` method simply calls the `Student` methods:

```
Student fred = new Student(100);
System.out.println("Please enter values, Q to quit:");
while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    if (!fred.addScore(in.nextDouble()))
    {
        System.out.println("Too many scores.");
        return;
    }
}
System.out.println("Final score: " + fred.finalScore());
```

Now the `finalScore` method must do the heavy lifting. It too should not have to do all the work. Instead, we will supply helper methods

```
public double sum()
public double minimum()
```

These methods simply implement the algorithms in Sections 7.3.2 and 7.3.3.

Then the `finalScore` method becomes

```
public double finalScore()
{
    if (scoresSize == 0)
    {
        return 0;
    }
    else if (scores.size() == 1)
    {
        return scores[0];
    }
    else
    {
        return sum() - minimum();
    }
}
```

**Step 4** Assemble and test the program.

Place your methods into a class. Review your code and check that you handle both normal and exceptional situations. What happens with an empty array? One that contains a single element? When no match is found? When there are multiple matches? Consider these boundary conditions and make sure that your program works correctly.

In our example, it is impossible to compute the minimum if the array is empty. In that case, we should terminate the program with an error message *before* attempting to call the `minimum` method.

What if the minimum value occurs more than once? That means that a student had more than one test with the same low score. We subtract only one of the occurrences of that low score, and that is the desired behavior.

The following table shows test cases and their expected output:

| Test Case          | Expected Output | Comment                                               |
|--------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 7 8.5 9.5 7 5 10 | 50              | See Step 1.                                           |
| 8 7 7 9            | 24              | Only one instance of the low score should be removed. |
| 8                  | 0               | After removing the low score, no score remains.       |
| (no inputs)        | Error           | That is not a legal input.                            |

The complete program is in the `how_to_1` folder of your companion code.



### WORKED EXAMPLE 7.1

#### Rolling the Dice

Learn how to analyze a set of die tosses to see whether the die is “fair”. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download the file for Worked Example 7.1.



## 7.5 Problem Solving: Discovering Algorithms by Manipulating Physical Objects

In Section 7.4, you saw how to solve a problem by combining and adapting known algorithms. But what do you do when none of the standard algorithms is sufficient for your task? In this section, you will learn a technique for discovering algorithms by manipulating physical objects.

Consider the following task: You are given an array whose size is an even number, and you are to switch the first and the second half. For example, if the array contains the eight numbers

9 13 21 4 11 7 1 3



*Manipulating physical objects can give you ideas for discovering algorithms.*

then you should change it to

11 7 1 3 9 13 21 4

Many students find it quite challenging to come up with an algorithm. They may know that a loop is required, and they may realize that elements should be inserted (Section 7.3.7) or swapped (Section 7.3.8), but they do not have sufficient intuition to draw diagrams, describe an algorithm, or write down pseudocode.

One useful technique for discovering an algorithm is to manipulate physical objects. Start by lining up some objects to denote an array. Coins, playing cards, or small toys are good choices.

Here we arrange eight coins:



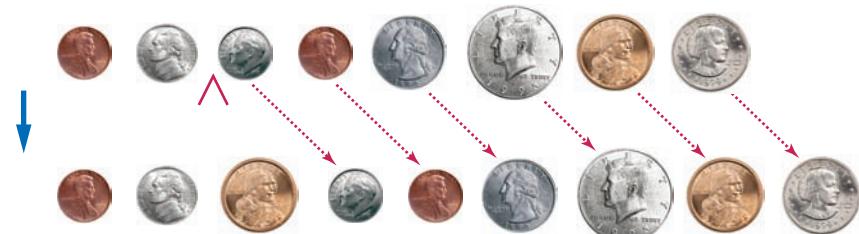
Now let's step back and see what we can do to change the order of the coins. We can remove a coin (Section 7.3.6):

*Visualizing the removal of an array element*



We can insert a coin (Section 7.3.7):

*Visualizing the insertion of an array element*



Or we can swap two coins (Section 7.3.8).

*Visualizing the swapping of two array elements*



Go ahead—line up some coins and try out these three operations right now so that you get a feel for them.

Use a sequence of coins, playing cards, or toys to visualize an array of values.

Now how does that help us with our problem, switching the first and the second half of the array?

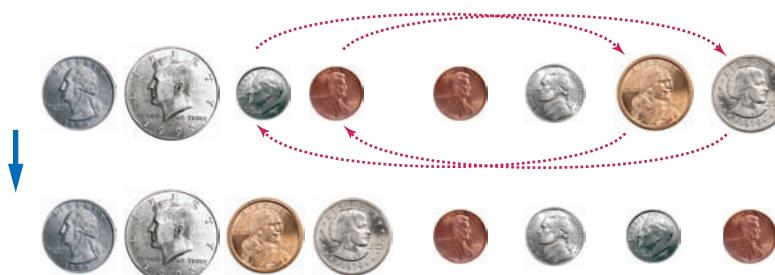
Let's put the first coin into place, by swapping it with the fifth coin. However, as Java programmers, we will say that we swap the coins in positions 0 and 4:



Next, we swap the coins in positions 1 and 5:



Two more swaps, and we are done:



Now an algorithm is becoming apparent:

```
i = 0
j = ... (we'll think about that in a minute)
While (don't know yet)
  Swap elements at positions i and j
  i++
  j++
```

Where does the variable *j* start? When we have eight coins, the coin at position zero is moved to position 4. In general, it is moved to the middle of the array, or to position *size / 2*.

And how many iterations do we make? We need to swap all coins in the first half. That is, we need to swap *size / 2* coins.

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that implements the algorithm that switches the first and second halves of an array.

You can use paper clips as position markers or counters.

The pseudocode is

```
i = 0
j = size / 2
While (i < size / 2)
    Swap elements at positions i and j
    i++
    j++
```

It is a good idea to make a walkthrough of the pseudocode (see Section 6.2). You can use paper clips to denote the positions of the variables *i* and *j*. If the walkthrough is successful, then we know that there was no “off-by-one” error in the pseudocode. Self Check 25 asks you to carry out the walkthrough, and Exercise E7.9 asks you to translate the pseudocode to Java. Exercise R7.26 suggests a different algorithm for switching the two halves of an array, by repeatedly removing and inserting coins.

Many people find that the manipulation of physical objects is less intimidating than drawing diagrams or mentally envisioning algorithms. Give it a try when you need to design a new algorithm!

**SELF CHECK**

- 25.** Walk through the algorithm that we developed in this section, using two paper clips to indicate the positions for *i* and *j*. Explain why there are no bounds errors in the pseudocode.
- 26.** Take out some coins and simulate the following pseudocode, using two paper clips to indicate the positions for *i* and *j*.

```
i = 0
j = size - 1
While (i < j)
    Swap elements at positions i and j
    i++
    j--
```

What does the algorithm do?

- 27.** Consider the task of rearranging all elements in an array so that the even numbers come first. Otherwise, the order doesn’t matter. For example, the array

1 4 14 2 1 3 5 6 23

could be rearranged to

4 2 14 6 1 5 3 23 1

Using coins and paperclips, discover an algorithm that solves this task by swapping elements, then describe it in pseudocode.

- 28.** Discover an algorithm for the task of Self Check 27 that uses removal and insertion of elements instead of swapping.
- 29.** Consider the algorithm in Section 6.7.5 that finds the largest element in a sequence of inputs—not the largest element in an array. Why is this algorithm better visualized by picking playing cards from a deck rather than arranging toy soldiers in a sequence?



**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R7.26, R7.27, E7.9.

## 7.6 Two-Dimensional Arrays

It often happens that you want to store collections of values that have a two-dimensional layout. Such data sets commonly occur in financial and scientific applications. An arrangement consisting of rows and columns of values is called a **two-dimensional array**, or a *matrix*.

Let's explore how to store the example data shown in Figure 13: the medal counts of the figure skating competitions at the 2010 Winter Olympics.



|               | Gold | Silver | Bronze |
|---------------|------|--------|--------|
| Canada        | 1    | 0      | 1      |
| China         | 1    | 1      | 0      |
| Germany       | 0    | 0      | 1      |
| Korea         | 1    | 0      | 0      |
| Japan         | 0    | 1      | 1      |
| Russia        | 0    | 1      | 1      |
| United States | 1    | 1      | 0      |

**Figure 13** Figure Skating Medal Counts

### 7.6.1 Declaring Two-Dimensional Arrays

Use a two-dimensional array to store tabular data.

In Java, you obtain a two-dimensional array by supplying the number of rows and columns. For example, `new int[7][3]` is an array with seven rows and three columns. You store a reference to such an array in a variable of type `int[][]`. Here is a complete declaration of a two-dimensional array, suitable for holding our medal count data:

```
final int COUNTRIES = 7;
final int MEDALS = 3;
int[][] counts = new int[COUNTRIES][MEDALS];
```

Alternatively, you can declare and initialize the array by grouping each row:

```
int[][] counts =
{
    { 1, 0, 1 },
    { 1, 1, 0 },
    { 0, 0, 1 },
    { 1, 0, 0 },
    { 0, 1, 1 },
    { 0, 1, 1 },
    { 1, 1, 0 }
};
```

## Syntax 7.3 Two-Dimensional Array Declaration

```

    Name      Element type      Number of rows
double[][] tableEntries = new double[7][3];
   Number of columns
   All values are initialized with 0.

    Name
int[][] data = {
    { 16, 3, 2, 13 },
    { 5, 10, 11, 8 },
    { 9, 6, 7, 12 },
    { 4, 15, 14, 1 },
};
   List of initial values
  
```

As with one-dimensional arrays, you cannot change the size of a two-dimensional array once it has been declared.

### 7.6.2 Accessing Elements

Individual elements in a two-dimensional array are accessed by using two index values, `array[i][j]`.

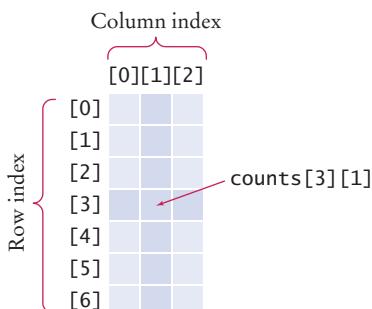
To access a particular element in the two-dimensional array, you need to specify two index values in separate brackets to select the row and column, respectively (see Figure 14):

```
int medalCount = counts[3][1];
```

To access all elements in a two-dimensional array, you use nested loops. For example, the following loop prints all elements of `counts`:

```

for (int i = 0; i < COUNTRIES; i++)
{
    // Process the ith row
    for (int j = 0; j < MEDALS; j++)
    {
        // Process the jth column in the ith row
        System.out.printf("%8d", counts[i][j]);
    }
    System.out.println(); // Start a new line at the end of the row
}
  
```



**Figure 14**  
Accessing an Element in a  
Two-Dimensional Array

In these loops, the number of rows and columns were given as constants. Alternatively, you can use the following expressions:

- `counts.length` is the number of rows.
- `counts[0].length` is the number of columns. (See Special Topic 7.3 for an explanation of this expression.)

With these expressions, the nested loops become

```
for (int i = 0; i < counts.length; i++)
{
    for (int j = 0; j < counts[0].length; j++)
    {
        System.out.printf("%8d", counts[i][j]);
    }
    System.out.println();
}
```

### 7.6.3 Locating Neighboring Elements

Some programs that work with two-dimensional arrays need to locate the elements that are adjacent to an element. This task is particularly common in games. Figure 15 shows how to compute the index values of the neighbors of an element.

For example, the neighbors of `counts[3][1]` to the left and right are `counts[3][0]` and `counts[3][2]`. The neighbors to the top and bottom are `counts[2][1]` and `counts[4][1]`.

You need to be careful about computing neighbors at the boundary of the array. For example, `counts[0][1]` has no neighbor to the top. Consider the task of computing the sum of the neighbors to the top and bottom of the element `count[i][j]`. You need to check whether the element is located at the top or bottom of the array:

```
int total = 0;
if (i > 0) { total = total + counts[i - 1][j]; }
if (i < ROWS - 1) { total = total + counts[i + 1][j]; }
```

|                             |                         |                             |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <code>[i - 1][j - 1]</code> | <code>[i - 1][j]</code> | <code>[i - 1][j + 1]</code> |
| <code>[i][j - 1]</code>     | <code>[i][j]</code>     | <code>[i][j + 1]</code>     |
| <code>[i + 1][j - 1]</code> | <code>[i + 1][j]</code> | <code>[i + 1][j + 1]</code> |

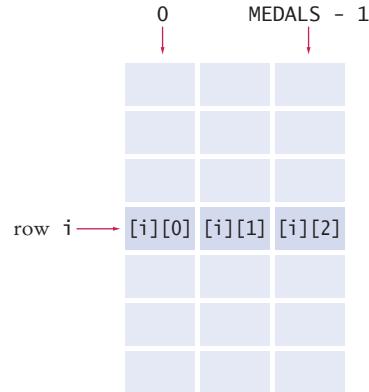
**Figure 15**  
Neighboring Locations in a  
Two-Dimensional Array

### 7.6.4 Accessing Rows and Columns

You often need to access all elements in a row or column, for example to compute the sum of the elements or the largest element in a row or column.

In our sample array, the row totals give us the total number of medals won by a particular country.

Finding the correct index values is a bit tricky, and it is a good idea to make a quick sketch. To compute the total of row  $i$ , we need to visit the following elements:

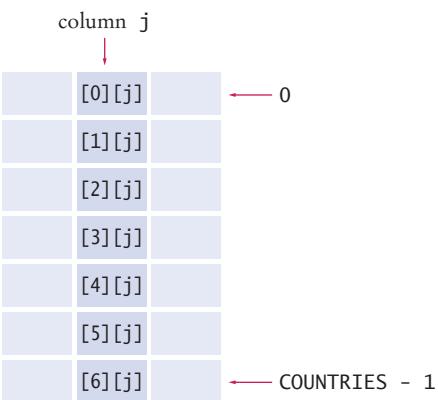


As you can see, we need to compute the sum of  $\text{counts}[i][j]$ , where  $j$  ranges from 0 to  $\text{MEDALS} - 1$ . The following loop computes the total:

```
int total = 0;
for (int j = 0; j < MEDALS; j++)
{
    total = total + counts[i][j];
}
```

Computing column totals is similar. Form the sum of  $\text{counts}[i][j]$ , where  $i$  ranges from 0 to  $\text{COUNTRIES} - 1$ .

```
int total = 0;
for (int i = 0; i < COUNTRIES; i++)
{
    total = total + counts[i][j];
}
```



Working with two-dimensional arrays is illustrated in the following program. The program prints out the medal counts and the row totals.

**section\_6/Medals.java**

```
1  /**
2   * This program prints a table of medal winner counts with row totals.
3   */
4  public class Medals
5  {
6      public static void main(String[] args)
7      {
8          final int COUNTRIES = 7;
9          final int MEDALS = 3;
10
11         String[] countries =
12         {
13             "Canada",
14             "China",
15             "Germany",
16             "Korea",
17             "Japan",
18             "Russia",
19             "United States"
20         };
21
22         int[][] counts =
23         {
24             { 1, 0, 1 },
25             { 1, 1, 0 },
26             { 0, 0, 1 },
27             { 1, 0, 0 },
28             { 0, 1, 1 },
29             { 0, 1, 1 },
30             { 1, 1, 0 }
31         };
32
33         System.out.println("        Country    Gold  Silver Bronze  Total");
34
35         // Print countries, counts, and row totals
36         for (int i = 0; i < COUNTRIES; i++)
37         {
38             // Process the ith row
39             System.out.printf("%15s", countries[i]);
40
41             int total = 0;
42
43             // Print each row element and update the row total
44             for (int j = 0; j < MEDALS; j++)
45             {
46                 System.out.printf("%8d", counts[i][j]);
47                 total = total + counts[i][j];
48             }
49
50             // Display the row total and print a new line
51             System.out.printf("%8d\n", total);
52         }
53     }
54 }
```

**Program Run**

| Country       | Gold | Silver | Bronze | Total |
|---------------|------|--------|--------|-------|
| Canada        | 1    | 0      | 1      | 2     |
| China         | 1    | 1      | 0      | 2     |
| Germany       | 0    | 0      | 1      | 1     |
| Korea         | 1    | 0      | 0      | 1     |
| Japan         | 0    | 1      | 1      | 2     |
| Russia        | 0    | 1      | 1      | 2     |
| United States | 1    | 1      | 0      | 2     |

**SELF CHECK**

30. What results do you get if you total the columns in our sample data?

31. Consider an  $8 \times 8$  array for a board game:

```
int[][] board = new int[8][8];
```

Using two nested loops, initialize the board so that zeroes and ones alternate, as on a checkerboard:

```
0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1  
1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0  
0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1  
.  
1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0
```

*Hint:* Check whether  $i + j$  is even.

32. Declare a two-dimensional array for representing a tic-tac-toe board. The board has three rows and columns and contains strings "x", "o", and " ".
33. Write an assignment statement to place an "x" in the upper-right corner of the tic-tac-toe board in Self Check 32.
34. Which elements are on the diagonal joining the upper-left and the lower-right corners of the tic-tac-toe board in Self Check 32?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R7.28, E7.15, E7.16.

**WORKED EXAMPLE 7.2****A World Population Table**

Learn how to print world population data in a table with row and column headers, and with totals for each of the data columns. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download the file for Worked Example 7.2.

**Special Topic 7.3****Two-Dimensional Arrays with Variable Row Lengths**

When you declare a two-dimensional array with the command

```
int[][] a = new int[3][3];
```

you get a  $3 \times 3$  matrix that can store 9 elements:

```
a[0][0] a[0][1] a[0][2]  
a[1][0] a[1][1] a[1][2]  
a[2][0] a[2][1] a[2][2]
```

In this matrix, all rows have the same length.

In Java it is possible to declare arrays in which the row length varies. For example, you can store an array that has a triangular shape, such as:

```
b[0][0]
b[1][0] b[1][1]
b[2][0] b[2][1] b[2][2]
```

To allocate such an array, you must work harder. First, you allocate space to hold three rows. Indicate that you will manually set each row by leaving the second array index empty:

```
double[][] b = new double[3][];
```

Then allocate each row separately (see Figure 16):

```
for (int i = 0; i < b.length; i++)
{
    b[i] = new double[i + 1];
}
```

You can access each array element as `b[i][j]`. The expression `b[i]` selects the `i`th row, and the `[j]` operator selects the `j`th element in that row.

Note that the number of rows is `b.length`, and the length of the `i`th row is `b[i].length`. For example, the following pair of loops prints a ragged array:

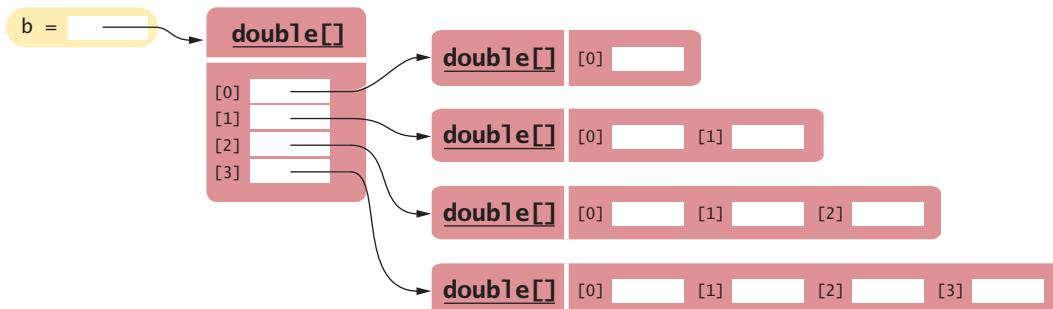
```
for (int i = 0; i < b.length; i++)
{
    for (int j = 0; j < b[i].length; j++)
    {
        System.out.print(b[i][j]);
    }
    System.out.println();
}
```

Alternatively, you can use two enhanced `for` loops:

```
for (double[] row : b)
{
    for (double element : row)
    {
        System.out.print(element);
    }
    System.out.println();
}
```

Naturally, such “ragged” arrays are not very common.

Java implements plain two-dimensional arrays in exactly the same way as ragged arrays: as arrays of one-dimensional arrays. The expression `new int[3][3]` automatically allocates an array of three rows, and three arrays for the rows’ contents.



**Figure 16** A Triangular Array

## Special Topic 7.4

**Multidimensional Arrays**

You can declare arrays with more than two dimensions. For example, here is a three-dimensional array:

```
int[][][] rubiksCube = new int[3][3][3];
```

Each array element is specified by three index values:

```
rubiksCube[i][j][k]
```

## 7.7 Array Lists

An array list stores a sequence of values whose size can change.

When you write a program that collects inputs, you don't always know how many inputs you will have. In such a situation, an **array list** offers two significant advantages:

- Array lists can grow and shrink as needed.
- The `ArrayList` class supplies methods for common tasks, such as inserting and removing elements.

In the following sections, you will learn how to work with array lists.



*An array list expands to hold as many elements as needed.*

### Syntax 7.4 Array Lists

|               |                                                                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Syntax</b> | To construct an array list:<br><code>new ArrayList&lt;typeName&gt;()</code>                                              |
|               | To access an element:<br><code>arraylistReference.get(index)</code><br><code>arraylistReference.set(index, value)</code> |

**Variable type**      **Variable name**      **An array list object of size 0**

```
ArrayList<String> friends = new ArrayList<String>();
```

**Use the  
get and set methods  
to access an element.**

```
friends.add("Cindy");
String name = friends.get(i);
friends.set(i, "Harry");
```

**The add method  
appends an element to the array list,  
increasing its size.**

**The index must be  $\geq 0$  and  $< \text{friends.size}()$ .**

### 7.7.1 Declaring and Using Array Lists

The following statement declares an array list of strings:

```
ArrayList<String> names = new ArrayList<String>();
```

The `ArrayList` class is a generic class:  
`ArrayList<Type>` collects elements of the specified type.

The `ArrayList` class is contained in the `java.util` package. In order to use array lists in your program, you need to use the statement `import java.util.ArrayList`.

The type `ArrayList<String>` denotes an array list of `String` elements. The angle brackets around the `String` type tell you that `String` is a **type parameter**. You can replace `String` with any other class and get a different array list type. For that reason, `ArrayList` is called a **generic class**. However, you cannot use primitive types as type parameters—there is no `ArrayList<int>` or `ArrayList<double>`. Section 7.7.4 shows how you can collect numbers in an array list.

It is a common error to forget the initialization:

```
ArrayList<String> names;
names.add("Harry"); // Error—names not initialized
```

Here is the proper initialization:

```
ArrayList<String> names = new ArrayList<String>();
```

Note the `()` after `new ArrayList<String>` on the right-hand side of the initialization. It indicates that the **constructor** of the `ArrayList<String>` class is being called.

When the `ArrayList<String>` is first constructed, it has size 0. You use the `add` method to add an element to the end of the array list.

```
names.add("Emily"); // Now names has size 1 and element "Emily"
names.add("Bob"); // Now names has size 2 and elements "Emily", "Bob"
names.add("Cindy"); // names has size 3 and elements "Emily", "Bob", and "Cindy"
```

Use the `size` method to obtain the current size of an array list.

The size increases after each call to `add` (see Figure 17). The `size` method yields the current size of the array list.

To obtain an array list element, use the `get` method, not the `[]` operator. As with arrays, index values start at 0. For example, `names.get(2)` retrieves the name with index 2, the third element in the array list:

```
String name = names.get(2);
```

Use the `get` and `set` methods to access an array list element at a given index.

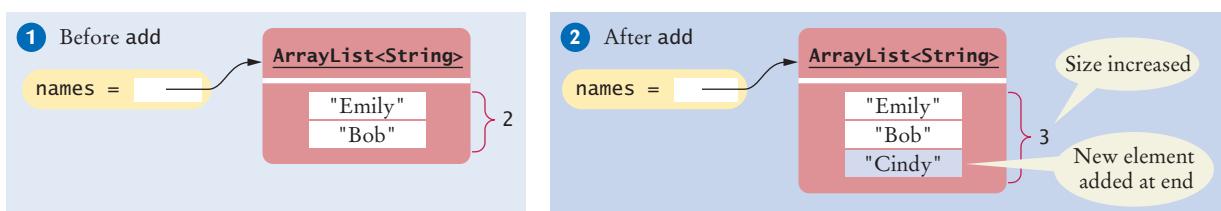
As with arrays, it is an error to access a nonexistent element. A very common bounds error is to use the following:

```
int i = names.size();
name = names.get(i); // Error
```

The last valid index is `names.size() - 1`.

To set an array list element to a new value, use the `set` method:

```
names.set(2, "Carolyn");
```



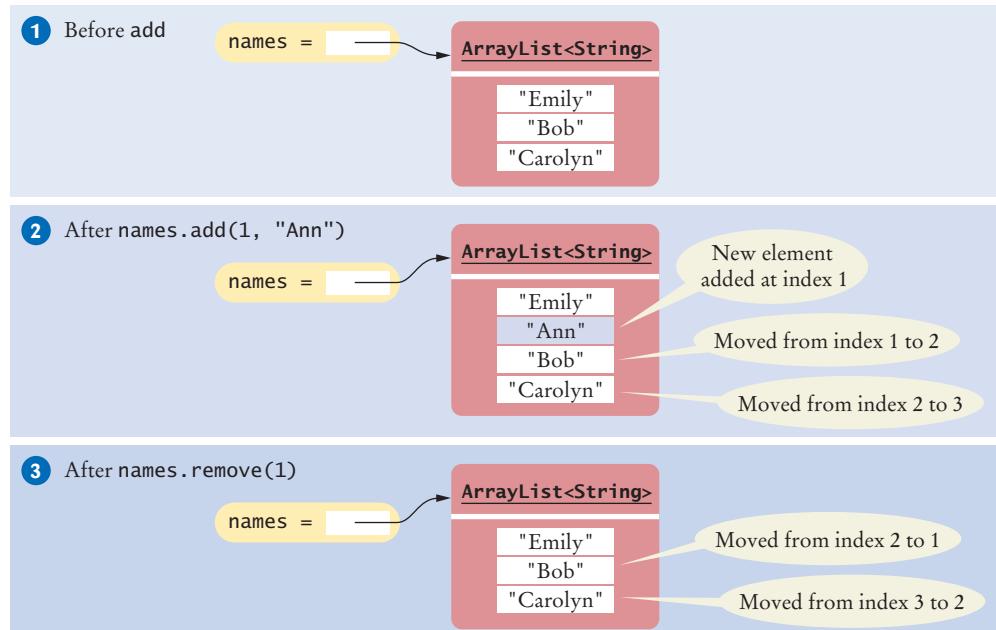
**Figure 17** Adding an Array List Element with `add`

**Figure 18**  
Adding and  
Removing  
Elements in the  
Middle of an  
Array List



An array list has methods for adding and removing elements in the middle.

Use the add and remove methods to add and remove array list elements.



This call sets position 2 of the names array list to "Carolyn", overwriting whatever value was there before.

The set method overwrites existing values. It is different from the add method, which adds a new element to the array list.

You can insert an element in the middle of an array list. For example, the call `names.add(1, "Ann")` adds a new element at position 1 and moves all elements with index 1 or larger by one position. After each call to the add method, the size of the array list increases by 1 (see Figure 18).

Conversely, the remove method removes the element at a given position, moves all elements after the removed element down by one position, and reduces the size of the array list by 1. Part 3 of Figure 18 illustrates the result of `names.remove(1)`.

With an array list, it is very easy to get a quick printout. Simply pass the array list to the `println` method:

```
System.out.println(names); // Prints [Emily, Bob, Carolyn]
```

## 7.7.2 Using the Enhanced for Loop with Array Lists

You can use the enhanced for loop to visit all elements of an array list. For example, the following loop prints all names:

```
ArrayList<String> names = . . . ;
for (String name : names)
{
    System.out.println(name);
}
```

This loop is equivalent to the following basic for loop:

```
for (int i = 0; i < names.size(); i++)
{
```

```

        String name = names.get(i);
        System.out.println(name);
    }
}

```

### 7.7.3 Copying Array Lists

As with arrays, you need to remember that array list variables hold references. Copying the reference yields two references to the same array list (see Figure 19).

```

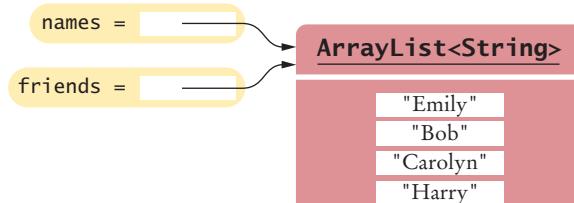
ArrayList<String> friends = names;
friends.add("Harry");

```

Now both `names` and `friends` reference the same array list to which the string "Harry" was added.

If you want to make a copy of an array list, construct the copy and pass the original list into the constructor:

```
ArrayList<String> newNames = new ArrayList<String>(names);
```



**Figure 19**  
Copying an Array List Reference

**Table 2** Working with Array Lists

|                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ArrayList&lt;String&gt; names = new ArrayList&lt;String&gt;();</code>                                                                                 | Constructs an empty array list that can hold strings.                                |
| <code>names.add("Ann");<br/>names.add("Cindy");</code>                                                                                                      | Adds elements to the end.                                                            |
| <code>System.out.println(names);</code>                                                                                                                     | Prints [Ann, Cindy].                                                                 |
| <code>names.add(1, "Bob");</code>                                                                                                                           | Inserts an element at index 1. <code>names</code> is now [Ann, Bob, Cindy].          |
| <code>names.remove(0);</code>                                                                                                                               | Removes the element at index 0. <code>names</code> is now [Bob, Cindy].              |
| <code>names.set(0, "Bill");</code>                                                                                                                          | Replaces an element with a different value. <code>names</code> is now [Bill, Cindy]. |
| <code>String name = names.get(i);</code>                                                                                                                    | Gets an element.                                                                     |
| <code>String last = names.get(names.size() - 1);</code>                                                                                                     | Gets the last element.                                                               |
| <code>ArrayList&lt;Integer&gt; squares = new ArrayList&lt;Integer&gt;();<br/>for (int i = 0; i &lt; 10; i++)<br/>{<br/>    squares.add(i * i);<br/>}</code> | Constructs an array list holding the first ten squares.                              |

### 7.7.4 Wrappers and Auto-boxing



*Like truffles that must be in a wrapper to be sold, a number must be placed in a wrapper to be stored in an array list.*

To collect numbers in array lists, you must use wrapper classes.

In Java, you cannot directly insert primitive type values—numbers, characters, or boolean values—into array lists. For example, you cannot form an `ArrayList<double>`. Instead, you must use one of the **wrapper classes** shown in the following table.

| Primitive Type | Wrapper Class |
|----------------|---------------|
| byte           | Byte          |
| boolean        | Boolean       |
| char           | Character     |
| double         | Double        |
| float          | Float         |
| int            | Integer       |
| long           | Long          |
| short          | Short         |

For example, to collect double values in an array list, you use an `ArrayList<Double>`. Note that the wrapper class names start with uppercase letters, and that two of them differ from the names of the corresponding primitive type: `Integer` and `Character`.

Conversion between primitive types and the corresponding wrapper classes is automatic. This process is called **auto-boxing** (even though *auto-wrapping* would have been more consistent).

For example, if you assign a double value to a `Double` variable, the number is automatically “put into a box” (see Figure 20).

```
Double wrapper = 29.95;
```

Conversely, wrapper values are automatically “unboxed” to primitive types:

```
double x = wrapper;
```

Because boxing and unboxing is automatic, you don’t need to think about it. Simply remember to use the wrapper type when you declare array lists of numbers. From then on, use the primitive type and rely on auto-boxing.

```
ArrayList<Double> values = new ArrayList<Double>();
values.add(29.95);
double x = values.get(0);
```

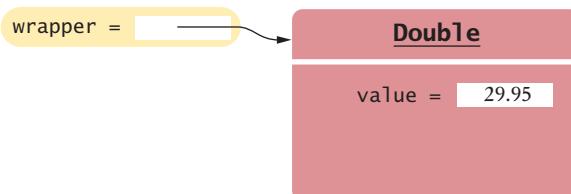


Figure 20 A Wrapper Class Variable

### 7.7.5 Using Array Algorithms with Array Lists

The array algorithms in Section 7.3 can be converted to array lists simply by using the array list methods instead of the array syntax (see Table 3 on page 354). For example, this code snippet finds the largest element in an array:

```
double largest = values[0];
for (int i = 1; i < values.length; i++)
{
    if (values[i] > largest)
    {
        largest = values[i];
    }
}
```

Here is the same algorithm, now using an array list:

```
double largest = values.get(0);
for (int i = 1; i < values.size(); i++)
{
    if (values.get(i) > largest)
    {
        largest = values.get(i);
    }
}
```

### 7.7.6 Storing Input Values in an Array List

When you collect an unknown number of inputs, array lists are *much* easier to use than arrays. Simply read inputs and add them to an array list:

```
ArrayList<Double> inputs = new ArrayList<Double>();
while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    inputs.add(in.nextDouble());
}
```

### 7.7.7 Removing Matches

It is easy to remove elements from an array list, by calling the `remove` method. A common processing task is to remove all elements that match a particular condition. Suppose, for example, that we want to remove all strings of length  $< 4$  from an array list.

Of course, you traverse the array list and look for matching elements:

```
ArrayList<String> words = ...;
for (int i = 0; i < words.size(); i++)
{
    String word = words.get(i);
    if (word.length() < 4)
    {
        Remove the element at index i.
    }
}
```

But there is a subtle problem. After you remove the element, the `for` loop increments `i`, skipping past the *next* element.

Consider this concrete example, where `words` contains the strings "Welcome", "to", "the", "island!". When `i` is 1, we remove the word "to" at index 1. Then `i` is incremented to 2, and the word "the", which is now at position 1, is never examined.

| <code>i</code> | <code>words</code>               |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| 0              | "Welcome", "to", "the", "island" |
| 1              | "Welcome", "the", "island"       |
| 2              |                                  |

We should not increment the index when removing a word. The appropriate pseudo-code is

```
If the element at index i matches the condition
    Remove the element.
Else
    Increment i.
```

Because we don't always increment the index, a for loop is not appropriate for this algorithm. Instead, use a while loop:

```
int i = 0;
while (i < words.size())
{
    String word = words.get(i);
    if (word.length() < 4)
    {
        words.remove(i);
    }
    else
    {
        i++;
    }
}
```

### 7.7.8 Choosing Between Array Lists and Arrays

For most programming tasks, array lists are easier to use than arrays. Array lists can grow and shrink. On the other hand, arrays have a nicer syntax for element access and initialization.

Which of the two should you choose? Here are some recommendations.

- If the size of a collection never changes, use an array.
- If you collect a long sequence of primitive type values and you are concerned about efficiency, use an array.
- Otherwise, use an array list.

The following program shows how to mark the largest value in a sequence of values. This program uses an array list. Note how the program is an improvement over the array version on page 329. This program can process input sequences of arbitrary length.



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a version of the Student class using an array list.

**Table 3** Comparing Array and Array List Operations

| Operation                                  | Arrays                                                                 | Array Lists                                          |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Get an element.                            | <code>x = values[4];</code>                                            | <code>x = values.get(4)</code>                       |
| Replace an element.                        | <code>values[4] = 35;</code>                                           | <code>values.set(4, 35);</code>                      |
| Number of elements.                        | <code>values.length</code>                                             | <code>values.size()</code>                           |
| Number of filled elements.                 | <code>currentSize</code><br>(companion variable, see<br>Section 7.1.4) | <code>values.size()</code>                           |
| Remove an element.                         | See Section 7.3.6                                                      | <code>values.remove(4);</code>                       |
| Add an element, growing<br>the collection. | See Section 7.3.7                                                      | <code>values.add(35);</code>                         |
| Initializing a collection.                 | <code>int[] values = { 1, 4, 9 };</code>                               | No initializer list syntax;<br>call add three times. |

**section\_7/LargestInArrayList.java**

```

1  import java.util.ArrayList;
2  import java.util.Scanner;
3
4  /**
5   * This program reads a sequence of values and prints them, marking the largest value.
6  */
7  public class LargestInArrayList
8  {
9      public static void main(String[] args)
10     {
11         ArrayList<Double> values = new ArrayList<Double>();
12
13         // Read inputs
14
15         System.out.println("Please enter values, Q to quit:");
16         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
17         while (in.hasNextDouble())
18         {
19             values.add(in.nextDouble());
20         }
21
22         // Find the largest value
23
24         double largest = values.get(0);
25         for (int i = 1; i < values.size(); i++)
26         {
27             if (values.get(i) > largest)
28             {
29                 largest = values.get(i);
30             }
31         }
32
33         // Print all values, marking the largest
34

```

```

35     for (double element : values)
36     {
37         System.out.print(element);
38         if (element == largest)
39         {
40             System.out.print(" <= largest value");
41         }
42         System.out.println();
43     }
44 }
45 }
```

### Program Run

```

Please enter values, Q to quit:
35 80 115 44.5 Q
35
80
115 <= largest value
44.5
```



#### SELF CHECK

- 35.** Declare an array list `primes` of integers that contains the first five prime numbers (2, 3, 5, 7, and 11).
- 36.** Given the array list `primes` declared in Self Check 35, write a loop to print its elements in reverse order, starting with the last element.
- 37.** What does the array list `names` contain after the following statements?

```

ArrayList<String> names = new ArrayList<String>;
names.add("Bob");
names.add(0, "Ann");
names.remove(1);
names.add("Cal");
```

- 38.** What is wrong with this code snippet?

```

ArrayList<String> names;
names.add(Bob);
```

- 39.** Consider this method that appends the elements of one array list to another:

```

public void append(ArrayList<String> target, ArrayList<String> source)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < source.size(); i++)
    {
        target.add(source.get(i));
    }
}
```

What are the contents of `names1` and `names2` after these statements?

```

ArrayList<String> names1 = new ArrayList<String>();
names1.add("Emily");
names1.add("Bob");
names1.add("Cindy");
ArrayList<String> names2 = new ArrayList<String>();
names2.add("Dave");
append(names1, names2);
```

- 40.** Suppose you want to store the names of the weekdays. Should you use an array list or an array of seven strings?

- 41.** The ch07/section\_7 directory of your source code contains an alternate implementation of the problem solution in How To 7.1 on page 334. Compare the array and array list implementations. What is the primary advantage of the latter?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R7.10, R7.32, E7.17, E7.19.

### Common Error 7.4



### Length and Size

Unfortunately, the Java syntax for determining the number of elements in an array, an array list, and a string is not at all consistent. It is a common error to confuse these. You just have to remember the correct syntax for every data type.

| Data Type  | Number of Elements |
|------------|--------------------|
| Array      | a.length           |
| Array list | a.size()           |
| String     | a.length()         |

### Special Topic 7.5



### The Diamond Syntax in Java 7

Java 7 introduces a convenient syntax enhancement for declaring array lists and other generic classes. In a statement that declares and constructs an array list, you need not repeat the type parameter in the constructor. That is, you can write

```
ArrayList<String> names = new ArrayList<>();
```

instead of

```
ArrayList<String> names = new ArrayList<String>();
```

This shortcut is called the “diamond syntax” because the empty brackets `<>` look like a diamond shape.

## 7.8 Regression Testing

A test suite is a set of tests for repeated testing.

It is a common and useful practice to make a new test whenever you find a program bug. You can use that test to verify that your bug fix really works. Don’t throw the test away; feed it to the next version after that and all subsequent versions. Such a collection of test cases is called a **test suite**.

You will be surprised how often a bug that you fixed will reappear in a future version. This is a phenomenon known as *cycling*. Sometimes you don’t quite understand the reason for a bug and apply a quick fix that appears to work. Later, you apply a different quick fix that solves a second problem but makes the first problem appear again. Of course, it is always best to think through what really causes a bug and fix the root cause instead of doing a sequence of “Band-Aid” solutions. If you don’t succeed in doing that, however, you at least want to have an honest appraisal of how well the program works. By keeping all old test cases around and testing them against every

Regression testing involves repeating previously run tests to ensure that known failures of prior versions do not appear in new versions of the software.

new version, you get that feedback. The process of checking each version of a program against a test suite is called **regression testing**.

How do you organize a suite of tests? An easy technique is to produce multiple tester classes, such as ScoreTester1, ScoreTester2, and so on, where each program runs with a separate set of test data. For example, here is a tester for the Student class:

```
public class ScoreTester1
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        Student fred = new Student(100);
        fred.addScore(10);
        fred.addScore(20);
        fred.addScore(5);
        System.out.println("Final score: " + fred.finalScore());
        System.out.println("Expected: 30");
    }
}
```

Another useful approach is to provide a generic tester, and feed it inputs from multiple files, as in the following.

### section\_8/ScoreTester.java

```
1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 public class ScoreTester
4 {
5     public static void main(String[] args)
6     {
7         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
8         double expected = in.nextDouble();
9         Student fred = new Student(100);
10        while (in.hasNextDouble())
11        {
12            if (!fred.addScore(in.nextDouble()))
13            {
14                System.out.println("Too many scores.");
15                return;
16            }
17        }
18        System.out.println("Final score: " + fred.finalScore());
19        System.out.println("Expected: " + expected);
20    }
21 }
```

The program reads the expected result and the scores. By running the program with different inputs, we can test different scenarios.

Of course, it would be tedious to type in the input values by hand every time the test is executed. It is much better to save the inputs in a file, such as the following:

### section\_8/input1.txt

```
30
10
20
5
```

When running the program from a shell window, one can link the input file to the input of a program, as if all the characters in the file had actually been typed by a user. Type the following command into a shell window:

```
java ScoreTester < input1.txt
```

The program is executed, but it no longer reads input from the keyboard. Instead, the `System.in` object (and the `Scanner` that reads from `System.in`) gets the input from the file `input1.txt`. We discussed this process, called **input redirection**, in Special Topic 6.2.

The output is still displayed in the console window:

### Program Run

```
Final score: 30
Expected: 30
```

You can also redirect output. To capture the program's output in a file, use the command

```
java ScoreTester < input1.txt > output1.txt
```

This is useful for archiving test cases.

### SELF CHECK



42. Suppose you modified the code for a method. Why do you want to repeat tests that already passed with the previous version of the code?
43. Suppose a customer of your program finds an error. What action should you take beyond fixing the error?
44. Why doesn't the `ScoreTester` program contain prompts for the inputs?

### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R7.34, R7.35.

### Programming Tip 7.3



### Batch Files and Shell Scripts

If you need to perform the same tasks repeatedly on the command line, then it is worth learning about the automation features offered by your operating system.

Under Windows, you use batch files to execute a number of commands automatically. For example, suppose you need to test a program by running three testers:

```
java ScoreTester1
java ScoreTester < input1.txt
java ScoreTester < input2.txt
```

Then you find a bug, fix it, and run the tests again. Now you need to type the three commands once more. There has to be a better way. Under Windows, put the commands in a text file and call it `test.bat`:

### File `test.bat`

```
1 java ScoreTester1
2 java ScoreTester < input1.txt
3 java ScoreTester < input2.txt
```

Then you just type

```
test.bat
```

and the three commands in the batch file execute automatically.

Batch files are a feature of the operating system, not of Java. On Linux, Mac OS, and UNIX, shell scripts are used for the same purpose. In this simple example, you can execute the commands by typing

```
sh test.bat
```

There are many uses for batch files and shell scripts, and it is well worth it to learn more about their advanced features, such as parameters and loops.



## Computing & Society 7.2 The Therac-25 Incidents

The Therac-25 is a computerized device to deliver radiation treatment to cancer patients (see the figure). Between June 1985 and January 1987, several of these machines delivered serious overdoses to at least six patients, killing some of them and seriously maiming the others.

The machines were controlled by a computer program. Bugs in the program were directly responsible for the overdoses. According to Leveson and Turner ("An Investigation of the Therac-25 Accidents," *IEEE Computer*, July 1993, pp. 18–41), the program was written by a single programmer, who had since left the manufacturing company producing the device and could not be located. None of the company employees interviewed could say anything about the educational level or qualifications of the programmer.

The investigation by the federal Food and Drug Administration (FDA) found that the program was poorly documented and that there was neither a specification document nor a formal test plan. (This should make you think. Do you have a formal test plan for your programs?)

The overdoses were caused by an amateurish design of the software that had to control different devices concurrently, namely the keyboard, the display, the printer, and of course the radiation device itself. Synchronization and data sharing between the tasks were done in an ad hoc way, even though safe multitasking techniques were known at the time. Had the programmer enjoyed a formal education that involved these techniques, or

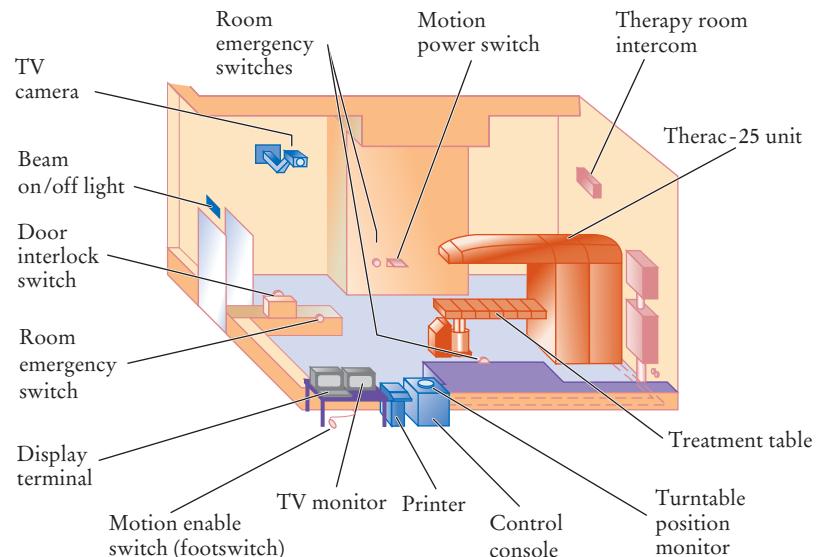
taken the effort to study the literature, a safer machine could have been built. Such a machine would have probably involved a commercial multitasking system, which might have required a more expensive computer.

The same flaws were present in the software controlling the predecessor model, the Therac-20, but that machine had hardware interlocks that mechanically prevented overdoses. The hardware safety devices were removed in the Therac-25 and replaced by checks in the software, presumably to save cost.

Frank Houston of the FDA wrote in 1985: "A significant amount of soft-

ware for life-critical systems comes from small firms, especially in the medical device industry; firms that fit the profile of those resistant to or uninformed of the principles of either system safety or software engineering."

Who is to blame? The programmer? The manager who not only failed to ensure that the programmer was up to the task but also didn't insist on comprehensive testing? The hospitals that installed the device, or the FDA, for not reviewing the design process? Unfortunately, even today there are no firm standards of what constitutes a safe software design process.



Typical Therac-25 Facility

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### Use arrays for collecting values.



- An array collects a sequence of values of the same type.
- Individual elements in an array are accessed by an integer index  $i$ , using the notation `array[i]`.
- An array element can be used like any variable.
- An array index must be at least zero and less than the size of the array.
- A bounds error, which occurs if you supply an invalid array index, can cause your program to terminate.
- Use the expression `array.length` to find the number of elements in an array.
- An array reference specifies the location of an array. Copying the reference yields a second reference to the same array.
- Arrays can occur as method arguments and return values.
- With a partially filled array, keep a companion variable for the current size.
- Avoid parallel arrays by changing them into arrays of objects.



### Know when to use the enhanced for loop.

- You can use the enhanced for loop to visit all elements of an array.
- Use the enhanced for loop if you do not need the index values in the loop body.

### Know and use common array algorithms.



- When separating elements, don't place a separator before the first element.
- A linear search inspects elements in sequence until a match is found.
- Before inserting an element, move elements to the end of the array *starting with the last one*.
- Use a temporary variable when swapping two elements.
- Use the `Arrays.copyOf` method to copy the elements of an array into a new array.

### Combine and adapt algorithms for solving a programming problem.

- By combining fundamental algorithms, you can solve complex programming tasks.
- You should be familiar with the implementation of fundamental algorithms so that you can adapt them.

### Discover algorithms by manipulating physical objects.



- Use a sequence of coins, playing cards, or toys to visualize an array of values.
- You can use paper clips as position markers or counters.

**Use two-dimensional arrays for data that is arranged in rows and columns.**

- Use a two-dimensional array to store tabular data.
- Individual elements in a two-dimensional array are accessed by using two index values, `array[i][j]`.

**Use array lists for managing collections whose size can change.**

- An array list stores a sequence of values whose size can change.
- The `ArrayList` class is a generic class: `ArrayList<Type>` collects elements of the specified type.
- Use the `size` method to obtain the current size of an array list.
- Use the `get` and `set` methods to access an array list element at a given index.
- Use the `add` and `remove` methods to add and remove array list elements.
- To collect numbers in array lists, you must use wrapper classes.

**Describe the process of regression testing.**

- A test suite is a set of tests for repeated testing.
- Regression testing involves repeating previously run tests to ensure that known failures of prior versions do not appear in new versions of the software.

**STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER**

`java.lang.Boolean`  
`java.lang.Double`  
`java.lang.Integer`  
`java.util.Arrays`  
`copyOf`  
`toString`

`java.util.ArrayList<E>`  
`add`  
`get`  
`remove`  
`set`  
`size`

**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

- ■ **R7.1** Write code that fills an array `values` with each set of numbers below.

- |             |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |    |
|-------------|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|----|
| <b>a.</b> 1 | 2 | 3 | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10  |    |
| <b>b.</b> 0 | 2 | 4 | 6  | 8  | 10 | 12 | 14 | 16 | 18  | 20 |
| <b>c.</b> 1 | 4 | 9 | 16 | 25 | 36 | 49 | 64 | 81 | 100 |    |
| <b>d.</b> 0 | 0 | 0 | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0   |    |
| <b>e.</b> 1 | 4 | 9 | 16 | 9  | 7  | 4  | 9  | 11 |     |    |
| <b>f.</b> 0 | 1 | 0 | 1  | 0  | 1  | 0  | 1  | 0  | 1   |    |
| <b>g.</b> 0 | 1 | 2 | 3  | 4  | 0  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4   |    |

**■■ R7.2** Consider the following array:

```
int[] a = { 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, 0 };
```

What is the value of total after the following loops complete?

- a. int total = 0;  
for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++) { total = total + a[i]; }
- b. int total = 0;  
for (int i = 0; i < 10; i = i + 2) { total = total + a[i]; }
- c. int total = 0;  
for (int i = 1; i < 10; i = i + 2) { total = total + a[i]; }
- d. int total = 0;  
for (int i = 2; i <= 10; i++) { total = total + a[i]; }
- e. int total = 0;  
for (int i = 1; i < 10; i = 2 \* i) { total = total + a[i]; }
- f. int total = 0;  
for (int i = 9; i >= 0; i--) { total = total + a[i]; }
- g. int total = 0;  
for (int i = 9; i >= 0; i = i - 2) { total = total + a[i]; }
- h. int total = 0;  
for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++) { total = a[i] - total; }

**■■ R7.3** Consider the following array:

```
int[] a = { 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, 0 };
```

What are the contents of the array a after the following loops complete?

- a. for (int i = 1; i < 10; i++) { a[i] = a[i - 1]; }
- b. for (int i = 9; i > 0; i--) { a[i] = a[i - 1]; }
- c. for (int i = 0; i < 9; i++) { a[i] = a[i + 1]; }
- d. for (int i = 8; i >= 0; i--) { a[i] = a[i + 1]; }
- e. for (int i = 1; i < 10; i++) { a[i] = a[i] + a[i - 1]; }
- f. for (int i = 1; i < 10; i = i + 2) { a[i] = 0; }
- g. for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++) { a[i + 5] = a[i]; }
- h. for (int i = 1; i < 5; i++) { a[i] = a[9 - i]; }

**■■■ R7.4** Write a loop that fills an array values with ten random numbers between 1 and 100. Write code for two nested loops that fill values with ten *different* random numbers between 1 and 100.**■■ R7.5** Write Java code for a loop that simultaneously computes both the maximum and minimum of an array.**■ R7.6** What is wrong with each of the following code segments?

- a. int[] values = new int[10];  
for (int i = 1; i <= 10; i++)  
{  
 values[i] = i \* i;  
}
- b. int[] values;  
for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++)  
{  
 values[i] = i \* i;  
}

- R7.7** Write enhanced for loops for the following tasks.
- Printing all elements of an array in a single row, separated by spaces.
  - Computing the maximum of all elements in an array.
  - Counting how many elements in an array are negative.
- R7.8** Rewrite the following loops without using the enhanced for loop construct. Here, `values` is an array of floating-point numbers.
- `for (double x : values) { total = total + x; }`
  - `for (double x : values) { if (x == target) { return true; } }`
  - `int i = 0;  
for (double x : values) { values[i] = 2 * x; i++; }`
- R7.9** Rewrite the following loops, using the enhanced for loop construct. Here, `values` is an array of floating-point numbers.
- `for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++) { total = total + values[i]; }`
  - `for (int i = 1; i < values.length; i++) { total = total + values[i]; }`
  - `for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++)  
{  
 if (values[i] == target) { return i; }  
}`
- R7.10** What is wrong with each of the following code segments?
- `ArrayList<int> values = new ArrayList<int>();`
  - `ArrayList<Integer> values = new ArrayList();`
  - `ArrayList<Integer> values = new ArrayList<Integer>;`
  - `ArrayList<Integer> values = new ArrayList<Integer>();  
for (int i = 1; i <= 10; i++)  
{  
 values.set(i - 1, i * i);  
}`
  - `ArrayList<Integer> values;  
for (int i = 1; i <= 10; i++)  
{  
 values.add(i * i);  
}`
- R7.11** What is an index of an array? What are the legal index values? What is a bounds error?
- R7.12** Write a program that contains a bounds error. Run the program. What happens on your computer?
- R7.13** Write a loop that reads ten numbers and a second loop that displays them in the opposite order from which they were entered.
- R7.14** For the operations on partially filled arrays below, provide the header of a method. Do not implement the methods.
- Sort the elements in decreasing order.
  - Print all elements, separated by a given string.
  - Count how many elements are less than a given value.
  - Remove all elements that are less than a given value.
  - Place all elements that are less than a given value in another array.

- R7.15 Trace the flow of the loop in Section 7.3.4 with the given example. Show two columns, one with the value of *i* and one with the output.

- R7.16 Consider the following loop for collecting all elements that match a condition; in this case, that the element is larger than 100.

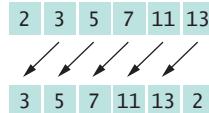
```
ArrayList<Double> matches = new ArrayList<Double>();
for (double element : values)
{
    if (element > 100)
    {
        matches.add(element);
    }
}
```

Trace the flow of the loop, where *values* contains the elements 110 90 100 120 80. Show two columns, for *element* and *matches*.

- R7.17 Trace the flow of the loop in Section 7.3.5, where *values* contains the elements 80 90 100 120 110. Show two columns, for *pos* and *found*. Repeat the trace when *values* contains the elements 80 90 120 70.

- R7.18 Trace the algorithm for removing an element described in Section 7.3.6. Use an array *values* with elements 110 90 100 120 80, and remove the element at index 2.

- R7.19 Give pseudocode for an algorithm that rotates the elements of an array by one position, moving the initial element to the end of the array, like this:



- R7.20 Give pseudocode for an algorithm that removes all negative values from an array, preserving the order of the remaining elements.

- R7.21 Suppose *values* is a *sorted* array of integers. Give pseudocode that describes how a new value can be inserted in its proper position so that the resulting array stays sorted.

- R7.22 A *run* is a sequence of adjacent repeated values. Give pseudocode for computing the length of the longest run in an array. For example, the longest run in the array with elements

1 2 5 5 3 1 2 4 3 2 2 2 2 3 6 5 5 6 3 1

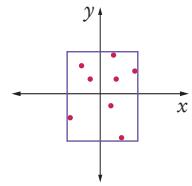
has length 4.

- R7.23 What is wrong with the following method that aims to fill an array with random numbers?

```
public void makeCombination(int[] values, int n)
{
    Random generator = new Random();
    int[] numbers = new int[values.length];
    for (int i = 0; i < numbers.length; i++)
    {
        numbers[i] = generator.nextInt(n);
    }
    values = numbers;
}
```

- R7.24** You are given two arrays denoting  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates of a set of points in the plane. For plotting the point set, we need to know the  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates of the smallest rectangle containing the points.

How can you obtain these values from the fundamental algorithms in Section 7.3?



- R7.25** Solve the problem described in Section 7.4 by sorting the array first. How do you need to modify the algorithm for computing the total?
- R7.26** Solve the task described in Section 7.5 using an algorithm that removes and inserts elements instead of switching them. Write the pseudocode for the algorithm, assuming that methods for removal and insertion exist. Act out the algorithm with a sequence of coins and explain why it is less efficient than the swapping algorithm developed in Section 7.5.
- R7.27** Develop an algorithm for finding the most frequently occurring value in an array of numbers. Use a sequence of coins. Place paper clips below each coin that count how many other coins of the same value are in the sequence. Give the pseudocode for an algorithm that yields the correct answer, and describe how using the coins and paper clips helped you find the algorithm.
- R7.28** Write Java statements for performing the following tasks with an array declared as
- ```
int[][] values = new int[ROWS][COLUMNS];
```
- Fill all entries with 0.
  - Fill elements alternately with 0s and 1s in a checkerboard pattern.
  - Fill only the elements in the top and bottom rows with zeroes.
  - Compute the sum of all elements.
  - Print the array in tabular form.
- R7.29** Write pseudocode for an algorithm that fills the first and last columns as well as the first and last rows of a two-dimensional array of integers with -1.
- R7.30** Section 7.7.7 shows that you must be careful about updating the index value when you remove elements from an array list. Show how you can avoid this problem by traversing the array list backwards.
- R7.31** True or false?
  - a. All elements of an array are of the same type.
  - b. Arrays cannot contain strings as elements.
  - c. Two-dimensional arrays always have the same number of rows and columns.
  - d. Elements of different columns in a two-dimensional array can have different types.
  - e. A method cannot return a two-dimensional array.
  - f. A method cannot change the length of an array argument.
  - g. A method cannot change the number of columns of an argument that is a two-dimensional array.

■ ■ R7.32 How do you perform the following tasks with array lists in Java?

- Test that two array lists contain the same elements in the same order.
- Copy one array list to another.
- Fill an array list with zeroes, overwriting all elements in it.
- Remove all elements from an array list.

■ R7.33 True or false?

- All elements of an array list are of the same type.
- Array list index values must be integers.
- Array lists cannot contain strings as elements.
- Array lists can change their size, getting larger or smaller.
- A method cannot return an array list.
- A method cannot change the size of an array list argument.

■ Testing R7.34 Define the terms regression testing and test suite.

■ ■ Testing R7.35 What is the debugging phenomenon known as *cycling*? What can you do to avoid it?

### PRACTICE EXERCISES

■ ■ E7.1 Write a program that initializes an array with ten random integers and then prints four lines of output, containing

- Every element at an even index.
- Every even element.
- All elements in reverse order.
- Only the first and last element.

■ ■ E7.2 Write array methods that carry out the following tasks for an array of integers by completing the `ArrayMethods` class below. For each method, provide a test program.

```
public class ArrayMethods
{
    private int[] values;
    public ArrayMethods(int[] initialValues) { values = initialValues; }
    public void swapFirstAndLast() { ... }
    public void shiftRight() { ... }
    ...
}
```

- Swap the first and last elements in the array.
- Shift all elements by one to the right and move the last element into the first position. For example, 1 4 9 16 25 would be transformed into 25 1 4 9 16.
- Replace all even elements with 0.
- Replace each element except the first and last by the larger of its two neighbors.
- Remove the middle element if the array length is odd, or the middle two elements if the length is even.
- Move all even elements to the front, otherwise preserving the order of the elements.

- g. Return the second-largest element in the array.
- h. Return true if the array is currently sorted in increasing order.
- i. Return true if the array contains two adjacent duplicate elements.
- j. Return true if the array contains duplicate elements (which need not be adjacent).

- E7.3 Modify the `LargestInArray.java` program in Section 7.3 to mark both the smallest and the largest elements.
- E7.4 Write a method `sumWithoutSmallest` that computes the sum of an array of values, except for the smallest one, in a single loop. In the loop, update the sum and the smallest value. After the loop, return the difference.
- E7.5 Add a method `removeMin` to the `Student` class of Section 7.4 that removes the minimum score without calling other methods.
- E7.6 Compute the *alternating sum* of all elements in an array. For example, if your program reads the input

1 4 9 16 9 7 4 9 11

then it computes

$$1 - 4 + 9 - 16 + 9 - 7 + 4 - 9 + 11 = -2$$

- E7.7 Write a method that reverses the sequence of elements in an array. For example, if you call the method with the array

1 4 9 16 9 7 4 9 11

then the array is changed to

11 9 4 7 9 16 9 4 1

- E7.8 Write a program that produces ten random permutations of the numbers 1 to 10. To generate a random permutation, you need to fill an array with the numbers 1 to 10 so that no two entries of the array have the same contents. You could do it by brute force, by generating random values until you have a value that is not yet in the array. But that is inefficient. Instead, follow this algorithm.

**Make a second array and fill it with the numbers 1 to 10.**

**Repeat 10 times**

**Pick a random element from the second array.**

**Remove it and append it to the permutation array.**

- E7.9 Write a method that implements the algorithm developed in Section 7.5.

- E7.10 Consider the following class:

```
public class Sequence
{
    private int[] values;
    public Sequence(int size) { values = new int[size]; }
    public void set(int i, int n) { values[i] = n; }
}
```

Add a method

```
public boolean equals(Sequence other)
```

that checks whether the two sequences have the same values in the same order.

**•• E7.11** Add a method

```
public boolean sameValues(Sequence other)
```

to the Sequence class of Exercise E7.10 that checks whether two sequences have the same values in some order, ignoring duplicates. For example, the two sequences

1 4 9 16 9 7 4 9 11

and

11 11 7 9 16 4 1

would be considered identical. You will probably need one or more helper methods.

**••• E7.12** Add a method

```
public boolean isPermutationOf(Sequence other)
```

to the Sequence class of Exercise E7.10 that checks whether two sequences have the same values in some order, with the same multiplicities. For example,

1 4 9 16 9 7 4 9 11

is a permutation of

11 1 4 9 16 9 7 4 9

but

1 4 9 16 9 7 4 9 11

is not a permutation of

11 11 7 9 16 4 1 4 9

You will probably need one or more helper methods.

**•• E7.13** Write a program that generates a sequence of 20 random values between 0 and 99 in an array, prints the sequence, sorts it, and prints the sorted sequence. Use the `sort` method from the standard Java library.**•• E7.14** Consider the following class:

```
public class Table
{
    private int[][] values;
    public Table(int rows, int columns) { values = new int[rows][columns]; }
    public void set(int i, int j, int n) { values[i][j] = n; }
}
```

Add a method that computes the average of the neighbors of a table element in the eight directions shown in Figure 15.

```
public double neighborAverage(int row, int column)
```

However, if the element is located at the boundary of the array, only include the neighbors that are in the table. For example, if `row` and `column` are both 0, there are only three neighbors.

**••• E7.15** *Magic squares.* An  $n \times n$  matrix that is filled with the numbers 1, 2, 3, ...,  $n^2$  is a magic square if the sum of the elements in each row, in each column, and in the two diagonals is the same value.

Write a program that reads in 16 values from the keyboard and tests whether they form a magic square when put into a  $4 \times 4$  array.

16	3	2	13
5	10	11	8
9	6	7	12
4	15	14	1

You need to test two features:

1. Does each of the numbers 1, 2, ..., 16 occur in the user input?
  2. When the numbers are put into a square, are the sums of the rows, columns, and diagonals equal to each other?

■■■ **E7.16** Implement the following algorithm to construct magic  $n \times n$  squares; it works only if  $n$  is odd.

```

Set row = n - 1, column = n / 2.
For k = 1 ... n * n
    Place k at [row][column].
    Increment row and column.
    If the row or column is n, replace it with 0.
    If the element at [row][column] has already been filled
        Set row and column to their previous values.
    Decrement row.

```

Here is the  $5 \times 5$  square that you get if you follow this method:

Write a program whose input is the number  $n$  and whose output is the magic square of order  $n$  if  $n$  is odd.

11	18	25	2	9
10	12	19	21	3
4	6	13	20	22
23	5	7	14	16
17	24	1	8	15

■ ■ **E7.17** Write a program that reads a sequence of input values and displays a bar chart of the values, using asterisks, like this:

\*\*\*\*\*  
\*\*\*\*\*  
\*\*\*\*\*  
\*\*\*\*\*  
\*\*\*\*\*

You may assume that all values are positive. First figure out the maximum value. That value's bar should be drawn with 40 asterisks. Shorter bars should use proportionally fewer asterisks.

■■■ **E7.18** Improve the program of Exercise E7.17 to work correctly when the data set contains negative values.

■ ■ **E7.19** Improve the program of Exercise E7.17 by adding captions for each bar. Prompt the user for the captions and data values. The output should look like this:

Egypt \*\*\*\*\*  
France \*\*\*\*\*  
Japan \*\*\*\*\*  
Uruguay \*\*\*\*\*  
Switzerland \*\*\*\*\*

■ E7.20 Consider the following class:

```
public class Sequence
{
    private ArrayList<Integer> values;
    public Sequence() { values = new ArrayList<Integer>(); }
    public void add(int n) { values.add(n); }
    public String toString() { return values.toString(); }
}
```

Add a method

```
public Sequence append(Sequence other)
```

that creates a new sequence, appending this and the other sequence, without modifying either sequence. For example, if a is

1 4 9 16

and b is the sequence

9 7 4 9 11

then the call a.append(b) returns the sequence

1 4 9 16 9 7 4 9 11

without modifying a or b.

**■■ E7.21** Add a method

```
public Sequence merge(Sequence other)
```

to the Sequence class of Exercise E7.20 that merges two sequences, alternating elements from both sequences. If one sequence is shorter than the other, then alternate as long as you can and then append the remaining elements from the longer sequence. For example, if a is

1 4 9 16

and b is

9 7 4 9 11

then a.merge(b) returns the sequence

1 9 4 7 9 4 16 9 11

without modifying a or b.

**■■ E7.22** Add a method

```
public Sequence mergeSorted(Sequence other)
```

to the Sequence class of Exercise E7.20 that merges two sorted sequences, producing a new sorted sequence. Keep an index into each sequence, indicating how much of it has been processed already. Each time, append the smallest unprocessed value from either sequence, then advance the index. For example, if a is

1 4 9 16

and b is

4 7 9 9 11

then a.mergeSorted(b) returns the sequence

1 4 4 7 9 9 9 11 16

If a or b is not sorted, merge the longest prefixes of a and b that are sorted.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- P7.1** A *run* is a sequence of adjacent repeated values. Write a program that generates a sequence of 20 random die tosses in an array and that prints the die values, marking the runs by including them in parentheses, like this:

1 2 (5 5) 3 1 2 4 3 (2 2 2 2) 3 6 (5 5) 6 3 1

Use the following pseudocode:

```

Set a boolean variable inRun to false.
For each valid index i in the array
    If inRun
        If values[i] is different from the preceding value
            Print .
            inRun = false.
    If not inRun
        If values[i] is the same as the following value
            Print .
            inRun = true.
        Print values[i].
    If inRun, print .

```

- P7.2 Write a program that generates a sequence of 20 random die tosses in an array and that prints the die values, marking only the longest run, like this:

1 2 5 5 3 1 2 4 3 (2 2 2 2) 3 6 5 5 6 3 1

If there is more than one run of maximum length, mark the first one.

- P7.3 It is a well-researched fact that men in a restroom generally prefer to maximize their distance from already occupied stalls, by occupying the middle of the longest sequence of unoccupied places.

For example, consider the situation where ten stalls are empty.

The first visitor will occupy a middle position:

----- X -----

The next visitor will be in the middle of the empty area at the left.

--- X --- X -----

Write a program that reads the number of stalls and then prints out diagrams in the format given above when the stalls become filled, one at a time. *Hint:* Use an array of boolean values to indicate whether a stall is occupied.

- P7.4 In this assignment, you will model the game of *Bulgarian Solitaire*. The game starts with 45 cards. (They need not be playing cards. Unmarked index cards work just as well.) Randomly divide them into some number of piles of random size. For example, you might start with piles of size 20, 5, 1, 9, and 10. In each round, you take one card from each pile, forming a new pile with these cards. For example, the sample starting configuration would be transformed into piles of size 19, 4, 8, 9, and 5. The solitaire is over when the piles have size 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9, in some order. (It can be shown that you always end up with such a configuration.)

In your program, produce a random starting configuration and print it. Then keep applying the solitaire step and print the result. Stop when the solitaire final configuration is reached.

- P7.5** A theater seating chart is implemented as a two-dimensional array of ticket prices, like this:

```

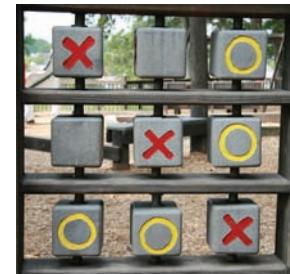
10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10
10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10
10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10
10 10 20 20 20 20 20 20 10 10
10 10 20 20 20 20 20 20 10 10
10 10 20 20 20 20 20 20 10 10
20 20 30 30 40 40 30 30 20 20
20 30 30 40 50 50 40 30 30 20
30 40 50 50 50 50 50 40 30

```



Write a program that prompts users to pick either a seat or a price. Mark sold seats by changing the price to 0. When a user specifies a seat, make sure it is available. When a user specifies a price, find any seat with that price.

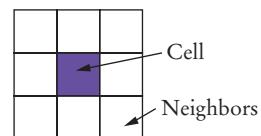
- P7.6** Write a program that plays tic-tac-toe. The tic-tac-toe game is played on a  $3 \times 3$  grid as in the photo at right. The game is played by two players, who take turns. The first player marks moves with a circle, the second with a cross. The player who has formed a horizontal, vertical, or diagonal sequence of three marks wins. Your program should draw the game board, ask the user for the coordinates of the next mark, change the players after every successful move, and pronounce the winner.



- P7.7** In this assignment, you will implement a simulation of a popular casino game usually called video poker. The card deck contains 52 cards, 13 of each suit. At the beginning of the game, the deck is shuffled. You need to devise a fair method for shuffling. (It does not have to be efficient.) The player pays a token for each game. Then the top five cards of the deck are presented to the player. The player can reject none, some, or all of the cards. The rejected cards are replaced from the top of the deck. Now the hand is scored. Your program should pronounce it to be one of the following:

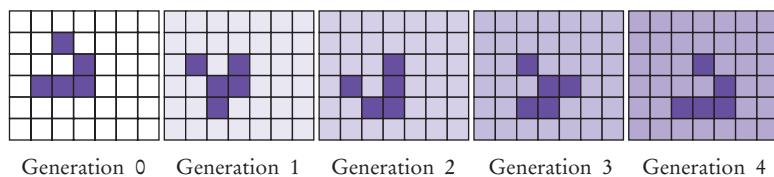
- No pair—The lowest hand, containing five separate cards that do not match up to create any of the hands below.
- One pair—Two cards of the same value, for example two queens. Payout: 1
- Two pairs—Two pairs, for example two queens and two 5's. Payout: 2
- Three of a kind—Three cards of the same value, for example three queens. Payout: 3
- Straight—Five cards with consecutive values, not necessarily of the same suit, such as 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8. The ace can either precede a 2 or follow a king. Payout: 4
- Flush—Five cards, not necessarily in order, of the same suit. Payout: 5
- Full House—Three of a kind and a pair, for example three queens and two 5's. Payout: 6
- Four of a Kind—Four cards of the same value, such as four queens. Payout: 25
- Straight Flush—A straight and a flush: Five cards with consecutive values of the same suit. Payout: 50
- Royal Flush—The best possible hand in poker. A 10, jack, queen, king, and ace, all of the same suit. Payout: 250

**P7.8** *The Game of Life* is a well-known mathematical game that gives rise to amazingly complex behavior, although it can be specified by a few simple rules. (It is not actually a game in the traditional sense, with players competing for a win.) Here are the rules. The game is played on a rectangular board. Each square can be either empty or occupied. At the beginning, you can specify empty and occupied cells in some way; then the game runs automatically. In each *generation*, the next generation is computed. A new cell is born on an empty square if it is surrounded by exactly three occupied neighbor cells. A cell dies of overcrowding if it is surrounded by four or more neighbors, and it dies of loneliness if it is surrounded by zero or one neighbor. A neighbor is an occupant of an adjacent square to the left, right, top, or bottom or in a diagonal direction. Figure 21 shows a cell and its neighbor cells.



**Figure 21** Neighborhood of a Cell

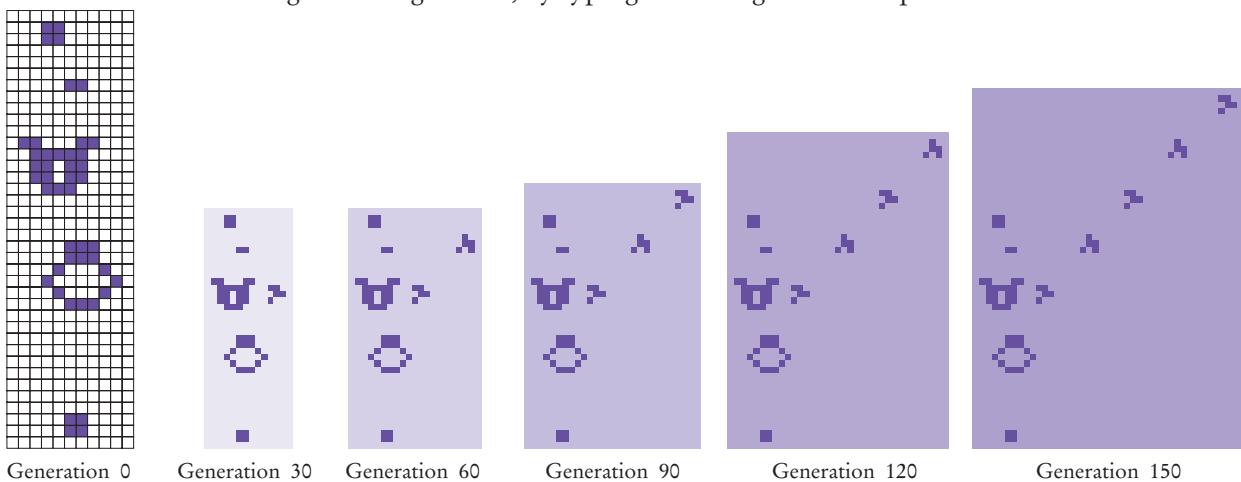
Many configurations show interesting behavior when subjected to these rules. Figure 22 shows a *glider*, observed over five generations. After four generations, it is transformed into the identical shape, but located one square to the right and below.



**Figure 22** Glider

One of the more amazing configurations is the glider gun: a complex collection of cells that, after 30 moves, turns back into itself and a glider (see Figure 23).

Program the game to eliminate the drudgery of computing successive generations by hand. Use a two-dimensional array to store the rectangular configuration. Write a program that shows successive generations of the game. Ask the user to specify the original configuration, by typing in a configuration of spaces and o characters.



**Figure 23** Glider Gun

- Business P7.9** A pet shop wants to give a discount to its clients if they buy one or more pets and at least five other items. The discount is equal to 20 percent of the cost of the other items, but not the pets.

Use a class `Item` to describe an item, with any needed methods and a constructor



```
public Item(double price, boolean isPet, int quantity)
```

An invoice holds a collection of `Item` objects; use an array or array list to store them. In the `Invoice` class, implement methods

```
public void add(Item anItem)
public double getDiscount()
```

Write a program that prompts a cashier to enter each price and quantity, and then a Y for a pet or N for another item. Use a price of -1 as a sentinel. In the loop, call the `add` method; after the loop, call the `getDiscount` method and display the returned value.

- Business P7.10** A supermarket wants to reward its best customer of each day, showing the customer's name on a screen in the supermarket. For that purpose, the store keeps an `ArrayList<Customer>`. In the `Store` class, implement methods

```
public void addSale(String customerName, double amount)
public String nameOfBestCustomer()
```

to record the sale and return the name of the customer with the largest sale.

Write a program that prompts the cashier to enter all prices and names, adds them to a `Store` object, and displays the best customer's name. Use a price of 0 as a sentinel.

- Business P7.11** Improve the program of Exercise P7.10 so that it displays the top customers, that is, the `topN` customers with the largest sales, where `topN` is a value that the user of the program supplies. Implement a method

```
public ArrayList<String> nameOfBestCustomers(int topN)
```

If there were fewer than `topN` customers, include all of them.

- Science P7.12** Sounds can be represented by an array of “sample values” that describe the intensity of the sound at a point in time. The program in `ch07/sound` of your companion code reads a sound file (in WAV format), processes the sample values, and shows the result. Your task is to process the sound by introducing an echo. For each sound value, add the value from 0.2 seconds ago. Scale the result so that no value is larger than 32767.



- Science P7.13** You are given a two-dimensional array of values that give the height of a terrain at different points in a square. Write a constructor

```
public Terrain(double[][] heights)
```

and a method

```
public void printFloodMap(double waterLevel)
```

that prints out a flood map, showing which of the points in the terrain would be flooded if the water level was the given value.

In the flood map, print a \* for each flooded point and a space for each point that is not flooded.

Here is a sample map:

```
* * * * *      * *
* * * * *      * * *
* * * * *      * *
* * * * *      * * *
* * * * *      * * *
* * * * *      * * *
* * * * * * * * * *
* * * * * * * * * *
* * * * * * * * * *
* * * * * * * * * *
* * * * * * * * * *
```



Then write a program that reads one hundred terrain height values and shows how the terrain gets flooded when the water level increases in ten steps from the lowest point in the terrain to the highest.

- Science P7.14** Sample values from an experiment often need to be smoothed out. One simple approach is to replace each value in an array with the average of the value and its two neighboring values (or one neighboring value if it is at either end of the array). Given a class `Data` with instance fields

```
private double[] values;
private double valuesSize;
```

implement a method

```
public void smooth()
```

that carries out this operation. You should not create another array in your solution.

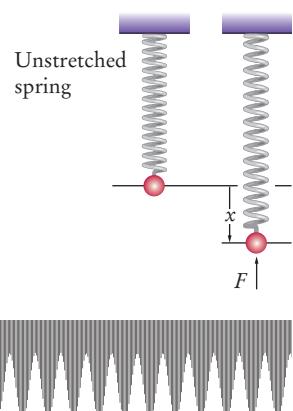
- Science P7.15** Write a program that models the movement of an object with mass  $m$  that is attached to an oscillating spring. When a spring is displaced from its equilibrium position by an amount  $x$ , Hooke's law states that the restoring force is

$$F = -kx$$

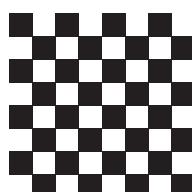
where  $k$  is a constant that depends on the spring. (Use 10 N/m for this simulation.)

Start with a given displacement  $x$  (say, 0.5 meter). Set the initial velocity  $v$  to 0. Compute the acceleration  $a$  from Newton's law ( $F = ma$ ) and Hooke's law, using a mass of 1 kg. Use a small time interval  $\Delta t = 0.01$  second. Update the velocity—it changes by  $a\Delta t$ . Update the displacement—it changes by  $v\Delta t$ .

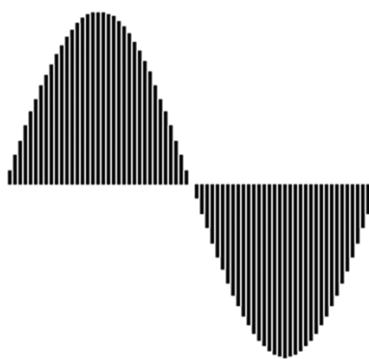
Every ten iterations, plot the spring displacement as a bar, where 1 pixel represents 1 cm, as shown here.



- Graphics P7.16** Generate the image of a checkerboard.



- **Graphics P7.17** Generate the image of a sine wave. Draw a line of pixels for every five degrees.



- **Graphics P7.18** Implement a class `Cloud` that contains an array list of `Point2D.Double` objects. Support methods

```
public void add(Point2D.Double aPoint)
public void draw(Graphics2D g2)
```

Draw each point as a tiny circle. Write a graphical application that draws a cloud of 100 random points.

- **Graphics P7.19** Implement a class `Polygon` that contains an array list of `Point2D.Double` objects. Support methods

```
public void add(Point2D.Double aPoint)
public void draw(Graphics2D g2)
```

Draw the polygon by joining adjacent points with a line, and then closing it up by joining the end and start points. Write a graphical application that draws a square and a pentagon using two `Polygon` objects.

- **Graphics P7.20** Write a class `Chart` with methods

```
public void add(int value)
public void draw(Graphics2D g2)
```

that displays a stick chart of the added values, like this:



You may assume that the values are pixel positions.

- **Graphics P7.21** Write a class `BarChart` with methods

```
public void add(double value)
public void draw(Graphics2D g2)
```

that displays a bar chart of the added values. You may assume that all added values are positive. Stretch the bars so that they fill the entire area of the screen. You must figure out the maximum of the values, then scale each bar.

- **Graphics P7.22** Improve the `BarChart` class of Exercise P7.21 to work correctly when the data contains negative values.

- **Graphics P7.23** Write a class `PieChart` with methods

```
public void add(double value)
public void draw(Graphics2D g2)
```

that displays a pie chart of the added values. Assume that all data values are positive.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. 

```
int[] primes = { 2, 3, 5, 7, 11 };
```
2. 2, 3, 5, 3, 2
3. 3, 4, 6, 8, 12
4. 

```
values[0] = 10;
values[9] = 10; or better:
values[values.length - 1] = 10;
```
5. 

```
String[] words = new String[10];
```
6. 

```
String[] words = { "Yes", "No" };
```
7. No. Because you don't store the values, you need to print them when you read them. But you don't know where to add the `<=` until you have seen all values.
8. 

```
public class Lottery {
    public int[] getCombination(int n) { . . .
    . .
}
```
9. It counts how many elements of `values` are zero.
10. 

```
for (double x : values)
{
    System.out.println(x);
}
```
11. 

```
double product = 1;
for (double f : factors)
{
    product = product * f;
}
```
12. The loop writes a value into `values[i]`. The enhanced `for` loop does not have the index variable `i`.
13. 

```
20 <= largest value
10
20 <= largest value
```
14. 

```
int count = 0;
for (double x : values)
{
    if (x == 0) { count++; }
}
```
15. If all elements of `values` are negative, then the result is incorrectly computed as 0.
16. 

```
for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++)
{
    System.out.print(values[i]);
    if (i < values.length - 1)
    {
        System.out.print(" | ");
    }
}
```

```
}
```

Now you know why we set up the loop the other way.

17. If the array has no elements, then the program terminates with an exception.
  18. If there is a match, then `pos` is incremented before the loop exits.
  19. This loop sets all elements to `values[pos]`.
  20. Use the first algorithm. The order of elements does not matter when computing the sum.
  21. **Find the minimum value.**  
**Calculate the sum.**  
**Subtract the minimum value.**
  22. Use the algorithm for counting matches (Section 6.7.2) twice, once for counting the positive values and once for counting the negative values.
  23. You need to modify the algorithm in Section 7.3.4.
- ```
boolean first = true;
for (int i = 0; i < values.length; i++)
{
    if (values[i] > 0)
    {
        if (first) { first = false; }
        else { System.out.print(", "); }
        System.out.print(values[i]);
    }
}
```
- Note that you can no longer use `i > 0` as the criterion for printing a separator.
24. Use the algorithm to collect all positive elements in an array, then use the algorithm in Section 7.3.4 to print the array of matches.
  25. The paperclip for `i` assumes positions 0, 1, 2, 3. When `i` is incremented to 4, the condition `i < size / 2` becomes false, and the loop ends. Similarly, the paperclip for `j` assumes positions 4, 5, 6, 7, which are the valid positions for the second half of the array.



26. It reverses the elements in the array.

- 27.** Here is one solution. The basic idea is to move all odd elements to the end. Put one paper clip at the beginning of the array and one at the end. If the element at the first paper clip is odd, swap it with the one at the other paper clip and move that paper clip to the left. Otherwise, move the first paper clip to the right. Stop when the two paper clips meet. Here is the pseudocode:

```
i = 0
j = size - 1
While (i < j)
    If (a[i] is odd)
        Swap elements at positions i and j.
        j--
    Else
        i++
```

- 28.** Here is one solution. The idea is to remove all odd elements and move them to the end. The trick is to know when to stop. Nothing is gained by moving odd elements into the area that already contains moved elements, so we want to mark that area with another paper clip.

```
i = 0
moved = size
While (i < moved)
    If (a[i] is odd)
        Remove the element at position i and add it
        at the end.
    moved--
```

- 29.** When you read inputs, you get to see values one at a time, and you can't peek ahead. Picking cards one at a time from a deck of cards simulates this process better than looking at a sequence of items, all of which are revealed.
- 30.** You get the total number of gold, silver, and bronze medals in the competition. In our example, there are four of each.

```
31. for (int i = 0; i < 8; i++)
{
    for (int j = 0; j < 8; j++)
    {
        board[i][j] = (i + j) % 2;
    }
}
```

```
32. String[][] board = new String[3][3];
33. board[0][2] = "x";
34. board[0][0], board[1][1], board[2][2]
```

- 35.**

```
ArrayList<Integer> primes =
    new ArrayList<Integer>();
primes.add(2);
primes.add(3);
primes.add(5);
primes.add(7);
primes.add(11);
```
- 36.**

```
for (int i = primes.size() - 1; i >= 0; i--)
{
    System.out.println(primes.get(i));
}
```
- 37.** "Ann", "Cal"
- 38.** The names variable has not been initialized.
- 39.** names1 contains "Emily", "Bob", "Cindy", "Dave";  
names2 contains "Dave"
- 40.** Because the number of weekdays doesn't change, there is no disadvantage to using an array, and it is easier to initialize:
- ```
String[] weekdayNames = { "Monday", "Tuesday",
    "Wednesday", "Thursday", "Friday",
    "Saturday", "Sunday" };
```
- 41.** Reading inputs into an array list is much easier.
- 42.** It is possible to introduce errors when modifying code.
- 43.** Add a test case to the test suite that verifies that the error is fixed.
- 44.** There is no human user who would see the prompts because input is provided from a file.

# DESIGNING CLASSES

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To learn how to choose appropriate classes for a given problem
- To understand the concept of cohesion
- To minimize dependencies and side effects
- To learn how to find a data representation for a class
- To understand static methods and variables
- To learn about packages
- To learn about unit testing frameworks

## CHAPTER CONTENTS

<b>8.1 DISCOVERING CLASSES</b>	380
<b>8.2 DESIGNING GOOD METHODS</b>	381
<i>Programming Tip 8.1:</i> Consistency	385
<i>Special Topic 8.1:</i> Call by Value and Call by Reference	386
<b>8.3 PROBLEM SOLVING: PATTERNS FOR OBJECT DATA</b>	390
<b>8.4 STATIC VARIABLES AND METHODS</b>	395
<i>Programming Tip 8.2:</i> Minimize the Use of Static Methods	397
<i>Common Error 8.1:</i> Trying to Access Instance Variables in Static Methods	398



<i>Special Topic 8.2:</i> Static Imports	398
<i>Special Topic 8.3:</i> Alternative Forms of Instance and Static Variable Initialization	399
<b>8.5 PACKAGES</b>	400
<i>Syntax 8.1:</i> Package Specification	402
<i>Common Error 8.2:</i> Confusing Dots	403
<i>Special Topic 8.4:</i> Package Access	404
<i>How To 8.1:</i> Programming with Packages	404
<i>Computing &amp; Society 8.1:</i> Personal Computing	406
<b>8.6 UNIT TEST FRAMEWORKS</b>	407



Good design should be both functional and attractive. When designing classes, each class should be dedicated to a particular purpose, and classes should work well together. In this chapter, you will learn how to discover classes, design good methods, and choose appropriate data representations. You will also learn how to design features that belong to the class as a whole, not individual objects, by using static methods and variables. You will see how to use packages to organize your classes. Finally, we introduce the JUnit testing framework that lets you verify the functionality of your classes.

## 8.1 Discovering Classes

A class should represent a single concept from a problem domain, such as business, science, or mathematics.

You have used a good number of classes in the preceding chapters and probably designed a few classes yourself as part of your programming assignments. Designing a class can be a challenge—it is not always easy to tell how to start or whether the result is of good quality.

What makes a good class? Most importantly, a class should *represent a single concept* from a problem domain. Some of the classes that you have seen represent concepts from mathematics:

- Point
- Rectangle
- Ellipse

Other classes are abstractions of real-life entities:

- BankAccount
- CashRegister

For these classes, the properties of a typical object are easy to understand. A `Rectangle` object has a width and height. Given a `BankAccount` object, you can deposit and withdraw money. Generally, concepts from a domain related to the program's purpose, such as science, business, or gaming, make good classes. The name for such a class should be a noun that describes the concept. In fact, a simple rule of thumb for getting started with class design is to look for nouns in the problem description.

One useful category of classes can be described as *actors*. Objects of an actor class carry out certain tasks for you. Examples of actors are the `Scanner` class of Chapter 4 and the `Random` class in Chapter 6. A `Scanner` object scans a stream for numbers and strings. A `Random` object generates random numbers. It is a good idea to choose class names for actors that end in “-er” or “-or”. (A better name for the `Random` class might be `RandomNumberGenerator`.)

Very occasionally, a class has no objects, but it contains a collection of related static methods and constants. The `Math` class is an example. Such a class is called a *utility class*.

Finally, you have seen classes with only a `main` method. Their sole purpose is to start a program. From a design perspective, these are somewhat degenerate examples of classes.

What might not be a good class? If you can't tell from the class name what an object of the class is supposed to do, then you are probably not on the right track. For

example, your homework assignment might ask you to write a program that prints paychecks. Suppose you start by trying to design a class `PaycheckProgram`. What would an object of this class do? An object of this class would have to do everything that the homework needs to do. That doesn't simplify anything. A better class would be `Paycheck`. Then your program can manipulate one or more `Paycheck` objects.

Another common mistake is to turn a single operation into a class. For example, if your homework assignment is to compute a paycheck, you may consider writing a class `ComputePaycheck`. But can you visualize a "ComputePaycheck" object? The fact that "ComputePaycheck" isn't a noun tips you off that you are on the wrong track. On the other hand, a `Paycheck` class makes intuitive sense. The word "paycheck" is a noun. You can visualize a paycheck object. You can then think about useful methods of the `Paycheck` class, such as `computeTaxes`, that help you solve the assignment.

### SELF CHECK



1. What is a simple rule of thumb for finding classes?
2. Your job is to write a program that plays chess. Might `ChessBoard` be an appropriate class? How about `MovePiece`?

#### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R8.1, R8.2, R8.3.

## 8.2 Designing Good Methods

In the following sections, you will learn several useful criteria for analyzing and improving the public interface of a class.

### 8.2.1 Providing a Cohesive Public Interface

The public interface of a class is cohesive if all of its features are related to the concept that the class represents.

A class should represent a single concept. All interface features should be closely related to the single concept that the class represents. Such a public interface is said to be **cohesive**.



*The members of a cohesive team have a common goal.*

If you find that the public interface of a class refers to multiple concepts, then that is a good sign that it may be time to use separate classes instead. Consider, for example, the public interface of the `CashRegister` class in Chapter 4:

```
public class CashRegister
{
    public static final double QUARTER_VALUE = 0.25;
    public static final double DIME_VALUE = 0.1;
    public static final double NICKEL_VALUE = 0.05;
    ...
    public void receivePayment(int dollars, int quarters,
        int dimes, int nickels, int pennies)
    ...
}
```

There are really two concepts here: a cash register that holds coins and computes their total, and the values of individual coins. (For simplicity, we assume that the cash register only holds coins, not bills. Exercise E8.3 discusses a more general solution.)

It makes sense to have a separate `Coin` class and have coins responsible for knowing their values.

```
public class Coin
{
    . .
    public Coin(double aValue, String aName) { . . . }
    public double getValue() { . . . }
    .
}
```

Then the `CashRegister` class can be simplified:

```
public class CashRegister
{
    . .
    public void receivePayment(int coinCount, Coin coinType) { . . . }
    {
        payment = payment + coinCount * coinType.getValue();
    }
    .
}
```

Now the `CashRegister` class no longer needs to know anything about coin values. The same class can equally well handle euros or zorkmids!

This is clearly a better solution, because it separates the responsibilities of the cash register and the coins. The only reason we didn't follow this approach in Chapter 4 was to keep the `CashRegister` example simple.

### 8.2.2 Minimizing Dependencies

A class depends on another class if its methods use that class in any way.

Many methods need other classes in order to do their jobs. For example, the `receivePayment` method of the restructured `CashRegister` class now uses the `Coin` class. We say that the `CashRegister` class *depends on* the `Coin` class.

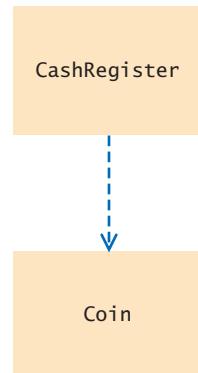
To visualize relationships between classes, such as dependence, programmers draw class diagrams. In this book, we use the UML (“**Unified Modeling Language**”) notation for objects and classes. UML is a notation for object-oriented analysis and design invented by Grady Booch, Ivar Jacobson, and James Rumbaugh, three leading researchers in object-oriented software development. (Appendix H has a summary of the UML notation used in this book.) The UML notation distinguishes between *object diagrams* and class diagrams. In an object diagram the class names are underlined; in a class diagram the class names are not underlined. In a class diagram, you denote dependency by a dashed line with a  $\Rightarrow$ -shaped open arrow tip that points to the dependent class. Figure 1 shows a class diagram indicating that the `CashRegister` class depends on the `Coin` class.

Note that the `Coin` class does *not* depend on the `CashRegister` class. All `Coin` methods can carry out their work without ever calling any method in the `CashRegister` class. Conceptually, coins have no idea that they are being collected in cash registers.

Here is an example of minimizing dependencies. Consider how we have always printed a bank balance:

```
System.out.println("The balance is now $" + momSavings.getBalance());
```

**Figure 1**  
Dependency Relationship  
Between the CashRegister  
and Coin Classes



Why don't we simply have a `printBalance` method?

```

public void printBalance() // Not recommended
{
    System.out.println("The balance is now $" + balance);
}
  
```

The method depends on `System.out`. Not every computing environment has `System.out`. For example, an automatic teller machine doesn't display console messages. In other words, this design violates the rule of minimizing dependencies. The `printBalance` method couples the `BankAccount` class with the `System` and `PrintStream` classes.

It is best to place the code for producing output or consuming input in a separate class. That way, you decouple input/output from the actual work of your classes.

### 8.2.3 Separating Accessors and Mutators

A **mutator method** changes the state of an object. Conversely, an **accessor method** asks an object to compute a result, without changing the state.

Some classes have been designed to have only accessor methods and no mutator methods at all. Such classes are called **immutable**. An example is the `String` class. Once a string has been constructed, its content never changes. No method in the `String` class can modify the contents of a string. For example, the `toUpperCase` method does not change characters from the original string. Instead, it constructs a *new* string that contains the uppercase characters:

```

String name = "John Q. Public";
String upercased = name.toUpperCase(); // name is not changed
  
```

An immutable class has a major advantage: It is safe to give out references to its objects freely. If no method can change the object's value, then no code can modify the object at an unexpected time.

Not every class should be immutable. Immutability makes most sense for classes that represent values, such as strings, dates, currency amounts, colors, and so on.

In mutable classes, it is still a good idea to cleanly separate accessors and mutators, in order to avoid accidental mutation. As a rule of thumb, a method that returns a value should not be a mutator. For example, one would not expect that calling `getBalance` on a `BankAccount` object would change the balance. (You would be pretty upset if your bank charged you a “balance inquiry fee”.) If you follow this rule, then all mutators of your class have return type `void`.

An immutable class has no mutator methods.

References to objects of an immutable class can be safely shared.

Sometimes, this rule is bent a bit, and mutator methods return an informational value. For example, the `ArrayList` class has a `remove` method to remove an object.

```
ArrayList<String> names = ...;
boolean success = names.remove("Romeo");
```

That method returns true if the removal was successful; that is, if the list contained the object. Returning this value might be bad design if there was no other way to check whether an object exists in the list. However, there is such a method—the `contains` method. It is acceptable for a mutator to return a value if there is also an accessor that computes it.

The situation is less happy with the `Scanner` class. The `next` method is a mutator that returns a value. (The `next` method really is a mutator. If you call `next` twice in a row, it can return different results, so it must have mutated something inside the `Scanner` object.) Unfortunately, there is no accessor that returns the same value. This sometimes makes it awkward to use a `Scanner`. You must carefully hang on to the value that the `next` method returns because you have no second chance to ask for it. It would have been better if there was another method, say `peek`, that yields the next input without consuming it.

*To check the temperature of the water in the bottle, you could take a sip, but that would be the equivalent of a mutator method.*



#### 8.2.4 Minimizing Side Effects

A side effect of a method is any externally observable data modification.

A **side effect** of a method is any kind of modification of data that is observable outside the method. Mutator methods have a side effect, namely the modification of the implicit parameter.

There is another kind of side effect that you should avoid. A method should generally not modify its parameter variables. Consider this example:

```
/**
 * Computes the total balance of the given accounts.
 * @param accounts a list of bank accounts
 */
public double getTotalBalance(ArrayList<String> accounts)
{
    double sum = 0;
    while (accounts.size() > 0)
    {
        BankAccount account = accounts.remove(0); // Not recommended
        sum = sum + account.getBalance();
    }
    return sum;
}
```

This method removes all names from the `accounts` parameter variable. After a call

```
double total = getTotalBalance(allAccounts);
```

`allAccounts` is empty! Such a side effect would not be what most programmers expect. It is better if the method visits the elements from the list without removing them.

When designing methods, minimize side effects.

Another example of a side effect is output. Consider again the `printBalance` method that we discussed in Section 8.2.2:

```
public void printBalance() // Not recommended
{
    System.out.println("The balance is now $" + balance);
}
```

This method mutates the `System.out` object, which is not a part of the `BankAccount` object. That is a side effect.

To avoid this side effect, keep most of your classes free from input and output operations, and concentrate input and output in one place, such as the main method of your program.

*This taxi has an undesirable side effect, spraying bystanders with muddy water.*



### SELF CHECK



3. Why is the `CashRegister` class from Chapter 4 not cohesive?
4. Why does the `Coin` class not depend on the `CashRegister` class?
5. Why is it a good idea to minimize dependencies between classes?
6. Is the `substring` method of the `String` class an accessor or a mutator?
7. Is the `Rectangle` class immutable?
8. If `a` refers to a bank account, then the call `a.deposit(100)` modifies the bank account object. Is that a side effect?
9. Consider the `Student` class of Chapter 7. Suppose we add a method

```
void read(Scanner in)
{
    while (in.hasNextDouble())
    {
        addScore(in.nextDouble());
    }
}
```

Does this method have a side effect other than mutating the scores?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R8.4, R8.5, R8.9.

### Programming Tip 8.1



### Consistency

In this section you learned of two criteria for analyzing the quality of the public interface of a class. You should maximize cohesion and remove unnecessary dependencies. There is another criterion that we would like you to pay attention to—*consistency*. When you have a set of methods, follow a consistent scheme for their names and parameter variables. This is simply a sign of good craftsmanship.

Sadly, you can find any number of inconsistencies in the standard library. Here is an example: To show an input dialog box, you call

```
JOptionPane.showInputDialog(promptString)
```

To show a message dialog box, you call

```
JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, messageString)
```

What's the `null` argument? It turns out that the `showMessageDialog` method needs an argument to specify the parent window, or `null` if no parent window is required. But the `showInputDialog` method requires no parent window. Why the inconsistency? There is no reason. It would have been an easy matter to supply a `showMessageDialog` method that exactly mirrors the `showInputDialog` method.

Inconsistencies such as these are not fatal flaws, but they are an annoyance, particularly because they can be so easily avoided.



*While it is possible to eat with mismatched silverware, consistency is more pleasant.*

## Special Topic 8.1



### Call by Value and Call by Reference

In Section 8.2.4, we recommended that you don't invoke a mutator method on a parameter variable. In this Special Topic, we discuss a related issue—what happens when you assign a new value to a parameter variable. Consider this method:

```
public class BankAccount
{
    ...
    /**
     * Transfers money from this account and tries to add it to a balance.
     * @param amount the amount of money to transfer
     * @param otherBalance balance to add the amount to
     */
    public void transfer(double amount, double otherBalance) ②
    {
        balance = balance - amount;
        otherBalance = otherBalance + amount;
        // Won't update the argument
    } ③
}
```

Now let's see what happens when we call the method:

```
double savingsBalance = 1000;
harrysChecking.transfer(500, savingsBalance); ①
System.out.println(savingsBalance); ④
```

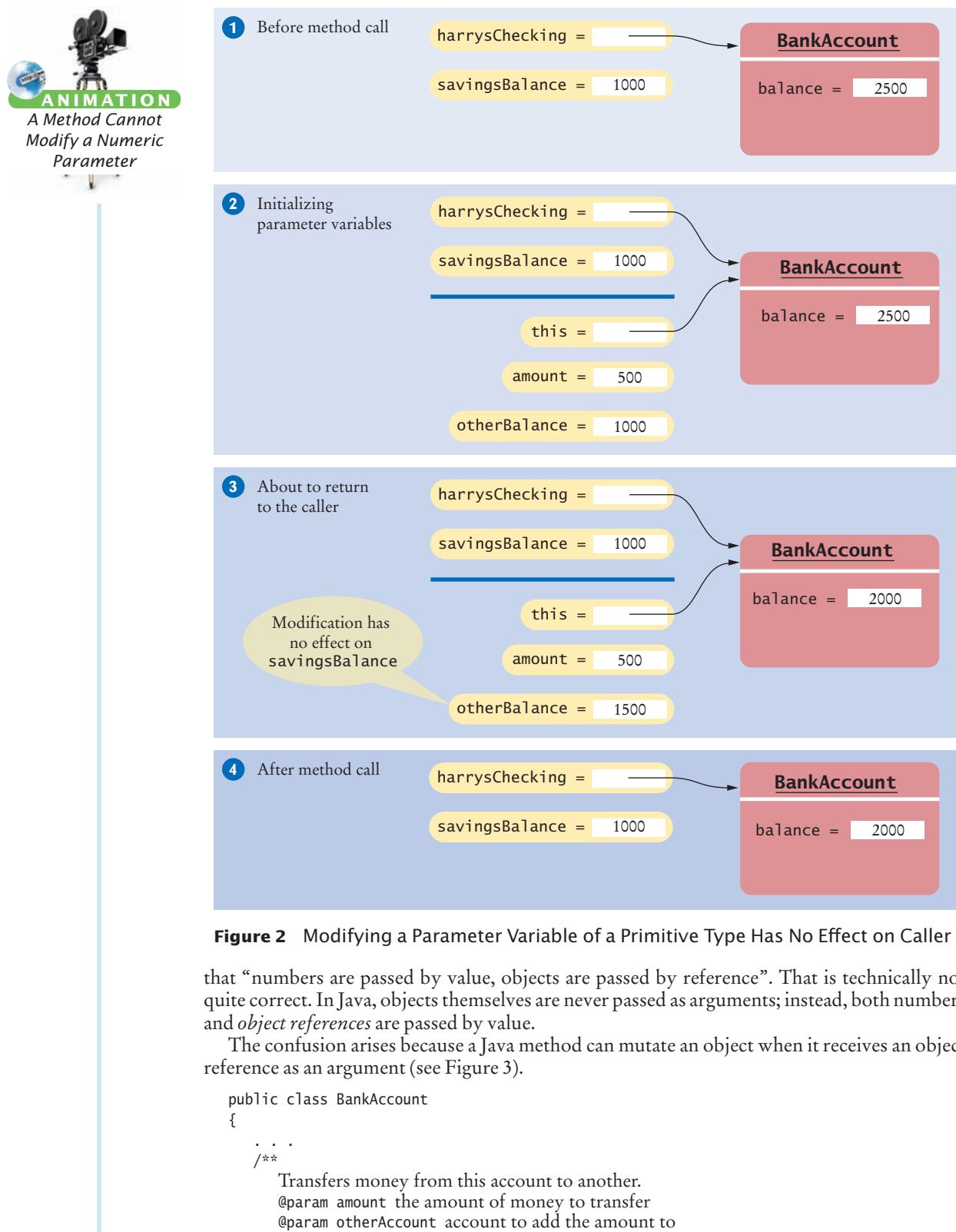
You might expect that after the call, the `savingsBalance` variable has been incremented to 1500. However, that is not the case. As the method starts, the parameter variable `otherBalance` is set to the same value as `savingsBalance` (see Figure 2). Then the variable is set to a different value. That modification has no effect on `savingsBalance`, because `otherBalance` is a separate variable. When the method terminates, the `otherBalance` variable is removed, and `savingsBalance` isn't increased.

In Java, parameter variables are initialized with the values of the argument expressions. When the method exits, the parameter variables are removed. Computer scientists refer to this call mechanism as “call by value”.

For that reason, a Java method can never change the contents of a variable that is passed as an argument—the method manipulates a different variable.

Other programming languages such as C++ support a mechanism, called “call by reference”, that can change the arguments of a method call. You will sometimes read in Java books

In Java, a method can never change the contents of a variable that is passed to a method.



**Figure 2** Modifying a Parameter Variable of a Primitive Type Has No Effect on Caller

that “numbers are passed by value, objects are passed by reference”. That is technically not quite correct. In Java, objects themselves are never passed as arguments; instead, both numbers and *object references* are passed by value.

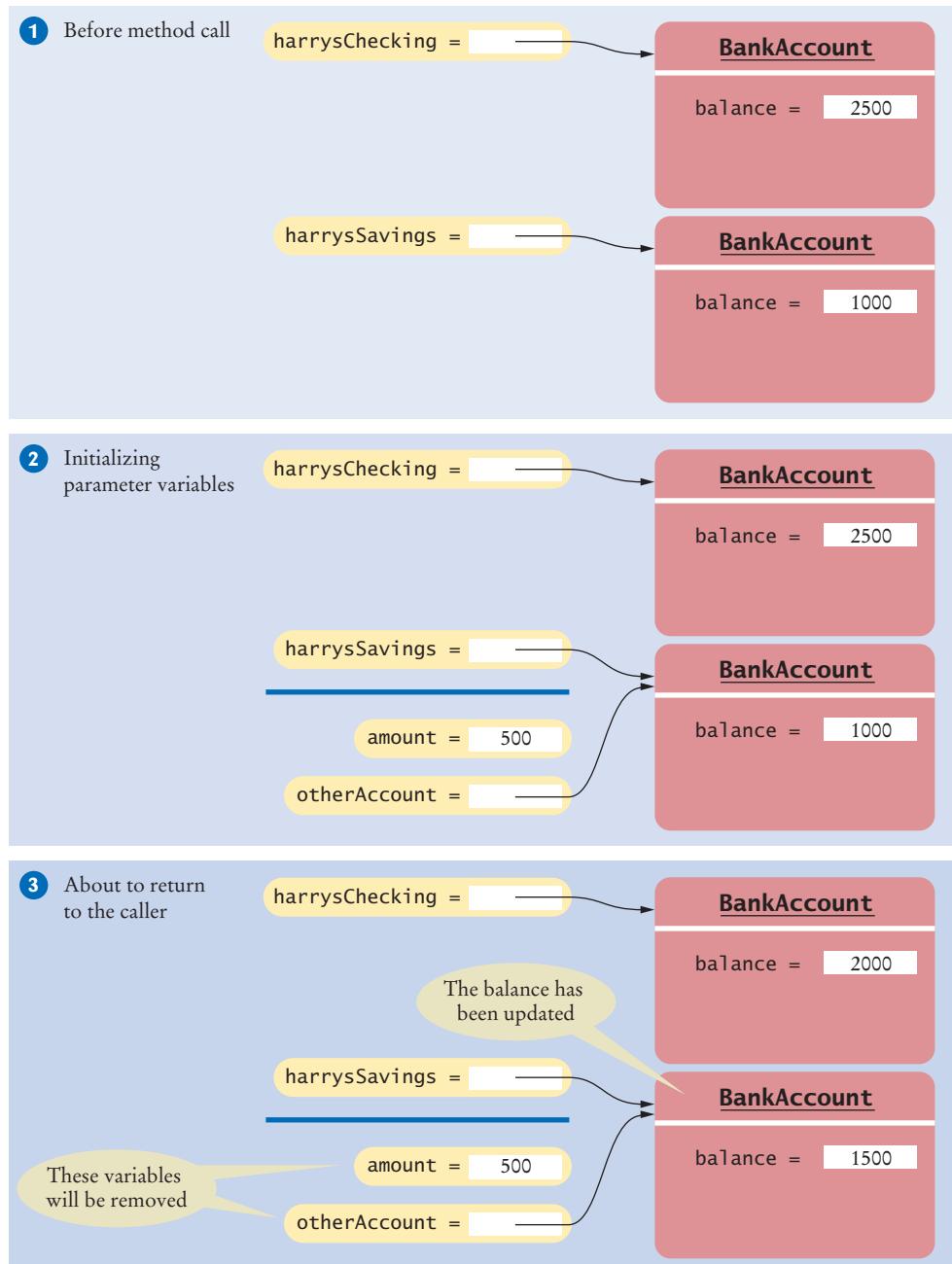
The confusion arises because a Java method can mutate an object when it receives an object reference as an argument (see Figure 3).

```
public class BankAccount
{
    ...
    /**
     * Transfers money from this account to another.
     * @param amount the amount of money to transfer
     * @param otherAccount account to add the amount to
    
```

```

    */
public void transfer(double amount, BankAccount otherAccount) ②
{
    balance = balance - amount;
    otherAccount.deposit(amount);
} ③
}

```



**Figure 3** Methods Can Mutate Any Objects to Which They Hold References

Now we pass an object reference to the transfer method:

```
BankAccount harrysSavings = new BankAccount(1000);
harrysChecking.transfer(500, harrysSavings); ①
System.out.println(harrysSavings.getBalance());
```

This example works as expected. The parameter variable `otherAccount` contains a *copy* of the object reference `harrysSavings`. You saw in Section 2.8 what it means to make a copy of an object reference—you get another reference to the same object. Through that reference, the method is able to modify the object.

However, a method cannot *replace* an object reference that is passed as an argument. To appreciate this subtle difference, consider this method that tries to set the `otherAccount` parameter variable to a new object:

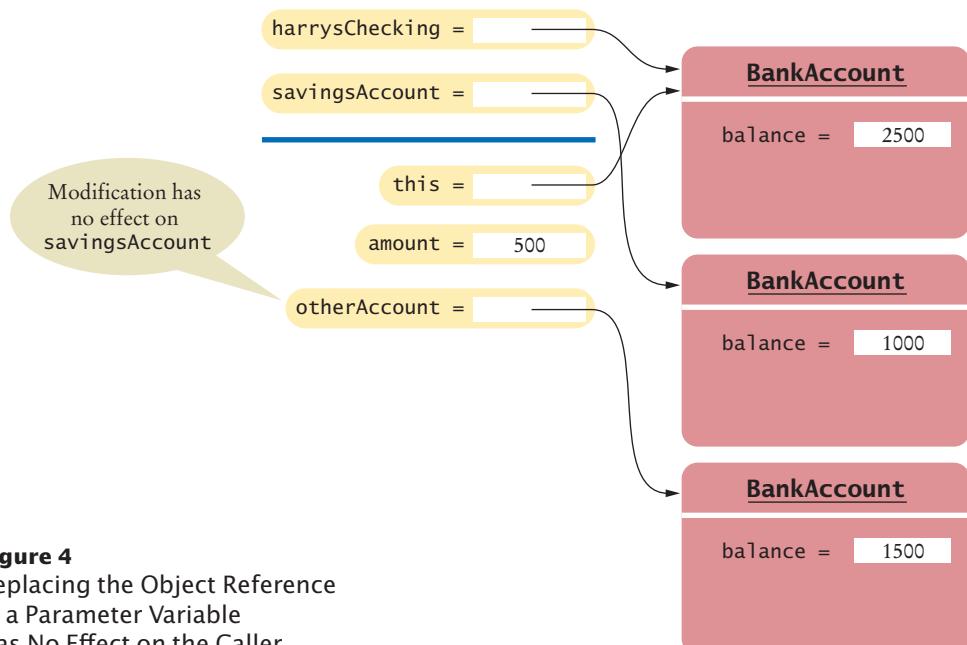
```
public class BankAccount
{
    .
    .
    public void transfer(double amount, BankAccount otherAccount)
    {
        balance = balance - amount;
        double newBalance = otherAccount.balance + amount;
        otherAccount = new BankAccount(newBalance); // Won't work
    }
}
```

In this situation, we are not trying to change the state of the object to which the parameter variable `otherAccount` refers; instead, we are trying to replace the object with a different one (see Figure 4). Now the reference stored in parameter variable `otherAccount` is replaced with a reference to a new account. But if you call the method with

```
harrysChecking.transfer(500, savingsAccount);
```

then that change does not affect the `savingsAccount` variable that is supplied in the call. This example demonstrates that objects are not passed by reference.

In Java, a method can change the state of an object reference argument, but it cannot replace the object reference with another.



**Figure 4**  
Replacing the Object Reference  
in a Parameter Variable  
Has No Effect on the Caller

To summarize:

- A Java method can't change the contents of any variable passed as an argument.
- A Java method can mutate an object when it receives a reference to it as an argument.

## 8.3 Problem Solving: Patterns for Object Data

When you design a class, you first consider the needs of the programmers who use the class. You provide the methods that the users of your class will call when they manipulate objects. When you implement the class, you need to come up with the instance variables for the class. It is not always obvious how to do this. Fortunately, there is a small set of recurring patterns that you can adapt when you design your own classes. We introduce these patterns in the following sections.

### 8.3.1 Keeping a Total

An instance variable for the total is updated in methods that increase or decrease the total amount.

Many classes need to keep track of a quantity that can go up or down as certain methods are called. Examples:

- A bank account has a balance that is increased by a deposit, decreased by a withdrawal.
- A cash register has a total that is increased when an item is added to the sale, cleared after the end of the sale.
- A car has gas in the tank, which is increased when fuel is added and decreased when the car drives.

In all of these cases, the implementation strategy is similar. Keep an instance variable that represents the current total. For example, for the cash register:

```
private double purchase;
```

Locate the methods that affect the total. There is usually a method to increase it by a given amount:

```
public void recordPurchase(double amount)
{
    purchase = purchase + amount;
}
```

Depending on the nature of the class, there may be a method that reduces or clears the total. In the case of the cash register, one can provide a `clear` method:

```
public void clear()
{
    purchase = 0;
}
```

There is usually a method that yields the current total. It is easy to implement:

```
public double getAmountDue()
{
    return purchase;
}
```

All classes that manage a total follow the same basic pattern. Find the methods that affect the total and provide the appropriate code for increasing or decreasing it. Find

the methods that report or use the total, and have those methods read the current total.

### 8.3.2 Counting Events

A counter that counts events is incremented in methods that correspond to the events.

You often need to count how many times certain events occur in the life of an object. For example:

- In a cash register, you may want to know how many items have been added in a sale.
- A bank account charges a fee for each transaction; you need to count them.

Keep a counter, such as

```
private int itemCount;
```

Increment the counter in those methods that correspond to the events that you want to count:

```
public void recordPurchase(double amount)
{
    purchase = purchase + amount;
    itemCount++;
}
```

You may need to clear the counter, for example at the end of a sale or a statement period:

```
public void clear()
{
    purchase = 0;
    itemCount = 0;
}
```

There may or may not be a method that reports the count to the class user. The count may only be used to compute a fee or an average. Find out which methods in your class make use of the count, and read the current value in those methods.

### 8.3.3 Collecting Values

An object can collect other objects in an array or array list.

Some objects collect numbers, strings, or other objects. For example, each multiple-choice question has a number of choices. A cash register may need to store all prices of the current sale.

Use an array list or an array to store the values. (An array list is usually simpler because you won't need to track the number of values.) For example,

```
public class Question
{
    private ArrayList<String> choices;
    ...
}
```



*A shopping cart object needs to manage a collection of items.*

In the constructor, initialize the instance variable to an empty collection:

```
public Question()
{
    choices = new ArrayList<String>();
}
```

You need to supply some mechanism for adding values. It is common to provide a method for appending a value to the collection:

```
public void add(String option)
{
    choices.add(option);
}
```

The user of a `Question` object can call this method multiple times to add the choices.

An object property can be accessed with a getter method and changed with a setter method.

### 8.3.4 Managing Properties of an Object

A property is a value of an object that an object user can set and retrieve. For example, a `Student` object may have a name and an ID. Provide an instance variable to store the property's value and methods to get and set it.

```
public class Student
{
    private String name;
    .
    .
    public String getName() { return name; }
    public void setName(String newName) { name = newName; }
    .
}
```

It is common to add error checking to the setter method. For example, we may want to reject a blank name:

```
public void setName(String newName)
{
    if (newName.length() > 0) { name = newName; }
}
```

Some properties should not change after they have been set in the constructor. For example, a student's ID may be fixed (unlike the student's name, which may change). In that case, don't supply a setter method.

```
public class Student
{
    private int id;
    .
    .
    public Student(int anId) { id = anId; }
    public String getId() { return id; }
    // No setId method
    .
}
```

### 8.3.5 Modeling Objects with Distinct States

Some objects have behavior that varies depending on what has happened in the past. For example, a `Fish` object may look for food when it is hungry and ignore food after it has eaten. Such an object would need to remember whether it has recently eaten.

*If a fish is in a hungry state, its behavior changes.*

If your object can have one of several states that affect the behavior, supply an instance variable for the current state.

Supply an instance variable that models the state, together with some constants for the state values:

```
public class Fish
{
    private int hungry;

    public static final int NOT_HUNGRY = 0;
    public static final int SOMEWHAT_HUNGRY = 1;
    public static final int VERY_HUNGRY = 2;
    ...
}
```



(Alternatively, you can use an enumeration—see Special Topic 5.4.)

Determine which methods change the state. In this example, a fish that has just eaten won't be hungry. But as the fish moves, it will get hungrier:

```
public void eat()
{
    hungry = NOT_HUNGRY;
    ...
}

public void move()
{
    ...
    if (hungry < VERY_HUNGRY) { hungry++; }
}
```

Finally, determine where the state affects behavior. A fish that is very hungry will want to look for food first:

```
public void move()
{
    if (hungry == VERY_HUNGRY)
    {
        Look for food.
    }
    ...
}
```

### 8.3.6 Describing the Position of an Object

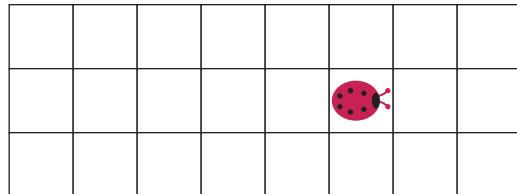
To model a moving object, you need to store and update its position.

Some objects move around during their lifetime, and they remember their current position. For example,

- A train drives along a track and keeps track of the distance from the terminus.
- A simulated bug living on a grid crawls from one grid location to the next, or makes 90 degree turns to the left or right.
- A cannonball is shot into the air, then descends as it is pulled by the gravitational force.

Such objects need to store their position. Depending on the nature of their movement, they may also need to store their orientation or velocity.

*A bug in a grid needs to store its row, column, and direction.*



If the object moves along a line, you can represent the position as a distance from a fixed point:

```
private double distanceFromTerminus;
```

If the object moves in a grid, remember its current location and direction in the grid:

```
private int row;
private int column;
private int direction; // 0 = North, 1 = East, 2 = South, 3 = West
```

When you model a physical object such as a cannonball, you need to track both the position and the velocity, possibly in two or three dimensions. Here we model a cannonball that is shot upward into the air:

```
private double zPosition;
private double zVelocity;
```

There will be methods that update the position. In the simplest case, you may be told by how much the object moves:

```
public void move(double distanceMoved)
{
    distanceFromTerminus = distanceFromTerminus + distanceMoved;
}
```

If the movement happens in a grid, you need to update the row or column, depending on the current orientation.

```
public void moveOneUnit()
{
    if (direction == NORTH) { row--; }
    else if (direction == EAST) { column++; }
    else if (direction == SOUTH) { row++; }
    else if (direction == WEST) { column--; }
```

Exercise P8.6 shows you how to update the position of a physical object with known velocity.

Whenever you have a moving object, keep in mind that your program will simulate the actual movement in some way. Find out the rules of that simulation, such as movement along a line or in a grid with integer coordinates. Those rules determine how to represent the current position. Then locate the methods that move the object, and update the positions according to the rules of the simulation.

 **FULL CODE EXAMPLE**  
Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download classes that use these patterns for object data.



#### SELF CHECK

10. Suppose we want to count the number of transactions in a bank account in a statement period, and we add a counter to the `BankAccount` class:

```
public class BankAccount
{
    private int transactionCount;
    . . .
```

```
}
```

In which methods does this counter need to be updated?

- 11.** In How To 3.1, the `CashRegister` class does not have a `getTotalPurchase` method. Instead, you have to call `receivePayment` and then `giveChange`. Which recommendation of Section 8.2.4 does this design violate? What is a better alternative?
- 12.** In the example in Section 8.3.3, why is the `add` method required? That is, why can't the user of a `Question` object just call the `add` method of the `ArrayList<String>` class?
- 13.** Suppose we want to enhance the `CashRegister` class in How To 3.1 to track the prices of all purchased items for printing a receipt. Which instance variable should you provide? Which methods should you modify?
- 14.** Consider an `Employee` class with properties for tax ID number and salary. Which of these properties should have only a getter method, and which should have getter and setter methods?
- 15.** Suppose the `setName` method in Section 8.3.4 is changed so that it returns true if the new name is set, false if not. Is this a good idea?
- 16.** Look at the `direction` instance variable in the bug example in Section 8.3.6. This is an example of which pattern?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E8.21, E8.22, E8.23.

## 8.4 Static Variables and Methods

A static variable belongs to the class, not to any object of the class.

Sometimes, a value properly belongs to a class, not to any object of the class. You use a **static variable** for this purpose. Here is a typical example: We want to assign bank account numbers sequentially. That is, we want the bank account constructor to construct the first account with number 1001, the next with number 1002, and so on. To solve this problem, we need to have a single value of `lastAssignedNumber` that is a property of the *class*, not any object of the class. Such a variable is called a static variable because you declare it using the `static` reserved word.

```
public class BankAccount
{
    private double balance;
    private int accountNumber;
    private static int lastAssignedNumber = 1000;

    public BankAccount()
    {
        lastAssignedNumber++;
        accountNumber = lastAssignedNumber;
    }
    ...
}
```



The reserved word `static` is a holdover from the C++ language. Its use in Java has no relationship to the normal use of the term.

Every `BankAccount` object has its own `balance` and `accountNumber` instance variables, but all objects share a single copy of the `lastAssignedNumber` variable (see Figure 5). That variable is stored in a separate location, outside any `BankAccount` objects.

Like instance variables, static variables should always be declared as `private` to ensure that methods of other classes do not change their values. However, static *constants* may be either private or public.

For example, the `BankAccount` class can define a public constant value, such as

```
public class BankAccount
{
    public static final double OVERDRAFT_FEE = 29.95;
    ...
}
```

Methods from any class can refer to such a constant as `BankAccount.OVERDRAFT_FEE`.

A static method  
is not invoked on  
an object.

Sometimes a class defines methods that are not invoked on an object. Such a method is called a **static method**. A typical example of a static method is the `sqrt` method in the `Math` class. Because numbers aren't objects, you can't invoke methods on them. For example, if `x` is a number, then the call `x.sqrt()` is not legal in Java. Therefore, the `Math` class provides a static method that is invoked as `Math.sqrt(x)`. No object of the `Math` class is constructed. The `Math` qualifier simply tells the compiler where to find the `sqrt` method.

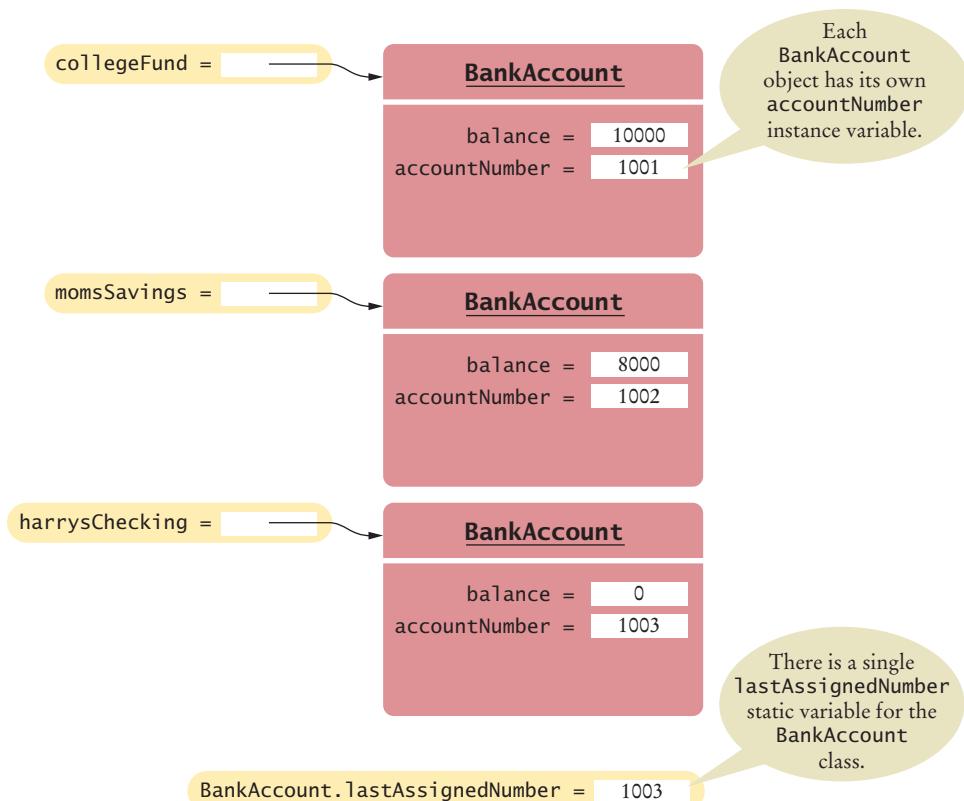


Figure 5 A Static Variable and Instance Variables

You can define your own static methods for use in other classes. Here is an example:

```
public class Financial
{
    /**
     * Computes a percentage of an amount.
     * @param percentage the percentage to apply
     * @param amount the amount to which the percentage is applied
     * @return the requested percentage of the amount
    */
    public static double percentOf(double percentage, double amount)
    {
        return (percentage / 100) * amount;
    }
}
```

#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program with static methods and variables.



#### SELF CHECK



17. Name two static variables of the `System` class.
18. Name a static constant of the `Math` class.
19. The following method computes the average of an array of numbers:  
`public static double average(double[] values)`  
 Why should it not be defined as an instance method?
20. Harry tells you that he has found a great way to avoid those pesky objects: Put all code into a single class and declare all methods and variables static. Then `main` can call the other static methods, and all of them can access the static variables. Will Harry's plan work? Is it a good idea?

#### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R8.22, E8.5, E8.6.

#### Programming Tip 8.2



#### Minimize the Use of Static Methods

It is possible to solve programming problems by using classes with only static methods. In fact, before object-oriented programming was invented, that approach was quite common. However, it usually leads to a design that is not object-oriented and makes it hard to evolve a program.

Consider the task of How To 7.1. A program reads scores for a student and prints the final score, which is obtained by dropping the lowest one. We solved the problem by implementing a `Student` class that stores student scores. Of course, we could have simply written a program with a few static methods:

```
public class ScoreAnalyzer
{
    public static double[] readInputs() { . . . }
    public static double sum(double[] values) { . . . }
    public static double minimum(double[] values) { . . . }
```

```

public static double finalScore(double[] values)
{
    if (values.length == 0) { return 0; }
    else if (values.length == 1) { return values[0]; }
    else { return sum(values) - minimum(values); }
}

public static void main(String[] args)
{
    System.out.println(finalScore(readInputs()));
}
}

```

That solution is fine if one's sole objective is to solve a simple homework problem. But suppose you need to modify the program so that it deals with multiple students. An object-oriented program can evolve the `Student` class to store grades for many students. In contrast, adding more functionality to static methods gets messy quickly (see Exercise E8.7).

### Common Error 8.1



### Trying to Access Instance Variables in Static Methods

A static method does not operate on an object. In other words, it has no implicit parameter, and you cannot directly access any instance variables. For example, the following code is wrong:

```

public class SavingsAccount
{
    private double balance;
    private double interestRate;

    public static double interest(double amount)
    {
        return (interestRate / 100) * amount;
        // ERROR: Static method accesses instance variable
    }
}

```

Because different savings accounts can have different interest rates, the `interest` method should not be a static method.

### Special Topic 8.2



### Static Imports

Starting with Java version 5.0, there is a variant of the `import` directive that lets you use static methods and variables without class prefixes. For example,

```

import static java.lang.System.*;
import static java.lang.Math.*;

public class RootTester
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        double r = sqrt(PI); // Instead of Math.sqrt(Math.PI)
        out.println(r);      // Instead of System.out
    }
}

```

}

Static imports can make programs easier to read, particularly if they use many mathematical functions.

### Special Topic 8.3



### Alternative Forms of Instance and Static Variable Initialization

As you have seen, instance variables are initialized with a default value (0, `false`, or `null`, depending on their type). You can then set them to any desired value in a constructor, and that is the style that we prefer in this book.

However, there are two other mechanisms to specify an initial value. Just as with local variables, you can specify initialization values for instance variables. For example,

```
public class Coin
{
    private double value = 1;
    private String name = "Dollar";
    ...
}
```

These default values are used for *every* object that is being constructed.

There is also another, much less common, syntax. You can place one or more *initialization blocks* inside the class declaration. All statements in that block are executed whenever an object is being constructed. Here is an example:

```
public class Coin
{
    private double value;
    private String name;
    {
        value = 1;
        name = "Dollar";
    }
    ...
}
```

For static variables, you use a static initialization block:

```
public class BankAccount
{
    private static int lastAssignedNumber;
    static
    {
        lastAssignedNumber = 1000;
    }
    ...
}
```

All statements in the static initialization block are executed once when the class is loaded. Initialization blocks are rarely used in practice.

When an object is constructed, the initializers and initialization blocks are executed in the order in which they appear. Then the code in the constructor is executed. Because the rules for the alternative initialization mechanisms are somewhat complex, we recommend that you simply use constructors to do the job of construction.

## 8.5 Packages

A package is a set of related classes.

A Java program consists of a collection of classes. So far, most of your programs have consisted of a small number of classes. As programs get larger, however, simply distributing the classes over multiple files isn't enough. An additional structuring mechanism is needed.

In Java, packages provide this structuring mechanism. A Java **package** is a set of related classes. For example, the Java library consists of several hundred packages, some of which are listed in Table 1.

**Table 1** Important Packages in the Java Library

Package	Purpose	Sample Class
java.lang	Language support	Math
java.util	Utilities	Random
java.io	Input and output	PrintStream
java.awt	Abstract Windowing Toolkit	Color
java.applet	Applets	Applet
java.net	Networking	Socket
java.sql	Database access through Structured Query Language	ResultSet
javax.swing	Swing user interface	JButton
org.w3c.dom	Document Object Model for XML documents	Document

### 8.5.1 Organizing Related Classes into Packages

To put one of your classes in a package, you must place a line

```
package packageName;
```

as the first instruction in the source file containing the class. A package name consists of one or more identifiers separated by periods. (See Section 8.5.3 for tips on constructing package names.)

For example, let's put the `Financial` class introduced in this chapter into a package named `com.horstmann.bigjava`. The `Financial.java` file must start as follows:

```
package com.horstmann.bigjava;
public class Financial
{
    . .
}
```

In addition to the named packages (such as `java.util` or `com.horstmann.bigjava`), there is a special package, called the *default package*, which has no name. If you did not

*In Java, related classes are grouped into packages.*



include any package statement at the top of your source file, its classes are placed in the default package.

### 8.5.2 Importing Packages

If you want to use a class from a package, you can refer to it by its full name (package name plus class name). For example, `java.util.Scanner` refers to the `Scanner` class in the `java.util` package:

```
java.util.Scanner in = new java.util.Scanner(System.in);
```

Naturally, that is somewhat inconvenient. For that reason, you usually import a name with an `import` statement:

```
import java.util.Scanner;
```

Then you can refer to the class as `Scanner` without the package prefix.

You can import *all classes* of a package with an `import` statement that ends in `.*`. For example, you can use the statement

```
import java.util.*;
```

to import all classes from the `java.util` package. That statement lets you refer to classes like `Scanner` or `Random` without a `java.util` prefix.

However, you never need to import the classes in the `java.lang` package explicitly. That is the package containing the most basic Java classes, such as `Math` and `Object`. These classes are always available to you. In effect, an automatic `import java.lang.*;` statement has been placed into every source file.

Finally, you don't need to import other classes in the same package. For example, when you implement the class `homework1.Tester`, you don't need to import the class `homework1.Bank`. The compiler will find the `Bank` class without an `import` statement because it is located in the same package, `homework1`.

### 8.5.3 Package Names

Placing related classes into a package is clearly a convenient mechanism to organize classes. However, there is a more important reason for packages: to avoid **name clashes**. In a large project, it is inevitable that two people will come up with the same name for the same concept. This even happens in the standard Java class library (which has now grown to thousands of classes). There is a class `Timer` in the `java.util`

The `import` directive lets you refer to a class of a package by its class name, without the package prefix.

## Syntax 8.1 Package Specification

**Syntax**    `package packageName;`

`package com.horstmann.bigjava;`

The classes in this file  
belong to this package.

A good choice for a package name  
is a domain name in reverse.

package and another class called `Timer` in the `javax.swing` package. You can still tell the Java compiler exactly which `Timer` class you need, simply by referring to them as `java.util.Timer` and `javax.swing.Timer`.

Of course, for the package-naming convention to work, there must be some way to ensure that package names are unique. It wouldn't be good if the car maker BMW placed all its Java code into the package `bmw`, and some other programmer (perhaps Britney M. Walters) had the same bright idea. To avoid this problem, the inventors of Java recommend that you use a package-naming scheme that takes advantage of the uniqueness of Internet domain names.

For example, I have a domain name `horstmann.com`, and there is nobody else on the planet with the same domain name. (I was lucky that the domain name `horstmann.com` had not been taken by anyone else when I applied. If your name is Walters, you will sadly find that someone else beat you to `walters.com`.) To get a package name, turn the domain name around to produce a package name prefix, such as `com.horstmann`.

If you don't have your own domain name, you can still create a package name that has a high probability of being unique by writing your e-mail address backwards. For example, if Britney Walters has an e-mail address `walters@cs.sjsu.edu`, then she can use a package name `edu.sjsu.cs.walters` for her own classes.

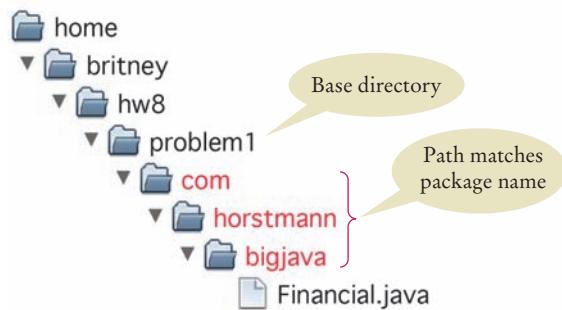
Some instructors will want you to place each of your assignments into a separate package, such as `homework1`, `homework2`, and so on. The reason is again to avoid name collision. You can have two classes, `homework1.Bank` and `homework2.Bank`, with slightly different properties.

Use a domain name in reverse to construct an unambiguous package name.

The path of a class file must match its package name.

### 8.5.4 Packages and Source Files

A source file must be located in a subdirectory that matches the package name. The parts of the name between periods represent successively nested directories. For example, the source files for classes in the package `com.horstmann.bigjava` would be placed in a subdirectory `com/horstmann/bigjava`. You place the subdirectory inside the *base directory* holding your program's files. For example, if you do your homework assignment in a directory `/home/britney/hw8/problem1`, then you can place the class files for the `com.horstmann.bigjava` package into the directory `/home/britney/hw8/problem1/com/horstmann/bigjava`, as shown in Figure 6. (Here, we are using UNIX-style file names. Under Windows, you might use `c:\Users\Britney\hw8\problem1\com\horstmann\bigjava`.)

**Figure 6** Base Directories and Subdirectories for Packages

- 21.** Which of the following are packages?
- java
  - java.lang
  - java.util
  - java.lang.Math
- 22.** Is a Java program without `import` statements limited to using the default and `java.lang` packages?
- 23.** Suppose your homework assignments are located in the directory `/home/me/cs101` (`c:\Users\Me\cs101` on Windows). Your instructor tells you to place your homework into packages. In which directory do you place the class `hw1.problem1.TicTacToeTester`?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R8.25, E8.15, E8.16.

### Common Error 8.2



### Confusing Dots

In Java, the dot symbol ( `.` ) is used as a separator in the following situations:

- Between package names (`java.util`)
- Between package and class names (`homework1.Bank`)
- Between class and inner class names (`Ellipse2D.Double`)
- Between class and instance variable names (`Math.PI`)
- Between objects and methods (`account.getBalance()`)

When you see a long chain of dot-separated names, it can be a challenge to find out which part is the package name, which part is the class name, which part is an instance variable name, and which part is a method name. Consider

```
java.lang.System.out.println(x);
```

Because `println` is followed by an opening parenthesis, it must be a method name. Therefore, `out` must be either an object or a class with a static `println` method. (Of course, we know that `out` is an object reference of type `PrintStream`.) Again, it is not at all clear, without context, whether `System` is another object, with a public variable `out`, or a class with a static variable.

Judging from the number of pages that the Java language specification devotes to this issue, even the compiler has trouble interpreting these dot-separated sequences of strings.

To avoid problems, it is helpful to adopt a strict coding style. If class names always start with an uppercase letter, and variable, method, and package names always start with a lowercase letter, then confusion can be avoided.

### Special Topic 8.4



#### Package Access

If a class, instance variable, or method has no public or private modifier, then all methods of classes in the same package can access the feature. For example, if a class is declared as public, then all other classes in all packages can use it. But if a class is declared without an access modifier, then only the other classes in the *same* package can use it. Package access is a reasonable default for classes, but it is extremely unfortunate for instance variables.

An instance variable or method that is not declared as public or private can be accessed by all classes in the same package, which is usually not desirable.

It is a common error to *forget* the reserved word `private`, thereby opening up a potential security hole. For example, at the time of this writing, the `Window` class in the `java.awt` package contained the following declaration:

```
public class Window extends Container
{
    String warningString;
    ...
}
```

There actually was no good reason to grant package access to the `warningString` instance variable—no other class accesses it.

Package access for instance variables is rarely useful and always a potential security risk. Most instance variables are given package access by accident because the programmer simply forgot the `private` reserved word. It is a good idea to get into the habit of scanning your instance variable declarations for missing `private` modifiers.

### HOW TO 8.1



#### Programming with Packages

This How To explains in detail how to place your programs into packages.

**Problem Statement** Place each homework assignment into a separate package. That way, you can have classes with the same name but different implementations in separate packages (such as `homework1.problem1.Bank` and `homework1.problem2.Bank`).



##### Step 1 Come up with a package name.

Your instructor may give you a package name to use, such as `homework1.problem2`. Or, perhaps you want to use a package name that is unique to you. Start with your e-mail address, written backwards. For example, `walters@cs.sjsu.edu` becomes `edu.sjsu.cs.walters`. Then add a sub-package that describes your project, such as `edu.sjsu.cs.walters.cs1project`.

**Step 2** Pick a *base directory*.

The base directory is the directory that contains the directories for your various packages, for example, /home/britney or c:\Users\Britney.

**Step 3** Make a subdirectory from the base directory that matches your package name.

The subdirectory must be contained in your base directory. Each segment must match a segment of the package name. For example,

```
mkdir -p /home/britney/homework1/problem2 (in UNIX)
or
mkdir /s c:\Users\Britney\homework1\problem2 (in Windows)
```

**Step 4** Place your source files into the package subdirectory.

For example, if your homework consists of the files Tester.java and Bank.java, then you place them into

```
/home/britney/homework1/problem2/Tester.java
/home/britney/homework1/problem2/Bank.java
or
c:\Users\Britney\homework1\problem2\Tester.java
c:\Users\Britney\homework1\problem2\Bank.java
```

**Step 5** Use the package statement in each source file.

The first noncomment line of each file must be a package statement that lists the name of the package, such as

```
package homework1.problem2;
```

**Step 6** Compile your source files from the *base directory*.

Change to the base directory (from Step 2) to compile your files. For example,

```
cd /home/britney
javac homework1/problem2/Tester.java
or
c:
cd \Users\Britney
javac homework1\problem2\Tester.java
```

Note that the Java compiler needs the *source file name and not the class name*. That is, you need to supply file separators (/ on UNIX, \ on Windows) and a file extension (.java).

**Step 7** Run your program from the *base directory*.

Unlike the Java compiler, the Java interpreter needs the *class name (and not a file name) of the class containing the main method*. That is, use periods as package separators, and don't use a file extension. For example,

```
cd /home/britney
java homework1.problem2.Tester
or
c:
cd \Users\Britney
java homework1.problem2.Tester
```

---



## Computing & Society 8.1 Personal Computing

In 1971, Marcian E. "Ted" Hoff, an engineer at Intel Corporation, was working on a chip for a manufacturer of electronic calculators. He realized that it would be a better idea to develop a *general-purpose* chip that could be *programmed* to interface with the keys and display of a calculator, rather than to do yet another custom design. Thus, the *microprocessor* was born. At the time, its primary application was as a controller for calculators, washing machines, and the like. It took years for the computer industry to notice that a genuine central processing unit was now available as a single chip.

Hobbyists were the first to catch on. In 1974 the first computer *kit*, the Altair 8800, was available from MITS Electronics for about \$350. The kit consisted of the microprocessor, a circuit board, a very small amount of memory, toggle switches, and a row of

display lights. Purchasers had to solder and assemble it, then program it in machine language through the toggle switches. It was not a big hit.

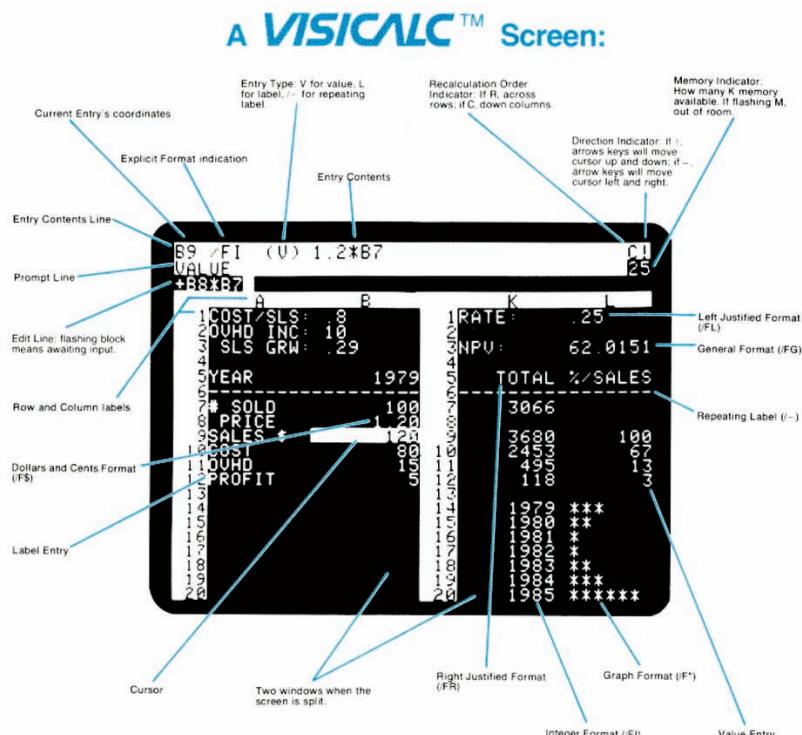
The first big hit was the Apple II. It was a real computer with a keyboard, a monitor, and a floppy disk drive. When it was first released, users had a \$3,000 machine that could play Space Invaders, run a primitive bookkeeping program, or let users program it in BASIC. The original Apple II did not even support lowercase letters, making it worthless for word processing. The breakthrough came in 1979 with a new spreadsheet program, VisiCalc. In a spreadsheet, you enter financial data and their relationships into a grid of rows and columns (see the figure). Then you modify some of the data and watch in real time how the others change. For example, you can see how changing the mix of widgets in a manufacturing plant might affect estimated

costs and profits. Corporate managers snapped up VisiCalc and the computer that was needed to run it. For them, the computer was a spreadsheet machine. More importantly, it was a personal device. The managers were free to do the calculations that they wanted to do, not just the ones that the "high priests" in the data center provided.

Personal computers have been with us ever since, and countless users have tinkered with their hardware and software, sometimes establishing highly successful companies or creating free software for millions of users. This "freedom to tinker" is an important part of personal computing. On a personal device, you should be able to install the software that you want to install to make you more productive or creative, even if that's not the same software that most people use. You should be able to add peripheral equipment of your choice. For the first thirty years of personal computing, this freedom was largely taken for granted.

We are now entering an era where smartphones, tablets, and smart TV sets are replacing functions that were traditionally fulfilled by personal computers. While it is amazing to carry more computing power in your cell phone than in the best personal computers of the 1990s, it is disturbing that we lose a degree of personal control. With some phone or tablet brands, you can only install those applications that the manufacturer publishes on the "app store". For example, Apple does not allow children to learn the Scratch language on the iPad. You'd think it would be in Apple's interest to encourage the next generation to be enthusiastic about programming, but they have a general policy of denying programmability on "their" devices, in order to thwart competitive environments such as Flash or Java.

When you select a device for making phone calls or watching movies, it is worth asking who is in control. Are you purchasing a personal device that you can use in any way you choose, or are you being tethered to a flow of data that is controlled by somebody else?



The Visicalc Spreadsheet Running on an Apple II

## 8.6 Unit Test Frameworks

Unit test frameworks simplify the task of writing classes that contain many test cases.

Up to now, we have used a very simple approach to testing. We provided tester classes whose `main` method computes values and prints actual and expected values. However, that approach has limitations. The `main` method gets messy if it contains many tests. And if an exception occurs during one of the tests, the remaining tests are not executed.

Unit testing frameworks were designed to quickly execute and evaluate test suites and to make it easy to incrementally add test cases. One of the most popular testing frameworks is JUnit. It is freely available at <http://junit.org>, and it is also built into a number of development environments, including BlueJ and Eclipse. Here we describe JUnit 4, the most current version of the library as this book is written.

When you use JUnit, you design a companion test class for each class that you develop. You provide a method for each test case that you want to have executed. You use “annotations” to mark the test methods. An annotation is an advanced Java feature that places a marker into the code that is interpreted by another tool. In the case of JUnit, the `@Test` annotation is used to mark test methods.

In each test case, you make some computations and then compute some condition that you believe to be true. You then pass the result to a method that communicates a test result to the framework, most commonly the `assertEquals` method. The `assertEquals` method takes as arguments the expected and actual values and, for floating-point numbers, a tolerance value.

It is also customary (but not required) that the name of the test class ends in `Test`, such as `CashRegisterTest`. Here is a typical example:

```
import org.junit.Test;
import org.junit.Assert;

public class CashRegisterTest
{
    @Test public void twoPurchases()
    {
        CashRegister register = new CashRegister();
        register.recordPurchase(0.75);
        register.recordPurchase(1.50);
        register.receivePayment(2, 0, 5, 0, 0);
        double expected = 0.25;
        Assert.assertEquals(expected, register.giveChange(), EPSILON);
    }
    // More test cases
    ...
}
```

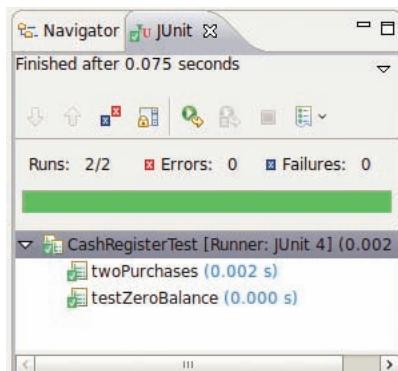
If all test cases pass, the JUnit tool shows a green bar (see Figure 7). If any of the test cases fail, the JUnit tool shows a red bar and an error message.

Your test class can also have other methods (whose names should not be annotated with `@Test`). These methods typically carry out steps that you want to share among test methods.

The JUnit philosophy is simple. Whenever you implement a class, also make a companion test class. You design the tests as you design the program, one test method at a time. The test cases just keep accumulating in the test class. Whenever you have detected an actual failure, add a test case that flushes it out, so that you can be sure

The JUnit philosophy is to run all tests whenever you change your code.

**Figure 7**  
Unit Testing with JUnit



that you won't introduce that particular bug again. Whenever you modify your class, simply run the tests again.

If all tests pass, the user interface shows a green bar and you can relax. Otherwise, there is a red bar, but that's also good. It is much easier to fix a bug in isolation than inside a complex program.

### SELF CHECK



24. Provide a JUnit test class with one test case for the `Earthquake` class in Chapter 5.
25. What is the significance of the `EPSILON` argument in the `assertEquals` method?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R8.27, E8.17, E8.18.

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### Find classes that are appropriate for solving a programming problem.

- A class should represent a single concept from a problem domain, such as business, science, or mathematics.

### Design methods that are cohesive, consistent, and minimize side effects.

- The public interface of a class is cohesive if all of its features are related to the concept that the class represents.
- A class depends on another class if its methods use that class in any way.
- An immutable class has no mutator methods.
- References to objects of an immutable class can be safely shared.
- A side effect of a method is any externally observable data modification.
- When designing methods, minimize side effects.
- In Java, a method can never change the contents of a variable that is passed to a method.
- In Java, a method can change the state of an object reference argument, but it cannot replace the object reference with another.



**Use patterns to design the data representation of an object.**

- An instance variable for the total is updated in methods that increase or decrease the total amount.
- A counter that counts events is incremented in methods that correspond to the events.
- An object can collect other objects in an array or array list.
- An object property can be accessed” with a getter method and changed with a setter method.
- If your object can have one of several states that affect the behavior, supply an instance variable for the current state.
- To model a moving object, you need to store and update its position.

**Understand the behavior of static variables and static methods.**

- A static variable belongs to the class, not to any object of the class.
- A static method is not invoked on an object.

**Use packages to organize sets of related classes.**

- A package is a set of related classes.
- The `import` directive lets you refer to a class of a package by its class name, without the package prefix.
- Use a domain name in reverse to construct an unambiguous package name.
- The path of a class file must match its package name.
- An instance variable or method that is not declared as `public` or `private` can be accessed by all classes in the same package, which is usually not desirable.

**Use JUnit for writing unit tests.**

- Unit test frameworks simplify the task of writing classes that contain many test cases.
- The JUnit philosophy is to run all tests whenever you change your code.

**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

- R8.1** Your task is to write a program that simulates a vending machine. Users select a product and provide payment. If the payment is sufficient to cover the purchase price of the product, the product is dispensed and change is given. Otherwise, the payment is returned to the user. Name an appropriate class for implementing this program. Name two classes that would not be appropriate and explain why.
- R8.2** Your task is to write a program that reads a customer's name and address, followed by a sequence of purchased items and their prices, and prints an invoice.

Discuss which of the following would be good classes for implementing this program:

- a.** Invoice
- b.** InvoicePrinter
- c.** PrintInvoice
- d.** InvoiceProgram

■■■ **R8.3** Your task is to write a program that computes paychecks. Employees are paid an hourly rate for each hour worked; however, if they worked more than 40 hours per week, they are paid at 150 percent of the regular rate for those overtime hours. Name an actor class that would be appropriate for implementing this program. Then name a class that isn't an actor class that would be an appropriate alternative. How does the choice between these alternatives affect the program structure?

■■ **R8.4** Look at the public interface of the `java.lang.System` class and discuss whether or not it is cohesive.

■■ **R8.5** Suppose an `Invoice` object contains descriptions of the products ordered, and the billing and shipping addresses of the customer. Draw a UML diagram showing the dependencies between the classes `Invoice`, `Address`, `Customer`, and `Product`.

■■ **R8.6** Suppose a vending machine contains products, and users insert coins into the vending machine to purchase products. Draw a UML diagram showing the dependencies between the classes `VendingMachine`, `Coin`, and `Product`.

■■ **R8.7** On which classes does the class `Integer` in the standard library depend?

■■ **R8.8** On which classes does the class `Rectangle` in the standard library depend?

■■ **R8.9** Classify the methods of the class `Scanner` that are used in this book as accessors and mutators.

■■ **R8.10** Classify the methods of the class `Rectangle` as accessors and mutators.

■■ **R8.11** Is the `Resistor` class in Exercise P8.8 a mutable or immutable class? Why?

■■ **R8.12** Which of the following classes are immutable?

- a.** `Rectangle`
- b.** `String`
- c.** `Random`

■■ **R8.13** Which of the following classes are immutable?

- a.** `PrintStream`
- b.** `Date`
- c.** `Integer`

**R8.14** Consider a method

```
public class DataSet
{
    /**
     * Reads all numbers from a scanner and adds them to this data set.
     * @param in a Scanner
     */
    public void read(Scanner in) { . . . }
    . . .
}
```

```

    }

```

Describe the side effects of the `read` method. Which of them are not recommended, according to Section 8.2.4? Which redesign eliminates the unwanted side effect? What is the effect of the redesign on coupling?

- R8.15** What side effect, if any, do the following three methods have?

```

public class Coin
{
    . . .
    public void print()
    {
        System.out.println(name + " " + value);
    }

    public void print(PrintStream stream)
    {
        stream.println(name + " " + value);
    }

    public String toString()
    {
        return name + " " + value;
    }
}

```

- R8.16** Ideally, a method should have no side effects. Can you write a program in which no method has a side effect? Would such a program be useful?

- R8.17** Consider the following method that is intended to swap the values of two integers:

```

public static void falseSwap(int a, int b)
{
    int temp = a;
    a = b;
    b = temp;
}

public static void main(String[] args)
{
    int x = 3;
    int y = 4;
    falseSwap(x, y);
    System.out.println(x + " " + y);
}

```

Why doesn't the method swap the contents of `x` and `y`?

- R8.18** How can you write a method that swaps two floating-point numbers?

*Hint:* `java.awt.Point`.

- R8.19** Draw a memory diagram that shows why the following method can't swap two `BankAccount` objects:

```

public static void falseSwap(BankAccount a, BankAccount b)
{
    BankAccount temp = a;
    a = b;
    b = temp;
}

```

- **R8.20** Consider an enhancement of the `Die` class of Chapter 6 with a static variable

```
public class Die
{
    private int sides;
    private static Random generator = new Random();
    public Die(int s) { . . . }
    public int cast() { . . . }
}
```

Draw a memory diagram that shows three dice:

```
Die d4 = new Die(4);
Die d6 = new Die(6);
Die d8 = new Die(8);
```

Be sure to indicate the values of the `sides` and `generator` variables.

- **R8.21** Try compiling the following program. Explain the error message that you get.

```
public class Print13
{
    public void print(int x)
    {
        System.out.println(x);
    }

    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        int n = 13;
        print(n);
    }
}
```

- **R8.22** Look at the methods in the `Integer` class. Which are static? Why?
- **R8.23** Look at the methods in the `String` class (but ignore the ones that take an argument of type `char[]`). Which are static? Why?
- **R8.24** The `in` and `out` variables of the `System` class are public static variables of the `System` class. Is that good design? If not, how could you improve on it?
- **R8.25** Every Java program can be rewritten to avoid `import` statements. Explain how, and rewrite `RectangleComponent.java` from Section 2.9.3 to avoid `import` statements.
- **R8.26** What is the default package? Have you used it before this chapter in your programming?
- Testing R8.27** What does JUnit do when a test method throws an exception? Try it out and report your findings.

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E8.1** Implement the `Coin` class described in Section 8.2. Modify the `CashRegister` class so that coins can be added to the cash register, by supplying a method

```
void receivePayment(int coinCount, Coin coinType)
```

The caller needs to invoke this method multiple times, once for each type of coin that is present in the payment.

- E8.2** Modify the `giveChange` method of the `CashRegister` class so that it returns the number of coins of a particular type to return:

```
int giveChange(Coin coinType)
```

The caller needs to invoke this method for each coin type, in decreasing value.

- E8.3** Real cash registers can handle both bills and coins. Design a single class that expresses the commonality of these concepts. Redesign the `CashRegister` class and provide a method for entering payments that are described by your class. Your primary challenge is to come up with a good name for this class.

- E8.4** Reimplement the `BankAccount` class so that it is immutable. The `deposit` and `withdraw` methods need to return new `BankAccount` objects with the appropriate balance.

- E8.5** Write static methods



- `public static double cubeVolume(double h)`
- `public static double cubeSurface(double h)`
- `public static double sphereVolume(double r)`
- `public static double sphereSurface(double r)`
- `public static double cylinderVolume(double r, double h)`
- `public static double cylinderSurface(double r, double h)`
- `public static double coneVolume(double r, double h)`
- `public static double coneSurface(double r, double h)`

that compute the volume and surface area of a cube with height `h`, sphere with radius `r`, a cylinder with circular base with radius `r` and height `h`, and a cone with circular base with radius `r` and height `h`. Place them into a class `Geometry`. Then write a program that prompts the user for the values of `r` and `h`, calls the six methods, and prints the results.

- E8.6** Solve Exercise E8.5 by implementing classes `Cube`, `Sphere`, `Cylinder`, and `Cone`. Which approach is more object-oriented?

- E8.7** Modify the application of How To 7.1 so that it can deal with multiple students. First, ask the user for all student names. Then read in the scores for all quizzes, prompting for the score of each student. Finally, print the names of all students and their final scores. Use a single class and only static methods.

- E8.8** Repeat Exercise E8.7, using multiple classes. Provide a `GradeBook` class that collects objects of type `Student`.

- E8.9** Write methods

```
public static double perimeter(Ellipse2D.Double e);
public static double area(Ellipse2D.Double e);
```

that compute the area and the perimeter of the ellipse `e`. Add these methods to a class `Geometry`. The challenging part of this assignment is to find and implement an accurate formula for the perimeter. Why does it make sense to use a static method in this case?

- E8.10** Write methods

```
public static double angle(Point2D.Double p, Point2D.Double q)
public static double slope(Point2D.Double p, Point2D.Double q)
```

that compute the angle between the  $x$ -axis and the line joining two points, measured in degrees, and the slope of that line. Add the methods to the class `Geometry`. Supply suitable preconditions. Why does it make sense to use a static method in this case?

■■■ **E8.11** Write methods

```
public static boolean isInside(Point2D.Double p, Ellipse2D.Double e)
    public static boolean isOnBoundary(Point2D.Double p, Ellipse2D.Double e)
```

that test whether a point is inside or on the boundary of an ellipse. Add the methods to the class `Geometry`.

■ **E8.12** Write a method

```
public static int readInt(
    Scanner in, String prompt, String error, int min, int max)
```

that displays the prompt string, reads an integer, and tests whether it is between the minimum and maximum. If not, print an error message and repeat reading the input. Add the method to a class `Input`.

■■■ **E8.13** Consider the following algorithm for computing  $x^n$  for an integer  $n$ . If  $n < 0$ ,  $x^n$  is  $1/x^{-n}$ . If  $n$  is positive and even, then  $x^n = (x^{n/2})^2$ . If  $n$  is positive and odd, then  $x^n = x^{n-1} \times x$ . Implement a static method `double intPower(double x, int n)` that uses this algorithm. Add it to a class called `Numeric`.

■■■ **E8.14** Improve the `Die` class of Chapter 6. Turn the generator variable into a static variable so that all needles share a single random number generator.

■■■ **E8.15** Implement `Coin` and `CashRegister` classes as described in Exercise E8.1. Place the classes into a package called `money`. Keep the `CashRegisterTester` class in the default package.

■ **E8.16** Place a `BankAccount` class in a package whose name is derived from your e-mail address, as described in Section 8.5. Keep the `BankAccountTester` class in the default package.

■■■ **Testing E8.17** Provide a JUnit test class `StudentTest` with three test methods, each of which tests a different method of the `Student` class in How To 7.1.

■■■ **Testing E8.18** Provide JUnit test class `TaxReturnTest` with three test methods that test different tax situations for the `TaxReturn` class in Chapter 5.

■ **Graphics E8.19** Write methods

- `public static void drawH(Graphics2D g2, Point2D.Double p);`
- `public static void drawE(Graphics2D g2, Point2D.Double p);`
- `public static void drawL(Graphics2D g2, Point2D.Double p);`
- `public static void drawO(Graphics2D g2, Point2D.Double p);`

that show the letters H, E, L, O in the graphics window, where the point `p` is the top-left corner of the letter. Then call the methods to draw the words “HELLO” and “HOLE” on the graphics display. Draw lines and ellipses. Do not use the `drawString` method. Do not use `System.out`.

■■■ **Graphics E8.20** Repeat Exercise E8.19 by designing classes `LetterH`, `LetterE`, `LetterL`, and `LetterO`, each with a constructor that takes a `Point2D.Double` parameter (the top-left corner) and a method `draw(Graphics2D g2)`. Which solution is more object-oriented?

**E8.21** Add a method `ArrayList<Double> getStatement()` to the `BankAccount` class that returns a list of all deposits and withdrawals as positive or negative values. Also add a method `void clearStatement()` that resets the statement.

**E8.22** Implement a class `LoginForm` that simulates a login form that you find on many web pages. Supply methods

```
public void input(String text)
public void click(String button)
public boolean loggedIn()
```

The first input is the user name, the second input is the password. The `click` method can be called with arguments "Submit" and "Reset". Once a user has been successfully logged in, by supplying the user name, password, and clicking on the submit button, the `loggedIn` method returns true and further input has no effect. When a user tries to log in with an invalid user name and password, the form is reset.

Supply a constructor with the expected user name and password.

**E8.23** Implement a class `Robot` that simulates a robot wandering on an infinite plane. The robot is located at a point with integer coordinates and faces north, east, south, or west. Supply methods

```
public void turnLeft()
public void turnRight()
public void move()
public Point getLocation()
public String getDirection()
```

The `turnLeft` and `turnRight` methods change the direction but not the location. The `move` method moves the robot by one unit in the direction it is facing. The `getDirection` method returns a string "N", "E", "S", or "W".

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

**■■■ P8.1** Declare a class `ComboLock` that works like the combination lock in a gym locker, as shown here. The lock is constructed with a combination—three numbers between 0 and 39. The `reset` method resets the dial so that it points to 0. The `turnLeft` and `turnRight` methods turn the dial by a given number of ticks to the left or right. The `open` method attempts to open the lock. The lock opens if the user first turned it right to the first number in the combination, then left to the second, and then right to the third.

```
public class ComboLock
{
    .
    .
    public ComboLock(int secret1, int secret2, int secret3) { . . . }
    public void reset() { . . . }
    public void turnLeft(int ticks) { . . . }
    public void turnRight(int ticks) { . . . }
    public boolean open() { . . . }
}
```



**■■■ Business P8.2** Implement a program that prints paychecks for a group of student assistants. Deduct federal and Social Security taxes. (You may want to use the tax computation used

in Chapter 5. Find out about Social Security taxes on the Internet.) Your program should prompt for the names, hourly wages, and hours worked of each student.

- P8.3 For faster sorting of letters, the United States Postal Service encourages companies that send large volumes of mail to use a bar code denoting the ZIP code (see Figure 8).

The encoding scheme for a five-digit ZIP code is shown in Figure 8. There are full-height frame bars on each side. The five encoded digits are followed by a check digit, which is computed as follows: Add up all digits, and choose the check digit to make the sum a multiple of 10. For example, the sum of the digits in the ZIP code 95014 is 19, so the check digit is 1 to make the sum equal to 20.

Each digit of the ZIP code, and the check digit, is encoded according to the table at right, where 0 denotes a half bar and 1 a full bar. Note that they represent all combinations of two full and three half bars. The digit can be computed easily from the bar code using the column weights 7, 4, 2, 1, 0. For example, 01100 is

$$0 \times 7 + 1 \times 4 + 1 \times 2 + 0 \times 1 + 0 \times 0 = 6$$

The only exception is 0, which would yield 11 according to the weight formula.

Digit	Weight				
	7	4	2	1	0
1	0	0	0	1	1
2	0	0	1	0	1
3	0	0	1	1	1
4	0	1	0	0	0
5	0	1	0	1	1
6	0	1	1	0	0
7	1	0	0	0	0
8	1	0	0	1	1
9	1	0	1	0	0
0	1	1	0	0	0

Write a program that asks the user for a ZIP code and prints the bar code. Use : for half bars, | for full bars. For example, 95014 becomes

||:|:::|:|:|||:::::||:|:::|:::|||

(Alternatively, write a graphical application that draws real bars.)

Your program should also be able to carry out the opposite conversion: Translate bars into their ZIP code, reporting any errors in the input format or a mismatch of the digits.

\*\*\*\*\* ECRLOT \*\* CO57

CODE C671RTS2  
JOHN DOE  
1009 FRANKLIN BLVD  
SUNNYVALE CA 95014 – 5143

CO57



Figure 8 A Postal Bar Code

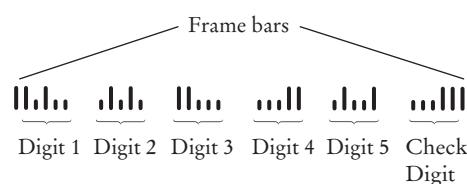


Figure 9 Encoding for Five-Digit Bar Codes

- Business P8.4 Design a Customer class to handle a customer loyalty marketing campaign. After accumulating \$100 in purchases, the customer receives a \$10 discount on the next purchase.

Provide methods

- `void makePurchase(double amount)`
- `boolean discountReached()`

Provide a test program and test a scenario in which a customer has earned a discount and then made over \$90, but less than \$100 in purchases. This should not result in a second discount. Then add another purchase that results in the second discount.

**■■■ Business P8.5** The Downtown Marketing Association wants to promote downtown shopping with a loyalty program similar to the one in Exercise P8.4. Shops are identified by a number between 1 and 20. Add a new parameter variable to the `makePurchase` method that indicates the shop. The discount is awarded if a customer makes purchases in at least three different shops, spending a total of \$100 or more.



**■■■ Science P8.6** Design a class `Cannonball` to model a cannonball that is fired into the air. A ball has

- An  $x$ - and a  $y$ -position.
- An  $x$ - and a  $y$ -velocity.

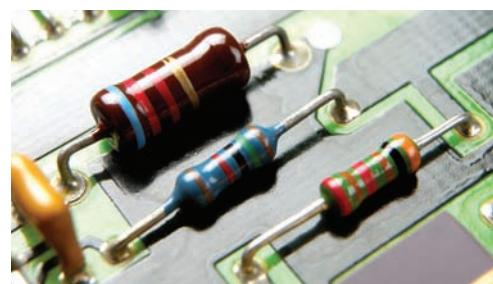
Supply the following methods:

- A constructor with an  $x$ -position (the  $y$ -position is initially 0)
- A method `move(double deltaSec)` that moves the ball to the next position. First compute the distance traveled in `deltaSec` seconds, using the current velocities, then update the  $x$ - and  $y$ -positions; then update the  $y$ -velocity by taking into account the gravitational acceleration of  $-9.81 \text{ m/s}^2$ ; the  $x$ -velocity is unchanged.
- A method `Point getLocation()` that gets the current location of the cannonball, rounded to integer coordinates
- A method `ArrayList<Point> shoot(double alpha, double v, double deltaSec)` whose arguments are the angle  $\alpha$  and initial velocity  $v$  (Compute the  $x$ -velocity as  $v \cos \alpha$  and the  $y$ -velocity as  $v \sin \alpha$ ; then keep calling `move` with the given time interval until the  $y$ -position is 0; return an array list of locations after each call to move).

Use this class in a program that prompts the user for the starting angle and the initial velocity. Then call `shoot` and print the locations.

**■ Graphics P8.7** Continue Exercise P8.6, and draw the trajectory of the cannonball.

**■■ Science P8.8** The colored bands on the top-most resistor shown in the photo at right indicate a resistance of  $6.2 \text{ k}\Omega \pm 5$  percent. The resistor tolerance of  $\pm 5$  percent indicates the acceptable variation in the resistance. A  $6.2 \text{ k}\Omega \pm 5$  percent resistor could have a resistance as small as  $5.89 \text{ k}\Omega$  or as large as  $6.51 \text{ k}\Omega$ . We say that  $6.2 \text{ k}\Omega$  is the *nominal value* of the



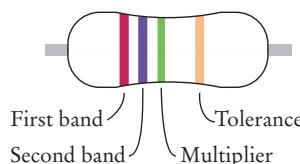
resistance and that the actual value of the resistance can be any value between 5.89 k $\Omega$  and 6.51 k $\Omega$ .

Write a program that represents a resistor as a class. Provide a single constructor that accepts values for the nominal resistance and tolerance and then determines the actual value randomly. The class should provide public methods to get the nominal resistance, tolerance, and the actual resistance.

Write a `main` method for the program that demonstrates that the class works properly by displaying actual resistances for ten 330  $\Omega \pm 10$  percent resistors.

- Science P8.9** In the Resistor class from Exercise P8.8, supply a method that returns a description of the “color bands” for the resistance and tolerance. A resistor has four color bands:

- The first band is the first significant digit of the resistance value.
- The second band is the second significant digit of the resistance value.
- The third band is the decimal multiplier.
- The fourth band indicates the tolerance.



Color	Digit	Multiplier	Tolerance
Black	0	$\times 10^0$	—
Brown	1	$\times 10^1$	$\pm 1\%$
Red	2	$\times 10^2$	$\pm 2\%$
Orange	3	$\times 10^3$	—
Yellow	4	$\times 10^4$	—
Green	5	$\times 10^5$	$\pm 0.5\%$
Blue	6	$\times 10^6$	$\pm 0.25\%$
Violet	7	$\times 10^7$	$\pm 0.1\%$
Gray	8	$\times 10^8$	$\pm 0.05\%$
White	9	$\times 10^9$	—
Gold	—	$\times 10^{-1}$	$\pm 5\%$
Silver	—	$\times 10^{-2}$	$\pm 10\%$
None	—	—	$\pm 20\%$

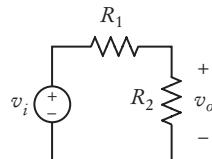
For example (using the values from the table as a key), a resistor with red, violet, green, and gold bands (left to right) will have 2 as the first digit, 7 as the second digit, a multiplier of  $10^5$ , and a tolerance of  $\pm 5$  percent, for a resistance of 2,700 k $\Omega$ , plus or minus 5 percent.

- Science P8.10** The figure below shows a frequently used electric circuit called a “voltage divider”. The input to the circuit is the voltage  $v_i$ . The output is the voltage  $v_o$ . The output of

a voltage divider is proportional to the input, and the constant of proportionality is called the “gain” of the circuit. The voltage divider is represented by the equation

$$G = \frac{v_o}{v_i} = \frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2}$$

where  $G$  is the gain and  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  are the resistances of the two resistors that comprise the voltage divider.



Manufacturing variations cause the actual resistance values to deviate from the nominal values, as described in Exercise P8.8. In turn, variations in the resistance values cause variations in the values of the gain of the voltage divider. We calculate the *nominal value of the gain* using the nominal resistance values and the *actual value of the gain* using actual resistance values.

Write a program that contains two classes, `VoltageDivider` and `Resistor`. The `Resistor` class is described in Exercise P8.8. The `VoltageDivider` class should have two instance variables that are objects of the `Resistor` class. Provide a single constructor that accepts two `Resistor` objects, nominal values for their resistances, and the resistor tolerance. The class should provide public methods to get the nominal and actual values of the voltage divider’s gain.

Write a `main` method for the program that demonstrates that the class works properly by displaying nominal and actual gain for ten voltage dividers each consisting of 5 percent resistors having nominal values  $R_1 = 250 \Omega$  and  $R_2 = 750 \Omega$ .

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. Look for nouns in the problem description.
2. Yes (`ChessBoard`) and no (`MovePiece`).
3. Some of its features deal with payments, others with coin values.
4. None of the coin operations require the `CashRegister` class.
5. If a class doesn’t depend on another, it is not affected by interface changes in the other class.
6. It is an accessor—calling `substring` doesn’t modify the string on which the method is invoked. In fact, all methods of the `String` class are accessors.
7. No—`translate` is a mutator method.
8. It is a side effect; this kind of side effect is common in object-oriented programming.
9. Yes—the method affects the state of the `Scanner` argument.
10. It needs to be incremented in the `deposit` and `withdraw` methods. There also needs to be some method to reset it after the end of a statement period.
11. The `giveChange` method is a mutator that returns a value that cannot be determined any other way. Here is a better design. The `receivePayment` method could decrease the `purchase` instance variable. Then the program user would call `receivePayment`, determine the change by calling `getAmountDue`, and call the `clear` method to reset the cash register for the next sale.
12. The `ArrayList<String>` instance variable is private, and the class users cannot access it.

- 13.** You need to supply an instance variable that can hold the prices for all purchased items. This could be an `ArrayList<Double>` or `ArrayList<String>`, or it could simply be a `String` to which you append lines. The instance variable needs to be updated in the `recordPurchase` method. You also need a method that returns the receipt.
- 14.** The tax ID of an employee does not change, and no setter method should be supplied. The salary of an employee can change, and both getter and setter methods should be supplied.
- 15.** Section 8.2.3 suggests that a setter should return `void`, or perhaps a convenience value that the user can also determine in some other way. In this situation, the caller could check whether `newName` is blank, so the change is fine.
- 16.** It is an example of the “state pattern” described in Section 8.3.5. The direction is a state that changes when the bug turns, and it affects how the bug moves.
- 17.** `System.in` and `System.out`.
- 18.** `Math.PI`
- 19.** The method needs no data of any object. The only required input is the `values` argument.
- 20.** Yes, it works. Static methods can access static variables of the same class. But it is a terrible idea. As your programming tasks get more complex, you will want to use objects and classes to organize your programs.
- 21.** (a) No; (b) Yes; (c) Yes; (d) No
- 22.** No—you can use fully qualified names for all other classes, such as `java.util.Random` and `java.awt.Rectangle`.
- 23.** `/home/me/cs101/hw1/problem1` or, on Windows, `c:\Users\Me\cs101\hw1\problem1`.
- 24.** Here is one possible answer.
- ```
public class EarthquakeTest
{
    @Test public void testLevel14()
    {
        Earthquake quake = new Earthquake(4);
        Assert.assertEquals(
            "Felt by many people, no destruction",
            quake.getDescription());
    }
}
```
- 25.** It is a tolerance threshold for comparing floating-point numbers. We want the equality test to pass if there is a small roundoff error.

# INHERITANCE

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To learn about inheritance
- To implement subclasses that inherit and override superclass methods
- To understand the concept of polymorphism
- To be familiar with the common superclass `Object` and its methods

## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### 9.1 INHERITANCE HIERARCHIES 422

*Programming Tip 9.1:* Use a Single Class for Variation in Values, Inheritance for Variation in Behavior 426

### 9.2 IMPLEMENTING SUBCLASSES 426

*Syntax 9.1:* Subclass Declaration 428

*Common Error 9.1:* Replicating Instance Variables from the Superclass 430

*Common Error 9.2:* Confusing Super- and Subclasses 430

### 9.3 OVERRIDING METHODS 431

*Syntax 9.2:* Calling a Superclass Method 431

*Common Error 9.3:* Accidental Overloading 435

*Common Error 9.4:* Forgetting to Use `super` When Invoking a Superclass Method 435

*Special Topic 9.1:* Calling the Superclass Constructor 436

*Syntax 9.3:* Constructor with Superclass Initializer 436

### 9.4 POLYMORPHISM 437

*Special Topic 9.2:* Dynamic Method Lookup and the Implicit Parameter 440

*Special Topic 9.3:* Abstract Classes 441

*Special Topic 9.4:* Final Methods and Classes 442

*Special Topic 9.5:* Protected Access 442

*How To 9.1:* Developing an Inheritance Hierarchy 443

*Worked Example 9.1:* Implementing an Employee Hierarchy for Payroll Processing 

### 9.5 OBJECT: THE COSMIC SUPERCLASS 448

*Syntax 9.4:* The `instanceof` Operator 451

*Common Error 9.5:* Don't Use Type Tests 452

*Special Topic 9.6:* Inheritance and the `toString` Method 453

*Special Topic 9.7:* Inheritance and the `equals` Method 454

*Computing & Society 9.1:* Who Controls the Internet? 454





Objects from related classes usually share common behavior. For example, cars, bicycles, and buses all provide transportation. In this chapter, you will learn how the notion of inheritance expresses the relationship between specialized and general classes. By using inheritance, you will be able to share code between classes and provide services that can be used by multiple classes.

## 9.1 Inheritance Hierarchies

A subclass inherits data and behavior from a superclass.

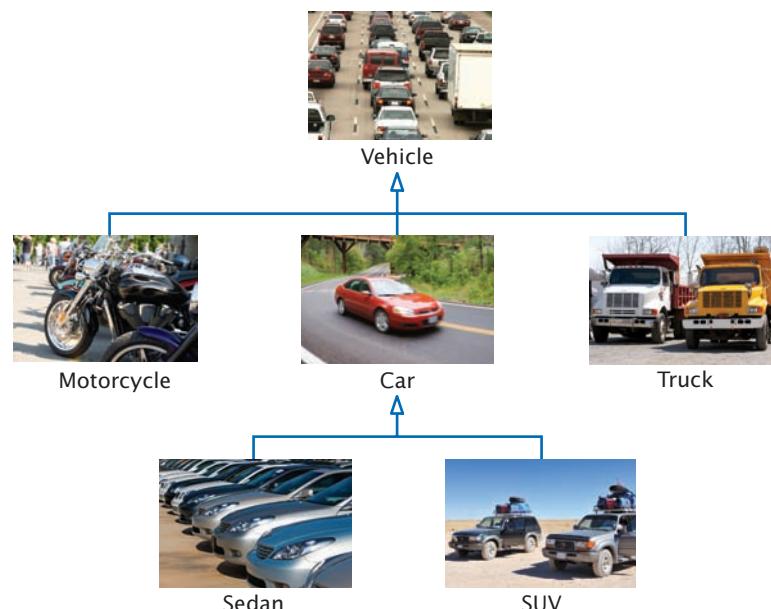
You can always use a subclass object in place of a superclass object.

In object-oriented design, **inheritance** is a relationship between a more general class (called the **superclass**) and a more specialized class (called the **subclass**). The subclass inherits data and behavior from the superclass. For example, consider the relationships between different kinds of vehicles depicted in Figure 1.

Every car *is a* vehicle. Cars share the common traits of all vehicles, such as the ability to transport people from one place to another. We say that the class `Car` inherits from the class `Vehicle`. In this relationship, the `Vehicle` class is the superclass and the `Car` class is the subclass. In Figure 2, the superclass and subclass are joined with an arrow that points to the superclass.

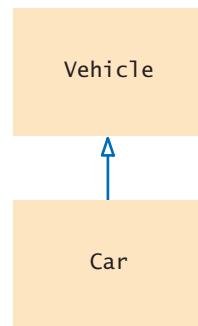
When you use inheritance in your programs, you can reuse code instead of duplicating it. This reuse comes in two forms. First, a subclass inherits the methods of the superclass. For example, if the `Vehicle` class has a `drive` method, then a subclass `Car` automatically inherits the method. It need not be duplicated.

The second form of reuse is more subtle. You can reuse algorithms that manipulate `Vehicle` objects. Because a car is a special kind of vehicle, we can use a `Car` object in such an algorithm, and it will work correctly. The **substitution principle** states that



**Figure 1** An Inheritance Hierarchy of Vehicle Classes

**Figure 2**  
An Inheritance Diagram



that you can always use a subclass object when a superclass object is expected. For example, consider a method that takes an argument of type `Vehicle`:

```
void processVehicle(Vehicle v)
```

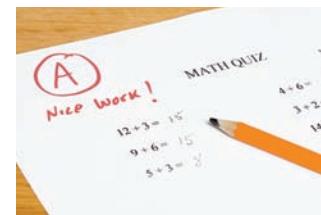
Because `Car` is a subclass of `Vehicle`, you can call that method with a `Car` object:

```
Car myCar = new Car(. . .);
processVehicle(myCar);
```

Why provide a method that processes `Vehicle` objects instead of `Car` objects? That method is more useful because it can handle *any* kind of vehicle (including `Truck` and `Motorcycle` objects).

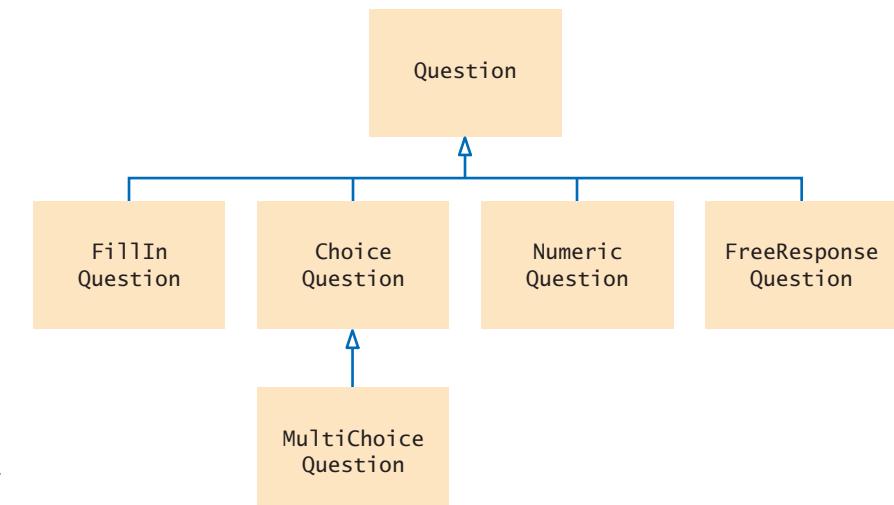
In this chapter, we will consider a simple hierarchy of classes. Most likely, you have taken computer-graded quizzes. A quiz consists of questions, and there are different kinds of questions:

- Fill-in-the-blank
- Choice (single or multiple)
- Numeric (where an approximate answer is ok; e.g., 1.33 when the actual answer is  $4/3$ )
- Free response



We will develop a simple but flexible quiz-taking program to illustrate inheritance.

Figure 3 shows an inheritance hierarchy for these question types.



**Figure 3**  
Inheritance Hierarchy  
of Question Types

At the root of this hierarchy is the `Question` type. A question can display its text, and it can check whether a given response is a correct answer.

### section\_1/Question.java

```
1  /**
2   * A question with a text and an answer.
3  */
4  public class Question
5  {
6      private String text;
7      private String answer;
8
9      /**
10     * Constructs a question with empty question and answer.
11    */
12    public Question()
13    {
14        text = "";
15        answer = "";
16    }
17
18    /**
19     * Sets the question text.
20     * @param questionText the text of this question
21    */
22    public void setText(String questionText)
23    {
24        text = questionText;
25    }
26
27    /**
28     * Sets the answer for this question.
29     * @param correctResponse the answer
30    */
31    public void setAnswer(String correctResponse)
32    {
33        answer = correctResponse;
34    }
35
36    /**
37     * Checks a given response for correctness.
38     * @param response the response to check
39     * @return true if the response was correct, false otherwise
40    */
41    public boolean checkAnswer(String response)
42    {
43        return response.equals(answer);
44    }
45
46    /**
47     * Displays this question.
48    */
49    public void display()
50    {
51        System.out.println(text);
52    }
53 }
```

This `Question` class is very basic. It does not handle multiple-choice questions, numeric questions, and so on. In the following sections, you will see how to form subclasses of the `Question` class.

Here is a simple test program for the `Question` class:

### section\_1/QuestionDemo1.java

```

1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 /**
4  * This program shows a simple quiz with one question.
5 */
6 public class QuestionDemo1
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
11
12         Question q = new Question();
13         q.setText("Who was the inventor of Java?");
14         q.setAnswer("James Gosling");
15
16         q.display();
17         System.out.print("Your answer: ");
18         String response = in.nextLine();
19         System.out.println(q.checkAnswer(response));
20     }
21 }
```

### Program Run

```

Who was the inventor of Java?
Your answer: James Gosling
true
```



### SELF CHECK

1. Consider classes `Manager` and `Employee`. Which should be the superclass and which should be the subclass?
2. What are the inheritance relationships between classes `BankAccount`, `CheckingAccount`, and `SavingsAccount`?
3. What are all the superclasses of the `JFrame` class? Consult the Java API documentation or Appendix D.
4. Consider the method `doSomething(Car c)`. List all vehicle classes from Figure 1 whose objects *cannot* be passed to this method.
5. Should a class `Quiz` inherit from the class `Question`? Why or why not?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R9.1, R9.7, R9.9.

## Programming Tip 9.1



### Use a Single Class for Variation in Values, Inheritance for Variation in Behavior

The purpose of inheritance is to model objects with different *behavior*. When students first learn about inheritance, they have a tendency to overuse it, by creating multiple classes even though the variation could be expressed with a simple instance variable.

Consider a program that tracks the fuel efficiency of a fleet of cars by logging the distance traveled and the refueling amounts. Some cars in the fleet are hybrids. Should you create a subclass `HybridCar`? Not in this application. Hybrids don't behave any differently than other cars when it comes to driving and refueling. They just have a better fuel efficiency. A single `Car` class with an instance variable

```
double milesPerGallon;
```

is entirely sufficient.

However, if you write a program that shows how to repair different kinds of vehicles, then it makes sense to have a separate class `HybridCar`. When it comes to repairs, hybrid cars behave differently from other cars.

## 9.2 Implementing Subclasses

In this section, you will see how to form a subclass and how a subclass automatically inherits functionality from its superclass.

Suppose you want to write a program that handles questions such as the following:

In which country was the inventor of Java born?

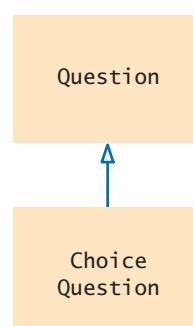
1. Australia
2. Canada
3. Denmark
4. United States

You could write a `ChoiceQuestion` class from scratch, with methods to set up the question, display it, and check the answer. But you don't have to. Instead, use inheritance and implement `ChoiceQuestion` as a subclass of the `Question` class (see Figure 4).

In Java, you form a subclass by specifying what makes the subclass *different from* its superclass.

Subclass objects automatically have the instance variables that are declared in the superclass. You only declare instance variables that are not part of the superclass objects.

A subclass inherits all methods that it does not override.



**Figure 4**  
The `ChoiceQuestion` Class is a Subclass of the `Question` Class

*Like the manufacturer of a stretch limo, who starts with a regular car and modifies it, a programmer makes a subclass by modifying another class.*



A subclass can override a superclass method by providing a new implementation.

The subclass inherits all public methods from the superclass. You declare any methods that are *new* to the subclass, and *change* the implementation of inherited methods if the inherited behavior is not appropriate. When you supply a new implementation for an inherited method, you **override** the method.

A ChoiceQuestion object differs from a Question object in three ways:

- Its objects store the various choices for the answer.
- There is a method for adding answer choices.
- The `display` method of the ChoiceQuestion class shows these choices so that the respondent can choose one of them.

When the ChoiceQuestion class inherits from the Question class, it needs to spell out these three differences:

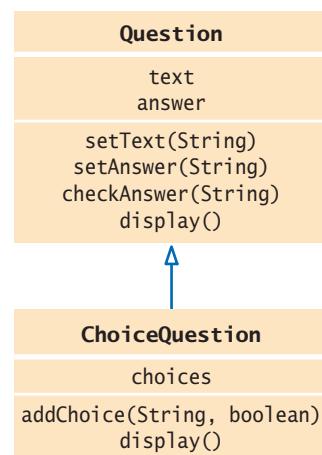
```
public class ChoiceQuestion extends Question
{
    // This instance variable is added to the subclass
    private ArrayList<String> choices;

    // This method is added to the subclass
    public void addChoice(String choice, boolean correct) { . . . }

    // This method overrides a method from the superclass
    public void display() { . . . }
}
```

The `extends` reserved word indicates that a class inherits from a superclass.

The reserved word `extends` denotes inheritance. Figure 5 shows how the methods and instance variables are captured in a UML diagram.



**Figure 5**

The ChoiceQuestion Class Adds an Instance Variable and a Method, and Overrides a Method

## Syntax 9.1 Subclass Declaration

```
Syntax    public class SubclassName extends SuperclassName
{        instance variables
           methods
}
```

The reserved word `extends` denotes inheritance.

Declare instance variables that are added to the subclass.

Declare methods that are added to the subclass.

Declare methods that the subclass overrides.

```
Subclass                      Superclass
public class ChoiceQuestion extends Question
{
    private ArrayList<String> choices;
    public void addChoice(String choice, boolean correct) { . . . }
    public void display() { . . . }
}
```

Figure 6 shows the layout of a `ChoiceQuestion` object. It has the `text` and `answer` instance variables that are declared in the `Question` superclass, and it adds an additional instance variable, `choices`.

The `addChoice` method is specific to the `ChoiceQuestion` class. You can only apply it to `ChoiceQuestion` objects, not general `Question` objects.

In contrast, the `display` method is a method that already exists in the superclass. The subclass overrides this method, so that the choices can be properly displayed.

All other methods of the `Question` class are automatically inherited by the `ChoiceQuestion` class.

You can call the inherited methods on a subclass object:

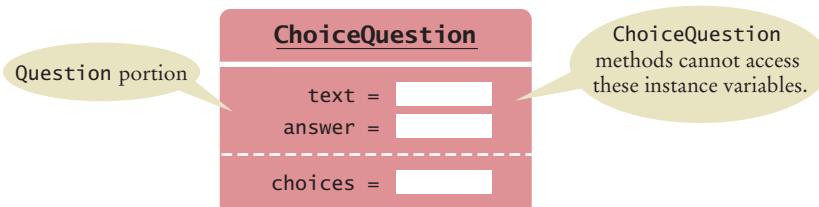
```
choiceQuestion.setAnswer("2");
```

However, the private instance variables of the superclass are inaccessible. Because these variables are private data of the superclass, only the superclass has access to them. The subclass has no more access rights than any other class.

In particular, the `ChoiceQuestion` methods cannot directly access the instance variable `answer`. These methods must use the public interface of the `Question` class to access its private data, just like every other method.

To illustrate this point, let's implement the `addChoice` method. The method has two arguments: the choice to be added (which is appended to the list of choices), and a Boolean value to indicate whether this choice is correct.

**Figure 6**  
Data Layout of a Subclass Object



For example,

```
question.addChoice("Canada", true);
```

The first argument is added to the choices variable. If the second argument is true, then the answer instance variable becomes the number of the current choice. For example, if choices.size() is 2, then answer is set to the string "2".

```
public void addChoice(String choice, boolean correct)
{
    choices.add(choice);
    if (correct)
    {
        // Convert choices.size() to string
        String choiceString = "" + choices.size();
        setAnswer(choiceString);
    }
}
```

#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that shows a simple Car class extending a Vehicle class.

You can't just access the answer variable in the superclass. Fortunately, the Question class has a setAnswer method. You can call that method. On which object? The question that you are currently modifying—that is, the implicit parameter of the ChoiceQuestion.addChoice method. Remember, if you invoke a method on the implicit parameter, you don't have to specify the implicit parameter and can write just the method name:

```
setAnswer(choiceString);
```

If you prefer, you can make it clear that the method is executed on the implicit parameter:

```
this.setAnswer(choiceString);
```

#### SELF CHECK



6. Suppose q is an object of the class Question and cq an object of the class ChoiceQuestion. Which of the following calls are legal?
  - a. q.setAnswer(response)
  - b. cq.setAnswer(response)
  - c. q.addChoice(choice, true)
  - d. cq.addChoice(choice, true)
7. Suppose the class Employee is declared as follows:

```
public class Employee
{
    private String name;
    private double baseSalary;

    public void setName(String newName) { . . . }
    public void setBaseSalary(double newSalary) { . . . }
    public String getName() { . . . }
    public double getSalary() { . . . }
}
```

Declare a class Manager that inherits from the class Employee and adds an instance variable bonus for storing a salary bonus. Omit constructors and methods.

8. Which instance variables does the Manager class from Self Check 7 have?
9. In the Manager class, provide the method header (but not the implementation) for a method that overrides the getSalary method from the class Employee.

**10.** Which methods does the Manager class from Self Check 9 inherit?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R9.3, E9.6, E9.10.

### Common Error 9.1



#### Replicating Instance Variables from the Superclass

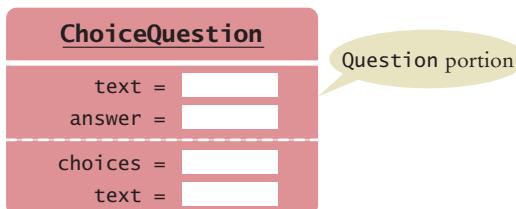
A subclass has no access to the private instance variables of the superclass.

```
public ChoiceQuestion(String questionText)
{
    text = questionText; // Error—tries to access private superclass variable
}
```

When faced with a compiler error, beginners commonly “solve” this issue by adding *another* instance variable with the same name to the subclass:

```
public class ChoiceQuestion extends Question
{
    private ArrayList<String> choices;
    private String text; // Don't!
    .
}
```

Sure, now the constructor compiles, but it doesn’t set the correct text! Such a ChoiceQuestion object has two instance variables, both named text. The constructor sets one of them, and the display method displays the other. The correct solution is to access the instance variable of the superclass through the public interface of the superclass. In our example, the ChoiceQuestion constructor should call the setText method of the Question class.



### Common Error 9.2



#### Confusing Super- and Subclasses

If you compare an object of type ChoiceQuestion with an object of type Question, you find that

- The reserved word extends suggests that the ChoiceQuestion object is an extended version of a Question.
- The ChoiceQuestion object is larger; it has an added instance variable, choices.
- The ChoiceQuestion object is more capable; it has an addChoice method.

It seems a superior object in every way. So why is ChoiceQuestion called the *subclass* and Question the *superclass*?

The *super/sub* terminology comes from set theory. Look at the set of all questions. Not all of them are ChoiceQuestion objects; some of them are other kinds of questions. Therefore, the set of ChoiceQuestion objects is a *subset* of the set of all Question objects, and the set of Question objects is a *superset* of the set of ChoiceQuestion objects. The more specialized objects in the subset have a richer state and more capabilities.

## 9.3 Overriding Methods

An overriding method can extend or replace the functionality of the superclass method.

The subclass inherits the methods from the superclass. If you are not satisfied with the behavior of an inherited method, you **override** it by specifying a new implementation in the subclass.

Consider the `display` method of the `ChoiceQuestion` class. It overrides the superclass `display` method in order to show the choices for the answer. This method *extends* the functionality of the superclass version. This means that the subclass method carries out the action of the superclass method (in our case, displaying the question text), and it also does some additional work (in our case, displaying the choices). In other cases, a subclass method *replaces* the functionality of a superclass method, implementing an entirely different behavior.

Let us turn to the implementation of the `display` method of the `ChoiceQuestion` class. The method needs to

- **Display the question text.**
- **Display the answer choices.**

The second part is easy because the answer choices are an instance variable of the subclass.

```
public class ChoiceQuestion
{
    . . .
    public void display()
    {
        // Display the question text
        . . .
        // Display the answer choices
        for (int i = 0; i < choices.size(); i++)
        {
            int choiceNumber = i + 1;
            System.out.println(choiceNumber + ": " + choices.get(i));
        }
    }
}
```

But how do you get the question text? You can't access the `text` variable of the superclass directly because it is private.

### Syntax 9.2 Calling a Superclass Method

**Syntax**    `super.methodName(parameters);`

```
public void deposit(double amount)
{
    transactionCount++;
    super.deposit(amount);
}
```

Calls the method  
of the superclass  
instead of the method  
of the current class.

If you omit `super`, this method calls itself.

See page 435.

Use the reserved word `super` to call a superclass method.

Instead, you can call the `display` method of the superclass, by using the reserved word `super`:

```
public void display()
{
    // Display the question text
    super.display(); // OK
    // Display the answer choices
    . . .
}
```

If you omit the reserved word `super`, then the method will not work as intended.

```
public void display()
{
    // Display the question text
    display(); // Error—invokes this.display()
    . . .
}
```

Because the implicit parameter `this` is of type `ChoiceQuestion`, and there is a method named `display` in the `ChoiceQuestion` class, that method will be called—but that is just the method you are currently writing! The method would call itself over and over.

Note that `super`, unlike `this`, is *not* a reference to an object. There is no separate superclass object—the subclass object contains the instance variables of the superclass. Instead, `super` is simply a reserved word that forces execution of the superclass method.

Here is the complete program that lets you take a quiz consisting of two `ChoiceQuestion` objects. We construct both objects and pass them to a method `presentQuestion`. That method displays the question to the user and checks whether the user response is correct.

### **section\_3/QuestionDemo2.java**

```
1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 /**
4  * This program shows a simple quiz with two choice questions.
5 */
6 public class QuestionDemo2
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10         ChoiceQuestion first = new ChoiceQuestion();
11         first.setText("What was the original name of the Java language?");
12         first.addChoice("*7", false);
13         first.addChoice("Duke", false);
14         first.addChoice("Oak", true);
15         first.addChoice("Gosling", false);
16
17         ChoiceQuestion second = new ChoiceQuestion();
18         second.setText("In which country was the inventor of Java born?");
19         second.addChoice("Australia", false);
20         second.addChoice("Canada", true);
21         second.addChoice("Denmark", false);
22         second.addChoice("United States", false);
23
24         presentQuestion(first);
25         presentQuestion(second);
```



```

26     }
27
28     /**
29      * Presents a question to the user and checks the response.
30      * @param q the question
31     */
32     public static void presentQuestion(ChoiceQuestion q)
33     {
34         q.display();
35         System.out.print("Your answer: ");
36         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
37         String response = in.nextLine();
38         System.out.println(q.checkAnswer(response));
39     }
40 }
```

### section\_3/ChoiceQuestion.java

```

1  import java.util.ArrayList;
2
3  /**
4   * A question with multiple choices.
5   */
6  public class ChoiceQuestion extends Question
7  {
8      private ArrayList<String> choices;
9
10     /**
11      * Constructs a choice question with no choices.
12     */
13     public ChoiceQuestion()
14     {
15         choices = new ArrayList<String>();
16     }
17
18     /**
19      * Adds an answer choice to this question.
20      * @param choice the choice to add
21      * @param correct true if this is the correct choice, false otherwise
22     */
23     public void addChoice(String choice, boolean correct)
24     {
25         choices.add(choice);
26         if (correct)
27         {
28             // Convert choices.size() to string
29             String choiceString = "" + choices.size();
30             setAnswer(choiceString);
31         }
32     }
33
34     public void display()
35     {
36         // Display the question text
37         super.display();
38         // Display the answer choices
39         for (int i = 0; i < choices.size(); i++)
40         {
```

```

41     int choiceNumber = i + 1;
42     System.out.println(choiceNumber + ": " + choices.get(i));
43   }
44 }
45 }
```

### Program Run

```

What was the original name of the Java language?
1: *7
2: Duke
3: Oak
4: Gosling
Your answer: *7
false
In which country was the inventor of Java born?
1: Australia
2: Canada
3: Denmark
4: United States
Your answer: 2
true
```

### SELF CHECK



11. What is wrong with the following implementation of the `display` method?

```

public class ChoiceQuestion
{
    .
    .
    public void display()
    {
        System.out.println(text);
        for (int i = 0; i < choices.size(); i++)
        {
            int choiceNumber = i + 1;
            System.out.println(choiceNumber + ": " + choices.get(i));
        }
    }
}
```

12. What is wrong with the following implementation of the `display` method?

```

public class ChoiceQuestion
{
    .
    .
    public void display()
    {
        this.display();
        for (int i = 0; i < choices.size(); i++)
        {
            int choiceNumber = i + 1;
            System.out.println(choiceNumber + ": " + choices.get(i));
        }
    }
}
```

13. Look again at the implementation of the `addChoice` method that calls the `setAnswer` method of the superclass. Why don't you need to call `super.setAnswer`?

14. In the `Manager` class of Self Check 7, override the `getName` method so that managers have a \* before their name (such as \*Lin, Sally).

- 15.** In the Manager class of Self Check 9, override the getSalary method so that it returns the sum of the salary and the bonus.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E9.1, E9.2, E9.11.

### Common Error 9.3



#### Accidental Overloading

In Java, two methods can have the same name, provided they differ in their parameter types. For example, the `PrintStream` class has methods called `println` with headers

```
void println(int x)
and
void println(String x)
```

These are different methods, each with its own implementation. The Java compiler considers them to be completely unrelated. We say that the `println` name is **overloaded**. This is different from overriding, where a subclass method provides an implementation of a method whose parameter variables have the *same* types.

If you mean to override a method but use a parameter variable with a different type, then you accidentally introduce an overloaded method. For example,

```
public class ChoiceQuestion extends Question
{
    ...
    public void display(PrintStream out)
        // Does not override void display()
    {
        ...
    }
}
```

The compiler will not complain. It thinks that you want to provide a method just for `PrintStream` arguments, while inheriting another method `void display()`.

When overriding a method, be sure to check that the types of the parameter variables match exactly.

### Common Error 9.4



#### Forgetting to Use super When Invoking a Superclass Method

A common error in extending the functionality of a superclass method is to forget the reserved word `super`. For example, to compute the salary of a manager, get the salary of the underlying `Employee` object and add a bonus:

```
public class Manager
{
    ...
    public double getSalary()
    {
        double baseSalary = getSalary();
        // Error: should be super.getSalary()
        return baseSalary + bonus;
    }
}
```

Here `getSalary()` refers to the `getSalary` method applied to the implicit parameter of the method. The implicit parameter is of type `Manager`, and there is a `getSalary` method in the

Manager class. Calling that method is a recursive call, which will never stop. Instead, you must tell the compiler to invoke the superclass method.

Whenever you call a superclass method from a subclass method with the same name, be sure to use the reserved word `super`.

### Special Topic 9.1



### Calling the Superclass Constructor

Consider the process of constructing a subclass object. A subclass constructor can only initialize the instance variables of the subclass. But the superclass instance variables also need to be initialized. Unless you specify otherwise, the superclass instance variables are initialized with the constructor of the superclass that has no arguments.

In order to specify another constructor, you use the `super` reserved word, together with the arguments of the superclass constructor, as the *first statement* of the subclass constructor.

For example, suppose the `Question` superclass had a constructor for setting the question text. Here is how a subclass constructor could call that superclass constructor:

```
public ChoiceQuestion(String questionText)
{
    super(questionText);
    choices = new ArrayList<String>();
}
```

In our example program, we used the superclass constructor with no arguments. However, if all superclass constructors have arguments, you must use the `super` syntax and provide the arguments for a superclass constructor.

When the reserved word `super` is followed by a parenthesis, it indicates a call to the superclass constructor. When used in this way, the constructor call must be *the first statement of the subclass constructor*. If `super` is followed by a period and a method name, on the other hand, it indicates a call to a superclass method, as you saw in the preceding section. Such a call can be made anywhere in any subclass method.

Unless specified otherwise, the subclass constructor calls the superclass constructor with no arguments.

To call a superclass constructor, use the super reserved word in the first statement of the subclass constructor.

The constructor of a subclass can pass arguments to a superclass constructor, using the reserved word `super`.

### Syntax 9.3 Constructor with Superclass Initializer

|               |                                                                   |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Syntax</b> | <code>public ClassName(parameterType parameterName, . . .)</code> |
|               | {                                                                 |
|               | <code>super(arguments);</code>                                    |
|               | . . .                                                             |
|               | }                                                                 |

The superclass constructor is called first.

The constructor body can contain additional statements.

```
public ChoiceQuestion(String questionText)
{
    super(questionText);
    choices = new ArrayList<String>;
```

If you omit the superclass constructor call, the superclass constructor with no arguments is invoked.

## 9.4 Polymorphism

In this section, you will learn how to use inheritance for processing objects of different types in the same program.

Consider our first sample program. It presented two `Question` objects to the user. The second sample program presented two `ChoiceQuestion` objects. Can we write a program that shows a mixture of both question types?

With inheritance, this goal is very easy to realize. In order to present a question to the user, we need not know the exact type of the question. We just display the question and check whether the user supplied the correct answer. The `Question` superclass has methods for displaying and checking. Therefore, we can simply declare the parameter variable of the `presentQuestion` method to have the type `Question`:

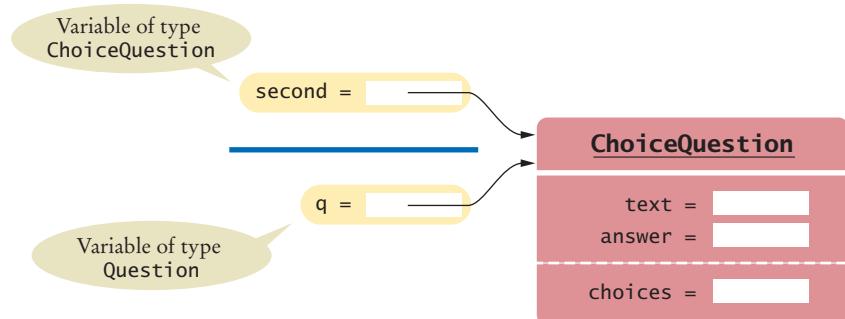
```
public static void presentQuestion(Question q)
{
    q.display();
    System.out.print("Your answer: ");
    Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
    String response = in.nextLine();
    System.out.println(q.checkAnswer(response));
}
```

A subclass reference  
can be used when a  
superclass reference  
is expected.

As discussed in Section 9.1, we can substitute a subclass object whenever a superclass object is expected:

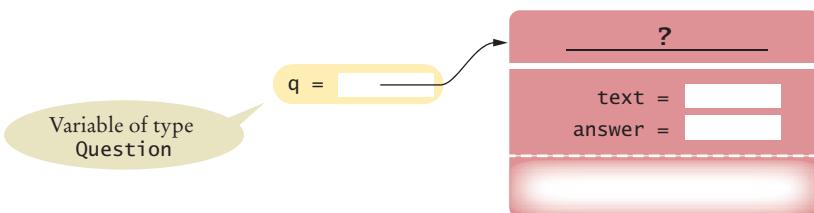
```
ChoiceQuestion second = new ChoiceQuestion();
...
presentQuestion(second); // OK to pass a ChoiceQuestion
```

When the `presentQuestion` method executes, the object references stored in `second` and `q` refer to the same object of type `ChoiceQuestion` (see Figure 7).



**Figure 7**  
Variables of Different  
Types Referring to the  
Same Object

However, the *variable* `q` knows less than the full story about the object to which it refers (see Figure 8).



**Figure 8**  
A Question Reference  
Can Refer to an Object  
of Any Subclass  
of Question

*In the same way that vehicles can differ in their method of locomotion, polymorphic objects carry out tasks in different ways.*



When the virtual machine calls an instance method, it locates the method of the implicit parameter's class. This is called **dynamic method lookup**.

Polymorphism ("having multiple forms") allows us to manipulate objects that share a set of tasks, even though the tasks are executed in different ways.

Because `q` is a variable of type `Question`, you can call the `display` and `checkAnswer` methods. You cannot call the `addChoice` method, though—it is not a method of the `Question` superclass.

This is as it should be. After all, it happens that in this method call, `q` refers to a `ChoiceQuestion`. In another method call, `q` might refer to a plain `Question` or an entirely different subclass of `Question`.

Now let's have a closer look inside the `presentQuestion` method. It starts with the call

```
q.display(); // Does it call Question.display or ChoiceQuestion.display?
```

Which `display` method is called? If you look at the program output on page 439, you will see that the method called depends on the contents of the parameter variable `q`. In the first case, `q` refers to a `Question` object, so the `Question.display` method is called. But in the second case, `q` refers to a `ChoiceQuestion`, so the `ChoiceQuestion.display` method is called, showing the list of choices.

In Java, method calls *are always determined by the type of the actual object*, not the type of the variable containing the object reference. This is called **dynamic method lookup**.

Dynamic method lookup allows us to treat objects of different classes in a uniform way. This feature is called **polymorphism**. We ask multiple objects to carry out a task, and each object does so in its own way.

Polymorphism makes programs *easily extensible*. Suppose we want to have a new kind of question for calculations, where we are willing to accept an approximate answer. All we need to do is to declare a new class `NumericQuestion` that extends `Question`, with its own `checkAnswer` method. Then we can call the `presentQuestion` method with a mixture of plain questions, choice questions, and numeric questions. The `presentQuestion` method need not be changed at all! Thanks to dynamic method lookup, method calls to the `display` and `checkAnswer` methods automatically select the correct method of the newly declared classes.

### section\_4/QuestionDemo3.java

```
1 import java.util.Scanner;
2 /**
3  * This program shows a simple quiz with two question types.
4 */
5
```

```

6  public class QuestionDemo3
7  {
8      public static void main(String[] args)
9      {
10         Question first = new Question();
11         first.setText("Who was the inventor of Java?");
12         first.setAnswer("James Gosling");
13
14         ChoiceQuestion second = new ChoiceQuestion();
15         second.setText("In which country was the inventor of Java born?");
16         second.addChoice("Australia", false);
17         second.addChoice("Canada", true);
18         second.addChoice("Denmark", false);
19         second.addChoice("United States", false);
20
21         presentQuestion(first);
22         presentQuestion(second);
23     }
24
25     /**
26      * Presents a question to the user and checks the response.
27      * @param q the question
28     */
29     public static void presentQuestion(Question q)
30     {
31         q.display();
32         System.out.print("Your answer: ");
33         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
34         String response = in.nextLine();
35         System.out.println(q.checkAnswer(response));
36     }
37 }
```

### Program Run

```

Who was the inventor of Java?
Your answer: Bjarne Stroustrup
false
In which country was the inventor of Java born?
1: Australia
2: Canada
3: Denmark
4: United States
Your answer: 2
true
```



#### SELF CHECK

16. Assuming `SavingsAccount` is a subclass of `BankAccount`, which of the following code fragments are valid in Java?
  - a. `BankAccount account = new SavingsAccount();`
  - b. `SavingsAccount account2 = new BankAccount();`
  - c. `BankAccount account = null;`
  - d. `SavingsAccount account2 = account;`
17. If `account` is a variable of type `BankAccount` that holds a non-null reference, what do you know about the object to which `account` refers?

- 18.** Declare an array `quiz` that can hold a mixture of `Question` and `ChoiceQuestion` objects.

- 19.** Consider the code fragment

```
ChoiceQuestion cq = . . .; // A non-null value
cq.display();
```

Which actual method is being called?

- 20.** Is the method call `Math.sqrt(2)` resolved through dynamic method lookup?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R9.6, E9.4, E9.14.

## Special Topic 9.2



### Dynamic Method Lookup and the Implicit Parameter

Suppose we add the `presentQuestion` method to the `Question` class itself:

```
void presentQuestion()
{
    display();
    System.out.print("Your answer: ");
    Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
    String response = in.nextLine();
    System.out.println(checkAnswer(response));
}
```

Now consider the call

```
ChoiceQuestion cq = new ChoiceQuestion();
cq.setText("In which country was the inventor of Java born?");
. .
cq.presentQuestion();
```

Which `display` and `checkAnswer` method will the `presentQuestion` method call? If you look inside the code of the `presentQuestion` method, you can see that these methods are executed on the implicit parameter:

```
public class Question
{
    public void presentQuestion()
    {
        this.display();
        System.out.print("Your answer: ");
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        String response = in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(this.checkAnswer(response));
    }
}
```

The implicit parameter `this` in our call is a reference to an object of type `ChoiceQuestion`. Because of dynamic method lookup, the `ChoiceQuestion` versions of the `display` and `checkAnswer` methods are called automatically. This happens even though the `presentQuestion` method is declared in the `Question` class, which has *no knowledge* of the `ChoiceQuestion` class.

As you can see, polymorphism is a very powerful mechanism. The `Question` class supplies a `presentQuestion` method that specifies the common nature of presenting a question, namely to display it and check the response. How the displaying and checking are carried out is left to the subclasses.

## Special Topic 9.3

**Abstract Classes**

When you extend an existing class, you have the choice whether or not to override the methods of the superclass. Sometimes, it is desirable to *force* programmers to override a method. That happens when there is no good default for the superclass, and only the subclass programmer can know how to implement the method properly.

Here is an example: Suppose the First National Bank of Java decides that every account type must have some monthly fees. Therefore, a `deductFees` method should be added to the `Account` class:

```
public class Account
{
    public void deductFees() { . . . }
    . . .
}
```

But what should this method do? Of course, we could have the method do nothing. But then a programmer implementing a new subclass might simply forget to implement the `deductFees` method, and the new account would inherit the do-nothing method of the superclass. There is a better way—declare the `deductFees` method as an **abstract method**:

```
public abstract void deductFees();
```

An abstract method has no implementation. This forces the implementors of subclasses to specify concrete implementations of this method. (Of course, some subclasses might decide to implement a do-nothing method, but then that is their choice—not a silently inherited default.)

You cannot construct objects of classes with abstract methods. For example, once the `Account` class has an abstract method, the compiler will flag an attempt to create a new `Account()` as an error.

A class for which you cannot create objects is called an **abstract class**. A class for which you can create objects is sometimes called a **concrete class**. In Java, you must declare all abstract classes with the reserved word `abstract`:

```
public abstract class Account
{
    public abstract void deductFees();
    . . .

    public class SavingsAccount extends Account // Not abstract
    {
        . . .
        public void deductFees() // Provides an implementation
        {
            . . .
        }
    }
}
```

If a class extends an abstract class without providing an implementation of all abstract methods, it too is abstract.

```
public abstract class BusinessAccount
{
    // No implementation of deductFees
}
```

Note that you cannot construct an *object* of an abstract class, but you can still have an *object reference* whose type is an abstract class. Of course, the actual object to which it refers must be an instance of a concrete subclass:

```

Account anAccount; // OK
anAccount = new Account(); // Error—Account is abstract
anAccount = new SavingsAccount(); // OK
anAccount = null; // OK

```

When you declare a method as abstract, you force programmers to provide implementations in subclasses. This is better than coming up with a default that might be inherited accidentally.

### Special Topic 9.4



#### Final Methods and Classes

In Special Topic 9.3 you saw how you can force other programmers to create subclasses of abstract classes and override abstract methods. Occasionally, you may want to do the opposite and *prevent* other programmers from creating subclasses or from overriding certain methods. In these situations, you use the `final` reserved word. For example, the `String` class in the standard Java library has been declared as

```
public final class String { . . . }
```

That means that nobody can extend the `String` class. When you have a reference of type `String`, it must contain a `String` object, never an object of a subclass.

You can also declare individual methods as `final`:

```

public class SecureAccount extends BankAccount
{
    . .
    public final boolean checkPassword(String password)
    {
        . .
    }
}

```

This way, nobody can override the `checkPassword` method with another method that simply returns `true`.

### Special Topic 9.5



#### Protected Access

We ran into a hurdle when trying to implement the `display` method of the `ChoiceQuestion` class. That method wanted to access the instance variable `text` of the superclass. Our remedy was to use the appropriate method of the superclass to display the text.

Java offers another solution to this problem. The superclass can declare an instance variable as *protected*:

```

public class Question
{
    protected String text;
    . .
}

```

Protected data in an object can be accessed by the methods of the object's class and all its subclasses. For example, `ChoiceQuestion` inherits from `Question`, so its methods can access the protected instance variables of the `Question` superclass.

Some programmers like the `protected` access feature because it seems to strike a balance between absolute protection (making instance variables `private`) and no protection at all (making instance variables `public`). However, experience has shown that protected instance variables are subject to the same kinds of problems as public instance variables. The designer of the superclass has no control over the authors of subclasses. Any of the subclass methods can corrupt the superclass data. Furthermore, classes with protected variables are hard to modify.

Even if the author of the superclass would like to change the data implementation, the protected variables cannot be changed, because someone somewhere out there might have written a subclass whose code depends on them.

In Java, protected variables have another drawback—they are accessible not just by subclasses, but also by other classes in the same package (see Special Topic 8.4).

It is best to leave all data private. If you want to grant access to the data to subclass methods only, consider making the *accessor* method protected.

## HOW TO 9.1



### Developing an Inheritance Hierarchy

When you work with a set of classes, some of which are more general and others more specialized, you want to organize them into an inheritance hierarchy. This enables you to process objects of different classes in a uniform way.

As an example, we will consider a bank that offers customers the following account types:

- A savings account that earns interest. The interest compounds monthly and is computed on the minimum monthly balance.
- A checking account that has no interest, gives you three free withdrawals per month, and charges a \$1 transaction fee for each additional withdrawal.

**Problem Statement** Design and implement a program that will manage a set of accounts of both types. It should be structured so that other account types can be added without affecting the main processing loop. Supply a menu

D)eposit W)ithdraw M)onth end Q)uit

For deposits and withdrawals, query the account number and amount. Print the balance of the account after each transaction.

In the “Month end” command, accumulate interest or clear the transaction counter, depending on the type of the bank account. Then print the balance of all accounts.

#### Step 1

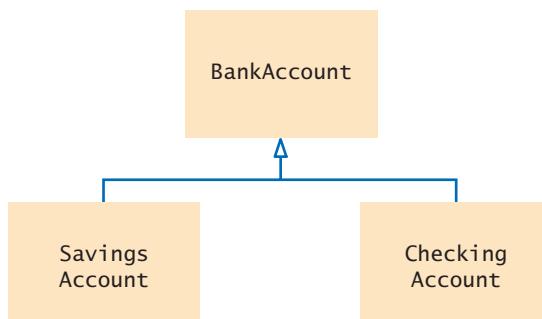
List the classes that are part of the hierarchy.

In our case, the problem description yields two classes: `SavingsAccount` and `CheckingAccount`. Of course, you could implement each of them separately. But that would not be a good idea because the classes would have to repeat common functionality, such as updating an account balance. We need another class that can be responsible for that common functionality. The problem statement does not explicitly mention such a class. Therefore, we need to discover it. Of course, in this case, the solution is simple. Savings accounts and checking accounts are special cases of a bank account. Therefore, we will introduce a common superclass `BankAccount`.

#### Step 2

Organize the classes into an inheritance hierarchy.

Draw an inheritance diagram that shows super- and subclasses. Here is one for our example:



**Step 3** Determine the common responsibilities.

In Step 2, you will have identified a class at the base of the hierarchy. That class needs to have sufficient responsibilities to carry out the tasks at hand. To find out what those tasks are, write pseudocode for processing the objects.

```

For each user command
  If it is a deposit or withdrawal
    Deposit or withdraw the amount from the specified account.
    Print the balance.
  If it is month end processing
    For each account
      Call month end processing.
      Print the balance.

```

From the pseudocode, we obtain the following list of common responsibilities that every bank account must carry out:

```

Deposit money.
Withdraw money.
Get the balance.
Carry out month end processing.

```

**Step 4** Decide which methods are overridden in subclasses.

For each subclass and each of the common responsibilities, decide whether the behavior can be inherited or whether it needs to be overridden. Be sure to declare any methods that are inherited or overridden in the root of the hierarchy.

```

public class BankAccount
{
  ...
  /**
   * Makes a deposit into this account.
   * @param amount the amount of the deposit
   */
  public void deposit(double amount) { . . . }

  /**
   * Makes a withdrawal from this account, or charges a penalty if
   * sufficient funds are not available.
   * @param amount the amount of the withdrawal
   */
  public void withdraw(double amount) { . . . }

  /**
   * Carries out the end of month processing that is appropriate
   * for this account.
   */
  public void monthEnd() { . . . }

  /**
   * Gets the current balance of this bank account.
   * @return the current balance
   */
  public double getBalance() { . . . }
}

```

The `SavingsAccount` and `CheckingAccount` classes will both override the `monthEnd` method. The `SavingsAccount` class must also override the `withdraw` method to track the minimum balance. The `CheckingAccount` class must update a transaction count in the `withdraw` method.

**Step 5** Declare the public interface of each subclass.

Typically, subclasses have responsibilities other than those of the superclass. List those, as well as the methods that need to be overridden. You also need to specify how the objects of the subclasses should be constructed.

In this example, we need a way of setting the interest rate for the savings account. In addition, we need to specify constructors and overridden methods.

```
public class SavingsAccount extends BankAccount
{
    ...
    /**
     * Constructs a savings account with a zero balance.
     */
    public SavingsAccount() { . . . }

    /**
     * Sets the interest rate for this account.
     * @param rate the monthly interest rate in percent
     */
    public void setInterestRate(double rate) { . . . }

    // These methods override superclass methods
    public void withdraw(double amount) { . . . }
    public void monthEnd() { . . . }
}

public class CheckingAccount extends BankAccount
{
    ...
    /**
     * Constructs a checking account with a zero balance.
     */
    public CheckingAccount() { . . . }

    // These methods override superclass methods
    public void withdraw(double amount) { . . . }
    public void monthEnd() { . . . }
}
```

**Step 6** Identify instance variables.

List the instance variables for each class. If you find an instance variable that is common to all classes, be sure to place it in the base of the hierarchy.

All accounts have a balance. We store that value in the `BankAccount` superclass:

```
public class BankAccount
{
    private double balance;
    ...
}
```

The `SavingsAccount` class needs to store the interest rate. It also needs to store the minimum monthly balance, which must be updated by all withdrawals.

```
public class SavingsAccount extends BankAccount
{
    private double interestRate;
    private double minBalance;
    ...
}
```

The CheckingAccount class needs to count the withdrawals, so that the charge can be applied after the free withdrawal limit is reached.

```
public class CheckingAccount extends BankAccount
{
    private int withdrawals;
    ...
}
```

### Step 7 Implement constructors and methods.

The methods of the BankAccount class update or return the balance.

```
public void deposit(double amount)
{
    balance = balance + amount;
}

public void withdraw(double amount)
{
    balance = balance - amount;
}

public double getBalance()
{
    return balance;
}
```

At the level of the BankAccount superclass, we can say nothing about end of month processing. We choose to make that method do nothing:

```
public void monthEnd()
{
}
```

In the withdraw method of the SavingsAccount class, the minimum balance is updated. Note the call to the superclass method:

```
public void withdraw(double amount)
{
    super.withdraw(amount);
    double balance = getBalance();
    if (balance < minBalance)
    {
        minBalance = balance;
    }
}
```

In the monthEnd method of the SavingsAccount class, the interest is deposited into the account. We must call the deposit method because we have no direct access to the balance instance variable. The minimum balance is reset for the next month.

```
public void monthEnd()
{
    double interest = minBalance * interestRate / 100;
    deposit(interest);
    minBalance = getBalance();
}
```

The withdraw method of the CheckingAccount class needs to check the withdrawal count. If there have been too many withdrawals, a charge is applied. Again, note how the method invokes the superclass method:

```
public void withdraw(double amount)
{
```

```

final int FREE_WITHDRAWALS = 3;
final int WITHDRAWAL_FEE = 1;

super.withdraw(amount);
withdrawals++;
if (withdrawals > FREE_WITHDRAWALS)
{
    super.withdraw(WITHDRAWAL_FEE);
}
}

```

End of month processing for a checking account simply resets the withdrawal count.

```

public void monthEnd()
{
    withdrawals = 0;
}

```

### Step 8

Construct objects of different subclasses and process them.

In our sample program, we allocate five checking accounts and five savings accounts and store their addresses in an array of bank accounts. Then we accept user commands and execute deposits, withdrawals, and monthly processing.

```

BankAccount[] accounts = . . .;
. . .
Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
boolean done = false;
while (!done)
{
    System.out.print("D)eposit W)ithdraw M)onth end Q)uit: ");
    String input = in.next();
    if (input.equals("D") || input.equals("W")) // Deposit or withdrawal
    {
        System.out.print("Enter account number and amount: ");
        int num = in.nextInt();
        double amount = in.nextDouble();

        if (input.equals("D")) { accounts[num].deposit(amount); }
        else { accounts[num].withdraw(amount); }

        System.out.println("Balance: " + accounts[num].getBalance());
    }
    else if (input.equals("M")) // Month end processing
    {
        for (int n = 0; n < accounts.length; n++)
        {
            accounts[n].monthEnd();
            System.out.println(n + " " + accounts[n].getBalance());
        }
    }
    else if (input == "Q")
    {
        done = true;
    }
}

```



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download the program with BankAccount, SavingsAccount, and CheckingAccount classes.



## WORKED EXAMPLE 9.1

**Implementing an Employee Hierarchy for Payroll Processing**

Learn how to implement payroll processing that works for different kinds of employees. Go to [www.wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://www.wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 9.1.



## 9.5 Object: The Cosmic Superclass

In Java, every class that is declared without an explicit `extends` clause automatically extends the class `Object`. That is, the class `Object` is the direct or indirect superclass of *every* class in Java (see Figure 9). The `Object` class defines several very general methods, including

- `toString`, which yields a string describing the object (Section 9.5.1).
- `equals`, which compares objects with each other (Section 9.5.2).
- `hashCode`, which yields a numerical code for storing the object in a set (see Special Topic 15.1).

### 9.5.1 Overriding the `toString` Method

The `toString` method returns a string representation for each object. It is often used for debugging.

For example, consider the `Rectangle` class in the standard Java library. Its `toString` method shows the state of a rectangle:

```
Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
String s = box.toString();
// Sets s to "java.awt.Rectangle[x=5,y=10,width=20,height=30]"
```

The `toString` method is called automatically whenever you concatenate a string with an object. Here is an example:

```
"box=" + box;
```

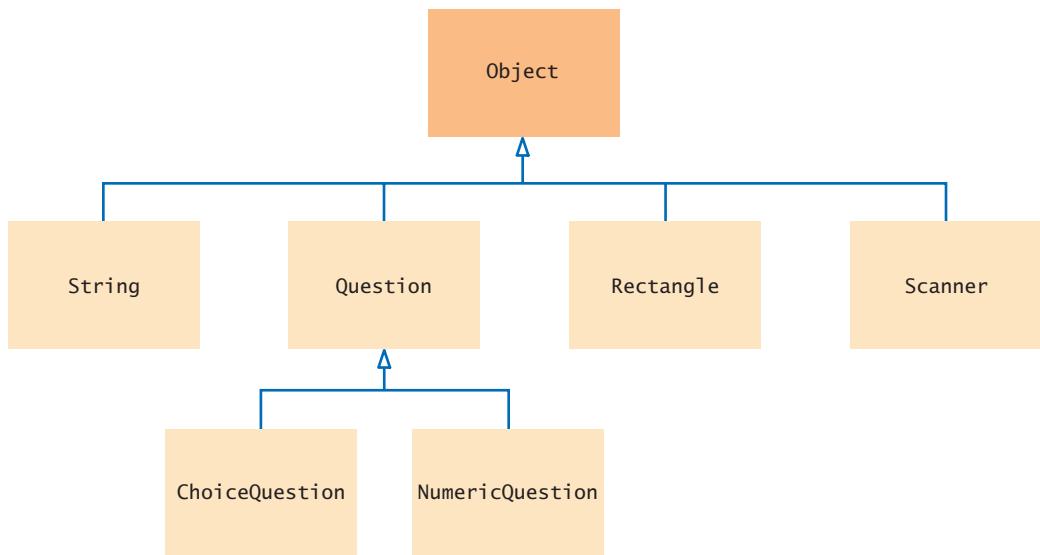
On one side of the `+` concatenation operator is a string, but on the other side is an object reference. The Java compiler automatically invokes the `toString` method to turn the object into a string. Then both strings are concatenated. In this case, the result is the string

```
"box=java.awt.Rectangle[x=5,y=10,width=20,height=30]"
```

The compiler can invoke the `toString` method, because it knows that *every* object has a `toString` method: Every class extends the `Object` class, and that class declares `toString`.

As you know, numbers are also converted to strings when they are concatenated with other strings. For example,

```
int age = 18;
String s = "Harry's age is " + age;
// Sets s to "Harry's age is 18"
```



**Figure 9** The Object Class Is the Superclass of Every Java Class

In this case, the `toString` method is *not* involved. Numbers are not objects, and there is no `toString` method for them. Fortunately, there is only a small set of primitive types, and the compiler knows how to convert them to strings.

Let's try the `toString` method for the `BankAccount` class:

```

BankAccount momsSavings = new BankAccount(5000);
String s = momsSavings.toString();
// Sets s to something like "BankAccount@d24606bf"
  
```

That's disappointing—all that's printed is the name of the class, followed by the **hash code**, a seemingly random code. The hash code can be used to tell objects apart—different objects are likely to have different hash codes. (See Special Topic 15.1 for the details.)

We don't care about the hash code. We want to know what is *inside* the object. But, of course, the `toString` method of the `Object` class does not know what is inside the `BankAccount` class. Therefore, we have to override the method and supply our own version in the `BankAccount` class. We'll follow the same format that the `toString` method of the `Rectangle` class uses: first print the name of the class, and then the values of the instance variables inside brackets.

```

public class BankAccount
{
    .
    .
    public String toString()
    {
        return "BankAccount[balance=" + balance + "]";
    }
}
  
```

This works better:

```

BankAccount momsSavings = new BankAccount(5000);
String s = momsSavings.toString(); // Sets s to "BankAccount[balance=5000]"
  
```

Override the `toString` method to yield a string that describes the object's state.

## 9.5.2 The equals Method

The equals method checks whether two objects have the same contents.

In addition to the `toString` method, the `Object` class also provides an `equals` method, whose purpose is to check whether two objects have the same contents:

```
if (stamp1.equals(stamp2)) . . .
    // Contents are the same—see Figure 10
```

This is different from the test with the `==` operator, which tests whether two references are identical, referring to the *same object*:

```
if (stamp1 == stamp2) . . .
    // Objects are the same—see Figure 11
```

Let's implement the `equals` method for a `Stamp` class. You need to override the `equals` method of the `Object` class:

```
public class Stamp
{
    private String color;
    private int value;

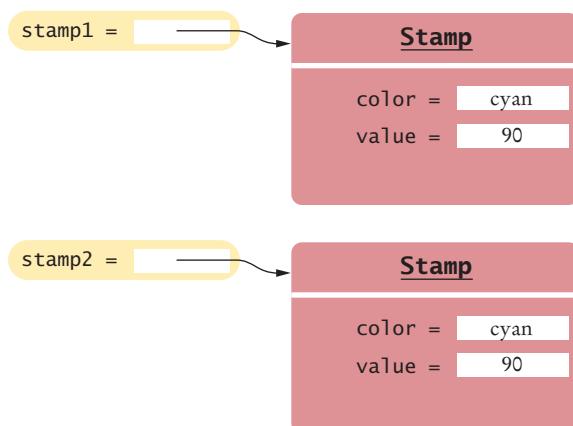
    public boolean equals(Object otherObject)
    {
        . . .
    }
    . . .
}
```

Now you have a slight problem. The `Object` class knows nothing about stamps, so it declares the `otherObject` parameter variable of the `equals` method to have the type `Object`. When overriding the method, you are not allowed to change the type of the parameter variable. Cast the parameter variable to the class `Stamp`:

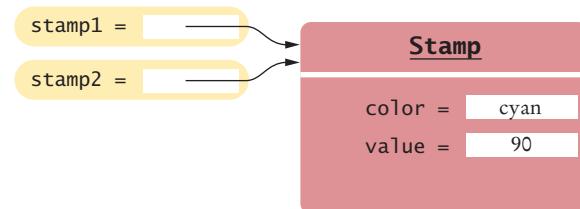
```
Stamp other = (Stamp) otherObject;
```



*The equals method checks whether two objects have the same contents.*



**Figure 10** Two References to Equal Objects



**Figure 11** Two References to the Same Object

Then you can compare the two stamps:

```
public boolean equals(Object otherObject)
{
    Stamp other = (Stamp) otherObject;
    return color.equals(other.color)
        && value == other.value;
}
```

Note that this `equals` method can access the instance variables of *any* `Stamp` object: the access `other.color` is perfectly legal.

### 9.5.3 The `instanceof` Operator

As you have seen, it is legal to store a subclass reference in a superclass variable:

```
ChoiceQuestion cq = new ChoiceQuestion();
Question q = cq; // OK
Object obj = cq; // OK
```

Very occasionally, you need to carry out the opposite conversion, from a superclass reference to a subclass reference.

For example, you may have a variable of type `Object`, and you happen to know that it actually holds a `Question` reference. In that case, you can use a cast to convert the type:

```
Question q = (Question) obj;
```

However, this cast is somewhat dangerous. If you are wrong, and `obj` actually refers to an object of an unrelated type, then a “class cast” exception is thrown.

To protect against bad casts, you can use the `instanceof` operator. It tests whether an object belongs to a particular type. For example,

```
obj instanceof Question
```

returns true if the type of `obj` is convertible to `Question`. This happens if `obj` refers to an actual `Question` or to a subclass such as `ChoiceQuestion`.

If you know that an object belongs to a given class, use a cast to convert the type.

The `instanceof` operator tests whether an object belongs to a particular type.

## Syntax 9.4

### The `instanceof` Operator

**Syntax**    `object instanceof TypeName`

If `anObject` is null,  
`instanceof` returns false.

Returns true if `anObject` can be cast to a `Question`.

The object may belong to a subclass of `Question`.

```
if (anObject instanceof Question)
{
    Question q = (Question) anObject;
    ...
}
```

You can invoke `Question` methods on this variable.

Two references to the same object.

Using the `instanceof` operator, a safe cast can be programmed as follows:

```
if (obj instanceof Question)
{
    Question q = (Question) obj;
}
```

Note that `instanceof` is *not* a method. It is an operator, just like `+` or `<`. However, it does not operate on numbers. To the left is an object, and to the right a type name.

Do *not* use the `instanceof` operator to bypass polymorphism:

```
if (q instanceof ChoiceQuestion) // Don't do this—see Common Error 9.5
{
    // Do the task the ChoiceQuestion way
}
else if (q instanceof Question)
{
    // Do the task the Question way
}
```

In this case, you should implement a method `doTheTask` in the `Question` class, override it in `ChoiceQuestion`, and call

```
q.doTheTask();
```

### SELF CHECK



- 21.** Why does the call  
`System.out.println(System.out);`  
produce a result such as `java.io.PrintStream@7a84e4`?
- 22.** Will the following code fragment compile? Will it run? If not, what error is reported?  
`Object obj = "Hello";  
System.out.println(obj.length());`
- 23.** Will the following code fragment compile? Will it run? If not, what error is reported?  
`Object obj = "Who was the inventor of Java?";  
Question q = (Question) obj;  
q.display();`
- 24.** Why don't we simply store all objects in variables of type `Object`?
- 25.** Assuming that `x` is an object reference, what is the value of `x instanceof Object`?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E9.7, E9.8, E9.12.

### Common Error 9.5



### Don't Use Type Tests

Some programmers use specific type tests in order to implement behavior that varies with each class:

```
if (q instanceof ChoiceQuestion) // Don't do this
{
    // Do the task the ChoiceQuestion way
}
else if (q instanceof Question)
{
```

```
// Do the task the Question way
}
```

This is a poor strategy. If a new class such as `NumericQuestion` is added, then you need to revise all parts of your program that make a type test, adding another case:

```
else if (q instanceof NumericQuestion)
{
    // Do the task the NumericQuestion way
}
```

In contrast, consider the addition of a class `NumericQuestion` to our quiz program. *Nothing* needs to change in that program because it uses polymorphism, not type tests.

Whenever you find yourself trying to use type tests in a hierarchy of classes, reconsider and use polymorphism instead. Declare a method `doTheTask` in the superclass, override it in the subclasses, and call

```
q.doTheTask();
```

## Special Topic 9.6



### Inheritance and the `toString` Method

You just saw how to write a `toString` method: Form a string consisting of the class name and the names and values of the instance variables. However, if you want your `toString` method to be usable by subclasses of your class, you need to work a bit harder.

Instead of hardcoding the class name, call the `getClass` method (which every class inherits from the `Object` class) to obtain an object that describes a class and its properties. Then invoke the `getName` method to get the name of the class:

```
public String toString()
{
    return getClass().getName() + "[balance=" + balance + "]";
}
```

Then the `toString` method prints the correct class name when you apply it to a subclass, say a `SavingsAccount`.

```
SavingsAccount momsSavings = . . . ;
System.out.println(momsSavings);
// Prints "SavingsAccount[balance=10000]"
```

Of course, in the subclass, you should override `toString` and add the values of the subclass instance variables. Note that you must call `super.toString` to get the instance variables of the superclass—the subclass can't access them directly.

```
public class SavingsAccount extends BankAccount
{
    .
    .
    public String toString()
    {
        return super.toString() + "[interestRate=" + interestRate + "]";
    }
}
```

Now a savings account is converted to a string such as `SavingsAccount[balance=10000][interestRate=5]`. The brackets show which variables belong to the superclass.

## Special Topic 9.7

**Inheritance and the equals Method**

You just saw how to write an `equals` method: Cast the `otherObject` parameter variable to the type of your class, and then compare the instance variables of the implicit parameter and the explicit parameter.

But what if someone called `stamp1.equals(x)` where `x` wasn't a `Stamp` object? Then the bad cast would generate an exception. It is a good idea to test whether `otherObject` really is an instance of the `Stamp` class. The easiest test would be with the `instanceof` operator. However, that test is not specific enough. It would be possible for `otherObject` to belong to some subclass of `Stamp`. To rule out that possibility, you should test whether the two objects belong to the same class. If not, return false.

```
if (getClass() != otherObject.getClass()) { return false; }
```

Moreover, the Java language specification demands that the `equals` method return false when `otherObject` is null.

Here is an improved version of the `equals` method that takes these two points into account:

```
public boolean equals(Object otherObject)
{
```

**Computing & Society 9.1 Who Controls the Internet?**

In 1962, J.C.R. Licklider was head of the first computer research program at DARPA, the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency. He wrote a series of papers describing a "galactic network" through which computer users could access data and programs from other sites. This was well before computer networks were invented. By 1969, four computers—three in California and one in Utah—were connected to the ARPANET, the precursor of the Internet. The network grew quickly, linking computers at many universities and research organizations. It was originally thought that most network users wanted to run programs on remote computers. Using remote execution, a researcher at one institution would be able to access an underutilized computer at a different site. It quickly became apparent that remote execution was not what the network was actually used for. Instead, the "killer application" was electronic mail: the transfer of messages between computer users at different locations.

In 1972, Bob Kahn proposed to extend ARPANET into the *Internet*: a collection of interoperable networks. All networks on the Internet share common *protocols* for data transmission. Kahn and Vinton Cerf developed a protocol, now called TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol). On January 1, 1983, all hosts on the Internet simultaneously switched to the TCP/IP protocol (which is used to this day).

Over time, researchers, computer scientists, and hobbyists published increasing amounts of information on the Internet. For example, project Gutenberg makes available the text of important classical books, whose copyright has expired, in computer-readable form ([www.gutenberg.org](http://www.gutenberg.org)). In 1989, Tim Berners-Lee, a computer scientist at CERN (the European organization for nuclear research) started work on hyperlinked documents, allowing users to browse by following links to related documents. This infrastructure is now known as the World Wide Web.

The first interfaces to retrieve this information were, by today's standards, unbelievably clumsy and hard to use. In March 1993, WWW traffic was 0.1 percent of all Internet traffic. All that changed when Marc Andreesen, then a graduate student working for the National Center for Supercomputing Applications (NCSA), released Mosaic. Mosaic displayed web pages in graphical form, using images, fonts, and colors (see the figure). Andreesen went on to fame and fortune at Netscape, and Microsoft licensed the Mosaic code to create Internet Explorer. By 1996, WWW traffic accounted for more than half of the data transported on the Internet.

The Internet has a very democratic structure. Anyone can publish anything, and anyone can read whatever has been published. This does not always sit well with governments and corporations.

Many governments control the Internet infrastructure in their country. For example, an Internet user in China, searching for the Tiananmen Square

```

        if (otherObject == null) { return false; }
        if (getClass() != otherObject.getClass()) { return false; }
        Stamp other = (Stamp) otherObject;
        return color.equals(other.color) && value == other.value;
    }
}

```

When you implement `equals` in a subclass, you should first call `equals` in the superclass to check whether the superclass instance variables match. Here is an example:

```

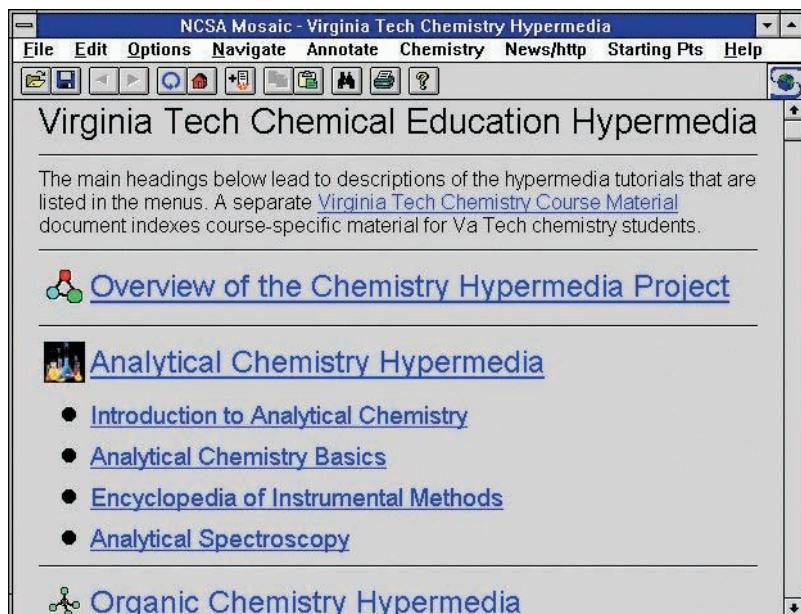
public CollectibleStamp extends Stamp
{
    private int year;
    ...
    public boolean equals(Object otherObject)
    {
        if (!super.equals(otherObject)) { return false; }
        CollectibleStamp other = (CollectibleStamp) otherObject;
        return year == other.year;
    }
}

```

massacre or air pollution in their hometown, may find nothing. Vietnam blocks access to Facebook, perhaps fearing that anti-government protesters might use it to organize themselves. The U.S. government has required publicly funded libraries and schools to install filters that block sexually explicit and hate speech.

When the Internet is delivered by phone or TV cable companies, those companies sometimes interfere with competing Internet offerings. Cell phone companies refused to carry Voice-over-IP services, and cable companies slowed down movie streaming.

The Internet has become a powerful force for delivering information—both good and bad. It is our responsibility as citizens to demand of our government that we can control which information to access.

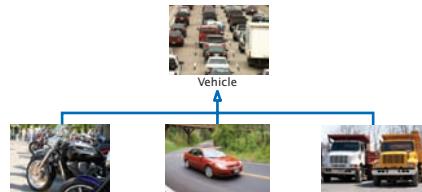


*The NCSA Mosaic Browser*

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### Explain the notions of inheritance, superclass, and subclass.

- A subclass inherits data and behavior from a superclass.
- You can always use a subclass object in place of a superclass object.



### Implement subclasses in Java.

- A subclass inherits all methods that it does not override.
- A subclass can override a superclass method by providing a new implementation.
- The `extends` reserved word indicates that a class inherits from a superclass.



### Implement methods that override methods from a superclass.

- An overriding method can extend or replace the functionality of the superclass method.
- Use the reserved word `super` to call a superclass method.
- Unless specified otherwise, the subclass constructor calls the superclass constructor with no arguments.
- To call a superclass constructor, use the `super` reserved word in the first statement of the subclass constructor.
- The constructor of a subclass can pass arguments to a superclass constructor, using the reserved word `super`.

### Use polymorphism for processing objects of related types.



- A subclass reference can be used when a superclass reference is expected.
- When the virtual machine calls an instance method, it locates the method of the implicit parameter's class. This is called dynamic method lookup.
- Polymorphism ("having multiple forms") allows us to manipulate objects that share a set of tasks, even though the tasks are executed in different ways.

### Work with the `Object` class and its methods.

- Override the `toString` method to yield a string that describes the object's state.
- The `equals` method checks whether two objects have the same contents.
- If you know that an object belongs to a given class, use a cast to convert the type.
- The `instanceof` operator tests whether an object belongs to a particular type.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

- **R9.1** Identify the superclass and subclass in each of the following pairs of classes.
  - a. Employee, Manager
  - b. GraduateStudent, Student
  - c. Person, Student
  - d. Employee, Professor
  - e. BankAccount, CheckingAccount
  - f. Vehicle, Car
  - g. Vehicle, Minivan
  - h. Car, Minivan
  - i. Truck, Vehicle
  
- **R9.2** Consider a program for managing inventory in a small appliance store. Why isn't it useful to have a superclass SmallAppliance and subclasses Toaster, CarVacuum, TravelIron, and so on?
  
- **R9.3** Which methods does the ChoiceQuestion class inherit from its superclass? Which methods does it override? Which methods does it add?
  
- **R9.4** Which methods does the SavingsAccount class in How To 9.1 inherit from its superclass? Which methods does it override? Which methods does it add?
  
- **R9.5** List the instance variables of a CheckingAccount object from How To 9.1.
  
- **R9.6** Suppose the class Sub extends the class Sandwich. Which of the following assignments are legal?
 

```
Sandwich x = new Sandwich();
Sub y = new Sub();
```

  - a. x = y;
  - b. y = x;
  - c. y = new Sandwich();
  - d. x = new Sub();
  
- **R9.7** Draw an inheritance diagram that shows the inheritance relationships between these classes.
  - Person
  - Employee
  - Student
  - Instructor
  - Classroom
  - Object
  
- **R9.8** In an object-oriented traffic simulation system, we have the classes listed below. Draw an inheritance diagram that shows the relationships between these classes.
 

|                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vehicle</li> <li>• Car</li> <li>• Truck</li> <li>• Sedan</li> <li>• Coupe</li> <li>• PickupTruck</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• SportUtilityVehicle</li> <li>• Minivan</li> <li>• Bicycle</li> <li>• Motorcycle</li> </ul> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- **R9.9** What inheritance relationships would you establish among the following classes?

- Student
- Professor
- TeachingAssistant
- Employee
- Secretary
- DepartmentChair
- Janitor
- SeminarSpeaker
- Person
- Course
- Seminar
- Lecture
- ComputerLab

- **R9.10** How does a cast such as `(BankAccount) x` differ from a cast of number values such as `(int) x`?

- **R9.11** Which of these conditions returns true? Check the Java documentation for the inheritance patterns. Recall that `System.out` is an object of the `PrintStream` class.

- `System.out instanceof PrintStream`
- `System.out instanceof OutputStream`
- `System.out instanceof LogStream`
- `System.out instanceof Object`
- `System.out instanceof String`
- `System.out instanceof Writer`

### PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E9.1** Add a class `NumericQuestion` to the question hierarchy of Section 9.1. If the response and the expected answer differ by no more than 0.01, then accept the response as correct.
- **E9.2** Add a class `FillInQuestion` to the question hierarchy of Section 9.1. Such a question is constructed with a string that contains the answer, surrounded by `_`, for example, "The inventor of Java was `_James Gosling_`". The question should be displayed as
- The inventor of Java was \_\_\_\_\_
- **E9.3** Modify the `checkAnswer` method of the `Question` class so that it does not take into account different spaces or upper/lowercase characters. For example, the response "JAMES gosling" should match an answer of "James Gosling".
- **E9.4** Add a class `AnyCorrectChoiceQuestion` to the question hierarchy of Section 9.1 that allows multiple correct choices. The respondent should provide any one of the correct choices. The answer string should contain all of the correct choices, separated by spaces. Provide instructions in the question text.
- **E9.5** Add a class `MultiChoiceQuestion` to the question hierarchy of Section 9.1 that allows multiple correct choices. The respondent should provide all correct choices, separated by spaces. Provide instructions in the question text.
- **E9.6** Add a method `addText` to the `Question` superclass and provide a different implementation of `ChoiceQuestion` that calls `addText` rather than storing an array list of choices.
- **E9.7** Provide `toString` methods for the `Question` and `ChoiceQuestion` classes.
- **E9.8** Implement a superclass `Person`. Make two classes, `Student` and `Instructor`, that inherit from `Person`. A person has a name and a year of birth. A student has a major, and an instructor has a salary. Write the class declarations, the constructors, and the

methods `toString` for all classes. Supply a test program that tests these classes and methods.

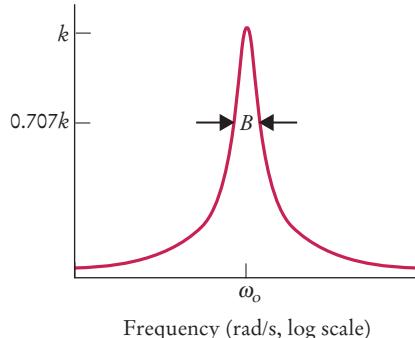
- **E9.9** Make a class `Employee` with a name and salary. Make a class `Manager` inherit from `Employee`. Add an instance variable, named `department`, of type `String`. Supply a method `toString` that prints the manager's name, department, and salary. Make a class `Executive` inherit from `Manager`. Supply appropriate `toString` methods for all classes. Supply a test program that tests these classes and methods.
- **E9.10** The `java.awt.Rectangle` class of the standard Java library does not supply a method to compute the area or perimeter of a rectangle. Provide a subclass `BetterRectangle` of the `Rectangle` class that has `getPerimeter` and `getArea` methods. *Do not add any instance variables*. In the constructor, call the `setLocation` and `setSize` methods of the `Rectangle` class. Provide a program that tests the methods that you supplied.
- **E9.11** Repeat Exercise E9.10, but in the `BetterRectangle` constructor, invoke the superclass constructor.
- **E9.12** A labeled point has *x*- and *y*-coordinates and a string label. Provide a class `LabeledPoint` with a constructor `LabeledPoint(int x, int y, String label)` and a `toString` method that displays *x*, *y*, and the label.
- **E9.13** Reimplement the `LabeledPoint` class of Exercise E9.12 by storing the location in a `java.awt.Point` object. Your `toString` method should invoke the `toString` method of the `Point` class.
- **Business E9.14** Change the `CheckingAccount` class in How To 9.1 so that a \$1 fee is levied for deposits or withdrawals in excess of three free monthly transactions. Place the code for computing the fee into a separate method that you call from the `deposit` and `withdraw` methods.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

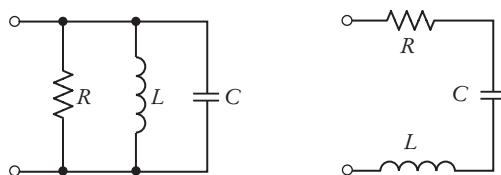
- **Business P9.1** Implement a superclass `Appointment` and subclasses `Onetime`, `Daily`, and `Monthly`. An appointment has a description (for example, “see the dentist”) and a date. Write a method `occursOn(int year, int month, int day)` that checks whether the appointment occurs on that date. For example, for a monthly appointment, you must check whether the day of the month matches. Then fill an array of `Appointment` objects with a mixture of appointments. Have the user enter a date and print out all appointments that occur on that date.
- **Business P9.2** Improve the appointment book program of Exercise P9.1. Give the user the option to add new appointments. The user must specify the type of the appointment, the description, and the date.
- **Business P9.3** Improve the appointment book program of Exercise P9.1 and P9.2 by letting the user save the appointment data to a file and reload the data from a file. The saving part is straightforward: Make a method `save`. Save the type, description, and date to a file. The loading part is not so easy. First determine the type of the appointment to be loaded, create an object of that type, and then call a `load` method to load the data.



**■■ Science P9.4** Resonant circuits are used to select a signal (e.g., a radio station or TV channel) from among other competing signals. Resonant circuits are characterized by the frequency response shown in the figure below. The resonant frequency response is completely described by three parameters: the resonant frequency,  $\omega_0$ , the bandwidth,  $B$ , and the gain at the resonant frequency,  $k$ .



Two simple resonant circuits are shown in the figure below. The circuit in (a) is called a *parallel resonant circuit*. The circuit in (b) is called a *series resonant circuit*. Both resonant circuits consist of a resistor having resistance  $R$ , a capacitor having capacitance  $C$ , and an inductor having inductance  $L$ .



(a) Parallel resonant circuit

(b) Series resonant circuit

These circuits are designed by determining values of  $R$ ,  $C$ , and  $L$  that cause the resonant frequency response to be described by specified values of  $\omega_0$ ,  $B$ , and  $k$ . The design equations for the parallel resonant circuit are:

$$R = k, \quad C = \frac{1}{BR}, \text{ and} \quad L = \frac{1}{\omega_0^2 C}$$

Similarly, the design equations for the series resonant circuit are:

$$R = \frac{1}{k}, \quad L = \frac{R}{B}, \text{ and} \quad C = \frac{1}{\omega_0^2 L}$$

Write a Java program that represents `ResonantCircuit` as a superclass and represents the `SeriesResonantCircuit` and `ParallelResonantCircuit` as subclasses. Give the superclass three private instance variables representing the parameters  $\omega_0$ ,  $B$ , and  $k$  of the resonant frequency response. The superclass should provide public instance methods to get and set each of these variables. The superclass should also provide a `display` method that prints a description of the resonant frequency response.

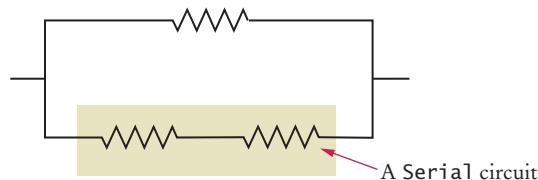
Each subclass should provide a method that designs the corresponding resonant circuit. The subclasses should also override the `display` method of the superclass to

print descriptions of both the frequency response (the values of  $\omega_0$ ,  $B$ , and  $k$ ) and the circuit (the values of  $R$ ,  $C$ , and  $L$ ).

All classes should provide appropriate constructors.

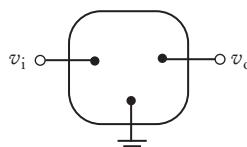
Supply a class that demonstrates that the subclasses all work properly.

- Science P9.5** In this problem, you will model a circuit consisting of an arbitrary configuration of resistors. Provide a superclass `Circuit` with a instance method `getResistance`. Provide a subclass `Resistor` representing a single resistor. Provide subclasses `Serial` and `Parallel`, each of which contains an `ArrayList<Circuit>`. A `Serial` circuit models a series of circuits, each of which can be a single resistor or another circuit. Similarly, a `Parallel` circuit models a set of circuits in parallel. For example, the following circuit is a `Parallel` circuit containing a single resistor and one `Serial` circuit:

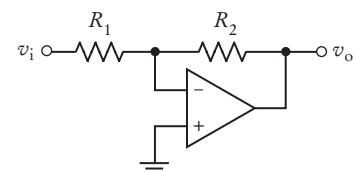


Use Ohm's law to compute the combined resistance.

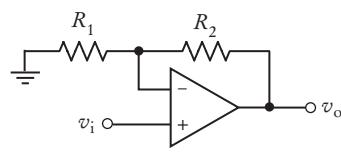
- Science P9.6** Part (a) of the figure below shows a symbolic representation of an electric circuit called an *amplifier*. The input to the amplifier is the voltage  $v_i$  and the output is the voltage  $v_o$ . The output of an amplifier is proportional to the input. The constant of proportionality is called the “gain” of the amplifier.



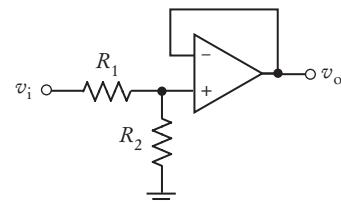
(a) Amplifier



(b) Inverting amplifier



(c) Noninverting amplifier



(d) Voltage divider amplifier

Parts (b), (c), and (d) show schematics of three specific types of amplifier: the *inverting amplifier*, *noninverting amplifier*, and *voltage divider amplifier*. Each of these three amplifiers consists of two resistors and an op amp. The value of the gain of each amplifier depends on the values of its resistances. In particular, the gain,  $g$ , of the inverting amplifier is given by  $g = -\frac{R_2}{R_1}$ . Similarly the gains of the noninverting amplifier and voltage divider amplifier are given by  $g = 1 + \frac{R_2}{R_1}$  and  $g = \frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2}$ , respectively.

Write a Java program that represents the amplifier as a superclass and represents the inverting, noninverting, and voltage divider amplifiers as subclasses. Give the subclass two methods, `getGain` and a `getDescription` method that returns a string identifying the amplifier. Each subclass should have a constructor with two arguments, the resistances of the amplifier.

The subclasses need to override the `getGain` and `getDescription` methods of the superclass.

Supply a class that demonstrates that the subclasses all work properly for sample values of the resistances.

### ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. Because every manager is an employee but not the other way around, the `Manager` class is more specialized. It is the subclass, and `Employee` is the superclass.
2. `CheckingAccount` and `SavingsAccount` both inherit from the more general class `BankAccount`.
3. The classes `Frame`, `Window`, and `Component` in the `java.awt` package, and the class `Object` in the `java.lang` package.
4. Vehicle, truck, motorcycle
5. It shouldn't. A quiz isn't a question; it *has* questions.
6. a, b, d
7. 

```
public class Manager extends Employee
{
    private double bonus;
    // Constructors and methods omitted
}
```
8. name, `baseSalary`, and `bonus`
9. 

```
public class Manager extends Employee
{
    ...
    public double getSalary() { . . . }
}
```
10. `getName`, `setName`, `setBaseSalary`
11. The method is not allowed to access the instance variable `text` from the superclass.
12. The type of the `this` reference is `ChoiceQuestion`. Therefore, the `display` method of `ChoiceQuestion` is selected, and the method calls itself.
13. Because there is no ambiguity. The subclass doesn't have a `setAnswer` method.
14. 

```
public String getName()
{
    return "*" + super.getName();
}
```
15. 

```
public double getSalary()
{
    return super.getSalary() + bonus;
}
```
16. a only.
17. It belongs to the class `BankAccount` or one of its subclasses.
18. `Question[] quiz = new Question[SIZE];`
19. You cannot tell from the fragment—`cq` may be initialized with an object of a subclass of `ChoiceQuestion`. The `display` method of whatever object `cq` references is invoked.
20. No. This is a static method of the `Math` class. There is no implicit parameter `object` that could be used to dynamically look up a method.
21. Because the implementor of the `PrintStream` class did not supply a `toString` method.
22. The second line will not compile. The class `Object` does not have a method `length`.
23. The code will compile, but the second line will throw a class cast exception because `Question` is not a superclass of `String`.
24. There are only a few methods that can be invoked on variables of type `Object`.
25. The value is `false` if `x` is `null` and `true` otherwise.

# INTERFACES

## CHAPTER GOALS

To be able to declare and use interface types

To appreciate how interfaces can be used to decouple classes

To learn how to implement helper classes as inner classes

To implement event listeners in graphical applications

## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### 10.1 USING INTERFACES FOR ALGORITHM REUSE 464

*Syntax 10.1:* Declaring an Interface 465

*Syntax 10.2:* Implementing an Interface 467

*Common Error 10.1:* Forgetting to Declare Implementing Methods as Public 470

*Common Error 10.2:* Trying to Instantiate an Interface 470

*Special Topic 10.1:* Constants in Interfaces 470

### 10.2 WORKING WITH INTERFACE VARIABLES 471

*Worked Example 10.1:* Investigating Number Sequences 

### 10.3 THE COMPARABLE INTERFACE 473

*Special Topic 10.2:* The clone Method and the Cloneable Interface 475

### 10.4 USING INTERFACES FOR CALLBACKS 477

### 10.5 INNER CLASSES 481

*Special Topic 10.3:* Anonymous Classes 482



### 10.6 MOCK OBJECTS 483

### 10.7 EVENT HANDLING 484

*Common Error 10.3:* Modifying Parameter Types in the Implementing Method 489

*Common Error 10.4:* Trying to Call Listener Methods 490

### 10.8 BUILDING APPLICATIONS WITH BUTTONS 490

*Common Error 10.5:* Forgetting to Attach a Listener 493

*Programming Tip 10.1:* Don't Use a Container as a Listener 493

### 10.9 PROCESSING TIMER EVENTS 494

*Common Error 10.6:* Forgetting to Repaint 496

### 10.10 MOUSE EVENTS 497

*Special Topic 10.4:* Keyboard Events 500

*Special Topic 10.5:* Event Adapters 501

*Computing & Society 10.1:* Open Source and Free Software 502



A mixer rotates any tools that will attach to its motor's shaft. In other words, a single motor can be used with multiple tools. We want to be able to *reuse* software components in the same way. In this chapter, you will learn an important strategy for separating the reusable part of a computation from the parts that vary in each reuse scenario. The reusable part invokes methods of an *interface*, not caring how the methods are implemented—just as the mixer doesn't care about the shape of the attachment. In a program, the reusable code is combined with a class that implements the interface methods. To produce a different application, you plug in another class that implements the same interface.

## 10.1 Using Interfaces for Algorithm Reuse

It is often possible to make a service available to a wide set of inputs by focusing on the essential operations that the service requires. *Interface types* are used to express these common operations.

*This restaurant is willing to serve anyone who conforms to the Customer interface with eat and pay methods.*



### 10.1.1 Defining an Interface Type

Consider this average method that provides a service, namely to compute the average bank balance of an array of bank accounts:

```
public static double average(BankAccount[] objects)
{
    double sum = 0;
    for (BankAccount obj : objects)
    {
        sum = sum + obj.getBalance();
    }
    if (objects.length > 0) { return sum / objects.length; }
    else { return 0; }
}
```

Now suppose we want to compute an average of other objects. We have to write that method *again*. Here it is for Country objects:

```
public static double average(Country[] objects)
{
    double sum = 0;
    for (Country obj : objects)
    {
        sum = sum + obj.getArea();
```

```

        }
        if (objects.length > 0) { return sum / objects.length; }
        else { return 0; }
    }
}

```

Clearly, the algorithm for computing the average is the same in all cases, but the details of measurement differ. We would like to provide a *single* method that provides this service.

But there is a problem. Each class has a different name for the method that returns the value that is being averaged. In the `BankAccount` class, we call `getBalance`. In the `Country` class, we call `getArea`.

Suppose that the various classes agree on a method `getMeasure` that obtains the measure to be used in the data analysis. For bank accounts, `getMeasure` returns the balance. For countries, `getMeasure` returns the area, and so on.

Then we can implement a single method that computes

```
sum = sum + obj.getMeasure();
```

But agreeing on the name of the method is only half the solution. In Java, we also must declare the type of the variable `obj`. Of course, you can't write

```
BankAccount or Country or ... obj; // No
```

We need to invent a new type that describes any class whose objects can be measured.

In Java, an **interface type** is used to specify required operations. We will declare an interface type that we call `Measurable`:

```

public interface Measurable
{
    double getMeasure();
}

```

The interface declaration lists all methods that the interface type requires. The `Measurable` interface type requires a single method, `getMeasure`. In general, an interface type can require multiple methods.

An interface type is similar to a class, but there are several important differences:

- An interface type does not have instance variables.
- All methods in an interface type are *abstract*; that is, they have a name, parameters, and a return type, but they don't have an implementation.
- All methods in an interface type are automatically public.
- An interface type has no constructor. Interfaces are not classes, and you cannot construct objects of an interface type.

A Java interface type declares methods but does not provide their implementations.

## Syntax 10.1 Declaring an Interface

**Syntax**

```

public interface InterfaceName
{
    method headers
}

```

The methods of an interface are automatically public. No implementation is provided.

```

public interface Measurable
{
    double getMeasure();
}

```

Now that we have a type that denotes measurability, we can implement a reusable average method:

```
public static double average(Measurable[] objects)
{
    double sum = 0;
    for (Measurable obj : objects)
    {
        sum = sum + obj.getMeasure();
    }
    if (objects.length > 0) { return sum / objects.length; }
    else { return 0; }
}
```

This method is useful for objects of any class that conforms to the `Measurable` type. In the next section, you will see what a class must do to make its objects measurable.

Note that the `Measurable` interface is not a type in the standard library—it was created specifically for this book, to provide a very simple example for studying the interface concept.

*This standmixer provides the “rotation” service to any attachment that conforms to a common interface. Similarly, the average method at the end of this section works with any class that implements a common interface.*



### 10.1.2 Implementing an Interface Type

Use the `implements` reserved word to indicate that a class implements an interface type.

The average method of the preceding section can process objects of any class that implements the `Measurable` interface. A class **implements an interface** type if it declares the interface in an `implements` clause, like this:

```
public class BankAccount implements Measurable
```

The class should then implement the method or methods that the interface requires:

```
public class BankAccount implements Measurable
{
    ...
    public double getMeasure()
    {
        return balance;
    }
}
```

Note that the class must declare the method as `public`, whereas the interface need not—all methods in an interface are `public`.

Once the `BankAccount` class implements the `Measurable` interface type, `BankAccount` objects are instances of the `Measurable` type:

```
Measurable obj = new BankAccount(); // OK
```

## Syntax 10.2 Implementing an Interface

**Syntax**

```
public class ClassName implements InterfaceName, InterfaceName, . . .
{
    instance variables
    methods
}
```

```
public class BankAccount implements Measurable
{
    . . .
    public double getMeasure()
    {
        return balance;
    }
    . . .
}
```

BankAccount instance variables

Other BankAccount methods

List all interface types that this class implements.

This method provides the implementation for the method declared in the interface.

A variable of type `Measurable` holds a reference to an object of some class that implements the `Measurable` interface.

Similarly, it is an easy matter to modify the `Country` class to implement the `Measurable` interface:

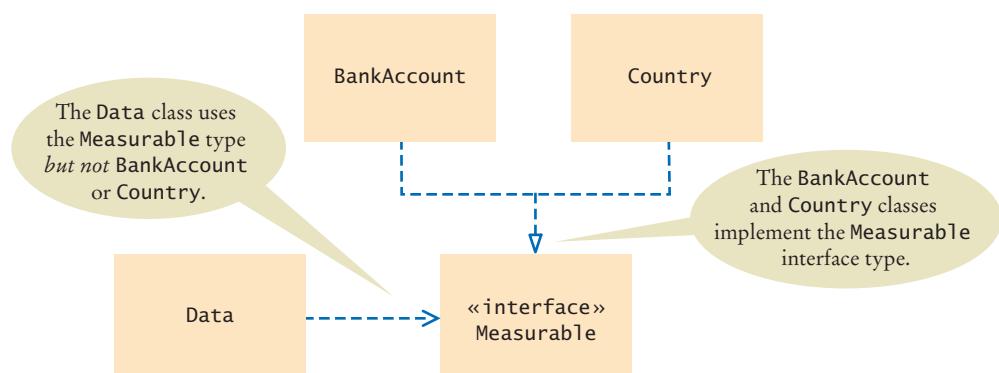
```
public class Country implements Measurable
{
    public double getMeasure()
    {
        return area;
    }
    . . .
}
```

The program at the end of this section uses a single average method (placed in class `Data`) to compute the average of bank accounts and the average of countries.

This is a typical usage for interface types. By inventing the `Measurable` interface type, we have made the average method reusable.

Figure 1 shows the relationships between the `Data` class, the `Measurable` interface, and the classes that implement the interface. Note that the `Data` class depends only on the `Measurable` interface. It is decoupled from the `BankAccount` and `Country` classes.

Use interface types to make code more reusable.



**Figure 1**  
UML Diagram of the Data Class and the Classes that Implement the Measurable Interface

In the UML notation, interfaces are tagged with an indicator «interface». A dotted arrow with a triangular tip denotes the *implements* relationship between a class and an interface. You have to look carefully at the arrow tips—a dotted line with an open arrow tip ( $\Rightarrow$ ) denotes the *uses* relationship or dependency.

### section\_1/Data.java

```

1  public class Data
2  {
3      /**
4          Computes the average of the measures of the given objects.
5          @param objects an array of Measurable objects
6          @return the average of the measures
7      */
8      public static double average(Measurable[] objects)
9      {
10         double sum = 0;
11         for (Measurable obj : objects)
12         {
13             sum = sum + obj.getMeasure();
14         }
15         if (objects.length > 0) { return sum / objects.length; }
16         else { return 0; }
17     }
18 }
```

### section\_1/MeasurableTester.java

```

1  /**
2   * This program demonstrates the measurable BankAccount and Country classes.
3  */
4  public class MeasurableTester
5  {
6      public static void main(String[] args)
7      {
8          Measurable[] accounts = new Measurable[3];
9          accounts[0] = new BankAccount(0);
10         accounts[1] = new BankAccount(10000);
11         accounts[2] = new BankAccount(2000);
12
13         double averageBalance = Data.average(accounts);
14         System.out.println("Average balance: " + averageBalance);
15         System.out.println("Expected: 4000");
16
17         Measurable[] countries = new Measurable[3];
18         countries[0] = new Country("Uruguay", 176220);
19         countries[1] = new Country("Thailand", 513120);
20         countries[2] = new Country("Belgium", 30510);
21
22         double averageArea = Data.average(countries);
23         System.out.println("Average area: " + averageArea);
24         System.out.println("Expected: 239950");
25     }
26 }
```

### Program Run

```
Average balance: 4000
Expected: 4000
Average area: 239950
Expected: 239950
```

### 10.1.3 Comparing Interfaces and Inheritance

In Chapter 9, you saw how to use inheritance to model hierarchies of related classes, such as different kinds of quiz questions or bank accounts. Multiple-choice questions and fill-in questions are questions with specific characteristics.

Interfaces model a somewhat different relationship. Consider for example the `BankAccount` and `Country` classes in the preceding section. Both implement the `Measurable` interface type, but otherwise they have nothing in common. Being measurable is just one aspect of what it means to be a bank account or country. It is useful to model this common aspect, because it enables other programmers to write tools that exploit the commonality, such as the method for computing averages.

A class can implement more than one interface, for example

```
public class Country implements Measurable, Named
```

Here, `Named` is a different interface

```
public interface Named
{
    String getName();
}
```

In contrast, a class can only extend (inherit from) a single superclass.

An interface merely specifies the behavior that an implementing class should supply. It provides no implementation. In contrast, a superclass provides some implementation that a subclass inherits.

Special Topic 9.3 introduced abstract classes, which defer the implementation of some methods to subclasses. You can think of an interface as a class in which *every* method is abstract. However, interfaces have an advantage over such abstract classes —a class can implement more than one of them.

Generally, you will develop interfaces when you have code that processes objects of different classes in a common way. For example, a drawing program might have different objects that can be drawn, such as lines, images, text, and so on. In this situation, a `Drawable` interface with a `draw` method will be useful. Another example is a traffic simulation that models the movement of people, cars, dogs, balls, and so on. In this example, you might create a `Moveable` interface with methods `move` and `getPosition`.

#### SELF CHECK



- Suppose you want to use the `average` method to find the average salary of an array of `Employee` objects. What condition must the `Employee` class fulfill?
- Why can't the `average` method have a parameter variable of type `Object[]`?
- Why can't you use the `average` method to find the average length of `String` objects?
- What is wrong with this code?

```
Measurable meas = new Measurable();
System.out.println(meas.getMeasure());
```

- What is wrong with this code?

```
Measurable meas = new Country("Uruguay", 176220);
System.out.println(meas.getName());
```

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E10.1, E10.2, E10.3.

**Common Error 10.1****Forgetting to Declare Implementing Methods as Public**

The methods in an interface are not declared as `public`, because they are public by default. However, the methods in a class are not public by default—their default access level is “package” access, which we discussed in Chapter 8. It is a common error to forget the `public` reserved word when declaring a method from an interface:

```
public class BankAccount implements Measurable
{
    . .
    double getMeasure() // Oops—should be public
    {
        return balance;
    }
}
```

Then the compiler complains that the method has a weaker access level, namely package access instead of public access. The remedy is to declare the method as `public`.

**Common Error 10.2****Trying to Instantiate an Interface**

You can declare variables whose type is an interface, for example:

```
Measurable meas;
```

However, you can *never* construct an object of an interface type:

```
Measurable meas = new Measurable(); // Error
```

Interfaces aren’t classes. There are no objects whose types are interfaces. If an interface variable refers to an object, then the object must belong to some class—a class that implements the interface:

```
Measurable meas = new BankAccount(); // OK
```

**Special Topic 10.1****Constants in Interfaces**

Interfaces cannot have instance variables, but it is legal to specify **constants**. For example, the `SwingConstants` interface declares various constants, such as `SwingConstants.NORTH`, `SwingConstants.EAST`, and so on.

When declaring a constant in an interface, you can (and should) omit the reserved words `public static final`, because all variables in an interface are automatically `public static final`.

For example,

```
public interface SwingConstants
{
    int NORTH = 1;
    int NORTHEAST = 2;
    int EAST = 3;
    . .
}
```

## 10.2 Working with Interface Variables

In the following sections, you will learn how to work with variables whose types are interfaces.

### 10.2.1 Converting from Classes to Interfaces

Have a close look at the call

```
double averageBalance = Data.average(accounts);
```

from the program of the preceding section. Here, `accounts` is an array of `BankAccount` objects. However, the `average` method expects an array of `Measurable` objects:

```
public double average(Measurable[] objects)
```

It is legal to convert from the `BankAccount` type to the `Measurable` type. In general, you can convert from a class type to the type of any interface that the class implements. For example,

```
BankAccount account = new BankAccount(1000);
Measurable meas = account; // OK
```

Alternatively, a `Measurable` variable can refer to an object of the `Country` class of the preceding section because that class also implements the `Measurable` interface.

```
Country uruguay = new Country("Uruguay", 176220);
Measurable meas = uruguay; // Also OK
```

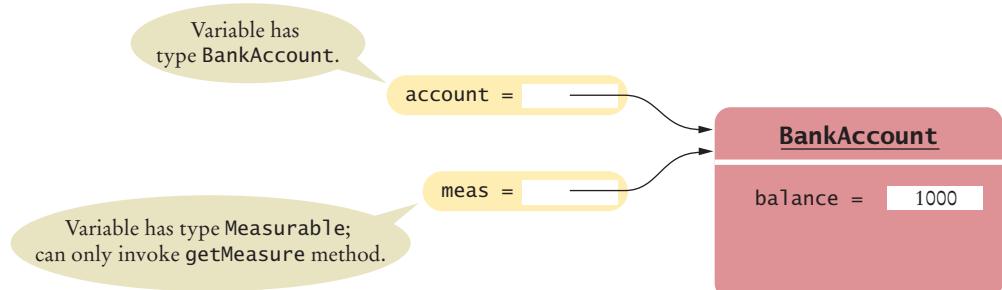
However, the `Rectangle` class from the standard library doesn't implement the `Measurable` interface. Therefore, the following assignment is an error:

```
Measurable meas = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30); // Error
```

### 10.2.2 Invoking Methods on Interface Variables

Now suppose that the variable `meas` has been initialized with a reference to an object of some class that implements the `Measurable` interface. You don't know to which class that object belongs. But you do know that the class implements the methods of the interface type, and you can invoke them:

```
double result = meas.getMeasure();
```



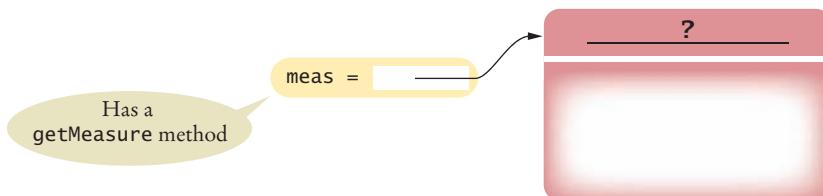
**Figure 2** Variables of Class and Interface Types

Method calls on an interface reference are polymorphic. The appropriate method is determined at run time.

Now let's think through the call to the `getMeasure` method more carefully. Which `getMeasure` method is called? The `BankAccount` and `Country` classes provide two different implementations of that method. How does the correct method get called if the caller doesn't even know the exact class to which `meas` belongs?

This is again polymorphism in action. (See Section 9.4 for a discussion of polymorphism.) The Java virtual machine locates the correct method by first looking at the class of the actual object, and then calling the method with the given name in that class. That is, if `meas` refers to a `BankAccount` object, then the `BankAccount.getMeasure` method is called. If `meas` refers to a `Country` object, then the `Country.getMeasure` method is called.

**Figure 3**  
An Interface Reference  
Can Refer to an Object  
of Any Class that  
Implements the Interface



### 10.2.3 Casting from Interfaces to Classes

Occasionally, it happens that you store an object in an interface reference and you need to convert its type back. Consider this method that returns the object with the larger measure:

```
public static Measurable larger(Measurable obj1, Measurable obj2)
{
    if (obj1.getMeasure() > obj2.getMeasure())
    {
        return obj1;
    }
    else
    {
        return obj2;
    }
}
```

The `larger` method returns the object with the larger measure, *as a Measurable reference*. It has no choice—it does not know the exact type of the object. Let's use the method:

```
Country uruguay = new Country("Uruguay", 176220);
Country thailand = new Country("Thailand", 513120);
Measurable max = larger(uruguay, thailand);
```

Now what can you do with the `max` reference? You know it refers to a `Country` object, but the compiler doesn't. For example, you cannot call the `getName` method:

```
String countryName = max.getName(); // Error
```

That call is an error, because the `Measurable` type has no `getName` method.

However, as long as you are absolutely sure that `max` refers to a `Country` object, you can use the `cast` notation to convert its type back:

```
Country maxCountry = (Country) max;
String name = maxCountry.getName();
```

You need a cast to convert from an interface type to a class type.

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a demonstration of conversions between class and interface types.

If you are wrong, and the object doesn't actually refer to a country, a run-time exception will occur.



*If a Person object is actually a Superhero, you need a cast before you can apply any Superhero methods.*

**SELF CHECK**

6. Can you use a cast (`BankAccount`) `meas` to convert a `Measurable` variable `meas` to a `BankAccount` reference?
7. If both `BankAccount` and `Country` implement the `Measurable` interface, can a `Country` reference be converted to a `BankAccount` reference?
8. Why is it impossible to construct a `Measurable` object?
9. Why can you nevertheless declare a variable whose type is `Measurable`?
10. What does this code fragment print? Why is this an example of polymorphism?  

```
Measurable[] data = { new BankAccount(10000), new Country("Belgium", 30510) };
System.out.println(average(data));
```

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R10.1, R10.2, R10.3.

**WORKED EXAMPLE 10.1****Investigating Number Sequences**

Learn how to use a `Sequence` interface to investigate properties of arbitrary number sequences. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 10.1.



## 10.3 The Comparable Interface

Implement the `Comparable` interface so that objects of your class can be compared, for example, in a `sort` method.

In the preceding sections, we defined the `Measurable` interface and provided an `average` method that works with any classes implementing that interface. In this section, you will learn about the `Comparable` interface of the standard Java library.

The `Measurable` interface is used for measuring a single object. The `Comparable` interface is more complex because comparisons involve two objects. The interface declares a `compareTo` method. The call

`a.compareTo(b)`

must return a negative number if `a` should come before `b`, zero if `a` and `b` are the same, and a positive number if `b` should come before `a`.

The `Comparable` interface has a single method:

```
public interface Comparable
{
    int compareTo(Object otherObject);
}
```

For example, the `BankAccount` class can implement `Comparable` like this:

```
public class BankAccount implements Comparable
{
    ...
    public int compareTo(Object otherObject)
    {
        BankAccount other = (BankAccount) otherObject;
        if (balance < other.balance) { return -1; }
        if (balance > other.balance) { return 1; }
        return 0;
    }
    ...
}
```

This `compareTo` method compares bank accounts by their balance. Note that the `compareTo` method has a parameter variable of type `Object`. To turn it into a `BankAccount` reference, we use a cast:

```
BankAccount other = (BankAccount) otherObject;
```

Once the `BankAccount` class implements the `Comparable` interface, you can sort an array of bank accounts with the `Arrays.sort` method:

```
BankAccount[] accounts = new BankAccount[3];
accounts[0] = new BankAccount(10000);
accounts[1] = new BankAccount(0);
accounts[2] = new BankAccount(2000);
Arrays.sort(accounts);
```

The `accounts` array is now sorted by increasing balance.

#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates the `Comparable` interface with bank accounts.



*The `compareTo` method checks whether another object is larger or smaller.*

#### SELF CHECK



11. How can you sort an array of `Country` objects by increasing area?
12. Can you use the `Arrays.sort` method to sort an array of `String` objects? Check the API documentation for the `String` class.
13. Can you use the `Arrays.sort` method to sort an array of `Rectangle` objects? Check the API documentation for the `Rectangle` class.
14. Write a method `max` that finds the larger of any two `Comparable` objects.
15. Write a call to the method of Self Check 14 that computes the larger of two bank accounts, then prints its balance.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E10.6, E10.23.

## Special Topic 10.2

**The clone Method and the Cloneable Interface**

You know that copying an object reference simply gives you two references to the same object:

```
BankAccount account = new BankAccount(1000);
BankAccount account2 = account;
account2.deposit(500);
```

// Now both account and account2 refer to a bank account with a balance of 1500

What can you do if you actually want to make a copy of an object? That is the purpose of the `clone` method. The `clone` method must return a *new* object that has an identical state to the existing object (see Figure 4).

Here is how to call it:

```
BankAccount clonedAccount = (BankAccount) account.clone();
```

The return type of the `clone` method is the class `Object`. When you call the method, you must use a cast to inform the compiler that `account.clone()` really returns a `BankAccount` object.

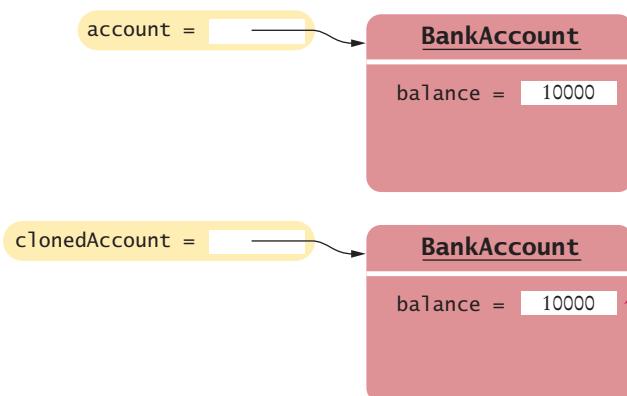
The `Object.clone` method is the starting point for the `clone` methods in your own classes. It creates a new object of the same type as the original object. It also automatically copies the instance variables from the original object to the cloned object. Here is a first attempt to implement the `clone` method for the `BankAccount` class:

```
public class BankAccount
{
    ...
    public Object clone()
    {
        // Not complete
        Object clonedAccount = super.clone();
        return clonedAccount;
    }
}
```



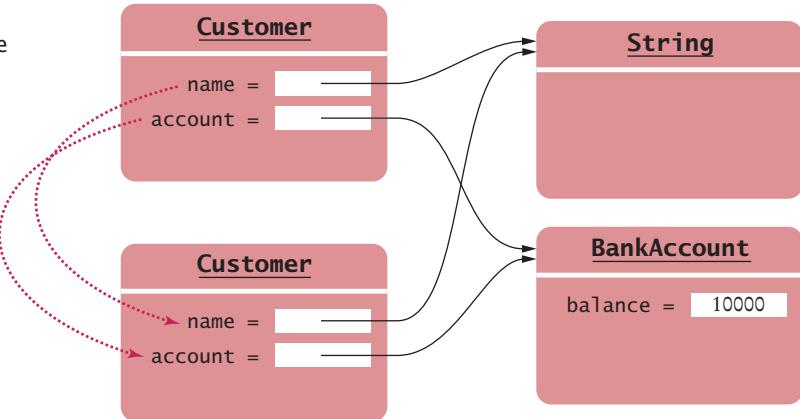
*The `clone` method makes an identical copy of an object.*

However, this `Object.clone` method must be used with care. It only shifts the problem of cloning by one level; it does not completely solve it. Specifically, if an object contains a reference to another object, then the `Object.clone` method makes a copy of that object reference, not a clone of that object. Figure 5 shows how the `Object.clone` method works with a `Customer` object that has references to a `String` object and a `BankAccount` object. As you can see, the `Object.clone` method copies the references to the cloned `Customer` object and does not clone the objects to which they refer. Such a copy is called a **shallow copy**.



**Figure 4** Cloning Objects

**Figure 5**  
The `Object.clone` Method Makes a Shallow Copy



There is a reason why the `Object.clone` method does not systematically clone all subobjects. In some situations, it is unnecessary. For example, if an object contains a reference to a string, there is no harm in copying the string reference, because Java string objects can never change their contents. The `Object.clone` method does the right thing if an object contains only numbers, Boolean values, and strings. But it must be used with caution when an object contains references to mutable objects.

For that reason, there are two safeguards built into the `Object.clone` method to ensure that it is not used accidentally. First, the method is declared `protected` (see Special Topic 9.5). This prevents you from accidentally calling `x.clone()` if the class to which `x` belongs hasn't declared `clone` to be `public`.

As a second precaution, `Object.clone` checks that the object being cloned implements the `Cloneable` interface. If not, it throws an exception. The `Object.clone` method looks like this:

```

public class Object
{
    protected Object clone()
        throws CloneNotSupportedException
    {
        if (this instanceof Cloneable)
        {
            // Copy the instance variables
            .
        }
        else
        {
            throw new CloneNotSupportedException();
        }
    }
}

```

Unfortunately, all that safeguarding means that the legitimate callers of `Object.clone()` pay a price—they must catch that exception (see Chapter 11) *even if their class implements Cloneable*.

```

public class BankAccount implements Cloneable
{
    .
    .
    public Object clone()
    {
        try
        {
            return super.clone();
        }
    }
}

```

```

        catch (CloneNotSupportedException e)
        {
            // Can't happen because we implement Cloneable but we still must catch it.
            return null;
        }
    }
}
}

```

If an object contains a reference to another mutable object, then you must call `clone` for that reference. For example, suppose the `Customer` class has an instance variable of class `BankAccount`. You can implement `Customer.clone` as follows:

```

public class Customer implements Cloneable
{
    private String name;
    private BankAccount account;
    ...
    public Object clone()
    {
        try
        {
            Customer cloned = (Customer) super.clone();
            cloned.account = (BankAccount) account.clone();
            return cloned;
        }
        catch(CloneNotSupportedException e)
        { // Can't happen because we implement Cloneable
            return null;
        }
    }
}

```

In general, implementing the `clone` method requires these steps:

- Make the class implement the `Cloneable` interface type.
- In the `clone` method, call `super.clone()`. Catch the `CloneNotSupportedException` if the superclass is `Object`.
- Clone any mutable instance variables.

## 10.4 Using Interfaces for Callbacks

In this section, we introduce the notion of a **callback**, show how it leads to a more flexible average method, and study how a callback can be implemented in Java by using interface types.

To understand why a further improvement to the average method is desirable, consider these limitations of the `Measurable` interface:

- You can add the `Measurable` interface only to classes under your control. If you want to process a set of `Rectangle` objects, you cannot make the `Rectangle` class implement another interface—it is a library class, which you cannot change.
- You can measure an object in only one way. If you want to analyze a set of cars both by speed and price, you are stuck.

Therefore, let's rethink the average method. The method measures objects, requiring them to be of type `Measurable`. The responsibility of measuring lies with the added objects themselves. That is the cause for the limitations.

*A callback object waits to be called.  
The algorithm that has the callback object  
only calls it when it needs to have the  
information that the callback can provide.*



A callback is a mechanism for specifying code that is executed at a later time.

It would be better if we could give the average method the data to be averaged, and separately a method for measuring the objects. When collecting rectangles, we might give it a method for computing the area of a rectangle. When collecting cars, we might give it a method for getting the car's price.

Such a method is called a **callback**. A callback is a mechanism for bundling up a block of code so that it can be invoked at a later time.

In some programming languages, it is possible to specify callbacks directly, as blocks of code or names of methods. But Java is an object-oriented programming language. Therefore, you turn callbacks into objects. This process starts by declaring an interface for the callback:

```
public interface Measurer
{
    double measure(Object anObject);
}
```

The `measure` method measures an object and returns its measurement. Here we use the fact that all objects can be converted to the type `Object`.

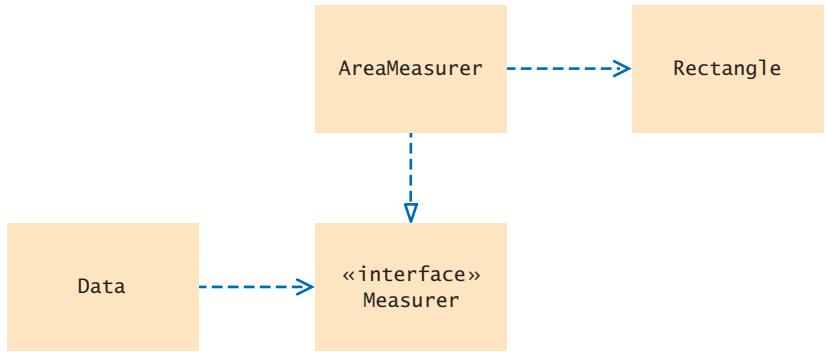
The code that makes the call to the callback receives an object of a class that implements this interface. In our case, the improved average method receives a `Measurer` object.

```
public static double average(Object[] objects, Measurer meas)
{
    double sum = 0;
    for (Object obj : objects)
    {
        sum = sum + meas.measure(obj);
    }
    if (objects.length > 0) { return sum / objects.length; }
    else { return 0; }
}
```

The average method simply makes a callback to the `measure` method whenever it needs to measure any object.

Finally, a specific callback is obtained by implementing the `Measurer` interface. For example, here is how you can measure rectangles by area. Provide a class

```
public class AreaMeasurer implements Measurer
{
    public double measure(Object anObject)
    {
        Rectangle aRectangle = (Rectangle) anObject;
        double area = aRectangle.getWidth() * aRectangle.getHeight();
        return area;
    }
}
```



**Figure 6** UML Diagram of the Data Class and the Measurer Interface

Note that the `measure` method has a parameter variable of type `Object`, even though this particular measurer just wants to measure rectangles. The method parameter types must match those of the `measure` method in the `Measurer` interface. Therefore, the `anObject` parameter variable is cast to the `Rectangle` type:

```
Rectangle aRectangle = (Rectangle) anObject;
```

What can you do with an `AreaMeasurer`? You need it to compute the average area of rectangles. Construct an object of the `AreaMeasurer` class and pass it to the `average` method:

```
Measurer areaMeas = new AreaMeasurer();
Rectangle[] rects
= { new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30), new Rectangle(10, 20, 30, 40) };
double averageArea = average(rects, areaMeas);
```

The `average` method will ask the `AreaMeasurer` object to measure the rectangles.

Figure 6 shows the UML diagram of the classes and interfaces of this solution. As in Figure 1, the `Data` class (which holds the `average` method) is decoupled from the class whose objects it processes (`Rectangle`). However, unlike in Figure 1, the `Rectangle` class is no longer coupled with another class. Instead, to process rectangles, you provide a small “helper” class `AreaMeasurer`. This helper class has only one purpose: to tell the `average` method how to measure its objects.

Here is the complete program:

#### section\_4/Measurer.java

```

1  /**
2   * Describes any class whose objects can measure other objects.
3   */
4  public interface Measurer
5  {
6      /**
7       * Computes the measure of an object.
8       * @param anObject the object to be measured
9       * @return the measure
10    */
11    double measure(Object anObject);
12 }
```

**section\_4/AreaMeasurer.java**

```

1 import java.awt.Rectangle;
2
3 /**
4  * Objects of this class measure rectangles by area.
5 */
6 public class AreaMeasurer implements Measurer
7 {
8     public double measure(Object anObject)
9     {
10         Rectangle aRectangle = (Rectangle) anObject;
11         double area = aRectangle.getWidth() * aRectangle.getHeight();
12         return area;
13     }
14 }
```

**section\_4/Data.java**

```

1 public class Data
2 {
3     /**
4      * Computes the average of the measures of the given objects.
5      * @param objects an array of objects
6      * @param meas the measurer for the objects
7      * @return the average of the measures
8     */
9     public static double average(Object[] objects, Measurer meas)
10    {
11        double sum = 0;
12        for (Object obj : objects)
13        {
14            sum = sum + meas.measure(obj);
15        }
16        if (objects.length > 0) { return sum / objects.length; }
17        else { return 0; }
18    }
19 }
```

**section\_4/MeasurerTester.java**

```

1 import java.awt.Rectangle;
2
3 /**
4  * This program demonstrates the use of a Measurer.
5 */
6 public class MeasurerTester
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10        Measurer areaMeas = new AreaMeasurer();
11
12        Rectangle[] rects = new Rectangle[]
13        {
14            new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30),
15            new Rectangle(10, 20, 30, 40),
16            new Rectangle(20, 30, 5, 15)
17        };
18 }
```

```

19     double averageArea = Data.average(rects, areaMeas);
20     System.out.println("Average area: " + averageArea);
21     System.out.println("Expected: 625");
22   }
23 }
```

### Program Run

```
Average area: 625
Expected: 625
```

#### SELF CHECK



16. Suppose you want to use the average method of Section 10.1 to find the average length of String objects. Why can't this work?
17. How can you use the average class of this section to find the average length of String objects?
18. Why does the measure method of the Measurer interface have one more argument than the getMeasure method of the Measurable interface?
19. Write a method max with three arguments that finds the larger of any two objects, using a Measurer to compare them.
20. Write a call to the method of Self Check 19 that computes the larger of two rectangles, then prints its width and height.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R10.7, E10.4, E10.5.

## 10.5 Inner Classes



An inner class is a class that is declared inside another class.

The AreaMeasurer class of the preceding section is a very trivial class. We need this class only because the average method needs an object of some class that implements the Measurer interface. When you have a class that serves a very limited purpose, such as this one, you can declare the class inside the method that needs it:

```

public class MeasurerTester
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        class AreaMeasurer implements Measurer
        {
            . . .
        }

        . . .
        Measurer areaMeas = new AreaMeasurer();
        double averageArea = Data.average(rects, areaMeas);
        . . .
    }
}
```

An inner class is declared inside another class.

A class that is declared inside another class, such as the AreaMeasurer class in this example, is called an **inner class**. This arrangement signals to the reader of your program that the AreaMeasurer class is not interesting beyond the scope of this method. Since an inner class inside a method is not a publicly accessible feature, you don't need to document it as thoroughly.

Inner classes are commonly used for utility classes that should not be visible elsewhere in a program.

You can also declare an inner class inside an enclosing class, but outside of its methods. Then the inner class is available to all methods of the enclosing class.

```
public class MeasurerTester
{
    class AreaMeasurer implements Measurer
    {
        . . .

    }

    public static void main(String[] args)
    {

        Measurer areaMeas = new AreaMeasurer();
        double averageArea = Data.average(rects, areaMeas);
        . . .
    }
}
```

When you compile the source files for a program that uses inner classes, have a look at the class files in your program directory—you will find that the inner classes are stored in files with curious names, such as `MeasurerTester$1AreaMeasurer.class`. The exact names aren't important. The point is that the compiler turns an inner class into a regular class file.

#### SELF CHECK



21. Why would you use an inner class instead of a regular class?
22. When would you place an inner class inside a class but outside any methods?
23. How many class files are produced when you compile the `MeasurerTester` program from this section?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E10.7, E10.9.

#### Special Topic 10.3



#### Anonymous Classes

An entity is *anonymous* if it does not have a name. In a program, something that is only used once doesn't usually need a name. For example, you can replace

```
Country belgium = new Country("Belgium", 30510);
countries.add(belgium);
```

with

```
countries.add(new Country("Belgium", 30510));
```

if the country is not used elsewhere in the same method. The object `new Country("Belgium", 30510)` is an **anonymous object**. Programmers like anonymous objects, because they don't have to go through the trouble of coming up with a name. If you have struggled with the decision whether to call a coin `c`, `dime`, or `aCoin`, you'll understand this sentiment.

Inner classes often give rise to a similar situation. After a single object of the `AreaMeasurer` has been constructed, the class is never used again. In Java, it is possible to declare **anonymous classes** if all you ever need is a single object of the class.

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    // Construct an object of an anonymous class
    Measurer m = new Measurer()
        // Class declaration starts here
    {
```

```

public double measure(Object anObject)
{
    Rectangle aRectangle = (Rectangle) anObject;
    return aRectangle.getWidth() * aRectangle.getHeight();
}
};

double result = Data.average(rectangles, m);
...
}

```

This means: Construct an object of a class that implements the `Measurer` interface by declaring the `measure` method as specified. Many programmers like this style, but we will not use it in this book.

## 10.6 Mock Objects

A mock object provides the same services as another object, but in a simplified manner.

When you work on a program that consists of multiple classes, you often want to test some of the classes before the entire program has been completed. A very effective technique for this purpose is the use of **mock objects**. A mock object provides the same services as another object, but in a simplified manner.

Consider a grade book application that manages quiz scores for students. This calls for a class `GradeBook` with methods such as

```

public void addScore(int studentId, double score)
public double getAverageScore(int studentId)
public void save(String filename)

```

Now consider the class `GradingProgram` that manipulates a `GradeBook` object. That class calls the methods of the `GradeBook` class. We would like to test the `GradingProgram` class without having a fully functional `GradeBook` class.

To make this work, declare an interface type with the same methods that the `GradeBook` class provides. A common convention is to use the letter `I` as the prefix for such an interface:

```

public interface IGradeBook
{
    void addScore(int studentId, double score);
    double getAverageScore(int studentId);
    void save(String filename);
    ...
}

```

*If you just want to practice arranging the Christmas decorations, you don't need a real tree. Similarly, when you develop a computer program, you can use mock objects to test parts of your program.*



Both the mock class and the actual class implement the same interface.

The `GradingProgram` class should *only* use this interface, never the `GradeBook` class. Of course, the `GradeBook` class will implement this interface, but as already mentioned, it may not be ready for some time.

In the meantime, provide a mock implementation that makes some simplifying assumptions. Saving is not actually necessary for testing the user interface. We can temporarily restrict to the case of a single student.

```
public class MockGradeBook implements IGradeBook
{
    private ArrayList<Double> scores;

    public MockGradeBook() { scores = new ArrayList<Double>(); }

    public void addScore(int studentId, double score)
    {
        // Ignore studentId
        scores.add(score);
    }
    public double getAverageScore(int studentId)
    {
        double total = 0;
        for (double x : scores) { total = total + x; }
        return total / scores.size();
    }
    public void save(String filename)
    {
        // Do nothing
    }
    .
}
```

Now construct an instance of `MockGradeBook` and use it in the `GradingProgram` class. You can immediately test the `GradingProgram` class. When you are ready to test the actual class, simply use a `GradeBook` instance instead. Don't erase the mock class—it will still come in handy for regression testing.

#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates the use of mock objects for testing.



#### SELF CHECK

24. Why is it necessary that the real class and the mock class implement the same interface type?
25. Why is the technique of mock objects particularly effective when the `GradeBook` and `GradingProgram` class are developed by two programmers?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: P10.12, P10.13.

## 10.7 Event Handling

This and the following sections continue the book's graphics track. You will learn how interfaces are used when programming graphical user interfaces.

In the applications that you have written so far, user input was under control of the *program*. The program asked the user for input in a specific order. For example, a program might ask the user to supply first a name, then a dollar amount. But the programs that you use every day on your computer don't work like that. In a program with a graphical user interface, the *user* is in control. The user can use both the

User-interface events include key presses, mouse moves, button clicks, menu selections, and so on.

mouse and the keyboard and can manipulate many parts of the user interface in any desired order. For example, the user can enter information into text fields, pull down menus, click buttons, and drag scroll bars in any order. The program must react to the user commands in whatever order they arrive. Having to deal with many possible inputs in random order is quite a bit harder than simply forcing the user to supply input in a fixed order.

In the following sections, you will learn how to write Java programs that can react to user-interface events, such as menu selections and mouse clicks. The Java windowing toolkit has a very sophisticated mechanism that allows a program to specify the events in which it is interested and which objects to notify when one of these events occurs.

### 10.7.1 Listening to Events

Whenever the user of a graphical program types characters or uses the mouse anywhere inside one of the windows of the program, the Java windowing toolkit sends a notification to the program that an **event** has occurred. The windowing toolkit generates huge numbers of events. For example, whenever the mouse moves a tiny interval over a window, a “mouse move” event is generated. Whenever the mouse button is clicked, “mouse pressed” and “mouse released” events are generated. In addition, higher-level events are generated when a user selects a menu item or button.

Most programs don’t want to be flooded by irrelevant events. For example, consider what happens when selecting a menu item with the mouse. The mouse moves over the menu item, then the mouse button is pressed, and finally the mouse button is released. Rather than receiving all these mouse events, a program can indicate that it only cares about menu selections, not about the underlying mouse events. However, if the mouse input is used for drawing shapes on a virtual canvas, it is necessary to closely track mouse events.

Every program must indicate which events it needs to receive. It does that by installing **event listener** objects. An event listener object belongs to a class that you provide. The methods of your event listener classes contain the instructions that you want to have executed when the events occur.

To install a listener, you need to know the **event source**. The event source is the user-interface component that generates a particular event. You add an event listener object to the appropriate event sources. Whenever the event occurs, the event source calls the appropriate methods of all attached event listeners.

This sounds somewhat abstract, so let’s run through an extremely simple program that prints a message whenever a button is clicked (see Figure 7). Button listeners must belong to a class that implements the `ActionListener` interface:

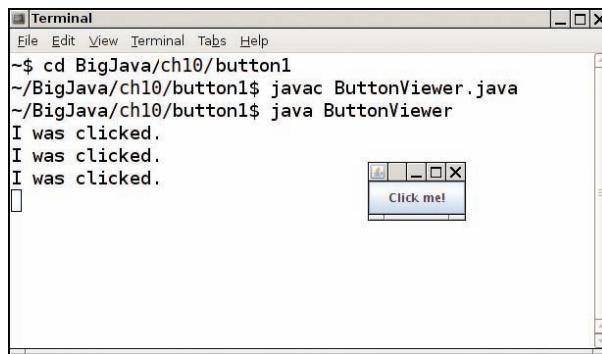
```
public interface ActionListener
{
    void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event);
}
```



*In an event-driven user interface, the program receives an event whenever the user manipulates an input component.*

An event listener belongs to a class that is provided by the application programmer. Its methods describe the actions to be taken when an event occurs.

Event sources report on events. When an event occurs, the event source notifies all event listeners.



**Figure 7** Implementing an Action Listener

This particular interface has a single method, `actionPerformed`. It is your job to supply a class whose `actionPerformed` method contains the instructions that you want executed whenever the button is clicked. Here is a very simple example of such a listener class:

#### section\_7\_1/ClickListener.java

```

1 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
2 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
3
4 /**
5     An action listener that prints a message.
6 */
7 public class ClickListener implements ActionListener
8 {
9     public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
10    {
11        System.out.println("I was clicked.");
12    }
13 }
```

We ignore the values of the event parameter variable of the `actionPerformed` method—it contains additional details about the event, such as the time at which it occurred.

Once the listener class has been declared, we need to construct an object of the class and add it to the button:

```
ClickListener listener = new ClickListener();
button.addActionListener(listener);
```

Whenever the button is clicked, it calls

```
listener.actionPerformed(event);
```

As a result, the message is printed.

You can think of the `actionPerformed` method as another example of a callback, similar to the `measure` method of the `Measurer` class. The windowing toolkit calls the `actionPerformed` method whenever the button is pressed, whereas the `Data` class calls the `measure` method whenever it needs to measure an object.

The `ButtonViewer` class, shown below, constructs a frame with a button and adds a `ClickListener` to the button. You can test this program out by opening a console window, starting the `ButtonViewer` program from that console window, clicking the button, and watching the messages in the console window.

Use `JButton` components for buttons. Attach an `ActionListener` to each button.

**section\_7\_1/ButtonViewer.java**

```
1 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
2 import javax.swing.JButton;
3 import javax.swing.JFrame;
4
5 /**
6  * This program demonstrates how to install an action listener.
7 */
8 public class ButtonViewer
9 {
10     private static final int FRAME_WIDTH = 100;
11     private static final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 60;
12
13     public static void main(String[] args)
14     {
15         JFrame frame = new JFrame();
16         JButton button = new JButton("Click me!");
17         frame.add(button);
18
19         ActionListener listener = new ClickListener();
20         button.addActionListener(listener);
21
22         frame.setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
23         frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
24         frame.setVisible(true);
25     }
26 }
```

### 10.7.2 Using Inner Classes for Listeners

In the preceding section, you saw how the code that is executed when a button is clicked is placed into a listener class. It is common to implement listener classes as inner classes like this:

```
 JButton button = new JButton("...");

// This inner class is declared in the same method as the button variable
class MyListener implements ActionListener
{
    ...
}

ActionListener listener = new MyListener();
button.addActionListener(listener);
```

There are two advantages to making a listener class into an inner class. First, listener classes tend to be very short. You can put the inner class close to where it is needed, without cluttering up the remainder of the project. Moreover, inner classes have a very attractive feature: Their methods can access instance variables and methods of the surrounding class.

This feature is particularly useful when implementing event handlers. It allows the inner class to access variables without having to receive them as constructor or method arguments.

Let's look at an example. Suppose we want to add interest to a bank account whenever a button is clicked.

Methods of an inner  
class can access  
variables from the  
surrounding class.

```

 JButton button = new JButton("Add Interest");
 final BankAccount account = new BankAccount(INITIAL_BALANCE);

 // This inner class is declared in the same method as the account and button variables.
 class AddInterestListener implements ActionListener
 {
     public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
     {
         // The listener method accesses the account variable
         // from the surrounding block
         double interest = account.getBalance() * INTEREST_RATE / 100;
         account.deposit(interest);
     }
 };

 ActionListener listener = new AddInterestListener();
 button.addActionListener(listener);

```

Local variables that are accessed by an inner class method must be declared as final.

There is a technical wrinkle. An inner class can access surrounding *local* variables only if they are declared as `final`. That sounds like a restriction, but it is usually not an issue in practice. Keep in mind that an object variable is `final` when the variable always refers to the same object. The state of the object can change, but the variable can't refer to a different object. For example, in our program, we never intended to have the `account` variable refer to multiple bank accounts, so there was no harm in declaring it as `final`.

An inner class can also access *instance* variables of the surrounding class, again with a restriction. The instance variable must belong to the object that constructed the inner class object. If the inner class object was created inside a static method, it can only access static variables.

Here is the source code for the program:

### **section\_7\_2/InvestmentViewer1.java**

```

 1 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
 2 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
 3 import javax.swing.JButton;
 4 import javax.swing.JFrame;
 5
 6 /**
 7      This program demonstrates how an action listener can access
 8      a variable from a surrounding block.
 9 */
10 public class InvestmentViewer1
11 {
12     private static final int FRAME_WIDTH = 120;
13     private static final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 60;
14
15     private static final double INTEREST_RATE = 10;
16     private static final double INITIAL_BALANCE = 1000;
17
18     public static void main(String[] args)
19     {
20         JFrame frame = new JFrame();
21
22         // The button to trigger the calculation
23         JButton button = new JButton("Add Interest");
24         frame.add(button);
25

```

```

26 // The application adds interest to this bank account
27 final BankAccount account = new BankAccount(INITIAL_BALANCE);
28
29 class AddInterestListener implements ActionListener
30 {
31     public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
32     {
33         // The listener method accesses the account variable
34         // from the surrounding block
35         double interest = account.getBalance() * INTEREST_RATE / 100;
36         account.deposit(interest);
37         System.out.println("balance: " + account.getBalance());
38     }
39 }
40
41 ActionListener listener = new AddInterestListener();
42 button.addActionListener(listener);
43
44 frame.setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
45 frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
46 frame.setVisible(true);
47 }
48 }
```

### Program Run

```

balance: 1100.0
balance: 1210.0
balance: 1331.0
balance: 1464.1
```

#### SELF CHECK



26. Which objects are the event source and the event listener in the ButtonViewer program?
27. Why is it legal to assign a ClickListener object to a variable of type ActionListener?
28. When do you call the actionPerformed method?
29. Why would an inner class method want to access a variable from a surrounding scope?
30. If an inner class accesses a local variable from a surrounding scope, what special rule applies?

#### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R10.14, R10.20, E10.13.

#### Common Error 10.3



#### Modifying Parameter Types in the Implementing Method

When you implement an interface, you must declare each method *exactly* as it is specified in the interface. Accidentally making small changes to the parameter types is a common error. Here is the classic example:

```

class MyListener implements ActionListener
{
    public void actionPerformed()
        // Oops . . . forgot ActionEvent parameter variable
    {
```

```

        }
    }
}

```

As far as the compiler is concerned, this class fails to provide the method

```
public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
```

You have to read the error message carefully and pay attention to the parameter and return types to find your error.

#### Common Error 10.4



#### Trying to Call Listener Methods

Some students try to call the listener methods themselves:

```
ActionEvent event = new ActionEvent(..); // Don't do this
listener.actionPerformed(event);
```

You should not call the listener. The Java user interface calls it when the program user has clicked a button.

## 10.8 Building Applications with Buttons

In this section, you will learn how to structure a graphical application that contains buttons. We will put a button to work in our simple investment viewer program. Whenever the button is clicked, interest is added to a bank account, and the new balance is displayed (see Figure 8).

First, we construct an object of the `JButton` class, passing the button label to the constructor, like this:

```
JButton button = new JButton("Add Interest");
```

We also need a user-interface component that displays a message, namely the current bank balance. Such a component is called a *label*. You pass the initial message string to the `JLabel` constructor, like this:

```
JLabel label = new JLabel("balance: " + account.getBalance());
```

The frame of our application contains both the button and the label. However, we cannot simply add both components directly to the frame—they would be placed on top of each other. The solution is to put them into a `panel`, a container for other user-interface components, and then add the panel to the frame:

```
JPanel panel = new JPanel();
panel.add(button);
panel.add(label);
frame.add(panel);
```

Use a `JPanel` container to group multiple user-interface components together.



**Figure 8** An Application with a Button

*Whenever a button is pressed, the actionPerformed method is called on all listeners.*



Specify button click actions through classes that implement the ActionListener interface.

Now we are ready for the hard part—the event listener that handles button clicks. As in the preceding section, it is necessary to provide a class that implements the ActionListener interface, and to place the button action into the actionPerformed method. Our listener class adds interest to the account and displays the new balance:

```
class AddInterestListener implements ActionListener
{
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        double interest = account.getBalance() * INTEREST_RATE / 100;
        account.deposit(interest);
        label.setText("balance: " + account.getBalance());
    }
}
```

There is just a minor technicality. The actionPerformed method manipulates the account and label variables. These are local variables of the main method of the investment viewer program, not instance variables of the AddInterestListener class. We therefore need to declare the account and label variables as final so that the actionPerformed method can access them.

Let's put the pieces together:

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    .
    .
    JButton button = new JButton("Add Interest");
    final BankAccount account = new BankAccount(INITIAL_BALANCE);
    final JLabel label = new JLabel("balance: " + account.getBalance());

    class AddInterestListener implements ActionListener
    {
        public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
        {
            double interest = account.getBalance() * INTEREST_RATE / 100;
            account.deposit(interest);
            label.setText("balance: " + account.getBalance());
        }
    }

    ActionListener listener = new AddInterestListener();
    button.addActionListener(listener);
    .
}
```

With a bit of practice, you will learn to glance at this code and translate it into plain English: “When the button is clicked, add interest and set the label text.”

Here is the complete program. It demonstrates how to add multiple components to a frame, by using a panel, and how to implement listeners as inner classes.

### section\_8/InvestmentViewer2.java

```
1 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
2 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
3 import javax.swing.JButton;
4 import javax.swing.JFrame;
5 import javax.swing.JLabel;
6 import javax.swing.JPanel;
7
8 /**
9  * This program displays the growth of an investment.
10 */
11 public class InvestmentViewer2
12 {
13     private static final int FRAME_WIDTH = 400;
14     private static final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 100;
15
16     private static final double INTEREST_RATE = 10;
17     private static final double INITIAL_BALANCE = 1000;
18
19     public static void main(String[] args)
20     {
21         JFrame frame = new JFrame();
22
23         // The button to trigger the calculation
24         JButton button = new JButton("Add Interest");
25
26         // The application adds interest to this bank account
27         final BankAccount account = new BankAccount(INITIAL_BALANCE);
28
29         // The label for displaying the results
30         final JLabel label = new JLabel("balance: " + account.getBalance());
31
32         // The panel that holds the user-interface components
33         JPanel panel = new JPanel();
34         panel.add(button);
35         panel.add(label);
36         frame.add(panel);
37
38         class AddInterestListener implements ActionListener
39         {
40             public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
41             {
42                 double interest = account.getBalance() * INTEREST_RATE / 100;
43                 account.deposit(interest);
44                 label.setText("balance: " + account.getBalance());
45             }
46         }
47
48         ActionListener listener = new AddInterestListener();
49         button.addActionListener(listener);
50
51         frame.setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
52         frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
53         frame.setVisible(true);
54     }
55 }
```



- 31.** How do you place the "balance: . . ." message to the left of the "Add Interest" button?
- 32.** Why was it not necessary to declare the button variable as final?

**Practice It**

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E10.14, E10.15, E10.16.

**Common Error 10.5****Forgetting to Attach a Listener**

If you run your program and find that your buttons seem to be dead, double-check that you attached the button listener. The same holds for other user-interface components. It is a surprisingly common error to program the listener class and the event handler action without actually attaching the listener to the event source.

**Programming Tip 10.1****Don't Use a Container as a Listener**

In this book, we use inner classes for event listeners. That approach works for many different event types. Once you master the technique, you don't have to think about it anymore. Many development environments automatically generate code with inner classes, so it is a good idea to be familiar with them.

However, some programmers bypass the event listener classes and instead turn a container (such as a panel or frame) into a listener. Here is a typical example. The `actionPerformed` method is added to the viewer class. That is, the viewer implements the `ActionListener` interface.

```
public class InvestmentViewer
    implements ActionListener // This approach is not recommended
{
    public InvestmentViewer()
    {
        JButton button = new JButton("Add Interest");
        button.addActionListener(this);
        ...
    }

    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        ...
    }
}
```

Now the `actionPerformed` method is a part of the `InvestmentViewer` class rather than part of a separate listener class. The listener is installed as this.

This technique has two major flaws. First, it separates the button declaration from the button action. Also, it doesn't *scale* well. If the viewer class contains two buttons that each generate action events, then the `actionPerformed` method must investigate the event source, which leads to code that is tedious and error-prone.

## 10.9 Processing Timer Events

In this section we will study timer events and show how you can use them to implement simple animations.

The `Timer` class in the `javax.swing` package generates a sequence of action events, spaced at even time intervals. (You can think of a timer as an invisible button that is automatically clicked.) This is useful whenever you want to have an object updated at regular intervals. For example, in an animation, you may want to update a scene ten times per second and redisplay the image to give the illusion of movement.

A timer generates timer events at fixed intervals.

When you use a timer, you specify the frequency of the events and an object of a class that implements the `ActionListener` interface. Place whatever action you want to occur inside the `actionPerformed` method. Finally, start the timer.

```
class MyListener implements ActionListener
{
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        Action that is executed at each timer event
    }
}

MyListener listener = new MyListener();
Timer t = new Timer(interval, listener);
t.start();
```

Then the timer calls the `actionPerformed` method of the `listener` object every `interval` milliseconds.

Our sample program will display a moving rectangle. We first supply a `RectangleComponent` class with a `moveRectangleBy` method that moves the rectangle by a given amount.

### section\_9/RectangleComponent.java

```
1 import java.awt.Graphics;
2 import java.awt.Graphics2D;
3 import java.awt.Rectangle;
4 import javax.swing.JComponent;
5
6 /**
7     This component displays a rectangle that can be moved.
8 */
9 public class RectangleComponent extends JComponent
10 {
11     private static final int BOX_X = 100;
12     private static final int BOX_Y = 100;
13     private static final int BOX_WIDTH = 20;
14     private static final int BOX_HEIGHT = 30;
15
16     private Rectangle box;
17
18     public RectangleComponent()
19     {
```



*A Swing timer notifies a listener with each "tick".*

```

20    // The rectangle that the paintComponent method draws
21    box = new Rectangle(BOX_X, BOX_Y, BOX_WIDTH, BOX_HEIGHT);
22 }
23
24 public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
25 {
26     Graphics2D g2 = (Graphics2D) g;
27     g2.draw(box);
28 }
29
30 /**
31  * Moves the rectangle by a given amount.
32  * @param dx the amount to move in the x-direction
33  * @param dy the amount to move in the y-direction
34 */
35 public void moveRectangleBy(int dx, int dy)
36 {
37     box.translate(dx, dy);
38     repaint();
39 }
40 }
```

The repaint method causes a component to repaint itself. Call repaint whenever you modify the shapes that the paintComponent method draws.

Note the call to repaint in the moveRectangleBy method. This call is necessary to ensure that the component is repainted after the state of the rectangle object has been changed. Keep in mind that the component object does not contain the pixels that show the drawing. The component merely contains a Rectangle object, which itself contains four coordinate values. Calling translate updates the rectangle coordinate values. The call to repaint forces a call to the paintComponent method. The paintComponent method redraws the component, causing the rectangle to appear at the updated location.

The actionPerformed method of the timer listener simply calls component.moveBy(1, 1). This moves the rectangle one pixel down and to the right. Because the actionPerformed method is called many times per second, the rectangle appears to move smoothly across the frame.

### section\_9/RectangleFrame.java

```

1 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
2 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
3 import javax.swing.JFrame;
4 import javax.swing.Timer;
5
6 /**
7  * This frame contains a moving rectangle.
8 */
9 public class RectangleFrame extends JFrame
10 {
11     private static final int FRAME_WIDTH = 300;
12     private static final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 400;
13
14     private RectangleComponent scene;
15
16     class TimerListener implements ActionListener
17     {
18         public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
19         {
20             scene.moveRectangleBy(1, 1);
21         }
22     }
23 }
```

```

21     }
22 }
23
24 public RectangleFrame()
25 {
26     scene = new RectangleComponent();
27     add(scene);
28
29     setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
30
31     ActionListener listener = new TimerListener();
32
33     final int DELAY = 100; // Milliseconds between timer ticks
34     Timer t = new Timer(DELAY, listener);
35     t.start();
36 }
37 }
```

### section\_9/RectangleViewer.java

```

1 import javax.swing.JFrame;
2
3 /**
4      This program moves the rectangle.
5 */
6 public class RectangleViewer
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10        JFrame frame = new RectangleFrame();
11        frame.setTitle("An animated rectangle");
12        frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
13        frame.setVisible(true);
14    }
15 }
```

#### SELF CHECK



33. Why does a timer require a listener object?
34. What would happen if you omitted the call to repaint in the moveBy method?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E10.20, E10.21.

#### Common Error 10.6



#### Forgetting to Repaint

You have to be careful when your event handlers change the data in a painted component. When you make a change to the data, the component is not automatically painted with the new data. You must call the repaint method of the component, either in the event handler or in the component's mutator methods. Your component's paintComponent method will then be invoked with an appropriate Graphics object. Note that you should not call the paintComponent method directly.

This is a concern only for your own painted components. When you make a change to a standard Swing component such as a JLabel, the component is automatically repainted.

## 10.10 Mouse Events

Use a mouse listener  
to capture  
mouse events.

If you write programs that show drawings, and you want users to manipulate the drawings with a mouse, then you need to process mouse events. Mouse events are more complex than button clicks or timer ticks.

A mouse listener must implement the `MouseListener` interface, which contains the following five methods:

```
public interface MouseListener
{
    void mousePressed(MouseEvent event);
        // Called when a mouse button has been pressed on a component
    void mouseReleased(MouseEvent event);
        // Called when a mouse button has been released on a component
    void mouseClicked(MouseEvent event);
        // Called when the mouse has been clicked on a component
    void mouseEntered(MouseEvent event);
        // Called when the mouse enters a component
    void mouseExited(MouseEvent event);
        // Called when the mouse exits a component
}
```

The `mousePressed` and `mouseReleased` methods are called whenever a mouse button is pressed or released. If a button is pressed and released in quick succession, and the mouse has not moved, then the `mouseClicked` method is called as well. The `mouseEntered` and `mouseExited` methods can be used to paint a user-interface component in a special way whenever the mouse is pointing inside it.

The most commonly used method is `mousePressed`. Users generally expect that their actions are processed as soon as the mouse button is pressed.

You add a mouse listener to a component by calling the `addMouseListener` method:

```
public class MyMouseListener implements MouseListener
{
    // Implements five methods
}

MouseListener listener = new MyMouseListener();
component.addMouseListener(listener);
```

In our sample program, a user clicks on a component containing a rectangle. Whenever the mouse button is pressed, the rectangle is moved to the mouse location. We first enhance the `RectangleComponent` class and add a `moveRectangleTo` method to move the rectangle to a new position.



*In Swing, a mouse event isn't a gathering of rodents; it's notification of a mouse click by the program user.*

### section\_10/RectangleComponent2.java

```
1 import java.awt.Graphics;
2 import java.awt.Graphics2D;
3 import java.awt.Rectangle;
4 import javax.swing.JComponent;
```

```
5  /**
6   * This component displays a rectangle that can be moved.
7   */
8  public class RectangleComponent2 extends JComponent
9  {
10    private static final int BOX_X = 100;
11    private static final int BOX_Y = 100;
12    private static final int BOX_WIDTH = 20;
13    private static final int BOX_HEIGHT = 30;
14
15    private Rectangle box;
16
17    public RectangleComponent2()
18    {
19      // The rectangle that the paintComponent method draws
20      box = new Rectangle(BOX_X, BOX_Y, BOX_WIDTH, BOX_HEIGHT);
21    }
22
23
24    public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
25    {
26      Graphics2D g2 = (Graphics2D) g;
27      g2.draw(box);
28    }
29
30    /**
31     * Moves the rectangle to the given location.
32     * @param x the x-position of the new location
33     * @param y the y-position of the new location
34     */
35    public void moveRectangleTo(int x, int y)
36    {
37      box.setLocation(x, y);
38      repaint();
39    }
40 }
```

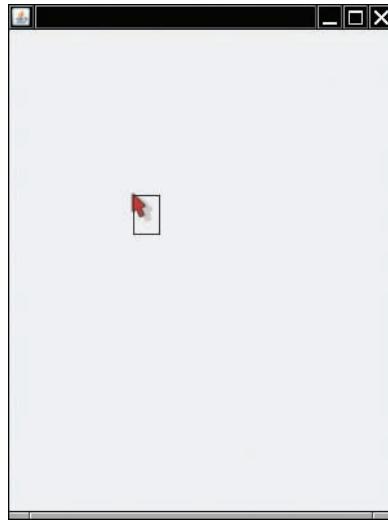
Note the call to `repaint` in the `moveRectangleTo` method. As explained in the preceding section, this call causes the component to repaint itself and show the rectangle in the new position.

Now, add a mouse listener to the component. Whenever the mouse is pressed, the listener moves the rectangle to the mouse location.

```
class MousePressListener implements MouseListener
{
  public void mousePressed(MouseEvent event)
  {
    int x = event.getX();
    int y = event.getY();
    component.moveRectangleTo(x, y);
  }

  // Do-nothing methods
  public void mouseReleased(MouseEvent event) {}
  public void mouseClicked(MouseEvent event) {}
  public void mouseEntered(MouseEvent event) {}
  public void mouseExited(MouseEvent event) {}
}
```

**Figure 9**  
Clicking the Mouse Moves  
the Rectangle



It often happens that a particular listener specifies actions only for one or two of the listener methods. Nevertheless, all five methods of the interface must be implemented. The unused methods are simply implemented as do-nothing methods.

Go ahead and run the `RectangleViewer2` program. Whenever you click the mouse inside the frame, the top-left corner of the rectangle moves to the mouse pointer (see Figure 9).

#### section\_10/RectangleFrame2.java

```
1 import java.awt.event.MouseListener;
2 import java.awt.event.MouseEvent;
3 import javax.swing.JFrame;
4
5 /**
6  * This frame contains a moving rectangle.
7 */
8 public class RectangleFrame2 extends JFrame
9 {
10     private static final int FRAME_WIDTH = 300;
11     private static final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 400;
12
13     private RectangleComponent2 scene;
14
15     class MousePressListener implements MouseListener
16     {
17         public void mousePressed(MouseEvent event)
18         {
19             int x = event.getX();
20             int y = event.getY();
21             scene.moveRectangleTo(x, y);
22         }
23
24         // Do-nothing methods
25         public void mouseReleased(MouseEvent event) {}
26         public void mouseClicked(MouseEvent event) {}
27         public void mouseEntered(MouseEvent event) {}
28         public void mouseExited(MouseEvent event) {}
```

```

29     }
30
31     public RectangleFrame2()
32     {
33         scene = new RectangleComponent2();
34         add(scene);
35
36         MouseListener listener = new MousePressListener();
37         scene.addMouseListener(listener);
38
39         setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
40     }
41 }
```

### section\_10/RectangleViewer2.java

```

1  import javax.swing.JFrame;
2
3  /**
4   * This program displays a rectangle that can be moved with the mouse.
5  */
6  public class RectangleViewer2
7  {
8      public static void main(String[] args)
9      {
10         JFrame frame = new RectangleFrame2();
11         frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
12         frame.setVisible(true);
13     }
14 }
```

#### SELF CHECK



35. Why was the `moveRectangleBy` method in the `RectangleComponent` replaced with a `moveRectangleTo` method?
36. Why must the `MousePressListener` class supply five methods?

#### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R10.17, E10.22.

#### Special Topic 10.4



#### Keyboard Events

If you program a game, you may want to process keystrokes, such as the arrow keys. Add a key listener to the component on which you draw the game scene. The `KeyListener` interface has three methods. As with a mouse listener, you are most interested in key press events, and you can leave the other two methods empty. Your key listener class should look like this:

```

class MyKeyListener implements KeyListener
{
    public void keyPressed(KeyEvent event)
    {
        String key = KeyStroke.getKeyStrokeForEvent(event).toString();
        key = key.replace("pressed ", "");
        Process key.
    }

    // Do-nothing methods
    public void keyReleased(KeyEvent event) {}
```

```
    public void keyTyped(KeyEvent event) {}  
}
```

The call `KeyStroke.getKeyStrokeForEvent(event).toString()` turns the event object into a text description of the key, such as "pressed LEFT". In the next line, we eliminate the "pressed " prefix. The remainder is a string such as "LEFT" or "A" that describes the key that was pressed. You can find a list of all key names in the API documentation of the `KeyStroke` class.

As always, remember to attach the listener to the event source:

```
KeyListener listener = new MyKeyListener();  
scene.addKeyListener(listener);
```

In order to receive key events, your component must call

```
scene.setFocusable(true);
```



*Whenever the program user presses a key, a key event is generated.*

#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that uses the arrow keys to move a rectangle.

### Special Topic 10.5



#### Event Adapters

In the preceding section you saw how to install a mouse listener into a mouse event source and how the listener methods are called when an event occurs. Usually, a program is not interested in all listener notifications. For example, a program may only be interested in mouse clicks and may not care that these mouse clicks are composed of "mouse pressed" and "mouse released" events. Of course, the program could supply a listener that implements all those methods in which it has no interest as "do-nothing" methods, for example:

```
class MouseClickListener implements MouseListener  
{  
    public void mouseClicked(MouseEvent event)  
    {  
        Mouse click action  
    }  
  
    // Four do-nothing methods  
    public void mouseEntered(MouseEvent event) {}  
    public void mouseExited(MouseEvent event) {}  
    public void mousePressed(MouseEvent event) {}  
    public void mouseReleased(MouseEvent event) {}  
}
```

To avoid this labor, some friendly soul has created a `MouseListener` class that implements the `MouseListener` interface such that all methods do nothing. You can *extend* that class, inheriting the do-nothing methods and overriding the methods that you care about, like this:

```
class MouseClickListener extends MouseAdapter  
{  
    public void mouseClicked(MouseEvent event)  
    {  
        Mouse click action  
    }  
}
```

There is also a `KeyAdapter` class that implements the `KeyListener` interface with three do-nothing methods.



## Computing & Society 10.1 Open Source and Free Software

Most companies that produce software regard the source code as a trade secret. After all, if customers or competitors had access to the source code, they could study it and create similar programs without paying the original vendor. For the same reason, customers dislike secret source code. If a company goes out of business or decides to discontinue support for a computer program, its users are left stranded. They are unable to fix bugs or adapt the program to a new operating system. Nowadays, some software packages are distributed with "open source" or "free software" licenses. Here, the term "free" doesn't refer to price, but to the freedom to inspect and modify the source code. Richard Stallman, a famous computer scientist and winner of a MacArthur "genius" grant, pioneered the concept of free software. He is the inventor of the Emacs text editor and the originator of the GNU project that aims to create an entirely free version of a UNIX compatible operating system. All programs of the GNU project are licensed under the General Public License (GPL). The GPL allows you to make as many copies as you wish, make any modifications to the source, and redistribute the original and modified programs, charging nothing at all or whatever the market will bear. In return, you must agree that

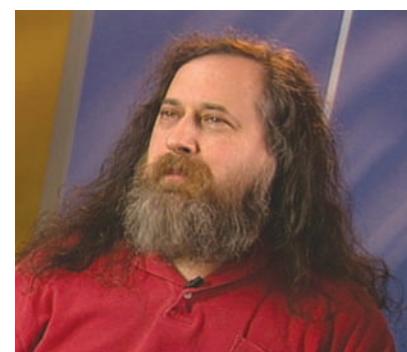
your modifications also fall under the GPL. You must give out the source code to any changes that you distribute, and anyone else can distribute them under the same conditions. The GPL, and similar open source licenses, form a social contract. Users of the software enjoy the freedom to use and modify the software, and in return they are obligated to share any improvements that they make. Many programs, such as the Linux operating system and the GNU C++ compiler, are distributed under the GPL.

Some commercial software vendors have attacked the GPL as "viral" and "undermining the commercial software sector". Other companies have a more nuanced strategy, producing proprietary software while also contributing to open source projects.

Frankly, open source is not a panacea and there is plenty of room for the commercial software sector. Open source software often lacks the polish of commercial software because many of the programmers are volunteers who are interested in solving their own problems, not in making a product that is easy to use by others. Some product categories are not available at all as open source software because the development work is unattractive when there is little promise of commercial gain. Open source software has been most successful in areas that are

of interest to programmers, such as the Linux operating system, Web servers, and programming tools.

On the positive side, the open software community can be very competitive and creative. It is quite common to see several competing projects that take ideas from each other, all rapidly becoming more capable. Having many programmers involved, all reading the source code, often means that bugs tend to get squashed quickly. Eric Raymond describes open source development in his famous article "The Cathedral and the Bazaar" (<http://catb.org/~esr/writings/cathedral-bazaar/cathedral-bazaar/index.html>). He writes "Given enough eyeballs, all bugs are shallow".



*Richard Stallman, a pioneer of the free source movement*

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### Use interfaces for making a service available to multiple classes.

- A Java interface type declares methods but does not provide their implementations.
- Use the `implements` reserved word to indicate that a class implements an interface type.
- Use interface types to make code more reusable.



**Describe how to convert between class and interface types.**

- You can convert from a class type to an interface type, provided the class implements the interface.
- Method calls on an interface reference are polymorphic. The appropriate method is determined at run time.
- You need a cast to convert from an interface type to a class type.

**Use the Comparable interface from the Java library.**

- Implement the Comparable interface so that objects of your class can be compared, for example, in a sort method.

**Describe how to use interface types for providing callbacks.**

- A callback is a mechanism for specifying code that is executed at a later time.

**Use inner classes to limit the scope of a utility class.**

- An inner class is declared inside another class.
- Inner classes are commonly used for utility classes that should not be visible elsewhere in a program.

**Use mock objects for supplying test versions of classes.**

- A mock object provides the same services as another object, but in a simplified manner.
- Both the mock class and the actual class implement the same interface.

**Implement event listeners to react to events in user-interface programming.**

- User-interface events include key presses, mouse moves, button clicks, menu selections, and so on.
- An event listener belongs to a class that is provided by the application programmer. Its methods describe the actions to be taken when an event occurs.
- Event sources report on events. When an event occurs, the event source notifies all event listeners.
- Use JButton components for buttons. Attach an ActionListener to each button.
- Methods of an inner class can access local and instance variables from the surrounding scope.
- Local variables that are accessed by an inner class method must be declared as final.

**Build graphical applications that use buttons.**

- Use a JPanel container to group multiple user-interface components together.
- Specify button click actions through classes that implement the ActionListener interface.

**Use a timer for drawing animations.**

- A timer generates timer events at fixed intervals.
- The repaint method causes a component to repaint itself. Call repaint whenever you modify the shapes that the paintComponent method draws.

**Write programs that process mouse events.**

- Use a mouse listener to capture mouse events.

**STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER**

`java.awt.Component  
    addKeyListener  
    addMouseListener  
    repaint  
    setFocusable  
java.awt.Container  
    add  
java.awt.Dimension  
java.awt.Rectangle  
     setLocation  
java.awt.event.ActionListener  
     actionPerformed`

`java.awt.event.KeyEvent  
java.awt.event.KeyListener  
     keyPressed  
     keyReleased  
     keyTyped  
java.awt.event.MouseEvent  
     getX  
     getY  
java.awt.event.MouseListener  
     mouseClicked  
     mouseEntered  
     mouseExited`

`mousePressed  
mouseReleased  
javax.swing.AbstractButton  
    addActionListener  
javax.swing.JButton  
javax.swing.JLabel  
javax.swing.JPanel  
javax.swing.KeyStroke  
     getKeyStrokeForEvent  
javax.swing.Timer  
     start  
     stop`

**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

- **R10.1** Suppose C is a class that implements the interfaces I and J. Which of the following assignments require a cast?

`C c = . . .;  
I i = . . .;  
J j = . . .;`

- a.** `c = i;`  
**b.** `j = c;`  
**c.** `i = j;`

- **R10.2** Suppose C is a class that implements the interfaces I and J, and suppose i is declared as: `I i = new C();`

Which of the following statements will throw an exception?

- a.** `C c = (C) i;`  
**b.** `J j = (J) i;`  
**c.** `i = (I) null;`

- **R10.3** Suppose the class Sandwich implements the Edible interface, and you are given the variable declarations

```
Sandwich sub = new Sandwich();
Rectangle cerealBox = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
Edible e = null;
```

Which of the following assignment statements are legal?

- |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>a.</b> e = sub;<br><b>b.</b> sub = e;<br><b>c.</b> sub = (Sandwich) e;<br><b>d.</b> sub = (Sandwich) cerealBox; | <b>e.</b> e = cerealBox;<br><b>f.</b> e = (Edible) cerealBox;<br><b>g.</b> e = (Rectangle) cerealBox;<br><b>h.</b> e = (Rectangle) null; |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**■■ R10.4** The classes `Rectangle2D.Double`, `Ellipse2D.Double`, and `Line2D.Double` implement the `Shape` interface. The `Graphics2D` class depends on the `Shape` interface but not on the rectangle, ellipse, and line classes. Draw a UML diagram denoting these facts.

**■■ R10.5** Suppose `r` contains a reference to a new `Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30)`. Which of the following assignments is legal? (Look inside the API documentation to check which interfaces the `Rectangle` class implements.)

- |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>a.</b> Rectangle a = r;<br><b>b.</b> Shape b = r;<br><b>c.</b> String c = r;<br><b>d.</b> ActionListener d = r; | <b>e.</b> Measurable e = r;<br><b>f.</b> Serializable f = r;<br><b>g.</b> Object g = r; |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**■■ R10.6** Classes such as `Rectangle2D.Double`, `Ellipse2D.Double`, and `Line2D.Double` implement the `Shape` interface. The `Shape` interface has a method

```
Rectangle getBounds()
```

that returns a rectangle completely enclosing the shape. Consider the method call:

```
Shape s = . . . ;
Rectangle r = s.getBounds();
```

Explain why this is an example of polymorphism.

**■■ R10.7** Suppose you need to process an array of employees to find the average salary. Discuss what you need to do to use the `Data.average` method in Section 10.1 (which processes `Measurable` objects). What do you need to do to use the second implementation (in Section 10.4)? Which is easier?

**■ R10.8** What happens if you try to use an array of `String` objects with the `Data.average` method in Section 10.1?

**■■ R10.9** How can you use the `Data.average` method in Section 10.4 if you want to compute the average length of the strings?

**■■ R10.10** What happens if you pass an array of strings and an `AreaMeasurer` to the `Data.average` method of Section 10.4?

**■■ R10.11** Consider this top-level and inner class. Which variables can the `f` method access?

```
public class T
{
    private int t;

    public void m(final int x, int y)
    {
        int a;
        final int b;

        class C implements I
        {

```

```

        public void f()
    {
        ...
    }
}

final int c;
...
}
}

```

- ■ **R10.12** What happens when an inner class tries to access a non-final local variable? Try it out and explain your findings.
- ■ **Graphics R10.13** How would you reorganize the `InvestmentViewer1` program if you needed to make `AddInterestListener` into a top-level class (that is, not an inner class)?
- **Graphics R10.14** What is an event object? An event source? An event listener?
- **Graphics R10.15** From a programmer's perspective, what is the most important difference between the user interfaces of a console application and a graphical application?
- **Graphics R10.16** What is the difference between an `ActionEvent` and a `MouseEvent`?
- ■ **Graphics R10.17** Why does the `ActionListener` interface have only one method, whereas the `MouseListener` has five methods?
- ■ **Graphics R10.18** Can a class be an event source for multiple event types? If so, give an example.
- ■ **Graphics R10.19** What information does an action event object carry? What additional information does a mouse event object carry?
- ■ **Graphics R10.20** Why are we using inner classes for event listeners? If Java did not have inner classes, could we still implement event listeners? How?
- ■ **Graphics R10.21** What is the difference between the `paintComponent` and `repaint` methods?
- ■ **Graphics R10.22** What is the difference between a frame and a panel?

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- ■ **E10.1** Add a method

```

public static Measurable max(Measurable[] objects)

```

to the `Data` class that returns the object with the largest measure.

- **E10.2** Implement a class `Quiz` that implements the `Measurable` interface. A quiz has a score and a letter grade (such as `B+`). Use the `Data` class of Exercise E10.1 to process an array of quizzes. Display the average score and the quiz with the highest score (both letter grade and score).
- **E10.3** A person has a name and a height in centimeters. Use the `Data` class of Exercise E10.1 to process an array of `Person` objects. Display the average height and the name of the tallest person.
- ■ **E10.4** Add a method to the `Data` class that returns the object with the largest measure, as measured by the supplied measurer:

```

public static Object max(Object[] objects, Measurer m)

```

- **E10.5** Using a different Measurer object, process a set of Rectangle objects to find the rectangle with the largest perimeter.
- **E10.6** Modify the Coin class from Chapter 8 to have it implement the Comparable interface.
- **E10.7** Repeat Exercise E10.5, making the Measurer into an inner class inside the main method.
- **E10.8** Repeat Exercise E10.5, making the Measurer into an inner class outside the main method.
- **E10.9** Implement a class Bag that stores items represented as strings. Items can be repeated. Supply methods for adding an item, and for counting how many times an item has been added:

```
public void add(String itemName)
public int count(String itemName)
```

Your Bag class should store the data in an `ArrayList<Item>`, where Item is an inner class with two instance variables: the name of the item and the quantity.

- **E10.10** Implement a class Grid that stores measurements in a rectangular grid. The grid has a given number of rows and columns, and a description string can be added for any grid location. Supply the following constructor and methods:

```
public Grid(int numRows, int numColumns)
public void add(int row, int column, String description)
public String getDescription(int row, int column)
public ArrayList<Location> getDescribedLocations()
```

Here, Location is an inner class that encapsulates the row and the column of a grid location.

- **E10.11** Reimplement Exercise E10.10 where the grid is unbounded. The constructor has no arguments, and the row and column parameter variables of the add and getDescription methods can be arbitrary integers.

- **Graphics E10.12** Write a method randomShape that randomly generates objects implementing the Shape interface in the Java library API: some mixture of rectangles, ellipses, and lines, with random positions. Call it ten times and draw all of them.

- **Graphics E10.13** Enhance the ButtonViewer program so that it prints a message “I was clicked *n* times!” whenever the button is clicked. The value *n* should be incremented with each click.

- **Graphics E10.14** Enhance the ButtonViewer program so that it has two buttons, each of which prints a message “I was clicked *n* times!” whenever the button is clicked. Each button should have a separate click count.

- **Graphics E10.15** Enhance the ButtonViewer program so that it has two buttons labeled A and B, each of which prints a message “Button *x* was clicked!”, where *x* is A or B.

- **Graphics E10.16** Implement a ButtonViewer program as in Exercise E10.15, using only a single listener class.

- **Graphics E10.17** Enhance the ButtonViewer program so that it prints the time at which the button was clicked.

- **Graphics E10.18** Implement the AddInterestListener in the InvestmentViewer1 program as a regular class (that is, not an inner class). Hint: Store a reference to the bank account. Add a constructor to the listener class that sets the reference.

**■■■ Graphics E10.19** Implement the `AddInterestListener` in the `InvestmentViewer2` program as a regular class (that is, not an inner class). *Hint:* Store references to the bank account and the label in the listener. Add a constructor to the listener class that sets the references.

**■■■ Graphics E10.20** Write a program that uses a timer to print the current time once a second. *Hint:* The following code prints the current time:

```
Date now = new Date();
System.out.println(now);
```

The `Date` class is in the `java.util` package.

**■■■ Graphics E10.21** Change the `RectangleComponent` for the animation program in Section 10.9 so that the rectangle bounces off the edges of the component rather than simply moving outside.

**■■■ Graphics E10.22** Change the `RectangleComponent` for the mouse listener program in Section 10.10 so that a new rectangle is added to the component whenever the mouse is clicked.

*Hint:* Keep an `ArrayList<Rectangle>` and draw all rectangles in the `paintComponent` method.

**■■■ E10.23** Supply a class `Person` that implements the `Comparable` interface. Compare persons by their names. Ask the user to input ten names and generate ten `Person` objects. Using the `compareTo` method, determine the first and last person among them and print them.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

**■■■ P10.1** Modify the `display` method of the `LastDigitDistribution` class of Worked Example 10.1 so that it produces a histogram, like this:

```
0: ****
1: *****
2: *****
```

Scale the bars so that widest one has length 40.

**■■■ P10.2** Write a class `PrimeSequence` that implements the `Sequence` interface of Worked Example 10.1, and produces the sequence of prime numbers.

**■■■ P10.3** Add a method `hasNext` to the `Sequence` interface of Worked Example 10.1 that returns `false` if the sequence has no more values. Implement a class `MySequence` producing a sequence of real data of your choice, such as populations of cities or countries, temperatures, or stock prices. Obtain the data from the Internet and reformat the values so that they are placed into an array. Return one value at a time in the `next` method, until you reach the end of the data. Your `SequenceDemo` class should display the distribution of the last digits of all sequence values.

**■■■ P10.4** Provide a class `FirstDigitDistribution` that works just like the `LastDigitDistribution` class of Worked Example 10.1, except that it counts the distribution of the first digit of each value. (It is a well-known fact that the first digits of random values are *not* uniformly distributed. This fact has been used to detect accounting fraud, when sequences of transaction amounts had an unnatural distribution of their first digits.)

**■■ P10.5** Declare an interface `Filter` as follows:

```
public interface Filter
{
    boolean accept(Object x);
}
```

Modify the implementation of the `Data` class in Section 10.4 to use both a `Measurer` and a `Filter` object. Only objects that the filter accepts should be processed. Demonstrate your modification by processing a collection of bank accounts, filtering out all accounts with balances less than \$1,000.

**■■ P10.6** The `System.out.printf` method has predefined formats for printing integers, floating-point numbers, and other data types. But it is also extensible. If you use the `S` format, you can print any class that implements the `Formattable` interface. That interface has a single method:

```
void formatTo(Formatter formatter, int flags, int width, int precision)
```

In this exercise, you should make the `BankAccount` class implement the `Formattable` interface. Ignore the flags and precision and simply format the bank balance, using the given width. In order to achieve this task, you need to get an `Appendable` reference like this:

```
Appendable a = formatter.out();
```

`Appendable` is another interface with a method

```
void append(CharSequence sequence)
```

`CharSequence` is yet another interface that is implemented by (among others) the `String` class. Construct a string by first converting the bank balance into a string and then padding it with spaces so that it has the desired width. Pass that string to the `append` method.

**■■ P10.7** Enhance the `formatTo` method of Exercise P10.6 by taking into account the precision.**■■ Graphics P10.8** Write a program that displays a scrolling message in a panel. Use a timer for the scrolling effect. In the timer's action listener, move the starting position of the message and repaint. When the message has left the window, reset the starting position to the other corner. Provide a user interface to customize the message text, font, foreground and background colors, and the scrolling speed and direction.**■■ Graphics P10.9** Write a program that allows the user to specify a triangle with three mouse presses. After the first mouse press, draw a small dot. After the second mouse press, draw a line joining the first two points. After the third mouse press, draw the entire triangle. The fourth mouse press erases the old triangle and starts a new one.**■■ Graphics P10.10** Implement a program that allows two players to play tic-tac-toe. Draw the game grid and an indication of whose turn it is (X or O). Upon the next click, check that the mouse click falls into an empty location, fill the location with the mark of the current player, and give the other player a turn. If the game is won, indicate the winner. Also supply a button for starting over.**■■ Graphics P10.11** Write a program that lets users design bar charts with a mouse. When the user clicks inside a bar, the next mouse click extends the length of the bar to the *x*-coordinate of the mouse click. (If it is at or near 0, the bar is removed.) When the user clicks below the last bar, a new bar is added whose length is the *x*-coordinate of the mouse click.

- **Testing P10.12** Consider the task of writing a program that plays tic-tac-toe against a human opponent. A user interface `TicTacToeUI` reads the user's moves and displays the computer's moves and the board. A class `TicTacToeStrategy` determines the next move that the computer makes. A class `TicTacToeBoard` represents the current state of the board. Complete all classes except for the strategy class. Instead, use a mock class that simply picks the first available empty square.
- ■ **Testing P10.13** Consider the task of translating a plain text book from Project Gutenberg (<http://gutenberg.org>) to HTML. For example, here is the start of the first chapter of Tolstoy's Anna Karenina:

Chapter 1

Happy families are all alike; every unhappy family is unhappy in its own way.

Everything was in confusion in the Oblonskys' house. The wife had discovered that the husband was carrying on an intrigue with a French girl, who had been a governess in their family, and she had announced to her husband that she could not go on living in the same house with him ...

The equivalent HTML is:

```
<h1>Chapter 1</h1>
<p>Happy families are all alike; every unhappy
family is unhappy in its own way.</p>
<p>Everything was in confusion in the
Oblonskys’ house. The wife had discovered
that the husband was carrying on an intrigue
with a French girl, who had been a governess in
their family, and she had announced to her
husband that she could not go on living in the
same house with him ...</p>
```

The HTML conversion can be carried out in two steps. First, the plain text is assembled into *segments*, blocks of text of the same kind (heading, paragraph, and so on). Then each segment is converted, by surrounding it with the HTML tags and converting special characters.

Plain Text	HTML
“ ”	&ldquo; (left) or &rdquo; (right)
‘ ’	&lsquo; (left) or &rsquo; (right)
—	&emdash;
<	&lt;
>	&gt;
&	&amp;

Fetching the text from the Internet and breaking it into segments is a challenging task. Provide an interface and a mock implementation. Combine it with a class that uses the mock implementation to finish the formatting task.

- ■ **Graphics P10.14** Write a program that demonstrates the growth of a roach population. Start with two roaches and double the number of roaches with each button click.
- ■ **Graphics P10.15** Write a program that animates a car so that it moves across a frame.
- ■ ■ **Graphics P10.16** Write a program that animates two cars moving across a frame in opposite directions (but at different heights so that they don't collide.)
- ■ **Graphics P10.17** Write a program that prompts the user to enter the *x*- and *y*-positions of the center and a radius, using `JOptionPane` dialogs. When the user clicks a “Draw” button, prompt for the inputs and draw a circle with that center and radius in a component.
- ■ **Graphics P10.18** Write a program that allows the user to specify a circle by clicking on the center and then typing the radius in a `JOptionPane`. Note that you don't need a “Draw” button.

■ ■ ■ **Graphics P10.19** Write a program that allows the user to specify a circle with two mouse presses, the first one on the center and the second on a point on the periphery. *Hint:* In the mouse press handler, you must keep track of whether you already received the center point in a previous mouse press.

■ **Graphics P10.20** Design an interface `MoveableShape` that can be used as a generic mechanism for animating a shape. A moveable shape must have two methods: `move` and `draw`. Write a generic `AnimationPanel` that paints and moves any `MoveableShape` (or array list of `MoveableShape` objects). Supply moveable rectangle and car shapes.

■ **P10.21** Your task is to design a general program for managing board games with two players. Your program should be flexible enough to handle games such as tic-tac-toe, chess, or the Game of Nim of Project 6.2.

Design an interface `Game` that describes a board game. Think about what your program needs to do. It asks the first player to input a move—a string in a game-specific format, such as `Be3` in chess. Your program knows nothing about specific games, so the `Game` interface must have a method such as

```
boolean isValidMove(String move)
```

Once the move is found to be valid, it needs to be executed—the interface needs another method `executeMove`. Next, your program needs to check whether the game is over. If not, the other player's move is processed. You should also provide some mechanism for displaying the current state of the board.

Design the `Game` interface and provide two implementations of your choice—such as `Nim` and `Chess` (or `TicTacToe` if you are less ambitious). Your `GamePlayer` class should manage a `Game` reference without knowing which game is played, and process the moves from both players. Supply two programs that differ only in the initialization of the `Game` reference.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. It must implement the `Measurable` interface, and its `getMeasure` method must return the salary.
2. The `Object` class doesn't have a `getMeasure` method.
3. You cannot modify the `String` class to implement `Measurable`—`String` is a library class. See Section 10.4 for a solution.
4. `Measurable` is not a class. You cannot construct objects of type `Measurable`.
5. The variable `meas` is of type `Measurable`, and that type has no `getName` method.
6. Only if `meas` actually refers to a `BankAccount` object.
7. No—a `Country` reference can be converted to a `Measurable` reference, but if you attempt to cast that reference to a `BankAccount`, an exception occurs.
8. `Measurable` is an interface. Interfaces have no instance variables and no method implementations.
9. That variable never refers to a `Measurable` object. It refers to an object of some class—a class that implements the `Measurable` interface.
10. The code fragment prints 20255. The average method calls `getMeasure` on each object in the array. In the first call, the object is a `BankAccount`. In the second call, the object is a `Country`. A different `getMeasure` method is called in each case. The first call returns the account balance, the second one the area, which are then averaged.
11. Have the `Country` class implement the `Comparable` interface, as shown below, and call `Arrays.sort`.
 

```
public class Country implements Comparable {
    ...
}
```

```

public int compareTo(Object otherObject)
{
    Country other = (Country) otherObject;
    if (area < other.area) { return -1; }
    if (area > other.area) { return 1; }
    return 0;
}
}

```

- 12.** Yes, you can, because `String` implements the `Comparable` interface type.
- 13.** No. The `Rectangle` class does not implement the `Comparable` interface.

**14.** `public static Comparable max( Comparable a, Comparable b)`

```

{
    if (a.compareTo(b) > 0) { return a; }
    else { return b; }
}

```

**15.** `BankAccount larger`  
`= (BankAccount) max(first, second);`  
`System.out.println(larger.getBalance());`

Note that the result must be cast from `Comparable` to `BankAccount` so that you can invoke the `getBalance` method.

- 16.** The `String` class doesn't implement the `Measurable` interface.
- 17.** Implement a class `StringMeasurer` that implements the `Measurer` interface.
- 18.** A `Measurer` measures an object, whereas `getMeasure` measures "itself", that is, the implicit parameter.

**19.** `public static Object max( Object a, Object b, Measurer m)`

```

{
    if (m.getMeasure(a) > m.getMeasure(b))
    {
        return a;
    }
    else { return b; }
}

```

**20.** `Rectangle larger = (Rectangle) max( first, second, areaMeas);`  
`System.out.println(larger.getWidth() + " by "`  
`+ larger.getHeight());`

Note that the result of `max` must be cast from `Object` to `Rectangle` so that you can invoke the `getWidth` and `getHeight` methods.

- 21.** Inner classes are convenient for insignificant classes. Also, their methods can access local and instance variables from the surrounding scope.
- 22.** When the inner class is needed by more than one method of the classes.
- 23.** Four: one for the outer class, one for the inner class, and two for the `Data` and `Measurer` classes.
- 24.** You want to implement the `GradingProgram` class in terms of that interface so that it doesn't have to change when you switch between the mock class and the actual class.
- 25.** Because the developer of `GradingProgram` doesn't have to wait for the `GradeBook` class to be complete.
- 26.** The `button` object is the event source. The `listener` object is the event listener.
- 27.** The `ClickListener` class implements the `ActionListener` interface.
- 28.** You don't. It is called whenever the button is clicked.
- 29.** Direct access is simpler than the alternative—passing the variable as an argument to a constructor or method.
- 30.** The local variable must be declared as `final`.
- 31.** First add `label` to the `panel`, then add `button`.
- 32.** The `actionPerformed` method does not access that variable.
- 33.** The timer needs to call some method whenever the time interval expires. It calls the `actionPerformed` method of the listener object.
- 34.** The moved rectangles won't be painted, and the rectangle will appear to be stationary until the frame is repainted for an external reason.
- 35.** Because you know the current mouse position, not the amount by which the mouse has moved.
- 36.** It implements the `MouseListener` interface, which has five methods.

# INPUT/OUTPUT AND EXCEPTION HANDLING

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To read and write text files
- To process command line arguments
- To throw and catch exceptions
- To implement programs that propagate checked exceptions

## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### **11.1 READING AND WRITING TEXT FILES** 514

- Common Error 11.1:* Backslashes in File Names 517
- Common Error 11.2:* Constructing a Scanner with a String 517
- Special Topic 11.1:* Reading Web Pages 517
- Special Topic 11.2:* File Dialog Boxes 517
- Special Topic 11.3:* Character Encodings 518

### **11.2 TEXT INPUT AND OUTPUT** 519

- Special Topic 11.4:* Regular Expressions 526

### **11.3 COMMAND LINE ARGUMENTS** 527

- How To 11.1:* Processing Text Files 530
- Worked Example 11.1:* Analyzing Baby Names 
- Computing & Society 11.1:* Encryption Algorithms 533

### **11.4 EXCEPTION HANDLING** 534

- Syntax 11.1:* Throwing an Exception 534
- Syntax 11.2:* Catching Exceptions 536



- Syntax 11.3:* The throws Clause 539
- Syntax 11.4:* The finally Clause 540
- Programming Tip 11.1:* Throw Early, Catch Late 542
- Programming Tip 11.2:* Do Not Squelch Exceptions 542
- Programming Tip 11.3:* Do Not Use catch and finally in the Same try Statement 542
- Programming Tip 11.4:* Do Throw Specific Exceptions 543
- Special Topic 11.5:* Assertions 543
- Special Topic 11.6:* Automatic Resource Management in Java 7 544
- Computing & Society 11.2:* The Ariane Rocket Incident 544

### **11.5 APPLICATION: HANDLING INPUT ERRORS** 545



In this chapter, you will learn how to read and write files—a very useful skill for processing real world data. As an application, you will learn how to encrypt data. (The Enigma machine shown at left is an encryption device used by Germany in World War II. Pioneering British computer scientists broke the code and were able to intercept encoded messages, which was a significant help in winning the war.) The remainder of this chapter tells you how your programs can report and recover from problems, such as missing files or malformed content, using the exception-handling mechanism of the Java language.

## 11.1 Reading and Writing Text Files

Use the Scanner class for reading text files.

We begin this chapter by discussing the common task of reading and writing files that contain text. Examples of text files include not only files that are created with a simple text editor, such as Windows Notepad, but also Java source code and HTML files.

In Java, the most convenient mechanism for reading text is to use the `Scanner` class. You already know how to use a `Scanner` for reading console input. To read input from a disk file, the `Scanner` class relies on another class, `File`, which describes disk files and directories. (The `File` class has many methods that we do not discuss in this book; for example, methods that delete or rename a file.)

To begin, construct a `File` object with the name of the input file:

```
File inputFile = new File("input.txt");
```

Then use the `File` object to construct a `Scanner` object:

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(inputFile);
```

This `Scanner` object reads text from the file `input.txt`. You can use the `Scanner` methods (such as `nextInt`, `nextDouble`, and `next`) to read data from the input file.

For example, you can use the following loop to process numbers in the input file:

```
while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    double value = in.nextDouble();
    Process value.
}
```

To write output to a file, you construct a `PrintWriter` object with the desired file name, for example

```
PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter("output.txt");
```

If the output file already exists, it is emptied before the new data are written into it. If the file doesn't exist, an empty file is created.

The `PrintWriter` class is an enhancement of the `PrintStream` class that you already know—`System.out` is a `PrintStream` object. You can use the familiar `print`, `println`, and `printf` methods with any `PrintWriter` object:

```
out.println("Hello, World!");
out.printf("Total: %.2f\n", total);
```

Close all files  
when you are done  
processing them.

When you are done processing a file, be sure to *close* the Scanner or PrintWriter:

```
in.close();
out.close();
```

If your program exits without closing the PrintWriter, some of the output may not be written to the disk file.

The following program puts these concepts to work. It reads a file containing numbers and writes the numbers, lined up in a column and followed by their total, to another file.

For example, if the input file has the contents

```
32 54 67.5 29 35 80
115 44.5 100 65
```

then the output file is

```
32.00
54.00
67.50
29.00
35.00
80.00
115.00
44.50
100.00
65.00
Total: 622.00
```

There is one additional issue that we need to tackle. If the input or output file for a Scanner doesn't exist, a `FileNotFoundException` occurs when the Scanner object is constructed. The compiler insists that we specify what the program should do when that happens. Similarly, the PrintWriter constructor generates this exception if it cannot open the file for writing. (This can happen if the name is illegal or the user does not have the authority to create a file in the given location.) In our sample program, we want to terminate the `main` method if the exception occurs. To achieve this, we label the `main` method with a `throws` declaration:

```
public static void main(String[] args) throws FileNotFoundException
```

You will see in Section 11.4 how to deal with exceptions in a more professional way.

The `File`, `PrintWriter`, and `FileNotFoundException` classes are contained in the `java.io` package.

### **section\_1/Total.java**

```
1 import java.io.File;
2 import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
3 import java.io.PrintWriter;
4 import java.util.Scanner;
5
6 /**
7  * This program reads a file with numbers, and writes the numbers to another
8  * file, lined up in a column and followed by their total.
9 */
10 public class Total
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args) throws FileNotFoundException
13     {
```

```

14 // Prompt for the input and output file names
15
16 Scanner console = new Scanner(System.in);
17 System.out.print("Input file: ");
18 String inputFileName = console.next();
19 System.out.print("Output file: ");
20 String outputFileName = console.next();
21
22 // Construct the Scanner and PrintWriter objects for reading and writing
23
24 File inputFile = new File(inputFileName);
25 Scanner in = new Scanner(inputFile);
26 PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(outputFileName);
27
28 // Read the input and write the output
29
30 double total = 0;
31
32 while (in.hasNextDouble())
33 {
34     double value = in.nextDouble();
35     out.printf("%15.2f\n", value);
36     total = total + value;
37 }
38
39 out.printf("Total: %8.2f\n", total);
40
41 in.close();
42 out.close();
43 }
44 }
```



- What happens when you supply the same name for the input and output files to the `Total` program? Try it out if you are not sure.
- What happens when you supply the name of a nonexistent input file to the `Total` program? Try it out if you are not sure.
- Suppose you wanted to add the total to an existing file instead of writing a new file. Self Check 1 indicates that you cannot simply do this by specifying the same file for input and output. How can you achieve this task? Provide the pseudo-code for the solution.
- How do you modify the program so that it shows the average, not the total, of the inputs?
- How can you modify the `Total` program so that it writes the values in two columns, like this:

32.00	54.00
67.50	29.00
35.00	80.00
115.00	44.50
100.00	65.00
Total: 622.00	

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R11.1, R11.2, E11.1.

**Common Error 11.1****Backslashes in File Names**

When you specify a file name as a string literal, and the name contains backslash characters (as in a Windows file name), you must supply each backslash twice:

```
File inputFile = new File("c:\\homework\\input.dat");
```

A single backslash inside a quoted string is an **escape character** that is combined with the following character to form a special meaning, such as `\n` for a newline character. The `\\" combination denotes a single backslash.`

When a user supplies a file name to a program, however, the user should not type the backslash twice.

**Common Error 11.2****Constructing a Scanner with a String**

When you construct a `PrintWriter` with a string, it writes to a file:

```
PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter("output.txt");
```

However, this does *not* work for a `Scanner`. The statement

```
Scanner in = new Scanner("input.txt"); // Error?
```

does *not* open a file. Instead, it simply reads through the string: `in.next()` returns the string "input.txt". (This is occasionally useful—see Section 11.2.5.)

You must simply remember to use `File` objects in the `Scanner` constructor:

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(new File("input.txt")); // OK
```

**Special Topic 11.1****Reading Web Pages**

You can read the contents of a web page with this sequence of commands:

```
String address = "http://horstmann.com/index.html";
URL pageLocation = new URL(address);
Scanner in = new Scanner(pageLocation.openStream());
```

Now simply read the contents of the web page with the `Scanner` in the usual way. The `URL` constructor and the `openStream` method can throw an `IOException`, so you need to tag the `main` method with `throws IOException`. (See Section 11.4.3 for more information on the `throws` clause.)

The `URL` class is contained in the `java.net` package.

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that reads data from a web page.

**Special Topic 11.2****File Dialog Boxes**

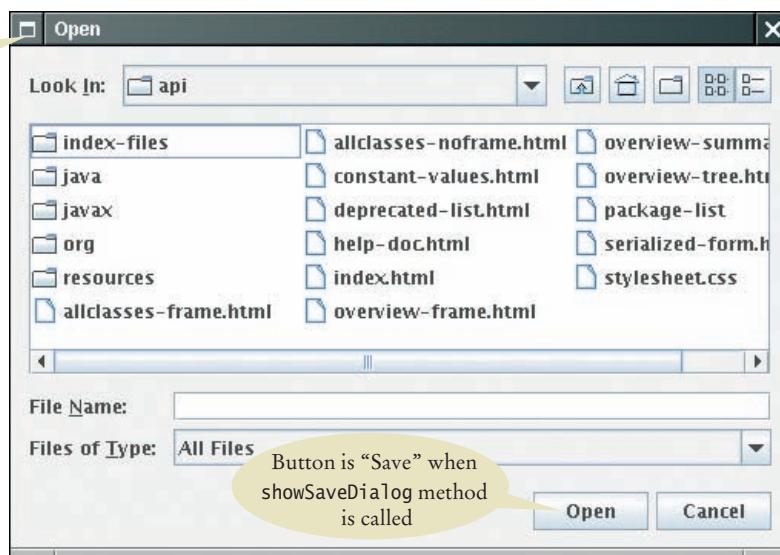
In a program with a graphical user interface, you will want to use a file dialog box (such as the one shown in the figure below) whenever the users of your program need to pick a file. The `JFileChooser` class implements a file dialog box for the Swing user-interface toolkit.

The `JFileChooser` class has many options to fine-tune the display of the dialog box, but in its most basic form it is quite simple: Construct a file chooser object; then call the `showOpenDialog` or `showSaveDialog` method. Both methods show the same dialog box, but the button for selecting a file is labeled "Open" or "Save", depending on which method you call.

For better placement of the dialog box on the screen, you can specify the user-interface component over which to pop up the dialog box. If you don't care where the dialog box pops up, you can simply pass `null`. The `showOpenDialog` and `showSaveDialog` methods return either `JFileChooser.APPROVE_OPTION`, if the user has chosen a file, or `JFileChooser.CANCEL_OPTION`, if the user canceled the selection. If a file was chosen, then you call the `getSelectedFile` method to obtain a `File` object that describes the file. Here is a complete example:

```
JFileChooser chooser = new JFileChooser();
Scanner in = null;
if (chooser.showOpenDialog(null) == JFileChooser.APPROVE_OPTION)
{
    File selectedFile = chooser.getSelectedFile();
    in = new Scanner(selectedFile);
    ...
}
```

Call with  
showOpenDialog  
method



A `JFileChooser` Dialog Box

### Special Topic 11.3



### Character Encodings

A character (such as the letter A, the digit 0, the accented character é, the Greek letter π, the symbol \$, or the Chinese character 中) is encoded as a sequence of bytes. Each byte is a value between 0 and 255.

Unfortunately, the encoding is not uniform. In 1963, ASCII (the American Standard Code for Information Interchange) defined an encoding for 128 characters, which you can find in Appendix A. ASCII encodes all upper- and lowercase Latin letters and digits, as well as common symbols such as + \* %, as values between 0 and 127. For example, the code for the letter A is 65.

As different populations felt the need to encode their own alphabets, they designed their own codes. Many of them built upon ASCII, using the values in the range from 128 to 255 for their own language. For example, in Spain, the letter é was encoded as 233. But in Greece, the code 233 denoted the letter i (a lowercase iota). As you can imagine, if a Spanish tourist named José sent an e-mail to a Greek hotel, this created a problem.

To resolve this issue, the design of **Unicode** was begun in 1987. As described in Computing & Society 4.2, each character in the world is given a unique integer value. However, there are still multiple encodings of those integers in binary. The most popular encoding is called UTF-8. It encodes each character as a sequence of one to four bytes. For example, an A is still 65, as in ASCII, but an é is 195 169. The details of the encoding don't matter, as long as you specify that you want UTF-8 when you read and write a file.

As this book goes to print, the Windows and Macintosh operating systems have not yet made the switch to UTF-8. Java picks up the character encoding from the operating system. Unless you specifically request otherwise, the Scanner and PrintWriter classes will read and write files in that encoding. That's fine if your files contain only ASCII characters, or if the creator and the recipient use the same encoding. But if you need to process files with accented characters, Chinese characters, or special symbols, you should specifically request the UTF-8 encoding. Construct a scanner with

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(file, "UTF-8");
```

and a print writer with

```
PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(file, "UTF-8");
```

You may wonder why Java can't just figure out the character encoding. However, consider the string José. In UTF-8, that's 74 111 115 195 169. The first three bytes, for Jos, are in the ASCII range and pose no problem. But the next two bytes, 195 169, could be é in UTF-8 or Ä in the traditional Spanish encoding. The Scanner object doesn't understand Spanish, and it can't decide which encoding to choose.

Therefore, you should always specify the UTF-8 encoding when you exchange files with users from other parts of the world.

## 11.2 Text Input and Output

In the following sections, you will learn how to process text with complex contents, and you will learn how to cope with challenges that often occur with real data.

### 11.2.1 Reading Words

The next method reads a string that is delimited by white space.

The next method of the Scanner class reads the next string. Consider the loop

```
while (in.hasNext())
{
    String input = in.next();
    System.out.println(input);
}
```

If the user provides the input:

```
Mary had a little lamb
```

this loop prints each word on a separate line:

```
Mary
had
a
little
lamb
```

However, the words can contain punctuation marks and other symbols. The next method returns any sequence of characters that is not white space. **White space**

includes spaces, tab characters, and the newline characters that separate lines. For example, the following strings are considered “words” by the next method:

```
snow.  
1729  
C++
```

(Note the period after snow—it is considered a part of the word because it is not white space.)

Here is precisely what happens when the next method is executed. Input characters that are white space are *consumed*—that is, removed from the input. However, they do not become part of the word. The first character that is not white space becomes the first character of the word. More characters are added until either another white space character occurs, or the end of the input file has been reached. However, if the end of the input file is reached before any character was added to the word, a “no such element exception” occurs.

Sometimes, you want to read just the words and discard anything that isn’t a letter. You achieve this task by calling the useDelimiter method on your Scanner object:

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(. . .);  
in.useDelimiter("[^A-Za-z]+");
```

Here, we set the character pattern that separates words to “any sequence of characters other than letters”. (See Special Topic 11.4.) With this setting, punctuation and numbers are not included in the words returned by the next method.

### 11.2.2 Reading Characters

Sometimes, you want to read a file one character at a time. You will see an example in Section 11.3 where we encrypt the characters of a file. You achieve this task by calling the useDelimiter method on your Scanner object with an empty string:

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(. . .);  
in.useDelimiter("");
```

Now each call to next returns a string consisting of a single character. Here is how you can process the characters:

```
while (in.hasNext())  
{  
    char ch = in.next().charAt(0);  
    Process ch.  
}
```

### 11.2.3 Classifying Characters

The Character class has methods for classifying characters.

When you read a character, or when you analyze the characters in a word or line, you often want to know what kind of character it is. The Character class declares several useful methods for this purpose. Each of them has an argument of type char and returns a boolean value (see Table 1).

For example, the call

```
Character.isDigit(ch)
```

returns true if ch is a digit ('0' . . . '9' or a digit in another writing system—see Computing & Society 4.2), false otherwise.

**Table 1** Character Testing Methods

Method	Examples of Accepted Characters
isDigit	0, 1, 2
isLetter	A, B, C, a, b, c
isUpperCase	A, B, C
isLowerCase	a, b, c
isWhiteSpace	space, newline, tab

## 11.2.4 Reading Lines

The `nextLine` method reads an entire line.

When each line of a file is a data record, it is often best to read entire lines with the `nextLine` method:

```
String line = in.nextLine();
```

The next input line (without the newline character) is placed into the string `line`. You can then take the line apart for further processing.

The `hasNextLine` method returns `true` if there is at least one more line in the input, `false` when all lines have been read. To ensure that there is another line to process, call the `hasNextLine` method before calling `nextLine`.

Here is a typical example of processing lines in a file. A file with population data from the CIA Fact Book site (<https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/index.html>) contains lines such as the following:

```
China 1330044605
India 1147995898
United States 303824646
...
```

Because some country names have more than one word, it would be tedious to read this file using the `next` method. For example, after reading `United`, how would your program know that it needs to read another word before reading the population count?

Instead, read each input line into a string:

```
while (in.hasNextLine())
{
    String line = nextLine();
    Process line.
}
```

Use the `isDigit` and `isWhiteSpace` methods in Table 1 to find out where the name ends and the number starts.

Locate the first digit:

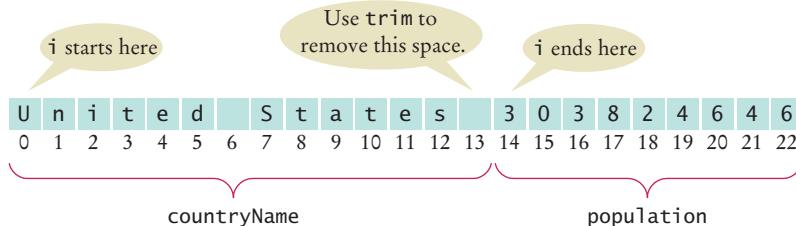
```
int i = 0;
while (!Character.isDigit(line.charAt(i))) { i++; }
```

Then extract the country name and population:

```
String countryName = line.substring(0, i);
String population = line.substring(i);
```

However, the country name contains one or more spaces at the end. Use the `trim` method to remove them:

```
countryName = countryName.trim();
```



The `trim` method returns the string with all white space at the beginning and end removed.

There is one additional problem. The population is stored in a string, not a number. In Section 11.2.6, you will see how to convert the string to a number.

## 11.2.5 Scanning a String

In the preceding section, you saw how to break a string into parts by looking at individual characters. Another approach is occasionally easier. You can use a Scanner object to read the characters from a string:

```
Scanner lineScanner = new Scanner(line);
```

Then you can use `lineScanner` like any other `Scanner` object, reading words and numbers:

```
String countryName = lineScanner.next(); // Read first word
// Add more words to countryName until number encountered
while (!lineScanner.hasNextInt())
{
    countryName = countryName + " " + lineScanner.next();
}
int populationValue = lineScanner.nextInt();
```

## 11.2.6 Converting Strings to Numbers

Sometimes you have a string that contains a number, such as the population string in Section 11.2.4. For example, suppose that the string is the character sequence "303824646". To get the integer value 303824646, you use the `Integer.parseInt` method:

```
int populationValue = Integer.parseInt(population);
    // populationValue is the integer 303824646
```

To convert a string containing floating-point digits to its floating-point value, use the `Double.parseDouble` method. For example, suppose `input` is the string "3.95".

```
double price = Double.parseDouble(input);
    // price is the floating-point number 3.95
```

You need to be careful when calling the `Integer.parseInt` and `Double.parseDouble` methods. The argument must be a string containing the digits of an integer, without any additional characters. Not even spaces are allowed! In our situation, we happen to

If a string contains the digits of a number, you use the `Integer.parseInt` or `Double.parseDouble` method to obtain the number value.

know that there won't be any spaces at the beginning of the string, but there might be some at the end. Therefore, we use the `trim` method:

```
int populationValue = Integer.parseInt(population.trim());
```

How To 11.1 on page 530 continues this example.

## 11.2.7 Avoiding Errors When Reading Numbers

You have used the `nextInt` and `nextDouble` methods of the `Scanner` class many times, but here we will have a look at what happens in “abnormal” situations. Suppose you call

```
int value = in.nextInt();
```

The `nextInt` method recognizes numbers such as 3 or -21. However, if the input is not a properly formatted number, an “input mismatch exception” occurs. For example, consider an input containing the characters

White space is consumed and the word `21st` is read. However, this word is not a properly formatted number, causing an input mismatch exception in the `nextInt` method.

If there is no input at all when you call `nextInt` or `nextDouble`, a “no such element exception” occurs. To avoid exceptions, use the `hasNextInt` method to screen the input when reading an integer. For example,

```
if (in.hasNextInt())
{
    int value = in.nextInt();
    . .
}
```

Similarly, you should call the `hasNextDouble` method before calling `nextDouble`.

## 11.2.8 Mixing Number, Word, and Line Input

The `nextInt`, `nextDouble`, and `next` methods *do not* consume the white space that follows the number or word. This can be a problem if you alternate between calling `nextInt`/`nextDouble`/`next` and `nextLine`. Suppose a file contains country names and population values in this format:

```
China
1330044605
India
1147995898
United States
303824646
```

Now suppose you read the file with these instructions:

```
while (in.hasNextLine())
{
    String countryName = in.nextLine();
    int population = in.nextInt();
    Process the country name and population.
}
```

Initially, the input contains

```
C h i n a \n 1 3 3 0 0 4 4 6 0 5 \n I n d i a \n {
```

After the first call to the `nextLine` method, the input contains

```
1 3 3 0 0 4 4 6 0 5 \n I n d i a \n {
```

After the call to `nextInt`, the input contains

```
\n I n d i a \n {
```

Note that the `nextInt` call did *not* consume the newline character. Therefore, the second call to `nextLine` reads an empty string!

The remedy is to add a call to `nextLine` after reading the population value:

```
String countryName = in.nextLine();
int population = in.nextInt();
in.nextLine(); // Consume the newline
```

The call to `nextLine` consumes any remaining white space *and* the newline character.

### 11.2.9 Formatting Output

When you write numbers or strings, you often want to control how they appear. For example, dollar amounts are usually formatted with two significant digits, such as

Cookies: 3.20

You know from Section 4.3.2 how to achieve this output with the `printf` method. In this section, we discuss additional options of the `printf` method.

Suppose you need to print a table of items and prices, each stored in an array, such as

Cookies:	3.20
Linguine:	2.95
Clams:	17.29

Note that the item strings line up to the left, whereas the numbers line up to the right. By default, the `printf` method lines up values to the right.

**Table 2** Format Flags

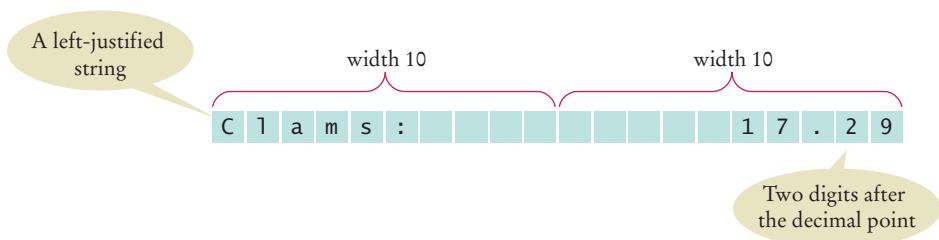
Flag	Meaning	Example
-	Left alignment	1.23 followed by spaces
0	Show leading zeroes	001.23
+	Show a plus sign for positive numbers	+1.23
(	Enclose negative numbers in parentheses	(1.23)
,	Show decimal separators	12,300
^	Convert letters to uppercase	1.23E+1

To specify left alignment, you add a hyphen (-) before the field width:

```
System.out.printf("%-10s%10.2f", items[i] + ":", prices[i]);
```

Here, we have two format specifiers.

- `%-10s` formats a left-justified string. The string `items[i] + ":"` is padded with spaces so it becomes ten characters wide. The `-` indicates that the string is placed on the left, followed by sufficient spaces to reach a width of 10.
- `%10.2f` formats a floating-point number, also in a field that is ten characters wide. However, the spaces appear to the left and the value to the right.



A construct such as `%-10s` or `%10.2f` is called a *format specifier*: it describes how a value should be formatted.

A format specifier has the following structure:

- The first character is a `%`.
- Next, there are optional “flags” that modify the format, such as `-` to indicate left alignment. See Table 2 for the most common format flags.
- Next is the field width, the total number of characters in the field (including the spaces used for padding), followed by an optional precision for floating-point numbers.
- The format specifier ends with the format type, such as `f` for floating-point values or `s` for strings. There are quite a few format types—Table 3 shows the most important ones.



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that processes a file containing a mixture of text and numbers.

**Table 3 Format Types**

Code	Type	Example
d	Decimal integer	123
f	Fixed floating-point	12.30
e	Exponential floating-point	1.23e+1
g	General floating-point (exponential notation is used for very large or very small values)	12.3
s	String	Tax:



- 6.** Suppose the input contains the characters Hello, World!. What are the values of word and input after this code fragment?
- ```
String word = in.next();
String input = in.nextLine();
```
- 7.** Suppose the input contains the characters 995.0 Fred. What are the values of number and input after this code fragment?
- ```
int number = 0;
if (in.hasNextInt()) { number = in.nextInt(); }
String input = in.next();
```
- 8.** Suppose the input contains the characters 6E6 6,995.00. What are the values of x1 and x2 after this code fragment?
- ```
double x1 = in.nextDouble();
double x2 = in.nextDouble();
```
- 9.** Your input file contains a sequence of numbers, but sometimes a value is not available and is marked as N/A. How can you read the numbers and skip over the markers?
- 10.** How can you remove spaces from the country name in Section 11.2.4 without using the trim method?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E11.2, E11.4, E11.5.

## Special Topic 11.4



### Regular Expressions

Regular expressions describe character patterns. For example, numbers have a simple form. They contain one or more digits. The regular expression describing numbers is [0-9]+. The set [0-9] denotes any digit between 0 and 9, and the + means “one or more”.

The search commands of professional programming editors understand regular expressions. Moreover, several utility programs use regular expressions to locate matching text. A commonly used program that uses regular expressions is grep (which stands for “global regular expression print”). You can run grep from a command line or from inside some compilation environments. Grep is part of the UNIX operating system, and versions are available for Windows. It needs a regular expression and one or more files to search. When grep runs, it displays a set of lines that match the regular expression.

Suppose you want to find all magic numbers (see Programming Tip 4.1) in a file.

```
grep [0-9]+ Homework.java
```

lists all lines in the file Homework.java that contain sequences of digits. That isn’t terribly useful; lines with variable names x1 will be listed. OK, you want sequences of digits that do *not* immediately follow letters:

```
grep [^A-Za-z][0-9]+ Homework.java
```

The set [^A-Za-z] denotes any characters that are *not* in the ranges A to Z and a to z. This works much better, and it shows only lines that contain actual numbers.

The useDelimiter method of the Scanner class accepts a regular expression to describe delimiters—the blocks of text that separate words. As already mentioned, if you set the delimiter pattern to [^A-Za-z]+, a delimiter is a sequence of one or more characters that are not letters.

For more information on regular expressions, consult one of the many tutorials on the Internet by pointing your search engine to “regular expression tutorial”.

## 11.3 Command Line Arguments

Depending on the operating system and Java development environment used, there are different methods of starting a program—for example, by selecting “Run” in the compilation environment, by clicking on an icon, or by typing the name of the program at the prompt in a command shell window. The latter method is called “invoking the program from the command line”. When you use this method, you must of course type the name of the program, but you can also type in additional information that the program can use. These additional strings are called **command line arguments**. For example, if you start a program with the command line

```
java ProgramClass -v input.dat
```

then the program receives two command line arguments: the strings “-v” and “input.dat”. It is entirely up to the program what to do with these strings. It is customary to interpret strings starting with a hyphen (-) as program options.

Should you support command line arguments for your programs, or should you prompt users, perhaps with a graphical user interface? For a casual and infrequent user, an interactive user interface is much better. The user interface guides the user along and makes it possible to navigate the application without much knowledge. But for a frequent user, a command line interface has a major advantage: it is easy to automate. If you need to process hundreds of files every day, you could spend all your time typing file names into file chooser dialog boxes. However, by using batch files or shell scripts (a feature of your computer’s operating system), you can automatically call a program many times with different command line arguments.

Your program receives its command line arguments in the args parameter of the main method:

```
public static void main(String[] args)
```

In our example, args is an array of length 2, containing the strings

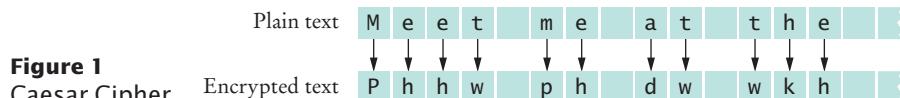
```
args[0]: "-v"  
args[1]: "input.dat"
```

Programs that start from the command line receive the command line arguments in the main method.

Let us write a program that *encrypts* a file—that is, scrambles it so that it is unreadable except to those who know the decryption method. Ignoring 2,000 years of progress in the field of encryption, we will use a method familiar to Julius Caesar, replacing A with a D, B with an E, and so on (see Figure 1).



The emperor Julius Caesar used a simple scheme to encrypt messages.



The program takes the following command line arguments:

- An optional -d flag to indicate decryption instead of encryption
- The input file name
- The output file name

For example,

```
java CaesarCipher input.txt encrypt.txt
```

encrypts the file `input.txt` and places the result into `encrypt.txt`.

```
java CaesarCipher -d encrypt.txt output.txt
```

decrypts the file `encrypt.txt` and places the result into `output.txt`.

### **section\_3/CaesarCipher.java**

```

1 import java.io.File;
2 import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
3 import java.io.PrintWriter;
4 import java.util.Scanner;
5
6 /**
7  * This program encrypts a file using the Caesar cipher.
8 */
9 public class CaesarCipher
{
10     public static void main(String[] args) throws FileNotFoundException
11     {
12         final int DEFAULT_KEY = 3;
13         int key = DEFAULT_KEY;
14         String inFile = "";
15         String outFile = "";
16         int files = 0; // Number of command line arguments that are files
17
18         for (int i = 0; i < args.length; i++)
19         {
20             String arg = args[i];
21             if (arg.charAt(0) == '-')
22             {
23                 // It is a command line option
24
25                 char option = arg.charAt(1);
26                 if (option == 'd') { key = -key; }
27                 else { usage(); return; }
28             }
29             else
30             {
31                 // It is a file name
32
33                 files++;
34                 if (files == 1) { inFile = arg; }
35                 else if (files == 2) { outFile = arg; }
36             }
37         }
38     }
39     if (files != 2) { usage(); return; }
40 }
```

```

41 Scanner in = new Scanner(new File(inFile));
42 in.useDelimiter(""); // Process individual characters
43 PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(outFile);
44
45 while (in.hasNext())
46 {
47     char from = in.next().charAt(0);
48     char to = encrypt(from, key);
49     out.print(to);
50 }
51 in.close();
52 out.close();
53 }
54
55 /**
56 * Encrypts upper- and lowercase characters by shifting them
57 * according to a key.
58 * @param ch the letter to be encrypted
59 * @param key the encryption key
60 * @return the encrypted letter
61 */
62 public static char encrypt(char ch, int key)
63 {
64     int base = 0;
65     if ('A' <= ch && ch <= 'Z') { base = 'A'; }
66     else if ('a' <= ch && ch <= 'z') { base = 'a'; }
67     else { return ch; } // Not a letter
68     int offset = ch - base + key;
69     final int LETTERS = 26; // Number of letters in the Roman alphabet
70     if (offset > LETTERS) { offset = offset - LETTERS; }
71     else if (offset < 0) { offset = offset + LETTERS; }
72     return (char) (base + offset);
73 }
74
75 /**
76 * Prints a message describing proper usage.
77 */
78 public static void usage()
79 {
80     System.out.println("Usage: java CaesarCipher [-d] infile outfile");
81 }
82 }
```

**SELF CHECK**

11. If the program is invoked with `java CaesarCipher -d file1.txt`, what are the elements of args?
12. Trace the program when it is invoked as in Self Check 11.
13. Will the program run correctly if the program is invoked with `java CaesarCipher file1.txt file2.txt -d`? If so, why? If not, why not?
14. Encrypt CAESAR using the Caesar cipher.
15. How can you modify the program so that the user can specify an encryption key other than 3 with a -k option, for example  
`java CaesarCipher -k15 input.txt output.txt`

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R11.4, E11.8, E11.9.

**HOW TO 11.1****Processing Text Files**

Processing text files that contain real data can be surprisingly challenging. This How To gives you step-by-step guidance using world population data.

**Problem Statement** Read two country data files, `worldpop.txt` and `worldarea.txt` (supplied with your source code). Both files contain the same countries in the same order. Write a file `world_pop_density.txt` that contains country names and population densities (people per square km), with the country names aligned left and the numbers aligned right:

|                |        |
|----------------|--------|
| Afghanistan    | 50.56  |
| Akrotiri       | 127.64 |
| Albania        | 125.91 |
| Algeria        | 14.18  |
| American Samoa | 288.92 |
| ...            |        |



*Singapore is one of the most densely populated countries in the world.*

### Step 1 Understand the processing task.

As always, you need to have a clear understanding of the task before designing a solution. Can you carry out the task by hand (perhaps with smaller input files)? If not, get more information about the problem.

One important consideration is whether you can process the data as it becomes available, or whether you need to store it first. For example, if you are asked to write out sorted data, you first need to collect all input, perhaps by placing it in an array list. However, it is often possible to process the data “on the go”, without storing it.

In our example, we can read each file one line at a time and compute the density for each line because our input files store the population and area data in the same order.

The following pseudocode describes our processing task.

```

While there are more lines to be read
  Read a line from each file.
  Extract the country name.
  population = number following the country name in the line from the first file
  area = number following the country name in the line from the second file
  If area != 0
    density = population / area
  Print country name and density.

```

### Step 2 Determine which files you need to read and write.

This should be clear from the problem. In our example, there are two input files, the population data and the area data, and one output file.

### Step 3 Choose a mechanism for obtaining the file names.

There are three options:

- Hard-coding the file names (such as “`worldpop.txt`”).
- Asking the user:

```

Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
System.out.print("Enter filename: ");
String inFile = in.nextLine();

```

- Using command-line arguments for the file names.

In our example, we use hard-coded file names for simplicity.

**Step 4** Choose between line, word, and character-based input.

As a rule of thumb, read lines if the input data is grouped by lines. That is the case with tabular data, such as in our example, or when you need to report line numbers.

When gathering data that can be distributed over several lines, then it makes more sense to read words. Keep in mind that you lose all white space when you read words.

Reading characters is mostly useful for tasks that require access to individual characters. Examples include analyzing character frequencies, changing tabs to spaces, or encryption.

**Step 5** With line-oriented input, extract the required data.

It is simple to read a line of input with the `nextLine` method. Then you need to get the data out of that line. You can extract substrings, as described in Section 11.2.4.

Typically, you will use methods such as `Character.isWhitespace` and `Character.isDigit` to find the boundaries of substrings.

If you need any of the substrings as numbers, you must convert them, using `Integer.parseInt` or `Double.parseDouble`.

**Step 6** Use classes and methods to factor out common tasks.

Processing input files usually has repetitive tasks, such as skipping over white space or extracting numbers from strings. It really pays off to isolate these tedious operations from the remainder of the code.

In our example, we have a task that occurs twice: splitting an input line into the country name and the value that follows. We implement a simple `CountryValue` class for this purpose, using the technique described in Section 11.2.4.

Here is the complete source code:

**how\_to\_1/CountryValue.java**

```

1  /**
2   * Describes a value that is associated with a country.
3  */
4  public class CountryValue
5  {
6      private String country;
7      private double value;
8
9  /**
10   * Constructs a CountryValue from an input line.
11   * @param line a line containing a country name, followed by a value
12  */
13  public CountryValue(String line)
14  {
15      int i = 0; // Locate the start of the first digit
16      while (!Character.isDigit(line.charAt(i))) { i++; }
17      int j = i - 1; // Locate the end of the preceding word
18      while (Character.isWhitespace(line.charAt(j))) { j--; }
19      country = line.substring(0, j + 1); // Extract the country name
20      value = Double.parseDouble(line.substring(i).trim()); // Extract the value
21  }
22
23 /**
24  * Gets the country name.
25  * @return the country name
26  */
27  public String getCountry() { return country; }
28

```

```

29     /**
30      Gets the associated value.
31      @return the value associated with the country
32     */
33     public double getValue() { return value; }
34 }
```

### how\_to\_1/PopulationDensity.java

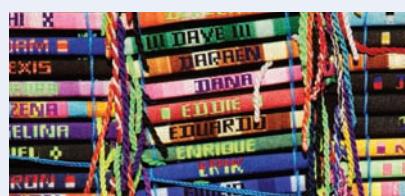
```

1  import java.io.File;
2  import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
3  import java.io.PrintWriter;
4  import java.util.Scanner;
5
6  public class PopulationDensity
7  {
8      public static void main(String[] args) throws FileNotFoundException
9      {
10         // Open input files
11         Scanner in1 = new Scanner(new File("worldpop.txt"));
12         Scanner in2 = new Scanner(new File("worldarea.txt"));
13
14         // Open output file
15         PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter("world_pop_density.txt");
16
17         // Read lines from each file
18         while (in1.hasNextLine() && in2.hasNextLine())
19         {
20             CountryValue population = new CountryValue(in1.nextLine());
21             CountryValue area = new CountryValue(in2.nextLine());
22
23             // Compute and print the population density
24             double density = 0;
25             if (area.getValue() != 0) // Protect against division by zero
26             {
27                 density = population.getValue() / area.getValue();
28             }
29             out.printf("%-40s%15.2f\n", population.getCountry(), density);
30         }
31
32         in1.close();
33         in2.close();
34         out.close();
35     }
36 }
```



### WORKED EXAMPLE 11.1 Analyzing Baby Names

Learn how to use data from the Social Security Administration to analyze the most popular baby names. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 11.1.





## Computing & Society 11.1 Encryption Algorithms

This chapter's exercise section gives a few algorithms for encrypting text. Don't actually use any of those methods to send secret messages to your lover. Any skilled cryptographer can *break* these schemes in a very short time—that is, reconstruct the original text without knowing the secret keyword.

In 1978 Ron Rivest, Adi Shamir, and Leonard Adleman introduced an encryption method that is much more powerful. The method is called *RSA encryption*, after the last names of its inventors. The exact scheme is too complicated to present here, but it is not actually difficult to follow. You can find the details in <http://theory.lcs.mit.edu/~rivest/rsapaper.pdf>.

RSA is a remarkable encryption method. There are two keys: a public key and a private key (see the figure). You can print the public key on your business card (or in your e-mail signature block) and give it to anyone. Then anyone can send you messages that only you can decrypt. Even though everyone else knows the public key, and even if they intercept all the messages coming to you, they cannot break the scheme and actually read the messages. In 1994, hundreds of researchers, collaborating over the Internet, cracked an RSA message encrypted with a 129-digit key. Messages encrypted with a key of 230 digits or more are expected to be secure.

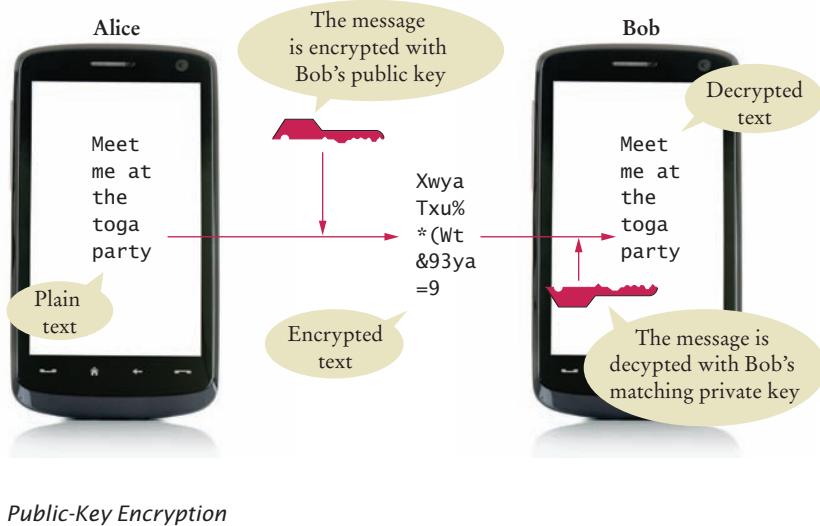
The inventors of the algorithm obtained a *patent* for it. A patent is a deal that society makes with an inventor. For a period of 20 years, the inventor has an exclusive right to its commercialization, may collect royalties from others wishing to manufacture the invention, and may even stop competitors from using it altogether. In return, the inventor must publish the invention, so that others may learn from it, and must relinquish all claim to it after the monopoly period ends. The presumption is that in the absence

of patent law, inventors would be reluctant to go through the trouble of inventing, or they would try to cloak their techniques to prevent others from copying their devices.

There has been some controversy about the RSA patent. Had there not been patent protection, would the inventors have published the method anyway, thereby giving the benefit to society without the cost of the 20-year monopoly? In this case, the answer is probably yes. The inventors were academic researchers who live on salaries rather than sales receipts and are usually rewarded for their discoveries by a boost in their reputation and careers. Would their followers have been as active in discovering (and patenting) improvements? There is no way of knowing, of course. Is an algorithm even patentable, or is it a mathematical fact that belongs to nobody? The patent office did take the latter attitude for a long time. The RSA inventors and many others described their inventions in terms of imaginary electronic devices, rather than algorithms, to circumvent

that restriction. Nowadays, the patent office will award software patents.

There is another interesting aspect to the RSA story. A programmer, Phil Zimmermann, developed a program called PGP (for *Pretty Good Privacy*) that is based on RSA. Anyone can use the program to encrypt messages, and decryption is not feasible even with the most powerful computers. You can get a copy of a free PGP implementation from the GNU project (<http://www.gnupg.org>). The existence of strong encryption methods bothers the United States government to no end. Criminals and foreign agents can send communications that the police and intelligence agencies cannot decipher. The government considered charging Zimmermann with breaching a law that forbids the unauthorized export of munitions, arguing that he should have known that his program would appear on the Internet. There have been serious proposals to make it illegal for private citizens to use these encryption methods, or to keep the keys secret from law enforcement.



## 11.4 Exception Handling

There are two aspects to dealing with program errors: *detection* and *handling*. For example, the Scanner constructor can detect an attempt to read from a non-existent file. However, it cannot handle that error. A satisfactory way of handling the error might be to terminate the program, or to ask the user for another file name. The Scanner class cannot choose between these alternatives. It needs to report the error to another part of the program.

In Java, *exception handling* provides a flexible mechanism for passing control from the point of error detection to a handler that can deal with the error. In the following sections, we will look into the details of this mechanism.

### 11.4.1 Throwing Exceptions

To signal an exceptional condition, use the `throw` statement to throw an exception object.

When you detect an error condition, your job is really easy. You just *throw* an appropriate exception object, and you are done. For example, suppose someone tries to withdraw too much money from a bank account.

```
if (amount > balance)
{
    // Now what?
}
```

First look for an appropriate exception class. The Java library provides many classes to signal all sorts of exceptional conditions. Figure 2 shows the most useful ones. (The classes are arranged as a tree-shaped inheritance hierarchy, with more specialized classes at the bottom of the tree.)

Look around for an exception type that might describe your situation. How about the `ArithmaticException`? Is it an arithmetic error to have a negative balance? No—Java can deal with negative numbers. Is the amount to be withdrawn illegal? Indeed it is. It is just too large. Therefore, let's throw an `IllegalArgumentExeption`.

```
if (amount > balance)
{
    throw new IllegalArgumentExeption("Amount exceeds balance");
```

### Syntax 11.1 Throwing an Exception

**Syntax**    `throw exceptionObject;`

A new exception object is constructed, then thrown.

```
if (amount > balance)
{
    throw new IllegalArgumentExeption("Amount exceeds balance");
}
balance = balance - amount;
```

Most exception objects can be constructed with an error message.

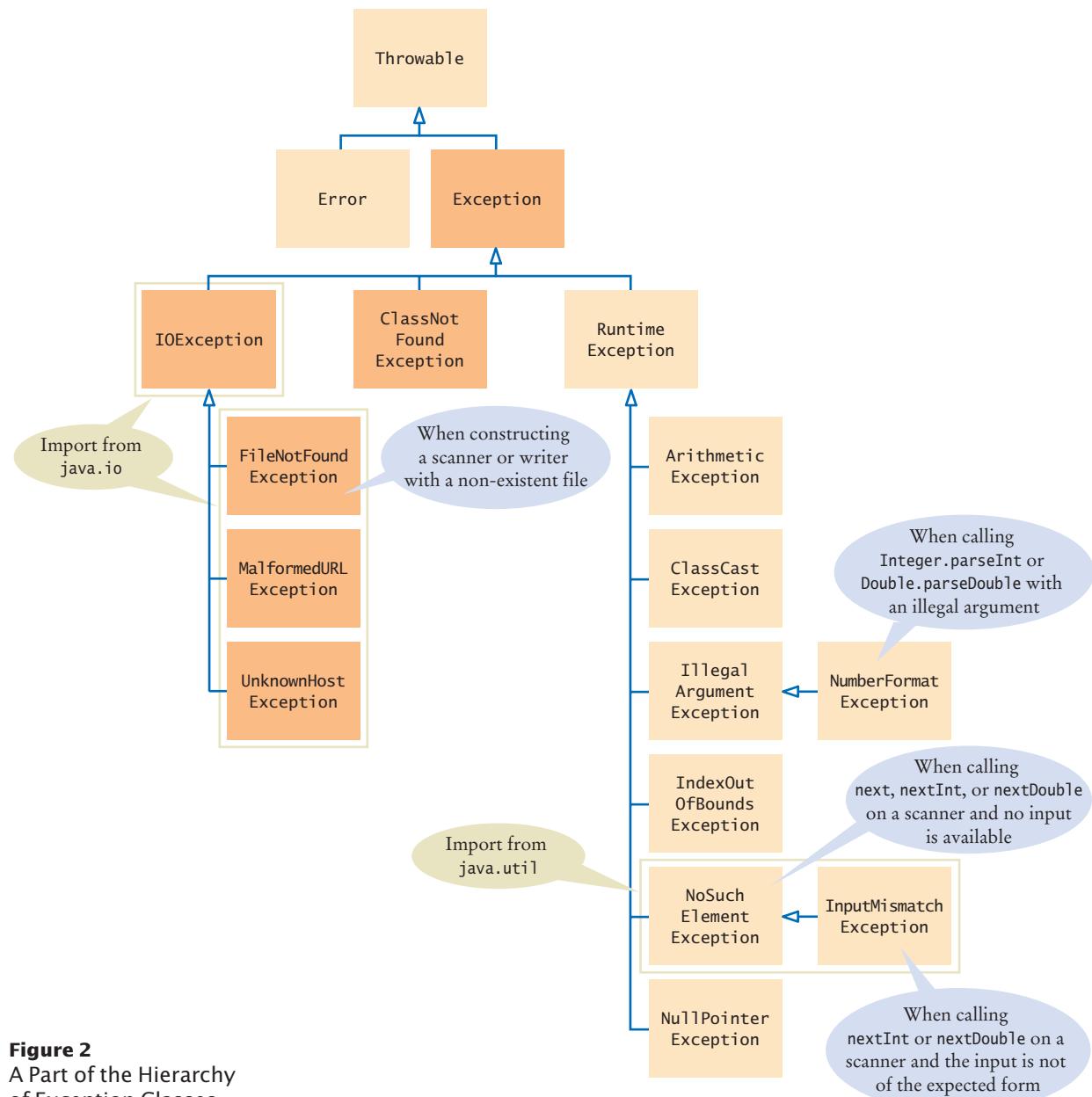
This line is not executed when the exception is thrown.

When you throw an exception, processing continues in an exception handler.

When you **throw an exception**, execution does not continue with the next statement but with an **exception handler**. That is the topic of the next section.



*When you throw an exception, the normal control flow is terminated. This is similar to a circuit breaker that cuts off the flow of electricity in a dangerous situation.*



**Figure 2**  
A Part of the Hierarchy of Exception Classes

## 11.4.2 Catching Exceptions

Place the statements that can cause an exception inside a try block, and the handler inside a catch clause.

Every exception should be handled somewhere in your program. If an exception has no handler, an error message is printed, and your program terminates. Of course, such an unhandled exception is confusing to program users.

You handle exceptions with the try/catch statement. Place the statement into a location of your program that knows how to handle a particular exception. The **try block** contains one or more statements that may cause an exception of the kind that you are willing to handle. Each catch clause contains the handler for an exception type. Here is an example:

```
try
{
    String filename = . . .;
    Scanner in = new Scanner(new File(filename));
    String input = in.next();
    int value = Integer.parseInt(input);
    .
    .
}
catch (IOException exception)
{
    exception.printStackTrace();
}
catch (NumberFormatException exception)
{
    System.out.println(exception.getMessage());
}
```

## Syntax 11.2 Catching Exceptions

*Syntax*

```
try
{
    statement
    statement
    .
    .
}
catch (ExceptionClass exceptionObject)
{
    statement
    statement
    .
    .
}
```

This constructor can throw a  
FileNotFoundException.

When an IOException is thrown,  
execution resumes here.

```
try
{
    Scanner in = new Scanner(new File("input.txt"));
    String input = in.next();
    process(input);
}
catch (IOException exception)
{
    System.out.println("Could not open input file");
}
```

This is the exception that was thrown.

Additional catch clauses  
can appear here. Place  
more specific exceptions  
before more general ones.

A FileNotFoundException  
is a special case of an IOException.

Three exceptions may be thrown in this try block:

- The Scanner constructor can throw a `FileNotFoundException`.
- `Scanner.next` can throw a `NoSuchElementException`.
- `Integer.parseInt` can throw a `NumberFormatException`.

If any of these exceptions is actually thrown, then the rest of the instructions in the try block are skipped. Here is what happens for the various exception types:



*You should only catch those exceptions that you can handle.*

- If a `FileNotFoundException` is thrown, then the catch clause for the `IOException` is executed. (If you look at Figure 2, you will note that `FileNotFoundException` is a descendant of `IOException`.) If you want to show the user a different message for a `FileNotFoundException`, you must place the catch clause *before* the clause for an `IOException`.
- If a `NumberFormatException` occurs, then the second catch clause is executed.
- A `NoSuchElementException` is *not caught* by any of the catch clauses. The exception remains thrown until it is caught by another try block.

Each catch clause contains a handler. When the catch (`IOException exception`) block is executed, then some method in the try block has failed with an `IOException` (or one of its descendants).

In this handler, we produce a printout of the chain of method calls that led to the exception, by calling

```
exception.printStackTrace()
```

In the second exception handler, we call `exception.getMessage()` to retrieve the message associated with the exception. When the `parseInt` method throws a `NumberFormatException`, the message contains the string that it was unable to format. When you throw an exception, you can provide your own message string. For example, when you call

```
throw new IllegalArgumentException("Amount exceeds balance");
```

the message of the exception is the string provided in the constructor.

In these sample catch clauses, we merely inform the user of the source of the problem. Often, it is better to give the user another chance to provide a correct input—see Section 11.5 for a solution.



### 11.4.3 Checked Exceptions

In Java, the exceptions that you can throw and catch fall into three categories.

- Internal errors are reported by descendants of the type `Error`. One example is the `OutOfMemoryError`, which is thrown when all available computer memory has been used up. These are fatal errors that happen rarely, and we will not consider them in this book.
- Descendants of `RuntimeException`, such as `IndexOutOfBoundsException` or `IllegalArgumentException` indicate errors in your code. They are called **unchecked exceptions**.

Checked exceptions are due to external circumstances that the programmer cannot prevent. The compiler checks that your program handles these exceptions.

- All other exceptions are **checked exceptions**. These exceptions indicate that something has gone wrong for some external reason beyond your control. In Figure 2, the checked exceptions are shaded in a darker color.

Why have two kinds of exceptions? A checked exception describes a problem that can occur, no matter how careful you are. For example, an `IOException` can be caused by forces beyond your control, such as a disk error or a broken network connection. The compiler takes checked exceptions very seriously and ensures that they are handled. Your program will not compile if you don't indicate how to deal with a checked exception.

The unchecked exceptions, on the other hand, are your fault. The compiler does not check whether you handle an unchecked exception, such as an `IndexOutOfBoundsException`. After all, you should check your index values rather than install a handler for that exception.

If you have a handler for a checked exception in the same method that may throw it, then the compiler is satisfied. For example,

```
try
{
    File inFile = new File(filename);
    Scanner in = new Scanner(inFile); // Throws FileNotFoundException
    ...
}
catch (FileNotFoundException exception) // Exception caught here
{
    ...
}
```

Add a throws clause to a method that can throw a checked exception.

However, it commonly happens that the current method *cannot handle* the exception. In that case, you need to tell the compiler that you are aware of this exception and that you want your method to be terminated when it occurs. You supply the method with a `throws` clause:

```
public void readData(String filename) throws FileNotFoundException
{
    File inFile = new File(filename);
    Scanner in = new Scanner(inFile);
    ...
}
```

The **throws clause** signals to the caller of your method that it may encounter a `FileNotFoundException`. Then the caller needs to make the same decision—handle the exception, or declare that the exception may be thrown.

It sounds somehow irresponsible not to handle an exception when you know that it happened. Actually, the opposite is true. Java provides an exception handling facility so that an exception can be sent to the *appropriate* handler. Some methods detect errors, some methods handle them, and some methods just pass them along. The `throws` clause simply ensures that no exceptions get lost along the way.



*Just as trucks with large or hazardous loads carry warning signs, the throws clause warns the caller that an exception may occur.*

## Syntax 11.3

### The throws Clause

**Syntax**    *modifiers returnType methodName(parameterType parameterName, . . .)*  
*throws ExceptionClass, ExceptionClass, . . .*

```
public void readData(String filename)
    throws FileNotFoundException, NumberFormatException
```

You **must** specify all checked exceptions  
that this method may throw.

You may also list unchecked exceptions.

### 11.4.4 The finally Clause

Once a try block is entered, the statements in a finally clause are guaranteed to be executed, whether or not an exception is thrown.

Occasionally, you need to take some action whether or not an exception is thrown. The **finally clause** is used to handle this situation.

Here is a typical example: It is important to close a PrintWriter to ensure that all output is written to the file. In the following code segment, we open a stream, call one or more methods, and then close the stream:

```
PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(filename);
writeData(out);
out.close(); // May never get here
```

Now suppose that one of the methods before the last line throws an exception. Then the call to close is never executed! You solve this problem by placing the call to close inside a finally clause:

```
PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(filename);
try
{
    writeData(out);
}
finally
{
    out.close();
}
```

In a normal case, there will be no problem. When the try block is completed, the finally clause is executed, and the writer is closed. However, if an exception occurs, the finally clause is also executed before the exception is passed to its handler.

Use the finally clause whenever you need to do some clean up, such as closing a file, to ensure that the clean up happens no matter how the method exits.

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**  
Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates throwing and catching exceptions.

*All visitors to a foreign country have to go through passport control, no matter what happened on their trip. Similarly, the code in a finally clause is always executed, even when an exception has occurred.*



## Syntax 11.4 The finally Clause

```
Syntax      try
{           statement
            statement
            ...
}
finally
{
    statement
    statement
    ...
}
```

This variable must be declared outside the try block so that the finally clause can access it.

```
PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(filename);
try
{
    writeData(out);
}
finally
{
    out.close();
}
```

This code may throw exceptions.

This code is always executed, even if an exception occurs.

### 11.4.5 Designing Your Own Exception Types

Sometimes none of the standard exception types describe your particular error condition well enough. In that case, you can design your own exception class. Consider a bank account. Let's report an `InsufficientFundsException` when an attempt is made to withdraw an amount from a bank account that exceeds the current balance.

```
if (amount > balance)
{
    throw new InsufficientFundsException(
        "withdrawal of " + amount + " exceeds balance of " + balance);
}
```

To describe an error condition, provide a subclass of an existing exception class.

Now you need to provide the `InsufficientFundsException` class. Should it be a checked or an unchecked exception? Is it the fault of some external event, or is it the fault of the programmer? We take the position that the programmer could have prevented the exceptional condition—after all, it would have been an easy matter to check whether `amount <= account.getBalance()` before calling the `withdraw` method. Therefore, the exception should be an unchecked exception and extend the `RuntimeException` class or one of its subclasses.

It is a good idea to extend an appropriate class in the exception hierarchy. For example, we can consider an `InsufficientFundsException` a special case of an `IllegalArgumentException`. This enables other programmers to catch the exception as an `IllegalArgumentException` if they are not interested in the exact nature of the problem.

It is customary to provide two constructors for an exception class: a constructor with no arguments and a constructor that accepts a message string describing the reason for the exception. Here is the declaration of the exception class:

```
public class InsufficientFundsException extends IllegalArgumentException
{
    public InsufficientFundsException() {}

    public InsufficientFundsException(String message)
    {
        super(message);
    }
}
```

When the exception is caught, its message string can be retrieved using the `getMessage` method of the `Throwable` class.

**SELF CHECK**



16. Suppose `balance` is 100 and `amount` is 200. What is the value of `balance` after these statements?

```
if (amount > balance)
{
    throw new IllegalArgumentException("Amount exceeds balance");
}
balance = balance - amount;
```

17. When depositing an amount into a bank account, we don't have to worry about overdrafts—except when the amount is negative. Write a statement that throws an appropriate exception in that case.

18. Consider the method

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    try
    {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(new File("input.txt"));
        int value = in.nextInt();
        System.out.println(value);
    }
    catch (IOException exception)
    {
        System.out.println("Error opening file.");
    }
}
```

Suppose the file with the given file name exists and has no contents. Trace the flow of execution.

19. Why is an `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException` not a checked exception?  
 20. Is there a difference between catching checked and unchecked exceptions?  
 21. What is wrong with the following code, and how can you fix it?

```
public static void writeAll(String[] lines, String filename)
{
    PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(filename);
    for (String line : lines)
    {
        out.println(line.toUpperCase());
    }
    out.close();
```

- }
22. What is the purpose of the call `super(message)` in the second `InsufficientFundsException` constructor?
  23. Suppose you read bank account data from a file. Contrary to your expectation, the next input value is not of type `double`. You decide to implement a `BadDataException`. Which exception class should you extend?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R11.7, R11.8, R11.9.

### Programming Tip 11.1



#### Throw Early, Catch Late

When a method detects a problem that it cannot solve, it is better to throw an exception rather than try to come up with an imperfect fix. For example, suppose a method expects to read a number from a file, and the file doesn't contain a number. Simply using a zero value would be a poor choice because it hides the actual problem and perhaps causes a different problem elsewhere.

Throw an exception as soon as a problem is detected. Catch it only when the problem can be handled.

Conversely, a method should only catch an exception if it can really remedy the situation. Otherwise, the best remedy is simply to have the exception propagate to its caller, allowing it to be caught by a competent handler.

These principles can be summarized with the slogan “throw early, catch late”.

### Programming Tip 11.2



#### Do Not Squelch Exceptions

When you call a method that throws a checked exception and you haven't specified a handler, the compiler complains. In your eagerness to continue your work, it is an understandable impulse to shut the compiler up by squelching the exception:

```
try
{
    Scanner in = new Scanner(new File(filename));
    // Compiler complained about FileNotFoundException
    ...
}
catch (FileNotFoundException e) {} // So there!
```

The do-nothing exception handler fools the compiler into thinking that the exception has been handled. In the long run, this is clearly a bad idea. Exceptions were designed to transmit problem reports to a competent handler. Installing an incompetent handler simply hides an error condition that could be serious.

### Programming Tip 11.3



#### Do Not Use `catch` and `finally` in the Same `try` Statement

It is possible to have a `finally` clause following one or more `catch` clauses. Then the code in the `finally` clause is executed whenever the `try` block is exited in any of three ways:

1. After completing the last statement of the `try` block
2. After completing the last statement of a `catch` clause, if this `try` block caught an exception
3. When an exception was thrown in the `try` block and not caught

It is tempting to combine catch and finally clauses, but the resulting code can be hard to understand, and it is often incorrect. Instead, use two statements:

- a try/finally statement to close resources
- a separate try/catch statement to handle errors

For example,

```
try
{
    PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(filename);
    try
    {
        Write output.
    }
    finally
    {
        out.close();
    }
}
catch (IOException exception)
{
    Handle exception.
}
```

Note that the nested statements work correctly even if the PrintWriter constructor throws an exception.

#### Programming Tip 11.4



#### Do Throw Specific Exceptions

When throwing an exception, you should choose an exception class that describes the situation as closely as possible. For example, it would be a bad idea to simply throw a RuntimeException object when a bank account has insufficient funds. This would make it far too difficult to catch the exception. After all, if you caught all exceptions of type RuntimeException, your catch clause would also be activated by exceptions of the type NullPointerException, ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException, and so on. You would then need to carefully examine the exception object and attempt to deduce whether the exception was caused by insufficient funds.

If the standard library does not have an exception class that describes your particular error situation, simply provide a new exception class.

#### Special Topic 11.5



#### Assertions

An **assertion** is a condition that you believe to be true at all times in a particular program location. An assertion check tests whether an assertion is true. Here is a typical assertion check:

```
public double deposit (double amount)
{
    assert amount >= 0;
    balance = balance + amount;
}
```

In this method, the programmer expects that the quantity amount can never be negative. When the assertion is correct, no harm is done, and the program works in the normal way. If, for some reason, the assertion fails, and assertion checking is enabled, then the assert statement throws an exception of type AssertionException, causing the program to terminate.

However, if assertion checking is disabled, then the assertion is never checked, and the program runs at full speed. By default, assertion checking is disabled when you execute a program.

To execute a program with assertion checking turned on, use this command:

```
java -enableassertions MainClass
```

You can also use the shortcut `-ea` instead of `-enableassertions`. You should turn assertion checking on during program development and testing.

### Special Topic 11.6



### Automatic Resource Management in Java 7

In Java 7, you can use a new form of the `try` block that automatically closes a `PrintWriter` or `Scanner` object. Here is the syntax:

```
try (PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(filename))
{
    Write output to out.
}
```

The `close` method is automatically invoked on the `out` object when the `try` block ends, whether or not an exception has occurred. A `finally` statement is not required.



### Computing & Society 11.2 The Ariane Rocket Incident

The European Space Agency (ESA), Europe's counterpart to NASA, had developed a rocket model called Ariane that it had successfully used several times to launch satellites and scientific experiments into space. However, when a new version, the Ariane 5, was launched on June 4, 1996, from ESA's launch site in Kourou, French Guiana, the rocket veered off course about 40 seconds after liftoff. Flying at an angle of more than 20 degrees, rather than straight up, exerted such an aerodynamic force that the boosters separated, which triggered the automatic self-destruction mechanism. The rocket blew itself up.

The ultimate cause of this accident was an unhandled exception! The rocket contained two identical devices (called inertial reference systems) that processed flight data from measuring devices and turned the data into information about the rocket position.

The onboard computer used the position information for controlling the boosters. The same inertial reference systems and computer software had worked fine on the Ariane 4.

However, due to design changes to the rocket, one of the sensors measured a larger acceleration force than had been encountered in the Ariane 4. That value, expressed as a floating-point value, was stored in a 16-bit integer (like a short variable in Java). Unlike Java, the Ada language, used for the device software, generates an exception if a floating-point number is too large to be converted to an integer. Unfortunately, the programmers of the device had decided that this situation would never happen and didn't provide an exception handler.

When the overflow did happen, the exception was triggered and, because there was no handler, the device shut itself off. The onboard computer sensed

the failure and switched over to the backup device. However, that device had shut itself off for exactly the same reason, something that the designers of the rocket had not expected. They figured that the devices might fail for mechanical reasons, but the chance of them having the same mechanical failure was remote. At that point, the rocket was without reliable position information and went off course.

Perhaps it would have been better if the software hadn't been so thorough? If it had ignored the overflow, the device wouldn't have been shut off. It would have computed bad data. But then the device would have reported wrong position data, which could have been just as fatal. Instead, a correct implementation should have caught overflow exceptions and come up with some strategy to recompute the flight data. Clearly, giving up was not a reasonable option in this context.

The advantage of the exception-handling mechanism is that it makes these issues explicit to programmers—something to think about when you curse the Java compiler for complaining about uncaught exceptions.



*The Explosion of the Ariane Rocket*

## 11.5 Application: Handling Input Errors

This section walks through a complete example of a program with exception handling. The program asks a user for the name of a file. The file is expected to contain data values. The first line of the file contains the total number of values, and the remaining lines contain the data. A typical input file looks like this:

```
3
1.45
-2.1
0.05
```

When designing a program, ask yourself what kinds of exceptions can occur.

For each exception, you need to decide which part of your program can competently handle it.

What can go wrong? There are two principal risks.

- The file might not exist.
- The file might have data in the wrong format.

Who can detect these faults? The Scanner constructor will throw an exception when the file does not exist. The methods that process the input values need to throw an exception when they find an error in the data format.

What exceptions can be thrown? The Scanner constructor throws a `FileNotFoundException` when the file does not exist, which is appropriate in our situation. When the file data is in the wrong format, we will throw a `BadDataException`, a custom checked exception class. We use a checked exception because corruption of a data file is beyond the control of the programmer.

Who can remedy the faults that the exceptions report? Only the `main` method of the `DataAnalyzer` program interacts with the user. It catches the exceptions, prints appropriate error messages, and gives the user another chance to enter a correct file.

### section\_5/DataAnalyzer.java

```
1 import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
2 import java.io.IOException;
3 import java.util.Scanner;
4
5 /**
6  * This program reads a file containing numbers and analyzes its contents.
7  * If the file doesn't exist or contains strings that are not numbers, an
8  * error message is displayed.
9 */
10 public class DataAnalyzer
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
15         DataSetReader reader = new DataSetReader();
16
17         boolean done = false;
18         while (!done)
19         {
20             try
21             {
22                 System.out.println("Please enter the file name: ");
23                 String filename = in.next();
24
25                 double[] data = reader.readFile(filename);
26                 double sum = 0;
```

```

27         for (double d : data) { sum = sum + d; }
28         System.out.println("The sum is " + sum);
29         done = true;
30     }
31     catch (FileNotFoundException exception)
32     {
33         System.out.println("File not found.");
34     }
35     catch (BadDataException exception)
36     {
37         System.out.println("Bad data: " + exception.getMessage());
38     }
39     catch (IOException exception)
40     {
41         exception.printStackTrace();
42     }
43 }
44 }
45 }
```

The catch clauses in the `main` method give a human-readable error report if the file was not found or bad data was encountered.

The following `readFile` method of the `DataSetReader` class constructs the `Scanner` object and calls the `readData` method. It is completely unconcerned with any exceptions. If there is a problem with the input file, it simply passes the exception to its caller.

```

public double[] readFile(String filename) throws IOException
{
    File inFile = new File(filename);
    Scanner in = new Scanner(inFile);
    try
    {
        readData(in);
        return data;
    }
    finally
    {
        in.close();
    }
}
```

The method throws an `IOException`, the common superclass of `FileNotFoundException` (thrown by the `Scanner` constructor) and `BadDataException` (thrown by the `readData` method).

Next, here is the `readData` method of the `DataSetReader` class. It reads the number of values, constructs an array, and calls `readValue` for each data value.

```

private void readData(Scanner in) throws BadDataException
{
    if (!in.hasNextInt())
    {
        throw new BadDataException("Length expected");
    }
    int numberOfValues = in.nextInt();
    data = new double[numberOfValues];

    for (int i = 0; i < numberOfValues; i++)
    {
```

```

        readValue(in, i);
    }

    if (in.hasNext())
    {
        throw new BadDataException("End of file expected");
    }
}

```

This method checks for two potential errors. The file might not start with an integer, or it might have additional data after reading all values.

However, this method makes no attempt to catch any exceptions. Plus, if the `readValue` method throws an exception—which it will if there aren't enough values in the file—the exception is simply passed on to the caller.

Here is the `readValue` method:

```

private void readValue(Scanner in, int i) throws BadDataException
{
    if (!in.hasNextDouble())
    {
        throw new BadDataException("Data value expected");
    }
    data[i] = in.nextDouble();
}

```

To see the exception handling at work, look at a specific error scenario:

1. `DataAnalyzer.main` calls `DataSetReader.readFile`.
2. `readFile` calls `readData`.
3. `readData` calls `readValue`.
4. `readValue` doesn't find the expected value and throws a `BadDataException`.
5. `readValue` has no handler for the exception and terminates immediately.
6. `readData` has no handler for the exception and terminates immediately.
7. `readFile` has no handler for the exception and terminates immediately after executing the `finally` clause and closing the `Scanner` object.
8. `DataAnalyzer.main` has a handler for a `BadDataException`. That handler prints a message to the user. Afterward, the user is given another chance to enter a file name. Note that the statements computing the sum of the values have been skipped.

This example shows the separation between error detection (in the `DataSetReader.readValue` method) and error handling (in the `DataAnalyzer.main` method). In between the two are the `readData` and `readFile` methods, which just pass exceptions along.

### section\_5/DataSetReader.java

```

1 import java.io.File;
2 import java.io.IOException;
3 import java.util.Scanner;
4
5 /**
6  * Reads a data set from a file. The file must have the format
7  * number_of_values
8  * value1
9  * value2
10 ...

```

```
11  */
12 public class DataSetReader
13 {
14     private double[] data;
15
16     /**
17      * Reads a data set.
18      * @param filename the name of the file holding the data
19      * @return the data in the file
20     */
21     public double[] readFile(String filename) throws IOException
22     {
23         File inFile = new File(filename);
24         Scanner in = new Scanner(inFile);
25         try
26         {
27             readData(in);
28             return data;
29         }
29         finally
30         {
31             in.close();
32         }
33     }
34
35
36     /**
37      * Reads all data.
38      * @param in the scanner that scans the data
39     */
40     private void readData(Scanner in) throws BadDataException
41     {
42         if (!in.hasNextInt())
43         {
44             throw new BadDataException("Length expected");
45         }
46         int numberOfValues = in.nextInt();
47         data = new double[numberOfValues];
48
49         for (int i = 0; i < numberOfValues; i++)
50         {
51             readValue(in, i);
52         }
53
54         if (in.hasNext())
55         {
56             throw new BadDataException("End of file expected");
57         }
58     }
59
60     /**
61      * Reads one data value.
62      * @param in the scanner that scans the data
63      * @param i the position of the value to read
64     */
65     private void readValue(Scanner in, int i) throws BadDataException
66     {
67         if (!in.hasNextDouble())
68         {
69             throw new BadDataException("Data value expected");
70         }
71     }
72 }
```

```

71     data[i] = in.nextDouble();
72   }
73 }
```

### **section\_5/BadDataException.java**

```

1 import java.io.IOException;
2 /**
3  * This class reports bad input data.
4 */
5 public class BadDataException extends IOException
6 {
7     public BadDataException() {}
8     public BadDataException(String message)
9     {
10         super(message);
11     }
12 }
13 }
```

#### **SELF CHECK**



24. Why doesn't the `DataSetReader.readFile` method catch any exceptions?
25. Suppose the user specifies a file that exists and is empty. Trace the flow of execution.
26. If the `readValue` method had to throw a `NoSuchElementException` instead of a `BadDataException` when the next input isn't a floating-point number, how would the implementation change?
27. Consider the `try/finally` statement in the  `readFile` method. Why was the `in` variable declared outside the `try` block?
28. How can the program be simplified when you use the "automatic resource management" feature described in Special Topic 11.6?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R11.15, R11.16, E11.11.

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### **Develop programs that read and write files.**

- Use the `Scanner` class for reading text files.
- When writing text files, use the `PrintWriter` class and the `print/println/printf` methods.
- Close all files when you are done processing them.

### **Be able to process text in files.**

- The `next` method reads a string that is delimited by white space.
- The `Character` class has methods for classifying characters.
- The `nextLine` method reads an entire line.
- If a string contains the digits of a number, you use the `Integer.parseInt` or `Double.parseDouble` method to obtain the number value.

**Process the command line arguments of a program.**

- Programs that start from the command line receive the command line arguments in the `main` method.

**Use exception handling to transfer control from an error location to an error handler.**

- To signal an exceptional condition, use the `throw` statement to throw an exception object.
- When you throw an exception, processing continues in an exception handler.
- Place the statements that can cause an exception inside a `try` block, and the handler inside a `catch` clause.
- Checked exceptions are due to external circumstances that the programmer cannot prevent. The compiler checks that your program handles these exceptions.
- Add a `throws` clause to a method that can throw a checked exception.
- Once a `try` block is entered, the statements in a `finally` clause are guaranteed to be executed, whether or not an exception is thrown.
- To describe an error condition, provide a subclass of an existing exception class.
- Throw an exception as soon as a problem is detected. Catch it only when the problem can be handled.

**Use exception handling in a program that processes input.**

- When designing a program, ask yourself what kinds of exceptions can occur.
- For each exception, you need to decide which part of your program can competently handle it.

## STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <code>java.io.File</code>                       | <code>java.lang.NumberFormatException</code>  |
| <code>java.io.FileNotFoundException</code>      | <code>java.lang.RuntimeException</code>       |
| <code>java.io.IOException</code>                | <code>java.lang.Throwable</code>              |
| <code>java.io.PrintWriter</code>                | <code>getMessage</code>                       |
| <code>close</code>                              | <code>printStackTrace</code>                  |
| <code>java.lang.Character</code>                | <code>java.net.URL</code>                     |
| <code>isDigit</code>                            | <code>openStream</code>                       |
| <code>isLetter</code>                           | <code>java.util.InputMismatchException</code> |
| <code>isLowerCase</code>                        | <code>java.util.NoSuchElementException</code> |
| <code>isUpperCase</code>                        | <code>java.util.Scanner</code>                |
| <code>isWhiteSpace</code>                       | <code>close</code>                            |
| <code>java.lang.Double</code>                   | <code>hasNextLine</code>                      |
| <code>parseDouble</code>                        | <code>nextLine</code>                         |
| <code>java.lang.Error</code>                    | <code>useDelimiter</code>                     |
| <code>java.lang.Integer</code>                  | <code>javax.swing.JFileChooser</code>         |
| <code>parseInt</code>                           | <code>getSelectedFile</code>                  |
| <code>java.lang.IllegalArgumentException</code> | <code>showOpenDialog</code>                   |
| <code>java.lang.NullPointerException</code>     | <code>showSaveDialog</code>                   |

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

**■■ R11.1** What happens if you try to open a file for reading that doesn't exist? What happens if you try to open a file for writing that doesn't exist?

**■■ R11.2** What happens if you try to open a file for writing, but the file or device is write-protected (sometimes called read-only)? Try it out with a short test program.

**■ R11.3** How do you open a file whose name contains a backslash, like `c:\temp\output.dat`?

**■ R11.4** If a program `Woozle` is started with the command

```
java Woozle -Dname=piglet -I\eyore -v heff.txt a.txt lump.txt
```

what are the values of `args[0]`, `args[1]`, and so on?

**■■ R11.5** What is the difference between throwing an exception and catching an exception?

**■■ R11.6** What is a checked exception? What is an unchecked exception? Give an example for each. Which exceptions do you need to declare with the `throws` reserved word?

**■■ R11.7** Why don't you need to declare that your method might throw an `IndexOutOfBoundsException`?

**■■ R11.8** When your program executes a `throw` statement, which statement is executed next?

**■■ R11.9** What happens if an exception does not have a matching `catch` clause?

**■■ R11.10** What can your program do with the exception object that a `catch` clause receives?

**■■ R11.11** Is the type of the exception object always the same as the type declared in the `catch` clause that catches it? If not, why not?

**■ R11.12** What is the purpose of the `finally` clause? Give an example of how it can be used.

**■■ R11.13** What happens when an exception is thrown, the code of a `finally` clause executes, and that code throws an exception of a different kind than the original one? Which one is caught by a surrounding `catch` clause? Write a sample program to try it out.

**■■ R11.14** Which exceptions can the `next` and `nextInt` methods of the `Scanner` class throw? Are they checked exceptions or unchecked exceptions?

**■■ R11.15** Suppose the program in Section 11.5 reads a file containing the following values:

```
1
2
3
4
```

What is the outcome? How could the program be improved to give a more accurate error report?

**■■ R11.16** Can the `readFile` method in Section 11.5 throw a `NullPointerException`? If so, how?

**■■ R11.17** Suppose the code in Programming Tip 11.3 had been condensed to a single `try/catch/finally` statement:

```
PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(filename);
try
{
    Write output.
}
```

```

}
catch (IOException exception)
{
    Handle exception.
}
finally
{
    out.close();
}

```

What is the disadvantage of this version? (*Hint:* What happens when the `PrintWriter` constructor throws an exception?) Why can't you solve the problem by moving the declaration of the `out` variable inside the `try` block?

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E11.1** Write a program that carries out the following tasks:

**Open a file with the name `hello.txt`.**  
**Store the message "Hello, World!" in the file.**  
**Close the file.**  
**Open the same file again.**  
**Read the message into a string variable and print it.**

- **E11.2** Write a program that reads a file containing text. Read each line and send it to the output file, preceded by *line numbers*. If the input file is

Mary had a little lamb  
Whose fleece was white as snow.  
And everywhere that Mary went,  
The lamb was sure to go!

then the program produces the output file

```
/* 1 */ Mary had a little lamb
/* 2 */ Whose fleece was white as snow.
/* 3 */ And everywhere that Mary went,
/* 4 */ The lamb was sure to go!
```



The line numbers are enclosed in `/* */` delimiters so that the program can be used for numbering Java source files.

Prompt the user for the input and output file names.

- **E11.3** Repeat Exercise E11.2, but allow the user to specify the file name on the command-line. If the user doesn't specify any file name, then prompt the user for the name.
- **E11.4** Write a program that reads a file containing two columns of floating-point numbers. Prompt the user for the file name. Print the average of each column.
- ■ **E11.5** Write a program that asks the user for a file name and prints the number of characters, words, and lines in that file.
- ■ **E11.6** Write a program `Find` that searches all files specified on the command line and prints out all lines containing a specified word. For example, if you call

```
java Find ring report.txt address.txt Homework.java
```

then the program might print

```
report.txt: has broken up an international ring of DVD bootleggers that
address.txt: Kris Kringle, North Pole
address.txt: Homer Simpson, Springfield
Homework.java: String filename;
```

The specified word is always the first command line argument.

- E11.7** Write a program that checks the spelling of all words in a file. It should read each word of a file and check whether it is contained in a word list. A word list is available on most Linux systems in the file /usr/share/dict/words. (If you don't have access to a Linux system, your instructor should be able to get you a copy.) The program should print out all words that it cannot find in the word list.
- E11.8** Write a program that replaces each line of a file with its reverse. For example, if you run

```
java Reverse HelloPrinter.java
```

then the contents of HelloPrinter.java are changed to

```
retnirPolleH ssalc cilbup
{
)sgra ][gnirtS(niam diov citats cilbup
{
wodniw elosnoc eht ni gniteerg a yalpsiD //
;"!dlrow ,olleH"(nltnirp.tuo.metsyS
}
}
```

Of course, if you run Reverse twice on the same file, you get back the original file.

- E11.9** Write a program that reads each line in a file, reverses its lines, and writes them to another file. For example, if the file input.txt contains the lines

```
Mary had a little lamb
Its fleece was white as snow
And everywhere that Mary went
The lamb was sure to go.
```

and you run

```
reverse input.txt output.txt
```

then output.txt contains

```
The lamb was sure to go.
And everywhere that Mary went
Its fleece was white as snow
Mary had a little lamb
```

- E11.10** Get the data for names in prior decades from the Social Security Administration. Paste the table data in files named babynames80s.txt, etc. Modify the worked\_example\_1/BabyNames.java program so that it prompts the user for a file name. The numbers in the files have comma separators, so modify the program to handle them. Can you spot a trend in the frequencies?
- E11.11** Write a program that asks the user to input a set of floating-point values. When the user enters a value that is not a number, give the user a second chance to enter the value. After two chances, quit reading input. Add all correctly specified values and print the sum when the user is done entering data. Use exception handling to detect improper inputs.

- **E11.12** Modify the `BankAccount` class to throw an `IllegalArgumentException` when the account is constructed with a negative balance, when a negative amount is deposited, or when an amount that is not between 0 and the current balance is withdrawn. Write a test program that causes all three exceptions to occur and that catches them all.
- **E11.13** Repeat Exercise E11.12, but throw exceptions of three exception types that you provide.
- **E11.14** Modify the `DataSetReader` class so that you do not call `hasNextInt` or `hasNextDouble`. Simply have `nextInt` and `nextDouble` throw a `NoSuchElementException` and catch it in the `main` method.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- **P11.1** Write a program that reads in `worked_example_1/babynames.txt` and produces two files, `boynames.txt` and `girlnames.txt`, separating the data for the boys and girls.
- **P11.2** Write a program that reads a file in the same format as `worked_example_1/babynames.txt` and prints all names that are both boy and girl names (such as Alexis or Morgan).
- **P11.3** Using the mechanism described in Special Topic 11.1, write a program that reads all data from a web page and writes them to a file. Prompt the user for the web page URL and the file.
- **P11.4** Using the mechanism described in Special Topic 11.1, write a program that reads all data from a web page and prints all hyperlinks of the form

`<a href="link">link text</a>`

Extra credit if your program can follow the links that it finds and find links in those web pages as well. (This is the method that search engines such as Google use to find web sites.)

- **P11.5** Write a program that reads in a set of coin descriptions from a file. The input file has the format

```
coinName1 coinValue1
coinName2 coinValue2
```

...

Add a method

```
void read(Scanner in) throws FileNotFoundException
```

to the `Coin` class of Section 8.2. Throw an exception if the current line is not properly formatted. Then implement a method

```
static ArrayList<Coin> readFile(String filename) throws FileNotFoundException
```

In the `main` method, call `readFile`. If an exception is thrown, give the user a chance to select another file. If you read all coins successfully, print the total value.

- **P11.6** Design a class `Bank` that contains a number of bank accounts. Each account has an account number and a current balance. Add an `accountNumber` field to the `BankAccount` class. Store the bank accounts in an array list. Write a `readFile` method of the `Bank` class for reading a file with the format

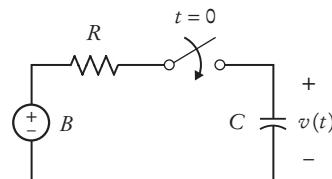
```
accountNumber1 balance1
accountNumber2 balance2
```

...

Implement read methods for the Bank and BankAccount classes. Write a sample program to read in a file with bank accounts, then print the account with the highest balance. If the file is not properly formatted, give the user a chance to select another file.

- Business P11.7** A hotel salesperson enters sales in a text file. Each line contains the following, separated by semicolons: The name of the client, the service sold (such as Dinner, Conference, Lodging, and so on), the amount of the sale, and the date of that event. Write a program that reads such a file and displays the total amount for each service category. Display an error if the file does not exist or the format is incorrect.
- Business P11.8** Write a program that reads a text file as described in Exercise P11.7, and that writes a separate file for each service category, containing the entries for that category. Name the output files Dinner.txt, Conference.txt, and so on.
- Business P11.9** A store owner keeps a record of daily cash transactions in a text file. Each line contains three items: The invoice number, the cash amount, and the letter P if the amount was paid or R if it was received. Items are separated by spaces. Write a program that prompts the store owner for the amount of cash at the beginning and end of the day, and the name of the file. Your program should check whether the actual amount of cash at the end of the day equals the expected value.
- Science P11.10** After the switch in the figure below closes, the voltage (in volts) across the capacitor is represented by the equation

$$v(t) = B \left(1 - e^{-t/(RC)}\right)$$



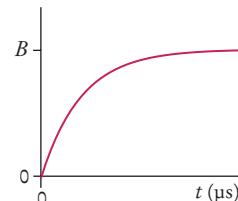
Suppose the parameters of the electric circuit are  $B = 12$  volts,  $R = 500 \Omega$ , and  $C = 0.25 \mu F$ . Consequently

$$v(t) = 12 \left(1 - e^{-0.008t}\right)$$

where  $t$  has units of  $\mu s$ . Read a file params.txt containing the values for  $B$ ,  $R$ ,  $C$ , and the starting and ending values for  $t$ . Write a file rc.txt of values for the time  $t$  and the corresponding capacitor voltage  $v(t)$ , where  $t$  goes from the given starting value to the given ending value in 100 steps. In our example, if  $t$  goes from 0 to 1,000  $\mu s$ , the twelfth entry in the output file would be:

110 7.02261

- Science P11.11** The figure at right shows a plot of the capacitor voltage from the circuit shown in Exercise P11.10. The capacitor voltage increases from 0 volts to  $B$  volts. The “rise time” is defined as the time required for the capacitor voltage to change from  $v_1 = 0.05 \times B$  to  $v_2 = 0.95 \times B$ .



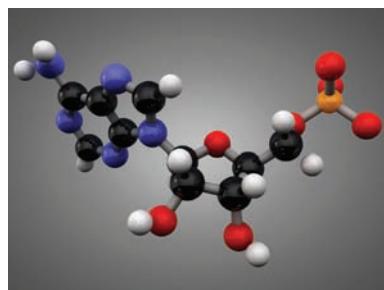
The file `rc.txt` contains a list of values of time  $t$  and the corresponding capacitor voltage  $v(t)$ . A time in  $\mu\text{s}$  and the corresponding voltage in volts are printed on the same line. For example, the line

110 7.02261

indicates that the capacitor voltage is 7.02261 volts when the time is 110  $\mu\text{s}$ . The time is increasing in the data file.

Write a program that reads the file `rc.txt` and uses the data to calculate the rise time. Approximate  $B$  by the voltage in the last line of the file, and find the data points that are closest to  $0.05 \times B$  and  $0.95 \times B$ .

- Science P11.12** Suppose a file contains bond energies and bond lengths for covalent bonds in the following format:



| Single, double,<br>or triple bond | Bond energy<br>(kJ/mol) | Bond length<br>(nm) |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| C C                               | 370                     | 0.154               |
| C  C                              | 680                     | 0.13                |
| C   C                             | 890                     | 0.12                |
| C H                               | 435                     | 0.11                |
| C N                               | 305                     | 0.15                |
| C O                               | 360                     | 0.14                |
| C F                               | 450                     | 0.14                |
| C Cl                              | 340                     | 0.18                |
| O H                               | 500                     | 0.10                |
| O O                               | 220                     | 0.15                |
| O Si                              | 375                     | 0.16                |
| N H                               | 430                     | 0.10                |
| N O                               | 250                     | 0.12                |
| F F                               | 160                     | 0.14                |
| H H                               | 435                     | 0.074               |

Write a program that accepts data from one column and returns the corresponding data from the other columns in the stored file. If input data matches different rows, then return all matching row data. For example, a bond length input of 0.12 should return triple bond C|||C and bond energy 890 kJ/mol and single bond N|O and bond energy 250 kJ/mol.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. When the `PrintWriter` object is created, the output file is emptied. Sadly, that is the same file as the input file. The input file is now empty and the `while` loop exits immediately.
2. The program throws a `FileNotFoundException` and terminates.
3. Open a scanner for the file.  
For each number in the scanner  
    Add the number to an array.  
Close the scanner.  
Set total to 0.  
Open a print writer for the file.  
For each number in the array  
    Write the number to the print writer.  
    Add the number to total.  
Write total to the print writer.  
Close the print writer.
4. Add a variable count that is incremented whenever a number is read. At the end, print the average, not the total, as
 

```
out.printf("Average: %.2f\n", total / count);
```

 Because the string "Average" is three characters longer than "Total", change the other output to
 

```
out.printf("%18.2f\n", value);
```
5. Add a variable count that is incremented whenever a number is read. Only write a new line when it is even.
 

```
count++;
out.printf("%.2f", value);
if (count % 2 == 0) { out.println(); }
```

 At the end of the loop, write a new line if count is odd, then write the total:
 

```
if (count % 2 == 1) { out.println(); }
out.printf("Total: %10.2f\n", total);
```
6. word is "Hello," and input is "World!"
7. Because 995.0 is not an integer, the call `in.hasNextInt()` returns false, and the call `in.nextInt()` is skipped. The value of `number` stays 0, and `input` is set to the string "995.0".
8. `x1` is set to 6000000. Because a comma is not considered a part of a floating-point number in Java, the second call to `nextDouble` causes an input mismatch exception and `x2` is not set.

9. Read them as strings, and convert those strings to numbers that are not equal to N/A:

```
String input = in.next();
if (!input.equals("N/A"))
{
    double value = Double.parseDouble(input);
    process value.
}
```

10. Locate the last character of the country name:

```
int j = i - 1;
while (!Character.isWhiteSpace(line.charAt(j)))
{
    j--;
}
```

Then extract the country name:

```
String countryName = line.substring(0, j + 1);
```

11. `args[0]` is "-d" and `args[1]` is "file1.txt"

- 12.

| key | inFile    | outFile | i | arg       |
|-----|-----------|---------|---|-----------|
| 3   | null      | null    | 0 | -d        |
| -3  | file1.txt |         | X | file1.txt |
|     |           |         |   | Z         |
|     |           |         |   |           |

Then the program prints a message

Usage: java CaesarCipher [-d] infile outfile

13. The program will run correctly. The loop that parses the options does not depend on the positions in which the options appear.

14. FDHVDU

15. Add the lines

```
else if (option == 'k')
{
    key = Integer.parseInt(
        args[i].substring(2));
}
```

after line 27 and update the usage information.

16. It is still 100. The last statement was not executed because the exception was thrown.

17. if (amount < 0)

```
{
    throw new IllegalArgumentException(
        "Negative amount");
}
```

18. The Scanner constructor succeeds because the file exists. The `nextInt` method throws a `NoSuchElementException`. This is *not* an

- IOException. Therefore, the error is not caught. Because there is no other handler, an error message is printed and the program terminates.
- 19.** Because programmers should simply check that their array index values are valid instead of trying to handle an `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException`.
- 20.** No. You can catch both exception types in the same way, as you can see in the code example on page 536.
- 21.** There are two mistakes. The `PrintWriter` constructor can throw a `FileNotFoundException`. You should supply a `throws` clause. And if one of the array elements is `null`, a `NullPointerException` is thrown. In that case, the `out.close()` statement is never executed. You should use a `try/finally` statement.
- 22.** To pass the exception message string to the `IllegalArgumentException` superclass.
- 23.** Because file corruption is beyond the control of the programmer, this should be a checked exception, so it would be wrong to extend `RuntimeException` or `IllegalArgumentException`. Because the error is related to input, `IOException` would be a good choice.
- 24.** It would not be able to do much with them. The `DataSetReader` class is a reusable class that may be used for systems with different languages and different user interfaces. Thus, it cannot engage in a dialog with the program user.
- 25.** `DataAnalyzer.main` calls `DataSetReader.readFile`, which calls `readData`. The call `in.hasNextInt()` returns `false`, and `readData` throws a `BadDataException`. The `readFile` method doesn't catch it, so it propagates back to `main`, where it is caught.
- 26.** It could simply be
- ```
private void readValue(Scanner in, int i)
{
    data[i] = in.nextDouble();
}
```
- The `nextDouble` method throws a `NoSuchElementException` or a `InputMismatchException` (which is a subclass of `NoSuchElementException`) when the next input isn't a floating-point number. That exception isn't a checked exception, so it need not be declared.
- 27.** If it had been declared inside the `try` block, its scope would only have extended until the end of the `try` block, and it would not have been accessible in the `finally` clause.
- 28.** The `try/finally` statement in the `readFile` method can be rewritten as
- ```
try (Scanner in = new Scanner(inFile))
{
    readData(in);
    return data;
}
```

# OBJECT-ORIENTED DESIGN

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To learn how to discover new classes and methods
- To use CRC cards for class discovery
- To identify inheritance, aggregation, and dependency relationships between classes
- To describe class relationships using UML class diagrams
- To apply object-oriented design techniques to building complex programs



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### 12.1 CLASSES AND THEIR RESPONSIBILITIES 560

### 12.2 RELATIONSHIPS BETWEEN CLASSES 563

*How To 12.1:* Using CRC Cards and UML Diagrams in Program Design 566

*Special Topic 12.1:* Attributes and Methods in UML Diagrams 567

*Special Topic 12.2:* Multiplicities 568

*Special Topic 12.3:* Aggregation, Association, and Composition 568

### 12.3 APPLICATION: PRINTING AN INVOICE 569

*Computing & Society 12.1:* Databases and Privacy 580

*Worked Example 12.1:* Simulating an Automatic Teller Machine



Successfully implementing a software system—as simple as your next homework project or as complex as the next air traffic monitoring system—requires a great deal of planning and design. In fact, for larger projects, the amount of time spent on planning and design is much greater than the amount of time spent on programming and testing.

Do you find that most of your homework time is spent in front of the computer, keying in code and fixing bugs? If so, you can probably save time by focusing on a better design before you start coding. This chapter tells you how to approach the design of an object-oriented program in a systematic manner.

## 12.1 Classes and Their Responsibilities

When you design a program, you work from a *requirements specification*, a description of what your program should do. The designer's task is to discover structures that make it possible to implement the requirements in a computer program. In the following sections, we will examine the steps of the design process.

### 12.1.1 Discovering Classes

To discover classes, look for nouns in the problem description.

When you solve a problem using objects and classes, you need to determine the classes required for the implementation. You may be able to reuse existing classes, or you may need to implement new ones.

One simple approach for discovering classes and methods is to look for the nouns and verbs in the requirements specification. Often, *nouns* correspond to classes, and *verbs* correspond to methods.

For example, suppose your job is to print an invoice such as the one in Figure 1.

| INVOICE  |     |         |         |  |
|--|-----|---------|---------|--|
| Sam's Small Appliances<br>100 Main Street<br>Anytown, CA 98765 |     |         |         |  |
| Item   | Qty | Price   | Total   |  |
| Toaster  | 3   | \$29.95 | \$89.85 |  |
| Hair Dryer   | 1   | \$24.95 | \$24.95 |  |
| Car Vacuum   | 2   | \$19.99 | \$39.98 |  |

**AMOUNT DUE: \$154.78**

**Figure 1**  
An Invoice

Concepts from the problem domain are good candidates for classes.

Obvious classes that come to mind are `Invoice`, `LineItem`, and `Customer`. It is a good idea to keep a list of *candidate classes* on a whiteboard or a sheet of paper. As you brainstorm, simply put all ideas for classes onto the list. You can always cross out the ones that weren't useful after all.

In general, concepts from the problem domain, be it science, business, or a game, often make good classes. Examples are

- `Cannonball`
- `CashRegister`
- `Monster`

The name for such a class should be a noun that describes the concept.

Not all classes can be discovered from the program requirements. Most complex programs need classes for tactical purposes, such as file or database access, user interfaces, control mechanisms, and so on.

Some of the classes that you need may already exist, either in the standard library or in a program that you developed previously. You also may be able to use inheritance to extend existing classes into classes that match your needs.

A common error is to overdo the class discovery process. For example, should an address be an object of an `Address` class, or should it simply be a string? There is no perfect answer—it depends on the task that you want to solve. If your software needs to analyze addresses (for example, to determine shipping costs), then an `Address` class is an appropriate design. However, if your software will never need such a capability, you should not waste time on an overly complex design. It is your job to find a balanced design; one that is neither too limiting nor excessively general.

### 12.1.2 The CRC Card Method

Once you have identified a set of classes, you define the behavior for each class. Find out what methods you need to provide for each class in order to solve the programming problem. A simple rule for finding these methods is to look for *verbs* in the task description, then match the verbs to the appropriate objects. For example, in the invoice program, a class needs to compute the amount due. Now you need to figure out *which class* is responsible for this method. Do customers compute what they owe? Do invoices total up the amount due? Do the items total themselves up? The best choice is to make “compute amount due” the responsibility of the `Invoice` class.

*In a class scheduling system, potential classes from the problem domain include `Class`, `LectureHall`, `Instructor`, and `Student`.*



A CRC card describes a class, its responsibilities, and its collaborating classes.

An excellent way to carry out this task is the “**CRC card method**.” **CRC** stands for “classes”, “responsibilities”, “collaborators”, and in its simplest form, the method works as follows: Use an index card for each *class* (see Figure 2). As you think about verbs in the task description that indicate methods, you pick the card of the class that you think should be responsible, and write that *responsibility* on the card.

For each responsibility, you record which other classes are needed to fulfill it. Those classes are the **collaborators**.

For example, suppose you decide that an invoice should compute the amount due. Then you write “compute amount due” on the left-hand side of an index card with the title `Invoice`.

If a class can carry out that responsibility by itself, do nothing further. But if the class needs the help of other classes, write the names of these collaborators on the right-hand side of the card.

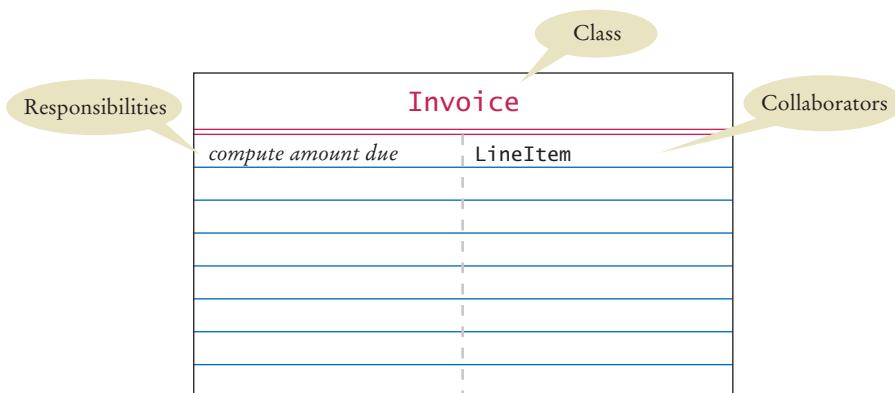
To compute the total, the invoice needs to ask each line item about its total price. Therefore, the `LineItem` class is a collaborator.

This is a good time to look up the index card for the `LineItem` class. Does it have a “get total price” method? If not, add one.

How do you know that you are on the right track? For each responsibility, ask yourself how it can actually be done, using the responsibilities written on the various cards. Many people find it helpful to group the cards on a table so that the collaborators are close to each other, and to simulate tasks by moving a token (such as a coin) from one card to the next to indicate which object is currently active.

Keep in mind that the responsibilities that you list on the CRC card are on a *high level*. Sometimes a single responsibility may need two or more Java methods for carrying it out. Some researchers say that a CRC card should have no more than three distinct responsibilities.

The CRC card method is informal on purpose, so that you can be creative and discover classes and their properties. Once you find that you have settled on a good set of classes, you will want to know how they are related to each other. Can you find classes with common properties, so that some responsibilities can be taken care of by a common superclass? Can you organize classes into clusters that are independent of each other? Finding class relationships and documenting them with diagrams is the topic of Section 12.2.



**Figure 2** A CRC Card



1. What is the rule of thumb for finding classes?
2. Your job is to write a program that plays chess. Might ChessBoard be an appropriate class? How about MovePiece?
3. Suppose the invoice is to be saved to a file. Name a likely collaborator.
4. Looking at the invoice in Figure 1, what is a likely responsibility of the Customer class?
5. What do you do if a CRC card has ten responsibilities?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R12.4, R12.8.

## 12.2 Relationships Between Classes

When designing a program, it is useful to document the relationships between classes. This helps you in a number of ways. For example, if you find classes with common behavior, you can save effort by placing the common behavior into a superclass. If you know that some classes are *not* related to each other, you can assign different programmers to implement each of them, without worrying that one of them has to wait for the other.

In the following sections, we will describe the most common types of relationships.

### 12.2.1 Dependency

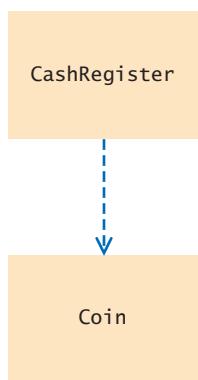
A class depends on another class if it uses objects of that class.

Many classes need other classes in order to do their jobs. For example, in Section 8.2.2, we described a design of a `CashRegister` class that depends on the `Coin` class to determine the value of the payment.

The dependency relationship is sometimes nicknamed the “knows about” relationship. The cash register in Section 8.2.2 knows that there are coin objects. In contrast, the `Coin` class does *not* depend on the `CashRegister` class. Coins have no idea that they are being collected in cash registers, and they can carry out their work without ever calling any method in the `CashRegister` class.

As you saw in Section 8.2, dependency is denoted by a dashed line with a ➤-shaped open arrow tip. The arrow tip points to the class on which the other class depends. Figure 3 shows a class diagram indicating that the `CashRegister` class depends on the `Coin` class.

If many classes of a program depend on each other, then we say that the **coupling** between classes is high. Conversely, if there are few dependencies between classes, then we say that the coupling is low (see Figure 4).

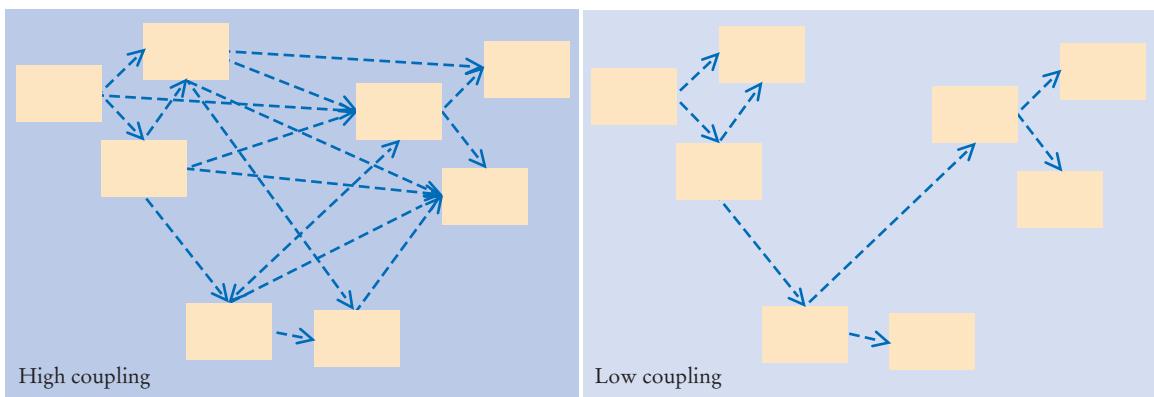


**Figure 3**

Dependency Relationship Between the `CashRegister` and `Coin` Classes



Too many dependencies make a system difficult to manage.

**Figure 4** High and Low Coupling Between Classes

It is a good practice to minimize the coupling (i.e., dependency) between classes.

A class aggregates another if its objects contain objects of the other class.

Why does coupling matter? If the `Coin` class changes in the next release of the program, all the classes that depend on it may be affected. If the change is drastic, the coupled classes must all be updated. Furthermore, if we would like to use a class in another program, we have to take with it all the classes on which it depends. Thus, we want to remove unnecessary coupling between classes.

## 12.2.2 Aggregation

Another fundamental relationship between classes is the “aggregation” relationship (which is informally known as the “has-a” relationship).

The **aggregation** relationship states that objects of one class contain objects of another class. Consider a quiz that is made up of questions. Because each quiz has one or more questions, we say that the class `Quiz` *aggregates* the class `Question`. In the UML notation, aggregation is denoted by a line with a diamond-shaped symbol attached to the aggregating class (see Figure 5).

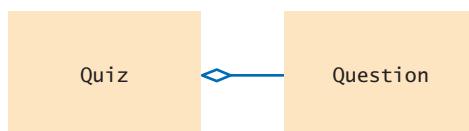
Finding out about aggregation is very helpful for deciding how to implement classes. For example, when you implement the `Quiz` class, you will want to store the questions of a quiz as an instance variable.

Because a quiz can have any number of questions, an array or array list is a good choice for collecting them:

```
public class Quiz
{
    private ArrayList<Question> questions;
    ...
}
```

Aggregation is a stronger form of dependency. If a class has objects of another class, it certainly knows about the other class. However, the converse is not true. For example, a class may use the `Scanner` class without ever declaring an instance variable of

**Figure 5**  
Class Diagram  
Showing Aggregation



A car has a motor and tires.  
In object-oriented design,  
this “has-a” relationship  
is called aggregation.



class Scanner. The class may simply construct a local variable of type Scanner, or its methods may receive Scanner objects as arguments. This use is not aggregation because the objects of the class don’t contain Scanner objects—they just create or receive them for the duration of a single method.

Generally, you need aggregation when an object needs to remember another object *between method calls*.

### 12.2.3 Inheritance

Inheritance is a relationship between a more general class (the superclass) and a more specialized class (the subclass). This relationship is often described as the “is-a” relationship. Every truck *is a* vehicle. Every savings account *is a* bank account.

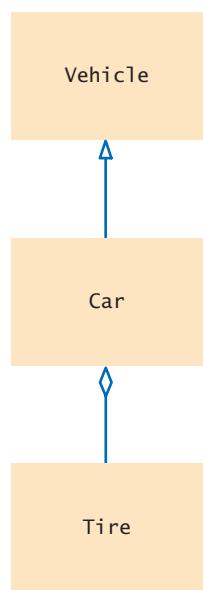
Inheritance is sometimes abused. For example, consider a Tire class that describes a car tire. Should the class Tire be a subclass of a class Circle? It sounds convenient. There are quite a few useful methods in the Circle class—for example, the Tire class may inherit methods that compute the radius, perimeter, and center point, which should come in handy when drawing tire shapes. Though it may be convenient for the programmer, this arrangement makes no sense conceptually. It isn’t true that every tire is a circle. Tires are car parts, whereas circles are geometric objects. There is a relationship between tires and circles, though. A tire *has a* circle as its boundary. Use aggregation:

```
public class Tire
{
    private String rating;
    private Circle boundary;
    ...
}
```

Aggregation (the *has-a* relationship) denotes that objects of one class contain references to objects of another class.

Here is another example: Every car *is a* vehicle. Every car *has a* tire (in fact, it typically has four or, if you count the spare, five). Thus, you would use inheritance from Vehicle and use aggregation of Tire objects (see Figure 6 for the UML diagram):

```
public class Car extends Vehicle
{
    private Tire[] tires;
    ...
}
```



**Figure 6**  
UML Notation for Inheritance and Aggregation

You need to be able to distinguish the UML notation for inheritance, interface implementation, aggregation, and dependency.

The arrows in the UML notation can get confusing. Table 1 shows a summary of the four UML relationship symbols that we use in this book.

**Table 1** UML Relationship Symbols

| Relationship             | Symbol  | Line Style | Arrow Tip |
|--------------------------|---------|------------|-----------|
| Inheritance              | —→      | Solid      | Triangle  |
| Interface Implementation | - - - → | Dotted     | Triangle  |
| Aggregation              | ◊ —→    | Solid      | Diamond   |
| Dependency               | - - - → | Dotted     | Open      |



### SELF CHECK

6. Consider the `CashRegisterTester` class of Section 8.2. On which classes does it depend?
7. Consider the `Question` and `ChoiceQuestion` objects of Chapter 9. How are they related?
8. Consider the `Quiz` class described in Section 12.2.2. Suppose a quiz contains a mixture of `Question` and `ChoiceQuestion` objects. Which classes does the `Quiz` class depend on?
9. Why should coupling be minimized between classes?
10. In an e-mail system, messages are stored in a mailbox. Draw a UML diagram that shows the appropriate aggregation relationship.
11. You are implementing a system to manage a library, keeping track of which books are checked out by whom. Should the `Book` class aggregate `Patron` or the other way around?
12. In a library management system, what would be the relationship between classes `Patron` and `Author`?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R12.5, R12.6, R12.10.

### HOW TO 12.1



### Using CRC Cards and UML Diagrams in Program Design

Before writing code for a complex problem, you need to design a solution. The methodology introduced in this chapter suggests that you follow a design process that is composed of the following tasks:

- Discover classes.
- Determine the responsibilities of each class.
- Describe the relationships between the classes.

CRC cards and UML diagrams help you discover and record this information.

#### Step 1 Discover classes.

Highlight the nouns in the problem description. Make a list of the nouns. Cross out those that don't seem to be reasonable candidates for classes.

**Step 2** Discover responsibilities.

Make a list of the major tasks that your system needs to fulfill. From those tasks, pick one that is not trivial and that is intuitive to you. Find a class that is responsible for carrying out that task. Make an index card and write the name and the task on it. Now ask yourself how an object of the class can carry out the task. It probably needs help from other objects. Then make CRC cards for the classes to which those objects belong and write the responsibilities on them.

Don't be afraid to cross out, move, split, or merge responsibilities. Rip up cards if they become too messy. This is an informal process.

You are done when you have walked through all major tasks and are satisfied that they can all be solved with the classes and responsibilities that you discovered.

**Step 3** Describe relationships.

Make a class diagram that shows the relationships between all the classes that you discovered.

Start with inheritance—the *is-a* relationship between classes. Is any class a specialization of another? If so, draw inheritance arrows. Keep in mind that many designs, especially for simple programs, don't use inheritance extensively.

The “collaborators” column of the CRC card tells you which classes are used by that class. Draw dependency arrows for the collaborators on the CRC cards.

Some dependency relationships give rise to aggregations. For each of the dependency relationships, ask yourself: How does the object locate its collaborator? Does it navigate to it directly because it stores a reference? In that case, draw an aggregation arrow. Or is the collaborator a method parameter variable or return value? Then simply draw a dependency arrow.

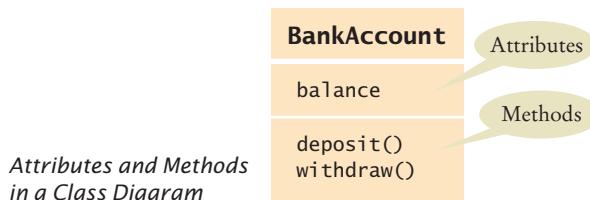
## Special Topic 12.1

**Attributes and Methods in UML Diagrams**

Sometimes it is useful to indicate class *attributes* and *methods* in a class diagram. An **attribute** is an externally observable property that objects of a class have. For example, *name* and *price* would be attributes of the *Product* class. Usually, attributes correspond to instance variables. But they don't have to—a class may have a different way of organizing its data. For example, a *GregorianCalendar* object from the Java library has attributes *day*, *month*, and *year*, and it would be appropriate to draw a UML diagram that shows these attributes. However, the class doesn't actually have instance variables that store these quantities. Instead, it internally represents all dates by counting the milliseconds from January 1, 1970—an implementation detail that a class user certainly doesn't need to know about.

You can indicate attributes and methods in a class diagram by dividing a class rectangle into three compartments, with the class name in the top, attributes in the middle, and methods in the bottom (see the figure below). You need not list *all* attributes and methods in a particular diagram. Just list the ones that are helpful for understanding whatever point you are making with a particular diagram.

Also, don't list as an attribute what you also draw as an aggregation. If you denote by aggregation the fact that a *Car* has *Tire* objects, don't add an attribute *tires*.



## Special Topic 12.2

**Multiplicities**

Some designers like to write *multiplicities* at the end(s) of an aggregation relationship to denote how many objects are aggregated. The notations for the most common multiplicities are:

- any number (zero or more): \*
- one or more: 1..\*
- zero or one: 0..1
- exactly one: 1

The figure below shows that a customer has one or more bank accounts.



*An Aggregation Relationship with Multiplicities*

## Special Topic 12.3

**Aggregation, Association, and Composition**

Some designers find the aggregation or *has-a* terminology unsatisfactory. For example, consider customers of a bank. Does the bank “have” customers? Do the customers “have” bank accounts, or does the bank “have” them? Which of these “has” relationships should be modeled by aggregation? This line of thinking can lead us to premature implementation decisions.

Early in the design phase, it makes sense to use a more general relationship between classes called **association**. A class is associated with another if you can *navigate* from objects of one class to objects of the other class. For example, given a `Bank` object, you can navigate to `Customer` objects, perhaps by accessing an instance variable, or by making a database lookup.

The UML notation for an association relationship is a solid line, with optional arrows that show in which directions you can navigate the relationship. You can also add words to the line ends to further explain the nature of the relationship. The figure below shows that you can navigate from `Bank` objects to `Customer` objects, but you cannot navigate the other way around. That is, in this particular design, the `Customer` class has no mechanism to determine in which banks it keeps its money.



*An Association Relationship*

The UML standard also recognizes a stronger form of the aggregation relationship called **composition**, where the aggregated objects do not have an existence independent of the containing object. For example, composition models the relationship between a bank and its accounts. If a bank closes, the account objects cease to exist as well. In the UML notation, composition looks like aggregation with a filled-in diamond.



*A Composition Relationship*

Frankly, the differences between aggregation, association, and composition can be confusing, even to experienced designers. If you find the distinction helpful, by all means use the relationship that you find most appropriate. But don't spend time pondering subtle differences between these concepts. From the practical point of view of a Java programmer, it is useful to know when objects of one class have references to objects of another class. The aggregation or *has-a* relationship accurately describes this phenomenon.

## 12.3 Application: Printing an Invoice

In this book, we discuss a five-part program development process that is particularly well suited for beginning programmers:

1. Gather requirements.
2. Use CRC cards to find classes, responsibilities, and collaborators.
3. Use UML diagrams to record class relationships.
4. Use javadoc to document method behavior.
5. Implement your program.

There isn't a lot of notation to learn. The class diagrams are simple to draw. The deliverables of the design phase are obviously useful for the implementation phase—you simply take the source files and start adding the method code. Of course, as your projects get more complex, you will want to learn more about formal design methods. There are many techniques to describe object scenarios, call sequencing, the large-scale structure of programs, and so on, that are very beneficial even for relatively simple projects. *The Unified Modeling Language User Guide* gives a good overview of these techniques.

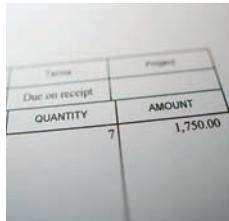
In this section, we will walk through the object-oriented design technique with a very simple example. In this case, the methodology may feel overblown, but it is a good introduction to the mechanics of each step. You will then be better prepared for the more complex programs that you will encounter in the future.

### 12.3.1 Requirements

Start the development process by gathering and documenting program requirements.

Before you begin designing a solution, you should gather all requirements for your program in plain English. Write down what your program should do. It is helpful to include typical scenarios in addition to a general description.

The task of our sample program is to print out an invoice. An invoice describes the charges for a set of products in certain quantities. (We omit complexities such as dates, taxes, and invoice and customer numbers.) The program simply prints the billing address, all line items, and the amount due. Each line item contains the description and unit price of a product, the quantity ordered, and the total price.



An invoice lists the charges for each item and the amount due.

## I N V O I C E

Sam's Small Appliances  
100 Main Street  
Anytown, CA 98765

| Description                 | Price | Qty | Total |
|-----------------------------|-------|-----|-------|
| Toaster                     | 29.95 | 3   | 89.85 |
| Hair dryer                  | 24.95 | 1   | 24.95 |
| Car vacuum                  | 19.99 | 2   | 39.98 |
| <b>AMOUNT DUE: \$154.78</b> |       |     |       |

Also, in the interest of simplicity, we do not provide a user interface. We just supply a test program that adds line items to the invoice and then prints it.

### 12.3.2 CRC Cards

Use CRC cards to find classes, responsibilities, and collaborators.

When designing an object-oriented program, you need to discover classes. Classes correspond to nouns in the requirements specification. In this problem, it is pretty obvious what the nouns are:

| Invoice     | Address | LineItem | Product |
|-------------|---------|----------|---------|
| Description | Price   | Quantity | Total   |

(Of course, Toaster doesn't count—it is the description of a LineItem object and therefore a data value, not the name of a class.)

Description and price are attributes of the Product class. What about the quantity? The quantity is not an attribute of a Product. Just as in the printed invoice, let's have a class LineItem that records the product and the quantity (such as "3 toasters").

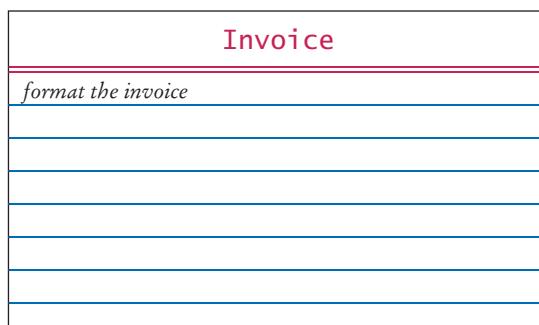
The total and amount due are computed—not stored anywhere. Thus, they don't lead to classes.

After this process of elimination, we are left with four candidates for classes:

|         |         |          |         |
|---------|---------|----------|---------|
| Invoice | Address | LineItem | Product |
|---------|---------|----------|---------|

Each of them represents a useful concept, so let's make them all into classes.

The purpose of the program is to print an invoice. However, the Invoice class won't necessarily know whether to display the output in `System.out`, in a text area, or in a file. Therefore, let's relax the task slightly and make the invoice responsible for *formatting* the invoice. The result is a string (containing multiple lines) that can be printed out or displayed. Record that responsibility on a CRC card:

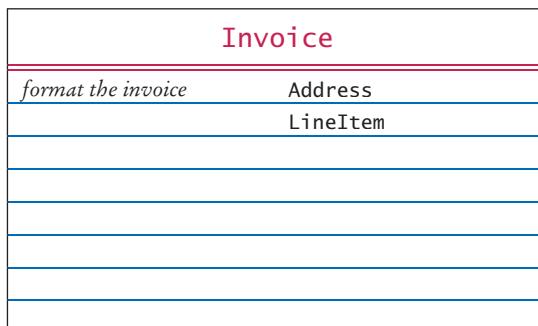


How does an invoice format itself? It must format the billing address, format all line items, and then add the amount due. How can the invoice format an address? It can't—that really is the responsibility of the `Address` class. This leads to a second CRC card:



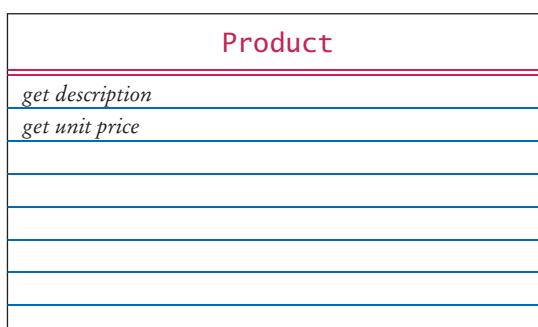
Similarly, formatting of a line item is the responsibility of the `LineItem` class.

The `format` method of the `Invoice` class calls the `format` methods of the `Address` and `LineItem` classes. Whenever a method uses another class, you list that other class as a collaborator. In other words, `Address` and `LineItem` are collaborators of `Invoice`:



When formatting the invoice, the invoice also needs to compute the total amount due. To obtain that amount, it must ask each line item about the total price of the item.

How does a line item obtain that total? It must ask the product for the unit price, and then multiply it by the quantity. That is, the `Product` class must reveal the unit price, and it is a collaborator of the `LineItem` class.



| LineItem               |         |
|------------------------|---------|
| <i>format the item</i> | Product |
| <i>get total price</i> |         |
|                        |         |
|                        |         |
|                        |         |
|                        |         |
|                        |         |

Finally, the invoice must be populated with products and quantities, so that it makes sense to format the result. That too is a responsibility of the `Invoice` class.

| Invoice                           |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| <i>format the invoice</i>         | Address  |
| <i>add a product and quantity</i> | LineItem |
|                                   | Product  |
|                                   |          |
|                                   |          |
|                                   |          |
|                                   |          |

We now have a set of CRC cards that completes the CRC card process.

### 12.3.3 UML Diagrams

Use UML diagrams to record class relationships.

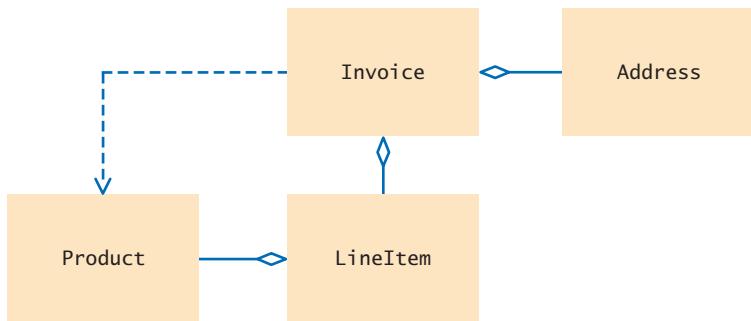
After you have discovered classes and their relationships with CRC cards, you should record your findings in a UML diagram. The dependency relationships come from the collaboration column on the CRC cards. Each class depends on the classes with which it collaborates. In our example, the `Invoice` class collaborates with the `Address`, `LineItem`, and `Product` classes. The `LineItem` class collaborates with the `Product` class.

Now ask yourself which of these dependencies are actually aggregations. How does an invoice know about the address, line item, and product objects with which it collaborates? An invoice object must hold references to the address and the line items when it formats the invoice. But an invoice object need not hold a reference to a product object when adding a product. The product is turned into a line item, and then it is the item's responsibility to hold a reference to it.

Therefore, the `Invoice` class aggregates the `Address` and `LineItem` classes. The `LineItem` class aggregates the `Product` class. However, there is no *has-a* relationship between an invoice and a product. An invoice doesn't store products directly—they are stored in the `LineItem` objects.

There is no inheritance in this example.

Figure 7 shows the class relationships that we discovered.



**Figure 7** The Relationships Between the Invoice Classes

### 12.3.4 Method Documentation

Use javadoc comments (with the method bodies left blank) to record the behavior of classes.

The final step of the design phase is to write the documentation of the discovered classes and methods. Simply write a Java source file for each class, write the method comments for those methods that you have discovered, and leave the bodies of the methods blank.

```


/**
 * Describes an invoice for a set of purchased products.
 */
public class Invoice
{
    /**
     * Adds a charge for a product to this invoice.
     * @param aProduct the product that the customer ordered
     * @param quantity the quantity of the product
     */
    public void add(Product aProduct, int quantity)
    {

    }

    /**
     * Formats the invoice.
     * @return the formatted invoice
     */
    public String format()
    {
    }
}

/**
 * Describes a quantity of an article to purchase.
 */
public class LineItem
{
    /**
     * Computes the total cost of this line item.
     * @return the total price
     */
    public double getTotalPrice()
    {
    }
}


```

```

    }

    /**
     * Formats this item.
     * @return a formatted string of this item
    */
    public String format()
    {
    }
}

/**
 * Describes a product with a description and a price.
 */
public class Product
{
    /**
     * Gets the product description.
     * @return the description
    */
    public String getDescription()
    {
    }

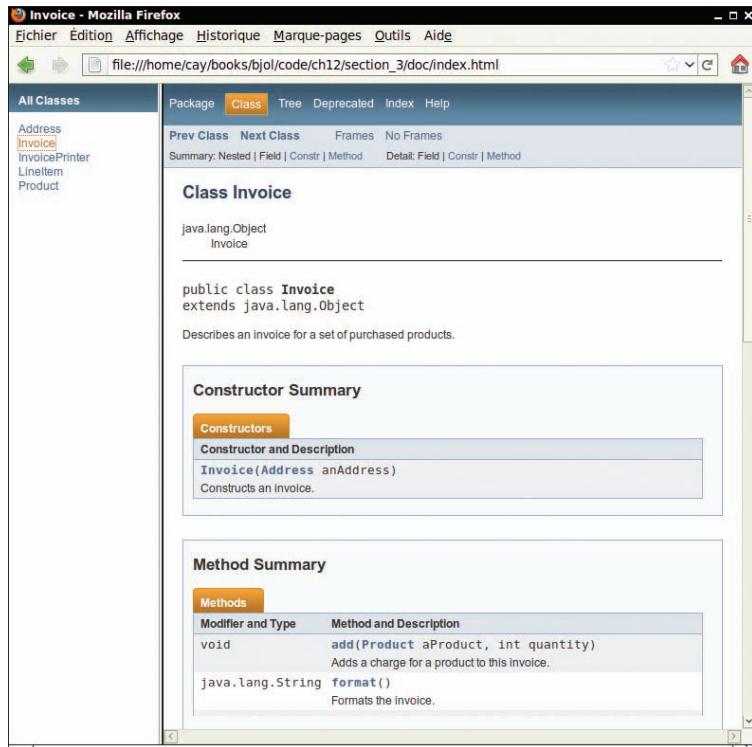
    /**
     * Gets the product price.
     * @return the unit price
    */
    public double getPrice()
    {
    }
}

/**
 * Describes a mailing address.
 */
public class Address
{
    /**
     * Formats the address.
     * @return the address as a string with three lines
    */
    public String format()
    {
    }
}

```

Then run the javadoc program to obtain a neatly formatted version of your documentation in HTML format (see Figure 8).

This approach for documenting your classes has a number of advantages. You can share the HTML documentation with others if you work in a team. You use a format that is immediately useful—Java source files that you can carry into the implementation phase. And, most importantly, you supply the comments for the key methods—a task that less prepared programmers leave for later, and often neglect for lack of time.



**Figure 8**  
Class Documentation  
in HTML Format

### 12.3.5 Implementation

After completing the design, implement your classes.

After you have completed the object-oriented design, you are ready to implement the classes.

You already have the method parameter variables and comments from the previous step. Now look at the UML diagram to add instance variables. Aggregated classes yield instance variables. Start with the `Invoice` class. An invoice aggregates `Address` and `LineItem`. Every invoice has one billing address, but it can have many line items. To store multiple `LineItem` objects, you can use an array list. Now you have the instance variables of the `Invoice` class:

```
public class Invoice
{
    private Address billingAddress;
    private ArrayList<LineItem> items;
    ...
}
```

A line item needs to store a `Product` object and the product quantity. That leads to the following instance variables:

```
public class LineItem
{
    private int quantity;
    private Product theProduct;
    ...
}
```

The methods themselves are now easy to implement. Here is a typical example. You already know what the `getTotalPrice` method of the `LineItem` class needs to do—get the unit price of the product and multiply it with the quantity.

```
/*
    Computes the total cost of this line item.
    @return the total price
*/
public double getTotalPrice()
{
    return theProduct.getPrice() * quantity;
}
```

We will not discuss the other methods in detail—they are equally straightforward.

Finally, you need to supply constructors, another routine task.

The entire program is shown below. It is a good practice to go through it in detail and match up the classes and methods to the CRC cards and UML diagram.

Worked Example 12.1 (at [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples)) demonstrates the design process with a more challenging problem, a simulated automatic teller machine. You should download and study that example as well.

In this chapter, you learned a systematic approach for building a relatively complex program. However, object-oriented design is definitely not a spectator sport. To really learn how to design and implement programs, you have to gain experience by repeating this process with your own projects. It is quite possible that you don't immediately home in on a good solution and that you need to go back and reorganize your classes and responsibilities. That is normal and only to be expected. The purpose of the object-oriented design process is to spot these problems in the design phase, when they are still easy to rectify, instead of in the implementation phase, when massive reorganization is more difficult and time consuming.

### section\_3/InvoicePrinter.java

```
1 /**
2     This program demonstrates the invoice classes by
3     printing a sample invoice.
4 */
5 public class InvoicePrinter
6 {
7     public static void main(String[] args)
8     {
9         Address samsAddress
10        = new Address("Sam's Small Appliances",
11                      "100 Main Street", "Anytown", "CA", "98765");
12
13        Invoice samsInvoice = new Invoice(samsAddress);
14        samsInvoice.add(new Product("Toaster", 29.95), 3);
15        samsInvoice.add(new Product("Hair dryer", 24.95), 1);
16        samsInvoice.add(new Product("Car vacuum", 19.99), 2);
17
18        System.out.println(samsInvoice.format());
19    }
20}
```

### section\_3/Invoice.java

```
1 import java.util.ArrayList;
2
```

```
3  /**
4   * Describes an invoice for a set of purchased products.
5  */
6  public class Invoice
7  {
8      private Address billingAddress;
9      private ArrayList<LineItem> items;
10
11     /**
12      Constructs an invoice.
13      @param anAddress the billing address
14     */
15     public Invoice(Address anAddress)
16     {
17         items = new ArrayList<LineItem>();
18         billingAddress = anAddress;
19     }
20
21     /**
22      Adds a charge for a product to this invoice.
23      @param aProduct the product that the customer ordered
24      @param quantity the quantity of the product
25     */
26     public void add(Product aProduct, int quantity)
27     {
28         LineItem anItem = new LineItem(aProduct, quantity);
29         items.add(anItem);
30     }
31
32     /**
33      Formats the invoice.
34      @return the formatted invoice
35     */
36     public String format()
37     {
38         String r = "I N V O I C E\n"
39                     + billingAddress.format()
40                     + String.format("\n%-30s%8s%5s%8s\n",
41                         "Description", "Price", "Qty", "Total");
42
43         for (LineItem item : items)
44         {
45             r = r + item.format() + "\n";
46         }
47
48         r = r + String.format("\nAMOUNT DUE: $%.2f", getAmountDue());
49
50         return r;
51     }
52
53     /**
54      Computes the total amount due.
55      @return the amount due
56     */
57     private double getAmountDue()
58     {
59         double amountDue = 0;
60         for (LineItem item : items)
61         {
62             amountDue = amountDue + item.getTotalPrice();
```

```

63     }
64     return amountDue;
65   }
66 }
```

**section\_3/LineItem.java**

```

1  /**
2   * Describes a quantity of an article to purchase.
3  */
4  public class LineItem
5  {
6    private int quantity;
7    private Product theProduct;
8
9    /**
10     * Constructs an item from the product and quantity.
11     * @param aProduct the product
12     * @param aQuantity the item quantity
13    */
14    public LineItem(Product aProduct, int aQuantity)
15    {
16      theProduct = aProduct;
17      quantity = aQuantity;
18    }
19
20   /**
21    * Computes the total cost of this line item.
22    * @return the total price
23   */
24   public double getTotalPrice()
25   {
26     return theProduct.getPrice() * quantity;
27   }
28
29   /**
30    * Formats this item.
31    * @return a formatted string of this line item
32   */
33   public String format()
34   {
35     return String.format("%-30s%8.2f%5d%8.2f",
36       theProduct.getDescription(), theProduct.getPrice(),
37       quantity, getTotalPrice());
38   }
39 }
```

**section\_3/Product.java**

```

1  /**
2   * Describes a product with a description and a price.
3  */
4  public class Product
5  {
6    private String description;
7    private double price;
8
9    /**
10     * Constructs a product from a description and a price.
11     * @param aDescription the product description
12   }
```

```

12     @param aPrice the product price
13 */
14 public Product(String aDescription, double aPrice)
15 {
16     description = aDescription;
17     price = aPrice;
18 }
19
20 /**
21  * Gets the product description.
22  * @return the description
23 */
24 public String getDescription()
25 {
26     return description;
27 }
28
29 /**
30  * Gets the product price.
31  * @return the unit price
32 */
33 public double getPrice()
34 {
35     return price;
36 }
37 }
```

### section\_3/Address.java

```

1  /**
2   * Describes a mailing address.
3   */
4  public class Address
5  {
6      private String name;
7      private String street;
8      private String city;
9      private String state;
10     private String zip;
11
12 /**
13  * Constructs a mailing address.
14  * @param aName the recipient name
15  * @param aStreet the street
16  * @param aCity the city
17  * @param aState the two-letter state code
18  * @param aZip the ZIP postal code
19 */
20 public Address(String aName, String aStreet,
21                 String aCity, String aState, String aZip)
22 {
23     name = aName;
24     street = aStreet;
25     city = aCity;
26     state = aState;
27     zip = aZip;
28 }
29
30 /**
31  * Formats the address.
32 }
```

```

32     @return the address as a string with three lines
33     */
34     public String format()
35     {
36         return name + "\n" + street + "\n"
37         + city + ", " + state + " " + zip;
38     }
39 }
```

**SELF CHECK**

13. Which class is responsible for computing the amount due? What are its collaborators for this task?
14. Why do the format methods return `String` objects instead of directly printing to `System.out`?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R12.15, E12.4, E12.5.

**Computing & Society 12.1 Databases and Privacy**

Most companies use computers to keep huge databases of customer records and other business information. Databases not only lower the cost of doing business, they improve the quality of service that companies can offer. Nowadays it is almost unimaginable how time-consuming it used to be to withdraw money from a bank branch or to make travel reservations.

As these databases became ubiquitous, they started creating problems for citizens. Consider the “no fly list” maintained by the U.S. government, which lists names used by suspected terrorists. On March 1, 2007, Professor Walter Murphy, a constitutional scholar of Princeton University and a decorated former Marine, was denied a boarding pass. The airline employee asked him, “Have you been in any peace marches? We ban a lot of people from flying because of that.” As Murphy tells it, “I explained that I had not so marched but had, in September 2006, given a lecture at Princeton, televised and put on the Web, highly critical of George Bush for his many violations of the constitution. ‘That’ll do it,’ the man said.”

We do not actually know if Professor Murphy’s name was on the list because he was critical of the Bush administration or because some other potentially dangerous person had traveled under the same name. Travelers with similar misfortunes had serious diffi-

culties trying to get themselves off the list.

Problems such as these have become commonplace. Companies and the government routinely merge multiple databases, derive information about us that may be quite inaccurate, and then use that information to make decisions. An insurance company may deny coverage, or charge a higher premium, if it finds that you have too many relatives with a certain disease. You may be denied a job because of a credit or medical report. You do not usually know what information about you is stored or how it is used. In cases where the information can be checked—such as credit reports—it is often difficult to correct errors.

Another issue of concern is privacy. Most people do something, at one time or another in their lives, that they do not want everyone to know about. As judge Louis Brandeis wrote in 1928, “Privacy is the right to be alone—the most comprehensive of rights, and the right most valued by civilized man.” When employers can see your old Facebook posts, divorce lawyers have access to tollroad records, and Google mines your e-mails and searches to present you “targeted” advertising, you have little privacy left.

The 1948 “universal declaration of human rights” by the United Nations states, “No one shall be subjected to arbitrary interference with his privacy,

family, home or correspondence, nor to attacks upon his honour and reputation. Everyone has the right to the protection of the law against such interference or attacks.” The United States has surprisingly few legal protections against privacy invasion, apart from federal laws protecting student records and video rentals (the latter was passed after a Supreme Court nominee’s video rental records were published). Other industrialized countries have gone much further and recognize every citizen’s right to control what information about them should be communicated to others and under what circumstances.



*If you pay road or bridge tolls with an electronic pass, your records may not be private.*



## WORKED EXAMPLE 12.1

## Simulating an Automatic Teller Machine

Learn to apply the object-oriented design methodology to the simulation of an automatic teller machine that works with both a console-based and graphical user interface. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 12.1.



## CHAPTER SUMMARY

## Recognize how to discover classes and their responsibilities.



- To discover classes, look for nouns in the problem description.
- Concepts from the problem domain are good candidates for classes.
- A CRC card describes a class, its responsibilities, and its collaborating classes.

## Categorize class relationships and produce UML diagrams that describe them.



- A class depends on another class if it uses objects of that class.
- It is a good practice to minimize the coupling (i.e., dependency) between classes.
- A class aggregates another if its objects contain objects of the other class.
- Inheritance (the *is-a* relationship) is sometimes inappropriately used when the *has-a* relationship would be more appropriate.
- Aggregation (the *has-a* relationship) denotes that objects of one class contain references to objects of another class.
- You need to be able to distinguish the UML notation for inheritance, interface implementation, aggregation, and dependency.

## Apply an object-oriented development process to designing a program.

- Start the development process by gathering and documenting program requirements.
- Use CRC cards to find classes, responsibilities, and collaborators.
- Use UML diagrams to record class relationships.
- Use javadoc comments (with the method bodies left blank) to record the behavior of classes.
- After completing the design, implement your classes.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

- R12.1** List the steps in the process of object-oriented design that this chapter recommends for student use.
- R12.2** Give a rule of thumb for how to find classes when designing a program.
- R12.3** Give a rule of thumb for how to find methods when designing a program.
- R12.4** After discovering a method, why is it important to identify the object that is *responsible* for carrying out the action?

**■■ R12.5** What relationship is appropriate between the following classes: aggregation, inheritance, or neither?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>a.</b> University–Student<br><b>b.</b> Student–TeachingAssistant<br><b>c.</b> Student–Freshman<br><b>d.</b> Student–Professor | <b>e.</b> Car–Door<br><b>f.</b> Truck–Vehicle<br><b>g.</b> Traffic–TrafficSign<br><b>h.</b> TrafficSign–Color |
|--|---|

**■■ R12.6** Every BMW is a vehicle. Should a class `BMW` inherit from the class `Vehicle`? BMW is a vehicle manufacturer. Does that mean that the class `BMW` should inherit from the class `VehicleManufacturer`?

**■■ R12.7** Some books on object-oriented programming recommend using inheritance so that the class `Circle` extends the class `java.awt.Point`. Then the `Circle` class inherits the `setLocation` method from the `Point` superclass. Explain why the `setLocation` method need not be overridden in the subclass. Why is it nevertheless not a good idea to have `Circle` inherit from `Point`? Conversely, would inheriting `Point` from `Circle` fulfill the *is-a* rule? Would it be a good idea?

**■ R12.8** Write CRC cards for the `Coin` and `CashRegister` classes described in Section 8.2.

**■ R12.9** Write CRC cards for the `Quiz` and `Question` classes in Section 12.2.2.

**■■ R12.10** Draw a UML diagram for the `Quiz`, `Question`, and `ChoiceQuestion` classes. The `Quiz` class is described in Section 12.2.2.

**■■■ R12.11** A file contains a set of records describing countries. Each record consists of the name of the country, its population, and its area. Suppose your task is to write a program that reads in such a file and prints

- The country with the largest area
- The country with the largest population
- The country with the largest population density (people per square kilometer)

Think through the problems that you need to solve. What classes and methods will you need? Produce a set of CRC cards, a UML diagram, and a set of javadoc comments.

**■■■ R12.12** Discover classes and methods for generating a student report card that lists all classes, grades, and the grade point average for a semester. Produce a set of CRC cards, a UML diagram, and a set of javadoc comments.

**■■ R12.13** Consider the following problem description:

**Users place coins in a vending machine and select a product by pushing a button. If the inserted coins are sufficient to cover the purchase price of the product, the product is dispensed and change is given. Otherwise, the inserted coins are returned to the user.**

What classes should you use to implement a solution?

**■■ R12.14** Consider the following problem description:

**Employees receive their biweekly paychecks. They are paid their hourly rates for each hour worked; however, if they worked more than 40 hours per week, they are paid overtime at 150 percent of their regular wage.**

What classes should you use to implement a solution?

- R12.15** Consider the following problem description:

*Customers order products from a store. Invoices are generated to list the items and quantities ordered, payments received, and amounts still due. Products are shipped to the shipping address of the customer, and invoices are sent to the billing address.*

Draw a UML diagram showing the aggregation relationships between the classes `Invoice`, `Address`, `Customer`, and `Product`.

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- E12.1** Enhance the invoice-printing program by providing for two kinds of line items: One kind describes products that are purchased in certain numerical quantities (such as “3 toasters”), another describes a fixed charge (such as “shipping: \$5.00”). *Hint:* Use inheritance. Produce a UML diagram of your modified implementation.
- E12.2** The invoice-printing program is somewhat unrealistic because the formatting of the `LineItem` objects won’t lead to good visual results when the prices and quantities have varying numbers of digits. Enhance the `format` method in two ways: Accept an `int[]` array of column widths as an argument. Use the `NumberFormat` class to format the currency values.
- E12.3** The invoice-printing program has an unfortunate flaw—it mixes “application logic” (the computation of total charges) and “presentation” (the visual appearance of the invoice). To appreciate this flaw, imagine the changes that would be necessary to draw the invoice in HTML for presentation on the Web. Reimplement the program, using a separate `InvoiceFormatter` class to format the invoice. That is, the `Invoice` and `LineItem` methods are no longer responsible for formatting. However, they will acquire other responsibilities, because the `InvoiceFormatter` class needs to query them for the values that it requires.
- E12.4** Write a program that teaches arithmetic to a young child. The program tests addition and subtraction. In level 1, it tests only addition of numbers less than 10 whose sum is less than 10. In level 2, it tests addition of arbitrary one-digit numbers. In level 3, it tests subtraction of one-digit numbers with a nonnegative difference.  
Generate random problems and get the player’s input. The player gets up to two tries per problem. Advance from one level to the next when the player has achieved a score of five points.
- E12.5** Implement a simple e-mail messaging system. A message has a recipient, a sender, and a message text. A mailbox can store messages. Supply a number of mailboxes for different users and a user interface for users to log in, send messages to other users, read their own messages, and log out. Follow the design process that was described in this chapter.
- E12.6** Modify the implementation of the classes in the ATM simulation in Worked Example 12.1 so that the bank manages a collection of bank accounts and a separate collection of customers. Allow joint accounts in which some accounts can have more than one customer.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- P12.1** Write a program that simulates a vending machine. Products can be purchased by inserting coins with a value at least equal to the cost of the product. A user selects a product from a list of available products, adds coins, and either gets the product or gets the coins returned. The coins are returned if insufficient money was supplied or if the product is sold out. The machine does not give change if too much money was added. Products can be restocked and money removed by an operator. Follow the design process that was described in this chapter. Your solution should include a class `VendingMachine` that is not coupled with the `Scanner` or `PrintStream` classes.
- P12.2** Write a program to design an appointment calendar. An appointment includes the date, starting time, ending time, and a description; for example,

```
Dentist 2012/10/1 17:30 18:30
CS1 class 2012/10/2 08:30 10:00
```

Supply a user interface to add appointments, remove canceled appointments, and print out a list of appointments for a particular day. Follow the design process that was described in this chapter. Your solution should include a class `AppointmentCalendar` that is not coupled with the `Scanner` or `PrintStream` classes.

- P12.3** Write a program that administers and grades quizzes. A quiz consists of questions. There are four types of questions: text questions, number questions, choice questions with a single answer, and choice questions with multiple answers. When grading a text question, ignore leading or trailing spaces and letter case. When grading a numeric question, accept a response that is approximately the same as the answer.
- A quiz is specified in a text file. Each question starts with a letter indicating the question type (T, N, S, M), followed by a line containing the question text. The next line of a non-choice question contains the answer. Choice questions have a list of choices that is terminated by a blank line. Each choice starts with + (correct) or - (incorrect). Here is a sample file:

```
T
Which Java reserved word is used to declare a subclass?
extends
S
What is the original name of the Java language?
- *7
- C--
+ Oak
- Gosling

M
Which of the following types are supertypes of Rectangle?
- PrintStream
+ Shape
+ RectangularShape
+ Object
- String

N
What is the square root of 2?
1.41421356
```

Your program should read in a quiz file, prompt the user for responses to all questions, and grade the responses. Follow the design process described in this chapter.

**■■ P12.4** Produce a requirements document for a program that allows a company to send out personalized mailings, either by e-mail or through the postal service. Template files contain the message text, together with variable fields (such as Dear [Title] [Last Name] ...). A database (stored as a text file) contains the field values for each recipient. Use HTML as the output file format. Then design and implement the program.

**■■■ P12.5** Write a tic-tac-toe game that allows a human player to play against the computer. Your program will play many turns against a human opponent, and it will learn. When it is the computer's turn, the computer randomly selects an empty field, except that it won't ever choose a losing combination. For that purpose, your program must keep an array of losing combinations. Whenever the human wins, the immediately preceding combination is stored as losing. For example, suppose that X = computer and O = human.

Suppose the current combination is

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| O | X | X |
|   | O |   |
|   |   |   |

Now it is the human's turn, who will of course choose

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| O | X | X |
|   | O |   |
|   |   | O |

The computer should then remember the preceding combination

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| O | X | X |
|   | O |   |
|   |   | O |

as a losing combination. As a result, the computer will never again choose that combination from

|   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| O | X |  |
|   | O |  |
|   |   |  |

or

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| O |   | X |
|   | O |   |
|   |   | O |

Discover classes and supply a UML diagram before you begin to program.

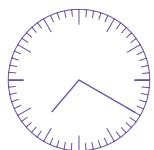
**■■■ Business P12.6** *Airline seating.* Write a program that assigns seats on an airplane. Assume the airplane has 20 seats in first class (5 rows of 4 seats each, separated by an aisle) and 90 seats in economy class (15 rows of 6 seats each, separated by an aisle). Your program should take three commands: add passengers, show seating, and quit. When passengers are added, ask for the class (first or economy), the number of passengers traveling together (1 or 2 in first class; 1 to 3 in economy), and the seating preference (aisle or window in first class; aisle, center, or window in economy). Then try to find a match and assign the seats. If no match exists, print a message. Your solution should include a class `Airplane` that is not coupled with the `Scanner` or `PrintStream` classes. Follow the design process that was described in this chapter.

**■■■ Business P12.7** In an airplane, each passenger has a touch screen for ordering a drink and a snack. Some items are free and some are not. The system prepares two reports for speeding up service:

1. A list of all seats, ordered by row, showing the charges that must be collected.
2. A list of how many drinks and snacks of each type must be prepared for the front and the rear of the plane.

Follow the design process that was described in this chapter to identify classes, and implement a program that simulates the system.

**■■■ Graphics P12.8**



An Analog Clock

Implement a program to teach a young child to read the clock. In the game, present an analog clock, such as the one shown at left. Generate random times and display the clock. Accept guesses from the player. Reward the player for correct guesses. After two incorrect guesses, display the correct answer and make a new random time. Implement several levels of play. In level 1, only show full hours. In level 2, show quarter hours. In level 3, show five-minute multiples, and in level 4, show any number of minutes. After a player has achieved five correct guesses at one level, advance to the next level.

**■■■ Graphics P12.9**

Write a program that can be used to design a suburban scene, with houses, streets, and cars. Users can add houses and cars of various colors to a street. Write more specific requirements that include a detailed description of the user interface. Then, discover classes and methods, provide UML diagrams, and implement your program.

**■■■ Graphics P12.10**

Write a simple graphics editor that allows users to add a mixture of shapes (ellipses, rectangles, and lines in different colors) to a panel. Supply commands to load and save the picture. Discover classes, supply a UML diagram, and implement your program.

### ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. Look for nouns in the problem description.
2. Yes (`ChessBoard`) and no (`MovePiece`).
3. `PrintStream`.
4. To produce the shipping address of the customer.
5. Rework the responsibilities so that they are at a higher level, or come up with more classes to handle the responsibilities.
6. The `CashRegisterTester` class depends on the `CashRegister`, `Coin`, and `System` classes.
7. The `ChoiceQuestion` class inherits from the `Question` class.
8. The `Quiz` class depends on the `Question` class but probably not `ChoiceQuestion`, if we assume that the methods of the `Quiz` class manipulate generic `Question` objects, as they did in Chapter 9.
9. If a class doesn't depend on another, it is not affected by interface changes in the other class.
10. 

```

graph LR
    Mailbox[Mailbox] <--> Message[Message]
  
```
11. Typically, a library system wants to track which books a patron has checked out, so it makes more sense to have `Patron` aggregate `Book`. However, there is not always one true answer in design. If you feel strongly that it is important to identify the patron who checked out a particular book (perhaps to notify the patron to return it because it was requested by someone else), then you can argue that the aggregation should go the other way around.
12. There would be no relationship.
13. The `Invoice` class is responsible for computing the amount due. It collaborates with the `LineItem` class.
14. This design decision reduces coupling. It enables us to reuse the classes when we want to show the invoice in a dialog box or on a web page.

# RECURSION

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To learn to “think recursively”
- To be able to use recursive helper methods
- To understand the relationship between recursion and iteration
- To understand when the use of recursion affects the efficiency of an algorithm
- To analyze problems that are much easier to solve by recursion than by iteration
- To process data with recursive structures using mutual recursion



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| <b>13.1 TRIANGLE NUMBERS</b>                                | 588 |
| <i>Common Error 13.1:</i> Infinite Recursion                | 592 |
| <i>Common Error 13.2:</i> Tracing Through Recursive Methods | 592 |
| <i>How To 13.1:</i> Thinking Recursively                    | 593 |
| <i>Worked Example 13.1:</i> Finding Files                   | 593 |
| <b>13.2 RECURSIVE HELPER METHODS</b>                        | 596 |
| <b>13.3 THE EFFICIENCY OF RECURSION</b>                     | 598 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>13.4 PERMUTATIONS</b>                                       | 603 |
| <i>Computing &amp; Society 13.1:</i> The Limits of Computation | 606 |
| <b>13.5 MUTUAL RECURSION</b>                                   | 608 |
| <b>13.6 BACKTRACKING</b>                                       | 614 |
| <i>Worked Example 13.2:</i> Towers of Hanoi                    | 614 |



The method of recursion is a powerful technique for breaking up complex computational problems into simpler, often smaller, ones. The term “recursion” refers to the fact that the same computation recurs, or occurs repeatedly, as the problem is solved. Recursion is often the most natural way of thinking about a problem, and there are some computations that are very difficult to perform without recursion. This chapter shows you both simple and complex examples of recursion and teaches you how to “think recursively”.

## 13.1 Triangle Numbers

We begin this chapter with a very simple example that demonstrates the power of thinking recursively. In this example, we will look at triangle shapes such as this one:



We'd like to compute the area of a triangle of width  $n$ , assuming that each [] square has area 1. The area of the triangle is sometimes called the  $n^{\text{th}}$  *triangle number*. For example, as you can tell from looking at the triangle above, the third triangle number is 6.

You may know that there is a very simple formula to compute these numbers, but you should pretend for now that you don't know about it. The ultimate purpose of this section is not to compute triangle numbers, but to learn about the concept of **recursion** by working through a simple example.

Here is the outline of the class that we will develop:

```
public class Triangle
{
    private int width;

    public Triangle(int aWidth)
    {
        width = aWidth;
    }

    public int getArea()
    {
        ...
    }
}
```

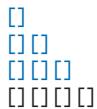
If the width of the triangle is 1, then the triangle consists of a single square, and its area is 1. Let's take care of this case first:

```
public int getArea()
{
    if (width == 1) { return 1; }
    ...
}
```



*Using the same method as the one in this section, you can compute the volume of a Mayan pyramid.*

To deal with the general case, consider this picture:



Suppose we knew the area of the smaller, colored triangle. Then we could easily compute the area of the larger triangle as

$$\text{smallerArea} + \text{width}$$

How can we get the smaller area? Let's make a smaller triangle and ask it!

```
Triangle smallerTriangle = new Triangle(width - 1);
int smallerArea = smallerTriangle.getArea();
```

Now we can complete the `getArea` method:

```
public int getArea()
{
    if (width == 1) { return 1; }
    else
    {
        Triangle smallerTriangle = new Triangle(width - 1);
        int smallerArea = smallerTriangle.getArea();
        return smallerArea + width;
    }
}
```

A recursive computation solves a problem by using the solution to the same problem with simpler inputs.

Here is an illustration of what happens when we compute the area of a triangle of width 4:

- The `getArea` method makes a smaller triangle of width 3.
- It calls `getArea` on that triangle.
  - That method makes a smaller triangle of width 2.
  - It calls `getArea` on that triangle.
    - That method makes a smaller triangle of width 1.
    - It calls `getArea` on that triangle.
      - That method returns 1.
      - The method returns `smallerArea + width = 1 + 2 = 3`.
    - The method returns `smallerArea + width = 3 + 3 = 6`.
  - The method returns `smallerArea + width = 6 + 4 = 10`.

This solution has one remarkable aspect. To solve the area problem for a triangle of a given width, we use the fact that we can solve the same problem for a lesser width. This is called a *recursive* solution.

The call pattern of a **recursive method** looks complicated, and the key to the successful design of a recursive method is *not to think about it*. Instead, look at the `getArea` method one more time and notice how utterly reasonable it is. If the width is 1, then, of course, the area is 1. The next part is just as reasonable. Compute the area of the smaller triangle *and don't think about why that works*. Then the area of the larger triangle is clearly the sum of the smaller area and the width.

There are two key requirements to make sure that the recursion is successful:

- Every recursive call must simplify the computation in some way.
- There must be special cases to handle the simplest computations directly.

For a recursion to terminate, there must be special cases for the simplest values.

The `getArea` method calls itself again with smaller and smaller width values. Eventually the width must reach 1, and there is a special case for computing the area of a triangle with width 1. Thus, the `getArea` method always succeeds.

Actually, you have to be careful. What happens when you call the area of a triangle with width -1? It computes the area of a triangle with width -2, which computes the area of a triangle with width -3, and so on. To avoid this, the `getArea` method should return 0 if the width is  $\leq 0$ .

Recursion is not really necessary to compute the triangle numbers. The area of a triangle equals the sum

$$1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + \text{width}$$

Of course, we can program a simple loop:

```
double area = 0;
for (int i = 1; i <= width; i++)
{
    area = area + i;
}
```

Many simple recursions can be computed as loops. However, loop equivalents for more complex recursions—such as the one in our next example—can be complex.

Actually, in this case, you don't even need a loop to compute the answer. The sum of the first  $n$  integers can be computed as

$$1 + 2 + \dots + n = n \times (n + 1)/2$$

Thus, the area equals

$$\text{width} * (\text{width} + 1) / 2$$

Therefore, neither recursion nor a loop is required to solve this problem. The recursive solution is intended as a “warm-up” to introduce you to the concept of recursion.



### section\_1/Triangle.java

```

1  /**
2   * A triangular shape composed of stacked unit squares like this:
3   *  []
4   *  [] []
5   *  [] [] []
6   *  ...
7  */
8  public class Triangle
9  {
10     private int width;
11
12    /**
13     * Constructs a triangular shape.
14     * @param aWidth the width (and height) of the triangle
15     */
16    public Triangle(int aWidth)
17    {
18        width = aWidth;
19    }
20
21    /**
22     * Computes the area of the triangle.
23     * @return the area
24     */
25    public int getArea()
26    {

```

```

27     if (width <= 0) { return 0; }
28     else if (width == 1) { return 1; }
29     else
30     {
31         Triangle smallerTriangle = new Triangle(width - 1);
32         int smallerArea = smallerTriangle.getArea();
33         return smallerArea + width;
34     }
35 }
36 }
```

**section\_1/TriangleTester.java**

```

1  public class TriangleTester
2  {
3      public static void main(String[] args)
4      {
5          Triangle t = new Triangle(10);
6          int area = t.getArea();
7          System.out.println("Area: " + area);
8          System.out.println("Expected: 55");
9      }
10 }
```

**Program Run**

Area: 55  
Expected: 55

**SELF CHECK**

- Why is the statement `else if (width == 1) { return 1; }` in the final version of the `getArea` method unnecessary?
- How would you modify the program to recursively compute the area of a square?
- In some cultures, numbers containing the digit 8 are lucky numbers. What is wrong with the following method that tries to test whether a number is lucky?

```
public static boolean isLucky(int number)
{
    int lastDigit = number % 10;
    if (lastDigit == 8) { return true; }
    else
    {
        return isLucky(number / 10); // Test the number without the last digit
    }
}
```

- In order to compute a power of two, you can take the next-lower power and double it. For example, if you want to compute  $2^{11}$  and you know that  $2^{10} = 1024$ , then  $2^{11} = 2 \times 1024 = 2048$ . Write a recursive method `public static int pow2(int n)` that is based on this observation.
- Consider the following recursive method:

```
public static int mystery(int n)
{
    if (n <= 0) { return 0; }
    else
    {
```

```

        int smaller = n - 1;
        return mystery(smaller) + n * n;
    }
}

```

What is `mystery(4)`?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E13.1, E13.2, E13.10.

### Common Error 13.1



### Infinite Recursion

A common programming error is an *infinite recursion*: a method calling itself over and over with no end in sight. The computer needs some amount of memory for bookkeeping for each call. After some number of calls, all memory that is available for this purpose is exhausted. Your program shuts down and reports a “stack overflow”.

Infinite recursion happens either because the arguments don’t get simpler or because a special terminating case is missing. For example, suppose the `getArea` method was allowed to compute the area of a triangle with width 0. If it weren’t for the special test, the method would construct triangles with width  $-1, -2, -3$ , and so on.

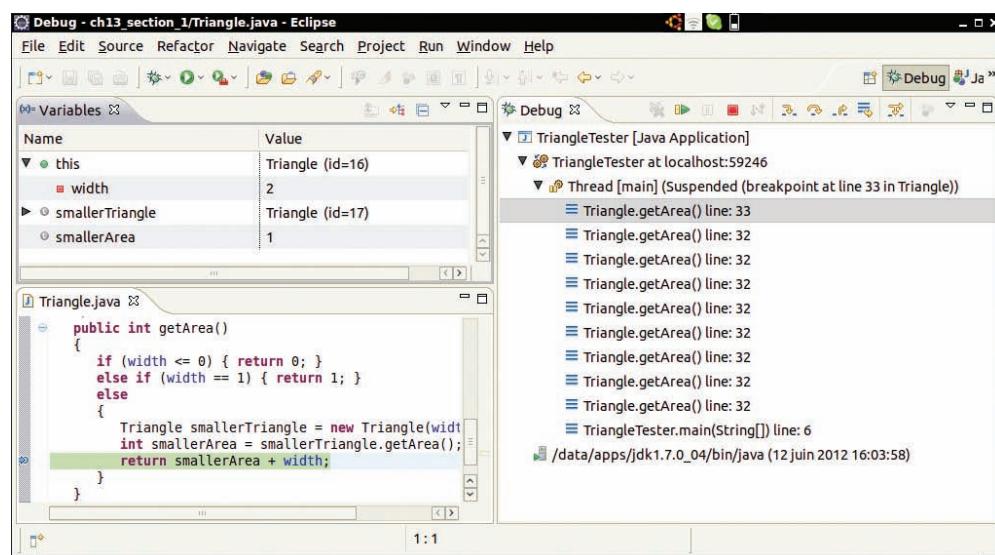
### Common Error 13.2



### Tracing Through Recursive Methods

Debugging a recursive method can be somewhat challenging. When you set a **breakpoint** in a recursive method, the program stops as soon as that program line is encountered in *any call to the recursive method*. Suppose you want to debug the recursive `getArea` method of the `Triangle` class. Debug the `TriangleTester` program and run until the beginning of the `getArea` method. Inspect the `width` instance variable. It is 10.

Remove the breakpoint and now run until the statement `return smallerArea + width;` (see Figure 1). When you inspect `width` again, its value is 2! That makes no sense. There was no instruction that changed the value of `width`. Is that a bug with the debugger?



**Figure 1** Debugging a Recursive Method

No. The program stopped in the first recursive call to `getArea` that reached the `return` statement. If you are confused, look at the **call stack** (top right in the figure). You will see that nine calls to `getArea` are pending.

You can debug recursive methods with the debugger. You just need to be particularly careful, and watch the call stack to understand which nested call you currently are in.

## HOW TO 13.1



## Thinking Recursively

Solving a problem recursively requires a different mindset than solving it by programming a loop. In fact, it helps if you pretend to be a bit lazy, asking others to do most of the work for you. If you need to solve a complex problem, pretend that “someone else” will do most of the heavy lifting and solve the problem for simpler inputs. Then you only need to figure out how you can turn the solutions with simpler inputs into a solution for the whole problem. To illustrate the technique of recursion, let us consider the following problem.

**Problem Statement** Test whether a sentence is a *palindrome*—a string that is equal to itself when you reverse all characters.



*Thinking recursively is easy if you can recognize a subtask that is similar to the original task.*

Typical examples of palindromes are

- A man, a plan, a canal—Panama!
  - Go hang a salami, I’m a lasagna hog
- and, of course, the oldest palindrome of all:
- Madam, I’m Adam

When testing for a palindrome, we match upper- and lowercase letters, and ignore all spaces and punctuation marks.

We want to implement the `isPalindrome` method in the following class:

```
public class Palindromes
{
    ...
    /**
     * Tests whether a text is a palindrome.
     * @param text a string that is being checked
     * @return true if text is a palindrome, false otherwise
     */
    public static boolean isPalindrome(String text)
    {
        ...
    }
}
```

**Step 1** Consider various ways to simplify inputs.

In your mind, focus on a particular input or set of inputs for the problem that you want to solve. Think how you can simplify the inputs in such a way that the same problem can be applied to the simpler input.

When you consider simpler inputs, you may want to remove just a little bit from the original input—maybe remove one or two characters from a string, or remove a small portion of a

geometric shape. But sometimes it is more useful to cut the input in half and then see what it means to solve the problem for both halves.

In the palindrome test problem, the input is the string that we need to test. How can you simplify the input? Here are several possibilities:

- Remove the first character.
- Remove the last character.
- Remove both the first and last characters.
- Remove a character from the middle.
- Cut the string into two halves.

These simpler inputs are all potential inputs for the palindrome test.

### **Step 2** Combine solutions with simpler inputs into a solution of the original problem.

In your mind, consider the solutions of your problem for the simpler inputs that you discovered in Step 1. Don't worry *how* those solutions are obtained. Simply have faith that the solutions are readily available. Just say to yourself: These are simpler inputs, so someone else will solve the problem for me.

Now think how you can turn the solution for the simpler inputs into a solution for the input that you are currently thinking about. Maybe you need to add a small quantity, related to the quantity that you lopped off to arrive at the simpler input. Maybe you cut the original input in half and have solutions for each half. Then you may need to add both solutions to arrive at a solution for the whole.

Consider the methods for simplifying the inputs for the palindrome test. Cutting the string in half doesn't seem a good idea. If you cut

"Madam, I'm Adam"

in half, you get two strings:

"Madam, I"

and

"'m Adam"

Neither of them is a palindrome. Cutting the input in half and testing whether the halves are palindromes seems a dead end.

The most promising simplification is to remove the first *and* last characters. Removing the M at the front and the m at the back yields

"adam, I'm Ada"

Suppose you can verify that the shorter string is a palindrome. Then *of course* the original string is a palindrome—we put the same letter in the front and the back. That's extremely promising. A word is a palindrome if

- The first and last letters match (ignoring letter case)
- and
- The word obtained by removing the first and last letters is a palindrome.

Again, don't worry how the test works for the shorter string. It just works.

There is one other case to consider. What if the first or last letter of the word is not a letter? For example, the string

"A man, a plan, a canal, Panama!"

ends in a ! character, which does not match the A in the front. But we should ignore non-letters when testing for palindromes. Thus, when the last character is not a letter but the first character is a letter, it doesn't make sense to remove both the first and the last characters. That's not a problem. Remove only the last character. If the shorter string is a palindrome, then it stays a palindrome when you attach a nonletter.

The same argument applies if the first character is not a letter. Now we have a complete set of cases.

- If the first and last characters are both letters, then check whether they match. If so, remove both and test the shorter string.
- Otherwise, if the last character isn't a letter, remove it and test the shorter string.
- Otherwise, the first character isn't a letter. Remove it and test the shorter string.

In all three cases, you can use the solution to the simpler problem to arrive at a solution to your problem.

### Step 3

Find solutions to the simplest inputs.

A recursive computation keeps simplifying its inputs. Eventually it arrives at very simple inputs. To make sure that the recursion comes to a stop, you must deal with the simplest inputs separately. Come up with special solutions for them, which is usually very easy.

However, sometimes you get into philosophical questions dealing with *degenerate* inputs: empty strings, shapes with no area, and so on. Then you may want to investigate a slightly larger input that gets reduced to such a trivial input and see what value you should attach to the degenerate inputs so that the simpler value, when used according to the rules you discovered in Step 2, yields the correct answer.

Let's look at the simplest strings for the palindrome test:

- Strings with two characters
- Strings with a single character
- The empty string

We don't need a special solution for strings with two characters. Step 2 still applies to those strings—either or both of the characters are removed. But we do need to worry about strings of length 0 and 1. In those cases, Step 2 can't apply. There aren't two characters to remove.

The empty string is a palindrome—it's the same string when you read it backwards. If you find that too artificial, consider a string "mm". According to the rule discovered in Step 2, this string is a palindrome if the first and last characters of that string match and the remainder—that is, the empty string—is also a palindrome. Therefore, it makes sense to consider the empty string a palindrome.

A string with a single letter, such as "I", is a palindrome. How about the case in which the character is not a letter, such as "?"? Removing the ! yields the empty string, which is a palindrome. Thus, we conclude that all strings of length 0 or 1 are palindromes.

### Step 4

Implement the solution by combining the simple cases and the reduction step.

Now you are ready to implement the solution. Make separate cases for the simple inputs that you considered in Step 3. If the input isn't one of the simplest cases, then implement the logic you discovered in Step 2.

Here is the `isPalindrome` method:

```
public static boolean isPalindrome(String text)
{
    int length = text.length();

    // Separate case for shortest strings.
    if (length <= 1) { return true; }
    else
    {
        // Get first and last characters, converted to lowercase.
        char first = Character.toLowerCase(text.charAt(0));
        char last = Character.toLowerCase(text.charAt(length - 1));

        if (Character.isLetter(first) && Character.isLetter(last))
        {
            // Both are letters.
            if (first == last)
            {

```

```

        // Remove both first and last character.
        String shorter = text.substring(1, length - 1);
        return isPalindrome(shorter);
    }
    else
    {
        return false;
    }
}
else if (!Character.isLetter(last))
{
    // Remove last character.
    String shorter = text.substring(0, length - 1);
    return isPalindrome(shorter);
}
else
{
    // Remove first character.
    String shorter = text.substring(1);
    return isPalindrome(shorter);
}
}

```

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**  
Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download the Palindromes class.



### WORKED EXAMPLE 13.1

### Finding Files

Learn how to use recursion to find all files with a given extension in a directory tree. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 13.1.



## 13.2 Recursive Helper Methods

Sometimes it is easier to find a recursive solution if you make a slight change to the original problem.

Sometimes it is easier to find a recursive solution if you change the original problem slightly. Then the original problem can be solved by calling a recursive helper method.

Here is a typical example: In the palindrome test of How To 13.1, it is a bit inefficient to construct new string objects in every step. Consider the following change in the problem: Instead of testing whether the entire sentence is a palindrome, let's check whether a substring is a palindrome:

```

/**
 * Tests whether a substring is a palindrome.
 * @param text a string that is being checked
 * @param start the index of the first character of the substring
 * @param end the index of the last character of the substring
 * @return true if the substring is a palindrome
 */
public static boolean isPalindrome(String text, int start, int end)

```



*Sometimes, a task can be solved by handing it off to a recursive helper method.*

This method turns out to be even easier to implement than the original test. In the recursive calls, simply adjust the start and end parameter variables to skip over matching letter pairs and characters that are not letters. There is no need to construct new String objects to represent the shorter strings.

```
public static boolean isPalindrome(String text, int start, int end)
{
    // Separate case for substrings of length 0 and 1.
    if (start >= end) { return true; }
    else
    {
        // Get first and last characters, converted to lowercase.
        char first = Character.toLowerCase(text.charAt(start));
        char last = Character.toLowerCase(text.charAt(end));

        if (Character.isLetter(first) && Character.isLetter(last))
        {
            if (first == last)
            {
                // Test substring that doesn't contain the matching letters.
                return isPalindrome(text, start + 1, end - 1);
            }
            else
            {
                return false;
            }
        }
        else if (!Character.isLetter(last))
        {
            // Test substring that doesn't contain the last character.
            return isPalindrome(text, start, end - 1);
        }
        else
        {
            // Test substring that doesn't contain the first character.
            return isPalindrome(text, start + 1, end);
        }
    }
}
```

You should still supply a method to solve the whole problem—the user of your method shouldn't have to know about the trick with the substring positions. Simply call the helper method with positions that test the entire string:

```
public static boolean isPalindrome(String text)
{
    return isPalindrome(text, 0, text.length() - 1);
}
```

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**  
Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download the Palindromes class with a helper method.

Note that this call is *not* a recursive method call. The `isPalindrome(String)` method calls the helper method `isPalindrome(String, int, int)`. In this example, we use **overloading** to declare two methods with the same name. The `isPalindrome` method with just a `String` parameter variable is the method that we expect the public to use. The second method, with one `String` and two `int` parameter variables, is the recursive helper method. If you prefer, you can avoid overloaded methods by choosing a different name for the helper method, such as `substringIsPalindrome`.

Use the technique of recursive helper methods whenever it is easier to solve a recursive problem that is equivalent to the original problem—but more amenable to a recursive solution.



6. Do we have to give the same name to both `isPalindrome` methods?
7. When does the recursive `isPalindrome` method stop calling itself?
8. To compute the sum of the values in an array, add the first value to the sum of the remaining values, computing recursively. Of course, it would be inefficient to set up an actual array of the remaining values. Which recursive helper method can solve the problem?
9. How can you write a recursive method `public static void sum(int[] a)` without needing a helper function?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E13.4, E13.7, E13.11.

## 13.3 The Efficiency of Recursion

As you have seen in this chapter, recursion can be a powerful tool for implementing complex algorithms. On the other hand, recursion can lead to algorithms that perform poorly. In this section, we will analyze the question of when recursion is beneficial and when it is inefficient.

Consider the Fibonacci sequence: a sequence of numbers defined by the equation

$$\begin{aligned}f_1 &= 1 \\f_2 &= 1 \\f_n &= f_{n-1} + f_{n-2}\end{aligned}$$



*In most cases, iterative and recursive approaches have comparable efficiency.*

That is, each value of the sequence is the sum of the two preceding values. The first ten terms of the sequence are

1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55

It is easy to extend this sequence indefinitely. Just keep appending the sum of the last two values of the sequence. For example, the next entry is  $34 + 55 = 89$ .

We would like to write a method that computes  $f_n$  for any value of  $n$ . Here we translate the definition directly into a recursive method:

### section\_3/RecursiveFib.java

```

1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 /**
4  * This program computes Fibonacci numbers using a recursive method.
5 */
6 public class RecursiveFib
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
11        System.out.print("Enter n: ");
12        int n = in.nextInt();

```

```

13     for (int i = 1; i <= n; i++)
14     {
15         long f = fib(i);
16         System.out.println("fib(" + i + ") = " + f);
17     }
18 }
19
20 /**
21 * Computes a Fibonacci number.
22 * @param n an integer
23 * @return the nth Fibonacci number
24 */
25 public static long fib(int n)
26 {
27     if (n <= 2) { return 1; }
28     else { return fib(n - 1) + fib(n - 2); }
29 }
30 }
31 }
```

### Program Run

```

Enter n: 50
fib(1) = 1
fib(2) = 1
fib(3) = 2
fib(4) = 3
fib(5) = 5
fib(6) = 8
fib(7) = 13
...
fib(50) = 12586269025
```

That is certainly simple, and the method will work correctly. But watch the output closely as you run the test program. The first few calls to the `fib` method are fast. For larger values, though, the program pauses an amazingly long time between outputs.

That makes no sense. Armed with pencil, paper, and a pocket calculator you could calculate these numbers pretty quickly, so it shouldn't take the computer anywhere near that long.

To find out the problem, let us insert **trace messages** into the method:

### section\_3/RecursiveFibTracer.java

```

1 import java.util.Scanner;
2 /**
3  * This program prints trace messages that show how often the
4  * recursive method for computing Fibonacci numbers calls itself.
5  */
6 public class RecursiveFibTracer
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
11         System.out.print("Enter n: ");
12         int n = in.nextInt();
13     }
14 }
```

```
15     long f = fib(n);
16
17     System.out.println("fib(" + n + ") = " + f);
18 }
19
20 /**
21  * Computes a Fibonacci number.
22  * @param n an integer
23  * @return the nth Fibonacci number
24 */
25 public static long fib(int n)
26 {
27     System.out.println("Entering fib: n = " + n);
28     long f;
29     if (n <= 2) { f = 1; }
30     else { f = fib(n - 1) + fib(n - 2); }
31     System.out.println("Exiting fib: n = " + n
32                         + " return value = " + f);
33     return f;
34 }
35 }
```

### Program Run

```
Enter n: 6
Entering fib: n = 6
Entering fib: n = 5
Entering fib: n = 4
Entering fib: n = 3
Entering fib: n = 2
Entering fib: n = 1
Exiting fib: n = 1 return value = 1
Entering fib: n = 1
Exiting fib: n = 1 return value = 1
Exiting fib: n = 2 return value = 1
Entering fib: n = 2
Exiting fib: n = 2 return value = 1
Entering fib: n = 3
Exiting fib: n = 3 return value = 2
Entering fib: n = 4
Exiting fib: n = 4 return value = 3
Entering fib: n = 5
Exiting fib: n = 5 return value = 5
Entering fib: n = 6
Exiting fib: n = 6 return value = 8
fib(6) = 8
```

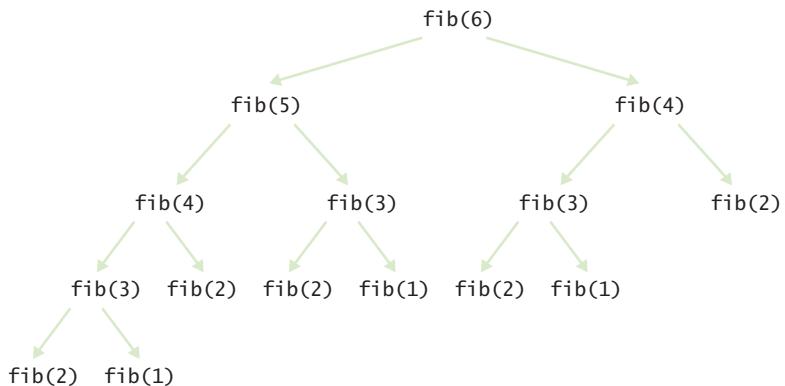
**Figure 2** Call Pattern of the Recursive fib Method

Figure 2 shows the pattern of recursive calls for computing  $\text{fib}(6)$ . Now it is becoming apparent why the method takes so long. It is computing the same values over and over. For example, the computation of  $\text{fib}(6)$  calls  $\text{fib}(4)$  twice and  $\text{fib}(3)$  three times. That is very different from the computation we would do with pencil and paper. There we would just write down the values as they were computed and add up the last two to get the next one until we reached the desired entry; no sequence value would ever be computed twice.

If we imitate the pencil-and-paper process, then we get the following program:

### section\_3/LoopFib.java

```

1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 /**
4  * This program computes Fibonacci numbers using an iterative method.
5 */
6 public class LoopFib
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
11        System.out.print("Enter n: ");
12        int n = in.nextInt();
13
14        for (int i = 1; i <= n; i++)
15        {
16            long f = fib(i);
17            System.out.println("fib(" + i + ") = " + f);
18        }
19    }
20
21 /**
22  * Computes a Fibonacci number.
23  * @param n an integer
24  * @return the nth Fibonacci number
25 */
26 public static long fib(int n)
27 {
28     if (n <= 2) { return 1; }
29     else
30     {
31         long f0 = 0;
32         long f1 = 1;
33         long fn = 0;
34         for (int i = 2; i <= n; i++)
35         {
36             fn = f0 + f1;
37             f0 = f1;
38             f1 = fn;
39         }
40         return fn;
41     }
42 }
  
```

```

31     long olderValue = 1;
32     long oldValue = 1;
33     long newValue = 1;
34     for (int i = 3; i <= n; i++)
35     {
36         newValue = oldValue + olderValue;
37         oldValue = oldValue;
38         oldValue = newValue;
39     }
40     return newValue;
41 }
42 }
43 }
```

### Program Run

```

Enter n: 50
fib(1) = 1
fib(2) = 1
fib(3) = 2
fib(4) = 3
fib(5) = 5
fib(6) = 8
fib(7) = 13
. . .
fib(50) = 12586269025
```

This method runs *much* faster than the recursive version.

In this example of the `fib` method, the recursive solution was easy to program because it followed the mathematical definition, but it ran far more slowly than the iterative solution, because it computed many intermediate results multiple times.

Can you always speed up a recursive solution by changing it into a loop? Frequently, the iterative and recursive solution have essentially the same performance. For example, here is an iterative solution for the palindrome test:

```

public static boolean isPalindrome(String text)
{
    int start = 0;
    int end = text.length() - 1;
    while (start < end)
    {
        char first = Character.toLowerCase(text.charAt(start));
        char last = Character.toLowerCase(text.charAt(end));

        if (Character.isLetter(first) && Character.isLetter(last))
        {
            // Both are letters.
            if (first == last)
            {
                start++;
                end--;
            }
            else { return false; }
        }
        if (!Character.isLetter(last)) { end--; }
        if (!Character.isLetter(first)) { start++; }
    }
    return true;
}
```

Occasionally, a recursive solution is much slower than its iterative counterpart. However, in most cases, the recursive solution is only slightly slower.



**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**  
Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download the LoopPalindromes class.

In many cases, a recursive solution is easier to understand and implement correctly than an iterative solution.

### SELF CHECK



10. Is it faster to compute the triangle numbers recursively, as shown in Section 13.1, or is it faster to use a loop that computes  $1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + \text{width}$ ?
11. You can compute the factorial function either with a loop, using the definition that  $n! = 1 \times 2 \times \dots \times n$ , or recursively, using the definition that  $0! = 1$  and  $n! = (n - 1)! \times n$ . Is the recursive approach inefficient in this case?
12. To compute the sum of the values in an array, you can split the array in the middle, recursively compute the sums of the halves, and add the results. Compare the performance of this algorithm with that of a loop that adds the values.

### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R13.7, R13.9. E13.5, E13.20.

## 13.4 Permutations

The permutations of a string can be obtained more naturally through recursion than with a loop.

In this section, we will study a more complex example of recursion that would be difficult to program with a simple loop. (As Exercise P13.1 shows, it is possible to avoid the recursion, but the resulting solution is quite complex, and no faster).

We will design a method that lists all permutations of a string. A permutation is simply a rearrangement of the letters in the string. For example, the string "eat" has six permutations (including the original string itself):

|       |       |
|-------|-------|
| "eat" | "ate" |
| "eta" | "tea" |
| "aet" | "tae" |



Using recursion, you can find all arrangements of a set of objects.

Now we need a way to generate the permutations recursively. Consider the string "eat". Let's simplify the problem. First, we'll generate all permutations that start with the letter 'e', then those that start with 'a', and finally those that start with 't'. How do we generate the permutations that start with 'e'? We need to know the permutations of the substring "at". But that's the same problem—to generate all permutations—with a simpler input, namely the shorter string "at". Thus, we can use recursion. Generate the permutations of the substring "at". They are

```
"at"
"ta"
```

For each permutation of that substring, prepend the letter 'e' to get the permutations of "eat" that start with 'e', namely

```
"eat"
"eta"
```

Now let's turn our attention to the permutations of "eat" that start with 'a'. We need to produce the permutations of the remaining letters, "et". They are:

```
"et"
"te"
```

We add the letter 'a' to the front of the strings and obtain

```
"aet"
"ate"
```

We generate the permutations that start with 't' in the same way.

That's the idea. The implementation is fairly straightforward. In the `permutations` method, we loop through all positions in the word to be permuted. For each of them, we compute the shorter word that is obtained by removing the *i*th letter:

```
String shorter = word.substring(0, i) + word.substring(i + 1);
```

We compute the permutations of the shorter word:

```
ArrayList<String> shorterPermutations = permutations(shorter);
```

Finally, we add the removed letter to the front of all permutations of the shorter word.

```
for (String s : shorterPermutations)
{
    result.add(word.charAt(i) + s);
}
```

As always, we have to provide a special case for the simplest strings. The simplest possible string is the empty string, which has a single permutation—itself.

Here is the complete `Permutations` class:

### **section\_4/Permutations.java**

```
1 import java.util.ArrayList;
2
3 /**
4     This class computes permutations of a string.
5 */
6 public class Permutations
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10         for (String s : permutations("eat"))
11         {
```

```

12         System.out.println(s);
13     }
14 }
15 /**
16 * Gets all permutations of a given word.
17 * @param word the string to permute
18 * @return a list of all permutations
19 */
20 public static ArrayList<String> permutations(String word)
21 {
22     ArrayList<String> result = new ArrayList<String>();
23
24     // The empty string has a single permutation: itself
25     if (word.length() == 0)
26     {
27         result.add(word);
28         return result;
29     }
30     else
31     {
32         // Loop through all character positions
33         for (int i = 0; i < word.length(); i++)
34         {
35             // Form a shorter word by removing the ith character
36             String shorter = word.substring(0, i) + word.substring(i + 1);
37
38             // Generate all permutations of the simpler word
39             ArrayList<String> shorterPermutations = permutations(shorter);
40
41             // Add the removed character to the front of
42             // each permutation of the simpler word
43             for (String s : shorterPermutations)
44             {
45                 result.add(word.charAt(i) + s);
46             }
47         }
48         // Return all permutations
49         return result;
50     }
51 }
52 }
53 }
```

### Program Run

```

eat
eta
aet
ate
tea
tae
```

Compare the `Permutations` and `Triangle` classes. Both of them work on the same principle. When they work on a more complex input, they first solve the problem for a simpler input. Then they combine the result for the simpler input with additional work to deliver the results for the more complex input. There really is no particular complexity behind that process as long as you think about the solution on that level only. However, behind the scenes, the simpler input creates even simpler input,

which creates yet another simplification, and so on, until one input is so simple that the result can be obtained without further help. It is interesting to think about this process, but it can also be confusing. What's important is that you can focus on the one level that matters—putting a solution together from the slightly simpler problem, ignoring the fact that the simpler problem also uses recursion to get its results.



## Computing & Society 13.1 The Limits of Computation

Have you ever wondered how your instructor or grader makes sure your programming homework is correct? In all likelihood, they look at your solution and perhaps run it with some test inputs. But usually they have a correct solution available. That suggests that there might be an easier way. Perhaps they could feed your program and their correct program into a “program comparator”, a computer program that analyzes both programs and determines whether they both compute the same results. Of course, your solution and the program that is known to be correct need not be identical—what matters is that they produce the same output when given the same input.

How could such a program comparator work? Well, the Java compiler knows how to read a program and make sense of the classes, methods, and statements. So it seems plausible that someone could, with some effort, write a program that reads two Java programs, analyzes what they do, and determines whether they solve the same task. Of course, such a program would be very attractive to instructors, because it could automate the grading process. Thus, even though no such program exists today, it might be tempting to try to develop one and sell it to universities around the world.

However, before you start raising venture capital for such an effort, you should know that theoretical computer scientists have proven that it is impossible to develop such a program, *no matter how hard you try*.

There are quite a few of these unsolvable problems. The first one,

called the *halting problem*, was discovered by the British researcher Alan Turing in 1936. Because his research occurred before the first actual computer was constructed, Turing had to devise a theoretical device, the **Turing machine**, to explain how computers could work. The Turing machine consists of a long magnetic tape, a read/write head, and a program that has numbered instructions of the form: “If the current symbol under the head is *x*, then replace it with *y*, move the head one unit left or right, and continue with instruction *n*” (see the figure on the next page). Interestingly enough, with only these instructions, you can program just as much as with Java, even though it is incredibly tedious to do so. Theoretical computer scientists like Turing machines because they can be described using nothing more than the laws of mathematics.

Expressed in terms of Java, the halting problem states: “It is impossible to write a program with two inputs, namely the source code of an arbitrary Java program *P* and a string *I*, that decides whether the program *P*, when executed with the input *I*, will halt—that is, the program will not get into an infinite loop with the given input”. Of course, for some kinds of programs and inputs, it is possible to decide whether the program halts with the given input. The halting problem asserts that it is impossible to come up with a single decision-making algorithm that works with all programs and inputs. Note that you can't simply run the program *P* on the input *I* to settle this question. If the program runs for 1,000 days, you don't know that the program is in an infinite loop. Maybe

you just have to wait another day for it to stop.

Such a “halt checker”, if it could be written, might also be useful for grading homework. An instructor could use it to screen student submissions to see if they get into an infinite loop with a particular input, and then stop checking them. However, as Turing demonstrated, such a program cannot be written. His argument is ingenious and quite simple.

Suppose a “halt checker” program existed. Let's call it *H*. From *H*, we will develop another program, the “killer” program *K*. *K* does the following computation. Its input is a string containing the source code for a program *R*. It then applies the halt checker on the input program *R* and the input string *R*. That is, it checks whether the program *R* halts if its input is its own source code. It sounds bizarre to feed a program to itself, but it isn't impossible.



Alan Turing

**SELF CHECK**

13. What are all permutations of the four-letter word beat?
14. Our recursion for the permutation generator stops at the empty string. What simple modification would make the recursion stop at strings of length 0 or 1?
15. Why isn't it easy to develop an iterative solution for the permutation generator?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E13.12, E13.13.

For example, the Java compiler is written in Java, and you can use it to compile itself. Or, as a simpler example, a word counting program can count the words in its own source code.

When  $K$  gets the answer from  $H$  that  $R$  halts when applied to itself, it is programmed to enter an infinite loop. Otherwise  $K$  exits. In Java, the program might look like this:

```
public class Killer
{
    public static void main(
        String[] args)
    {
        String r = read program input;
        HaltChecker checker =
            new HaltChecker();
        if (checker.check(r, r))
        {
            while (true)
                { // Infinite loop
                }
        }
        else
        {
            return;
        }
    }
}
```

Now ask yourself: What does the halt checker answer when asked whether  $K$  halts when given  $K$  as the input? Maybe it finds out that  $K$  gets into an infinite loop with such an input. But wait, that can't be right. That would mean that `checker.check(r, r)` returns false when `r` is the program code of  $K$ . As you can plainly see, in that case, the killer method returns, so  $K$  didn't get into an infinite loop. That shows that  $K$  must halt when analyzing itself, so

`checker.check(r, r)` should return true. But then the killer method doesn't terminate—it goes into an infinite loop. That shows that it is logically impossible to implement a program that can check whether *every* program halts on a particular input.

It is sobering to know that there are *limits to computing*. There are problems that no computer program, no matter how ingenious, can answer.

Theoretical computer scientists are working on other research involving the nature of computation. One important question that remains unsettled

to this day deals with problems that in practice are very time-consuming to solve. It may be that these problems are intrinsically hard, in which case it would be pointless to try to look for better algorithms. Such theoretical research can have important practical applications. For example, right now, nobody knows whether the most common encryption schemes used today could be broken by discovering a new algorithm. Knowing that no fast algorithms exist for breaking a particular code could make us feel more comfortable about the security of encryption.

Program

| Instruction number | If tape symbol is | Replace with | Then move head | Then go to instruction |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------|----------------|------------------------|
| 1                  | 0                 | 2            | right          | 2                      |
|                    | 1                 | 1            | left           | 4                      |
| 2                  | 0                 | 0            | right          | 2                      |
|                    | 1                 | 1            | right          | 2                      |
| 3                  | 2                 | 0            | left           | 3                      |
|                    | 0                 | 0            | left           | 3                      |
| 4                  | 1                 | 1            | left           | 3                      |
|                    | 2                 | 2            | right          | 1                      |
| 5                  | 1                 | 1            | right          | 5                      |
|                    | 2                 | 0            | left           | 4                      |

Control unit

Read/write head



The Turing Machine

## 13.5 Mutual Recursion

In a mutual recursion, a set of cooperating methods calls each other repeatedly.

In the preceding examples, a method called itself to solve a simpler problem. Sometimes, a set of cooperating methods calls each other in a recursive fashion. In this section, we will explore such a **mutual recursion**. This technique is significantly more advanced than the simple recursion that we discussed in the preceding sections.

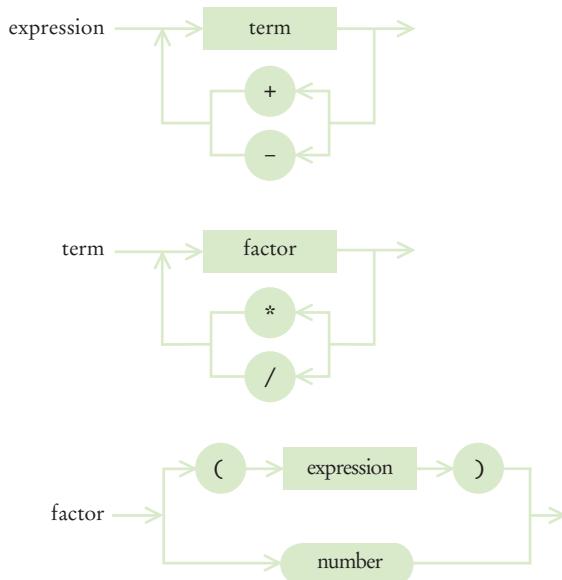
We will develop a program that can compute the values of arithmetic expressions such as

```
3+4*5
(3+4)*5
1-(2-(3-(4-5)))
```

Computing such an expression is complicated by the fact that `*` and `/` bind more strongly than `+` and `-`, and that parentheses can be used to group subexpressions.

Figure 3 shows a set of **syntax diagrams** that describes the syntax of these expressions. To see how the syntax diagrams work, consider the expression `3+4*5`:

- Enter the *expression* syntax diagram. The arrow points directly to *term*, giving you no alternative.
- Enter the *term* syntax diagram. The arrow points to *factor*, again giving you no choice.
- Enter the *factor* syntax diagram. You have two choices: to follow the top branch or the bottom branch. Because the first input token is the number 3 and not a `(`, follow the bottom branch.
- Accept the input token because it matches the number. The unprocessed input is now `+4*5`.
- Follow the arrow out of *number* to the end of *factor*. As in a method call, you now back up, returning to the end of the *factor* element of the *term* diagram.



**Figure 3** Syntax Diagrams for Evaluating an Expression

- Now you have another choice—to loop back in the *term* diagram, or to exit. The next input token is a `+`, and it matches neither the `*` or the `/` that would be required to loop back. So you exit, returning to *expression*.
- Again, you have a choice, to loop back or to exit. Now the `+` matches one of the choices in the loop. Accept the `+` in the input and move back to the *term* element. The remaining input is `4*5`.

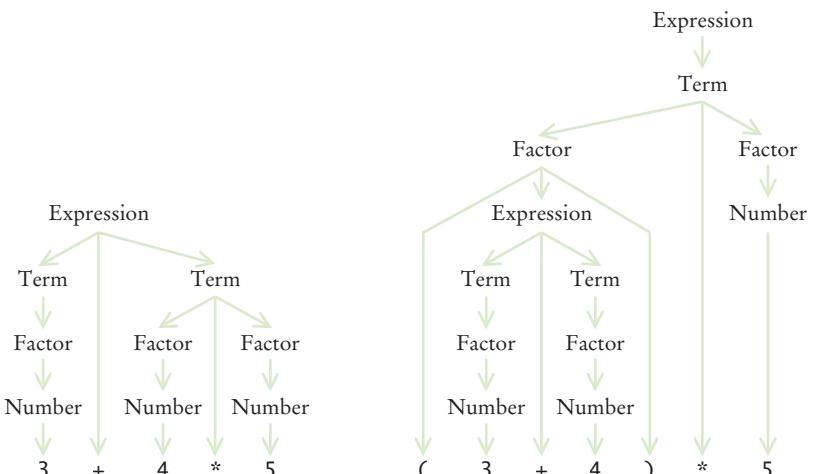
In this fashion, an expression is broken down into a sequence of terms, separated by `+` or `-`, each term is broken down into a sequence of factors, each separated by `*` or `/`, and each factor is either a parenthesized expression or a number. You can draw this breakdown as a tree. Figure 4 shows how the expressions `3+4*5` and `(3+4)*5` are derived from the syntax diagram.

Why do the syntax diagrams help us compute the value of the tree? If you look at the syntax trees, you will see that they accurately represent which operations should be carried out first. In the first tree, `4` and `5` should be multiplied, and then the result should be added to `3`. In the second tree, `3` and `4` should be added, and the result should be multiplied by `5`.

At the end of this section, you will find the implementation of the `Evaluator` class, which evaluates these expressions. The `Evaluator` makes use of an `ExpressionTokenizer` class, which breaks up an input string into **tokens**—numbers, operators, and parentheses. (For simplicity, we only accept positive integers as numbers, and we don't allow spaces in the input.)

When you call `nextToken`, the next input token is returned as a string. We also supply another method, `peekToken`, which allows you to see the next token without consuming it. To see why the `peekToken` method is necessary, consider the syntax diagram of the *term* type. If the next token is a `"*"` or `"/"`, you want to continue adding and subtracting terms. But if the next token is another character, such as a `"+"` or `"+"`, you want to stop without actually consuming it, so that the token can be considered later.

To compute the value of an expression, we implement three methods: `getExpressionValue`, `getTermValue`, and `getFactorValue`. The `getExpressionValue` method first calls `getTermValue` to get the value of the first term of the expression. Then it



**Figure 4** Syntax Trees for Two Expressions

checks whether the next input token is one of + or -. If so, it calls `getTermValue` again and adds or subtracts it.

```
public int getExpressionValue()
{
    int value = getTermValue();
    boolean done = false;
    while (!done)
    {
        String next = tokenizer.peekToken();
        if ("+".equals(next) || "-".equals(next))
        {
            tokenizer.nextToken(); // Discard "+" or "-"
            int value2 = getTermValue();
            if ("+".equals(next)) { value = value + value2; }
            else { value = value - value2; }
        }
        else
        {
            done = true;
        }
    }
    return value;
}
```

The `getTermValue` method calls `getFactorValue` in the same way, multiplying or dividing the factor values.

Finally, the `getFactorValue` method checks whether the next input is a number, or whether it begins with a ( token. In the first case, the value is simply the value of the number. However, in the second case, the `getFactorValue` method makes a recursive call to `getExpressionValue`. Thus, the three methods are mutually recursive.

```
public int getFactorValue()
{
    int value;
    String next = tokenizer.peekToken();
    if ("(".equals(next))
    {
        tokenizer.nextToken(); // Discard "("
        value = getExpressionValue();
        tokenizer.nextToken(); // Discard ")"
    }
    else
    {
        value = Integer.parseInt(tokenizer.nextToken());
    }
    return value;
}
```

To see the mutual recursion clearly, trace through the expression  $(3+4)*5$ :

- `getExpressionValue` calls `getTermValue`
- `getTermValue` calls `getFactorValue`
  - `getFactorValue` consumes the ( input
  - `getFactorValue` calls `getExpressionValue`
    - `getExpressionValue` returns eventually with the value of 7, having consumed  $3 + 4$ . This is the recursive call.
  - `getFactorValue` consumes the ) input

- `getFactorValue` returns 7
- `getTermValue` consumes the inputs \* and 5 and returns 35
- `getExpressionValue` returns 35

As always with a recursive solution, you need to ensure that the recursion terminates. In this situation, that is easy to see when you consider the situation in which `getExpressionValue` calls itself. The second call works on a shorter subexpression than the original expression. At each recursive call, at least some of the tokens of the input string are consumed, so eventually the recursion must come to an end.

### section\_5/Evaluator.java

```

1  /**
2   * A class that can compute the value of an arithmetic expression.
3  */
4  public class Evaluator
5  {
6      private ExpressionTokenizer tokenizer;
7
8      /**
9       * Constructs an evaluator.
10      * @param anExpression a string containing the expression
11      * to be evaluated
12     */
13    public Evaluator(String anExpression)
14    {
15        tokenizer = new ExpressionTokenizer(anExpression);
16    }
17
18    /**
19     * Evaluates the expression.
20     * @return the value of the expression
21    */
22    public int getExpressionValue()
23    {
24        int value = getTermValue();
25        boolean done = false;
26        while (!done)
27        {
28            String next = tokenizer.peekToken();
29            if ("+".equals(next) || "-".equals(next))
30            {
31                tokenizer.nextToken(); // Discard "+" or "-"
32                int value2 = getTermValue();
33                if ("+".equals(next)) { value = value + value2; }
34                else { value = value - value2; }
35            }
36            else
37            {
38                done = true;
39            }
40        }
41        return value;
42    }
43
44    /**
45     * Evaluates the next term found in the expression.
46     * @return the value of the term
47    */

```

```

48  public int getTermValue()
49  {
50      int value = getFactorValue();
51      boolean done = false;
52      while (!done)
53      {
54          String next = tokenizer.peekToken();
55          if ("*".equals(next) || "/".equals(next))
56          {
57              tokenizer.nextToken();
58              int value2 = getFactorValue();
59              if ("*".equals(next)) { value = value * value2; }
60              else { value = value / value2; }
61          }
62          else
63          {
64              done = true;
65          }
66      }
67      return value;
68  }
69
70 /**
71     Evaluates the next factor found in the expression.
72     @return the value of the factor
73 */
74 public int getFactorValue()
75 {
76     int value;
77     String next = tokenizer.peekToken();
78     if ("(".equals(next))
79     {
80         tokenizer.nextToken(); // Discard "("
81         value = getExpressionValue();
82         tokenizer.nextToken(); // Discard ")"
83     }
84     else
85     {
86         value = Integer.parseInt(tokenizer.nextToken());
87     }
88     return value;
89 }
90 }
```

### section\_5/ExpressionTokenizer.java

```

1 /**
2     This class breaks up a string describing an expression
3     into tokens: numbers, parentheses, and operators.
4 */
5 public class ExpressionTokenizer
6 {
7     private String input;
8     private int start; // The start of the current token
9     private int end; // The position after the end of the current token
10
11 /**
12     Constructs a tokenizer.
13     @param anInput the string to tokenize
14 */
```

```

15 public ExpressionTokenizer(String anInput)
16 {
17     input = anInput;
18     start = 0;
19     end = 0;
20     nextToken(); // Find the first token
21 }
22
23 /**
24 * Peeks at the next token without consuming it.
25 * @return the next token or null if there are no more tokens
26 */
27 public String peekToken()
28 {
29     if (start >= input.length()) { return null; }
30     else { return input.substring(start, end); }
31 }
32
33 /**
34 * Gets the next token and moves the tokenizer to the following token.
35 * @return the next token or null if there are no more tokens
36 */
37 public String nextToken()
38 {
39     String r = peekToken();
40     start = end;
41     if (start >= input.length()) { return r; }
42     if (Character.isDigit(input.charAt(start)))
43     {
44         end = start + 1;
45         while (end < input.length()
46                 && Character.isDigit(input.charAt(end)))
47         {
48             end++;
49         }
50     }
51     else
52     {
53         end = start + 1;
54     }
55     return r;
56 }
57 }
```

### section\_5/ExpressionCalculator.java

```

1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 /**
4 * This program calculates the value of an expression
5 * consisting of numbers, arithmetic operators, and parentheses.
6 */
7 public class ExpressionCalculator
8 {
9     public static void main(String[] args)
10    {
11        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
12        System.out.print("Enter an expression: ");
13        String input = in.nextLine();
14        Evaluator e = new Evaluator(input);
```

```

15     int value = e.getExpressionValue();
16     System.out.println(input + "=" + value);
17   }
18 }
```

**Program Run**

Enter an expression: 3+4\*5  
3+4\*5=23

**SELF CHECK**

16. What is the difference between a term and a factor? Why do we need both concepts?
17. Why does the expression evaluator use mutual recursion?
18. What happens if you try to evaluate the illegal expression  $3+4*)5$ ? Specifically, which method throws an exception?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R13.11, E13.14.

## 13.6 Backtracking

Backtracking examines partial solutions, abandoning unsuitable ones and returning to consider other candidates.

Backtracking is a problem solving technique that builds up partial solutions that get increasingly closer to the goal. If a partial solution cannot be completed, one abandons it and returns to examining the other candidates.

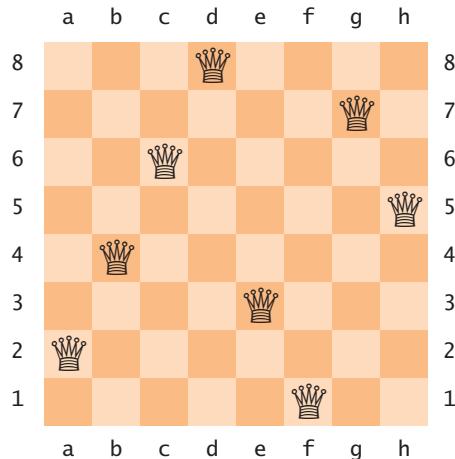
Backtracking can be used to solve crossword puzzles, escape from mazes, or find solutions to systems that are constrained by rules. In order to employ backtracking for a particular problem, we need two characteristic properties:

1. A procedure to examine a partial solution and determine whether to
  - Accept it as an actual solution.
  - Abandon it (either because it violates some rules or because it is clear that it can never lead to a valid solution).
  - Continue extending it.
2. A procedure to extend a partial solution, generating one or more solutions that come closer to the goal.



*In a backtracking algorithm, one explores all paths towards a solution. When one path is a dead end, one needs to backtrack and try another choice.*

**Figure 5**  
A Solution to the Eight Queens Problem



Backtracking can then be expressed with the following recursive algorithm:

```
Solve(partialSolution)
  Examine(partialSolution).
  If accepted
    Add partialSolution to the list of solutions.
  Else if continuing
    For each p in extend(partialSolution)
      Solve(p).
```

Of course, the processes of examining and extending a partial solution depend on the nature of the problem.

As an example, we will develop a program that finds all solutions to the eight queens problem: the task of positioning eight queens on a chess board so that none of them attacks another according to the rules of chess. In other words, there are no two queens on the same row, column, or diagonal. Figure 5 shows a solution.

In this problem, it is easy to examine a partial solution. If two queens attack another, reject it. Otherwise, if it has eight queens, accept it. Otherwise, continue.

It is also easy to extend a partial solution. Simply add another queen on an empty square.

However, in the interest of efficiency, we will be a bit more systematic about the extension process. We will place the first queen in row 1, the next queen in row 2, and so on.

We provide a class `PartialSolution` that collects the queens in a partial solution, and that has methods to examine and extend the solution:

```
public class PartialSolution
{
  private Queen[] queens;

  public int examine() { . . . }
  public PartialSolution[] extend() { . . . }
}
```

The `examine` method simply checks whether two queens attack each other:

```
public int examine()
{
```

```

        for (int i = 0; i < queens.length; i++)
    {
        for (int j = i + 1; j < queens.length; j++)
        {
            if (queens[i].attacks(queens[j])) { return ABANDON; }
        }
    }
    if (queens.length == NQUEENS) { return ACCEPT; }
    else { return CONTINUE; }
}

```

The extend method takes a given solution and makes eight copies of it. Each copy gets a new queen in a different column.

```

public PartialSolution[] extend()
{
    // Generate a new solution for each column
    PartialSolution[] result = new PartialSolution[NQUEENS];
    for (int i = 0; i < result.length; i++)
    {
        int size = queens.length;

        // The new solution has one more row than this one
        result[i] = new PartialSolution(size + 1);

        // Copy this solution into the new one
        for (int j = 0; j < size; j++)
        {
            result[i].queens[j] = queens[j];
        }

        // Append the new queen into the ith column
        result[i].queens[size] = new Queen(size, i);
    }
    return result;
}

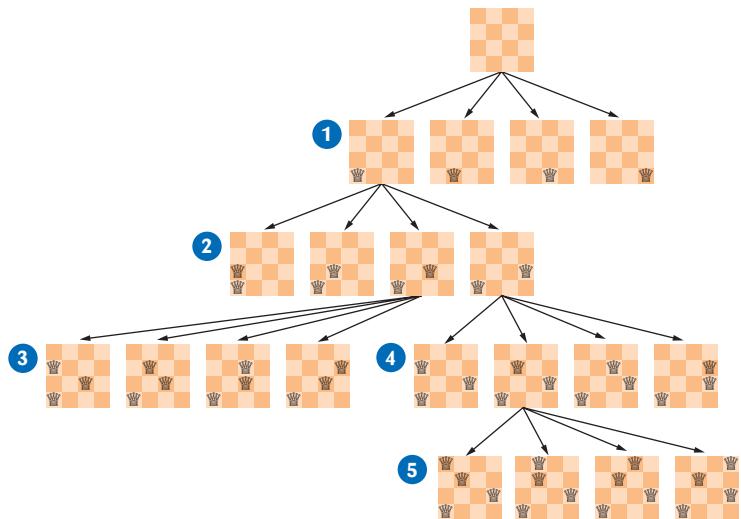
```

You will find the Queen class at the end of the section. The only challenge is to determine when two queens attack each other diagonally. Here is an easy way of checking that. Compute the slope and check whether it is  $\pm 1$ . This condition can be simplified as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\text{row}_2 - \text{row}_1)/(\text{column}_2 - \text{column}_1) &= \pm 1 \\
 \text{row}_2 - \text{row}_1 &= \pm(\text{column}_2 - \text{column}_1) \\
 |\text{row}_2 - \text{row}_1| &= |\text{column}_2 - \text{column}_1|
 \end{aligned}$$

Have a close look at the solve method in the EightQueens class on page 619. The method is a straightforward translation of the pseudocode for backtracking. Note how there is nothing specific about the eight queens problem in this method—it works for any partial solution with an examine and extend method (see Exercise E13.15).

Figure 6 shows the solve method in action for a four queens problem. Starting from a blank board, there are four partial solutions with a queen in row 1 ①. When the queen is in column 1, there are four partial solutions with a queen in row 2 ②. Two of them are immediately abandoned immediately. The other two lead to partial solutions with three queens ③ and ④, all but one of which are abandoned. One partial solution is extended to four queens, but all of those are abandoned as well ⑤.

**Figure 6** Backtracking in the Four Queens Problem

Then the algorithm backtracks, giving up on a queen in position a1, instead extending the solution with the queen in position b1 (not shown).

When you run the program, it lists 92 solutions, including the one in Figure 5. Exercise E13.16 asks you to remove those that are rotations or reflections of another.

### **section\_6/PartialSolution.java**

```

1 import java.util.Arrays;
2
3 /**
4   A partial solution to the eight queens puzzle.
5 */
6 public class PartialSolution
7 {
8   private Queen[] queens;
9   private static final int NQUEENS = 8;
10
11  public static final int ACCEPT = 1;
12  public static final int ABANDON = 2;
13  public static final int CONTINUE = 3;
14
15 /**
16   Constructs a partial solution of a given size.
17   @param size the size
18 */
19  public PartialSolution(int size)
20  {
21    queens = new Queen[size];
22  }
23
24 /**
25   Examines a partial solution.
26   @return one of ACCEPT, ABANDON, CONTINUE
27 */
28  public int examine()
29  {
  
```

```

30     for (int i = 0; i < queens.length; i++)
31     {
32         for (int j = i + 1; j < queens.length; j++)
33         {
34             if (queens[i].attacks(queens[j])) { return ABANDON; }
35         }
36     }
37     if (queens.length == NQUEENS) { return ACCEPT; }
38     else { return CONTINUE; }
39 }
40
41 /**
42  * Yields all extensions of this partial solution.
43  * @return an array of partial solutions that extend this solution.
44  */
45 public PartialSolution[] extend()
46 {
47     // Generate a new solution for each column
48     PartialSolution[] result = new PartialSolution[NQUEENS];
49     for (int i = 0; i < result.length; i++)
50     {
51         int size = queens.length;
52
53         // The new solution has one more row than this one
54         result[i] = new PartialSolution(size + 1);
55
56         // Copy this solution into the new one
57         for (int j = 0; j < size; j++)
58         {
59             result[i].queens[j] = queens[j];
60         }
61
62         // Append the new queen into the ith column
63         result[i].queens[size] = new Queen(size, i);
64     }
65     return result;
66 }
67
68 public String toString() { return Arrays.toString(queens); }
69 }

```

### section\_6/Queen.java

```

1  /**
2   * A queen in the eight queens problem.
3   */
4  public class Queen
5  {
6      private int row;
7      private int column;
8
9      /**
10      * Constructs a queen at a given position.
11      * @param r the row
12      * @param c the column
13      */
14      public Queen(int r, int c)
15      {

```

```

16     row = r;
17     column = c;
18 }
19
20 /**
21  * Checks whether this queen attacks another.
22  * @param other the other queen
23  * @return true if this and the other queen are in the same
24  *         row, column, or diagonal
25 */
26 public boolean attacks(Queen other)
27 {
28     return row == other.row
29         || column == other.column
30         || Math.abs(row - other.row) == Math.abs(column - other.column);
31 }
32
33 public String toString()
34 {
35     return "" + "abcdefgh".charAt(column) + (row + 1) ;
36 }
37

```

### section\_6/EightQueens.java

```

1  /**
2   * This class solves the eight queens problem using backtracking.
3   */
4  public class EightQueens
5  {
6      public static void main(String[] args)
7      {
8          solve(new PartialSolution(0));
9      }
10
11 /**
12  * Prints all solutions to the problem that can be extended from
13  * a given partial solution.
14  * @param sol the partial solution
15  */
16 public static void solve(PartialSolution sol)
17 {
18     int exam = sol.examine();
19     if (exam == PartialSolution.ACCEPT)
20     {
21         System.out.println(sol);
22     }
23     else if (exam == PartialSolution.CONTINUE)
24     {
25         for (PartialSolution p : sol.extend())
26         {
27             solve(p);
28         }
29     }
30 }
31

```

**Program Run**

```
[a1, e2, h3, f4, c5, g6, b7, d8]
[a1, f2, h3, c4, g5, d6, b7, e8]
[a1, g2, d3, f4, h5, b6, e7, c8]
.
.
.
[f1, a2, e3, b4, h5, c6, g7, d8]
.
.
.
[h1, c2, a3, f4, b5, e6, g7, d8]
[h1, d2, a3, c4, f5, b6, g7, e8]
```

(92 solutions)

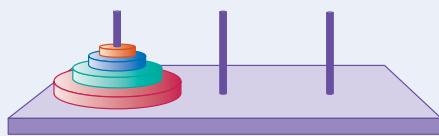
**SELF CHECK**

- 19.** Why does *j* begin at *i* + 1 in the *examine* method?
- 20.** Continue tracing the four queens problem as shown in Figure 6. How many solutions are there with the first queen in position *a*2?
- 21.** How many solutions are there altogether for the four queens problem?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E13.15, E13.18, E13.19.

**WORKED EXAMPLE 13.2****Towers of Hanoi**

No discussion of recursion would be complete without the “Towers of Hanoi”. Learn how to solve this classic puzzle with an elegant recursive solution. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 13.2.

**CHAPTER SUMMARY****Understand the control flow in a recursive computation.**

- A recursive computation solves a problem by using the solution to the same problem with simpler inputs.
- For a recursion to terminate, there must be special cases for the simplest values.

**Identify recursive helper methods for solving a problem.**

- Sometimes it is easier to find a recursive solution if you make a slight change to the original problem.

**Contrast the efficiency of recursive and non-recursive algorithms.**

- Occasionally, a recursive solution is much slower than its iterative counterpart. However, in most cases, the recursive solution is only slightly slower.
- In many cases, a recursive solution is easier to understand and implement correctly than an iterative solution.

**Review a complex recursion example that cannot be solved with a simple loop.**

- The permutations of a string can be obtained more naturally through recursion than with a loop.

**Recognize the phenomenon of mutual recursion in an expression evaluator.**

- In a mutual recursion, a set of cooperating methods calls each other repeatedly.

**Use backtracking to solve problems that require trying out multiple paths.**

- Backtracking examines partial solutions, abandoning unsuitable ones and returning to consider other candidates.

**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

- **R13.1** Define the terms
  - a. Recursion
  - b. Iteration
  - c. Infinite recursion
  - d. Recursive helper method
  
- **R13.2** Outline, but do not implement, a recursive solution for finding the smallest value in an array.
  
- **R13.3** Outline, but do not implement, a recursive solution for sorting an array of numbers.  
*Hint:* First find the smallest value in the array.
  
- **R13.4** Outline, but do not implement, a recursive solution for generating all subsets of the set  $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ .
  
- **R13.5** Exercise P13.2 shows an iterative way of generating all permutations of the sequence  $(0, 1, \dots, n - 1)$ . Explain why the algorithm produces the correct result.
  
- **R13.6** Write a recursive definition of  $x^n$ , where  $n \geq 0$ , similar to the recursive definition of the Fibonacci numbers. *Hint:* How do you compute  $x^n$  from  $x^{n-1}$ ? How does the recursion terminate?
  
- **R13.7** Improve upon Exercise R13.6 by computing  $x^n$  as  $(x^{n/2})^2$  if  $n$  is even. Why is this approach significantly faster? *Hint:* Compute  $x^{1023}$  and  $x^{1024}$  both ways.

- **R13.8** Write a recursive definition of  $n! = 1 \times 2 \times \dots \times n$ , similar to the recursive definition of the Fibonacci numbers.
- **R13.9** Find out how often the recursive version of `fib` calls itself. Keep a static variable `fibCount` and increment it once in every call to `fib`. What is the relationship between `fib(n)` and `fibCount`?
- **R13.10** Let `moves(n)` be the number of moves required to solve the Towers of Hanoi problem (see Worked Example 13.2). Find a formula that expresses `moves(n)` in terms of `moves(n - 1)`. Then show that  $\text{moves}(n) = 2^n - 1$ .
- **R13.11** Trace the expression evaluator program from Section 13.5 with inputs  $3 - 4 + 5$ ,  $3 - (4 + 5)$ ,  $(3 - 4) * 5$ , and  $3 * 4 + 5 * 6$ .

### PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E13.1** Given a class `Rectangle` with instance variables `width` and `height`, provide a recursive `getArea` method. Construct a rectangle whose width is one less than the original and call its `getArea` method.
- **E13.2** Given a class `Square` with an instance variable `width`, provide a recursive `getArea` method. Construct a square whose width is one less than the original and call its `getArea` method.
- **E13.3** Write a recursive method `String reverse(String text)` that reverses a string. For example, `reverse("Hello!")` returns the string "`!olleH`". Implement a recursive solution by removing the first character, reversing the remaining text, and combining the two.
- **E13.4** Redo Exercise E13.3 with a recursive helper method that reverses a substring of the message `text`.
- **E13.5** Implement the `reverse` method of Exercise E13.3 as an iteration.
- **E13.6** Use recursion to implement a method

```
public static boolean find(String text, String str)
```

that tests whether a given text contains a string. For example, `find("Mississippi", "sip")` returns true.

*Hint:* If the text starts with the string you want to match, then you are done. If not, consider the text that you obtain by removing the first character.

- **E13.7** Use recursion to implement a method

```
public static int indexOf(String text, String str)
```

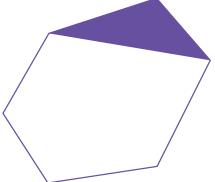
that returns the starting position of the first substring of the text that matches `str`. Return `-1` if `str` is not a substring of the text.

For example, `s.indexOf("Mississippi", "sip")` returns 6.

*Hint:* This is a bit trickier than Exercise E13.6, because you must keep track of how far the match is from the beginning of the text. Make that value a parameter variable of a helper method.

- **E13.8** Using recursion, find the largest element in an array.

*Hint:* Find the largest element in the subset containing all but the last element. Then compare that maximum to the value of the last element.

- **E13.9** Using recursion, compute the sum of all values in an array.
  - **E13.10** Using recursion, compute the area of a polygon. Cut off a triangle and use the fact that a triangle with corners  $(x_1, y_1)$ ,  $(x_2, y_2)$ ,  $(x_3, y_3)$  has area
- $$\frac{|x_1y_2 + x_2y_3 + x_3y_1 - y_1x_2 - y_2x_3 - y_3x_1|}{2}$$
- 
- E13.11** The following method was known to the ancient Greeks for computing square roots. Given a value  $x > 0$  and a guess  $g$  for the square root, a better guess is  $(g + x/g) / 2$ . Write a recursive helper method `public static squareRootGuess(double x, double g)`. If  $g^2$  is approximately equal to  $x$ , return  $g$ , otherwise, return `squareRootGuess` with the better guess. Then write a method `public static squareRoot(double x)` that uses the helper method.
- E13.12** Implement a `SubstringGenerator` that generates all substrings of a string. For example, the substrings of the string "rum" are the seven strings
- ```
"r", "ru", "rum", "u", "um", "m", ""
```
- Hint:* First enumerate all substrings that start with the first character. There are  $n$  of them if the string has length  $n$ . Then enumerate the substrings of the string that you obtain by removing the first character.
- E13.13** Implement a `SubsetGenerator` that generates all subsets of the characters of a string. For example, the subsets of the characters of the string "rum" are the eight strings
- ```
"rum", "ru", "rm", "r", "um", "u", "m", ""
```
- Note that the subsets don't have to be substrings—for example, "rm" isn't a substring of "rum".
- E13.14** Extend the expression evaluator in Section 13.5 so that it can handle the % operator as well as a “raise to a power” operator  $\wedge$ . For example,  $2 \wedge 3$  should evaluate to 8. As in mathematics, raising to a power should bind more strongly than multiplication:  $5 * 2 \wedge 3$  is 40.
- E13.15** The backtracking algorithm will work for any problem whose partial solutions can be examined and extended. Provide a `PartialSolution` interface type with methods `examine` and `extend`, a `solve` method that works with this interface type, and a class `EightQueensPartialSolution` that implements the interface.
- E13.16** Refine the program for solving the eight queens problem so that rotations and reflections of previously displayed solutions are not shown. Your program should display twelve unique solutions.
- E13.17** Refine the program for solving the eight queens problem so that the solutions are written to an HTML file, using tables with black and white background for the board and the Unicode character ♕ '\u2655' for the white queen.
- E13.18** Generalize the program for solving the eight queens problem to the  $n$  queens problem. Your program should prompt for the value of  $n$  and display the solutions.
- E13.19** Using backtracking, write a program that solves summation puzzles in which each letter should be replaced by a digit, such as

send + more = money

Other examples are base + ball = games and kyoto + osaka = tokyo.

- E13.20** The recursive computation of Fibonacci numbers can be speeded up significantly by keeping track of the values that have already been computed. Provide an implementation of the `fib` method that uses this strategy. Whenever you return a new value, also store it in an auxiliary array. However, before embarking on a computation, consult the array to find whether the result has already been computed. Compare the running time of your improved implementation with that of the original recursive implementation and the loop implementation.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- P13.1** In this exercise, you will change the `permutations` method of Section 13.4 (which computed all permutations at once) to a `PermutationIterator` (which computes them one at a time).

```
public class PermutationIterator
{
    public PermutationIterator(String s) { . . . }
    public String nextPermutation() { . . . }
    public boolean hasMorePermutations() { . . . }
}
```

Here is how you would print out all permutations of the string "eat":

```
PermutationIterator iter = new PermutationIterator("eat");
while (iter.hasMorePermutations())
{
    System.out.println(iter.nextPermutation());
}
```

Now we need a way to iterate through the permutations recursively. Consider the string "eat". As before, we'll generate all permutations that start with the letter 'e', then those that start with 'a', and finally those that start with 't'. How do we generate the permutations that start with 'e'? Make another `PermutationIterator` object (called `tailIterator`) that iterates through the permutations of the substring "at". In the `nextPermutation` method, simply ask `tailIterator` what its next permutation is, and then add the 'e' at the front. However, there is one special case. When the tail generator runs out of permutations, all permutations that start with the current letter have been enumerated. Then

- Increment the current position.
- Compute the tail string that contains all letters except for the current one.
- Make a new permutation iterator for the tail string.

You are done when the current position has reached the end of the string.

- P13.2** The following class generates all permutations of the numbers  $0, 1, 2, \dots, n - 1$ , without using recursion.

```
public class NumberPermutationIterator
{
    private int[] a;

    public NumberPermutationIterator(int n)
    {
        a = new int[n];
        done = false;
        for (int i = 0; i < n; i++) { a[i] = i; }
```

```

}

public int[] nextPermutation()
{
    if (a.length <= 1) { return a; }

    for (int i = a.length - 1; i > 0; i--)
    {
        if (a[i - 1] < a[i])
        {
            int j = a.length - 1;
            while (a[i - 1] > a[j]) { j--; }
            swap(i - 1, j);
            reverse(i, a.length - 1);
            return a;
        }
    }
    return a;
}

public boolean hasMorePermutations()
{
    if (a.length <= 1) { return false; }
    for (int i = a.length - 1; i > 0; i--)
    {
        if (a[i - 1] < a[i]) { return true; }
    }
    return false;
}

public void swap(int i, int j)
{
    int temp = a[i];
    a[i] = a[j];
    a[j] = temp;
}

public void reverse(int i, int j)
{
    while (i < j) { swap(i, j); i++; j--; }
}
}

```

The algorithm uses the fact that the set to be permuted consists of distinct numbers. Thus, you cannot use the same algorithm to compute the permutations of the characters in a string. You can, however, use this class to get all permutations of the character positions and then compute a string whose *i*th character is `word.charAt(a[i])`. Use this approach to reimplement the `PermutationIterator` of Exercise P13.1 without recursion.

- ... P13.3** Implement an iterator that produces the moves for the Towers of Hanoi puzzle described in Worked Example 13.2. Provide methods `hasMoreMoves` and `nextMove`. The `nextMove` method should yield a string describing the next move. For example, the following code prints all moves needed to move five disks from peg 1 to peg 3:

```

DiskMover mover = new DiskMover(5, 1, 3);
while (mover.hasMoreMoves())
{
    System.out.println(mover.nextMove());
}

```

*Hint:* A disk mover that moves a single disk from one peg to another simply has a `nextMove` method that returns a string

Move disk from peg `source` to `target`

A disk mover with more than one disk to move must work harder. It needs another `DiskMover` to help it move the first  $d - 1$  disks. Then `nextMove` asks that disk mover for its next move until it is done. Then the `nextMove` method issues a command to move the  $d$ th disk. Finally, it constructs another disk mover that generates the remaining moves.

It helps to keep track of the state of the disk mover:

- `BEFORE_LARGEST`: A helper mover moves the smaller pile to the other peg.
- `LARGEST`: Move the largest disk from the source to the destination.
- `AFTER_LARGEST`: The helper mover moves the smaller pile from the other peg to the target.
- `DONE`: All moves are done.

- **P13.4** *Escaping a Maze.* You are currently located inside a maze. The walls of the maze are indicated by asterisks (\*).

```
* *****  
*   * *  
* ***** *  
* * *   *  
* * * *** *  
*   *   *  
*** * * *  
*   * *  
***** * *
```

Use the following recursive approach to check whether you can escape from the maze: If you are at an exit, return true. Recursively check whether you can escape from one of the empty neighboring locations without visiting the current location. This method merely tests whether there is a path out of the maze. Extra credit if you can print out a path that leads to an exit.

- **P13.5** Using the `PartialSolution` interface and `solve` method from Exercise E13.15, provide a class `MazePartialSolution` for solving the maze escape problem of Exercise P13.4.

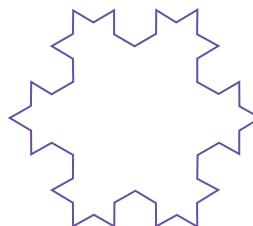
- **Graphics P13.6** *The Koch Snowflake.* A snowflake-like shape is recursively defined as follows. Start with an equilateral triangle:



Next, increase the size by a factor of three and replace each straight line with four line segments:



Repeat the process:



Write a program that draws the iterations of the snowflake shape. Supply a button that, when clicked, produces the next iteration.

### ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

- 1.** Suppose we omit the statement. When computing the area of a triangle with width 1, we compute the area of the triangle with width 0 as 0, and then add 1, to arrive at the correct area.

- 2.** You would compute the smaller area recursively, then return

`smallerArea + width + width - 1.`



Of course, it would be simpler to compute the area simply as `width * width`. The results are identical because

$$1 + 0 + 2 + 1 + 3 + 2 + \dots + n + n - 1 = \\ \frac{n(n+1)}{2} + \frac{(n-1)n}{2} = n^2$$

- 3.** There is no provision for stopping the recursion. When a number  $< 10$  isn't 8, then the method should return `false` and stop.

**4.** `public static int pow2(int n)`  
`{`  
 `if (n <= 0) { return 1; } // 20 is 1`  
 `else { return 2 * pow2(n - 1); }`  
`}`

**5.** `mystery(4)` calls `mystery(3)`  
 `mystery(3)` calls `mystery(2)`  
 `mystery(2)` calls `mystery(1)`  
 `mystery(1)` calls `mystery(0)`  
 `mystery(0)` returns 0.  
 `mystery(1)` returns  $0 + 1 * 1 = 1$   
 `mystery(2)` returns  $1 + 2 * 2 = 5$   
 `mystery(3)` returns  $5 + 3 * 3 = 14$   
 `mystery(4)` returns  $14 + 4 * 4 = 30$

- 6.** No—the second one could be given a different name such as `substringIsPalindrome`.

- 7.** When `start >= end`, that is, when the investigated string is either empty or has length 1.
- 8.** A `sumHelper(int[] a, int start, int size)`. The method calls `sumHelper(a, start + 1, size)`.
- 9.** Call `sum(a, size - 1)` and add the *last* element, `a[size - 1]`.
- 10.** The loop is slightly faster. It is even faster to simply compute `width * (width + 1) / 2`.
- 11.** No, the recursive solution is about as efficient as the iterative approach. Both require  $n - 1$  multiplications to compute  $n!$ .
- 12.** The recursive algorithm performs about as well as the loop. Unlike the recursive Fibonacci algorithm, this algorithm doesn't call itself again on the same input. For example, the sum of the array 1 4 9 16 25 36 49 64 is computed as the sum of 1 4 9 16 and 25 36 49 64, then as the sums of 1 4, 9 16, 25 36, and 49 64, which can be computed directly.
- 13.** They are b followed by the six permutations of eat, e followed by the six permutations of bat, a followed by the six permutations of bet, and t followed by the six permutations of bea.
- 14.** Simply change `if (word.length() == 0)` to `if (word.length() <= 1)`, because a word with a single letter is also its sole permutation.
- 15.** An iterative solution would have a loop whose body computes the next permutation from the previous ones. But there is no obvious mechanism for getting the next permutation. For example, if you already found permutations eat, eta, and aet, it is not clear how you use that information to get the next permutation. Actually, there is an ingenious mechanism for doing just that, but it is far from obvious—see Exercise P13.2.
- 16.** Factors are combined by multiplicative operators (`*` and `/`); terms are combined by additive operators (`+`, `-`). We need both so that multiplication can bind more strongly than addition.

17. To handle parenthesized expressions, such as  $2+3*(4+5)$ . The subexpression  $4+5$  is handled by a recursive call to `getExpressionValue`.
18. The `Integer.parseInt` call in `getFactorValue` throws an exception when it is given the string "`)`".
19. We want to check whether any `queen[i]` attacks any `queen[j]`, but attacking is symmetric. That is, we can choose to compare only those for which  $i < j$  (or, alternatively, those for which  $i > j$ ). We don't want to call the `attacks` method when  $i$  equals  $j$ ; it would return true.

20. One solution:



21. Two solutions: The one from Self Check 20, and its mirror image.

# SORTING AND SEARCHING

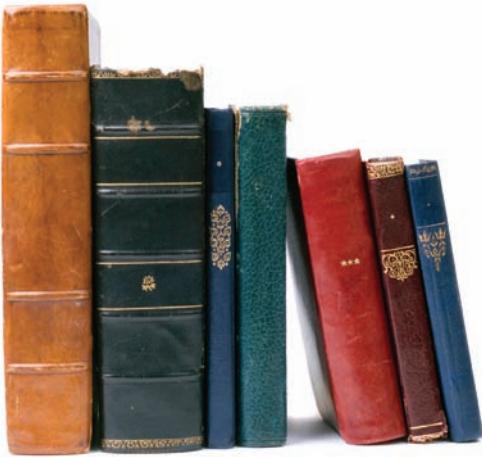
## CHAPTER GOALS

- To study several sorting and searching algorithms
- To appreciate that algorithms for the same task can differ widely in performance
- To understand the big-Oh notation
- To estimate and compare the performance of algorithms
- To write code to measure the running time of a program



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

|   |     |  |     |
|---|-----|--|-----|
| <b>14.1 SELECTION SORT</b>  | 630 | <b>14.7 PROBLEM SOLVING:<br/>ESTIMATING THE RUNNING TIME<br/>OF AN ALGORITHM</b>                   | 653 |
| <b>14.2 PROFILING THE SELECTION SORT<br/>ALGORITHM</b>                    | 633 | <b>14.8 SORTING AND SEARCHING IN<br/>THE JAVA LIBRARY</b>  | 658 |
| <b>14.3 ANALYZING THE PERFORMANCE<br/>OF THE SELECTION SORT ALGORITHM</b> | 636 | <i>Common Error 14.1:</i> The compareTo Method<br>Can Return Any Integer, Not Just -1, 0,<br>and 1 | 660 |
| <i>Special Topic 14.1:</i> Oh, Omega, and Theta                           | 638 | <i>Special Topic 14.4:</i> The Parameterized<br>Comparable Interface                               | 660 |
| <i>Special Topic 14.2:</i> Insertion Sort                                 | 639 | <i>Special Topic 14.5:</i> The Comparator Interface  | 661 |
| <b>14.4 MERGE SORT</b>  | 641 | <i>Worked Example 14.1:</i> Enhancing the Insertion<br>Sort Algorithm                              | 661 |
| <b>14.5 ANALYZING THE MERGE SORT<br/>ALGORITHM</b>                        | 644 |  |     |
| <i>Special Topic 14.3:</i> The Quicksort Algorithm                        | 646 |  |     |
| <b>14.6 SEARCHING</b>   | 648 |  |     |
| <i>Computing &amp; Society 14.1:</i> The First<br>Programmer              | 652 |  |     |



One of the most common tasks in data processing is sorting. For example, an array of employees often needs to be displayed in alphabetical order or sorted by salary. In this chapter, you will learn several sorting methods as well as techniques for comparing their performance. These techniques are useful not just for sorting algorithms, but also for analyzing other algorithms.

Once an array of elements is sorted, one can rapidly locate individual elements. You will study the *binary search* algorithm that carries out this fast lookup.

## 14.1 Selection Sort

In this section, we show you the first of several sorting algorithms. A *sorting algorithm* rearranges the elements of a collection so that they are stored in sorted order. To keep the examples simple, we will discuss how to sort an array of integers before going on to sorting strings or more complex data. Consider the following array a:

|     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| [0] | [1] | [2] | [3] | [4] |
| 11  | 9   | 17  | 5   | 12  |

The selection sort algorithm sorts an array by repeatedly finding the smallest element of the unsorted tail region and moving it to the front.

An obvious first step is to find the smallest element. In this case the smallest element is 5, stored in  $a[3]$ . We should move the 5 to the beginning of the array. Of course, there is already an element stored in  $a[0]$ , namely 11. Therefore we cannot simply move  $a[3]$  into  $a[0]$  without moving the 11 somewhere else. We don't yet know where the 11 should end up, but we know for certain that it should not be in  $a[0]$ . We simply get it out of the way by *swapping* it with  $a[3]$ :

|     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| [0] | [1] | [2] | [3] | [4] |
| 5   | 9   | 17  | 11  | 12  |

Now the first element is in the correct place. The darker color in the figure indicates the portion of the array that is already sorted.

*In selection sort, pick the smallest element and swap it with the first one. Pick the smallest element of the remaining ones and swap it with the next one, and so on.*



Next we take the minimum of the remaining entries  $a[1] \dots a[4]$ . That minimum value, 9, is already in the correct place. We don't need to do anything in this case and can simply extend the sorted area by one to the right:

|     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| [0] | [1] | [2] | [3] | [4] |
| 5   | 9   | 17  | 11  | 12  |

Repeat the process. The minimum value of the unsorted region is 11, which needs to be swapped with the first value of the unsorted region, 17:

|     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| [0] | [1] | [2] | [3] | [4] |
| 5   | 9   | 11  | 17  | 12  |



Now the unsorted region is only two elements long, but we keep to the same successful strategy. The minimum value is 12, and we swap it with the first value, 17:

|     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| [0] | [1] | [2] | [3] | [4] |
| 5   | 9   | 11  | 12  | 17  |



That leaves us with an unprocessed region of length 1, but of course a region of length 1 is always sorted. We are done.

Let's program this algorithm, called **selection sort**. For this program, as well as the other programs in this chapter, we will use a utility method to generate an array with random entries. We place it into a class `ArrayUtil` so that we don't have to repeat the code in every example. To show the array, we call the static `toString` method of the `Arrays` class in the Java library and print the resulting string (see Section 7.3.4). We also add a method for swapping elements to the `ArrayUtil` class. (See Section 7.3.8 for details about swapping array elements.)

This algorithm will sort any array of integers. If speed were not an issue, or if there were no better sorting method available, we could stop the discussion of sorting right here. As the next section shows, however, this algorithm, while entirely correct, shows disappointing performance when run on a large data set.

Special Topic 14.2 discusses insertion sort, another simple sorting algorithm.

### section\_1/SelectionSorter.java

```

1  /**
2   * The sort method of this class sorts an array, using the selection
3   * sort algorithm.
4  */
5  public class SelectionSorter
6  {
7      /**
8       * Sorts an array, using selection sort.
9       * @param a the array to sort
10    */
11   public static void sort(int[] a)
12   {
13       for (int i = 0; i < a.length - 1; i++)
14       {
15           int minPos = minimumPosition(a, i);
16           ArrayUtil.swap(a, minPos, i);
17       }
18   }

```

```

19
20  /**
21   * Finds the smallest element in a tail range of the array.
22   * @param a the array to sort
23   * @param from the first position in a to compare
24   * @return the position of the smallest element in the
25   * range a[from] . . . a[a.length - 1]
26  */
27  private static int minimumPosition(int[] a, int from)
28  {
29      int minPos = from;
30      for (int i = from + 1; i < a.length; i++)
31      {
32          if (a[i] < a[minPos]) { minPos = i; }
33      }
34      return minPos;
35  }
36 }

```

### section\_1/SelectionSortDemo.java

```

1 import java.util.Arrays;
2
3 /**
4  * This program demonstrates the selection sort algorithm by
5  * sorting an array that is filled with random numbers.
6  */
7 public class SelectionSortDemo
8 {
9     public static void main(String[] args)
10    {
11        int[] a = ArrayUtil.randomIntArray(20, 100);
12        System.out.println(Arrays.toString(a));
13
14        SelectionSorter.sort(a);
15
16        System.out.println(Arrays.toString(a));
17    }
18 }

```

### section\_1/ArrayUtil.java

```

1 import java.util.Random;
2
3 /**
4  * This class contains utility methods for array manipulation.
5  */
6 public class ArrayUtil
7 {
8     private static Random generator = new Random();
9
10    /**
11     * Creates an array filled with random values.
12     * @param length the length of the array
13     * @param n the number of possible random values
14     * @return an array filled with length numbers between
15     * 0 and n - 1
16     */
17    public static int[] randomIntArray(int length, int n)
18    {

```

```

19     int[] a = new int[length];
20     for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
21     {
22         a[i] = generator.nextInt(n);
23     }
24
25     return a;
26 }
27
28 /**
29  * Swaps two entries of an array.
30  * @param a the array
31  * @param i the first position to swap
32  * @param j the second position to swap
33 */
34 public static void swap(int[] a, int i, int j)
35 {
36     int temp = a[i];
37     a[i] = a[j];
38     a[j] = temp;
39 }
40 }
```

### Program Run

```
[65, 46, 14, 52, 38, 2, 96, 39, 14, 33, 13, 4, 24, 99, 89, 77, 73, 87, 36, 81]
[2, 4, 13, 14, 14, 24, 33, 36, 38, 39, 46, 52, 65, 73, 77, 81, 87, 89, 96, 99]
```

#### SELF CHECK



1. Why do we need the `temp` variable in the `swap` method? What would happen if you simply assigned `a[i]` to `a[j]` and `a[j]` to `a[i]`?
2. What steps does the selection sort algorithm go through to sort the sequence 6 5 4 3 2 1?
3. How can you change the selection sort algorithm so that it sorts the elements in descending order (that is, with the largest element at the beginning of the array)?
4. Suppose we modified the selection sort algorithm to start at the end of the array, working toward the beginning. In each step, the current position is swapped with the minimum. What is the result of this modification?

#### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R14.2, R14.10, E14.1, E14.2.

## 14.2 Profiling the Selection Sort Algorithm

To measure the performance of a program, you could simply run it and use a stopwatch to measure how long it takes. However, most of our programs run very quickly, and it is not easy to time them accurately in this way. Furthermore, when a program takes a noticeable time to run, a certain amount of that time may simply be used for loading the program from disk into memory and displaying the result (for which we should not penalize it).

In order to measure the running time of an algorithm more accurately, we will create a `Stopwatch` class. This class works like a real stopwatch. You can start it, stop

it, and read out the elapsed time. The class uses the `System.currentTimeMillis` method, which returns the milliseconds that have elapsed since midnight at the start of January 1, 1970. Of course, you don't care about the absolute number of seconds since this historical moment, but the *difference* of two such counts gives us the number of milliseconds in a given time interval.

Here is the code for the `StopWatch` class:

### section\_2/StopWatch.java

```

1  /**
2   * A stopwatch accumulates time when it is running. You can
3   * repeatedly start and stop the stopwatch. You can use a
4   * stopwatch to measure the running time of a program.
5  */
6  public class StopWatch
7  {
8      private long elapsedTime;
9      private long startTime;
10     private boolean isRunning;
11
12     /**
13      Constructs a stopwatch that is in the stopped state
14      and has no time accumulated.
15     */
16     public StopWatch()
17     {
18         reset();
19     }
20
21     /**
22      Starts the stopwatch. Time starts accumulating now.
23     */
24     public void start()
25     {
26         if (isRunning) { return; }
27         isRunning = true;
28         startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();
29     }
30
31     /**
32      Stops the stopwatch. Time stops accumulating and is
33      is added to the elapsed time.
34     */
35     public void stop()
36     {
37         if (!isRunning) { return; }
38         isRunning = false;
39         long endTime = System.currentTimeMillis();
40         elapsedTime = elapsedTime + endTime - startTime;
41     }
42
43     /**
44      Returns the total elapsed time.
45      @return the total elapsed time
46     */
47     public long getElapsedTime()
48     {
49         if (isRunning)
50         {

```

```

51     long endTime = System.currentTimeMillis();
52     return elapsedTime + endTime - startTime;
53   }
54   else
55   {
56     return elapsedTime;
57   }
58 }
59
60 /**
61  * Stops the watch and resets the elapsed time to 0.
62  */
63 public void reset()
64 {
65   elapsedTime = 0;
66   isRunning = false;
67 }
68 }
```

Here is how to use the stopwatch to measure the sorting algorithm's performance:

### **section\_2/SelectionSortTimer.java**

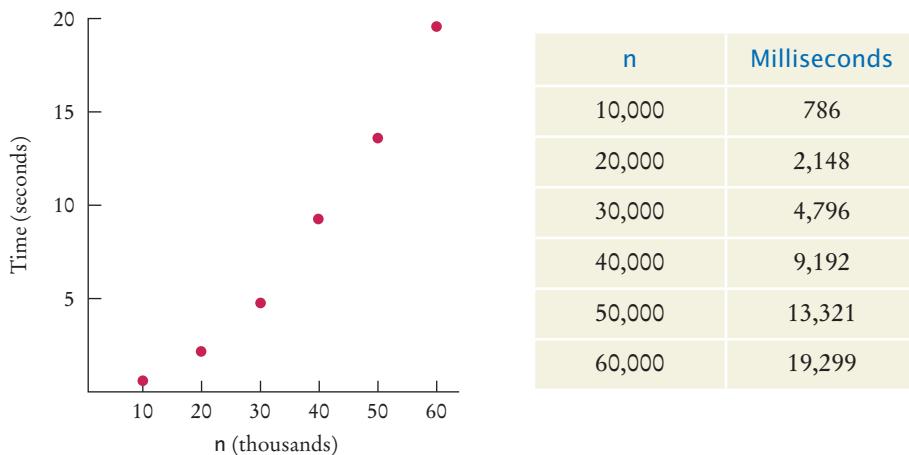
```

1 import java.util.Scanner;
2
3 /**
4  * This program measures how long it takes to sort an
5  * array of a user-specified size with the selection
6  * sort algorithm.
7 */
8 public class SelectionSortTimer
9 {
10   public static void main(String[] args)
11   {
12     Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
13     System.out.print("Enter array size: ");
14     int n = in.nextInt();
15
16     // Construct random array
17
18     int[] a = ArrayUtil.randomIntArray(n, 100);
19
20     // Use stopwatch to time selection sort
21
22     StopWatch timer = new StopWatch();
23
24     timer.start();
25     SelectionSorter.sort(a);
26     timer.stop();
27
28     System.out.println("Elapsed time: "
29                     + timer.getElapsedTime() + " milliseconds");
30   }
31 }
```

### **Program Run**

```

Enter array size: 50000
Elapsed time: 13321 milliseconds
```

**Figure 1** Time Taken by Selection Sort

To measure the running time of a method, get the current time immediately before and after the method call.

By starting to measure the time just before sorting, and stopping the stopwatch just after, you get the time required for the sorting process, without counting the time for input and output.

The table in Figure 1 shows the results of some sample runs. These measurements were obtained with an Intel processor with a clock speed of 2 GHz, running Java 6 on the Linux operating system. On another computer the actual numbers will look different, but the relationship between the numbers will be the same.

The graph in Figure 1 shows a plot of the measurements. As you can see, when you double the size of the data set, it takes about four times as long to sort it.



5. Approximately how many seconds would it take to sort a data set of 80,000 values?
6. Look at the graph in Figure 1. What mathematical shape does it resemble?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E14.3, E14.6.

## 14.3 Analyzing the Performance of the Selection Sort Algorithm

Let us count the number of operations that the program must carry out to sort an array with the selection sort algorithm. We don't actually know how many machine operations are generated for each Java instruction, or which of those instructions are more time-consuming than others, but we can make a simplification. We will simply count how often an array element is *visited*. Each visit requires about the same amount of work by other operations, such as incrementing subscripts and comparing values.

Let  $n$  be the size of the array. First, we must find the smallest of  $n$  numbers. To achieve that, we must visit  $n$  array elements. Then we swap the elements, which takes

two visits. (You may argue that there is a certain probability that we don't need to swap the values. That is true, and one can refine the computation to reflect that observation. As we will soon see, doing so would not affect the overall conclusion.) In the next step, we need to visit only  $n - 1$  elements to find the minimum. In the following step,  $n - 2$  elements are visited to find the minimum. The last step visits two elements to find the minimum. Each step requires two visits to swap the elements. Therefore, the total number of visits is

$$\begin{aligned} n + 2 + (n - 1) + 2 + \dots + 2 + 2 &= n + (n - 1) + \dots + 2 + (n - 1) \cdot 2 \\ &= 2 + \dots + (n - 1) + n + (n - 1) \cdot 2 \\ &= \frac{n(n + 1)}{2} - 1 + (n - 1) \cdot 2 \end{aligned}$$

because

$$1 + 2 + \dots + (n - 1) + n = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2}$$

After multiplying out and collecting terms of  $n$ , we find that the number of visits is

$$\frac{1}{2}n^2 + \frac{5}{2}n - 3$$

We obtain a quadratic equation in  $n$ . That explains why the graph of Figure 1 looks approximately like a parabola.

Now simplify the analysis further. When you plug in a large value for  $n$  (for example, 1,000 or 2,000), then  $\frac{1}{2}n^2$  is 500,000 or 2,000,000. The lower term,  $\frac{5}{2}n - 3$ , doesn't contribute much at all; it is only 2,497 or 4,997, a drop in the bucket compared to the hundreds of thousands or even millions of comparisons specified by the  $\frac{1}{2}n^2$  term. We will just ignore these lower-level terms. Next, we will ignore the constant factor  $\frac{1}{2}$ . We are not interested in the actual count of visits for a single  $n$ . We want to compare the ratios of counts for different values of  $n$ . For example, we can say that sorting an array of 2,000 numbers requires four times as many visits as sorting an array of 1,000 numbers:

$$\frac{\left(\frac{1}{2} \cdot 2000^2\right)}{\left(\frac{1}{2} \cdot 1000^2\right)} = 4$$

The factor  $\frac{1}{2}$  cancels out in comparisons of this kind. We will simply say, "The number of visits is of order  $n^2$ ." That way, we can easily see that the number of comparisons increases fourfold when the size of the array doubles:  $(2n)^2 = 4n^2$ .

To indicate that the number of visits is of order  $n^2$ , computer scientists often use **big-Oh notation**: The number of visits is  $O(n^2)$ . This is a convenient shorthand. (See Special Topic 14.1 for a formal definition.)

To turn a polynomial expression such as

$$\frac{1}{2}n^2 + \frac{5}{2}n - 3$$

into big-Oh notation, simply locate the fastest-growing term,  $n^2$ , and ignore its constant coefficient, no matter how large or small it may be.

We observed before that the actual number of machine operations, and the actual amount of time that the computer spends on them, is approximately proportional to the number of element visits. Maybe there are about 10 machine operations

Computer scientists use the big-Oh notation to describe the growth rate of a function.

Selection sort is an  $O(n^2)$  algorithm. Doubling the data set means a fourfold increase in processing time.

(increments, comparisons, memory loads, and stores) for every element visit. The number of machine operations is then approximately  $10 \times \frac{1}{2}n^2$ . As before, we aren't interested in the coefficient, so we can say that the number of machine operations, and hence the time spent on the sorting, is of the order  $n^2$  or  $O(n^2)$ .

The sad fact remains that doubling the size of the array causes a fourfold increase in the time required for sorting it with selection sort. When the size of the array increases by a factor of 100, the sorting time increases by a factor of 10,000. To sort an array of a million entries (for example, to create a telephone directory), takes 10,000 times as long as sorting 10,000 entries. If 10,000 entries can be sorted in about 3/4 of a second (as in our example), then sorting one million entries requires well over two hours. We will see in the next section how one can dramatically improve the performance of the sorting process by choosing a more sophisticated algorithm.

### SELF CHECK



7. If you increase the size of a data set tenfold, how much longer does it take to sort it with the selection sort algorithm?
8. How large does  $n$  need to be so that  $\frac{1}{2}n^2$  is bigger than  $\frac{5}{2}n - 3$ ?
9. Section 7.3.6 has two algorithms for removing an element from an array of length  $n$ . How many array visits does each algorithm require on average?
10. Describe the number of array visits in Self Check 9 using the big-Oh notation.
11. What is the big-Oh running time of checking whether an array is already sorted?
12. Consider this algorithm for sorting an array. Set  $k$  to the length of the array. Find the maximum of the first  $k$  elements. Remove it, using the second algorithm of Section 7.3.6. Decrement  $k$  and place the removed element into the  $k$ th position. Stop if  $k$  is 1. What is the algorithm's running time in big-Oh notation?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R14.4, R14.6, R14.8.

### Special Topic 14.1



### Oh, Omega, and Theta

We have used the big-Oh notation somewhat casually in this chapter to describe the growth behavior of a function. Here is the formal definition of the big-Oh notation: Suppose we have a function  $T(n)$ . Usually, it represents the processing time of an algorithm for a given input of size  $n$ . But it could be any function. Also, suppose that we have another function  $f(n)$ . It is usually chosen to be a simple function, such as  $f(n) = n^k$  or  $f(n) = \log(n)$ , but it too can be any function. We write

$$T(n) = O(f(n))$$

if  $T(n)$  grows at a rate that is bounded by  $f(n)$ . More formally, we require that for all  $n$  larger than some threshold, the ratio  $T(n)/f(n) \leq C$  for some constant value  $C$ .

If  $T(n)$  is a polynomial of degree  $k$  in  $n$ , then one can show that  $T(n) = O(n^k)$ . Later in this chapter, we will encounter functions that are  $O(\log(n))$  or  $O(n \log(n))$ . Some algorithms take much more time. For example, one way of sorting a sequence is to compute all of its permutations, until you find one that is in increasing order. Such an algorithm takes  $O(n!)$  time, which is very bad indeed.

Table 1 shows common big-Oh expressions, sorted by increasing growth.

Strictly speaking,  $T(n) = O(f(n))$  means that  $T$  grows no faster than  $f$ . But it is permissible for  $T$  to grow much more slowly. Thus, it is technically correct to state that  $T(n) = n^2 + 5n - 3$  is  $O(n^3)$  or even  $O(n^{10})$ .

**Table 1** Common Big-Oh Growth Rates

| Big-Oh Expression | Name        |
|-------------------|-------------|
| $O(1)$            | Constant    |
| $O(\log(n))$      | Logarithmic |
| $O(n)$            | Linear      |
| $O(n \log(n))$    | Log-linear  |
| $O(n^2)$          | Quadratic   |
| $O(n^3)$          | Cubic       |
| $O(2^n)$          | Exponential |
| $O(n!)$           | Factorial   |

Computer scientists have invented additional notation to describe the growth behavior of functions more accurately. The expression

$$T(n) = \Omega(f(n))$$

means that  $T$  grows at least as fast as  $f$ , or, formally, that for all  $n$  larger than some threshold, the ratio  $T(n)/f(n) \geq C$  for some constant value  $C$ . (The  $\Omega$  symbol is the capital Greek letter omega.) For example,  $T(n) = n^2 + 5n - 3$  is  $\Omega(n^2)$  or even  $\Omega(n)$ .

The expression

$$T(n) = \Theta(f(n))$$

means that  $T$  and  $f$  grow at the same rate—that is, both  $T(n) = O(f(n))$  and  $T(n) = \Omega(f(n))$  hold. (The  $\Theta$  symbol is the capital Greek letter theta.)

The  $\Theta$  notation gives the most precise description of growth behavior. For example,  $T(n) = n^2 + 5n - 3$  is  $\Theta(n^2)$  but not  $\Theta(n)$  or  $\Theta(n^3)$ .

The notations are very important for the precise analysis of algorithms. However, in casual conversation it is common to stick with big-Oh, while still giving an estimate as good as one can make.

## Special Topic 14.2



### Insertion Sort

Insertion sort is another simple sorting algorithm. In this algorithm, we assume that the initial sequence

$a[0] \ a[1] \ \dots \ a[k]$

of an array is already sorted. (When the algorithm starts, we set  $k$  to 0.) We enlarge the initial sequence by inserting the next array element,  $a[k + 1]$ , at the proper location. When we reach the end of the array, the sorting process is complete.

For example, suppose we start with the array

11 9 16 5 7

Of course, the initial sequence of length 1 is already sorted. We now add  $a[1]$ , which has the value 9. The element needs to be inserted before the element 11. The result is

9 11 16 5 7

Next, we add  $a[2]$ , which has the value 16. This element does not have to be moved.

|   |    |    |   |   |
|---|----|----|---|---|
| 9 | 11 | 16 | 5 | 7 |
|---|----|----|---|---|

We repeat the process, inserting  $a[3]$  or 5 at the very beginning of the initial sequence.

|   |   |    |    |   |
|---|---|----|----|---|
| 5 | 9 | 11 | 16 | 7 |
|---|---|----|----|---|

Finally,  $a[4]$  or 7 is inserted in its correct position, and the sorting is completed.

The following class implements the insertion sort algorithm:

```
public class InsertionSorter
{
    /**
     * Sorts an array, using insertion sort.
     * @param a the array to sort
     */
    public static void sort(int[] a)
    {
        for (int i = 1; i < a.length; i++)
        {
            int next = a[i];
            // Move all larger elements up
            int j = i;
            while (j > 0 && a[j - 1] > next)
            {
                a[j] = a[j - 1];
                j--;
            }
            // Insert the element
            a[j] = next;
        }
    }
}
```

How efficient is this algorithm? Let  $n$  denote the size of the array. We carry out  $n - 1$  iterations. In the  $k$ th iteration, we have a sequence of  $k$  elements that is already sorted, and we need to insert a new element into the sequence. For each insertion, we need to visit the elements of the initial sequence until we have found the location in which the new element can be inserted. Then we need to move up the remaining elements of the sequence. Thus,  $k + 1$  array elements are visited. Therefore, the total number of visits is

$$2 + 3 + \dots + n = \frac{n(n+1)}{2} - 1$$

We conclude that insertion sort is an  $O(n^2)$  algorithm, on the same order of efficiency as selection sort.

Insertion sort has a desirable property: Its performance is  $O(n)$  if the array is already sorted—see Exercise R14.17. This is a useful property in practical applications, in which data sets are often partially sorted.

Insertion sort is an  $O(n^2)$  algorithm.



**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**  
Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that illustrates sorting with insertion sort.

*Insertion sort is the method that many people use to sort playing cards. Pick up one card at a time and insert it so that the cards stay sorted.*



## 14.4 Merge Sort

In this section, you will learn about the **merge sort** algorithm, a much more efficient algorithm than selection sort. The basic idea behind merge sort is very simple.

Suppose we have an array of 10 integers. Let us engage in a bit of wishful thinking and hope that the first half of the array is already perfectly sorted, and the second half is too, like this:

|   |   |    |    |    |   |   |    |    |    |
|---|---|----|----|----|---|---|----|----|----|
| 5 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 17 | 1 | 8 | 11 | 20 | 32 |
|---|---|----|----|----|---|---|----|----|----|

Now it is simple to *merge* the two sorted arrays into one sorted array, by taking a new element from either the first or the second subarray, and choosing the smaller of the elements each time:

|   |   |    |    |    |   |   |    |    |    |
|---|---|----|----|----|---|---|----|----|----|
| 5 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 17 | 1 | 8 | 11 | 20 | 32 |
| 5 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 17 | 1 | 8 | 11 | 20 | 32 |
| 5 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 17 | 1 | 8 | 11 | 20 | 32 |
| 5 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 17 | 1 | 8 | 11 | 20 | 32 |
| 5 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 17 | 1 | 8 | 11 | 20 | 32 |
| 5 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 17 | 1 | 8 | 11 | 20 | 32 |
| 5 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 17 | 1 | 8 | 11 | 20 | 32 |
| 5 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 17 | 1 | 8 | 11 | 20 | 32 |
| 5 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 17 | 1 | 8 | 11 | 20 | 32 |
| 5 | 9 | 10 | 12 | 17 | 1 | 8 | 11 | 20 | 32 |

|   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1 |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 1 | 5 |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 1 | 5 | 8 |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 1 | 5 | 8 | 9 |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 1 | 5 | 8 | 9 | 10 |    |    |    |    |    |
| 1 | 5 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |    |    |    |    |
| 1 | 5 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |    |    |    |
| 1 | 5 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 17 |    |    |
| 1 | 5 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 17 | 20 |    |
| 1 | 5 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 17 | 20 | 32 |

In fact, you may have performed this merging before if you and a friend had to sort a pile of papers. You and the friend split the pile in half, each of you sorted your half, and then you merged the results together.

That is all well and good, but it doesn't seem to solve the problem for the computer. It still must sort the first and second halves of the array, because it can't very well ask a few buddies to pitch in. As it turns out, though, if the computer keeps dividing the array into smaller and smaller subarrays, sorting each half and merging them back together, it carries out dramatically fewer steps than the selection sort requires.

Let's write a `MergeSorter` class that implements this idea. When the `MergeSorter` sorts an array, it makes two arrays, each half the size of the original, and sorts them recursively. Then it merges the two sorted arrays together:

```
public static void sort(int[] a)
{
    if (a.length <= 1) { return; }
    int[] first = new int[a.length / 2];
    int[] second = new int[a.length - first.length];
    // Copy the first half of a into first, the second half into second
    .
    .
    sort(first);
    sort(second);
    merge(first, second, a);
}
```



*In merge sort, one sorts each half, then merges the sorted halves.*

The merge sort algorithm sorts an array by cutting the array in half, recursively sorting each half, and then merging the sorted halves.

The `merge` method is tedious but quite straightforward. You will find it in the code that follows.

### section\_4/MergeSorter.java

```

1  /**
2   * The sort method of this class sorts an array, using the merge
3   * sort algorithm.
4  */
5  public class MergeSorter
6  {
7      /**
8       * Sorts an array, using merge sort.
9       * @param a the array to sort
10      */
11     public static void sort(int[] a)
12     {
13         if (a.length <= 1) { return; }
14         int[] first = new int[a.length / 2];
15         int[] second = new int[a.length - first.length];
16         // Copy the first half of a into first, the second half into second
17         for (int i = 0; i < first.length; i++)
18         {
19             first[i] = a[i];
20         }
21         for (int i = 0; i < second.length; i++)
22         {
23             second[i] = a[first.length + i];
24         }
25         sort(first);
26         sort(second);
27         merge(first, second, a);
28     }
29
30     /**
31      * Merges two sorted arrays into an array.
32      * @param first the first sorted array
33      * @param second the second sorted array
34      * @param a the array into which to merge first and second
35      */
36     private static void merge(int[] first, int[] second, int[] a)
37     {
38         int iFirst = 0; // Next element to consider in the first array
39         int iSecond = 0; // Next element to consider in the second array
40         int j = 0; // Next open position in a
41
42         // As long as neither iFirst nor iSecond past the end, move
43         // the smaller element into a
44         while (iFirst < first.length && iSecond < second.length)
45         {
46             if (first[iFirst] < second[iSecond])
47             {
48                 a[j] = first[iFirst];
49                 iFirst++;
50             }
51             else
52             {
53                 a[j] = second[iSecond];
54                 iSecond++;
55             }
56         }
57     }
58 }
```

```

55     }
56     j++;
57 }
58
59 // Note that only one of the two loops below copies entries
60 // Copy any remaining entries of the first array
61 while (iFirst < first.length)
62 {
63     a[j] = first[iFirst];
64     iFirst++; j++;
65 }
66 // Copy any remaining entries of the second half
67 while (iSecond < second.length)
68 {
69     a[j] = second[iSecond];
70     iSecond++; j++;
71 }
72 }
73 }

```

### section\_4/MergeSortDemo.java

```

1 import java.util.Arrays;
2
3 /**
4  * This program demonstrates the merge sort algorithm by
5  * sorting an array that is filled with random numbers.
6  */
7 public class MergeSortDemo
8 {
9     public static void main(String[] args)
10    {
11        int[] a = ArrayUtil.randomIntArray(20, 100);
12        System.out.println(Arrays.toString(a));
13
14        MergeSorter.sort(a);
15
16        System.out.println(Arrays.toString(a));
17    }
18 }

```

### Program Run

```
[8, 81, 48, 53, 46, 70, 98, 42, 27, 76, 33, 24, 2, 76, 62, 89, 90, 5, 13, 21]
[2, 5, 8, 13, 21, 24, 27, 33, 42, 46, 48, 53, 62, 70, 76, 76, 81, 89, 90, 98]
```



#### SELF CHECK

13. Why does only one of the two `while` loops at the end of the `merge` method do any work?
14. Manually run the merge sort algorithm on the array 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1.
15. The merge sort algorithm processes an array by recursively processing two halves. Describe a similar recursive algorithm for computing the sum of all elements in an array.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R14.11, E14.4, E14.11.

## 14.5 Analyzing the Merge Sort Algorithm

The merge sort algorithm looks a lot more complicated than the selection sort algorithm, and it appears that it may well take much longer to carry out these repeated subdivisions. However, the timing results for merge sort look much better than those for selection sort.

Figure 2 shows a table and a graph comparing both sets of performance data. As you can see, merge sort is a tremendous improvement. To understand why, let us estimate the number of array element visits that are required to sort an array with the merge sort algorithm. First, let us tackle the merge process that happens after the first and second halves have been sorted.

Each step in the merge process adds one more element to  $a$ . That element may come from first or second, and in most cases the elements from the two halves must be compared to see which one to take. We'll count that as 3 visits (one for  $a$  and one each for first and second) per element, or  $3n$  visits total, where  $n$  denotes the length of  $a$ . Moreover, at the beginning, we had to copy from  $a$  to first and second, yielding another  $2n$  visits, for a total of  $5n$ .

If we let  $T(n)$  denote the number of visits required to sort a range of  $n$  elements through the merge sort process, then we obtain

$$T(n) = T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + 5n$$

because sorting each half takes  $T(n/2)$  visits. Actually, if  $n$  is not even, then we have one subarray of size  $(n - 1)/2$  and one of size  $(n + 1)/2$ . Although it turns out that this detail does not affect the outcome of the computation, we will nevertheless assume for now that  $n$  is a power of 2, say  $n = 2^m$ . That way, all subarrays can be evenly divided into two parts.

Unfortunately, the formula

$$T(n) = 2T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + 5n$$

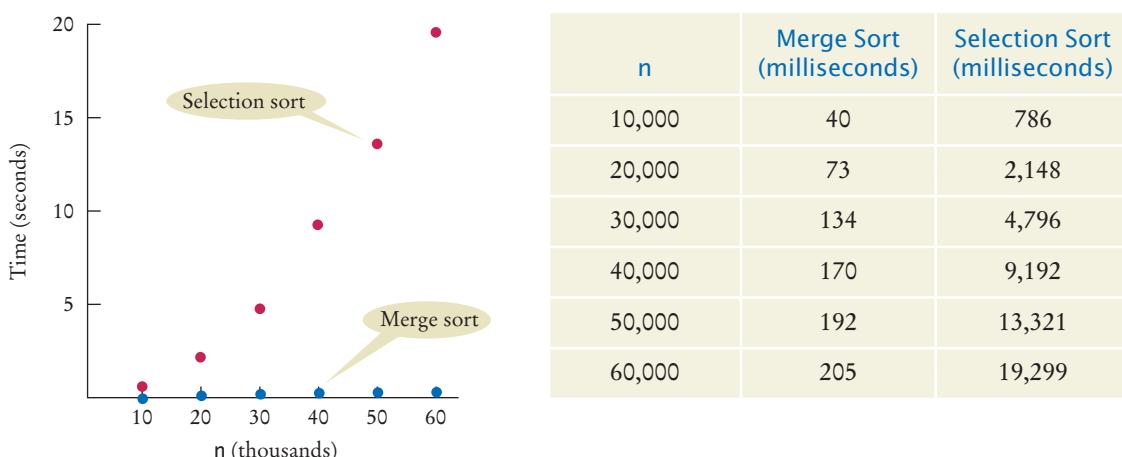


Figure 2 Time Taken by Selection Sort

does not clearly tell us the relationship between  $n$  and  $T(n)$ . To understand the relationship, let us evaluate  $T(n/2)$ , using the same formula:

$$T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) = 2T\left(\frac{n}{4}\right) + 5\frac{n}{2}$$

Therefore

$$T(n) = 2 \times 2T\left(\frac{n}{4}\right) + 5n + 5n$$

Let us do that again:

$$T\left(\frac{n}{4}\right) = 2T\left(\frac{n}{8}\right) + 5\frac{n}{4}$$

hence

$$T(n) = 2 \times 2 \times 2T\left(\frac{n}{8}\right) + 5n + 5n + 5n$$

This generalizes from 2, 4, 8, to arbitrary powers of 2:

$$T(n) = 2^k T\left(\frac{n}{2^k}\right) + 5nk$$

Recall that we assume that  $n = 2^m$ ; hence, for  $k = m$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} T(n) &= 2^m T\left(\frac{n}{2^m}\right) + 5nm \\ &= nT(1) + 5nm \\ &= n + 5n \log_2(n) \end{aligned}$$

Because  $n = 2^m$ , we have  $m = \log_2(n)$ .

To establish the growth order, we drop the lower-order term  $n$  and are left with  $5n \log_2(n)$ . We drop the constant factor 5. It is also customary to drop the base of the logarithm, because all logarithms are related by a constant factor. For example,

$$\log_2(x) = \log_{10}(x)/\log_{10}(2) \approx \log_{10}(x) \times 3.32193$$

Hence we say that merge sort is an  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm.

Is the  $O(n \log(n))$  merge sort algorithm better than the  $O(n^2)$  selection sort algorithm? You bet it is. Recall that it took  $100^2 = 10,000$  times as long to sort a million records as it took to sort 10,000 records with the  $O(n^2)$  algorithm. With the  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm, the ratio is

$$\frac{1,000,000 \log(1,000,000)}{10,000 \log(10,000)} = 100 \left(\frac{6}{4}\right) = 150$$

Suppose for the moment that merge sort takes the same time as selection sort to sort an array of 10,000 integers, that is, 3/4 of a second on the test machine. (Actually, it is much faster than that.) Then it would take about  $0.75 \times 150$  seconds, or under two minutes, to sort a million integers. Contrast that with selection sort, which would take over two hours for the same task. As you can see, even if it takes you several hours to learn about a better algorithm, that can be time well spent.

Merge sort is an  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm. The  $n \log(n)$  function grows much more slowly than  $n^2$ .

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program for timing the merge sort algorithm.

**SELF CHECK**

- 16.** Given the timing data for the merge sort algorithm in the table at the beginning of this section, how long would it take to sort an array of 100,000 values?
- 17.** If you double the size of an array, how much longer will the merge sort algorithm take to sort the new array?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R14.7, R14.14, R14.16.

**Special Topic 14.3****The Quicksort Algorithm**

Quicksort is a commonly used algorithm that has the advantage over merge sort that no temporary arrays are required to sort and merge the partial results.

The quicksort algorithm, like merge sort, is based on the strategy of divide and conquer. To sort a range  $a[from] \dots a[to]$  of the array  $a$ , first rearrange the elements in the range so that no element in the range  $a[from] \dots a[p]$  is larger than any element in the range  $a[p + 1] \dots a[to]$ . This step is called *partitioning* the range.

For example, suppose we start with a range

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 5 | 3 | 2 | 6 | 4 | 1 | 3 | 7 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

Here is a partitioning of the range. Note that the partitions aren't yet sorted.

|   |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|
| 3 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 4 |  | 6 | 5 | 7 |
|---|---|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|

You'll see later how to obtain such a partition. In the next step, sort each partition, by recursively applying the same algorithm to the two partitions. That sorts the entire range, because the largest element in the first partition is at most as large as the smallest element in the second partition.

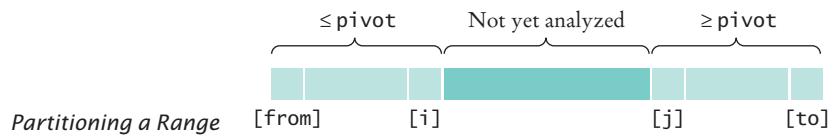
|   |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 |  | 5 | 6 | 7 |
|---|---|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|

Quicksort is implemented recursively as follows:

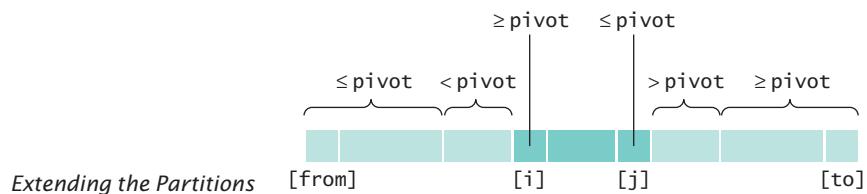
```
public static void sort(int[] a, int from, int to)
{
    if (from >= to) { return; }
    int p = partition(a, from, to);
    sort(a, from, p);
    sort(a, p + 1, to);
}
```

Let us return to the problem of partitioning a range. Pick an element from the range and call it the *pivot*. There are several variations of the quicksort algorithm. In the simplest one, we'll pick the first element of the range,  $a[from]$ , as the pivot.

Now form two regions  $a[from] \dots a[i]$ , consisting of values at most as large as the pivot and  $a[j] \dots a[to]$ , consisting of values at least as large as the pivot. The region  $a[i + 1] \dots a[j - 1]$  consists of values that haven't been analyzed yet. (See the figure below.) At the beginning, both the left and right areas are empty; that is,  $i = from - 1$  and  $j = to + 1$ .



Then keep incrementing  $i$  while  $a[i] < \text{pivot}$  and keep decrementing  $j$  while  $a[j] > \text{pivot}$ . The figure below shows  $i$  and  $j$  when that process stops.



Now swap the values in positions  $i$  and  $j$ , increasing both areas once more. Keep going while  $i < j$ . Here is the code for the partition method:

```
private static int partition(int[] a, int from, int to)
{
    int pivot = a[from];
    int i = from - 1;
    int j = to + 1;
    while (i < j)
    {
        i++; while (a[i] < pivot) { i++; }
        j--; while (a[j] > pivot) { j--; }
        if (i < j) { ArrayUtil.swap(a, i, j); }
    }
    return j;
}
```

On average, the quicksort algorithm is an  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm. There is just one unfortunate aspect to the quicksort algorithm. Its *worst-case* run-time behavior is  $O(n^2)$ . Moreover, if the pivot element is chosen as the first element of the region, that worst-case behavior occurs when the input set is already sorted—a common situation in practice. By selecting the pivot element more cleverly, we can make it extremely unlikely for the worst-case behavior to occur. Such “tuned” quicksort algorithms are commonly used because their performance is generally excellent. For example, the `sort` method in the `Arrays` class uses a quicksort algorithm.

Another improvement that is commonly made in practice is to switch to insertion sort when the array is short, because the total number of operations using insertion sort is lower for short arrays. The Java library makes that switch if the array length is less than seven.



**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**  
Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates the quicksort algorithm.

In quicksort, one partitions the elements into two groups, holding the smaller and larger elements. Then one sorts each group.



# 14.6 Searching

Searching for an element in an array is an extremely common task. As with sorting, the right choice of algorithms can make a big difference.

## 14.6.1 Linear Search

Suppose you need to find your friend's telephone number. You look up the friend's name in the telephone book, and naturally you can find it quickly, because the telephone book is sorted alphabetically. Now suppose you have a telephone number and you must know to what party it belongs. You could of course call that number, but suppose nobody picks up on the other end. You could look through the telephone book, a number at a time, until you find the number. That would obviously be a tremendous amount of work, and you would have to be desperate to attempt it.

This thought experiment shows the difference between a search through an unsorted data set and a search through a sorted data set. The following two sections will analyze the difference formally.

If you want to find a number in a sequence of values that occur in arbitrary order, there is nothing you can do to speed up the search. You must simply look through all elements until you have found a match or until you reach the end. This is called a **linear** or **sequential** search.

How long does a linear search take? If we assume that the element  $v$  is present in the array  $a$ , then the average search visits  $n/2$  elements, where  $n$  is the length of the array. If it is not present, then all  $n$  elements must be inspected to verify the absence. Either way, a linear search is an  $O(n)$  algorithm.

Here is a class that performs linear searches through an array  $a$  of integers. When searching for a value, the search method returns the first index of the match, or  $-1$  if the value does not occur in  $a$ .

A linear search examines all values in an array until it finds a match or reaches the end.

A linear search locates a value in an array in  $O(n)$  steps.

### [section\\_6\\_1/LinearSearcher.java](#)

```

1  /**
2   * A class for executing linear searches in an array.
3  */
4  public class LinearSearcher
5  {
6      /**
7       * Finds a value in an array, using the linear search
8       * algorithm.
9       * @param a the array to search
10      * @param value the value to find
11      * @return the index at which the value occurs, or -1
12      * if it does not occur in the array
13     */
14    public static int search(int[] a, int value)
15    {
16        for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
17        {
18            if (a[i] == value) { return i; }
19        }
20        return -1;

```

```
21 }
22 }
```

### section\_6\_1/LinearSearchDemo.java

```

1 import java.util.Arrays;
2 import java.util.Scanner;
3
4 /**
5     This program demonstrates the linear search algorithm.
6 */
7 public class LinearSearchDemo
8 {
9     public static void main(String[] args)
10    {
11        int[] a = ArrayUtil.randomIntArray(20, 100);
12        System.out.println(Arrays.toString(a));
13        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
14
15        boolean done = false;
16        while (!done)
17        {
18            System.out.print("Enter number to search for, -1 to quit: ");
19            int n = in.nextInt();
20            if (n == -1)
21            {
22                done = true;
23            }
24            else
25            {
26                int pos = LinearSearcher.search(a, n);
27                System.out.println("Found in position " + pos);
28            }
29        }
30    }
31 }
```

#### Program Run

```
[46, 99, 45, 57, 64, 95, 81, 69, 11, 97, 6, 85, 61, 88, 29, 65, 83, 88, 45, 88]
Enter number to search for, -1 to quit: 12
Found in position -1
Enter number to search for, -1 to quit: -1
```

## 14.6.2 Binary Search

Now let us search for an item in a data sequence that has been previously sorted. Of course, we could still do a linear search, but it turns out we can do much better than that.

Consider the following sorted array a. The data set is:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| [0] | [1] | [2] | [3] | [4] | [5] | [6] | [7] |
| 1   | 5   | 8   | 9   | 12  | 17  | 20  | 32  |

We would like to see whether the value 15 is in the data set. Let's narrow our search by finding whether the value is in the first or second half of the array. The last value

in the first half of the data set,  $a[3]$ , is 9, which is smaller than the value we are looking for. Hence, we should look in the second half of the array for a match, that is, in the sequence:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| [0] | [1] | [2] | [3] | [4] | [5] | [6] | [7] |
| 1   | 5   | 8   | 9   | 12  | 17  | 20  | 32  |

Now the last value of the first half of this sequence is 17; hence, the value must be located in the sequence:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| [0] | [1] | [2] | [3] | [4] | [5] | [6] | [7] |
| 1   | 5   | 8   | 9   | 12  | 17  | 20  | 32  |

The last value of the first half of this very short sequence is 12, which is smaller than the value that we are searching, so we must look in the second half:

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| [0] | [1] | [2] | [3] | [4] | [5] | [6] | [7] |
| 1   | 5   | 8   | 9   | 12  | 17  | 20  | 32  |

A binary search locates a value in a sorted array by determining whether the value occurs in the first or second half, then repeating the search in one of the halves.

It is trivial to see that we don't have a match, because  $15 \neq 17$ . If we wanted to insert 15 into the sequence, we would need to insert it just before  $a[5]$ .

This search process is called a **binary search**, because we cut the size of the search in half in each step. That cutting in half works only because we know that the sequence of values is sorted.

The following class implements binary searches in a sorted array of integers. The search method returns the position of the match if the search succeeds, or -1 if the value is not found in  $a$ . Here, we show a recursive version of the binary search algorithm.

### section\_6\_2/BinarySearcher.java

```

1  /**
2   * A class for executing binary searches in an array.
3   */
4  public class BinarySearcher
5  {
6      /**
7       * Finds a value in a range of a sorted array, using the binary
8       * search algorithm.
9       * @param a the array in which to search
10      * @param low the low index of the range
11      * @param high the high index of the range
12      * @param value the value to find
13      * @return the index at which the value occurs, or -1
14      * if it does not occur in the array
15     */
16    public int search(int[] a, int low, int high, int value)
17    {
18        if (low <= high)
19        {
20            int mid = (low + high) / 2;
21
22            if (a[mid] == value)
23            {
24                return mid;
25            }
26            else if (a[mid] < value )
27            {

```

```

28         return search(a, mid + 1, high, value);
29     }
30     else
31     {
32         return search(a, low, mid - 1, value);
33     }
34 }
35 else
36 {
37     return -1;
38 }
39 }
40 }
```

Now let's determine the number of visits to array elements required to carry out a binary search. We can use the same technique as in the analysis of merge sort. Because we look at the middle element, which counts as one visit, and then search either the left or the right subarray, we have

$$T(n) = T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) + 1$$

Using the same equation,

$$T\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) = T\left(\frac{n}{4}\right) + 1$$

By plugging this result into the original equation, we get

$$T(n) = T\left(\frac{n}{4}\right) + 2$$

That generalizes to

$$T(n) = T\left(\frac{n}{2^k}\right) + k$$

As in the analysis of merge sort, we make the simplifying assumption that  $n$  is a power of 2,  $n = 2^m$ , where  $m = \log_2(n)$ . Then we obtain

$$T(n) = 1 + \log_2(n)$$

Therefore, binary search is an  $O(\log(n))$  algorithm.

That result makes intuitive sense. Suppose that  $n$  is 100. Then after each search, the size of the search range is cut in half, to 50, 25, 12, 6, 3, and 1. After seven comparisons we are done. This agrees with our formula, because  $\log_2(100) \approx 6.64386$ , and indeed the next larger power of 2 is  $2^7 = 128$ .

Because a binary search is so much faster than a linear search, is it worthwhile to sort an array first and then use a binary search? It depends. If you search the array only once, then it is more efficient to pay for an  $O(n)$  linear search than for an  $O(n \log(n))$  sort and an  $O(\log(n))$  binary search. But if you will be making many searches in the same array, then sorting it is definitely worthwhile.

A binary search locates a value in a sorted array in  $O(\log(n))$  steps.



18. Suppose you need to look through 1,000,000 records to find a telephone number. How many records do you expect to search before finding the number?
19. Why can't you use a “for each” loop for (int element : a) in the search method?
20. Suppose you need to look through a sorted array with 1,000,000 elements to find a value. Using the binary search algorithm, how many records do you expect to search before finding the value?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R14.12, E14.10, E14.12.



Before pocket calculators and personal computers existed, navigators and engineers used mechanical adding machines, slide rules, and tables of logarithms and trigonometric functions to speed up computations. Unfortunately, the tables—for which values had to be computed by hand—were notoriously inaccurate. The mathematician Charles Babbage (1791–1871) had the insight that if a machine could be constructed that produced printed tables automatically, both calculation and typesetting errors could be avoided. Babbage set out to develop a machine for this purpose, which he called a *Difference*

*Engine* because it used successive differences to compute polynomials. For example, consider the function  $f(x) = x^3$ . Write down the values for  $f(1), f(2), f(3)$ , and so on. Then take the differences between successive values:

|     |    |
|-----|----|
| 1   | 7  |
| 8   | 19 |
| 27  | 37 |
| 64  | 61 |
| 125 | 91 |
| 216 |    |

Repeat the process, taking the difference of successive values in the second column, and then repeat once again:

|     |    |
|-----|----|
| 1   | 7  |
| 8   | 12 |
| 27  | 18 |
| 64  | 6  |
| 125 | 24 |
| 216 | 6  |
|     | 30 |
|     | 91 |

Now the differences are all the same. You can retrieve the function values by a pattern of additions—you need to know the values at the fringe of the pattern and the constant difference. You can try it out yourself: Write the highlighted numbers on a sheet of paper and fill in the others by adding the numbers that are in the north and northwest positions.

This method was very attractive, because mechanical addition machines had been known for some time. They consisted of cog wheels, with 10 cogs per wheel, to represent digits, and mechanisms to handle the carry from one digit to the next. Mechanical multiplication machines, on the other hand, were fragile and unreliable. Babbage built a successful prototype of the Difference Engine and, with his own money and government grants, proceeded to build the table-printing machine. However, because of funding problems and the difficulty of building the machine to the required precision, it was never completed.

While working on the Difference Engine, Babbage conceived of a much grander vision that he called the *Analytical Engine*. The Difference Engine was designed to carry out a limited set of computations—it was no smarter than a pocket calculator is today. But Babbage realized that such a machine could be made *programmable* by storing programs as well as data. The internal storage of the Analytical Engine was to consist of 1,000 registers of 50 decimal digits each. Programs and constants were to be stored on punched cards—a technique that was, at that time, commonly used on looms for weaving patterned fabrics.

Ada Augusta, Countess of Lovelace (1815–1852), the only child of Lord Byron, was a friend and sponsor of Charles Babbage. Ada Lovelace was one of the first people to realize the potential of such a machine, not just for computing mathematical tables but for processing data that were not numbers. She is considered by many to be the world's first programmer.



Replica of Babbage's Difference Engine

## 14.7 Problem Solving: Estimating the Running Time of an Algorithm

In this chapter, you have learned how to estimate the running time of sorting algorithms. As you have seen, being able to differentiate between  $O(n \log(n))$  and  $O(n^2)$  running times has great practical implications. Being able to estimate the running times of other algorithms is an important skill. In this section, we will practice estimating the running time of array algorithms.

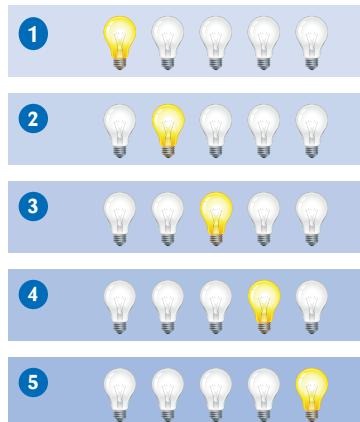
### 14.7.1 Linear Time

Let us start with a simple example, an algorithm that counts how many elements have a particular value:

```
int count = 0;
for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
{
    if (a[i] == value) { count++; }
```

What is the running time in terms of  $n$ , the length of the array?

Start with looking at the pattern of array element visits. Here, we visit each element once. It helps to visualize this pattern. Imagine the array as a sequence of light bulbs. As the  $i$ th element gets visited, imagine the  $i$ th bulb lighting up.



Now look at the work per visit. Does each visit involve a fixed number of actions, independent of  $n$ ? In this case, it does. There are just a few actions—read the element, compare it, maybe increment a counter.

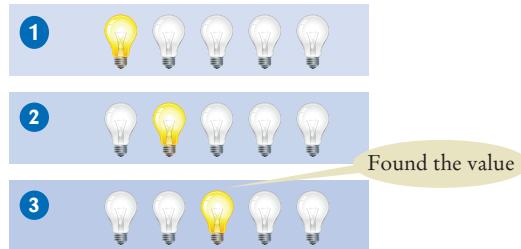
Therefore, the running time is  $n$  times a constant, or  $O(n)$ .

What if we don't always run to the end of the array? For example, suppose we want to check whether the value occurs in the array, without counting it:

```
boolean found = false;
for (int i = 0; !found && i < a.length; i++)
{
    if (a[i] == value) { found = true; }
```

A loop with  $n$  iterations has  $O(n)$  running time if each step consists of a fixed number of actions.

Then the loop can stop in the middle:



Is this still  $O(n)$ ? It is, because in some cases the match may be at the very end of the array. Also, if there is no match, one must traverse the entire array.

### 14.7.2 Quadratic Time

Now let's turn to a more interesting case. What if we do a lot of work with each visit? Here is an example: We want to find the most frequent element in an array.

Suppose the array is

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | 7 | 5 | 7 | 7 | 5 | 4 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

It's obvious by looking at the values that 7 is the most frequent one. But now imagine an array with a few thousand values.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |   |   |   |     |    |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|---|---|---|-----|----|---|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | 7 | 5 | 7 | 7 | 5 | 4 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 9 | 12 | 3 | 2 | 5 | ... | 11 | 9 | 2 | 3 | 7 | 8 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|---|---|---|-----|----|---|---|---|---|---|

We can count how often the value 8 occurs, then move on to count how often 7 occurs, and so on. For example, in the first array, 8 occurs once, and 7 occurs three times. Where do we put the counts? Let's put them into a second array of the same length.

|         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| a:      | 8 | 7 | 5 | 7 | 7 | 5 | 4 |
| counts: | 1 | 3 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 1 |

Then we take the maximum of the counts. It is 3. We look up where the 3 occurs in the counts, and find the corresponding value. Thus, the most common value is 7.

Let us first estimate how long it takes to compute the counts.

```
for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
{
    counts[i] = Count how often a[i] occurs in a
}
```

A loop with  $n$  iterations has  $O(n^2)$  running time if each step takes  $O(n)$  time.

We still visit each array element once, but now the work per visit is much larger. As you have seen in the previous section, each counting action is  $O(n)$ . When we do  $O(n)$  work in each step, the total running time is  $O(n^2)$ .

This algorithm has three phases:

1. Compute all counts.
2. Compute the maximum.
3. Find the maximum in the counts.

We have just seen that the first phase is  $O(n^2)$ . Computing the maximum is  $O(n)$ —look at the algorithm in Section 7.3.3 and note that each step involves a fixed amount of work. Finally, we just saw that finding a value is  $O(n)$ .

The big-Oh running time for doing several steps in a row is the largest of the big-Oh times for each step.

How can we estimate the total running time from the estimates of each phase? Of course, the total time is the sum of the individual times, but for big-Oh estimates, we take the *maximum* of the estimates. To see why, imagine that we had actual equations for each of the times:

$$T_1(n) = an^2 + bn + c$$

$$T_2(n) = dn + e$$

$$T_3(n) = fn + g$$

Then the sum is

$$T(n) = T_1(n) + T_2(n) + T_3(n) = an^2 + (b + d + f)n + c + e + g$$

But only the largest term matters, so  $T(n)$  is  $O(n^2)$ .

Thus, we have found that our algorithm for finding the most frequent element is  $O(n^2)$ .

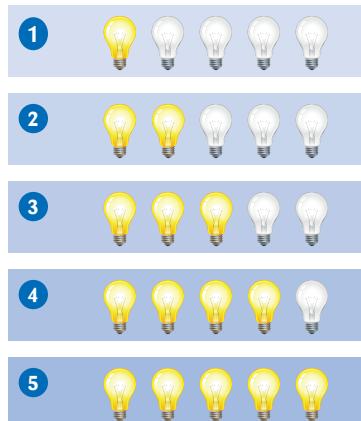
### 14.7.3 The Triangle Pattern

Let us see if we can speed up the algorithm from the preceding section. It seems wasteful to count elements again if we have already counted them.

Can we save time by eliminating repeated counting of the same element? That is, before counting  $a[i]$ , should we first check that it didn't occur in  $a[0] \dots a[i - 1]$ ?

Let us estimate the cost of these additional checks. In the  $i$ th step, the amount of work is proportional to  $i$ . That's not quite the same as in the preceding section, where you saw that a loop with  $n$  iterations, each of which takes  $O(n)$  time, is  $O(n^2)$ . Now each step just takes  $O(i)$  time.

To get an intuitive feel for this situation, look at the light bulbs again. In the second iteration, we visit  $a[0]$  again. In the third iteration, we visit  $a[0]$  and  $a[1]$  again, and so on. The light bulb pattern is



A loop with  $n$  iterations has  $O(n^2)$  running time if the  $i$ th step takes  $O(i)$  time.

If there are  $n$  light bulbs, about half of the square above, or  $n^2/2$  of them, light up. That's unfortunately still  $O(n^2)$ .

Here is another idea for time saving. When we count  $a[i]$ , there is no need to do the counting in  $a[0] \dots a[i - 1]$ . If  $a[i]$  never occurred before, we get an accurate count by just looking at  $a[i] \dots a[n - 1]$ . And if it did, we already have an accurate count. Does that help us? Not really—it's the triangle pattern again, but this time in the other direction.



That doesn't mean that these improvements aren't worthwhile. If an  $O(n^2)$  algorithm is the best one can do for a particular problem, you still want to make it as fast as possible. However, we will not pursue this plan further because it turns out that we can do much better.

#### 14.7.4 Logarithmic Time

Logarithmic time estimates arise from algorithms that cut work in half in each step. You have seen this in the algorithms for binary search and merge sort, and you will see it again in Chapter 17.

In particular, when you use sorting or binary search in a phase of an algorithm, you will encounter logarithmic time in the big-Oh estimates.

Consider this idea for improving our algorithm for finding the most frequent element. Suppose we first *sort* the array:



That cost us  $O(n \log(n))$  time. If we can complete the algorithm in  $O(n)$  time, we will have found a better algorithm than the  $O(n^2)$  algorithm of the preceding sections.

To see why this is possible, imagine traversing the sorted array. As long as you find a value that was equal to its predecessor, you increment a counter. When you find a different value, save the counter and start counting anew:

|         |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| a:      | 4 | 5 | 5 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 8 |
| counts: | 1 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 1 |

Or in code,

```
int count = 0;
for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
{
```

```

        count++;
        if (i == a.length - 1 || a[i] != a[i + 1])
        {
            counts[i] = count;
            count = 0;
        }
    }
}

```

That's a constant amount of work per iteration, even though it visits two elements:



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program for comparing the speed of algorithms that find the most frequent element.



#### SELF CHECK



- 21.** What is the “light bulb pattern” of visits in the following algorithm to check whether an array is a palindrome?
- ```

for (int i = 0; i < a.length / 2; i++)
{
    if (a[i] != a[a.length - 1 - i]) { return false; }
}
return true;

```
- 22.** What is the big-Oh running time of the following algorithm to check whether the first element is duplicated in an array?
- ```

for (int i = 1; i < a.length; i++)
{
    if (a[0] == a[i]) { return true; }
}
return false;

```
- 23.** What is the big-Oh running time of the following algorithm to check whether an array has a duplicate value?
- ```

for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
{
    for (j = i + 1; j < a.length; j++)
    {
        if (a[i] == a[j]) { return true; }
    }
}

```

```

        }
    }
    return false;
}

```

- 24.** Describe an  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm for checking whether an array has duplicates.
- 25.** What is the big-Oh running time of the following algorithm to find an element in an  $n \times n$  array?
- ```

for (int i = 0; i < n; i++)
{
    for (j = 0; j < n; j++)
    {
        if (a[i][j] == value) { return true; }
    }
}
return false;

```
- 26.** If you apply the algorithm of Section 14.7.4 to an  $n \times n$  array, what is the big-Oh efficiency of finding the most frequent element in terms of  $n$ ?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R14.9, R14.13, R14.19, E14.8.

## 14.8 Sorting and Searching in the Java Library

When you write Java programs, you don't have to implement your own sorting algorithms. The `Arrays` and `Collections` classes provide sorting and searching methods that we will introduce in the following sections.

### 14.8.1 Sorting

The `Arrays` class implements a sorting method that you should use for your Java programs.

The `Arrays` class contains static `sort` methods to sort arrays of integers and floating-point numbers. For example, you can sort an array of integers simply as

```
int[] a = . . .;
Arrays.sort(a);
```

That `sort` method uses the quicksort algorithm—see Special Topic 14.3 for more information about that algorithm.

If your data are contained in an `ArrayList`, use the `Collections.sort` method instead; it uses the merge sort algorithm:

```
ArrayList<String> names = . . .;
Collections.sort(names);
```

The `Collections` class contains a `sort` method that can sort array lists.

### 14.8.2 Binary Search

The `Arrays` and `Collections` classes contain static `binarySearch` methods that implement the binary search algorithm, but with a useful enhancement. If a value is not found in the array, then the returned value is not  $-1$ , but  $-k - 1$ , where  $k$  is the position before which the element should be inserted. For example,

```
int[] a = { 1, 4, 9 };
int v = 7;
int pos = Arrays.binarySearch(a, v);
// Returns -3; v should be inserted before position 2
```

### 14.8.3 Comparing Objects

The sort method of the `Arrays` class sorts objects of classes that implement the `Comparable` interface.

In application programs, you often need to sort or search through collections of objects. Therefore, the `Arrays` and `Collections` classes also supply `sort` and `binarySearch` methods for objects. However, these methods cannot know how to compare arbitrary objects. Suppose, for example, that you have an array of `Country` objects. It is not obvious how the countries should be sorted. Should they be sorted by their names or by their areas? The `sort` and `binarySearch` methods cannot make that decision for you. Instead, they require that the objects belong to classes that implement the `Comparable` interface type that was introduced in Section 10.3. That interface has a single method:

```
public interface Comparable
{
    int compareTo(Object otherObject);
}
```

The call

```
a.compareTo(b)
```

must return a negative number if `a` should come before `b`, 0 if `a` and `b` are the same, and a positive number otherwise.

Several classes in the standard Java library, such as the `String` and `Date` classes, implement the `Comparable` interface.

You can implement the `Comparable` interface for your own classes as well. For example, to sort a collection of countries, the `Country` class would need to implement this interface and provide a `compareTo` method:

```
public class Country implements Comparable
{
    public int compareTo(Object otherObject)
    {
        Country other = (Country) otherObject;
        if (area < other.area) { return -1; }
        else if (area == other.area) { return 0; }
        else { return 1; }
    }
}
```

This method compares countries by their area. Now you can pass an array of countries to the `Arrays.sort` method:

```
Country[] countries = new Country[n];
// Add countries
Arrays.sort(countries); // Sorts by increasing area
```

Whenever you need to carry out sorting or searching, use the methods in the `Arrays` and `Collections` classes and not those that you write yourself. The library algorithms have been fully debugged and optimized. Thus, the primary purpose of this chapter was not to teach you how to implement practical sorting and searching algorithms. Instead, you have learned something more important, namely that different algorithms can vary widely in performance, and that it is worthwhile to learn more about the design and analysis of algorithms.



**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**  
Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates the Java library methods for sorting and searching.



- 27.** Why can't the `Arrays.sort` method sort an array of `Rectangle` objects?
- 28.** What steps would you need to take to sort an array of `BankAccount` objects by increasing balance?
- 29.** Why is it useful that the `Arrays.binarySearch` method indicates the position where a missing element should be inserted?
- 30.** Why does `Arrays.binarySearch` return  $-k - 1$  and not  $-k$  to indicate that a value is not present and should be inserted before position  $k$ ?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E14.9, E14.13, E14.14.

#### Common Error 14.1



#### The `compareTo` Method Can Return Any Integer, Not Just `-1`, `0`, and `1`

The call `a.compareTo(b)` is allowed to return *any* negative integer to denote that `a` should come before `b`, not necessarily the value `-1`. That is, the test

```
if (a.compareTo(b) == -1) // ERROR!
```

is generally wrong. Instead, you should test

```
if (a.compareTo(b) < 0) // OK
```

Why would a `compareTo` method ever want to return a number other than `-1`, `0`, or `1`? Sometimes, it is convenient to just return the difference of two integers. For example, the `compareTo` method of the `String` class compares characters in matching positions:

```
char c1 = charAt(i);
char c2 = other.charAt(i);
```

If the characters are different, then the method simply returns their difference:

```
if (c1 != c2) { return c1 - c2; }
```

This difference is a negative number if `c1` is less than `c2`, but it is not necessarily the number `-1`.

#### Special Topic 14.4



#### The Parameterized Comparable Interface

As of Java version 5, the `Comparable` interface is a parameterized type, similar to the `ArrayList` type:

```
public interface Comparable<T>
{
    int compareTo(T other)
}
```

The type parameter specifies the type of the objects that this class is willing to accept for comparison. Usually, this type is the same as the class type itself. For example, the `Country` class would implement `Comparable<Country>`, like this:

```
public class Country implements Comparable<Country>
{
    ...
    public int compareTo(Country other)
    {
        if (area < other.area) { return -1; }
        else if (area == other.area) { return 0; }
        else { return 1; }
    }
}
```

```
    . . .
}
```

The type parameter has a significant advantage: You need not use a cast to convert an `Object` parameter variable into the desired type.

### Special Topic 14.5



### The Comparator Interface

Sometimes you want to sort an array or array list of objects, but the objects don't belong to a class that implements the `Comparable` interface. Or, perhaps, you want to sort the array in a different order. For example, you may want to sort countries by name rather than by value.

You wouldn't want to change the implementation of a class simply to call `Arrays.sort`. Fortunately, there is an alternative. One version of the `Arrays.sort` method does not require that the objects belong to classes that implement the `Comparable` interface. Instead, you can supply arbitrary objects. However, you must also provide a *comparator* object whose job is to compare objects. The comparator object must belong to a class that implements the `Comparator` interface. That interface has a single method, `compare`, which compares two objects.

As of Java version 5, the `Comparator` interface is a parameterized type. The type parameter specifies the type of the `compare` parameter variables. For example, `Comparator<Country>` looks like this:

```
public interface Comparator<Country>
{
    int compare(Country a, Country b);
}
```

The call

```
comp.compare(a, b)
```

must return a negative number if `a` should come before `b`, 0 if `a` and `b` are the same, and a positive number otherwise. (Here, `comp` is an object of a class that implements `Comparator<Country>`.)

For example, here is a `Comparator` class for country:

```
public class CountryComparator implements Comparator<Country>
{
    public int compare(Country a, Country b)
    {
        if (a.area < b.area) { return -1; }
        else if (a.area == b.area) { return 0; }
        else { return 1; }
    }
}
```

To sort an array of countries by area, call

```
Arrays.sort(countries, new CountryComparator());
```



### WORKED EXAMPLE 14.1

### Enhancing the Insertion Sort Algorithm

Learn how to implement an improvement of the insertion sort algorithm shown in Special Topic 14.2. The enhanced algorithm is called *Shell sort* after its inventor, Donald Shell. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 14.1.

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### Describe the selection sort algorithm.



- The selection sort algorithm sorts an array by repeatedly finding the smallest element of the unsorted tail region and moving it to the front.

### Measure the running time of a method.

- To measure the running time of a method, get the current time immediately before and after the method call.

### Use the big-Oh notation to describe the running time of an algorithm.

- Computer scientists use the big-Oh notation to describe the growth rate of a function.
- Selection sort is an  $O(n^2)$  algorithm. Doubling the data set means a fourfold increase in processing time.
- Insertion sort is an  $O(n^2)$  algorithm.



### Describe the merge sort algorithm.



- The merge sort algorithm sorts an array by cutting the array in half, recursively sorting each half, and then merging the sorted halves.

### Contrast the running times of the merge sort and selection sort algorithms.

- Merge sort is an  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm. The  $n \log(n)$  function grows much more slowly than  $n^2$ .

### Describe the running times of the linear search algorithm and the binary search algorithm.

- A linear search examines all values in an array until it finds a match or reaches the end.
- A linear search locates a value in an array in  $O(n)$  steps.
- A binary search locates a value in a sorted array by determining whether the value occurs in the first or second half, then repeating the search in one of the halves.
- A binary search locates a value in a sorted array in  $O(\log(n))$  steps.

### Practice developing big-Oh estimates of algorithms.

- A loop with  $n$  iterations has  $O(n)$  running time if each step consists of a fixed number of actions.
- A loop with  $n$  iterations has  $O(n^2)$  running time if each step takes  $O(n)$  time.
- The big-Oh running time for doing several steps in a row is the largest of the big-Oh times for each step.



- A loop with  $n$  iterations has  $O(n^2)$  running time if the  $i$ th step takes  $O(i)$  time.
- An algorithm that cuts the size of work in half in each step runs in  $O(\log(n))$  time.

### Use the Java library methods for sorting and searching data.

- The `Arrays` class implements a sorting method that you should use for your Java programs.
- The `Collections` class contains a `sort` method that can sort array lists.
- The `sort` method of the `Arrays` class sorts objects of classes that implement the `Comparable` interface.

### STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER

`java.lang.Comparable<T>`  
`compareTo`  
`java.lang.System`  
`currentTimeMillis`  
`java.util.Arrays`  
`binarySearch`  
`sort`

`java.util.Collections`  
`binarySearch`  
`sort`  
`java.util.Comparator<T>`  
`compare`

### REVIEW QUESTIONS

- **R14.1** What is the difference between searching and sorting?
- **R14.2** *Checking against off-by-one errors.* When writing the selection sort algorithm of Section 14.1, a programmer must make the usual choices of `<` versus `<=`, `a.length` versus `a.length - 1`, and `from` versus `from + 1`. This is fertile ground for off-by-one errors. Conduct code walkthroughs of the algorithm with arrays of length 0, 1, 2, and 3 and check carefully that all index values are correct.
- **R14.3** For the following expressions, what is the order of the growth of each?
  - a.**  $n^2 + 2n + 1$
  - b.**  $n^{10} + 9n^9 + 20n^8 + 145n^7$
  - c.**  $(n + 1)^4$
  - d.**  $(n^2 + n)^2$
  - e.**  $n + 0.001n^3$
  - f.**  $n^3 - 1000n^2 + 10^9$
  - g.**  $n + \log(n)$
  - h.**  $n^2 + n \log(n)$
  - i.**  $2^n + n^2$
  - j.**  $\frac{n^3 + 2n}{n^2 + 0.75}$

- **R14.4** We determined that the actual number of visits in the selection sort algorithm is

$$T(n) = \frac{1}{2}n^2 + \frac{5}{2}n - 3$$

We characterized this method as having  $O(n^2)$  growth. Compute the actual ratios

$$T(2,000)/T(1,000)$$

$$T(4,000)/T(1,000)$$

$$T(10,000)/T(1,000)$$

and compare them with

$$f(2,000)/f(1,000)$$

$$f(4,000)/f(1,000)$$

$$f(10,000)/f(1,000)$$

where  $f(n) = n^2$ .

- **R14.5** Suppose algorithm  $A$  takes five seconds to handle a data set of 1,000 records. If the algorithm  $A$  is an  $O(n)$  algorithm, approximately how long will it take to handle a data set of 2,000 records? Of 10,000 records?

- ■ **R14.6** Suppose an algorithm takes five seconds to handle a data set of 1,000 records. Fill in the following table, which shows the approximate growth of the execution times depending on the complexity of the algorithm.

|        | $O(n)$ | $O(n^2)$ | $O(n^3)$ | $O(n \log(n))$ | $O(2^n)$ |
|--------|--------|----------|----------|----------------|----------|
| 1,000  | 5      | 5        | 5        | 5              | 5        |
| 2,000  |        |          |          |                |          |
| 3,000  |        | 45       |          |                |          |
| 10,000 |        |          |          |                |          |

For example, because  $3,000^2/1,000^2 = 9$ , the algorithm would take nine times as long, or 45 seconds, to handle a data set of 3,000 records.

- ■ **R14.7** Sort the following growth rates from slowest to fastest growth.

$$O(n) \quad O(n \log(n))$$

$$O(n^3) \quad O(2^n)$$

$$O(n^n) \quad O(\sqrt{n})$$

$$O(\log(n)) \quad O(n\sqrt{n})$$

$$O(n^2 \log(n)) \quad O(n^{\log(n)})$$

- **R14.8** What is the growth rate of the standard algorithm to find the minimum value of an array? Of finding both the minimum and the maximum?

- **R14.9** What is the big-Oh time estimate of the following method in terms of  $n$ , the length of  $a$ ? Use the “light bulb pattern” method of Section 14.7 to visualize your result.

```
public static void swap(int[] a)
{
    int i = 0;
    int j = a.length - 1;
    while (i < j)
    {
        int temp = a[i];
        a[i] = a[j];
        a[j] = temp;
        i++;
        j--;
    }
}
```

- **R14.10** Trace a walkthrough of selection sort with these sets:

- a.** 4 7 11 4 9 5 11 7 3 5  
**b.** -7 6 8 7 5 9 0 11 10 5 8

- **R14.11** Trace a walkthrough of merge sort with these sets:

- a.** 5 11 7 3 5 4 7 11 4 9  
**b.** 9 0 11 10 5 8 -7 6 8 7 5

- **R14.12** Trace a walkthrough of:

- a.** Linear search for 7 in    -7    1    3    3    4    7    11    13  
**b.** Binary search for 8 in    -7    2    2    3    4    7    8    11    13  
**c.** Binary search for 8 in    -7    1    2    3    5    7    10    13

- ■ **R14.13** Your task is to remove all duplicates from an array. For example, if the array has the values

4 7 11 4 9 5 11 7 3 5

then the array should be changed to

4 7 11 9 5 3

Here is a simple algorithm: Look at  $a[i]$ . Count how many times it occurs in  $a$ . If the count is larger than 1, remove it. What is the growth rate of the time required for this algorithm?

- ■ ■ **R14.14** Modify the merge sort algorithm to remove duplicates in the merging step to obtain an algorithm that removes duplicates from an array. Note that the resulting array does not have the same ordering as the original one. What is the efficiency of this algorithm?

- ■ ■ **R14.15** Consider the following algorithm to remove all duplicates from an array: Sort the array. For each element in the array, look at its next neighbor to decide whether it is present more than once. If so, remove it. Is this a faster algorithm than the one in Exercise R14.13?

- ■ ■ **R14.16** Develop an  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm for removing duplicates from an array if the resulting array must have the same ordering as the original array. When a value occurs multiple times, all but its first occurrence should be removed.

- R14.17** Why does insertion sort perform significantly better than selection sort if an array is already sorted?
- R14.18** Consider the following speedup of the insertion sort algorithm of Special Topic 14.2. For each element, use the enhanced binary search algorithm that yields the insertion position for missing elements. Does this speedup have a significant impact on the efficiency of the algorithm?
- R14.19** Consider the following algorithm known as *bubble sort*:
- ```

While the array is not sorted
  For each adjacent pair of elements
    If the pair is not sorted
      Swap its elements.

```
- What is the big-Oh efficiency of this algorithm?
- R14.20** The *radix sort* algorithm sorts an array of  $n$  integers with  $d$  digits, using ten auxiliary arrays. First place each value  $v$  into the auxiliary array whose index corresponds to the last digit of  $v$ . Then move all values back into the original array, preserving their order. Repeat the process, now using the next-to-last (tens) digit, then the hundreds digit, and so on. What is the big-Oh time of this algorithm in terms of  $n$  and  $d$ ? When is this algorithm preferable to merge sort?
- R14.21** A *stable sort* does not change the order of elements with the same value. This is a desirable feature in many applications. Consider a sequence of e-mail messages. If you sort by date and then by sender, you'd like the second sort to preserve the relative order of the first, so that you can see all messages from the same sender in date order. Is selection sort stable? Insertion sort? Why or why not?
- R14.22** Give an  $O(n)$  algorithm to sort an array of  $n$  bytes (numbers between  $-128$  and  $127$ ). *Hint:* Use an array of counters.
- R14.23** You are given a sequence of arrays of words, representing the pages of a book. Your task is to build an index (a sorted array of words), each element of which has an array of sorted numbers representing the pages on which the word appears. Describe an algorithm for building the index and give its big-Oh running time in terms of the total number of words.
- R14.24** Given two arrays of  $n$  integers each, describe an  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm for determining whether they have an element in common.
- R14.25** Given an array of  $n$  integers and a value  $v$ , describe an  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm to find whether there are two values  $x$  and  $y$  in the array with sum  $v$ .
- R14.26** Given two arrays of  $n$  integers each, describe an  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm for finding all elements that they have in common.
- R14.27** Suppose we modify the quicksort algorithm from Special Topic 14.3, selecting the middle element instead of the first one as pivot. What is the running time on an array that is already sorted?
- R14.28** Suppose we modify the quicksort algorithm from Special Topic 14.3, selecting the middle element instead of the first one as pivot. Find a sequence of values for which this algorithm has an  $O(n^2)$  running time.

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E14.1** Modify the selection sort algorithm to sort an array of integers in descending order.
- **E14.2** Modify the selection sort algorithm to sort an array of coins by their value.
- **E14.3** Write a program that automatically generates the table of sample run times for the selection sort algorithm. The program should ask for the smallest and largest value of  $n$  and the number of measurements and then make all sample runs.
- **E14.4** Modify the merge sort algorithm to sort an array of strings in lexicographic order.
- **E14.5** Write a telephone lookup program. Read a data set of 1,000 names and telephone numbers from a file that contains the numbers in random order. Handle lookups by name and also reverse lookups by phone number. Use a binary search for both lookups.
- **E14.6** Implement a program that measures the performance of the insertion sort algorithm described in Special Topic 14.2.
- **E14.7** Implement the bubble sort algorithm described in Exercise R14.19.
- **E14.8** Implement the algorithm described in Section 14.7.4, but only remember the value with the highest frequency so far:

```
int mostFrequent = 0;
int highestFrequency = -1;
for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
    Count how often a[i] occurs in a[i + 1]...a[a.length - 1]
    If it occurs more often than highestFrequency
        highestFrequency = that count
        mostFrequent = a[i]
```

- **E14.9** Write a program that sorts an `ArrayList<Country>` in decreasing order so that the largest country is at the beginning of the array. Use a `Comparator`.
- **E14.10** Consider the binary search algorithm in Section 14.6. If no match is found, the search method returns `-1`. Modify the method so that if `a` is not found, the method returns `-k - 1`, where  $k$  is the position before which the element should be inserted. (This is the same behavior as `Arrays.binarySearch`.)
- **E14.11** Implement the `sort` method of the merge sort algorithm without recursion, where the length of the array is a power of 2. First merge adjacent regions of size 1, then adjacent regions of size 2, then adjacent regions of size 4, and so on.
- **E14.12** Use insertion sort and the binary search from Exercise E14.10 to sort an array as described in Exercise R14.18. Implement this algorithm and measure its performance.
- **E14.13** Supply a class `Person` that implements the `Comparable` interface. Compare persons by their names. Ask the user to input ten names and generate ten `Person` objects. Using the `compareTo` method, determine and print the first and last person among them and print them.
- **E14.14** Sort an array list of strings by increasing `length`. Hint: Supply a `Comparator`.

- **E14.15** Sort an array list of strings by increasing length, and so that strings of the same length are sorted lexicographically. *Hint:* Supply a Comparator.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- **P14.1** Implement the following modification of the quicksort algorithm, due to Bentley and McIlroy. Instead of using the first element as the pivot, use an approximation of the median. (Partitioning at the actual median would yield an  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm, but we don't know how to compute it quickly enough.)

If  $n \leq 7$ , use the middle element. If  $n \leq 40$ , use the median of the first, middle, and last element. Otherwise compute the “pseudomedian” of the nine elements  $a[i * (n - 1) / 8]$ , where  $i$  ranges from 0 to 8. The pseudomedian of nine values is  $\text{med}(\text{med}(v_0, v_1, v_2), \text{med}(v_3, v_4, v_5), \text{med}(v_6, v_7, v_8))$ .

Compare the running time of this modification with that of the original algorithm on sequences that are nearly sorted or reverse sorted, and on sequences with many identical elements. What do you observe?

- **P14.2** Bentley and McIlroy suggest the following modification to the quicksort algorithm when dealing with data sets that contain many repeated elements.

Instead of partitioning as

$\leq$   $\geq$

(where  $\leq$  denotes the elements that are  $\leq$  the pivot), it is better to partition as

$<$   $=$   $>$

However, that is tedious to achieve directly. They recommend to partition as

$=$   $<$   $>$   $=$

and then swap the two  $=$  regions into the middle. Implement this modification and check whether it improves performance on data sets with many repeated elements.

- **P14.3** Implement the radix sort algorithm described in Exercise R14.20 to sort arrays of numbers between 0 and 999.
- **P14.4** Implement the radix sort algorithm described in Exercise R14.20 to sort arrays of numbers between 0 and 999. However, use a single auxiliary array, not ten.
- **P14.5** Implement the radix sort algorithm described in Exercise R14.20 to sort arbitrary `int` values (positive or negative).
- **P14.6** Implement the `sort` method of the merge sort algorithm without recursion, where the length of the array is an arbitrary number. Keep merging adjacent regions whose size is a power of 2, and pay special attention to the last area whose size is less.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. Dropping the `temp` variable would not work. Then `a[i]` and `a[j]` would end up being the same value.
  2.  $1 \mid 5 \ 4 \ 3 \ 2 \ 6$   
 $1 \ 2 \mid 4 \ 3 \ 5 \ 6$   
 $1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 4 \ 5 \ 6$
  3. In each step, find the *maximum* of the remaining elements and swap it with the current element (or see Self Check 4).
  4. The modified algorithm sorts the array in descending order.
  5. Four times as long as 40,000 values, or about 37 seconds.
  6. A parabola.
  7. It takes about 100 times longer.
  8. If  $n$  is 4, then  $\frac{1}{2}n^2$  is 8 and  $\frac{5}{2}n - 3$  is 7.
  9. The first algorithm requires one visit, to store the new element. The second algorithm requires  $T(p) = 2 \times (n - p - 1)$  visits, where  $p$  is the location at which the element is removed. We don't know where that element is, but if elements are removed at random locations, on average, half of the removals will be above the middle and half below, so we can assume an average  $p$  of  $n / 2$  and  $T(n) = 2 \times (n - n / 2 - 1) = n - 2$ .
  10. The first algorithm is  $O(1)$ , the second  $O(n)$ .
  11. We need to check that  $a[0] \leq a[1]$ ,  $a[1] \leq a[2]$ , and so on, visiting  $2n - 2$  elements. Therefore, the running time is  $O(n)$ .
  12. Let  $n$  be the length of the array. In the  $k$ th step, we need  $k$  visits to find the minimum. To remove it, we need an average of  $k - 2$  visits (see Self Check 9). One additional visit is required to add it to the end. Thus, the  $k$ th step requires  $2k - 1$  visits. Because  $k$  goes from  $n$  to 2, the total number of visits is
$$2n - 1 + 2(n - 1) - 1 + \dots + 2 \cdot 3 - 1 + 2 \cdot 2 - 1 = \\ 2(n + (n - 1) + \dots + 3 + 2 + 1 - 1) - (n - 1) = \\ n(n + 1) - 2 - n + 1 = n^2 - 3$$

(because  $1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + (n - 1) + n = n(n + 1)/2$ )

Therefore, the total number of visits is  $O(n^2)$ .
  13. When the preceding `while` loop ends, the loop condition must be false, that is, `iFirst >= first.length` or `iSecond >= second.length` (De Morgan's Law).
  14. First sort 8 7 6 5. Recursively, first sort 8 7. Recursively, first sort 8. It's sorted. Sort 7. It's sorted. Merge them: 7 8. Do the same with 6 5 to get 5 6. Merge them to 5 6 7 8. Do the same with 4 3 2 1: Sort 4 3 by sorting 4 and 3 and merging them to 3 4. Sort 2 1 by sorting 2 and 1 and merging them to 1 2. Merge 3 4 and 1 2 to 1 2 3 4. Finally, merge 5 6 7 8 and 1 2 3 4 to 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8.
  15. If the array size is 1, return its only element as the sum. Otherwise, recursively compute the sum of the first and second subarray and return the sum of these two values.
  16. Approximately  $(100,000 \cdot \log(100,000)) / (50,000 \cdot \log(50,000)) = 2 \cdot 5 / 4.7 = 2.13$  times the time required for 50,000 values. That's  $2.13 \cdot 192$  milliseconds or approximately 409 milliseconds.
  17. 
$$\frac{2n \log(2n)}{n \log(n)} = 2 \frac{(1 + \log(2))}{\log(n)}$$
- For  $n > 2$ , that is a value  $< 3$ .
18. On average, you'd make 500,000 comparisons.
  19. The search method returns the index at which the match occurs, not the data stored at that location.
  20. You would search about 20. (The binary log of 1,024 is 10.)
  21. 
  22. It is an  $O(n)$  algorithm.
  23. It is an  $O(n^2)$  algorithm—the number of visits follows a triangle pattern.
  24. Sort the array, then make a linear scan to check for adjacent duplicates.
  25. It is an  $O(n^2)$  algorithm—the outer and inner loops each have  $n$  iterations.

- 26.** Because an  $n \times n$  array has  $m = n^2$  elements, and the algorithm in Section 14.7.4, when applied to an array with  $m$  elements, is  $O(m \log(m))$ , we have an  $O(n^2 \log(n))$  algorithm. Recall that  $\log(n^2) = 2 \log(n)$ , and the factor of 2 is irrelevant in the big-Oh notation.
- 27.** The Rectangle class does not implement the Comparable interface.
- 28.** The BankAccount class would need to implement the Comparable interface. Its compareTo method must compare the bank balances.
- 29.** Then you know where to insert it so that the array stays sorted, and you can keep using binary search.
- 30.** Otherwise, you would not know whether a value is present when the method returns 0.

# THE JAVA COLLECTIONS FRAMEWORK

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To learn how to use the collection classes supplied in the Java library
- To use iterators to traverse collections
- To choose appropriate collections for solving programming problems
- To study applications of stacks and queues



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### 15.1 AN OVERVIEW OF THE COLLECTIONS FRAMEWORK 672

### 15.2 LINKED LISTS 675

*Computing & Society 15.1: Standardization* 680

### 15.3 SETS 681

*Programming Tip 15.1: Use Interface References to Manipulate Data Structures* 685

### 15.4 MAPS 686

*How To 15.1: Choosing a Collection* 688

*Worked Example 15.1: Word Frequency* 

*Special Topic 15.1: Hash Functions* 690

### 15.5 STACKS, QUEUES, AND PRIORITY QUEUES 692

### 15.6 STACK AND QUEUE APPLICATIONS 695

*Worked Example 15.2: Simulating a Queue of Waiting Customers* 

*Special Topic 15.2: Reverse Polish Notation* 703



If you want to write a program that collects objects (such as the stamps to the left), you have a number of choices. Of course, you can use an array list, but computer scientists have invented other mechanisms that may be better suited for the task. In this chapter, we introduce the collection classes and interfaces that the Java library offers. You will learn how to use the Java collection classes, and how to choose the most appropriate collection type for a problem.

## 15.1 An Overview of the Collections Framework

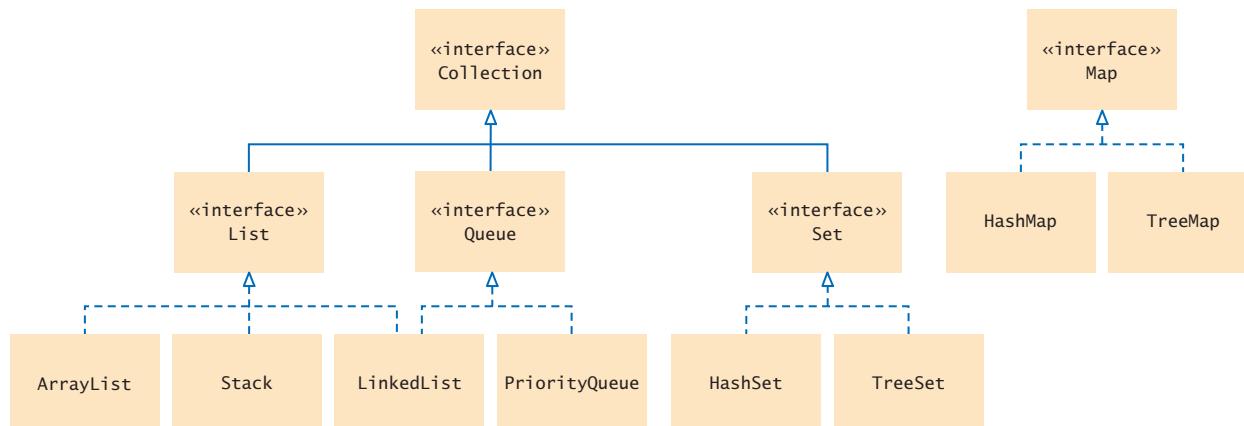
A collection groups together elements and allows them to be retrieved later.

When you need to organize multiple objects in your program, you can place them into a **collection**. The `ArrayList` class that was introduced in Chapter 7 is one of many collection classes that the standard Java library supplies. In this chapter, you will learn about the Java *collections framework*, a hierarchy of interface types and classes for collecting objects. Each interface type is implemented by one or more classes (see Figure 1).

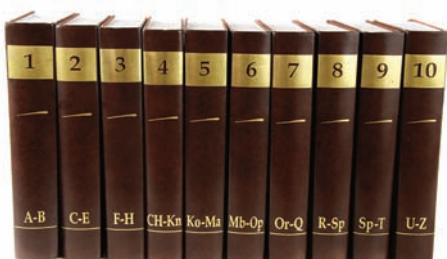
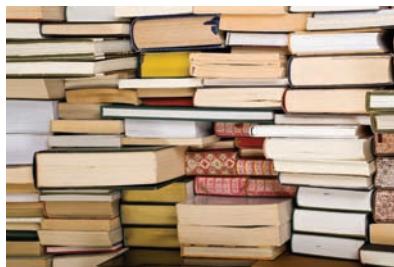
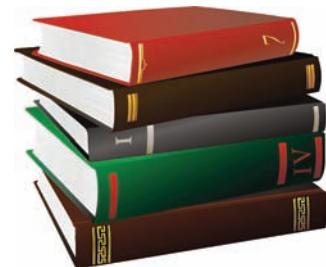
At the root of the hierarchy is the `Collection` interface. That interface has methods for adding and removing elements, and so on. Table 1 on page 674 shows all the methods. Because all collections implement this interface, its methods are available for all collection classes. For example, the `size` method reports the number of elements in *any* collection.

The `List` interface describes an important category of collections. In Java, a *list* is a collection that remembers the order of its elements (see Figure 2). The `ArrayList` class implements the `List` interface. An `ArrayList` is simply a class containing an array that is expanded as needed. If you are not concerned about efficiency, you can use the `ArrayList` class whenever you need to collect objects. However, several common operations are inefficient with array lists. In particular, if an element is added or removed, the elements at larger positions must be moved.

The Java library supplies another class, `LinkedList`, that also implements the `List` interface. Unlike an array list, a linked list allows efficient insertion and removal of elements in the middle of the list. We will discuss that class in the next section.



**Figure 1** Interfaces and Classes in the Java Collections Framework

**Figure 2** A List of Books**Figure 3** A Set of Books**Figure 4** A Stack of Books

A list is a collection that remembers the order of its elements.

A set is an unordered collection of unique elements.

A map keeps associations between key and value objects.

You use a list whenever you want to retain the order that you established. For example, on your bookshelf, you may order books by topic. A list is an appropriate data structure for such a collection because the ordering matters to you.

However, in many applications, you don't really care about the order of the elements in a collection. Consider a mail-order dealer of books. Without customers browsing the shelves, there is no need to order books by topic. Such a collection without an intrinsic order is called a **set**—see Figure 3.

Because a set does not track the order of the elements, it can arrange the elements so that the operations of finding, adding, and removing elements become more efficient. Computer scientists have invented mechanisms for this purpose. The Java library provides classes that are based on two such mechanisms (called *hash tables* and *binary search trees*). You will learn in this chapter how to choose between them.

Another way of gaining efficiency in a collection is to reduce the number of operations. A **stack** remembers the order of its elements, but it does not allow you to insert elements in every position. You can add and remove elements only at the top—see Figure 4.

In a **queue**, you add items to one end (the tail) and remove them from the other end (the head). For example, you could keep a queue of books, adding required reading at the tail and taking a book from the head whenever you have time to read another one. A **priority queue** is an unordered collection that has an efficient operation for removing the element with the highest priority. You might use a priority queue for organizing your reading assignments. Whenever you have some time, remove the book with the highest priority and read it. We will discuss stacks, queues, and priority queues in Section 15.5.

Finally, a **map** manages associations between *keys* and *values*. Every key in the map has an associated value (see Figure 5). The map stores the keys, values, and the associations between them.

**Figure 5**  
A Map from Bar Codes to Books

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a sample program that demonstrates several collection classes.

For an example, consider a library that puts a bar code on each book. The program used to check books in and out needs to look up the book associated with each bar code. A map associating bar codes with books can solve this problem. We will discuss maps in Section 15.4.

**Table 1** The Methods of the Collection Interface

<code>Collection&lt;String&gt; coll = new ArrayList&lt;String&gt;();</code>	The <code>ArrayList</code> class implements the <code>Collection</code> interface.
<code>coll = new TreeSet&lt;String&gt;();</code>	The <code>TreeSet</code> class (Section 15.3) also implements the <code>Collection</code> interface.
<code>int n = coll.size();</code>	Gets the size of the collection. <code>n</code> is now 0.
<code>coll.add("Harry"); coll.add("Sally");</code>	Adds elements to the collection.
<code>String s = coll.toString();</code>	Returns a string with all elements in the collection. <code>s</code> is now [Harry, Sally].
<code>System.out.println(coll);</code>	Invokes the <code>toString</code> method and prints [Harry, Sally].
<code>coll.remove("Harry"); boolean b = coll.remove("Tom");</code>	Removes an element from the collection, returning <code>false</code> if the element is not present. <code>b</code> is false.
<code>b = coll.contains("Sally");</code>	Checks whether this collection contains a given element. <code>b</code> is now true.
<code>for (String s : coll) {     System.out.println(s); }</code>	You can use the “for each” loop with any collection. This loop prints the elements on separate lines.
<code>Iterator&lt;String&gt; iter = coll.iterator();</code>	You use an iterator for visiting the elements in the collection (see Section 15.2.3).

**SELF CHECK**

1. A gradebook application stores a collection of quizzes. Should it use a list or a set?
2. A student information system stores a collection of student records for a university. Should it use a list or a set?
3. Why is a queue of books a better choice than a stack for organizing your required reading?
4. As you can see from Figure 1, the Java collections framework does not consider a map a collection. Give a reason for this decision.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R15.1, R15.2, R15.3.

## 15.2 Linked Lists

A **linked list** is a data structure used for collecting a sequence of objects that allows efficient addition and removal of elements in the middle of the sequence. In the following sections, you will learn how a linked list manages its elements and how you can use linked lists in your programs.

### 15.2.1 The Structure of Linked Lists

To understand the inefficiency of arrays and the need for a more efficient data structure, imagine a program that maintains a sequence of employee names. If an employee leaves the company, the name must be removed. In an array, the hole in the sequence needs to be closed up by moving all objects that come after it. Conversely, suppose an employee is added in the middle of the sequence. Then all names following the new hire must be moved toward the end. Moving a large number of elements can involve a substantial amount of processing time. A linked list structure avoids this movement.

A linked list consists of a number of nodes, each of which has a reference to the next node.



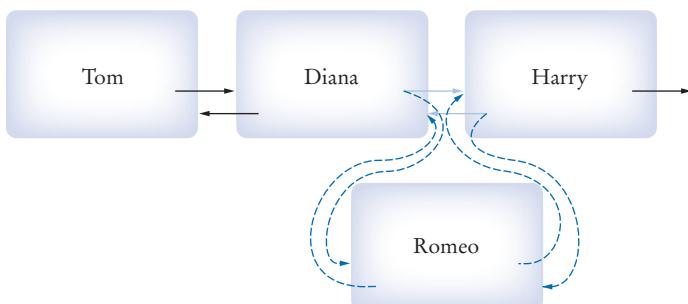
*Each node in a linked list is connected to the neighboring nodes.*

A linked list uses a sequence of *nodes*. A node is an object that stores an element and references to the neighboring nodes in the sequence (see Figure 6).

**Figure 6**  
A Linked List



When you insert a new node into a linked list, only the neighboring node references need to be updated (see Figure 7).



**Figure 7** Inserting a Node into a Linked List

The same is true when you remove a node (see Figure 8). What's the catch? Linked lists allow efficient insertion and removal, but element access can be inefficient.

**Figure 8**  
Removing a  
Node from a  
Linked List



Adding and removing elements at a given location in a linked list is efficient.

Visiting the elements of a linked list in sequential order is efficient, but random access is not.

For example, suppose you want to locate the fifth element. You must first traverse the first four. This is a problem if you need to access the elements in arbitrary order. The term “random access” is used in computer science to describe an access pattern in which elements are accessed in arbitrary (not necessarily random) order. In contrast, sequential access visits the elements in sequence.

Of course, if you mostly visit all elements in sequence (for example, to display or print the elements), the inefficiency of random access is not a problem. You use linked lists when you are concerned about the efficiency of inserting or removing elements and you rarely need element access in random order.

### 15.2.2 The LinkedList Class of the Java Collections Framework

The Java library provides a `LinkedList` class in the `java.util` package. It is a **generic class**, just like the `ArrayList` class. That is, you specify the type of the list elements in angle brackets, such as `LinkedList<String>` or `LinkedList<Employee>`.

Table 2 shows important methods of the `LinkedList` class. (Remember that the `LinkedList` class also inherits the methods of the `Collection` interface shown in Table 1.)

As you can see from Table 2, there are methods for accessing the beginning and the end of the list directly. However, to visit the other elements, you need a list **iterator**. We discuss iterators next.

**Table 2** Working with Linked Lists

<code>LinkedList&lt;String&gt; list = new LinkedList&lt;String&gt;();</code>	An empty list.
<code>list.addLast("Harry");</code>	Adds an element to the end of the list. Same as <code>add</code> .
<code>list.addFirst("Sally");</code>	Adds an element to the beginning of the list. <code>list</code> is now <code>[Sally, Harry]</code> .
<code>list.getFirst();</code>	Gets the element stored at the beginning of the list; here <code>"Sally"</code> .
<code>list.getLast();</code>	Gets the element stored at the end of the list; here <code>"Harry"</code> .
<code>String removed = list.removeFirst();</code>	Removes the first element of the list and returns it. <code>removed</code> is <code>"Sally"</code> and <code>list</code> is <code>[Harry]</code> . Use <code>removeLast</code> to remove the last element.
<code>ListIterator&lt;String&gt; iter = list.listIterator()</code>	Provides an iterator for visiting all list elements (see Table 3 on page 678).

### 15.2.3 List Iterators

You use a list iterator to access elements inside a linked list.

An iterator encapsulates a position anywhere inside the linked list. Conceptually, you should think of the iterator as pointing between two elements, just as the cursor in a word processor points between two characters (see Figure 9). In the conceptual view, think of each element as being like a letter in a word processor, and think of the iterator as being like the blinking cursor between letters.

You obtain a list iterator with the `listIterator` method of the `LinkedList` class:

```
LinkedList<String> employeeNames = . . .;
ListIterator<String> iterator = employeeNames.listIterator();
```

Note that the iterator class is also a generic type. A `ListIterator<String>` iterates through a list of strings; a `ListIterator<Book>` visits the elements in a `LinkedList<Book>`.

Initially, the iterator points before the first element. You can move the iterator position with the `next` method:

```
iterator.next();
```

The `next` method throws a `NoSuchElementException` if you are already past the end of the list. You should always call the iterator's `hasNext` method before calling `next`—it returns true if there is a next element.

```
if (iterator.hasNext())
{
    iterator.next();
}
```

The `next` method returns the element that the iterator is passing. When you use a `ListIterator<String>`, the return type of the `next` method is `String`. In general, the return type of the `next` method matches the list iterator's type parameter (which reflects the type of the elements in the list).

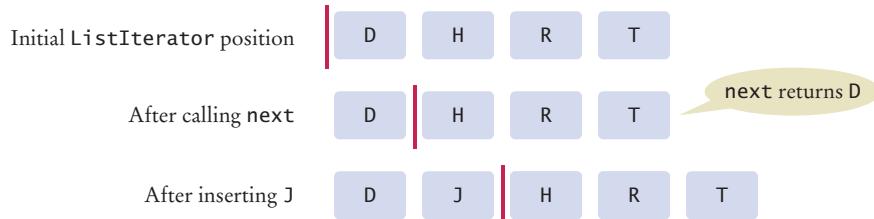
You traverse all elements in a linked list of strings with the following loop:

```
while (iterator.hasNext())
{
    String name = iterator.next();
    Do something with name
}
```

As a shorthand, if your loop simply visits all elements of the linked list, you can use the “for each” loop:

```
for (String name : employeeNames)
{
    Do something with name
}
```

Then you don't have to worry about iterators at all. Behind the scenes, the `for` loop uses an iterator to visit all list elements.



**Figure 9**  
A Conceptual View of the List Iterator

**Table 3** Methods of the Iterator and ListIterator Interfaces

<code>String s = iter.next();</code>	Assume that <code>iter</code> points to the beginning of the list [Sally] before calling <code>next</code> . After the call, <code>s</code> is "Sally" and the iterator points to the end.
<code>iter.previous();</code> <code>iter.set("Juliet");</code>	The <code>set</code> method updates the last element returned by <code>next</code> or <code>previous</code> . The list is now [Juliet].
<code>iter.hasNext()</code>	Returns <code>false</code> because the iterator is at the end of the collection.
<code>if (iter.hasPrevious())</code> { <code>s = iter.previous();</code> }	<code>hasPrevious</code> returns <code>true</code> because the iterator is not at the beginning of the list. <code>previous</code> and <code>hasPrevious</code> are <code>ListIterator</code> methods.
<code>iter.add("Diana");</code>	Adds an element before the iterator position ( <code>ListIterator</code> only). The list is now [Diana, Juliet].
<code>iter.next();</code> <code>iter.remove();</code>	<code>remove</code> removes the last element returned by <code>next</code> or <code>previous</code> . The list is now [Diana].

The nodes of the `LinkedList` class store two links: one to the next element and one to the previous one. Such a list is called a **doubly-linked list**. You can use the `previous` and `hasPrevious` methods of the `ListIterator` interface to move the iterator position backward.

The `add` method adds an object after the iterator, then moves the iterator position past the new element.

```
iterator.add("Juliet");
```

You can visualize insertion to be like typing text in a word processor. Each character is inserted after the cursor, then the cursor moves past the inserted character (see Figure 9). Most people never pay much attention to this—you may want to try it out and watch carefully how your word processor inserts characters.

The `remove` method removes the object that was returned by the last call to `next` or `previous`. For example, this loop removes all names that fulfill a certain condition:

```
while (iterator.hasNext())
{
    String name = iterator.next();
    if (condition is fulfilled for name)
    {
        iterator.remove();
    }
}
```

You have to be careful when calling `remove`. It can be called only *once* after calling `next` or `previous`, and you cannot call it immediately after a call to `add`. If you call the method improperly, it throws an `IllegalStateException`.

Table 3 summarizes the methods of the `ListIterator` interface. The `ListIterator` interface extends a more general `Iterator` interface that is suitable for arbitrary collections, not just lists. The table indicates which methods are specific to list iterators.

Following is a sample program that inserts strings into a list and then iterates through the list, adding and removing elements. Finally, the entire list is printed. The comments indicate the iterator position.

**section\_2/ListDemo.java**

```

1 import java.util.LinkedList;
2 import java.util.ListIterator;
3
4 /**
5  * This program demonstrates the LinkedList class.
6 */
7 public class ListDemo
8 {
9     public static void main(String[] args)
10    {
11        LinkedList<String> staff = new LinkedList<String>();
12        staff.addLast("Diana");
13        staff.addLast("Harry");
14        staff.addLast("Romeo");
15        staff.addLast("Tom");
16
17        // | in the comments indicates the iterator position
18
19        ListIterator<String> iterator = staff.listIterator(); // |DHRT
20        iterator.next(); // D|HRT
21        iterator.next(); // DH|RT
22
23        // Add more elements after second element
24
25        iterator.add("Juliet"); // DHJ|RT
26        iterator.add("Nina"); // DHJN|RT
27
28        iterator.next(); // DHJNR|T
29
30        // Remove last traversed element
31
32        iterator.remove(); // DHJN|T
33
34        // Print all elements
35
36        System.out.println(staff);
37        System.out.println("Expected: [Diana, Harry, Juliet, Nina, Tom]");
38    }
39 }
```

**Program Run**

```
[Diana, Harry, Juliet, Nina, Tom]
Expected: [Diana, Harry, Juliet, Nina, Tom]
```

**SELF CHECK**

5. Do linked lists take more storage space than arrays of the same size?
6. Why don't we need iterators with arrays?
7. Suppose the list `letters` contains elements "A", "B", "C", and "D". Draw the contents of the list and the iterator position for the following operations:

```
ListIterator<String> iter = letters.iterator();
iter.next();
iter.next();
iter.remove();
iter.next();
iter.add("E");
```

```
iter.next();
iter.add("F");
```

8. Write a loop that removes all strings with length less than four from a linked list of strings called words.
9. Write a loop that prints every second element of a linked list of strings called words.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R15.4, R15.7, E15.1.



## Computing & Society 15.1 Standardization

You encounter the benefits of standardization every day. When you buy a light bulb, you can be assured that it fits the socket without having to measure the socket at home and the light bulb in the store. In fact, you may have experienced how painful the lack of standards can be if you have ever purchased a flashlight with nonstandard bulbs. Replacement bulbs for such a flashlight can be difficult and expensive to obtain.

Programmers have a similar desire for standardization. Consider the important goal of platform independence for Java programs. After you compile a Java program into class files, you can execute the class files on any computer that has a Java virtual machine. For this to work, the behavior of the virtual machine has to be strictly defined. If all virtual machines don't behave exactly the same way, then the slogan of "write once, run anywhere" turns into "write once, debug everywhere". In order for multiple implementors to create compatible virtual machines, the virtual machine needed to be *standardized*. That is, someone needed to create a definition of the virtual machine and its expected behavior.

Who creates standards? Some of the most successful standards have been created by volunteer groups such as the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) and the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C). The IETF standardizes protocols used in the Internet, such



as the protocol for exchanging e-mail messages. The W3C standardizes the Hypertext Markup Language (HTML), the format for web pages. These standards have been instrumental in the creation of the World Wide Web as an open platform that is not controlled by any one company.

Many programming languages, such as C++ and Scheme, have been standardized by independent standards organizations, such as the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) and the International Organization for Standardization—called ISO for short (not an acronym; see [http://www.iso.org/iso/about/discover-iso\\_isos-name.htm](http://www.iso.org/iso/about/discover-iso_isos-name.htm)). ANSI and ISO are associations of industry professionals who develop standards for everything from car tires to credit card shapes to programming languages.

Many standards are developed by dedicated experts from a multitude of vendors and users, with the objective of creating a set of rules that codifies best practices. But sometimes, standards are very contentious. By 2005, Microsoft started losing government contracts when its customers became concerned that many of their documents were stored in proprietary, undocumented formats. Instead of supporting existing standard formats, or working with an industry group to improve those standards, Microsoft wrote its own standard that simply codified what its product was currently doing, even though that format is widely regarded as being inconsistent and very complex. (The description of the format spans over 6,000 pages.) The company first proposed its standard to the European Computer Manu-

facturers Association (ECMA), which approved it with minimal discussion. Then ISO "fast-tracked" it as an existing standard, bypassing the normal technical review mechanism.

For similar reasons, Sun Microsystems, the inventor of Java, never agreed to have a third-party organization standardize the Java language. Instead, they put in place their own standardization process, involving other companies but refusing to relinquish control.

Of course, many important pieces of technology aren't standardized at all. Consider the Windows operating system. Although Windows is often called a de-facto standard, it really is no standard at all. Nobody has ever attempted to define formally what the Windows operating system should do. The behavior changes at the whim of its vendor. That suits Microsoft just fine, because it makes it impossible for a third party to create its own version of Windows.

As a computer professional, there will be many times in your career when you need to make a decision whether to support a particular standard. Consider a simple example. In this chapter, you learn about the collection classes from the standard Java library. However, many computer scientists dislike these classes because of their numerous design issues. Should you use the Java collections in your own code, or should you implement a better set of collections? If you do the former, you have to deal with a design that is less than optimal. If you do the latter, other programmers may have a hard time understanding your code because they aren't familiar with your classes.

## 15.3 Sets

As you learned in Section 15.1, a **set** organizes its values in an order that is optimized for efficiency, which may not be the order in which you add elements. Inserting and removing elements is more efficient with a set than with a list.

In the following sections, you will learn how to choose a set implementation and how to work with sets.

### 15.3.1 Choosing a Set Implementation

The HashSet and TreeSet classes both implement the Set interface.

Set implementations arrange the elements so that they can locate them quickly.

You can form hash sets holding objects of type String, Integer, Double, Point, Rectangle, or Color.

The Set interface in the standard Java library has the same methods as the Collection interface, shown in Table 1. However, there is an essential difference between arbitrary collections and sets. A set does not admit duplicates. If you add an element to a set that is already present, the insertion is ignored.

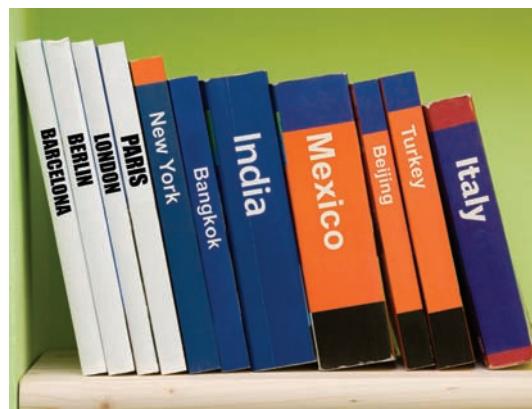
The HashSet and TreeSet classes implement the Set interface. These two classes provide set implementations based on two different mechanisms, called **hash tables** and **binary search trees**. Both implementations arrange the set elements so that finding, adding, and removing elements is efficient, but they use different strategies.

The basic idea of a hash table is simple. Set elements are grouped into smaller collections of elements that share the same characteristic. You can imagine a hash set of books as having a group for each color, so that books of the same color are in the same group. To find whether a book is already present, you just need to check it against the books in the same color group. Actually, hash tables don't use colors, but integer values (called hash codes) that can be computed from the elements.

In order to use a hash table, the elements must have a method to compute those integer values. This method is called `hashCode`. The elements must also belong to a class with a properly defined `equals` method (see Special Topic 9.7).

Many classes in the standard library implement these methods, for example `String`, `Integer`, `Double`, `Point`, `Rectangle`, `Color`, and all the collection classes. Therefore, you can form a `HashSet<String>`, `HashSet<Rectangle>`, or even a `HashSet<HashSet<Integer>>`.

Suppose you want to form a set of elements belonging to a class that you declared, such as a `HashSet<Book>`. Then you need to provide `hashCode` and `equals` methods for the class `Book`. There is one exception to this rule. If all elements are distinct (for example, if your program never has two `Book` objects with the same author and title), then you can simply inherit the `hashCode` and `equals` methods of the `Object` class.



*On this shelf, books of the same color are grouped together. Similarly, in a hash table, objects with the same hash code are placed in the same group.*

*A tree set keeps its elements in sorted order.*



The `TreeSet` class uses a different strategy for arranging its elements. Elements are kept in sorted order. For example, a set of books might be arranged by height, or alphabetically by author and title. The elements are not stored in an array—that would make adding and removing elements too inefficient. Instead, they are stored in nodes, as in a linked list. However, the nodes are not arranged in a linear sequence but in a tree shape.

In order to use a `TreeSet`, it must be possible to compare the elements and determine which one is “larger”. You can use a `TreeSet` for classes such as `String` and `Integer` that implement the `Comparable` interface, which we discussed in Section 10.3. (That section also shows you how you can implement comparison methods for your own classes.)

As a rule of thumb, you should choose a `TreeSet` if you want to visit the set’s elements in sorted order. Otherwise choose a `HashSet`—as long as the hash function is well chosen, it is a bit more efficient.

When you construct a `HashSet` or `TreeSet`, store the reference in a `Set<String>` variable, either as

```
Set<String> names = new HashSet<String>();  
or  
Set<String> names = new TreeSet<String>();
```

After you construct the collection object, the implementation no longer matters; only the interface is important.

### 15.3.2 Working with Sets

Adding and removing set elements are accomplished with the `add` and `remove` methods:

```
names.add("Romeo");  
names.remove("Juliet");
```

As in mathematics, a set collection in Java rejects duplicates. Adding an element has no effect if the element is already in the set. Similarly, attempting to remove an element that isn’t in the set is ignored.

The `contains` method tests whether an element is contained in the set:

```
if (names.contains("Juliet")) . . .
```

The `contains` method uses the `equals` method of the element type. If your set collects `String` or `Integer` objects, you don’t have to worry. Those classes provide an `equals` method. However, if you implemented the element type yourself, then you need to define the `equals` method—see Section 9.5.2.

Finally, to list all elements in the set, get an iterator. As with list iterators, you use the `next` and `hasNext` methods to step through the set.

```
Iterator<String> iter = names.iterator();  
while (iter.hasNext())  
{
```

You can form tree sets for any class that implements the `Comparable` interface, such as `String` or `Integer`.

Sets don’t have duplicates. Adding a duplicate of an element that is already present is ignored.

```

String name = iter.next();
Do something with name
}

```

You can also use the “for each” loop instead of explicitly using an iterator:

```

for (String name : names)
{
    Do something with name
}

```

A set iterator visits the elements in the order in which the set implementation keeps them.

You cannot add an element to a set at an iterator position.

A set iterator visits the elements in the order in which the set implementation keeps them. This is not necessarily the order in which you inserted them. The order of elements in a hash set seems quite random because the hash code spreads the elements into different groups. When you visit elements of a tree set, they always appear in sorted order, even if you inserted them in a different order.

There is an important difference between the `Iterator` that you obtain from a set and the `ListIterator` that a list yields. The `ListIterator` has an `add` method to add an element at the list iterator position. The `Iterator` interface has no such method. It makes no sense to add an element at a particular position in a set, because the set can order the elements any way it likes. Thus, you always add elements directly to a set, never to an iterator of the set.

However, you can remove a set element at an iterator position, just as you do with list iterators.

Also, the `Iterator` interface has no previous method to go backward through the elements. Because the elements are not ordered, it is not meaningful to distinguish between “going forward” and “going backward”.

**Table 4 Working with Sets**

<code>Set&lt;String&gt; names;</code>	Use the interface type for variable declarations.
<code>names = new HashSet&lt;String&gt;();</code>	Use a <code>TreeSet</code> if you need to visit the elements in sorted order.
<code>names.add("Romeo");</code>	Now <code>names.size()</code> is 1.
<code>names.add("Fred");</code>	Now <code>names.size()</code> is 2.
<code>names.add("Romeo");</code>	<code>names.size()</code> is still 2. You can't add duplicates.
<code>if (names.contains("Fred"))</code>	The <code>contains</code> method checks whether a value is contained in the set. In this case, the method returns true.
<code>System.out.println(names);</code>	Prints the set in the format [Fred, Romeo]. The elements need not be shown in the order in which they were inserted.
<code>for (String name : names)</code> { ... }	Use this loop to visit all elements of a set.
<code>names.remove("Romeo");</code>	Now <code>names.size()</code> is 1.
<code>names.remove("Juliet");</code>	It is not an error to remove an element that is not present. The method call has no effect.

The following program shows a practical application of sets. It reads in all words from a dictionary file that contains correctly spelled words and places them in a set. It then reads all words from a document—here, the book *Alice in Wonderland*—into a second set. Finally, it prints all words from that set that are not in the dictionary set. These are the potential misspellings. (As you can see from the output, we used an American dictionary, and words with British spelling, such as *clamour*, are flagged as potential errors.)

### section\_3/SpellCheck.java

```

1 import java.util.HashSet;
2 import java.util.Scanner;
3 import java.util.Set;
4 import java.io.File;
5 import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
6
7 /**
8 * This program checks which words in a file are not present in a dictionary.
9 */
10 public class SpellCheck
11 {
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13         throws FileNotFoundException
14     {
15         // Read the dictionary and the document
16
17         Set<String> dictionaryWords = readWords("words");
18         Set<String> documentWords = readWords("alice30.txt");
19
20         // Print all words that are in the document but not the dictionary
21
22         for (String word : documentWords)
23         {
24             if (!dictionaryWords.contains(word))
25             {
26                 System.out.println(word);
27             }
28         }
29     }
30
31     /**
32      * Reads all words from a file.
33      * @param filename the name of the file
34      * @return a set with all lowercased words in the file. Here, a
35      * word is a sequence of upper- and lowercase letters.
36     */
37     public static Set<String> readWords(String filename)
38         throws FileNotFoundException
39     {
40         Set<String> words = new HashSet<String>();
41         Scanner in = new Scanner(new File(filename));
42         // Use any characters other than a-z or A-Z as delimiters
43         in.useDelimiter("[^a-zA-Z]+");
44         while (in.hasNext())
45         {
46             words.add(in.next().toLowerCase());
47         }
48         return words;

```

```
49 }
50 }
```

### Program Run

```
neighbouring
croqueted
pennyworth
dutchess
comfits
xii
dinn
clamour
...
```

### SELF CHECK



10. Arrays and lists remember the order in which you added elements; sets do not. Why would you want to use a set instead of an array or list?
11. Why are set iterators different from list iterators?
12. What is wrong with the following test to check whether the `Set<String>` `s` contains the elements "Tom", "Diana", and "Harry"?
 

```
if (s.toString().equals("[Tom, Diana, Harry]")) . . .
```
13. How can you correctly implement the test of Self Check 12?
14. Write a loop that prints all elements that are in both `Set<String>` `s` and `Set<String>` `t`.
15. Suppose you changed line 40 of the `SpellCheck` program to use a `TreeSet` instead of a `HashSet`. How would the output change?

### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E15.3, E15.10, E15.11.

### Programming Tip 15.1



### Use Interface References to Manipulate Data Structures

It is considered good style to store a reference to a `HashSet` or `TreeSet` in a variable of type `Set`:

```
Set<String> words = new HashSet<String>();
```

This way, you have to change only one line if you decide to use a `TreeSet` instead.

If a method can operate on arbitrary collections, use the `Collection` interface type for the parameter variable:

```
public static void removeLongWords(Collection<String> words)
```

In theory, we should make the same recommendation for the `List` interface, namely to save `ArrayList` and `LinkedList` references in variables of type `List`. However, the `List` interface has `get` and `set` methods for random access, even though these methods are very inefficient for linked lists. You can't write efficient code if you don't know whether the methods that you are calling are efficient or not. This is plainly a serious design error in the standard library, and it makes the `List` interface somewhat unattractive.

## 15.4 Maps

The `HashMap` and `TreeMap` classes both implement the `Map` interface.



A **map** allows you to associate elements from a *key set* with elements from a *value collection*. You use a map when you want to look up objects by using a key. For example, Figure 10 shows a map from the names of people to their favorite colors.

Just as there are two kinds of set implementations, the Java library has two implementations for the `Map` interface: `HashMap` and `TreeMap`.

After constructing a `HashMap` or `TreeMap`, you can store the reference to the map object in a `Map` reference:

```
Map<String, Color> favoriteColors = new HashMap<String, Color>();
```

Use the `put` method to add an association:

```
favoriteColors.put("Juliet", Color.RED);
```

You can change the value of an existing association, simply by calling `put` again:

```
favoriteColors.put("Juliet", Color.BLUE);
```

The `get` method returns the value associated with a key:

```
Color juliet'sFavoriteColor = favoriteColors.get("Juliet");
```

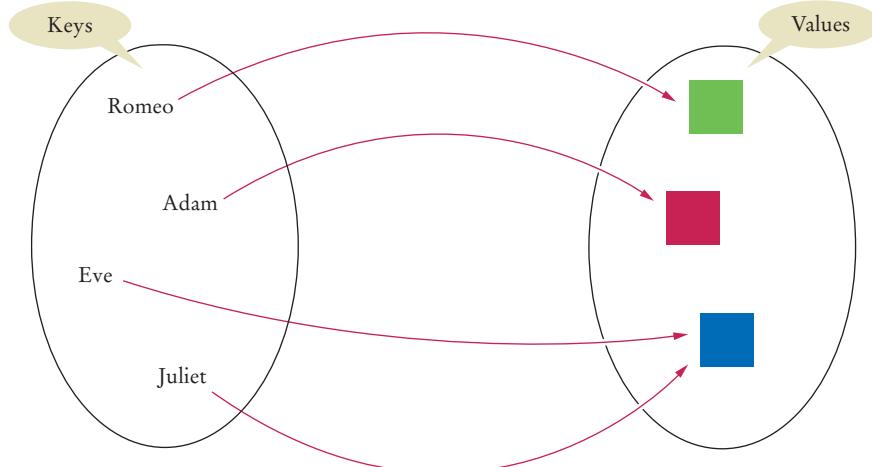
If you ask for a key that isn't associated with any values, then the `get` method returns `null`.

To remove an association, call the `remove` method with the key:

```
favoriteColors.remove("Juliet");
```

**Table 5 Working with Maps**

<code>Map&lt;String, Integer&gt; scores;</code>	Keys are strings, values are <code>Integer</code> wrappers. Use the interface type for variable declarations.
<code>scores = new TreeMap&lt;String, Integer&gt;();</code>	Use a <code>HashMap</code> if you don't need to visit the keys in sorted order.
<code>scores.put("Harry", 90); scores.put("Sally", 95);</code>	Adds keys and values to the map.
<code>scores.put("Sally", 100);</code>	Modifies the value of an existing key.
<code>int n = scores.get("Sally"); Integer n2 = scores.get("Diana");</code>	Gets the value associated with a key, or <code>null</code> if the key is not present. <code>n</code> is 100, <code>n2</code> is <code>null</code> .
<code>System.out.println(scores);</code>	Prints <code>scores.toString()</code> , a string of the form {Harry=90, Sally=100}
<code>for (String key : scores.keySet()) {     Integer value = scores.get(key);     . . . }</code>	Iterates through all map keys and values.
<code>scores.remove("Sally");</code>	Removes the key and value.

**Figure 10** A Map

To find all keys and values in a map, iterate through the key set and find the values that correspond to the keys.

Sometimes you want to enumerate all keys in a map. The `keySet` method yields the set of keys. You can then ask the key set for an iterator and get all keys. From each key, you can find the associated value with the `get` method. Thus, the following instructions print all key/value pairs in a map `m`:

```
Set<String> keySet = m.keySet();
for (String key : keySet)
{
    Color value = m.get(key);
    System.out.println(key + "->" + value);
}
```

This sample program shows a map in action:

#### **section\_4/MapDemo.java**

```
1 import java.awt.Color;
2 import java.util.HashMap;
3 import java.util.Map;
4 import java.util.Set;
5
6 /**
7  * This program demonstrates a map that maps names to colors.
8 */
9 public class MapDemo
{
10
11     public static void main(String[] args)
12     {
13         Map<String, Color> favoriteColors = new HashMap<String, Color>();
14         favoriteColors.put("Juliet", Color.BLUE);
15         favoriteColors.put("Romeo", Color.GREEN);
16         favoriteColors.put("Adam", Color.RED);
17         favoriteColors.put("Eve", Color.BLUE);
18
19         // Print all keys and values in the map
20
21         Set<String> keySet = favoriteColors.keySet();
```

```

22     for (String key : keySet)
23     {
24         Color value = favoriteColors.get(key);
25         System.out.println(key + " : " + value);
26     }
27 }
28 }
```

**Program Run**

```

Juliet : java.awt.Color[r=0,g=0,b=255]
Adam : java.awt.Color[r=255,g=0,b=0]
Eve : java.awt.Color[r=0,g=0,b=255]
Romeo : java.awt.Color[r=0,g=255,b=0]
```

**SELF CHECK**

16. What is the difference between a set and a map?
17. Why is the collection of the keys of a map a set and not a list?
18. Why is the collection of the values of a map not a set?
19. Suppose you want to track how many times each word occurs in a document. Declare a suitable map variable.
20. What is a Map<String, HashSet<String>>? Give a possible use for such a structure.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R15.17, E15.4, E15.5.

**HOW TO 15.1****Choosing a Collection**

Suppose you need to store objects in a collection. You have now seen a number of different data structures. This How To reviews how to pick an appropriate collection for your application.

**Step 1** Determine how you access the values.

You store values in a collection so that you can later retrieve them. How do you want to access individual values? You have several choices:

- Values are accessed by an integer position. Use an `ArrayList`.
- Values are accessed by a key that is not a part of the object. Use a map.
- Values are accessed only at one of the ends. Use a queue (for first-in, first-out access) or a stack (for last-in, first-out access).
- You don't need to access individual values by position. Refine your choice in Steps 3 and 4.

**Step 2** Determine the element types or key/value types.

For a list or set, determine the type of the elements that you want to store. For example, if you collect a set of books, then the element type is `Book`.

Similarly, for a map, determine the types of the keys and the associated values. If you want to look up books by ID, you can use a `Map<Integer, Book>` or `Map<String, Book>`, depending on your ID type.

### Step 3

Determine whether element or key order matters.

When you visit elements from a collection or keys from a map, do you care about the order in which they are visited? You have several choices:

- Elements or keys must be sorted. Use a `TreeSet` or `TreeMap`. Go to Step 6.
- Elements must be in the same order in which they were inserted. Your choice is now narrowed down to a `LinkedList` or an `ArrayList`.
- It doesn't matter. As long as you get to visit all elements, you don't care in which order. If you chose a map in Step 1, use a `HashMap` and go to Step 5.

### Step 4

For a collection, determine which operations must be efficient.

You have several choices:

- Finding elements must be efficient. Use a `HashSet`.
- It must be efficient to add or remove elements at the beginning, or, provided that you are already inspecting an element there, another position. Use a `LinkedList`.
- You only insert or remove at the end, or you collect so few elements that you aren't concerned about speed. Use an `ArrayList`.

### Step 5

For hash sets and maps, decide whether you need to implement the `hashCode` and `equals` methods.

- If your elements or keys belong to a class that someone else implemented, check whether the class has its own `hashCode` and `equals` methods. If so, you are all set. This is the case for most classes in the standard Java library, such as `String`, `Integer`, `Rectangle`, and so on.
- If not, decide whether you can compare the elements by identity. This is the case if you never construct two distinct elements with the same contents. In that case, you need not do anything—the `hashCode` and `equals` methods of the `Object` class are appropriate.
- Otherwise, you need to implement your own `equals` and `hashCode` methods—see Section 9.5.2 and Special Topic 15.1.

### Step 6

If you use a tree, decide whether to supply a comparator.

Look at the class of the set elements or map keys. Does that class implement the `Comparable` interface? If so, is the sort order given by the `compareTo` method the one you want? If yes, then you don't need to do anything further. This is the case for many classes in the standard library, in particular for `String` and `Integer`.

If not, then your element class must implement the `Comparable` interface (Section 10.3), or you must declare a class that implements the `Comparator` interface (see Special Topic 14.5).



## WORKED EXAMPLE 15.1

### Word Frequency

Learn how to create a program that reads a text file and prints a list of all words in the file in alphabetical order, together with a count that indicates how often each word occurred in the file. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 15.1.



## Special Topic 15.1

**Hash Functions**

If you use a hash set or hash map with your own classes, you may need to implement a hash function. A **hash function** is a function that computes an integer value, the **hash code**, from an object in such a way that different objects are likely to yield different hash codes. Because hashing is so important, the `Object` class has a `hashCode` method. The call

```
int h = x.hashCode();
```

computes the hash code of any object `x`. If you want to put objects of a given class into a `HashSet` or use the objects as keys in a `HashMap`, the class should override this method. The method should be implemented so that different objects are likely to have different hash codes.

For example, the `String` class declares a hash function for strings that does a good job of producing different integer values for different strings. Table 6 shows some examples of strings and their hash codes.

It is possible for two or more distinct objects to have the same hash code; this is called a *collision*. For example, the strings "Ugh" and "VII" happen to have the same hash code, but these collisions are very rare for strings (see Exercise P15.4).

The `hashCode` method of the `String` class combines the characters of a string into a numerical code. The code isn't simply the sum of the character values—that would not scramble the character values enough. Strings that are permutations of another (such as "eat" and "tea") would all have the same hash code.

Here is the method the standard library uses to compute the hash code for a string:

```
final int HASH_MULTIPLIER = 31;
int h = 0;
for (int i = 0; i < s.length(); i++)
{
    h = HASH_MULTIPLIER * h + s.charAt(i);
}
```

For example, the hash code of "eat" is

$$31 * (31 * 'e' + 'a') + 't' = 100184$$


*A good hash function produces different hash values for each object so that they are scattered about in a hash table.*

A hash function computes an integer value from an object.

A good hash function minimizes *collisions*—identical hash codes for different objects.

**Table 6** Sample Strings and Their Hash Codes

String	Hash Code
"eat"	100184
"tea"	114704
"Juliet"	-2065036585
"Ugh"	84982
"VII"	84982

The hash code of "tea" is quite different, namely

$$31 * (31 * 't' + 'e') + 'a' = 114704$$

(Use the Unicode table from Appendix A to look up the character values: 'a' is 97, 'e' is 101, and 't' is 116.)

For your own classes, you should make up a hash code that combines the hash codes of the instance variables in a similar way. For example, let us declare a hashCode method for the Country class from Section 10.1.

There are two instance variables: the country name and the area. First, compute their hash codes. You know how to compute the hash code of a string. To compute the hash code of a floating-point number, first wrap the floating-point number into a Double object, and then compute its hash code.

```
public class Country
{
    public int hashCode()
    {
        int h1 = name.hashCode();
        int h2 = new Double(area).hashCode();
        ...
    }
}
```

Override hashCode methods in your own classes by combining the hash codes for the instance variables.

Then combine the two hash codes:

```
final int HASH_MULTIPLIER = 29;
int h = HASH_MULTIPLIER * h1 + h2;
return h;
```

Use a prime number as the hash multiplier—it scrambles the values well.

If you have more than two instance variables, then combine their hash codes as follows:

```
int h = HASH_MULTIPLIER * h1 + h2;
h = HASH_MULTIPLIER * h + h3;
h = HASH_MULTIPLIER * h + h4;
...
return h;
```

If one of the instance variables is an integer, just use the value as its hash code.

When you supply your own hashCode method for a class, you must also provide a compatible equals method. The equals method is used to differentiate between two objects that happen to have the same hash code.

The equals and hashCode methods must be *compatible* with each other. Two objects that are equal must yield the same hash code.

A class's hashCode method must be compatible with its equals method.

You get into trouble if your class declares an equals method but not a hashCode method. Suppose the Country class declares an equals method (checking that the name and area are the same), but no hashCode method. Then the hashCode method is inherited from the Object superclass. That method computes a hash code from the *memory location* of the object. Then it is very likely that two objects with the same contents will have different hash codes, in which case a hash set will store them as two distinct objects.

However, if you declare *neither* equals *nor* hashCode, then there is no problem. The equals method of the Object class considers two objects equal only if their memory location is the same. That is, the Object class has compatible equals and hashCode methods. Of course, then the notion of equality is very restricted: Only identical objects are considered equal. That can be a perfectly valid notion of equality, depending on your application.



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates a hash set with objects of the Country class.

## 15.5 Stacks, Queues, and Priority Queues

In the following sections, we cover stacks, queues, and priority queues. These data structures each have a different policy for data removal. Removing an element yields the most recently added element, the least recently added, or the element with the highest priority.

### 15.5.1 Stacks

A stack is a collection of elements with “last-in, first-out” retrieval.

A **stack** lets you insert and remove elements only at one end, traditionally called the *top* of the stack. New items can be added to the top of the stack. Items are removed from the top of the stack as well. Therefore, they are removed in the order that is opposite from the order in which they have been added, called *last-in, first-out* or *LIFO* order. For example, if you add items A, B, and C and then remove them, you obtain C, B, and A. With stacks, the addition and removal operations are called *push* and *pop*.

```
Stack<String> s = new Stack<String>();
s.push("A"); s.push("B"); s.push("C");
while (s.size() > 0)
{
    System.out.print(s.pop() + " "); // Prints C B A
}
```



The last pancake that has been added to this stack will be the first one that is consumed.



The Undo key pops commands off a stack so that the last command is the first to be undone.

There are many applications for stacks in computer science. Consider the undo feature of a word processor. It keeps the issued commands in a stack. When you select “Undo”, the *last* command is undone, then the next-to-last, and so on.

Another important example is the **run-time stack** that a processor or virtual machine keeps to store the values of variables in nested methods. Whenever a new method is called, its parameter variables and local variables are pushed onto a stack. When the method exits, they are popped off again.

You will see other applications in Section 15.6.

The Java library provides a simple `Stack` class with methods `push`, `pop`, and `peek` — the latter gets the top element of the stack but does not remove it (see Table 7).

**Table 7** Working with Stacks

<code>Stack&lt;Integer&gt; s = new Stack&lt;Integer&gt;();</code>	Constructs an empty stack.
<code>s.push(1);</code> <code>s.push(2);</code> <code>s.push(3);</code>	Adds to the top of the stack; <code>s</code> is now [1, 2, 3]. (Following the <code>toString</code> method of the <code>Stack</code> class, we show the top of the stack at the end.)
<code>int top = s.pop();</code>	Removes the top of the stack; <code>top</code> is set to 3 and <code>s</code> is now [1, 2].
<code>head = s.peek();</code>	Gets the top of the stack without removing it; <code>head</code> is set to 2.

## 15.5.2 Queues

A queue is a collection of elements with “first-in, first-out” retrieval.

A **queue** lets you add items to one end of the queue (the *tail*) and remove them from the other end of the queue (the *head*). Queues yield items in a *first-in, first-out* or *FIFO* fashion. Items are removed in the same order in which they were added.

A typical application is a print queue. A printer may be accessed by several applications, perhaps running on different computers. If each of the applications tried to access the printer at the same time, the printout would be garbled. Instead, each application places its print data into a file and adds that file to the print queue. When the printer is done printing one file, it retrieves the next one from the queue. Therefore, print jobs are printed using the “first-in, first-out” rule, which is a fair arrangement for users of the shared printer.

The `Queue` interface in the standard Java library has methods `add` to add an element to the tail of the queue, `remove` to remove the head of the queue, and `peek` to get the head element of the queue without removing it (see Table 8).

The `LinkedList` class implements the `Queue` interface. Whenever you need a queue, simply initialize a `Queue` variable with a `LinkedList` object:

```
Queue<String> q = new LinkedList<String>();
q.add("A"); q.add("B"); q.add("C");
while (q.size() > 0) { System.out.print(q.remove() + " ");}
// Prints A B C
```

The standard library provides several queue classes that we do not discuss in this book. Those classes are intended for work sharing when multiple activities (called threads) run in parallel.



To visualize a queue, think of people lining up.

**Table 8** Working with Queues

<code>Queue&lt;Integer&gt; q = new LinkedList&lt;Integer&gt;();</code>	The <code>LinkedList</code> class implements the <code>Queue</code> interface.
<code>q.add(1);</code> <code>q.add(2);</code> <code>q.add(3);</code>	Adds to the tail of the queue; <code>q</code> is now [1, 2, 3].
<code>int head = q.remove();</code>	Removes the head of the queue; <code>head</code> is set to 1 and <code>q</code> is [2, 3].
<code>head = q.peek();</code>	Gets the head of the queue without removing it; <code>head</code> is set to 2.

## 15.5.3 Priority Queues

When removing an element from a priority queue, the element with the most urgent priority is retrieved.

A **priority queue** collects elements, each of which has a *priority*. A typical example of a priority queue is a collection of work requests, some of which may be more urgent than others. Unlike a regular queue, the priority queue does not maintain a first-in, first-out discipline. Instead, elements are retrieved according to their priority. In other words, new items can be inserted in any order. But whenever an item is removed, it is the item with the most urgent priority.



*When you retrieve an item from a priority queue, you always get the most urgent one.*

#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrate stacks, queues, and priority queues.



It is customary to give low values to urgent priorities, with priority 1 denoting the most urgent priority. Thus, each removal operation extracts the *minimum* element from the queue.

For example, consider this code in which we add objects of a class `WorkOrder` into a priority queue. Each work order has a priority and a description.

```
PriorityQueue<WorkOrder> q = new PriorityQueue<WorkOrder>();
q.add(new WorkOrder(3, "Shampoo carpets"));
q.add(new WorkOrder(1, "Fix broken sink"));
q.add(new WorkOrder(2, "Order cleaning supplies"));
```

When calling `q.remove()` for the first time, the work order with priority 1 is removed. The next call to `q.remove()` removes the work order whose priority is highest among those remaining in the queue—in our example, the work order with priority 2. If there happen to be two elements with the same priority, the priority queue will break ties arbitrarily.

Because the priority queue needs to be able to tell which element is the smallest, the added elements should belong to a class that implements the `Comparable` interface. (See Section 10.3 for a description of that interface type.)

Table 9 shows the methods of the `PriorityQueue` class in the standard Java library.

**Table 9** Working with Priority Queues

<code>PriorityQueue&lt;Integer&gt; q = new PriorityQueue&lt;Integer&gt;();</code>	This priority queue holds <code>Integer</code> objects. In practice, you would use objects that describe tasks.
<code>q.add(3); q.add(1); q.add(2);</code>	Adds values to the priority queue.
<code>int first = q.remove();</code> <code>int second = q.remove();</code>	Each call to <code>remove</code> removes the most urgent item: <code>first</code> is set to 1, <code>second</code> to 2.
<code>int next = q.peek();</code>	Gets the smallest value in the priority queue without removing it.

#### SELF CHECK



21. Why would you want to declare a variable as  
`Queue<String> q = new LinkedList<String>()`  
 instead of simply declaring it as a linked list?
22. Why wouldn't you want to use an array list for implementing a queue?
23. What does this code print?  

```
Queue<String> q = new LinkedList<String>();
q.add("A");
q.add("B");
q.add("C");
while (q.size() > 0) { System.out.print(q.remove() + " "); }
```
24. Why wouldn't you want to use a stack to manage print jobs?
25. In the sample code for a priority queue, we used a `WorkOrder` class. Could we have used strings instead?

```
PriorityQueue<String> q = new PriorityQueue<String>();
q.add("3 - Shampoo carpets");
q.add("1 - Fix broken sink");
q.add("2 - Order cleaning supplies");
```

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R15.12, E15.6, E15.7.

## 15.6 Stack and Queue Applications

Stacks and queues are, despite their simplicity, very versatile data structures. In the following sections, you will see some of their most useful applications.

### 15.6.1 Balancing Parentheses

A stack can be used to check whether parentheses in an expression are balanced.

In Common Error 4.2, you saw a simple trick for detecting unbalanced parentheses in an expression such as

-(b \* b - (4 \* a \* c )) / (2 \* a)  
1        2            1 0    1        0

Increment a counter when you see a ( and decrement it when you see a ). The counter should never be negative, and it should be zero at the end of the expression.

That works for expressions in Java, but in mathematical notation, one can have more than one kind of parentheses, such as

$-\{[b \cdot b - (4 \cdot a \cdot c)] / (2 \cdot a)\}$

To see whether such an expression is correctly formed, place the parentheses on a stack:

**When you see an opening parenthesis, push it on the stack.**

**When you see a closing parenthesis, pop the stack.**

**If the opening and closing parentheses don't match**

**The parentheses are unbalanced. Exit.**

**If at the end the stack is empty**

**The parentheses are balanced.**

**Else**

**The parentheses are not balanced.**



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program for checking balanced parentheses.

Here is a walkthrough of the sample expression:

Stack	Unread expression	Comments
Empty	$-\{[b * b - (4 * a * c)] / (2 * a)\}$	
{	$[b * b - (4 * a * c)] / (2 * a)$	
{ [	$b * b - (4 * a * c)] / (2 * a)$	
{ [ (	$4 * a * c)] / (2 * a)$	
{ [ ( ] / (2 * a)		( matches )
{ [ ( ] / (2 * a) }		[ matches ]
{ [ ( ] 2 * a)		
{ [ ( ] }		( matches )
Empty	No more input	{ matches }
		The parentheses are balanced

## 15.6.2 Evaluating Reverse Polish Expressions

Use a stack to evaluate expressions in reverse Polish notation.

Consider how you write arithmetic expressions, such as  $(3 + 4) \times 5$ . The parentheses are needed so that 3 and 4 are added before multiplying the result by 5.

However, you can eliminate the parentheses if you write the operators *after* the numbers, like this:  $3\ 4\ +\ 5\ \times$  (see Special Topic 15.2 on page 703). To evaluate this expression, apply  $+$  to 3 and 4, yielding 7, and then simplify  $7\ 5\ \times$  to 35. It gets trickier for complex expressions. For example,  $3\ 4\ 5\ +\ \times$  means to compute  $4\ 5\ +$  (that is, 9), and then evaluate  $3\ 9\ \times$ . If we evaluate this expression left-to-right, we need to leave the 3 somewhere while we work on  $4\ 5\ +$ . Where? We put it on a stack. The algorithm for evaluating reverse Polish expressions is simple:

```
If you read a number
    Push it on the stack.
Else if you read an operand
    Pop two values off the stack.
    Combine the values with the operand.
    Push the result back onto the stack.
Else if there is no more input
    Pop and display the result.
```

Here is a walkthrough of evaluating the expression  $3\ 4\ 5\ +\ \times$ :

Stack	Unread expression	Comments
Empty	$3\ 4\ 5\ +\ \times$	
3	$4\ 5\ +\ \times$	Numbers are pushed on the stack
3 4	$5\ +\ \times$	
3 4 5	$+ \times$	
3 9	x	Pop 4 and 5, push $4\ 5\ +$
27	No more input	Pop 3 and 9, push $3\ 9\ \times$
Empty		Pop and display the result, 27

The following program simulates a reverse Polish calculator:

### section\_6\_2/Calculator.java

```

1 import java.util.Scanner;
2 import java.util.Stack;
3
4 /**
5     This calculator uses the reverse Polish notation.
6 */
7 public class Calculator
8 {
9     public static void main(String[] args)
10    {
11        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
12        Stack<Integer> results = new Stack<Integer>();
13        System.out.println("Enter one number or operator per line, Q to quit. ");
14        boolean done = false;
```

```

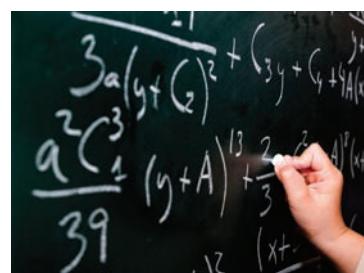
15  while (!done)
16  {
17      String input = in.nextLine();
18
19      // If the command is an operator, pop the arguments and push the result
20
21      if (input.equals("+"))
22      {
23          results.push(results.pop() + results.pop());
24      }
25      else if (input.equals("-"))
26      {
27          Integer arg2 = results.pop();
28          results.push(results.pop() - arg2);
29      }
30      else if (input.equals("*") || input.equals("x"))
31      {
32          results.push(results.pop() * results.pop());
33      }
34      else if (input.equals("/"))
35      {
36          Integer arg2 = results.pop();
37          results.push(results.pop() / arg2);
38      }
39      else if (input.equals("Q") || input.equals("q"))
40      {
41          done = true;
42      }
43      else
44      {
45          // Not an operator--push the input value
46
47          results.push(Integer.parseInt(input));
48      }
49      System.out.println(results);
50  }
51 }
52 }
```

### 15.6.3 Evaluating Algebraic Expressions

Using two stacks,  
you can evaluate  
expressions in  
standard algebraic  
notation.

In the preceding section, you saw how to evaluate expressions in reverse Polish notation, using a single stack. If you haven't found that notation attractive, you will be glad to know that one can evaluate an expression in the standard algebraic notation using two stacks—one for numbers and one for operators.

*Use two stacks to evaluate algebraic expressions.*



First, consider a simple example, the expression  $3 + 4$ . We push the numbers on the number stack and the operators on the operator stack. Then we pop both numbers and the operator, combine the numbers with the operator, and push the result.

	Number stack	Operator stack	Unprocessed input	Comments
	Empty	Empty	$3 + 4$	
1	3		+ 4	
2	3	+	4	
3	4 3	+	No more input	Evaluate the top.
4	7			The result is 7.

This operation is fundamental to the algorithm. We call it “evaluating the top”.

In algebraic notation, each operator has a *precedence*. The + and - operators have the lowest precedence, \* and / have a higher (and equal) precedence.

Consider the expression  $3 \times 4 + 5$ . Here are the first processing steps:

	Number stack	Operator stack	Unprocessed input	Comments
	Empty	Empty	$3 \times 4 + 5$	
1	3		$\times 4 + 5$	
2	3	*	$4 + 5$	
3	4 3	*	+ 5	Evaluate × before +.

Because  $\times$  has a higher precedence than  $+$ , we are ready to evaluate the top:

	Number stack	Operator stack	Comments
4	12	+	5
5	5 12	+	No more input
6	17		That is the result.

With the expression,  $3 + 4 \times 5$ , we add  $\times$  to the operator stack because we must first read the next number; then we can evaluate  $\times$  and then the  $+$ :

	Number stack	Operator stack	Unprocessed input	Comments
	Empty	Empty	$3 + 4 \times 5$	
1	3		$+ 4 \times 5$	
2	3	+	$4 \times 5$	

3	<table border="1"><tr><td>4</td></tr><tr><td>3</td></tr></table>	4	3	<table border="1"><tr><td>+</td></tr></table>	+	$\times 5$	Don't evaluate + yet.	
4								
3								
+								
4	<table border="1"><tr><td>4</td></tr><tr><td>3</td></tr></table>	4	3	<table border="1"><tr><td><math>\times</math></td></tr><tr><td>+</td></tr></table>	$\times$	+	5	
4								
3								
$\times$								
+								

In other words, we keep operators on the stack until they are ready to be evaluated. Here is the remainder of the computation:

	Number stack	Operator stack	Comments					
5	<table border="1"><tr><td>5</td></tr><tr><td>4</td></tr><tr><td>3</td></tr></table>	5	4	3	<table border="1"><tr><td><math>\times</math></td></tr><tr><td>+</td></tr></table>	$\times$	+	No more input Evaluate the top.
5								
4								
3								
$\times$								
+								
6	<table border="1"><tr><td>20</td></tr><tr><td>3</td></tr></table>	20	3	<table border="1"><tr><td>+</td></tr></table>	+	Evaluate top again.		
20								
3								
+								
7	<table border="1"><tr><td>23</td></tr></table>	23		That is the result.				
23								

To see how parentheses are handled, consider the expression  $3 \times (4 + 5)$ . A ( is pushed on the operator stack. The + is pushed as well. When we encounter the ), we know that we are ready to evaluate the top until the matching ( reappears:

	Number stack	Operator stack	Unprocessed input	Comments			
	Empty	Empty	$3 \times (4 + 5)$				
1	<table border="1"><tr><td>3</td></tr></table>	3		$\times (4 + 5)$			
3							
2	<table border="1"><tr><td>3</td></tr></table>	3	$\times$	$(4 + 5)$			
3							
3	<table border="1"><tr><td>3</td></tr></table>	3	$($	$4 + 5)$	Don't evaluate $\times$ yet.		
3							
4	<table border="1"><tr><td>4</td></tr><tr><td>3</td></tr></table>	4	3	$($	$+ 5)$		
4							
3							
5	<table border="1"><tr><td>4</td></tr><tr><td>3</td></tr></table>	4	3	$+$	$5)$		
4							
3							
6	<table border="1"><tr><td>5</td></tr><tr><td>4</td></tr><tr><td>3</td></tr></table>	5	4	3	$($	)	Evaluate the top.
5							
4							
3							
7	<table border="1"><tr><td>9</td></tr><tr><td>3</td></tr></table>	9	3	$\times$	No more input	Pop (.	
9							
3							
8	<table border="1"><tr><td>9</td></tr><tr><td>3</td></tr></table>	9	3			Evaluate top again.	
9							
3							
9	<table border="1"><tr><td>27</td></tr></table>	27			That is the result.		
27							

Here is the algorithm:

```

If you read a number
    Push it on the number stack.
Else if you read a (
    Push it on the operator stack.
Else if you read an operator op
    While the top of the stack has a higher precedence than op
        Evaluate the top.
    Push op on the operator stack.
Else if you read a )
    While the top of the stack is not a (
        Evaluate the top.
    Pop the (.
Else if there is no more input
    While the operator stack is not empty
        Evaluate the top.

```

At the end, the remaining value on the number stack is the value of the expression.

The algorithm makes use of this helper method that evaluates the topmost operator with the topmost numbers:

#### Evaluate the top:

```

Pop two numbers off the number stack.
Pop an operator off the operator stack.
Combine the numbers with that operator.
Push the result on the number stack.

```

#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download the complete code for the expression calculator.

Use a stack to remember choices you haven't yet made so that you can backtrack to them.

## 15.6.4 Backtracking

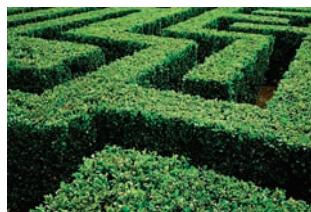
Suppose you are inside a maze. You need to find the exit. What should you do when you come to an intersection? You can continue exploring one of the paths, but you will want to remember the other ones. If your chosen path didn't work, you can go back to one of the other choices and try again.

Of course, as you go along one path, you may reach further intersections, and you need to remember your choice again. Simply use a stack to remember the paths that still need to be tried. The process of returning to a choice point and trying another choice is called *backtracking*. By using a stack, you return to your more recent choices before you explore the earlier ones.

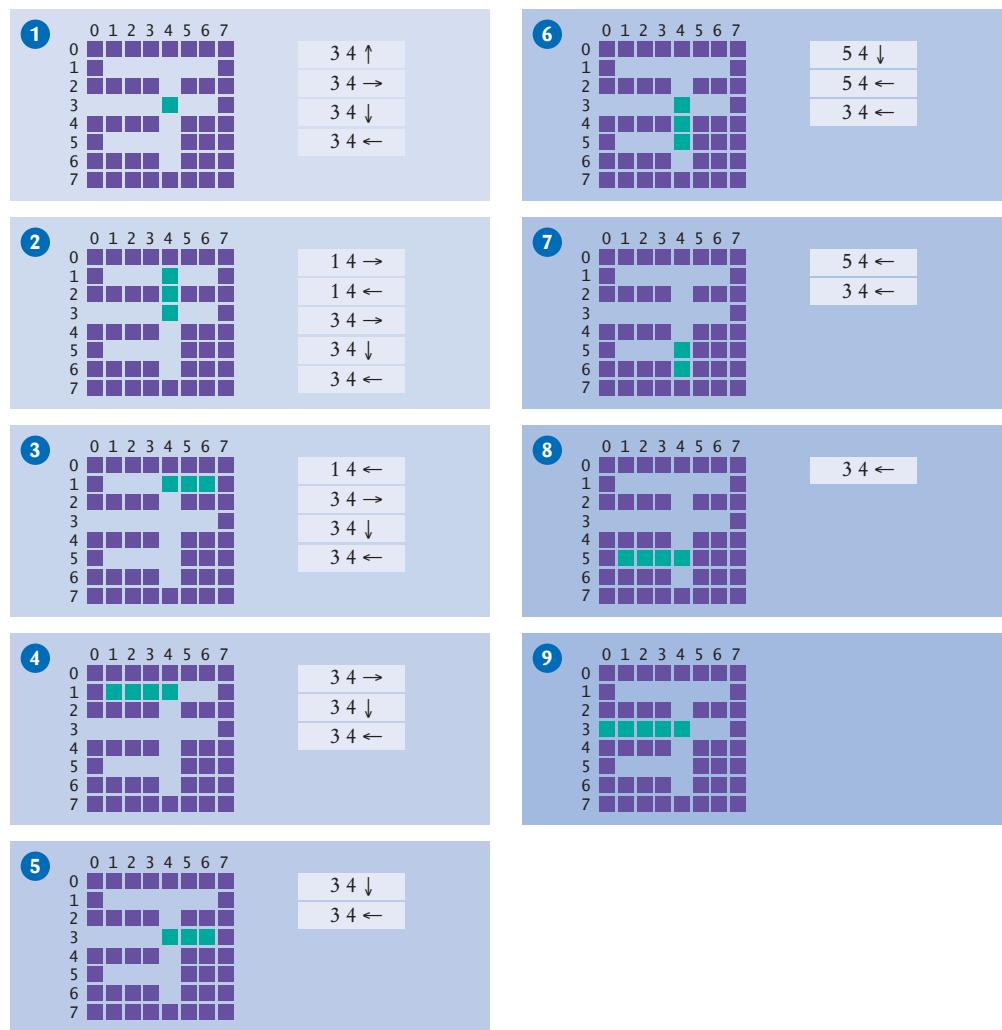
Figure 11 shows an example. We start at a point in the maze, at position (3, 4). There are four possible paths. We push them all on a stack ❶. We pop off the topmost one, traveling north from (3, 4). Following this path leads to position (1, 4). We now push two choices on the stack, going west or east ❷. Both of them lead to dead ends ❸ ❹.

Now we pop off the path from (3, 4) going east. That too is a dead end ❺. Next is the path from (3, 4) going south. At (5, 4), it comes to an intersection. Both choices are pushed on the stack ❻. They both lead to dead ends ❻ ❽.

Finally, the path from (3, 4) going west leads to an exit ❾.



A stack can be used to track positions in a maze.



**Figure 11** Backtracking Through a Maze

Using a stack, we have found a path out of the maze. Here is the pseudocode for our maze-finding algorithm:

```

Push all paths from the point on which you are standing on a stack.
While the stack is not empty
  Pop a path from the stack.
  Follow the path until you reach an exit, intersection, or dead end.
  If you found an exit
    Congratulations!
  Else if you found an intersection
    Push all paths meeting at the intersection, except the current one, onto the stack.

```

This algorithm will find an exit from the maze, provided that the maze has no *cycles*. If it is possible that you can make a circle and return to a previously visited intersection along a different sequence of paths, then you need to work harder—see Exercise E15.19.

How you implement this algorithm depends on the description of the maze. In the example code, we use a two-dimensional array of characters, with spaces for corridors and asterisks for walls, like this:

```
* * * * * * * *
*   *   *   *
* * * *   *   *
*   *   *   *
* * * *   *   *
*   *   *   *
* * * *   *   *
*   *   *   *
```

In the example code, a `Path` object is constructed with a starting position and a direction (North, East, South, or West). The `Maze` class has a method that extends a path until it reaches an intersection or exit, or until it is blocked by a wall, and a method that computes all paths from an intersection point.

Note that you can use a queue instead of a stack in this algorithm. Then you explore the earlier alternatives before the later ones. This can work just as well for finding an answer, but it isn't very intuitive in the context of exploring a maze—you would have to imagine being teleported back to the initial intersections rather than just walking back to the last one.

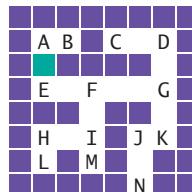
#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a complete program demonstrating backtracking.



#### SELF CHECK

26. What is the value of the reverse Polish notation expression  $2\ 3\ 4\ 5\ +\ \times\ x\ ?$
27. Why does the branch for the subtraction operator in the `calculator` program not simply execute  
`results.push(results.pop() - results.pop());`
28. In the evaluation of the expression  $3 - 4 + 5$  with the algorithm of Section 15.6.3, which operator gets evaluated first?
29. In the algorithm of Section 15.6.3, are the operators on the operator stack always in increasing precedence?
30. Consider the following simple maze. Assuming that we start at the marked point and push paths in the order West, South, East, North, in which order are the lettered points visited, using the algorithm of Section 15.6.4?



**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R15.21, E15.16, E15.18, E15.19, E15.20.

#### WORKED EXAMPLE 15.2

#### Simulating a Queue of Waiting Customers

Learn how to use a queue to simulate an actual queue of waiting customers. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 15.2.



## Special Topic 15.2

**Reverse Polish Notation**

In the 1920s, the Polish mathematician Jan Łukasiewicz realized that it is possible to dispense with parentheses in arithmetic expressions, provided that you write the operators *before* their arguments, for example,  $+ 3 4$  instead of  $3 + 4$ . Thirty years later, Australian computer scientist Charles Hamblin noted that an even better scheme would be to have the operators *follow* the operands. This was termed **reverse Polish notation** or RPN.

Standard Notation	Reverse Polish Notation
$3 + 4$	$3 4 +$
$3 + 4 \times 5$	$3 4 5 \times +$
$3 \times (4 + 5)$	$3 4 5 + \times$
$(3 + 4) \times (5 + 6)$	$3 4 + 5 6 + \times$
$3 + 4 + 5$	$3 4 + 5 +$

Reverse Polish notation might look strange to you, but that is just an accident of history. Had earlier mathematicians realized its advantages, today's schoolchildren might be using it and not worrying about precedence rules and parentheses.

In 1972, Hewlett-Packard introduced the HP 35 calculator that used reverse Polish notation. The calculator had no keys labeled with parentheses or an equals symbol. There is just a key labeled ENTER to push a number onto a stack. For that reason, Hewlett-Packard's marketing department used to refer to their product as "the calculators that have no equal".

Over time, calculator vendors have adapted to the standard algebraic notation rather than forcing its users to learn a new notation. However, those users who have made the effort to learn reverse Polish notation tend to be fanatic proponents, and to this day, some Hewlett-Packard calculator models still support it.



The Calculator with No Equal

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### Understand the architecture of the Java collections framework.



- A collection groups together elements and allows them to be retrieved later.
- A list is a collection that remembers the order of its elements.
- A set is an unordered collection of unique elements.
- A map keeps associations between key and value objects.

### Understand and use linked lists.



- A linked list consists of a number of nodes, each of which has a reference to the next node.
- Adding and removing elements at a given position in a linked list is efficient.
- Visiting the elements of a linked list in sequential order is efficient, but random access is not.
- You use a list iterator to access elements inside a linked list.

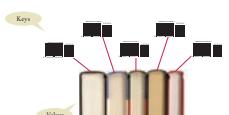
### Choose a set implementation and use it to manage sets of values.



- The HashSet and TreeSet classes both implement the Set interface.
- Set implementations arrange the elements so that they can locate them quickly.
- You can form hash sets holding objects of type String, Integer, Double, Point, Rectangle, or Color.
- You can form tree sets for any class that implements the Comparable interface, such as String or Integer.
- Sets don't have duplicates. Adding a duplicate of an element that is already present is ignored.
- A set iterator visits the elements in the order in which the set implementation keeps them.
- You cannot add an element to a set at an iterator position.



### Use maps to model associations between keys and values.



- The HashMap and TreeMap classes both implement the Map interface.
- To find all keys and values in a map, iterate through the key set and find the values that correspond to the keys.
- A hash function computes an integer value from an object.
- A good hash function minimizes *collisions*—identical hash codes for different objects.
- Override hashCode methods in your own classes by combining the hash codes for the instance variables.
- A class's hashCode method must be compatible with its equals method.



**Use the Java classes for stacks, queues, and priority queues.**

- A stack is a collection of elements with “last-in, first-out” retrieval.
- A queue is a collection of elements with “first-in, first-out” retrieval.
- When removing an element from a priority queue, the element with the most urgent priority is retrieved.

**Solve programming problems using stacks and queues.**

- A stack can be used to check whether parentheses in an expression are balanced.
- Use a stack to evaluate expressions in reverse Polish notation.
- Using two stacks, you can evaluate expressions in standard algebraic notation.
- Use a stack to remember choices you haven’t yet made so that you can backtrack to them.

**STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER**

```
java.util.Collection<E>
    add
    contains
    iterator
    remove
    size
java.util.HashMap<K, V>
java.util.HashSet<K, V>
java.util.Iterator<E>
    hasNext
    next
    remove
java.util.LinkedList<E>
    addFirst
    addLast
    getFirst
    getLast
    removeFirst
    removeLast
java.util.List<E>
    listIterator
```

```
java.util.ListIterator<E>
    add
    hasPrevious
    previous
    set
java.util.Map<K, V>
    get
    keySet
    put
    remove
java.util.Queue<E>
    peek
java.util.PriorityQueue<E>
    remove
java.util.Set<E>
java.util.Stack<E>
    peek
    pop
    push
java.util.TreeMap<K, V>
java.util.TreeSet<K, V>
```

**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

- R15.1** An invoice contains a collection of purchased items. Should that collection be implemented as a list or set? Explain your answer.
- R15.2** Consider a program that manages an appointment calendar. Should it place the appointments into a list, stack, queue, or priority queue? Explain your answer.
- R15.3** One way of implementing a calendar is as a map from date objects to event objects. However, that only works if there is a single event for a given date. How can you use another collection type to allow for multiple events on a given date?

- **R15.4** Explain what the following code prints. Draw a picture of the linked list after each step.

```
LinkedList<String> staff = new LinkedList<String>();
staff.addFirst("Harry");
staff.addFirst("Diana");
staff.addFirst("Tom");
System.out.println(staff.removeFirst());
System.out.println(staff.removeFirst());
System.out.println(staff.removeFirst());
```

- **R15.5** Explain what the following code prints. Draw a picture of the linked list after each step.

```
LinkedList<String> staff = new LinkedList<String>();
staff.addFirst("Harry");
staff.addFirst("Diana");
staff.addFirst("Tom");
System.out.println(staff.removeLast());
System.out.println(staff.removeFirst());
System.out.println(staff.removeLast());
```

- **R15.6** Explain what the following code prints. Draw a picture of the linked list after each step.

```
LinkedList<String> staff = new LinkedList<String>();
staff.addFirst("Harry");
staff.addLast("Diana");
staff.addFirst("Tom");
System.out.println(staff.removeLast());
System.out.println(staff.removeFirst());
System.out.println(staff.removeLast());
```

- **R15.7** Explain what the following code prints. Draw a picture of the linked list and the iterator position after each step.

```
LinkedList<String> staff = new LinkedList<String>();
ListIterator<String> iterator = staff.listIterator();
iterator.add("Tom");
iterator.add("Diana");
iterator.add("Harry");
iterator = staff.listIterator();
if (iterator.next().equals("Tom")) { iterator.remove(); }
while (iterator.hasNext()) { System.out.println(iterator.next()); }
```

- **R15.8** Explain what the following code prints. Draw a picture of the linked list and the iterator position after each step.

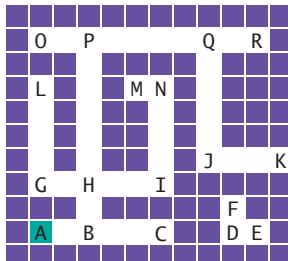
```
LinkedList<String> staff = new LinkedList<String>();
ListIterator<String> iterator = staff.listIterator();
iterator.add("Tom");
iterator.add("Diana");
iterator.add("Harry");
iterator = staff.listIterator();
iterator.next();
iterator.next();
iterator.add("Romeo");
iterator.next();
iterator.add("Juliet");
iterator = staff.listIterator();
```

```

iterator.next();
iterator.remove();
while (iterator.hasNext()) { System.out.println(iterator.next()); }

```

- ■ **R15.9** What advantages do linked lists have over arrays? What disadvantages do they have?
- ■ **R15.10** Suppose you need to organize a collection of telephone numbers for a company division. There are currently about 6,000 employees, and you know that the phone switch can handle at most 10,000 phone numbers. You expect several hundred look-ups against the collection every day. Would you use an array list or a linked list to store the information?
- ■ **R15.11** Suppose you need to keep a collection of appointments. Would you use a linked list or an array list of `Appointment` objects?
- ■ **R15.12** Suppose you write a program that models a card deck. Cards are taken from the top of the deck and given out to players. As cards are returned to the deck, they are placed on the bottom of the deck. Would you store the cards in a stack or a queue?
- ■ **R15.13** Suppose the strings "A" . . . "Z" are pushed onto a stack. Then they are popped off the stack and pushed onto a second stack. Finally, they are all popped off the second stack and printed. In which order are the strings printed?
- ■ **R15.14** What is the difference between a set and a map?
- ■ **R15.15** The union of two sets *A* and *B* is the set of all elements that are contained in *A*, *B*, or both. The intersection is the set of all elements that are contained in *A* and *B*. How can you compute the union and intersection of two sets, using the `add` and `contains` methods, together with an iterator?
- ■ **R15.16** How can you compute the union and intersection of two sets, using some of the methods that the `java.util.Set` interface provides, but without using an iterator? (Look up the interface in the API documentation.)
- ■ **R15.17** Can a map have two keys with the same value? Two values with the same key?
- ■ **R15.18** A map can be implemented as a set of *(key, value)* pairs. Explain.
- ■ ■ **R15.19** Verify the hash code of the string "Juliet" in Table 6.
- ■ ■ **R15.20** Verify that the strings "VII" and "Ugh" have the same hash code.
- ■ **R15.21** Consider the algorithm for traversing a maze from Section 15.6.4 Assume that we start at position A and push in the order West, South, East, and North. In which order will the lettered locations of the sample maze be visited?



- ■ **R15.22** Repeat Exercise R15.21, using a queue instead of a stack.

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

**■■ E15.1** Write a method

```
public static void downsize(LinkedList<String> employeeNames, int n)
    that removes every nth employee from a linked list.
```

**■■ E15.2** Write a method

```
public static void reverse(LinkedList<String> strings)
    that reverses the entries in a linked list.
```

**■■ E15.3** Implement the *sieve of Eratosthenes*: a method for computing prime numbers, known to the ancient Greeks. This method will compute all prime numbers up to  $n$ . Choose an  $n$ . First insert all numbers from 2 to  $n$  into a set. Then erase all multiples of 2 (except 2); that is, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, .... Erase all multiples of 3; that is, 6, 9, 12, 15, .... Go up to  $\sqrt{n}$ . Then print the set.



**■■ E15.4** Write a program that keeps a map in which both keys and values are strings—the names of students and their course grades. Prompt the user of the program to add or remove students, to modify grades, or to print all grades. The printout should be sorted by name and formatted like this:

```
Carl: B+
Joe: C
Sarah: A
```

**■■ E15.5** Write a program that reads a Java source file and produces an index of all identifiers in the file. For each identifier, print all lines in which it occurs. For simplicity, we will consider each string consisting only of letters, numbers, and underscores an identifier. Declare a Scanner `in` for reading from the source file and call `in.useDelimiter("[^A-Za-z0-9_]+")`. Then each call to `next` returns an identifier.

**■■ E15.6** Use a stack to reverse the words of a sentence. Keep reading words until you have a word that ends in a period, adding them onto a stack. When you have a word with a period, pop the words off and print them. Stop when there are no more words in the input. For example, you should turn the input

Mary had a little lamb. Its fleece was white as snow.

into

Lamb little a had mary. Snow as white was fleece its.

Pay attention to capitalization and the placement of the period.

**■ E15.7** Your task is to break a number into its individual digits, for example, to turn 1729 into 1, 7, 2, and 9. It is easy to get the last digit of a number  $n$  as  $n \% 10$ . But that gets the numbers in reverse order. Solve this problem with a stack. Your program should ask the user for an integer, then print its digits separated by spaces.

**■■ E15.8** A homeowner rents out parking spaces in a driveway during special events. The driveway is a “last-in, first-out” stack. Of course, when a car owner retrieves a vehicle that wasn’t the last one in, the cars blocking it must temporarily move to the street so that the requested vehicle can leave. Write a program that models this behavior, using one stack for the driveway and one stack for the street. Use integers

as license plate numbers. Positive numbers add a car, negative numbers remove a car, zero stops the simulation. Print out the stack after each operation is complete.

- **E15.9** Implement a to do list. Tasks have a priority between 1 and 9, and a description. When the user enters the command `add priority description`, the program adds a new task. When the user enters `next`, the program removes and prints the most urgent task. The `quit` command quits the program. Use a priority queue in your solution.
- **E15.10** Write a program that reads text from a file and breaks it up into individual words. Insert the words into a tree set. At the end of the input file, print all words, followed by the size of the resulting set. This program determines how many unique words a text file has.
- **E15.11** Insert all words from a large file (such as the novel “War and Peace”, which is available on the Internet) into a hash set and a tree set. Time the results. Which data structure is more efficient?
- **E15.12** Supply compatible `hashCode` and `equals` methods to the `BankAccount` class of Chapter 8. Test the `hashCode` method by printing out hash codes and by adding `BankAccount` objects to a hash set.
- **E15.13** A labeled point has  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates and a string label. Provide a class `LabeledPoint` with a constructor `LabeledPoint(int x, int y, String label)` and `hashCode` and `equals` methods. Two labeled points are considered the same when they have the same location and label.
- **E15.14** Reimplement the `LabeledPoint` class of Exercise E15.13 by storing the location in a `java.awt.Point` object. Your `hashCode` and `equals` methods should call the `hashCode` and `equals` methods of the `Point` class.
- **E15.15** Modify the `LabeledPoint` class of Exercise E15.13 so that it implements the `Comparable` interface. Sort points first by their  $x$ -coordinates. If two points have the same  $x$ -coordinate, sort them by their  $y$ -coordinates. If two points have the same  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates, sort them by their label. Write a tester program that checks all cases by inserting points into a `TreeSet`.
- **E15.16** Add a `%` (remainder) operator to the expression calculator of Section 15.6.3.
- **E15.17** Add a `^` (power) operator to the expression calculator of Section 15.6.3. For example,  $2^3$  evaluates to 8. As in mathematics, your power operator should be evaluated from the right. That is,  $2^3^2$  is  $2^{\wedge}(3^{\wedge}2)$ , not  $(2^{\wedge}3)^{\wedge}2$ . (That’s more useful because you could get the latter as  $2^{\wedge}(3 \times 2)$ .)
- **E15.18** Write a program that checks whether a sequence of HTML tags is properly nested. For each opening tag, such as `<p>`, there must be a closing tag `</p>`. A tag such as `<p>` may have other tags inside, for example
 

```
<p> <ul> <li> </li> </ul> <a> </a> </p>
```

 The inner tags must be closed before the outer ones. Your program should process a file containing tags. For simplicity, assume that the tags are separated by spaces, and that there is no text inside the tags.
- **E15.19** Modify the maze solver program of Section 15.6.4 to handle mazes with cycles. Keep a set of visited intersections. When you have previously seen an intersection, treat it as a dead end and do not add paths to the stack.



- ... E15.20** In a paint program, a “flood fill” fills all empty pixels of a drawing with a given color, stopping when it reaches occupied pixels. In this exercise, you will implement a simple variation of this algorithm, flood-filling a  $10 \times 10$  array of integers that are initially 0.

**Prompt for the starting row and column.**

**Push the (row, column) pair onto a stack.**

You will need to provide a simple `Pair` class.

Repeat the following operations until the stack is empty.

**Pop off the (row, column) pair from the top of the stack.**

**If it has not yet been filled, fill the corresponding array location with a number 1, 2, 3, and so on  
(to show the order in which the square is filled).**

**Push the coordinates of any unfilled neighbors in the north, east, south, or west direction on the stack.**

When you are done, print the entire array.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- ... P15.1** Reimplement Exercise E15.4 so that the keys of the map are objects of class `Student`. A student should have a first name, a last name, and a unique integer ID. For grade changes and removals, lookup should be by ID. The printout should be sorted by last name. If two students have the same last name, then use the first name as a tie breaker. If the first names are also identical, then use the integer ID. *Hint:* Use two maps.

- ... P15.2** Write a class `Polynomial` that stores a polynomial such as

$$p(x) = 5x^{10} + 9x^7 - x - 10$$

as a linked list of terms. A term contains the coefficient and the power of  $x$ . For example, you would store  $p(x)$  as

$$(5,10), (9,7), (-1,1), (-10,0)$$

Supply methods to add, multiply, and print polynomials. Supply a constructor that makes a polynomial from a single term. For example, the polynomial `p` can be constructed as

```
Polynomial p = new Polynomial(new Term(-10, 0));
p.add(new Polynomial(new Term(-1, 1)));
p.add(new Polynomial(new Term(9, 7)));
p.add(new Polynomial(new Term(5, 10)));
```

Then compute  $p(x) \times p(x)$ .

```
Polynomial q = p.multiply(p);
q.print();
```

- ... P15.3** Repeat Exercise P15.2, but use a `Map<Integer, Double>` for the coefficients.

- ... P15.4** Try to find two words with the same hash code in a large file. Keep a `Map<Integer, HashSet<String>>`. When you read in a word, compute its hash code  $h$  and put the word in the set whose key is  $h$ . Then iterate through all keys and print the sets whose size is  $> 1$ .

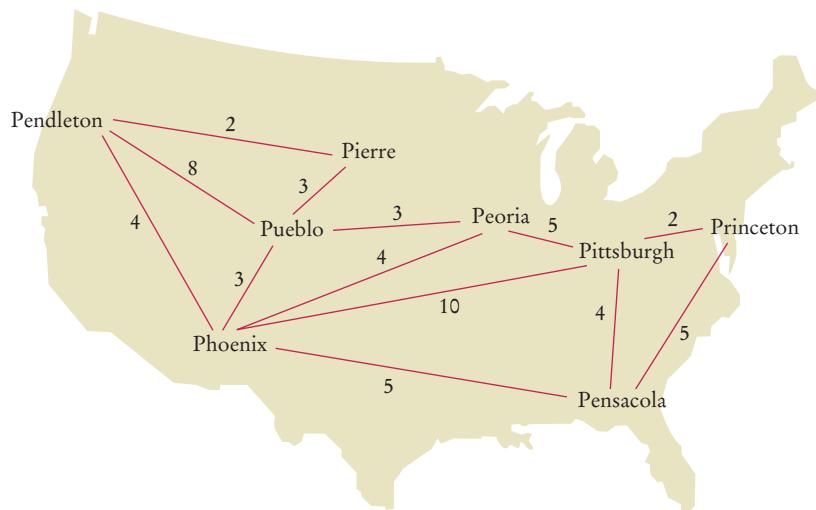
- P15.5** Supply compatible `hashCode` and `equals` methods to the `Student` class described in Exercise P15.1. Test the hash code by adding `Student` objects to a hash set.
- P15.6** Modify the expression calculator of Section 15.6.3 to convert an expression into reverse Polish notation. *Hint:* Instead of evaluating the top and pushing the result, append the instructions to a string.
- P15.7** Repeat Exercise E15.20, but use a queue instead.
- P15.8** Use a stack to enumerate all permutations of a string. Suppose you want to find all permutations of the string `meat`.
 

```

Push the string +meat on the stack.
While the stack is not empty
  Pop off the top of the stack.
  If that string ends in a + (such as tame+)
    Remove the + and add the string to the list of permutations.
  Else
    Remove each letter in turn from the right of the +.
    Insert it just before the +.
    Push the resulting string on the stack.
      
```

For example, after popping `e+mta`, you push `em+ta`, `et+ma`, and `ea+mt`.
- P15.9** Repeat Exercise P15.8, but use a queue instead.
- Business P15.10** An airport has only one runway. When it is busy, planes wishing to take off or land have to wait. Implement a simulation, using two queues, one each for the planes waiting to take off and land. Landing planes get priority. The user enters commands `takeoff flightSymbol`, `land flightSymbol`, `next`, and `quit`. The first two commands place the flight in the appropriate queue. The `next` command finishes the current takeoff or landing and enables the next one, printing the action (takeoff or land) and the flight symbol.
- Business P15.11** Suppose you buy 100 shares of a stock at \$12 per share, then another 100 at \$10 per share, and then sell 150 shares at \$15. You have to pay taxes on the gain, but exactly what is the gain? In the United States, the FIFO rule holds: You first sell all shares of the first batch for a profit of \$300, then 50 of the shares from the second batch, for a profit of \$250, yielding a total profit of \$550. Write a program that can make these calculations for arbitrary purchases and sales of shares in a single company. The user enters commands `buy quantity price`, `sell quantity` (which causes the gain to be displayed), and `quit`. *Hint:* Keep a queue of objects of a class `Block` that contains the quantity and price of a block of shares.
- Business P15.12** Extend Exercise P15.11 to a program that can handle shares of multiple companies. The user enters commands `buy symbol quantity price` and `sell symbol quantity`. *Hint:* Keep a `Map<String, Queue<Block>>` that manages a separate queue for each stock symbol.
- Business P15.13** Consider the problem of finding the least expensive routes to all cities in a network from a given starting point.

For example, in the network shown below, the least expensive route from Pendleton to Peoria has cost 8 (going through Pierre and Pueblo).



The following helper class expresses the distance to another city:

```
public class DistanceTo implements Comparable<DistanceTo>
{
    private String target;
    private int distance;

    public DistanceTo(String city, int dist) { target = city; distance = dist; }
    public String getTarget() { return target; }
    public int getDistance() { return distance; }
    public int compareTo(DistanceTo other) { return distance - other.distance; }
}
```

All direct connections between cities are stored in a `Map<String, TreeSet<DistanceTo>>`. The algorithm now proceeds as follows:

- Let `from` be the starting point.
- Add `DistanceTo(from, 0)` to a priority queue.
- Construct a map `shortestKnownDistance` from city names to distances.
- While the priority queue is not empty
  - Get its smallest element.
  - If its target is not a key in `shortestKnownDistance`
    - Let `d` be the distance to that target.
    - Put `(target, d)` into `shortestKnownDistance`.
    - For all cities `c` that have a direct connection from `target`
      - Add `DistanceTo(c, d + distance from target to c)` to the priority queue.

When the algorithm has finished, `shortestKnownDistance` contains the shortest distance from the starting point to all reachable targets.

Your task is to write a program that implements this algorithm. Your program should read in lines of the form `city1 city2 distance`. The starting point is the first city in the first line. Print the shortest distances to all other cities.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. A list is a better choice because the application will want to retain the order in which the quizzes were given.
2. A set is a better choice. There is no intrinsically useful ordering for the students. For example, the registrar's office has little use for a list of all students by their GPA. By storing them in a set, adding, removing, and finding students can be efficient.
3. With a stack, you would always read the latest required reading, and you might never get to the oldest readings.
4. A collection stores elements, but a map stores associations between elements.
5. Yes, for two reasons. A linked list needs to store the neighboring node references, which are not needed in an array. Moreover, there is some overhead for storing an object. In a linked list, each node is a separate object that incurs this overhead, whereas an array is a single object.
6. We can simply access each array element with an integer index.
7. |ABCD  
A|BCD  
AB|CD  
A|CD  
AC|D  
ACE|D  
ACED|  
ACEDF|
8. 

```
ListIterator<String> iter = words.iterator();
while (iter.hasNext())
{
    String str = iter.next();
    if (str.length() < 4) { iter.remove(); }
}
```
9. 

```
ListIterator<String> iter = words.iterator();
while (iter.hasNext())
{
    System.out.println(iter.next());
    if (iter.hasNext())
    {
        iter.next(); // Skip the next element
    }
}
```
10. Adding and removing elements as well as testing for membership is more efficient with sets.
11. Sets do not have an ordering, so it doesn't make sense to add an element at a particular iterator position, or to traverse a set backward.
12. You do not know in which order the set keeps the elements.
13. Here is one possibility:
 

```
if (s.size() == 3 && s.contains("Tom")
        && s.contains("Diana")
        && s.contains("Harry"))
    . .
for (String str : s)
{
    if (t.contains(str))
    {
        System.out.println(str);
    }
}

```
14. The words would be listed in sorted order.
15. A set stores elements. A map stores associations between keys and values.
16. The ordering does not matter, and you cannot have duplicates.
17. Because it might have duplicates.
18. Map<String, Integer> wordFrequency;
 

Note that you cannot use a Map<String, int> because you cannot use primitive types as type parameters in Java.
19. It associates strings with sets of strings. One application would be a thesaurus that lists synonyms for a given word. For example, the key "improve" might have as its value the set ["ameliorate", "better", "enhance", "enrich", "perfect", "refine"].
20. This way, we can ensure that only queue operations can be invoked on the q object.
21. Depending on whether you consider the 0 position the head or the tail of the queue, you would either add or remove elements at that position. Both are inefficient operations because all other elements need to be moved.
22. A B C
23. Stacks use a "last-in, first-out" discipline. If you are the first one to submit a print job and

lots of people add print jobs before the printer has a chance to deal with your job, they get their printouts first, and you have to wait until all other jobs are completed.

- 25.** Yes—the smallest string (in lexicographic ordering) is removed first. In the example, that is the string starting with 1, then the string starting with 2, and so on. However, the scheme breaks down if a priority value exceeds 9. For example, a string "10 - Line up braces" comes before "2 - Order cleaning supplies" in lexicographic order.
- 26.** 70.

- 27.** It would then subtract the first argument from the second. Consider the input  $5\ 3\ -$ . The stack contains 5 and 3, with the 3 on the top. Then `results.pop() - results.pop()` computes  $3 - 5$ .
- 28.** The `-` gets executed first because `+` doesn't have a higher precedence.
- 29.** No, because there may be parentheses on the stack. The parentheses separate groups of operators, each of which is in increasing precedence.
- 30.** A B E F G D C K J N

# BASIC DATA STRUCTURES

## CHAPTER GOALS

To understand the implementation of linked lists and array lists

To analyze the efficiency of fundamental operations of lists and arrays

To implement the stack and queue data types

To implement a hash table and understand the efficiency of its operations



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### 16.1 IMPLEMENTING LINKED LISTS 716

*Special Topic 16.1:* Static Classes 730

*Worked Example 16.1:* Implementing a Doubly-Linked List 

### 16.2 IMPLEMENTING ARRAY LISTS 731

### 16.3 IMPLEMENTING STACKS AND QUEUES 735

### 16.4 IMPLEMENTING A HASH TABLE 741

*Special Topic 16.2:* Open Addressing 749



In the preceding chapter, you learned how to use the collection classes in the Java library. In this and the next chapter, we will study how these classes are implemented. This chapter deals with simple data structures in which elements are arranged in a linear sequence. By investigating how these data structures add, remove, and locate elements, you will gain valuable experience in designing algorithms and estimating their efficiency.

## 16.1 Implementing Linked Lists

In the last chapter you saw how to use the linked list class supplied by the Java library. Now we will look at the implementation of a simplified version of this class. This will show you how the list operations manipulate the links as the list is modified.

To keep this sample code simple, we will not implement all methods of the linked list class. We will implement only a singly-linked list, and the list class will supply direct access only to the first list element, not the last one. (A worked example and several exercises explore additional implementation options.) Our list will not use a type parameter. We will simply store raw `Object` values and insert casts when retrieving them. (You will see how to use type parameters in Chapter 18.) The result will be a fully functional list class that shows how the links are updated when elements are added or removed, and how the iterator traverses the list.

### 16.1.1 The Node Class

A linked list stores elements in a sequence of nodes. We need a class to represent the nodes. In a singly-linked list, a `Node` object stores an element and a reference to the next node.

Because the methods of both the linked list class and the iterator class have frequent access to the `Node` instance variables, we do not make the instance variables of the `Node` class private. Instead, we make `Node` a private **inner class** of the `LinkedList` class. An inner class is a class that is defined inside another class. The methods of the outer class can access the public features of the inner class. However, because the inner class is private, it cannot be accessed anywhere other than from the outer class.

```
public class LinkedList
{
    . . .
    class Node
    {
        public Object data;
        public Node next;
    }
}
```

A linked list object holds a reference to the first node, and each node holds a reference to the next node.

Our `LinkedList` class holds a reference `first` to the first node (or `null`, if the list is completely empty):

```
public class LinkedList
{
    private Node first;
```

```

public LinkedList() { first = null; }

public Object getFirst()
{
    if (first == null) { throw new NoSuchElementException(); }
    return first.data;
}

```

### 16.1.2 Adding and Removing the First Element

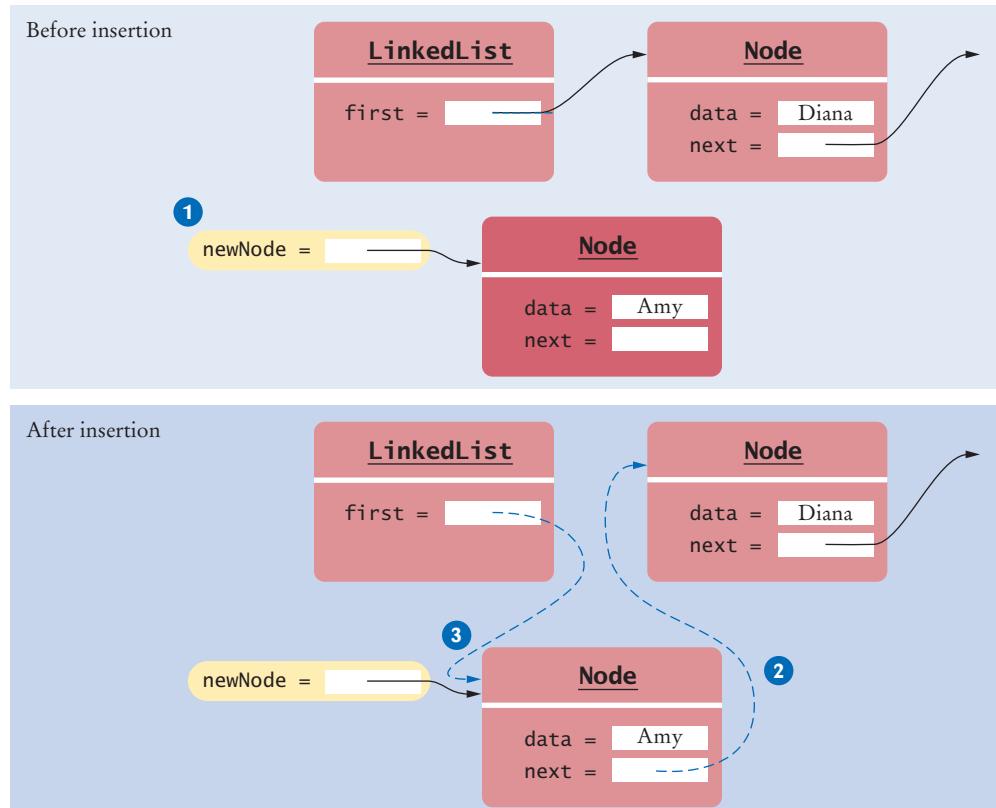
When adding or removing the first element, the reference to the first node must be updated.

Figure 1 shows the `addFirst` method in action. When a new node is added, it becomes the head of the list, and the node that was the old list head becomes its next node:

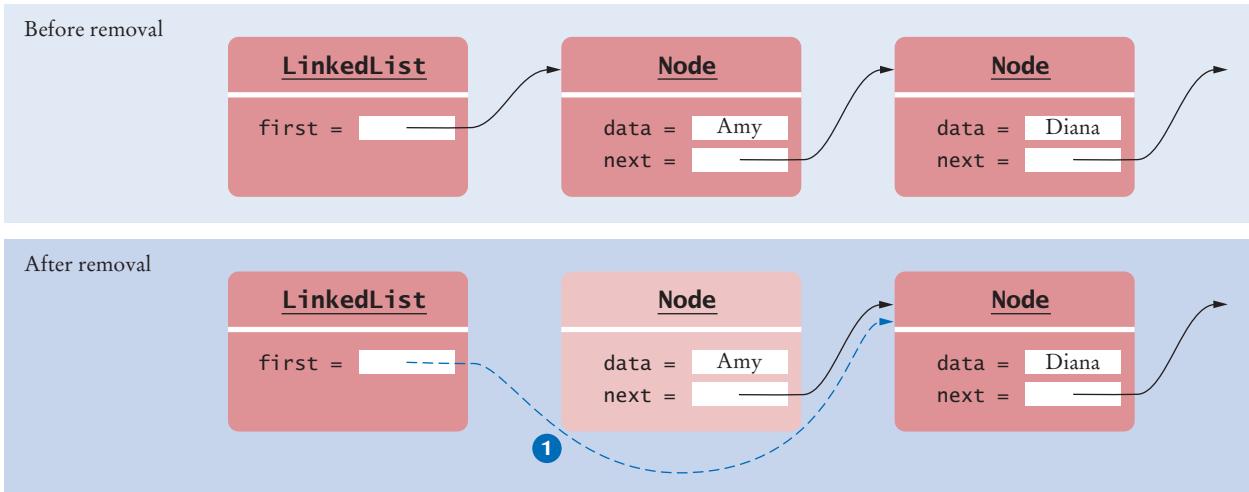
```

public class LinkedList
{
    ...
    public void addFirst(Object element)
    {
        Node newNode = new Node(); ①
        newNode.data = element;
        newNode.next = first; ②
        first = newNode; ③
    }
    ...
}

```



**Figure 1**  
Adding a Node to the Head of a Linked List



**Figure 2** Removing the First Node from a Linked List

Removing the first element of the list works as follows. The data of the first node are saved and later returned as the method result. The successor of the first node becomes the first node of the shorter list (see Figure 2). Then there are no further references to the old node, and the garbage collector will eventually recycle it.

```
public class LinkedList
{
    . . .
    public Object removeFirst()
    {
        if (first == null) { throw new NoSuchElementException(); }
        Object element = first.data;
        first = first.next; ①
        return element;
    }
    . . .
}
```

### 16.1.3 The Iterator Class

The `ListIterator` interface in the standard library declares nine methods. Our simplified `ListIterator` interface omits four of them (the methods that move the iterator backward and the methods that report an integer index of the iterator). Our interface requires us to implement list iterator methods `next`, `hasNext`, `remove`, `add`, and `set`.

Our `LinkedList` class declares a private inner class `LinkedListIterator`, which implements our simplified `ListIterator` interface. Because `LinkedListIterator` is an inner class, it has access to the private features of the `LinkedList` class—in particular, the instance variable `first` and the private `Node` class.

Note that clients of the `LinkedList` class don't actually know the name of the iterator class. They only know it is a class that implements the `ListIterator` interface.

Each iterator object has a reference, `position`, to the currently visited node. We also store a reference to the last node before that, `previous`. We will need that reference to adjust the links properly in the `remove` method. Finally, because calls to `remove` and `set`

are only valid after a call to `next`, we use the `isAfterNext` flag to track when the `next` method has been called.

```
public class LinkedList
{
    . .
    public ListIterator listIterator()
    {
        return new LinkedListIterator();
    }

    class LinkedListIterator implements ListIterator
    {
        private Node position;
        private Node previous;
        private boolean isAfterNext;

        public LinkedListIterator()
        {
            position = null;
            previous = null;
            isAfterNext = false;
        }
        . .
    }
}
```

### 16.1.4 Advancing an Iterator

To advance an iterator, update the position and remember the old position for the remove method.

When advancing an iterator with the `next` method, the `position` reference is updated to `position.next`, and the old position is remembered in `previous`. The previous position is used for just one purpose: to remove the element if the `remove` method is called after the `next` method.

There is a special case, however—if the iterator points before the first element of the list, then the old position is `null`, and `position` must be set to `first`:

```
class LinkedListIterator implements ListIterator
{
    . .
    public Object next()
    {
        if (!hasNext()) { throw new NoSuchElementException(); }
        previous = position; // Remember for remove
        isAfterNext = true;

        if (position == null)
        {
            position = first;
        }
        else
        {
            position = position.next;
        }

        return position.data;
    }
    . .
}
```

The next method is supposed to be called only when the iterator is not yet at the end of the list, so we declare the hasNext method accordingly. The iterator is at the end if the list is empty (that is, `first == null`) or if there is no element after the current position (`position.next == null`):

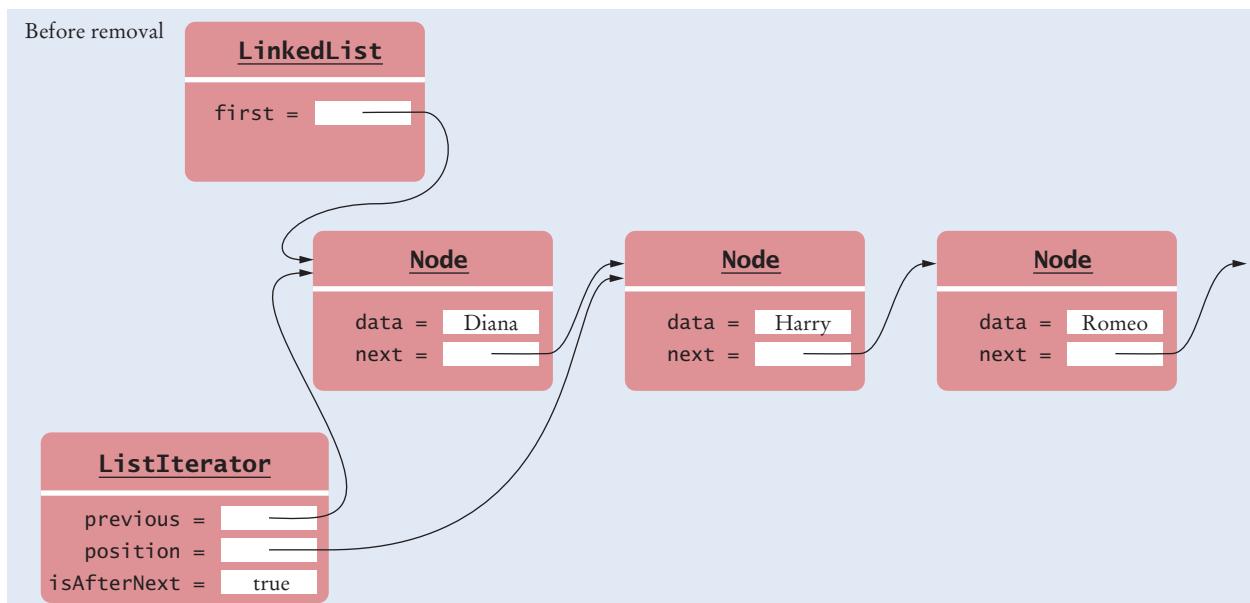
```
class LinkedListIterator implements ListIterator
{
    . .
    public boolean hasNext()
    {
        if (position == null)
        {
            return first != null;
        }
        else
        {
            return position.next != null;
        }
    }
    . .
}
```

### 16.1.5 Removing an Element

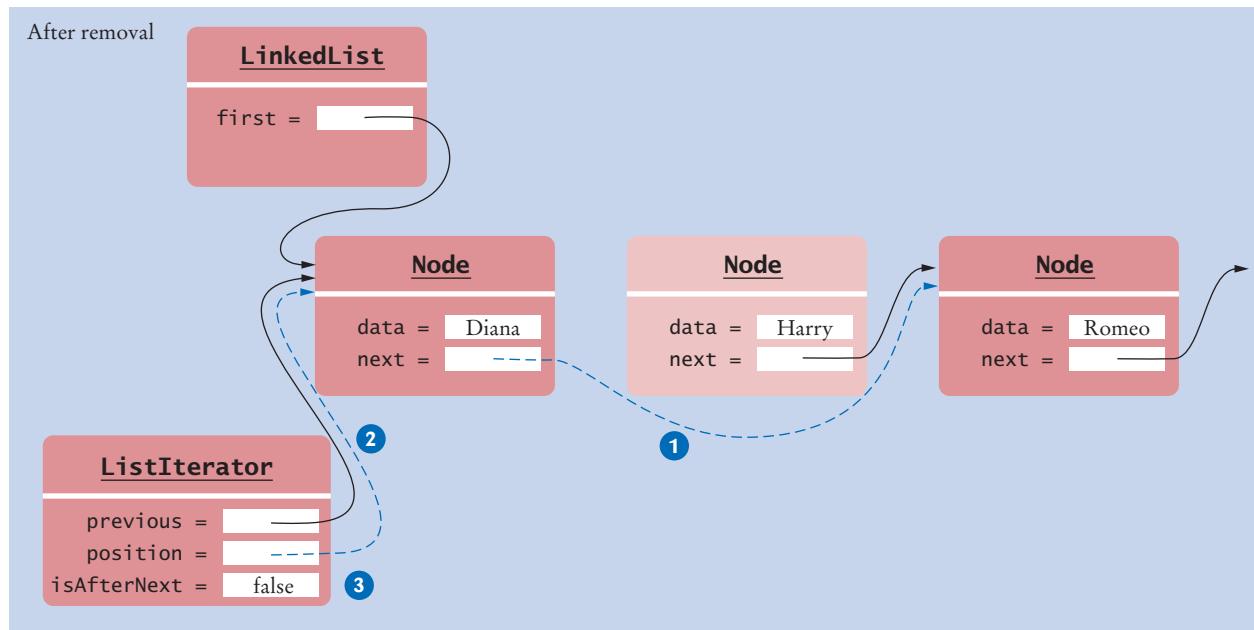
Next, we implement the `remove` method of the list iterator. Recall that, in order to remove an element, one must first call `next` and then call `remove` on the iterator.

If the element to be removed is the first element, we just call `removeFirst`. Otherwise, an element in the middle of the list must be removed, and the node preceding it needs to have its `next` reference updated to skip the removed element (see Figure 3).

We also need to update the `position` reference so that a subsequent call to the `next` method skips over the element after the removed one.



**Figure 3** Removing a Node from the Middle of a Linked List



**Figure 3 (continued)** Removing a Node from the Middle of a Linked List

According to the specification of the `remove` method, it is illegal to call `remove` twice in a row. Our implementation handles this situation correctly. After completion of the `remove` method, the `isAfterNext` flag is set to false. An exception occurs if `remove` is called again without another call to `next`.

```
class LinkedListIterator implements ListIterator
{
    . . .
    public void remove()
    {
        if (!isAfterNext) { throw new IllegalStateException(); }

        if (position == first)
        {
            removeFirst();
        }
        else
        {
            previous.next = position.next; ①
        }
        position = previous; ②

        isAfterNext = false; ③
    }
    . . .
}
```

There is a good reason for disallowing `remove` twice in a row. After the first call to `remove`, the current position reverts to the predecessor of the removed element. Its predecessor is no longer known, which makes it impossible to efficiently remove the current element.

### 16.1.6 Adding an Element

The add method of the iterator inserts the new node after the last visited node (see Figure 4).

After adding the new element, we set the `isAfterNext` flag to false, in order to disallow a subsequent call to the `remove` or `set` method.

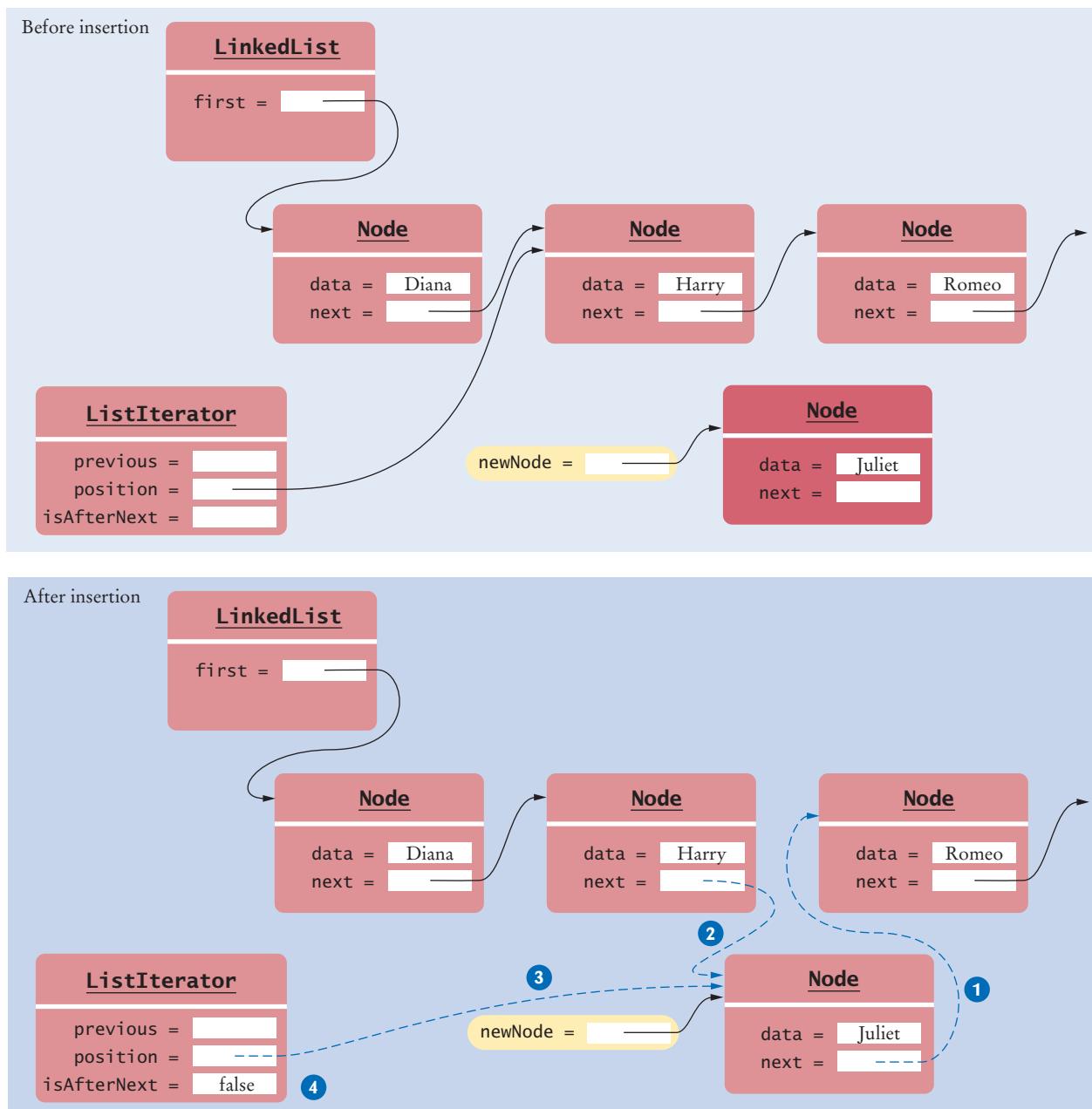


Figure 4 Adding a Node to the Middle of a Linked List

```

class LinkedListIterator implements ListIterator
{
    . . .
    public void add(Object element)
    {
        if (position == null)
        {
            addFirst(element);
            position = first;
        }
        else
        {
            Node newNode = new Node();
            newNode.data = element;
            newNode.next = position.next; ①
            position.next = newNode; ②
            position = newNode; ③
        }
        isAfterNext = false; ④
    }
    . . .
}

```

### 16.1.7 Setting an Element to a Different Value

The `set` method changes the data stored in the previously visited element:

```

public void set(Object element)
{
    if (!isAfterNext) { throw new IllegalStateException(); }
    position.data = element;
}

```

As with the `remove` method, a call to `set` is only valid if it was preceded by a call to the `next` method. We throw an exception if we find that there was a call to `add` or `remove` immediately before calling `set`.

You will find the complete implementation of our `LinkedList` class after the next section.

### 16.1.8 Efficiency of Linked List Operations

In a doubly-linked list, accessing an element is an  $O(n)$  operation; adding and removing an element is  $O(1)$ .

Now that you have seen how linked list operations are implemented, we can determine their efficiency.

Consider first the cost of accessing an element. To get the  $k$ th element of a linked list, you start at the beginning of the list and advance the iterator  $k$  times. Suppose it takes an amount of time  $T$  to advance the iterator once. This quantity is independent of the iterator position—advancing an iterator does some checking and then it follows the next reference of the current node (see Section 16.1.4).

Therefore, advancing the iterator to the  $k$ th element consumes  $kT$  time. If the linked list has  $n$  elements and  $k$  is chosen at random, then  $k$  will average out to be  $n/2$ , and  $kT$  is on average  $nT/2$ . Since  $T/2$  is a constant, this is an  $O(n)$  expression. We have determined that accessing an element in a linked list of length  $n$  is an  $O(n)$  operation.

Now consider the cost of adding an element at a given position, assuming that we already have an iterator to the position. Look at the implementation of the `add`



To get to the  $k$ th node of a linked list, one must skip over the preceding nodes.

method in Section 16.1.6. To add an element, one updates a couple of references in the neighboring nodes and the iterator. This operation requires a constant number of steps, independent of the size of the linked list.

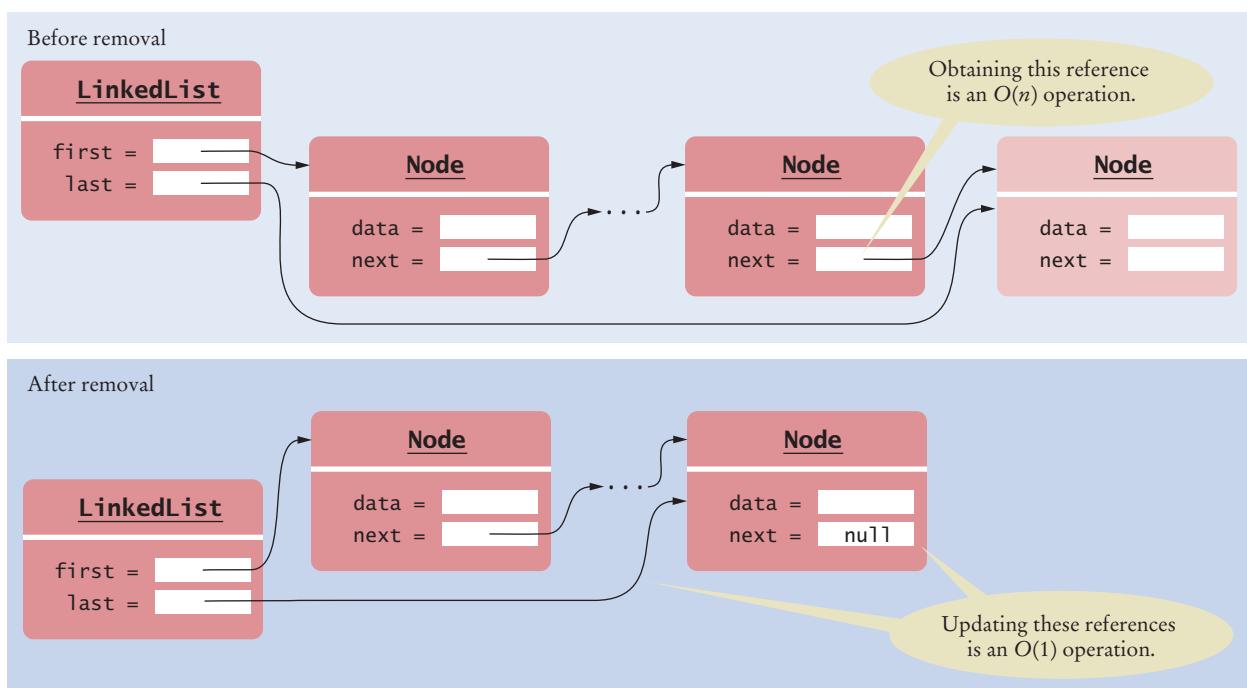
Using the big-Oh notation, an operation that requires a bounded amount of time, regardless of the total number of elements in the structure, is denoted as  $O(1)$ . Adding an element to a linked list takes  $O(1)$  time.

Similar reasoning shows that removing an element at a given position is an  $O(1)$  operation.

Now consider the task of adding an element at the end of the list. We first need to get to the end, at a cost of  $O(n)$ . Then it takes  $O(1)$  time to add the element. However, we can improve on this performance if we add a reference to the last node to the `LinkedList` class:

```
public class LinkedList
{
    private Node first;
    private Node last;
    . . .
}
```

Of course, this reference must be updated when the last node changes, as elements are added or removed. In order to keep the code as simple as possible, our implementation does not have a reference to the last node. However, we will always assume that a linked list implementation can access the last element in constant time. This is the case for the `LinkedList` class in the standard Java library, and it is an easy enhancement to our implementation. Worked Example 16.1 shows how to add the `last` reference, update it as necessary, and provide an `addLast` method for adding an element at the end.



**Figure 5** Removing the Last Element of a Singly-Linked List

The code for the `addLast` method is very similar to the `addFirst` method in Section 16.1.2. It too requires constant time, independent of the length of the list. We conclude that, with an appropriate implementation, adding an element at the end of a linked list is an  $O(1)$  operation.

How about removing the last element? We need a reference to the next-to-last element, so that we can set its `next` reference to `null`. (See Figure 5.)

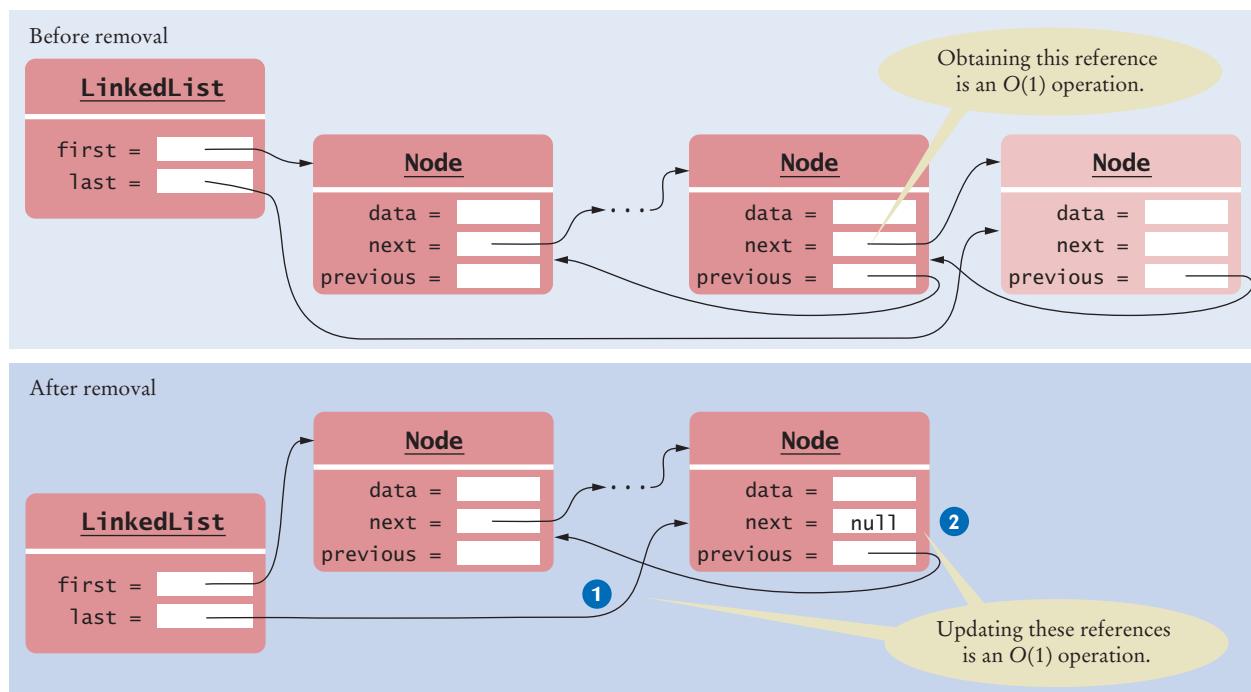
We also need to update the `last` reference and set it to the next-to-last reference. But how can we get that next-to-last reference? It takes  $n - 1$  iterations to obtain it, starting at the beginning of the list. Thus, removing an element from the back of a singly-linked list is an  $O(n)$  operation.

We can do better in a doubly-linked list, such as the one in the standard Java library. In a doubly-linked list, each node has a reference to the previous node in addition to the next one (see Figure 6).

```
public class LinkedList
{
    ...
    class Node
    {
        public Object data;
        public Node next;
        public Node previous;
    }
}
```

In that case, removal of the last element takes a constant number of steps:

```
last = last.previous; ①
last.next = null; ②
```



**Figure 6** Removing the Last Element of a Doubly-Linked List

Therefore, removing an element from the end of a doubly-linked list is also an  $O(1)$  operation. Worked Example 16.1 contains a full implementation.

Table 1 summarizes the efficiency of linked list operations.

**Table 1 Efficiency of Linked List Operations**

Operation	Singly-Linked List	Doubly-Linked List
Access an element.	$O(n)$	$O(n)$
Add/remove at an iterator position.	$O(1)$	$O(1)$
Add/remove first element.	$O(1)$	$O(1)$
Add last element.	$O(1)$	$O(1)$
Remove last element.	$O(n)$	$O(1)$

### section\_1/LinkedList.java

```

1 import java.util.NoSuchElementException;
2
3 /**
4  * A linked list is a sequence of nodes with efficient
5  * element insertion and removal. This class
6  * contains a subset of the methods of the standard
7  * java.util.LinkedList class.
8 */
9 public class LinkedList
10 {
11     private Node first;
12
13     /**
14      * Constructs an empty linked list.
15     */
16     public LinkedList()
17     {
18         first = null;
19     }
20
21     /**
22      * Returns the first element in the linked list.
23      * @return the first element in the linked list
24     */
25     public Object getFirst()
26     {
27         if (first == null) { throw new NoSuchElementException(); }
28         return first.data;
29     }
30
31     /**
32      * Removes the first element in the linked list.
33      * @return the removed element
34     */
35     public Object removeFirst()
36     {
37         if (first == null) { throw new NoSuchElementException(); }
38         Object element = first.data;

```

```

39         first = first.next;
40     return element;
41 }
42 /**
43      Adds an element to the front of the linked list.
44      @param element the element to add
45 */
46 public void addFirst(Object element)
47 {
48     Node newNode = new Node();
49     newNode.data = element;
50     newNode.next = first;
51     first = newNode;
52 }
53 /**
54      Returns an iterator for iterating through this list.
55      @return an iterator for iterating through this list
56 */
57 public ListIterator listIterator()
58 {
59     return new LinkedListIterator();
60 }
61 /**
62      Constructs an iterator that points to the front
63      of the linked list.
64 */
65 class Node
66 {
67     public Object data;
68     public Node next;
69 }
70 class LinkedListIterator implements ListIterator
71 {
72     private Node position;
73     private Node previous;
74     private boolean isAfterNext;
75 /**
76      Moves the iterator past the next element.
77      @return the traversed element
78 */
79 public Object next()
80 {
81     position = null;
82     previous = null;
83     isAfterNext = false;
84 }
85 /**
86      Returns the current element.
87      @return the current element
88 */
89 public Object get()
90 {
91     if (!hasNext()) { throw new NoSuchElementException(); }
92     previous = position; // Remember for remove
93     isAfterNext = true;
94
95     if (position == null)
96     {
97
98

```

```

    position = first;
}
else
{
    position = position.next;
}

return position.data;
}

/**
 * Tests if there is an element after the iterator position.
 * @return true if there is an element after the iterator position
 */
public boolean hasNext()
{
    if (position == null)
    {
        return first != null;
    }
    else
    {
        return position.next != null;
    }
}

/**
 * Adds an element before the iterator position
 * and moves the iterator past the inserted element.
 * @param element the element to add
 */
public void add(Object element)
{
    if (position == null)
    {
        addFirst(element);
        position = first;
    }
    else
    {
        Node newNode = new Node();
        newNode.data = element;
        newNode.next = position.next;
        position.next = newNode;
        position = newNode;
    }

    isAfterNext = false;
}

/**
 * Removes the last traversed element. This method may
 * only be called after a call to the next method.
 */
public void remove()
{
    if (!isAfterNext) { throw new IllegalStateException(); }

    if (position == first)
    {

```

```

159             removeFirst();
160         }
161     else
162     {
163         previous.next = position.next;
164     }
165     position = previous;
166     isAfterNext = false;
167 }
168 /**
169 * Sets the last traversed element to a different value.
170 * @param element the element to set
171 */
172 public void set(Object element)
173 {
174     if (!isAfterNext) { throw new IllegalStateException(); }
175     position.data = element;
176 }
177 }
178 }
179 }
```



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program to demonstrate linked list operations.

### section\_1/ListIterator.java

```

1 /**
2  * A list iterator allows access to a position in a linked list.
3  * This interface contains a subset of the methods of the
4  * standard java.util.ListIterator interface. The methods for
5  * backward traversal are not included.
6 */
7 public interface ListIterator
8 {
9     /**
10      * Moves the iterator past the next element.
11      * @return the traversed element
12      */
13     Object next();
14
15     /**
16      * Tests if there is an element after the iterator position.
17      * @return true if there is an element after the iterator position
18      */
19     boolean hasNext();
20
21     /**
22      * Adds an element before the iterator position
23      * and moves the iterator past the inserted element.
24      * @param element the element to add
25      */
26     void add(Object element);
27
28     /**
29      * Removes the last traversed element. This method may
30      * only be called after a call to the next method.
31      */
32     void remove();
33
34     /**
35      * Sets the last traversed element to a different value.
36      * @param element the element to set
37 }
```

```

37     */
38     void set(Object element);
39 }
```

**SELF CHECK**

1. Trace through the `addFirst` method when adding an element to an empty list.
2. Conceptually, an iterator is located between two elements (see Figure 9 in Chapter 15). Does the `position` instance variable refer to the element to the left or the element to the right?
3. Why does the `add` method have two separate cases?
4. Assume that a `last` reference is added to the `LinkedList` class, as described in Section 16.1.8. How does the `add` method of the `ListIterator` need to change?
5. Provide an implementation of an `addLast` method for the `LinkedList` class, assuming that there is no `last` reference.
6. Expressed in big-Oh notation, what is the efficiency of the `addFirst` method of the `LinkedList` class? What is the efficiency of the `addLast` method of Self Check 5?
7. How much slower is the binary search algorithm for a linked list compared to the linear search algorithm?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R16.1, E16.2, E16.4, E16.6.

**Special Topic 16.1****Static Classes**

You first saw the use of inner classes for event handlers in Chapter 10. Inner classes are useful in that context, because their methods have the privilege of accessing private instance variables of outer-class objects. The same is true for the `LinkedListIterator` inner class in the sample code for this section. The iterator needs to access the `first` instance variable of its linked list.

However, there is a cost for this feature. Every object of the inner class has a reference to the object of the enclosing class that constructed it. If an inner class has no need to access the enclosing class, you can declare the class as static and eliminate the reference to the enclosing class. This is the case with the `Node` class.

You can declare it as follows:

```

public class LinkedList
{
    ...
    static class Node
    {
        ...
    }
}
```

However, the `LinkedListIterator` class cannot be a static class. Its methods must access the `first` element of the enclosing `LinkedList`.

**WORKED EXAMPLE 16.1****Implementing a Doubly-Linked List**

Learn how to modify a singly-linked list to implement a doubly-linked list. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 16.1.

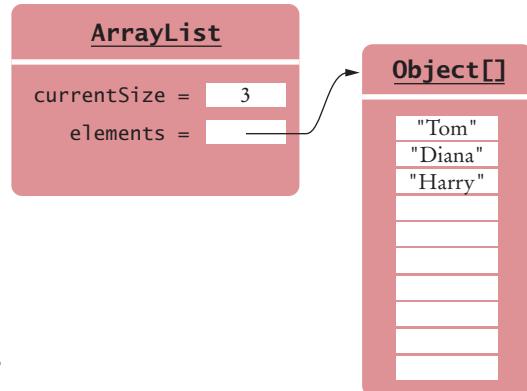
## 16.2 Implementing Array Lists

Array lists were introduced in Chapter 7. They are conceptually similar to linked lists, allowing you to add and remove elements at any position. In the following sections, we will develop an implementation of an array list, study the efficiency of operations on array lists, and compare them with the equivalent operations on linked lists.

### 16.2.1 Getting and Setting Elements

An array list maintains a reference to an array of elements. The array is large enough to hold all elements in the collection—in fact, it is usually larger to allow for adding additional elements. When the array gets full, it is replaced by a larger one. We discuss that process in Section 16.2.3.

In addition to the internal array of elements, an array list has an instance field that stores the current number of elements (see Figure 7).



**Figure 7**  
An ArrayList Stores its  
Elements in an Array

For simplicity, our `ArrayList` implementation does not work with arbitrary element types, but it simply manages elements of type `Object`. (Chapter 18 shows how to implement classes with type parameters.)

```

public class ArrayList
{
    private Object[] elements;
    private int currentSize;

    public ArrayList()
    {
        final int INITIAL_SIZE = 10;
        elements = new Object[INITIAL_SIZE];
        currentSize = 0;
    }

    public int size() { return currentSize; }
    ...
}

```

To access array list elements, we provide `get` and `set` methods. These methods simply check for valid positions and access the internal array at the given position:

```

private void checkBounds(int n)
{
    if (n < 0 || n >= currentSize)
    {
        throw new IndexOutOfBoundsException();
    }
}

public Object get(int pos)
{
    checkBounds(pos);
    return element[pos];
}

public void set(int pos, Object element)
{
    checkBounds(pos);
    elements[pos] = element;
}

```

Getting or setting an array list element is an  $O(1)$  operation.

As you can see, getting and setting an element can be carried out with a bounded set of instructions, independent of the size of the array list. These are  $O(1)$  operations.

## 16.2.2 Removing or Adding Elements

When removing an element at position  $k$ , the elements with higher index values need to move (see Figure 8). Here is the implementation, following Section 7.3.6:

```

public Object remove(int pos)
{
    checkBounds(pos);

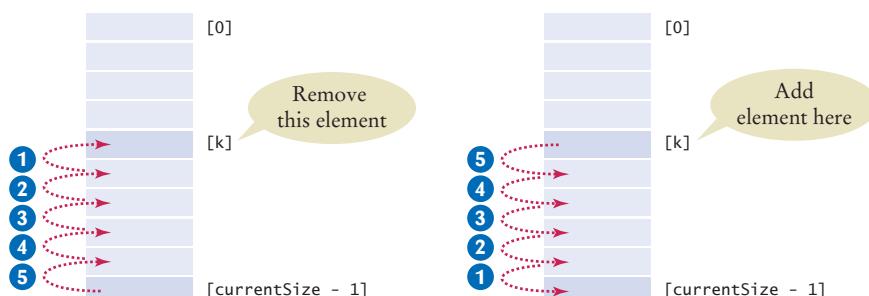
    Object removed = elements[pos];

    for (int i = pos + 1; i < currentSize; i++)
    {
        elements[i - 1] = elements[i];
    }

    currentSize--;
    return removed;
}

```

How many elements are affected? If we assume that removal happens at random locations, then on average, each removal moves  $n / 2$  elements, where  $n$  is the size of the array list.



**Figure 8**  
Removing and  
Adding Elements

The same argument holds for inserting an element. On average,  $n / 2$  elements need to be moved. Therefore, we say that adding and removing elements are  $O(n)$  operations.

There is one situation where adding an element to an array list isn't so costly: when the insertion happens *after* the last element. If the current size is less than the length of the array, the size is incremented and the new element is simply stored in the array. This is an  $O(1)$  operation.

```
public boolean addLast(Object newElement)
{
    growIfNecessary();
    currentSize++;

    elements[currentSize - 1] = newElement;
    return true;
}
```

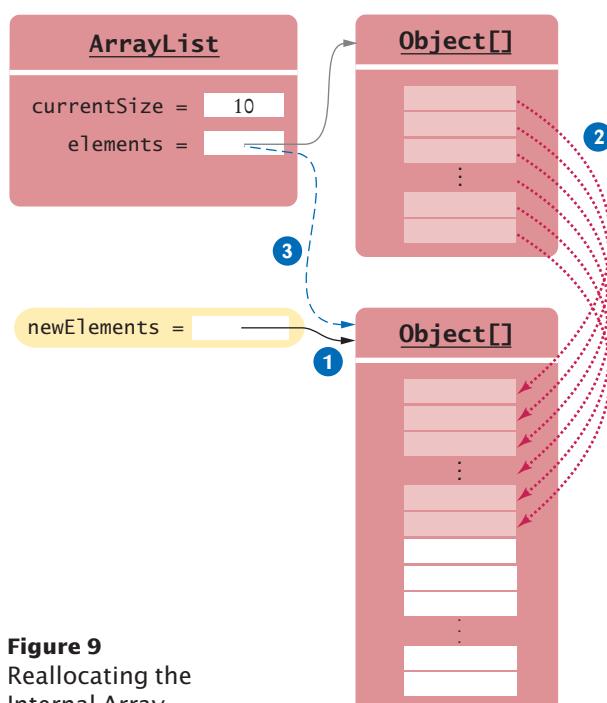
One issue remains: If there is no more room in the internal array, then we need to grow it. That is the topic of the next section.

### 16.2.3 Growing the Internal Array

Before inserting an element into an internal array that is completely full, we must replace the array with a bigger one. This new array is typically twice the size of the current array. (See Figure 9.) The existing elements are then copied into the new array. Reallocation is an  $O(n)$  operation because all elements need to be copied to the new array.



*When an array list is completely full, we must move the contents to a larger array.*



```
private void growIfNecessary()
{
    if (currentSize == elements.length)
    {
        Object[] newElements =
            new Object[2 * elements.length]; ①
        for (int i = 0; i < elements.length; i++)
        {
            newElements[i] = elements[i]; ②
        }
        elements = newElements; ③
    }
}
```

**Figure 9**  
Reallocating the Internal Array

If we carefully analyze the total cost of a sequence of `addLast` operations, it turns out that these reallocations are not as expensive as they first appear. The key observation is that array growth does not happen very often. Suppose we start with an array list of capacity 10 and double the size with each reallocation. We must reallocate the array of elements when it reaches sizes 10, 20, 40, 80, 160, 320, 640, 1280, and so on.

Let us assume that one insertion without reallocation takes time  $T_1$  and that reallocation of  $k$  elements takes time  $kT_2$ . What is the cost of 1280 `addLast` operations?

Of course, we pay  $1280 \cdot T_1$  for the insertions. The reallocation cost is

$$\begin{aligned} 10T_2 + 20T_2 + 40T_2 + \dots + 1280T_2 &= (1 + 2 + 4 + \dots + 128) \cdot 10 \cdot T_2 \\ &= 255 \cdot 10 \cdot T_2 \\ &< 256 \cdot 10 \cdot T_2 \\ &= 1280 \cdot 2 \cdot T_2 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the total cost is a bit less than

$$1280 \cdot (T_1 + 2T_2)$$

In general, the total cost of  $n$  `addLast` operations is less than  $n \cdot (T_1 + 2T_2)$ . Because the second factor is a constant, we conclude that  $n$  `addLast` operations take  $O(n)$  time.

We know that it isn't quite true that an individual `addLast` operation takes  $O(1)$  time. After all, occasionally a call to `addLast` is unlucky and must reallocate the `elements` array.

But if the cost of that reallocation is distributed over the preceding `addLast` operations, then the surcharge for each of them is still a constant amount. We say that `addLast` takes *amortized*  $O(1)$  time, which is written as  $O(1)+$ . (Accountants say that a cost is amortized when it is distributed over multiple periods.)

In our implementation, we do not shrink the array when elements are removed. However, it turns out that you can (occasionally) shrink the array and still have  $O(1)+$  performance for removing the last element (see Exercise E16.10).

Adding or removing the last element in an array list takes amortized  $O(1)$  time.

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**  
Go to [wiley.com/go/](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) `javacode` to download a program that demonstrates this array list implementation.



### SELF CHECK

8. Why is it much more expensive to get the  $k$ th element in a linked list than in an array list?
9. Why is it much more expensive to insert an element at the beginning of an array list than at the beginning of a linked list?
10. What is the efficiency of adding an element exactly in the middle of a linked list? An array list?
11. Suppose we insert an element at the beginning of an array list, and the internal array must be grown to hold the new element. What is the efficiency of the `add` operation in this situation?

**Table 2** Efficiency of Array List and Linked List Operations

Operation	Array List	Doubly-Linked List
Add/remove element at end.	$O(1)+$	$O(1)$
Add/remove element in the middle.	$O(n)$	$O(1)$
Get $k$ th element.	$O(1)$	$O(k)$

- 12.** Using big-Oh notation, what is the cost of adding an element to an array list as the second-to-last element?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R16.9, R16.10, R16.11.

## 16.3 Implementing Stacks and Queues

In Section 15.5, we introduced the stack and queue data types. Stacks and queues are very simple. Elements are added and retrieved, either in *last-in, first-out* order or in *first-in, first-out* order.

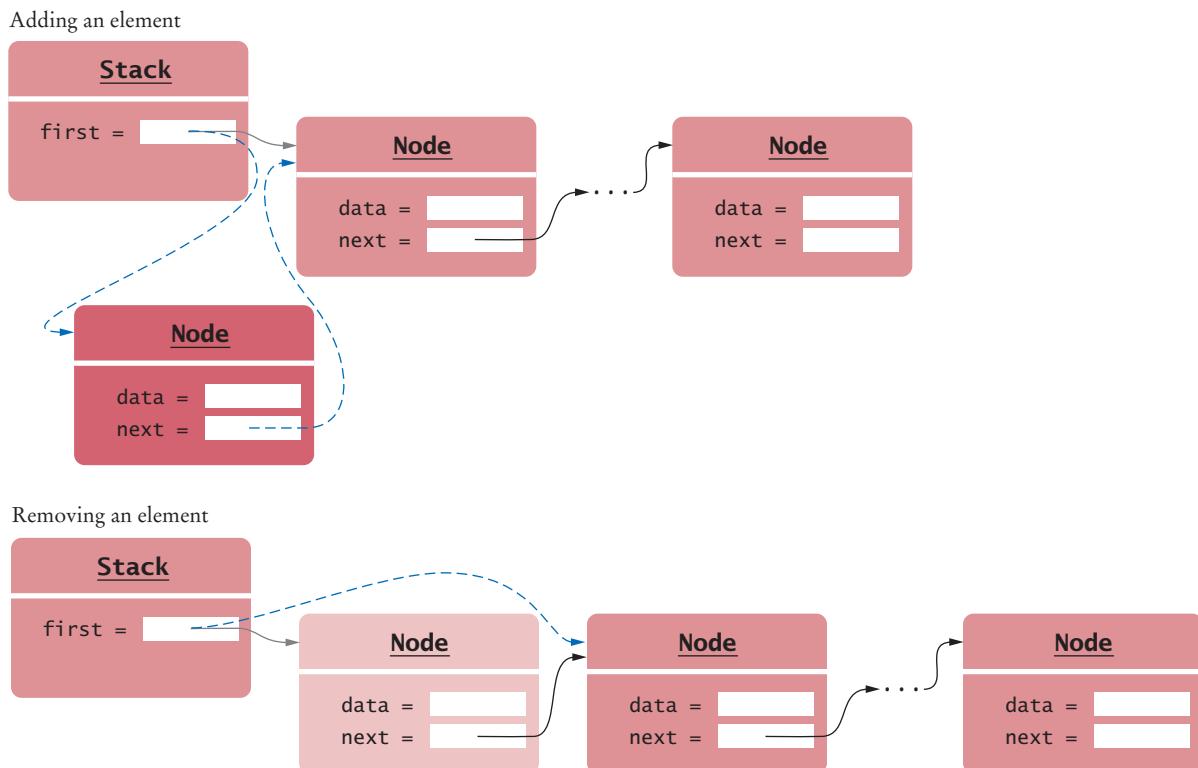
Stacks and queues are examples of **abstract data types**. We only specify how the operations must behave, not how they are implemented. In the following sections, we will study several implementations of stacks and queues and determine how efficient they are.

### 16.3.1 Stacks as Linked Lists

A stack can be implemented as a linked list, adding and removing elements at the front.

Let us first implement a stack as a sequence of nodes. New elements are added (or “pushed”) to an end of the sequence, and they are removed (or “popped”) from the same end.

Which end? It is up to us to choose, and we will make the least expensive choice: to add and remove elements at the front (see Figure 10).



**Figure 10** Push and Pop for a Stack Implemented as a Linked List

The push and pop operations are identical to the addFirst and removeFirst operations from Section 16.1.2. They are both  $O(1)$  operations.

Here is the complete implementation:

### section\_3\_1/LinkedListStack.java

```
1 import java.util.NoSuchElementException;
2
3 /**
4  * An implementation of a stack as a sequence of nodes.
5  */
6 public class LinkedListStack
7 {
8     private Node first;
9
10    /**
11     * Constructs an empty stack.
12     */
13    public LinkedListStack()
14    {
15        first = null;
16    }
17
18    /**
19     * Adds an element to the top of the stack.
20     * @param element the element to add
21     */
22    public void push(Object element)
23    {
24        Node newNode = new Node();
25        newNode.data = element;
26        newNode.next = first;
27        first = newNode;
28    }
29
30    /**
31     * Removes the element from the top of the stack.
32     * @return the removed element
33     */
34    public Object pop()
35    {
36        if (first == null) { throw new NoSuchElementException(); }
37        Object element = first.data;
38        first = first.next;
39        return element;
40    }
41
42    /**
43     * Checks whether this stack is empty.
44     * @return true if the stack is empty
45     */
46    public boolean empty()
47    {
48        return first == null;
49    }
50
51    class Node
52    {
53        public Object data;
54        public Node next;
```

```
55 }
56 }
```

### 16.3.2 Stacks as Arrays

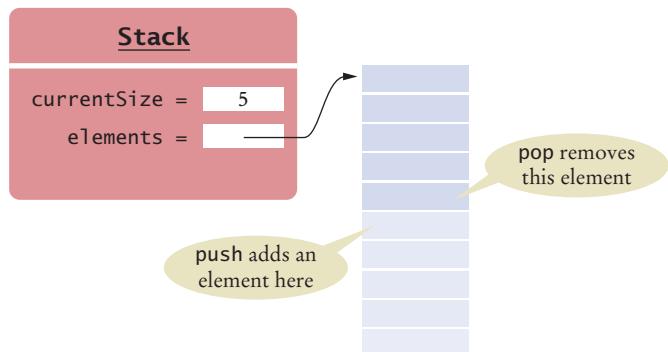
When implementing a stack as an array list, add and remove elements at the back.

In the preceding section, you saw how a list was implemented as a sequence of nodes. In this section, we will instead store the values in an array, thus saving the storage of the node references.

Again, it is up to us at which end of the array we place new elements. This time, it is better to add and remove elements at the back of the array (see Figure 11).

Of course, an array may eventually fill up as more elements are pushed on the stack. As with the `ArrayList` implementation of Section 16.2, the array must grow when it gets full.

The push and pop operations are identical to the `addLast` and `removeLast` operations of an array list. They are both  $O(1)$ + operations.



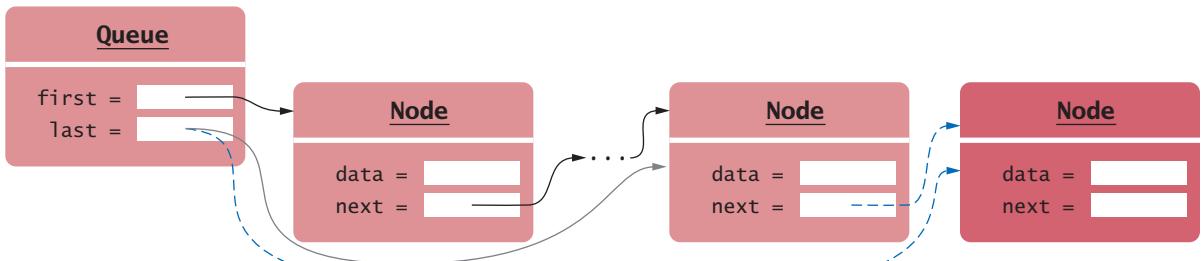
**Figure 11**  
A Stack Implemented  
as an Array

### 16.3.3 Queues as Linked Lists

A queue can be implemented as a linked list, adding elements at the back and removing them at the front.

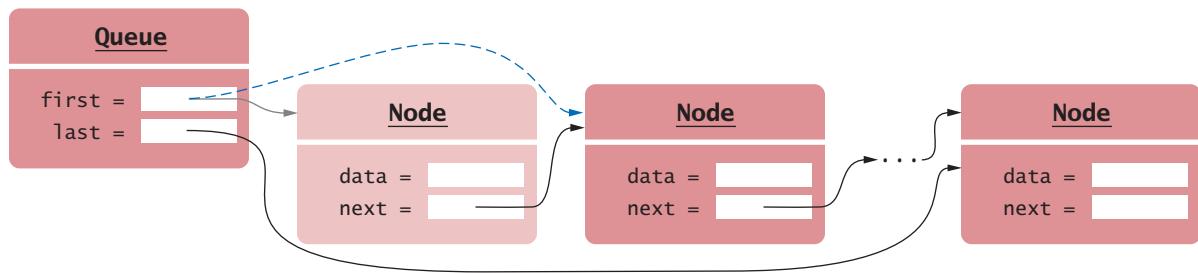
We now turn to the implementation of a queue. When implementing a queue as a sequence of nodes, we add nodes at one end and remove them at the other. As we discussed in Section 16.1.8, a singly-linked node sequence is not able to remove the last node in  $O(1)$  time. Therefore, it is best to remove elements at the front and add them at the back (see Figure 12).

Adding an element



**Figure 12** A Queue Implemented as a Linked List

Removing an element



**Figure 12 (continued)** A Queue Implemented as a Linked List

The add and remove operations of a queue are  $O(1)$  operations because they are the same as the `addLast` and `removeFirst` operations of a doubly-linked list. Note that we need a reference to the last node so that we can efficiently add elements.

### 16.3.4 Queues as Circular Arrays

When storing queue elements in an array, we have a problem: elements get added at one end of the array and removed at the other. But adding or removing the first element of an array is an  $O(n)$  operation, so it seems that we cannot avoid this expensive operation, no matter which end we choose for adding elements and which for removing them.



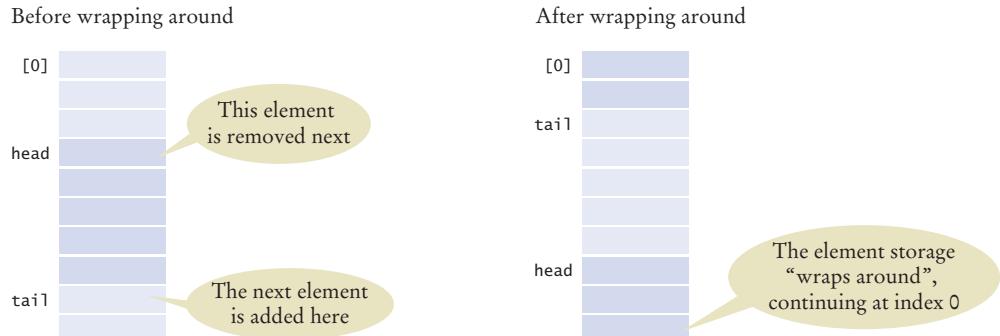
*In a circular array, we wrap around to the beginning after the last element.*

However, we can solve this problem with a trick. We add elements at the end, but when we remove them, we don't actually move the remaining elements. Instead, we increment the index at which the head of the queue is located (see Figure 13).

After adding sufficiently many elements, the last element of the array will be filled. However, if there were also a few calls to remove, then there is additional room in the front of the array. Then we “wrap around” and start storing elements again at index 0—see part 2 of Figure 13. For that reason, the array is called “circular”.

Eventually, of course, the tail reaches the head, and a larger array must be allocated.

In a circular array implementation of a queue, element locations wrap from the end of the array to the beginning.



**Figure 13** Queue Elements in a Circular Array

As you can see from the source code that follows, adding or removing an element requires a bounded set of operations, independent of the queue size, except for array reallocation. However, as discussed in Section 16.2.3, reallocation happens rarely enough that the total cost is still amortized constant time,  $O(1)+$ .

**Table 3 Efficiency of Stack and Queue Operations**

	Stack as Linked List	Stack as Array	Queue as Linked List	Queue as Circular Array
Add an element.	$O(1)$	$O(1)+$	$O(1)$	$O(1)+$
Remove an element.	$O(1)$	$O(1)+$	$O(1)$	$O(1)+$

### section\_3\_4/CircularArrayListQueue.java

```

1 import java.util.NoSuchElementException;
2
3 /**
4  * An implementation of a queue as a circular array.
5 */
6 public class CircularArrayListQueue
7 {
8     private Object[] elements;
9     private int currentSize;
10    private int head;
11    private int tail;
12
13 /**
14  * Constructs an empty queue.
15 */
16 public CircularArrayListQueue()
17 {
18     final int INITIAL_SIZE = 10;
19     elements = new Object[INITIAL_SIZE];
20     currentSize = 0;
21     head = 0;
22     tail = 0;
23 }
24
25 /**
26  * Checks whether this queue is empty.
27  * @return true if this queue is empty
28 */
29 public boolean empty() { return currentSize == 0; }
30
31 /**
32  * Adds an element to the tail of this queue.
33  * @param newElement the element to add
34 */
35 public void add(Object newElement)
36 {
37     growIfNecessary();
38     currentSize++;
39     elements[tail] = newElement;
40     tail = (tail + 1) % elements.length;
41 }
42
43 /**
44  * Removes an element from the head of this queue.
45  * @return the removed element

```

```

46  */
47  public Object remove()
48  {
49      if (currentSize == 0) { throw new NoSuchElementException(); }
50      Object removed = elements[head];
51      head = (head + 1) % elements.length;
52      currentSize--;
53      return removed;
54  }
55
56 /**
57 * Grows the element array if the current size equals the capacity.
58 */
59 private void growIfNecessary()
60 {
61     if (currentSize == elements.length)
62     {
63         Object[] newElements = new Object[2 * elements.length];
64         for (int i = 0; i < elements.length; i++)
65         {
66             newElements[i] = elements[(head + i) % elements.length];
67         }
68         elements = newElements;
69         head = 0;
70         tail = currentSize;
71     }
72 }
73 }
```

**SELF CHECK**

13. Add a method `peek` to the `Stack` implementation in Section 16.3.1 that returns the top of the stack without removing it.
14. When implementing a stack as a sequence of nodes, why isn't it a good idea to push and pop elements at the back end?
15. When implementing a stack as an array, why isn't it a good idea to push and pop elements at index 0?
16. What is wrong with this implementation of the `empty` method for the circular array queue?

```
public boolean empty()
{
    return head == 0 && tail == 0;
}
```
17. What is wrong with this implementation of the `empty` method for the circular array queue?

```
public boolean empty()
{
    return head == tail;
}
```
18. Have a look at the `growIfNecessary` method of the `CircularArrayQueue` class. Why isn't the loop simply

```
for (int i = 0; i < elements.length; i++)
{
    newElements[i] = elements[i];
}
```

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R16.20, R16.23, E16.11, E16.12.

## 16.4 Implementing a Hash Table

In Section 15.3, you were introduced to the set data structure and its two implementations in the Java collections framework, hash sets and tree sets. In these sections, you will see how hash sets are implemented and how efficient their operations are.

### 16.4.1 Hash Codes

A good hash function minimizes *collisions*—identical hash codes for different objects.

The basic idea behind hashing is to place objects into an array, at a location that can be determined from the object itself. Each object has a **hash code**, an integer value that is computed from an object in such a way that different objects are likely to yield different hash codes.

Table 4 shows some examples of strings and their hash codes. Special Topic 15.1 shows how these values are computed.

It is possible for two or more distinct objects to have the same hash code; this is called a *collision*. For example, the strings "VII" and "Ugh" happen to have the same hash code.

**Table 4** Sample Strings and Their Hash Codes

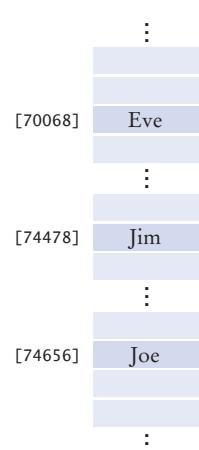
String	Hash Code	String	Hash Code
"Adam"	2035631	"Juliet"	-2065036585
"Eve"	70068	"Katherine"	2079199209
"Harry"	69496448	"Sue"	83491
"Jim"	74478	"Ugh"	84982
"Joe"	74656	"VII"	84982

### 16.4.2 Hash Tables

A hash table uses the hash code to determine where to store each element.

A hash code is used as an array index into a **hash table**, an array that stores the set elements. In the simplest implementation of a hash table, you could make a very long array and insert each object at the location of its hash code (see Figure 14).

If there are no collisions, it is a very simple matter to find out whether an object is already present in the set or not. Compute its hash code and check whether the array position with that hash code is already occupied. This doesn't require a search through the entire array!



**Figure 14**  
A Simplistic Implementation  
of a Hash Table

*Elements with the same hash code are placed in the same bucket.*



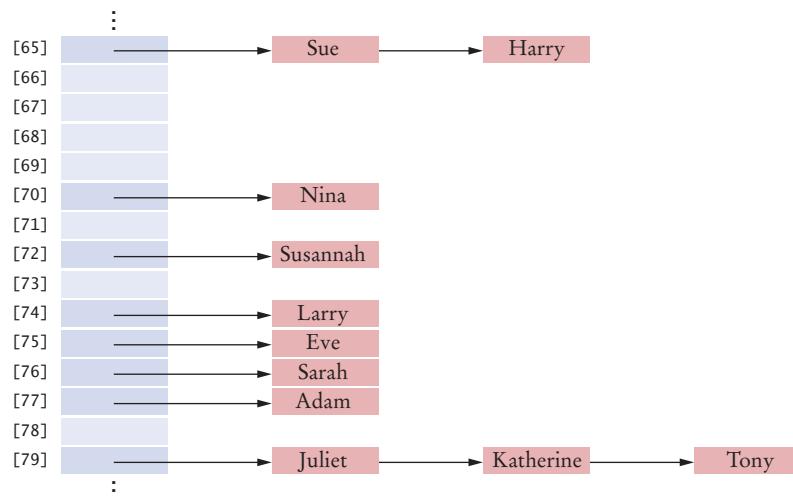
Of course, it is not feasible to allocate an array that is large enough to hold all possible integer index positions. Therefore, we must pick an array of some reasonable size and then “compress” the hash code to become a valid array index. Compression can be easily achieved by using the remainder operation:

```
int h = x.hashCode();
if (h < 0) { h = -h; }
position = h % arrayLength;
```

See Exercise E16.20 for an alternative compression technique.

After compressing the hash code, it becomes more likely that several objects will collide. There are several techniques for handling collisions. The most common one is called *separate chaining*. All colliding elements are collected in a linked list of elements with the same position value (see Figure 15). Such a list is called a “bucket”. Special Topic 16.2 discusses *open addressing*, in which colliding elements are placed in empty locations of the hash table.

In the following, we will use the first technique. Each entry of the hash table points to a sequence of nodes containing elements with the same (compressed) hash code.



**Figure 15** A Hash Table with Buckets to Store Elements with the Same Hash Code

A hash table can be implemented as an array of *buckets*—sequences of nodes that hold elements with the same hash code.

### 16.4.3 Finding an Element

Let's assume that our hash table has been filled with a number of elements. Now we want to find out whether a given element is already present.

Here is the algorithm for finding an object  $\text{obj}$  in a hash table:

1. Compute the hash code and compress it. This gives an index  $h$  into the hash table.
2. Iterate through the elements of the bucket at position  $h$ . For each element of the bucket, check whether it is equal to  $\text{obj}$ .
3. If a match is found among the elements of that bucket, then  $\text{obj}$  is in the set. Otherwise, it is not.

If there are no or only a few collisions, then adding, locating, and removing hash table elements takes constant or  $O(1)$  time.

How efficient is this operation? It depends on the hash code computation. In the best case, in which there are no collisions, all buckets either are empty or have a single element.

But in practice, some collisions will occur. We need to make some assumptions that are reasonable in practice.

First, we assume that the hash code does a good job scattering the elements into different buckets. In practice, the hash functions described in Special Topic 15.1 work well.

Next, we assume that the table is large enough. This is measured by the *load factor*  $F = n / L$ , where  $n$  is the number of elements and  $L$  the table length. For example, if the table is an array of length 1,000, and it has 700 elements, then the load factor is 0.7.

If the load factor gets too large, the elements should be moved into a larger table. The hash table in the standard Java library reallocates the table when the load factor exceeds 0.75.

Under these assumptions, each bucket can be expected to have, on average,  $F$  elements.

Finally, we assume that the hash code, its compression, and the `equals` method can be computed in bounded time, independent of the size of the set.

Now let us compute the cost of finding an element. Computing the array index takes constant time, due to our last assumption. Now we traverse a chain of buckets, which on average has a bounded length  $F$ . Finally, we invoke the `equals` method on each bucket element, which we also assume to be  $O(1)$ . The entire operation takes constant or  $O(1)$  time.

### 16.4.4 Adding and Removing Elements

Adding an element is an extension of the algorithm for finding an object. First compute the hash code to locate the bucket in which the element should be inserted:

1. Compute the compressed hash code  $h$ .
2. Iterate through the elements of the bucket at position  $h$ . For each element of the bucket, check whether it is equal to  $\text{obj}$  (using the `equals` method of the element type).
3. If a match is found among the elements of that bucket, then exit.
4. Otherwise, add a node containing  $\text{obj}$  to the beginning of the node sequence.
5. If the load factor exceeds a fixed threshold, reallocate the table.

As described in the preceding section, the first three steps are  $O(1)$ . Inserting at the beginning of a node sequence is also  $O(1)$ . As with array lists, we can choose the new table to be twice the size of the old table, and amortize the cost of reallocation over the preceding insertions. That is, adding an element to a hash table is  $O(1)+$ .

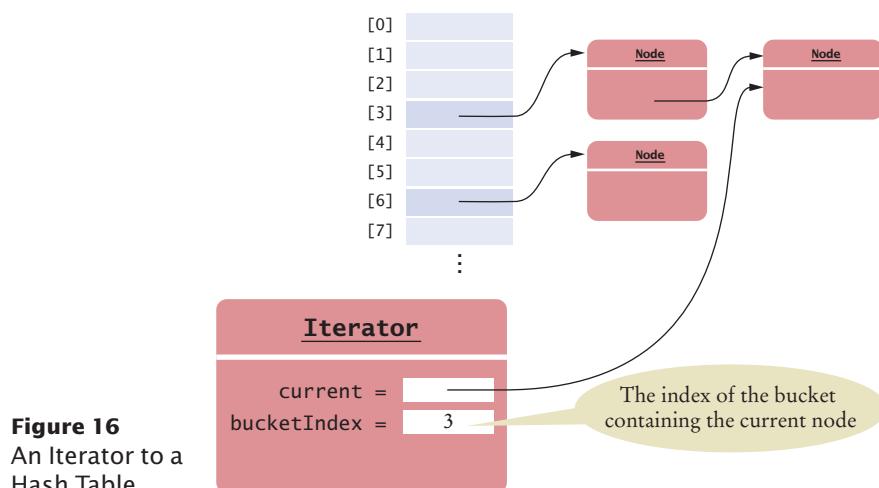
Removing an element is equally simple. First compute the hash code to locate the bucket in which the element should be inserted. Try finding the object in that bucket. If it is present, remove it. Otherwise, do nothing. Again, this is a constant time operation. If we shrink a table that becomes too sparse, the cost is  $O(1)+$ .

### 16.4.5 Iterating over a Hash Table

An iterator for a linked list points to the current node in a list. A hash table has multiple node chains. When we are at the end of one chain, we need to move to the start of the next one. Therefore, the iterator also needs to store the bucket number (see Figure 16).

When the iterator points into the middle of a node chain, then it is easy to advance it to the next element. However, when the iterator points to the last node in a chain, then we must skip past all empty buckets. When we find a non-empty bucket, we advance the iterator to its first node:

```
if (current != null && current.next != null)
{
    current = current.next; // Move to next element in bucket
}
else // Move to next bucket
{
    do
    {
        bucketIndex++;
        if (bucketIndex == buckets.length)
        {
            throw new NoSuchElementException();
        }
        current = buckets[bucketIndex];
    }
    while (current == null);
}
```



**Figure 16**  
An Iterator to a Hash Table

As you can see, the cost of iterating over all elements of a hash table is proportional to the table length. Note that the table length could be in excess of  $O(n)$  if the table is sparsely filled. This can be avoided if we shrink the table when the load factor gets too small. In that case, iterating over the entire table is  $O(n)$ , and each iteration step is  $O(1)$ .

Table 5 summarizes the efficiency of the operations on a hash table.

**Table 5 Hash Table Efficiency**

Operation	Hash Table
Find an element.	$O(1)$
Add/remove an element.	$O(1) +$
Iterate through all elements.	$O(n)$

Here is an implementation of a hash set. For simplicity, we do not reallocate the table when it grows or shrinks, and we do not support the `remove` operation on iterators. Exercises E16.18 and E16.19 ask you to provide these enhancements.

### section\_4/HashSet.java

```

1 import java.util.Iterator;
2 import java.util.NoSuchElementException;
3
4 /**
5  * This class implements a hash set using separate chaining.
6 */
7 public class HashSet
8 {
9     private Node[] buckets;
10    private int currentSize;
11
12    /**
13     * Constructs a hash table.
14     * @param bucketsLength the length of the buckets array
15     */
16    public HashSet(int bucketsLength)
17    {
18        buckets = new Node[bucketsLength];
19        currentSize = 0;
20    }
21
22    /**
23     * Tests for set membership.
24     * @param x an object
25     * @return true if x is an element of this set
26     */
27    public boolean contains(Object x)
28    {
29        int h = x.hashCode();
30        if (h < 0) { h = -h; }
31        h = h % buckets.length;
32    }

```

```

33     Node current = buckets[h];
34     while (current != null)
35     {
36         if (current.data.equals(x)) { return true; }
37         current = current.next;
38     }
39     return false;
40 }
41
42 /**
43     Adds an element to this set.
44     @param x an object
45     @return true if x is a new object, false if x was
46             already in the set
47 */
48 public boolean add(Object x)
49 {
50     int h = x.hashCode();
51     if (h < 0) { h = -h; }
52     h = h % buckets.length;
53
54     Node current = buckets[h];
55     while (current != null)
56     {
57         if (current.data.equals(x)) { return false; }
58         // Already in the set
59         current = current.next;
60     }
61     Node newNode = new Node();
62     newNode.data = x;
63     newNode.next = buckets[h];
64     buckets[h] = newNode;
65     currentSize++;
66     return true;
67 }
68
69 /**
70     Removes an object from this set.
71     @param x an object
72     @return true if x was removed from this set, false
73             if x was not an element of this set
74 */
75 public boolean remove(Object x)
76 {
77     int h = x.hashCode();
78     if (h < 0) { h = -h; }
79     h = h % buckets.length;
80
81     Node current = buckets[h];
82     Node previous = null;
83     while (current != null)
84     {
85         if (current.data.equals(x))
86         {
87             if (previous == null) { buckets[h] = current.next; }
88             else { previous.next = current.next; }
89             currentSize--;
90             return true;
91         }
92         previous = current;
}

```

```
93         current = current.next;
94     }
95     return false;
96 }
97
98 /**
99  * Returns an iterator that traverses the elements of this set.
100 * @return a hash set iterator
101 */
102 public Iterator iterator()
103 {
104     return new HashSetIterator();
105 }
106
107 /**
108  * Gets the number of elements in this set.
109 * @return the number of elements
110 */
111 public int size()
112 {
113     return currentSize;
114 }
115
116 class Node
117 {
118     public Object data;
119     public Node next;
120 }
121
122 class HashSetIterator implements Iterator
123 {
124     private int bucketIndex;
125     private Node current;
126
127 /**
128  * Constructs a hash set iterator that points to the
129  * first element of the hash set.
130 */
131 public HashSetIterator()
132 {
133     current = null;
134     bucketIndex = -1;
135 }
136
137 public boolean hasNext()
138 {
139     if (current != null && current.next != null) { return true; }
140     for (int b = bucketIndex + 1; b < buckets.length; b++)
141     {
142         if (buckets[b] != null) { return true; }
143     }
144     return false;
145 }
146
147 public Object next()
148 {
149     if (current != null && current.next != null)
150     {
151         current = current.next; // Move to next element in bucket
152     }
153 }
```

```

153     else // Move to next bucket
154     {
155         do
156         {
157             bucketIndex++;
158             if (bucketIndex == buckets.length)
159             {
160                 throw new NoSuchElementException();
161             }
162             current = buckets[bucketIndex];
163             }
164             while (current == null);
165         }
166         return current.data;
167     }
168
169     public void remove()
170     {
171         throw new UnsupportedOperationException();
172     }
173 }
174 }
```

**section\_4/HashSetDemo.java**

```

1 import java.util.Iterator;
2
3 /**
4  * This program demonstrates the hash set class.
5 */
6 public class HashSetDemo
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10        HashSet names = new HashSet(101);
11
12        names.add("Harry");
13        names.add("Sue");
14        names.add("Nina");
15        names.add("Susannah");
16        names.add("Larry");
17        names.add("Eve");
18        names.add("Sarah");
19        names.add("Adam");
20        names.add("Tony");
21        names.add("Katherine");
22        names.add("Juliet");
23        names.add("Romeo");
24        names.remove("Romeo");
25        names.remove("George");
26
27        Iterator iter = names.iterator();
28        while (iter.hasNext())
29        {
30            System.out.println(iter.next());
31        }
32    }
33 }
```

### Program Run

```
Harry
Sue
Nina
Susannah
Larry
Eve
Sarah
Adam
Juliet
Katherine
Tony
```

#### SELF CHECK



19. If a hash function returns 0 for all values, will the hash table work correctly?
20. If a hash table has size 1, will it work correctly?
21. Suppose you have two hash tables, each with  $n$  elements. To find the elements that are in both tables, you iterate over the first table, and for each element, check whether it is contained in the second table. What is the big-Oh efficiency of this algorithm?
22. In which order does the iterator visit the elements of the hash table?
23. What does the `hasNext` method of the `HashSetIterator` do when it has reached the end of a bucket?
24. Why doesn't the iterator have an `add` method?

#### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E16.18, E16.20, E16.21.

#### Special Topic 16.2



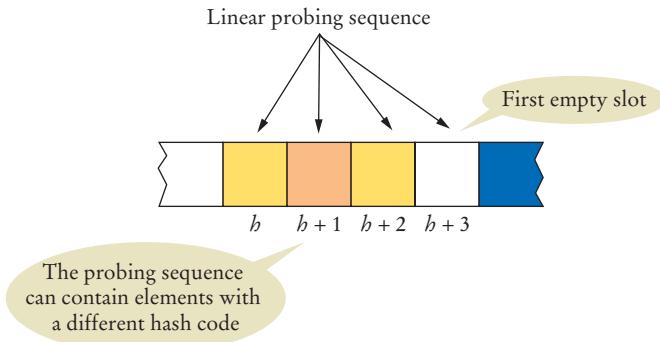
### Open Addressing

In the preceding sections, you studied a hash table implementation that uses separate chaining for collision handling, placing all elements with the same hash code in a bucket. This implementation is fast and easy to understand, but it requires storage for the links to the nodes. If one places the elements directly into the hash table, then one doesn't need to store any links. This alternative technique is called *open addressing*. It can be beneficial if one must minimize the memory usage of a hash table.

Of course, open addressing makes collision handling more complicated. If you have two elements with (compressed) hash code  $b$ , and the first one is placed at index  $b$ , then the second must be placed in another location.

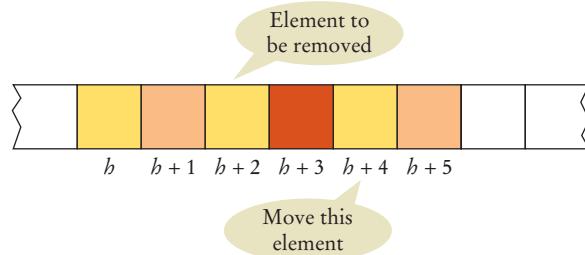
There are different techniques for placing colliding elements. The simplest is *linear probing*. If possible, place the colliding element at index  $b + 1$ . If that slot is occupied, try  $b + 2, b + 3$ , and so on, wrapping around to 0, 1, 2, and so on, if necessary. This sequence of index values is called the *probing sequence*. (You can see other probing sequences in Exercises P16.15 and P16.16.) If the probing sequence contains no empty slots, one must reallocate to a larger table.

How do we find an element in such a hash table? We compute the hash code and traverse the probing sequence until we either find a match or an empty slot. As long as the hash table is not too full, this is still an  $O(1)$  operation, but it may require more comparisons than with separate chaining. With separate chaining, we only compare objects with the same hash code. With open addressing, there may be some objects with different hash codes that happen to lie on the probing sequence.



Adding an element is similar. Try finding the element first. If it is not present, add it in the first empty slot in the probing sequence.

Removing an element is trickier. You cannot simply empty the slot at which you find the element. Instead, you must traverse the probing sequence, look for the last element with the same hash code, and move that element into the slot of the removed element (Exercise P16.14).



Alternatively, you can replace the removed element with a special “inactive” marker that, unlike an empty slot, does not indicate the end of a probing sequence. When adding another element, you can overwrite an inactive slot (Exercise P16.17).

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### Describe the implementation and efficiency of linked list operations.



- A linked list object holds a reference to the first node, and each node holds a reference to the next node.
- When adding or removing the first element, the reference to the first node must be updated.
- A list iterator object has a reference to the last visited node.
- To advance an iterator, update the position and remember the old position for the `remove` method.
- In a doubly-linked list, accessing an element is an  $O(n)$  operation; adding and removing an element is  $O(1)$ .

**Understand the implementation and efficiency of array list operations.**

- Getting or setting an array list element is an  $O(1)$  operation.
- Inserting or removing an array list element is an  $O(n)$  operation.
- Adding or removing the last element in an array list takes amortized  $O(1)$  time.

**Compare different implementations of stacks and queues.**

- A stack can be implemented as a linked list, adding and removing elements at the front.
- When implementing a stack as an array list, add and remove elements at the back.
- A queue can be implemented as a linked list, adding elements at the back and removing them at the front.
- In a circular array implementation of a queue, element locations wrap from the end of the array to the beginning.

**Understand the implementation of hash tables and the efficiencies of its operations.**

- A good hash function minimizes *collisions*—identical hash codes for different objects.
- A hash table uses the hash code to determine where to store each element.
- A hash table can be implemented as an array of *buckets*—sequences of nodes that hold elements with the same hash code.
- If there are no or only a few collisions, then adding, locating, and removing hash table elements takes constant or  $O(1)$  time.

**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

- **R16.1** The linked list class in the Java library supports operations `addLast` and `removeLast`. To carry out these operations efficiently, the `LinkedList` class has an added reference `last` to the last node in the linked list. Draw a “before/after” diagram of the changes to the links in a linked list when the `addLast` method is executed.
- **R16.2** The linked list class in the Java library supports bidirectional iterators. To go backward efficiently, each `Node` has an added reference, `previous`, to the predecessor node in the linked list. Draw a “before/after” diagram of the changes to the links in a linked list when the `addFirst` and `removeFirst` methods execute. The diagram should show how the `previous` references need to be updated.
- **R16.3** What is the big-Oh efficiency of replacing all negative values in a linked list of `Integer` objects with zeroes? Of removing all negative values?
- **R16.4** What is the big-Oh efficiency of replacing all negative values in an array list of `Integer` objects with zeroes? Of removing all negative values?

- R16.5** In the `LinkedList` implementation of Section 16.1, we use a flag `isAfterNext` to ensure that calls to the `remove` and `set` methods occur only when they are allowed.

It is not actually necessary to introduce a new instance variable for this check.

Instead, one can set the previous instance variable to a special value at the end of every call to `add` or `remove`. With that change, how should the `remove` and `set` methods check whether they are allowed?

- R16.6** What is the big-Oh efficiency of the `size` method of Exercise E16.4?
- R16.7** Show that the introduction of the `size` method in Exercise E16.6 does not affect the big-Oh efficiency of the other list operations.
- R16.8** Given the `size` method of Exercise E16.6 and the `get` method of Exercise P16.1, what is the big-Oh efficiency of this loop?

```
for (int i = 0; i < myList.size(); i++) { System.out.println(myList.get(i)); }
```

- R16.9** Given the `size` method of Exercise E16.6 and the `get` method of Exercise P16.3, what is the big-Oh efficiency of this loop?

```
for (int i = 0; i < myList.size(); i++) { System.out.println(myList.get(i)); }
```

- R16.10** It is not safe to remove the first element of a linked list with the `removeFirst` method when an iterator has just traversed the first element. Explain the problem by tracing the code and drawing a diagram.

- R16.11** Continue Exercise R16.10 by providing a code example that demonstrates the problem.

- R16.12** It is not safe to simultaneously modify a linked list using two iterators. Find a situation where two iterators refer to the same linked list, and when you add an element with one iterator and remove an element with the other, the result is incorrect. Explain the problem by tracing the code and drawing a diagram.

- R16.13** Continue Exercise R16.12 by providing a code example that demonstrates the problem.

- R16.14** In the implementation of the `LinkedList` class of the standard Java library, the problem described in Exercises R16.10 and R16.12 results in a `ConcurrentModificationException`. Describe how the `LinkedList` class and the iterator classes can discover that a list was modified through multiple sources. *Hint:* Count mutating operations. Where are the counts stored? Where are they updated? Where are they checked?

- R16.15** Consider the efficiency of locating the  $k$ th element in a doubly-linked list of length  $n$ . If  $k > n / 2$ , it is more efficient to start at the end of the list and move the iterator to the previous element. Why doesn't this increase in efficiency improve the big-Oh estimate of element access in a doubly-linked list?

- R16.16** A linked list implementor, hoping to improve the speed of accessing elements, provides an array of `Node` references, pointing to every tenth node. Then the operation `get(n)` looks up the reference at position  $n - n \% 10$  and follows  $n \% 10$  links.

- a.** With this implementation, what is the efficiency of the `get` operation?
- b.** What is the disadvantage of this implementation?

- R16.17** Suppose an array list implementation were to add ten elements at each reallocation instead of doubling the capacity. Show that the `addLast` operation no longer has amortized constant time.

- R16.18 Consider an array list implementation with a `removeLast` method that shrinks the internal array to half of its size when it is at most half full. Give a sequence of `addLast` and `removeLast` calls that does not have amortized  $O(1)$  efficiency.
- R16.19 Suppose the `ArrayList` implementation of Section 16.2 had a `removeLast` method that shrinks the internal array by 50 percent when it is less than 25 percent full. Show that any sequence of `addLast` and `removeLast` calls has amortized  $O(1)$  efficiency.
- R16.20 Given a queue with  $O(1)$  methods `add`, `remove`, and `size`, what is the big-Oh efficiency of moving the element at the head of the queue to the tail? Of moving the element at the tail of the queue to the head? (The order of the other queue elements should be unchanged.)
- R16.21 A deque (double-ended queue) is a data structure with operations `addFirst`, `removeFirst`, `addLast`, and `removeLast`. What is the  $O(1)$  efficiency of these operations if the deque is implemented as
  - a. a singly-linked list?
  - b. a doubly-linked list?
  - c. a circular array?
- R16.22 In our circular array implementation of a queue, can you compute the value of the `currentSize` from the values of the `head` and `tail` fields? Why or why not?
- R16.23 Draw the contents of a circular array implementation of a queue `q`, with an initial array size of 10, after each of the following loops:
  - a. `for (int i = 1; i <= 5; i++) { q.add(i); }`
  - b. `for (int i = 1; i <= 3; i++) { q.remove(); }`
  - c. `for (int i = 1; i <= 10; i++) { q.add(i); }`
  - d. `for (int i = 1; i <= 8; i++) { q.remove(); }`
- R16.24 Suppose you are stranded on a desert island on which stacks are plentiful, but you need a queue. How can you implement a queue using two stacks? What is the big-Oh running time of the queue operations?
- R16.25 Suppose you are stranded on a desert island on which queues are plentiful, but you need a stack. How can you implement a stack using two queues? What is the big-Oh running time of the stack operations?
- R16.26 Craig Coder doesn't like the fact that he has to implement a hash function for the objects that he wants to collect in a hash table. "Why not assign a unique ID to each object?" he asks. What is wrong with his idea?



## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- E16.1 Add a method `reverse` to our implementation of the `LinkedList` class that reverses the links in a list. Implement this method by directly rerouting the links, not by using an iterator.
- E16.2 Consider a version of the `LinkedList` class of Section 16.1 in which the `addFirst` method has been replaced with the following faulty version:

```

public void addFirst(Object element)
{
    Node newNode = new Node();
    first = newNode;
    newNode.data = element;
    newNode.next = first;
}

```

Develop a program `ListTest` with a test case that shows the error. That is, the program should print a failure message with this implementation but not with the correct implementation.

- ■ **E16.3** Consider a version of the `LinkedList` class of Section 16.1 in which the iterator's `hasNext` method has been replaced with the following faulty version:

```

public boolean hasNext()
{
    return position != null;
}

```

Develop a program `ListTest` with a test case that shows the error. That is, the program should print a failure message with this implementation but not with the correct implementation.

- **E16.4** Add a method `size` to our implementation of the `LinkedList` class that computes the number of elements in the list by following links and counting the elements until the end of the list is reached.

- ■ **E16.5** Solve Exercise E16.4 recursively by calling a recursive helper method

```
private static int size(Node start)
```

*Hint:* If `start` is `null`, then the size is 0. Otherwise, it is one larger than the size of `start.next`.

- **E16.6** Add an instance variable `currentSize` to our implementation of the `LinkedList` class. Modify the `add`, `addLast`, and `remove` methods of both the linked list and the list iterator to update the `currentSize` variable so that it always contains the correct size. Change the `size` method of Exercise E16.4 so that it simply returns the value of this instance variable.

- ■ ■ **E16.7** Reimplement the `LinkedList` class of Section 16.1 so that the `Node` and `LinkedListIterator` classes are not inner classes.

- ■ ■ **E16.8** Reimplement the `LinkedList` class of Section 16.1 so that it implements the `java.util.LinkedList` interface. *Hint:* Extend the `java.util.AbstractList` class.

- ■ ■ **E16.9** Provide a `listIterator` method for the `ArrayList` implementation in Section 16.2. Your method should return an object of a class implementing `java.util.ListIterator`. Also have the `ArrayList` class implement the `Iterable` interface type and provide a test program that demonstrates that your array list can be used in an enhanced `for` loop.

- **E16.10** Provide a `removeLast` method for the `ArrayList` implementation in Section 16.2 that shrinks the internal array by 50 percent when it is less than 25 percent full.

- **E16.11** Complete the implementation of a stack in Section 16.3.2, using an array for storing the elements.

- **E16.12** Complete the implementation of a queue in Section 16.3.3, using a sequence of nodes for storing the elements.

- **E16.13** Add a method `firstToLast` to the implementation of a queue in Exercise E16.12. The method moves the element at the head of the queue to the tail of the queue. The element that was second in line will now be at the head.
- **E16.14** Add a method `lastToFirst` to the implementation of a queue in Exercise E16.12. The method moves the element at the tail of the queue to the head.
- **E16.15** Add a method `firstToLast`, as described in Exercise E16.13, to the circular array implementation of a queue.
- **E16.16** Add a method `lastToFirst`, as described in Exercise E16.14, to the circular array implementation of a queue.
- **E16.17** The `hasNext` method of the hash set implementation in Section 16.4 finds the location of the next element, but when `next` is called, the same search happens again. Improve the efficiency of these methods so that `next` (or a repeated call to `hasNext`) uses the position located by a preceding call to `hasNext`.
- **E16.18** Reallocate the buckets of the hash set implementation in Section 16.4 when the load factor is greater than 1.0 or less than 0.5, doubling or halving its size. Note that you need to recompute the hash values of all elements.
- **E16.19** Implement the `remove` operation for iterators on the hash set in Section 16.4.
- **E16.20** Implement the hash set in Section 16.4, using the “MAD (multiply-add-divide) method” for hash code compression. For that method, you choose a prime number  $p$  larger than the length  $L$  of the hash table and two values  $a$  and  $b$  between 1 and  $p - 1$ . Then reduce  $b$  to  $((a \cdot b + b) \% p) \% L$ .
- **E16.21** Add methods to count collisions to the hash set in Section 16.4 and the one in Exercise E16.20. Insert all words from a dictionary (which you can find in `/usr/share/dict/words` on a UNIX or Linux computer) into both hash set implementations. Does the MAD method reduce collisions? (Use a table size that equals the number of words in the file. Choose  $p$  to be the next prime greater than  $L$ ,  $a = 3$ , and  $b = 5$ .)

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- **P16.1** Add methods `Object get(int n)` and `void set(int n, Object newElement)` to the `LinkedList` class. Use a helper method that starts at `first` and follows  $n$  links:
 

```
private static Node getNode(int n)
```
- **P16.2** Solve Exercise P16.1 by using a recursive helper method
 

```
private static Node getNode(Node start, int distance)
```
- **P16.3** Improve the efficiency of the `get` and `set` methods of Exercise P16.1 by storing (or “caching”) the last known (node, index) pair. If  $n$  is larger than the last known index, start from the corresponding node instead of the front of the list. Be sure to discard the last known pair when it is no longer accurate. (This can happen when another method edits the list).
- **P16.4** Add a method `boolean contains(Object obj)` that checks whether our `LinkedList` implementation contains a given object. Implement this method by directly traversing the links, not by using an iterator.

Use the `equals` method to determine whether `obj` equals `node.data` for a given node.

- P16.5 Solve Exercise P16.4 recursively, by calling a recursive helper method

```
private static boolean contains(Node start, Object obj)
```

*Hint:* If `start` is `null`, then it can't contain the object. Otherwise, check `start.data` before recursively moving on to `start.next`.

- P16.6 A linked list class with an  $O(1)$  `addLast` method needs an efficient mechanism to get to the end of the list, for example by setting an instance variable to the last element. It is then possible to remove the reference to the first node if one makes the next reference of the last node point to the first node, so that all nodes form a cycle. Such an implementation is called a circular linked list. Turn the linked list implementation of Section 16.1 into a circular singly-linked list.

- P16.7 In a circular doubly-linked list, the previous reference of the first node points to the last node, and the next reference of the last node points to the first node. Change the doubly-linked list implementation of Worked Example 16.1 into a circular list. You should remove the `last` instance variable because you can reach the last element as `first.previous`.

- P16.8 Modify the insertion sort algorithm of Special Topic 14.2 to sort a linked list.

- P16.9 The LISP language, created in 1960, implements linked lists in a very elegant way. You will explore a Java analog in this set of exercises. Conceptually, the *tail* of a list—that is, the list with its head node removed—is also a list. The tail of that list is again a list, and so on, until you reach the empty list. Here is a Java interface for such a list:

```
public interface LispList
{
    boolean empty();
    Object head();
    LispList tail();
    ...
}
```

There are two kinds of lists, empty lists and nonempty lists:

```
public class EmptyList extends LispList { ... }
public class NonEmptyList extends LispList { ... }
```

These classes are quite trivial. The `EmptyList` class has no instance variables. Its `head` and `tail` methods simply throw an `UnsupportedOperationException`, and its `empty` method returns true. The `NonEmptyList` class has instance variables for the head and tail.

Here is one way of making a LISP list with three elements:

```
LispList list = new NonEmptyList("A", new NonEmptyList("B",
    new NonEmptyList("C", new EmptyList())));
```

This is a bit tedious, and it is a good idea to supply a convenience method `cons` that calls the constructor, as well as a static variable `NIL` that is an instance of an empty list. Then our list construction becomes

```
LispList list = LispList.NIL.cons("C").cons("B").cons("A");
```

Note that you need to build up the list starting from the (empty) tail.

To see the elegance of this approach, consider the implementation of a `toString` method that produces a string containing all list elements. The method must be implemented by both subclasses:

```

public class EmptyList
{
    ...
    public String toString() { return ""; }

public class NonEmptyList
{
    ...
    public String toString() { return head() + " " + tail().toString(); }
}

```

Note that no if statement is required. A list is either empty or nonempty, and the correct `toString` method is invoked due to polymorphism.

In this exercise, complete the `LispList` interface and the `EmptyList` and `NonEmptyList` classes. Write a test program that constructs a list and prints it.

- **P16.10** Add a method `length` to the `LispList` interface of Exercise P16.9 that returns the length of the list. Implement the method in the `EmptyList` and `NonEmptyList` classes.

**•• P16.11** Add a method

`LispList merge(LispList other)`

to the `LispList` interface of Exercise P16.9. Implement the method in the `EmptyList` and `NonEmptyList` classes. When merging two lists, alternate between the elements, then add the remainder of the longer list. For example, merging the lists with elements 1 2 3 4 and 5 6 yields 1 5 2 6 3 4.

**•• P16.12** Add a method

`boolean contains(Object obj)`

to the `LispList` interface of Exercise P16.9 that returns true if the list contains an element that equals `obj`.

**•• P16.13** A deque (double-ended queue) is a data structure with operations `addFirst`, `removeFirst`, `addLast`, `removeLast`, and `size`. Implement a deque as a circular array, so that these operations have amortized constant time.

**••• P16.14** Implement a hash table with open addressing. When removing an element that is followed by other elements with the same hash code, replace it with the last such element.

**••• P16.15** Modify Exercise P16.14 to use *quadratic probing*. The  $i$ th index in the probing sequence is computed as  $(h + i^2) \% L$ .

**••• P16.16** Modify Exercise P16.14 to use *double hashing*. The  $i$ th index in the probing sequence is computed as  $(h + i h_2(k)) \% L$ , where  $k$  is the original hash key before compression and  $h_2$  is a function mapping integers to non-zero values. A common choice is  $h_2(k) = 1 + k \% q$  for a prime  $q$  less than  $L$ .

**••• P16.17** Modify Exercise P16.14 so that you mark removed elements with an “inactive” element. You can’t use `null`—that is already used for empty elements. Instead, declare a static variable

```
private static final Object INACTIVE = new Object();
```

Use the test `if (table[i] == INACTIVE)` to check whether a table entry is inactive.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

- When the list is empty, `first` is `null`. A new `Node` is allocated. Its data instance variable is set to the element that is being added. Its `next` instance variable is set to `null` because `first` is `null`. The `first` instance variable is set to the new node. The result is a linked list of length 1.
- It refers to the element to the left. You can see that by tracing out the first call to `next`. It leaves `position` to refer to the first node.
- If `position` is `null`, we must be at the head of the list, and inserting an element requires updating the `first` reference. If we are in the middle of the list, the `first` reference should not be changed.
- If an element is added after the last one, then the `last` reference must be updated to point to the new element. After

```
position.next = newNode;
add
```

```
if (position == last) { last = newNode; }
```

- `public void addLast(Object element)`

```
{
    if (first == null) { addFirst(element); }
    else
    {
        Node last = first;
        while (last.next != null)
        {
            last = last.next;
        }
        last.next = new Node();
        last.next.data = element;
    }
}
```

- $O(1)$  and  $O(n)$ .

- To locate the middle element takes  $n / 2$  steps. To locate the middle of the subinterval to the left or right takes another  $n / 4$  steps. The next lookup takes  $n / 8$  steps. Thus, we expect almost  $n$  steps to locate an element. At this point, you are better off just making a linear search that, on average, takes  $n / 2$  steps.

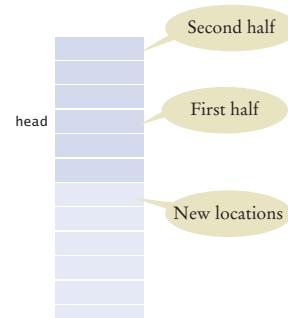
- In a linked list, one must follow  $k$  links to get to the  $k$ th elements. In an array list, one can reach the  $k$ th element directly as `elements[k]`.

- In a linked list, one merely updates references to the first and second node—a constant cost

that is independent of the number of elements that follow. In an array list of size  $n$ , inserting an element at the beginning requires us to move all  $n$  elements.

- It is  $O(n)$  in both cases. In the case of the linked list, it costs  $O(n)$  steps to move an iterator to the middle.
- It is still  $O(n)$ . Reallocating the array is an  $O(n)$  operation, and moving the array elements also requires  $O(n)$  time.
- $O(1)+$ . The cost of moving one element is  $O(1)$ , but every so often one has to pay for a reallocation.
- `public Object peek()`

```
{
    if (first == null)
    {
        throw new NoSuchElementException();
    }
    return first.data;
}
```
- Removing an element from a singly-linked list is  $O(n)$ .
- Adding and removing an element at index 0 is  $O(n)$ .
- The queue can be empty when the head and tail are at a position other than zero. For example, after the calls `q.add(obj)` and `q.remove()`, the queue is empty, but `head` and `tail` are 1.
- Indeed, if the queue is empty, then the head and tail are equal. But that situation also occurs when the array is completely full.
- Then the circular wrapping wouldn't work. If we simply added new elements without reordering the existing ones, the new array layout would be



- 19. Yes, the hash set will work correctly. All elements will be inserted into a single bucket.
- 20. Yes, but there will be a single bucket containing all elements. Finding, adding, and removing elements is  $O(n)$ .
- 21. The iteration takes  $O(n)$  steps. Each step makes an  $O(1)$  containment check. Therefore, the total cost is  $O(n)$ .
- 22. Elements are visited by increasing (compressed) hash code. This ordering will appear random to users of the hash table.
- 23. It locates the next bucket in the bucket array and points to its first element.
- 24. In a set, it doesn't make sense to add an element at a specific position.



# TREE STRUCTURES

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To study trees and binary trees
- To understand how binary search trees can implement sets
- To learn how red-black trees provide performance guarantees for set operations
- To choose appropriate methods for tree traversal
- To become familiar with the heap data structure
- To use heaps for implementing priority queues and for sorting



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

<b>17.1 BASIC TREE CONCEPTS</b>	762	
<b>17.2 BINARY TREES</b>	766	
<i>Worked Example 17.1:</i> Building a Huffman Tree		
<b>17.3 BINARY SEARCH TREES</b>	771	
<b>17.4 TREE TRAVERSAL</b>	780	
<b>17.5 RED-BLACK TREES</b>	786	
<i>Worked Example 17.2:</i> Implementing a Red-Black Tree		
<b>17.6 HEAPS</b>	793	
<b>17.7 THE HEAPSORT ALGORITHM</b>	804	



In this chapter, we study data structures that organize elements hierarchically, creating arrangements that resemble trees. These data structures offer better performance for adding, removing, and finding elements than the linear structures you have seen so far. You will learn about commonly used tree-shaped structures and study their implementation and performance.

## 17.1 Basic Tree Concepts

A tree is composed of nodes, each of which can have child nodes.

In computer science, a **tree** is a hierarchical data structure composed of *nodes*. Each node has a sequence of *child nodes*, and one of the nodes is the *root node*.

Like a linked list, a tree is composed of nodes, but with a key difference. In a linked list, a node can have only one child node, so the data structure is a linear chain of nodes.

The root is the node with no parent. A leaf is a node with no children.

In a tree, a node can have more than one child. The resulting shape resembles an actual tree with branches. However, in computer science, it is customary to draw trees upside-down, with the root on top (see Figure 1).



A family tree shows the descendants of a common ancestor.

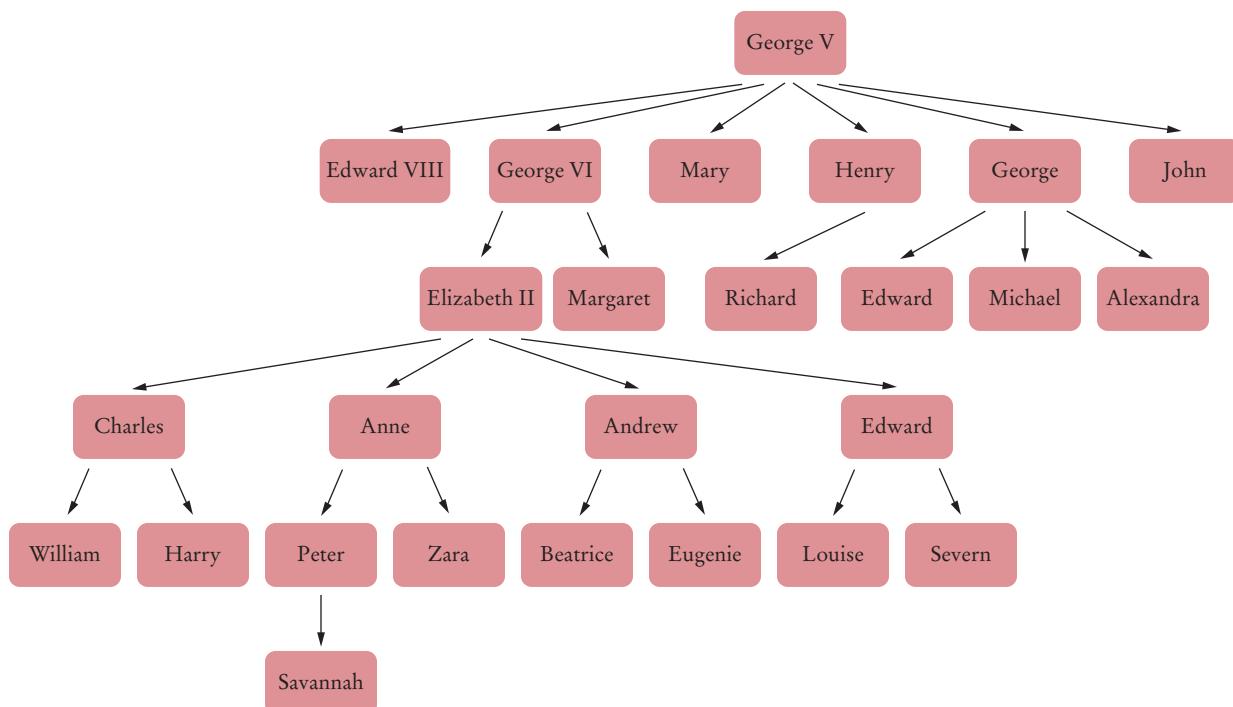
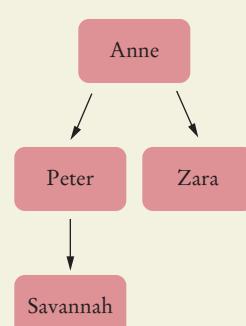
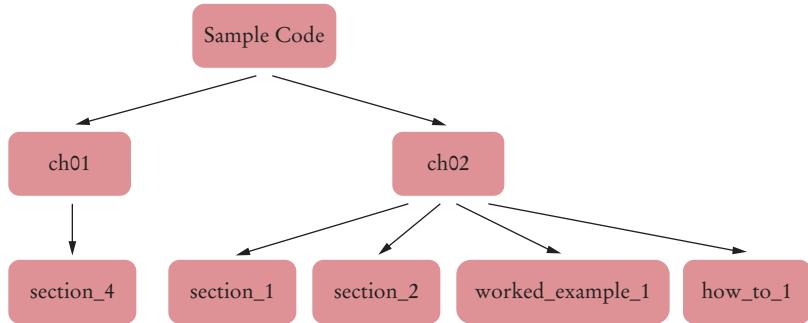


Figure 1 A Family Tree

Trees are commonly used to represent hierarchical relationships. When we talk about nodes in a tree, it is customary to use intuitive words such as roots and leaves, but also parents, children, and siblings—see Table 1 for commonly used terms.

**Table 1** Tree Terminology

Term	Definition	Example (using Figure 1)
Node	The building block of a tree: A tree is composed of linked nodes.	This tree has 26 nodes: George V, Edward VIII, ..., Savannah.
Child	Each node has, by definition, a sequence of links to other nodes called its child nodes.	The children of Elizabeth II are Charles, Anne, Andrew, and Edward.
Leaf	A node with no child nodes.	This tree has 16 leaves, including William, Harry, and Savannah.
Interior node	A node that is not a leaf.	George V or George VI, but not Mary.
Parent	If the node $c$ is a child of the node $p$ , then $p$ is a parent of $c$ .	Elizabeth II is the parent of Charles.
Sibling	If the node $p$ has children $c$ and $d$ , then these nodes are siblings.	Charles and Anne are siblings.
Root	The node with no parent. By definition, each tree has one root node.	George V.
Path	A sequence of nodes $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$ where $c_{i+1}$ is a child of $c_i$ .	Elizabeth II, Anne, Peter, Savannah is a path of length 4.
Descendant	$d$ is a descendant of $c$ if there is a path from $c$ to $d$ .	Peter is a descendant of Elizabeth II but not of Henry.
Ancestor	$c$ is an ancestor of $d$ if $d$ is a descendant of $c$ .	Elizabeth II is an ancestor of Peter, but Henry is not.
Subtree	The subtree rooted at node $n$ is the tree formed by taking $n$ as the root node and including all its descendants.	The subtree with root Anne is 
Height	The number of nodes in the longest path from the root to a leaf. (Some authors define the height to be the number of edges in the longest path, which is one less than the height used in this book.)	This tree has height 6. The longest path is George V, George VI, Elizabeth II, Anne, Peter, Savannah.

**Figure 2** A Directory Tree

A tree class uses a node class to represent nodes and has an instance variable for the root node.

Trees have many applications in computer science; see for example Figures 2 and 3. There are multiple ways of implementing a tree. Here we present an outline of a simple implementation that is further explored in Exercises P17.1 and P17.2. A node holds a data item and a list of references to the child nodes. A tree holds a reference to the root node.

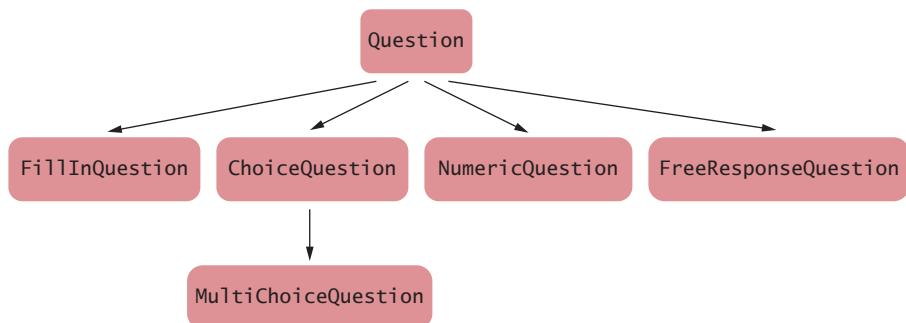
```

public class Tree
{
    private Node root;

    class Node
    {
        public Object data;
        public List<Node> children;
    }

    public Tree(Object rootData)
    {
        root = new Node();
        root.data = rootData;
        root.children = new ArrayList<Node>();
    }

    public void addSubtree(Tree subtree)
    {
        root.children.add(subtree.root);
    }
    .
}
  
```

**Figure 3** An Inheritance Tree



*When computing tree properties, it is common to recursively visit smaller and smaller subtrees.*

Many tree properties are computed with recursive methods.

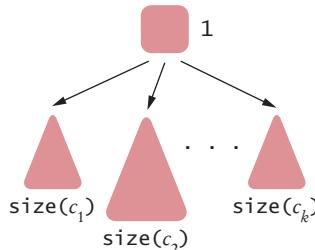
Note that, as with linked lists, the `Node` class is nested inside the `Tree` class. It is considered an implementation detail. Users of the class only work with `Tree` objects.

When computing properties of trees, it is often convenient to use recursion. For example, consider the task of computing the *tree size*, that is, the number of nodes in the tree. Compute the sizes of its subtrees, add them up, and add one for the root.

For example, in Figure 1, the tree with root node Elizabeth II has four subtrees, with node counts 3, 4, 3, and 3, yielding a count of  $1 + 3 + 4 + 3 + 3 = 14$  for that tree.

Formally, if  $r$  is the root node of a tree, then

$$\text{size}(r) = 1 + \text{size}(c_1) + \dots + \text{size}(c_k), \text{ where } c_1 \dots c_k \text{ are the children of } r$$



To implement this size method, first provide a recursive helper:

```
class Node
{
    ...
    public int size()
    {
        int sum = 0;
        for (Node child : children) { sum = sum + child.size(); }
        return 1 + sum;
    }
}
```

Then call this helper method from a method of the `Tree` class:

```
public class Tree
{
    ...
    public int size() { return root.size(); }
}
```

It is useful to allow an *empty tree*; a tree whose root node is `null`. This is analogous to an empty list—a list with no elements. Because we can't invoke the helper method on a `null` reference, we need to refine the `Tree` class's `size` method:

```
public int size()
{
    if (root == null) { return 0; }
    else { return root.size(); }
}
```

#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download the code for the `Tree` class and recursive size method.



#### SELF CHECK

1. What are the paths starting with Anne in the tree shown in Figure 1?
2. What are the roots of the subtrees consisting of 3 nodes in the tree shown in Figure 1?
3. What is the height of the subtree with root Anne?
4. What are all possible shapes of trees of height 3 with two leaves?

5. Describe a recursive algorithm for counting all leaves in a tree.
6. Using the public interface of the `Tree` class in this section, construct a tree that is identical to the subtree with root `Anne` in Figure 1.
7. Is the `size` method of the `Tree` class recursive? Why or why not?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R17.1, R17.2, E17.1.

## 17.2 Binary Trees

A binary tree consists of nodes, each of which has at most two child nodes.

In the following sections, we discuss **binary trees**, trees in which each node has at most two children. As you will see throughout this chapter, binary trees have many very important applications.



*In a binary tree, each node has a left and a right child node.*

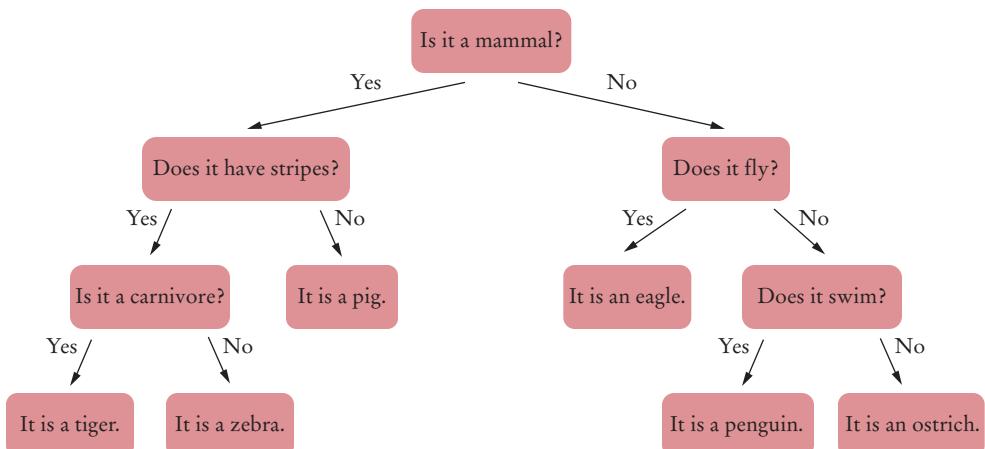
### 17.2.1 Binary Tree Examples



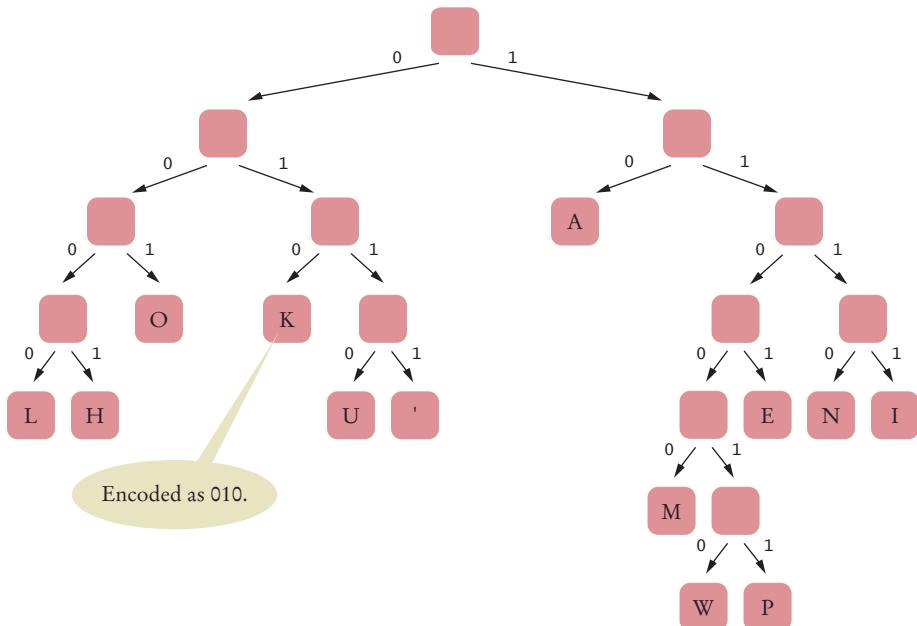
A decision tree contains questions used to decide among a number of options.

In this section, you will see several typical examples of binary trees. Figure 4 shows a *decision tree* for guessing an animal from one of several choices. Each non-leaf node contains a question. The left subtree corresponds to a “yes” answer, and the right subtree to a “no” answer.

This is a binary tree because every node has either two children (if it is a decision) or no children (if it is a conclusion). Exercises E17.4 and P17.7 show you how you can build decision trees that ask good questions for a particular data set.



**Figure 4** A Decision Tree for an Animal Guessing Game



**Figure 5** A Huffman Tree for Encoding the Thirteen Characters of Hawaiian Text

In a Huffman tree, the left and right turns on the paths to the leaves describe binary encodings.

An expression tree shows the order of evaluation in an arithmetic expression.

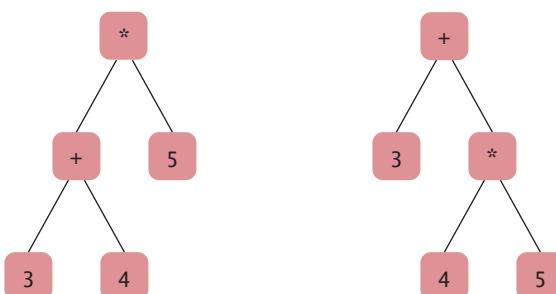
Another example of a binary tree is a *Huffman tree*. In a Huffman tree, the leaves contain symbols that we want to encode. To encode a particular symbol, walk along the path from the root to the leaf containing the symbol, and produce a zero for every left turn and a one for every right turn. For example, in the Huffman tree of Figure 5, an H is encoded as 0001 and an A as 10. Worked Example 17.1 shows how to build a Huffman tree that gives the shortest codes for the most frequent symbols.

Binary trees are also used to show the evaluation order in arithmetic expressions. For example, Figure 6 shows the trees for the expressions

$$(3 + 4) * 5$$

$$3 + 4 * 5$$

The leaves of the expression trees contain numbers, and the interior nodes contain the operators. Because each operator has two operands, the tree is binary.



**Figure 6** Expression Trees

## 17.2.2 Balanced Trees

In a balanced tree, all paths from the root to the leaves have approximately the same length.

When we use binary trees to store data, as we will in Section 17.3, we would like to have trees that are *balanced*. In a balanced tree, all paths from the root to one of the leaf nodes have approximately the same length. Figure 7 shows examples of a balanced and an unbalanced tree.

Recall that the height of a tree is the number of nodes in the longest path from the root to a leaf. The trees in Figure 7 have height 5. As you can see, for a given height, a balanced tree can hold more nodes than an unbalanced tree.

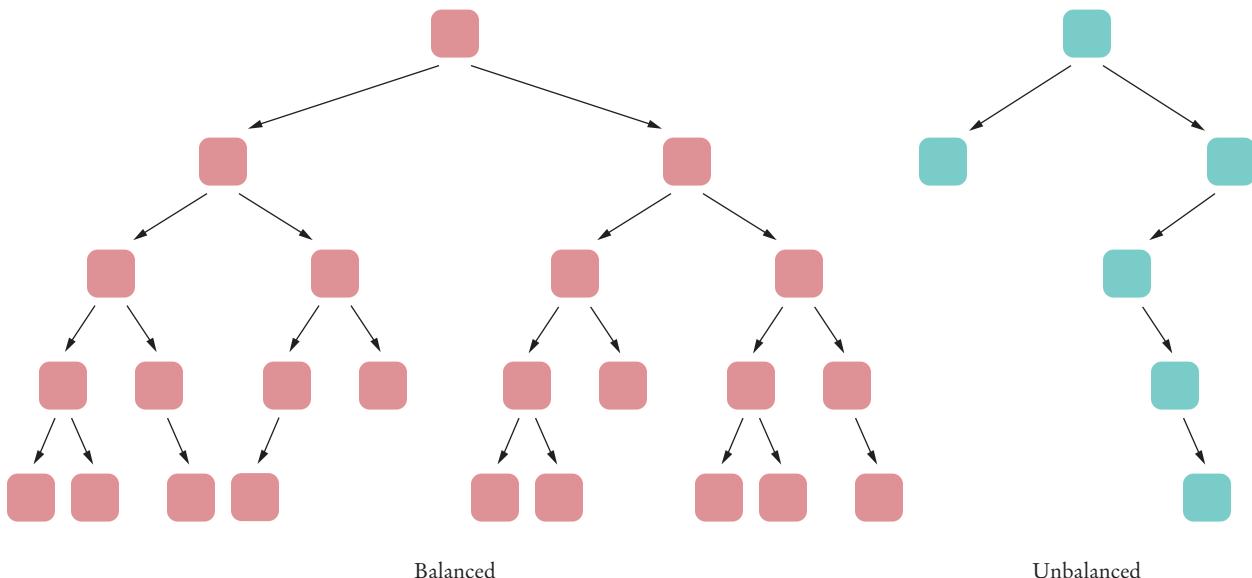
We care about the height of a tree because many tree operations proceed along a path from the root to a leaf, and their efficiency is better expressed by the height of the tree than the number of elements in the tree.

A binary tree of height  $h$  can have up to  $n = 2^h - 1$  nodes. For example, a completely filled binary tree of height 4 has  $1 + 2 + 4 + 8 = 15 = 2^4 - 1$  nodes (see Figure 8).

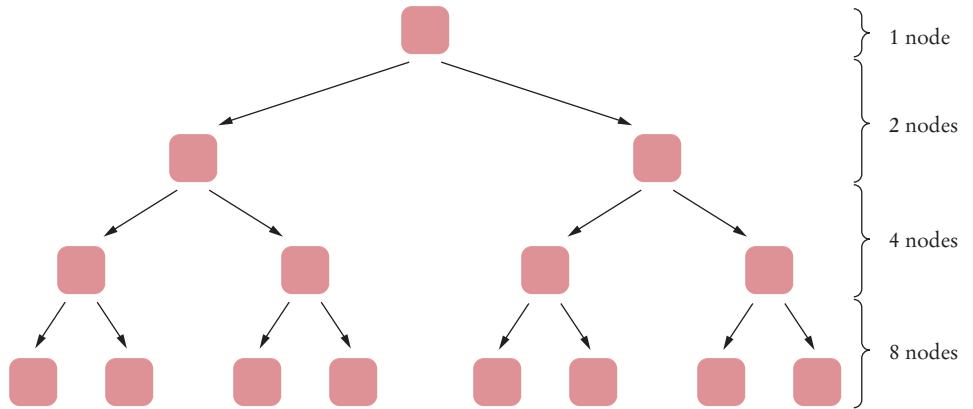
In other words,  $h = \log_2(n + 1)$  for a completely filled binary tree. For a balanced tree, we still have  $h \approx \log_2 n$ . For example, the height of a balanced binary tree with 1,000 nodes is approximately 10 (because  $1000 \approx 1024 = 2^{10}$ ). A balanced binary tree with 1,000,000 nodes has a height of approximately 20 (because  $10^6 \approx 2^{20}$ ). As you will see in Section 17.3, you can find any element in such a tree in about 20 steps. That is a lot faster than traversing the 1,000,000 elements of a list.



*In a balanced binary tree, each subtree has approximately the same number of nodes.*



**Figure 7** Balanced and Unbalanced Trees



**Figure 8** A Completely Filled Binary Tree of Height 4

### 17.2.3 A Binary Tree Implementation

Every node in a binary tree has references to two children, a left child and a right child. Either one may be `null`. A node in which both children are `null` is a leaf.

A binary tree can be implemented in Java as follows:

```

public class BinaryTree
{
    private Node root;

    public BinaryTree() { root = null; } // An empty tree

    public BinaryTree(Object rootData, BinaryTree left, BinaryTree right)
    {
        root = new Node();
        root.data = rootData;
        root.left = left.root;
        root.right = right.root;
    }

    class Node
    {
        public Object data;
        public Node left;
        public Node right;
    }

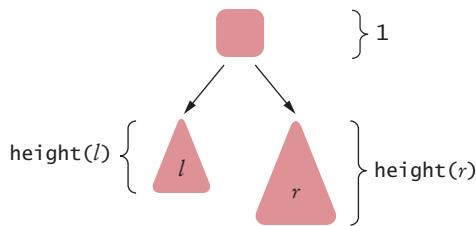
    . . .
}
  
```

As with general trees, we often use recursion to define operations on binary trees. Consider computing the height of a tree; that is, the number of nodes in the longest path from the root to a leaf.

To get the height of the tree  $t$ , take the larger of the heights of the children and add one, to account for the root.

$$\text{height}(t) = 1 + \max(\text{height}(l), \text{height}(r))$$

where  $l$  and  $r$  are the left and right subtrees.



When we implement this method, we could add a `height` method to the `Node` class. However, nodes can be `null` and you can't call a method on a `null` reference. It is easier to make the recursive helper method a static method of the `Tree` class, like this:

```
public class BinaryTree
{
    . .
    private static int height(Node n)
    {
        if (n == null) { return 0; }
        else { return 1 + Math.max(height(n.left), height(n.right)); }
    }
    . .
}
```

To get the height of the tree, we provide this public method:

```
public class BinaryTree
{
    . .
    public int height() { return height(root); }
}
```

Note that there are two `height` methods: a public method with no arguments, returning the height of the tree, and a private recursive helper method, returning the height of a subtree with a given node as its root.

### SELF CHECK



8. Encode ALOHA, using the Huffman code in Figure 5.
9. In an expression tree, where is the operator stored that gets executed *last*?
10. What is the expression tree for the expression  $3 - 4 - 5$ ?
11. How many leaves do the binary trees in Figure 4, Figure 5, and Figure 6 have? How many interior nodes?
12. Show how the recursive `height` helper method can be implemented as an instance method of the `Node` class. What is the disadvantage of that approach?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R17.4, E17.2, E17.3, E17.4.

### WORKED EXAMPLE 17.1

#### Building a Huffman Tree

Learn how to build a Huffman tree for compressing the color data of an image. Go to [www.wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://www.wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 17.1.



## 17.3 Binary Search Trees

A set implementation is allowed to rearrange its elements in any way it chooses so that it can find elements quickly. Suppose a set implementation *sorts* its entries. Then it can use **binary search** to locate elements quickly. Binary search takes  $O(\log(n))$  steps, where  $n$  is the size of the set. For example, binary search in an array of 1,000 elements is able to locate an element in at most 10 steps by cutting the size of the search interval in half in each step.

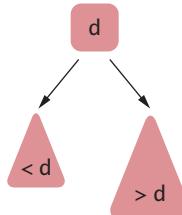
If we use an array to store the elements of a set, inserting or removing an element is an  $O(n)$  operation. In the following sections, you will see how tree-shaped data structures can keep elements in sorted order with more efficient insertion and removal.

### 17.3.1 The Binary Search Property

All nodes in a binary search tree fulfill the property that the descendants to the left have smaller data values than the node data value, and the descendants to the right have larger data values.

A **binary search tree** is a binary tree in which *all nodes* fulfill the following property:

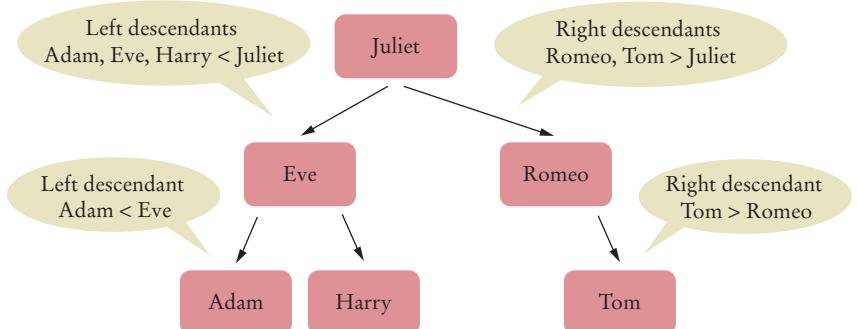
- The data values of *all* descendants to the left are less than the data value stored in the node, and *all* descendants to the right have greater data values.



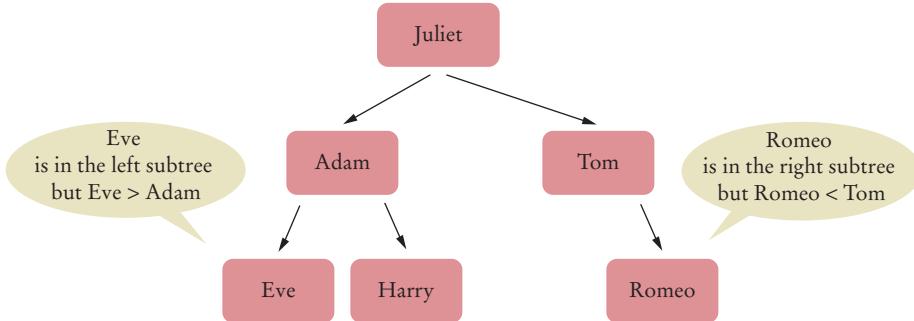
The tree in Figure 9 is a binary search tree.

We can verify the binary search property for each node in Figure 9. Consider the node “Juliet”. All descendants to the left have data before “Juliet”. All descendants on the right have data after “Juliet”. Move on to “Eve”. There is a single descendant to the left, with data “Adam” before “Eve”, and a single descendant to the right, with data “Harry” after “Eve”. Check the remaining nodes in the same way.

Figure 10 shows a binary tree that is not a binary search tree. Look carefully—the root node passes the test, but its two children do not.



**Figure 9** A Binary Search Tree

**Figure 10** A Binary Tree That Is Not a Binary Search Tree

When you implement binary search tree classes, the `data` variable should have type `Comparable`, not `Object`. After all, you must be able to compare the values in a binary search tree in order to place them into the correct position.

```

public class BinarySearchTree
{
    private Node root;

    public BinarySearchTree() { . . . }
    public void add(Comparable obj) { . . . }
    . .
    class Node
    {
        public Comparable data;
        public Node left;
        public Node right;

        public void addNode(Node newNode) { . . . }
        . .
    }
}
    
```

### 17.3.2 Insertion

To insert a value into a binary search tree, keep comparing the value with the node `data` and follow the nodes to the left or right, until reaching a null node.

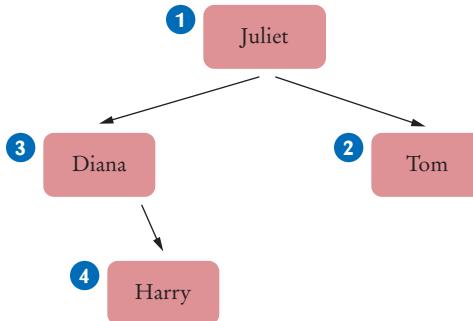
To insert data into the tree, use the following algorithm:

- If you encounter a non-null node reference, look at its data value. If the data value of that node is larger than the value you want to insert, continue the process with the left child. If the node's data value is smaller than the one you want to insert, continue the process with the right child. If the node's data value is the same as the one you want to insert, you are done, because a set does not store duplicate values.
- If you encounter a null node reference, replace it with the new node.

For example, consider the tree in Figure 11. It is the result of the following statements:

```

BinarySearchTree tree = new BinarySearchTree();
tree.add("Juliet"); ①
tree.add("Tom"); ②
tree.add("Diana"); ③
tree.add("Harry"); ④
    
```

**Figure 11** Binary Search Tree After Four Insertions

We want to insert a new element Romeo into it:

`tree.add("Romeo"); 5`

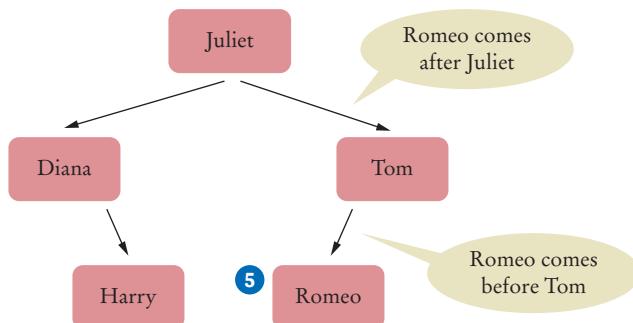
Start with the root node, Juliet. Romeo comes after Juliet, so you move to the right subtree. You encounter the node Tom. Romeo comes before Tom, so you move to the left subtree. But there is no left subtree. Hence, you insert a new Romeo node as the left child of Tom (see Figure 12).

You should convince yourself that the resulting tree is still a binary search tree. When Romeo is inserted, it must end up as a right descendant of Juliet—that is what the binary search tree condition means for the root node Juliet. The root node doesn't care where in the right subtree the new node ends up. Moving along to Tom, the right child of Juliet, all it cares about is that the new node Romeo ends up somewhere on its left. There is nothing to its left, so Romeo becomes the new left child, and the resulting tree is again a binary search tree.

Here is the code for the add method of the `BinarySearchTree` class:

```

public void add(Comparable obj)
{
    Node newNode = new Node();
    newNode.data = obj;
    newNode.left = null;
    newNode.right = null;
    if (root == null) { root = newNode; }
    else { root.addNode(newNode); }
}
  
```

**Figure 12** Binary Search Tree After Five Insertions

If the tree is empty, simply set its root to the new node. Otherwise, you know that the new node must be inserted somewhere within the nodes, and you can ask the root node to perform the insertion. That node object calls the `addNode` method of the `Node` class, which checks whether the new object is less than the object stored in the node. If so, the element is inserted in the left subtree; if not, it is inserted in the right subtree:

```
class Node
{
    .
    .
    public void addNode(Node newNode)
    {
        int comp = newNode.data.compareTo(data);
        if (comp < 0)
        {
            if (left == null) { left = newNode; }
            else { left.addNode(newNode); }
        }
        else if (comp > 0)
        {
            if (right == null) { right = newNode; }
            else { right.addNode(newNode); }
        }
    }
    .
}
```

Let's trace the calls to `addNode` when inserting Romeo into the tree in Figure 11. The first call to `addNode` is

```
root.addNode(newNode)
```

Because `root` points to Juliet, you compare Juliet with Romeo and find that you must call

```
root.right.addNode(newNode)
```

The node `root.right` is Tom. Compare the data values again (Tom vs. Romeo) and find that you must now move to the left. Since `root.right.left` is `null`, set `root.right.left` to `newNode`, and the insertion is complete (see Figure 12).

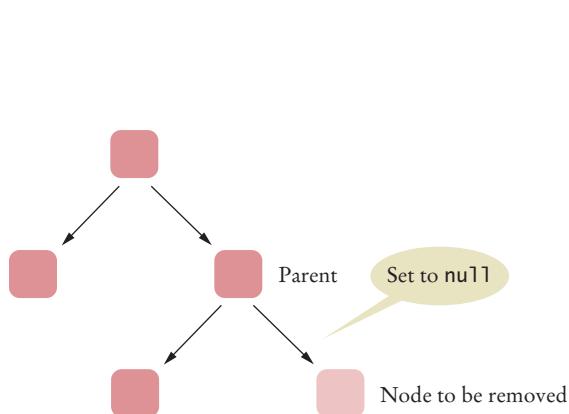
Unlike a linked list or an array, and like a hash table, a binary tree has no *insert positions*. You cannot select the position where you would like to insert an element into a binary search tree. The data structure is *self-organizing*; that is, each element finds its own place.

### 17.3.3 Removal

We will now discuss the removal algorithm. Our task is to remove a node from the tree. Of course, we must first *find* the node to be removed. That is a simple matter, due to the characteristic property of a binary search tree. Compare the data value to be removed with the data value that is stored in the root node. If it is smaller, keep looking in the left subtree. Otherwise, keep looking in the right subtree.

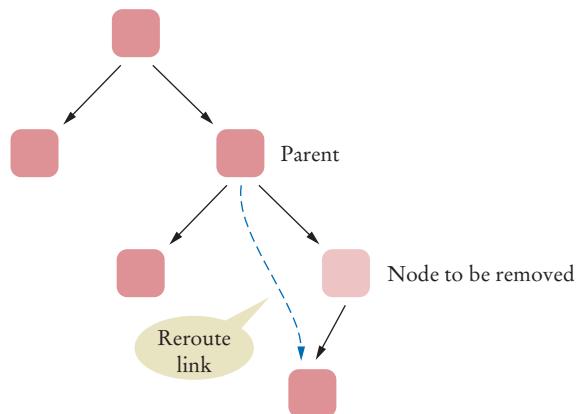
Let us now assume that we have located the node that needs to be removed. First, let us consider the easiest case. If the node to be removed has no children at all, then the parent link is simply set to `null` (Figure 13).

When the node to be removed has only one child, the situation is still simple (see Figure 14).

**Figure 13** Removing a Node with No Children

When removing a node with only one child from a binary search tree, the child replaces the node to be removed.

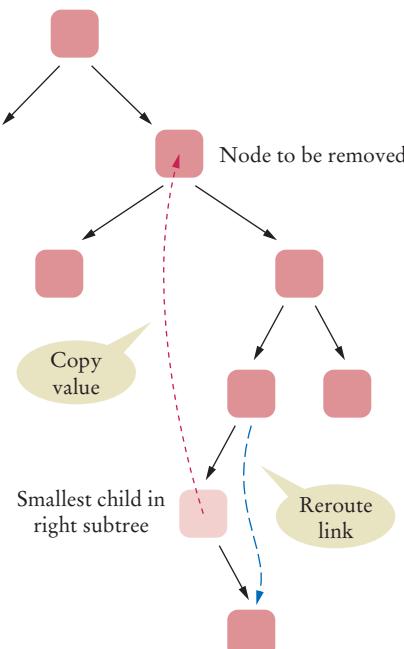
When removing a node with two children from a binary search tree, replace it with the smallest node of the right subtree.

**Figure 14** Removing a Node with One Child

To remove the node, simply modify the parent link that points to the node so that it points to the child instead.

The case in which the node to be removed has two children is more challenging. Rather than removing the node, it is easier to replace its data value with the next larger value in the tree. That replacement preserves the binary search tree property. (Alternatively, you could use the largest element of the left subtree—see Exercise P17.5).

To locate the next larger value, go to the right subtree and find its smallest data value. Keep following the left child links. Once you reach a node that has no left child, you have found the node containing the smallest data value of the subtree. Now remove that node—it is easily removed because it has at most one child to the right. Then store its data value in the original node that was slated for removal. Figure 15 shows the details.

**Figure 15** Removing a Node with Two Children

At the end of this section, you will find the source code for the `BinarySearchTree` class. It contains the `add` and `remove` methods that we just described, a `find` method that tests whether a value is present in a binary search tree, and a `print` method that we will analyze in Section 17.4.

### 17.3.4 Efficiency of the Operations

In a balanced tree, all paths from the root to the leaves have about the same length.

If a binary search tree is balanced, then adding, locating, or removing an element takes  $O(\log(n))$  time.

Now that you have seen the implementation of this data structure, you may well wonder whether it is any good. Like nodes in a list, the nodes are allocated one at a time. No existing elements need to be moved when a new element is inserted or removed; that is an advantage. How fast insertion and removal are, however, depends on the shape of the tree. These operations are fast if the tree is balanced.

Because the operations of finding, adding, and removing an element process the nodes along a path from the root to a leaf, their execution time is proportional to the height of the tree, and not to the total number of nodes in the tree.

For a balanced tree, we have  $h \approx O(\log(n))$ . Therefore, inserting, finding, or removing an element is an  $O(\log(n))$  operation. On the other hand, if the tree happens to be *unbalanced*, then binary tree operations can be slow—in the worst case, as slow as insertion into a linked list. Table 2 summarizes these observations.

If elements are added in fairly random order, the resulting tree is likely to be well balanced. However, if the incoming elements happen to be in sorted order already, then the resulting tree is completely unbalanced. Each new element is inserted at the end, and the entire tree must be traversed every time to find that end!

Binary search trees work well for random data, but if you suspect that the data in your application might be sorted or have long runs of sorted data, you should not use a binary search tree. There are more sophisticated tree structures whose methods keep trees balanced at all times. In these tree structures, one can guarantee that finding, adding, and removing elements takes  $O(\log(n))$  time. The standard Java library uses *red-black trees*, a special form of balanced binary trees, to implement sets and maps. We discuss these structures in Section 17.5.

**Table 2** Efficiency of Binary Search Tree Operations

Operation	Balanced Binary Search Tree	Unbalanced Binary Search Tree
Find an element.	$O(\log(n))$	$O(n)$
Add an element.	$O(\log(n))$	$O(n)$
Remove an element.	$O(\log(n))$	$O(n)$

#### section\_3/BinarySearchTree.java

```

1  /**
2   * This class implements a binary search tree whose
3   * nodes hold objects that implement the Comparable
4   * interface.
5  */

```

```

6  public class BinarySearchTree
7  {
8      private Node root;
9
10     /**
11      Constructs an empty tree.
12     */
13     public BinarySearchTree()
14     {
15         root = null;
16     }
17
18     /**
19      Inserts a new node into the tree.
20      @param obj the object to insert
21     */
22     public void add(Comparable obj)
23     {
24         Node newNode = new Node();
25         newNode.data = obj;
26         newNode.left = null;
27         newNode.right = null;
28         if (root == null) { root = newNode; }
29         else { root.addNode(newNode); }
30     }
31
32     /**
33      Tries to find an object in the tree.
34      @param obj the object to find
35      @return true if the object is contained in the tree
36     */
37     public boolean find(Comparable obj)
38     {
39         Node current = root;
40         while (current != null)
41         {
42             int d = current.data.compareTo(obj);
43             if (d == 0) { return true; }
44             else if (d > 0) { current = current.left; }
45             else { current = current.right; }
46         }
47         return false;
48     }
49
50     /**
51      Tries to remove an object from the tree. Does nothing
52      if the object is not contained in the tree.
53      @param obj the object to remove
54     */
55     public void remove(Comparable obj)
56     {
57         // Find node to be removed
58
59         Node toBeRemoved = root;
60         Node parent = null;
61         boolean found = false;
62         while (!found && toBeRemoved != null)
63         {
64             int d = toBeRemoved.data.compareTo(obj);
65             if (d == 0) { found = true; }

```

```

66     else
67     {
68         parent = toBeRemoved;
69         if (d > 0) { toBeRemoved = toBeRemoved.left; }
70         else { toBeRemoved = toBeRemoved.right; }
71     }
72 }
73
74 if (!found) { return; }
75
76 // toBeRemoved contains obj
77
78 // If one of the children is empty, use the other
79
80 if (toBeRemoved.left == null || toBeRemoved.right == null)
81 {
82     Node newChild;
83     if (toBeRemoved.left == null)
84     {
85         newChild = toBeRemoved.right;
86     }
87     else
88     {
89         newChild = toBeRemoved.left;
90     }
91
92 if (parent == null) // Found in root
93 {
94     root = newChild;
95 }
96 else if (parent.left == toBeRemoved)
97 {
98     parent.left = newChild;
99 }
100 else
101 {
102     parent.right = newChild;
103 }
104 return;
105 }
106
107 // Neither subtree is empty
108
109 // Find smallest element of the right subtree
110
111 Node smallestParent = toBeRemoved;
112 Node smallest = toBeRemoved.right;
113 while (smallest.left != null)
114 {
115     smallestParent = smallest;
116     smallest = smallest.left;
117 }
118
119 // smallest contains smallest child in right subtree
120
121 // Move contents, unlink child
122
123 toBeRemoved.data = smallest.data;
124 if (smallestParent == toBeRemoved)
125 {

```

```

126         smallestParent.right = smallest.right;
127     }
128     else
129     {
130         smallestParent.left = smallest.right;
131     }
132 }
133
134 /**
135  * Prints the contents of the tree in sorted order.
136 */
137 public void print()
138 {
139     print(root);
140     System.out.println();
141 }
142
143 /**
144  * Prints a node and all of its descendants in sorted order.
145  * @param parent the root of the subtree to print
146 */
147 private static void print(Node parent)
148 {
149     if (parent == null) { return; }
150     print(parent.left);
151     System.out.print(parent.data + " ");
152     print(parent.right);
153 }
154
155 /**
156  * A node of a tree stores a data item and references
157  * to the left and right child nodes.
158 */
159 class Node
160 {
161     public Comparable data;
162     public Node left;
163     public Node right;
164
165     /**
166      * Inserts a new node as a descendant of this node.
167      * @param newNode the node to insert
168     */
169     public void addNode(Node newNode)
170     {
171         int comp = newNode.data.compareTo(data);
172         if (comp < 0)
173         {
174             if (left == null) { left = newNode; }
175             else { left.addNode(newNode); }
176         }
177         else if (comp > 0)
178         {
179             if (right == null) { right = newNode; }
180             else { right.addNode(newNode); }
181         }
182     }
183 }
184 }
```



- 13.** What is the difference between a tree, a binary tree, and a balanced binary tree?
- 14.** Are the left and right children of a binary search tree always binary search trees? Why or why not?
- 15.** Draw all binary search trees containing data values A, B, and C.
- 16.** Give an example of a string that, when inserted into the tree of Figure 12, becomes a right child of Romeo.
- 17.** Trace the removal of the node “Tom” from the tree in Figure 12.
- 18.** Trace the removal of the node “Juliet” from the tree in Figure 12.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R17.7, R17.13, R17.15, E17.6.

## 17.4 Tree Traversal

We often want to visit all elements in a tree. There are many different orderings in which one can visit, or *traverse*, the tree elements. The following sections introduce the most common ones.

### 17.4.1 Inorder Traversal

Suppose you inserted a number of data values into a binary search tree. What can you do with them? It turns out to be surprisingly simple to print all elements in sorted order. You *know* that all data in the left subtree of any node must come before the root node and before all data in the right subtree. That is, the following algorithm will print the elements in sorted order:

**Print the left subtree.**

**Print the root data.**

**Print the right subtree.**

To visit all elements in a tree, visit the root and recursively visit the subtrees.

Let's try this out with the tree in Figure 12 on page 773. The algorithm tells us to

1. Print the left subtree of Juliet; that is, Diana and descendants.
2. Print Juliet.
3. Print the right subtree of Juliet; that is, Tom and descendants.

How do you print the subtree starting at Diana?

1. Print the left subtree of Diana. There is nothing to print.
2. Print Diana.
3. Print the right subtree of Diana, that is, Harry.

That is, the left subtree of Juliet is printed as

Diana Harry

The right subtree of Juliet is the subtree starting at Tom. How is it printed? Again, using the same algorithm:

1. Print the left subtree of Tom, that is, Romeo.
2. Print Tom.
3. Print the right subtree of Tom. There is nothing to print.

Thus, the right subtree of Juliet is printed as

Romeo Tom

Now put it all together: the left subtree, Juliet, and the right subtree:

Diana Harry Juliet Romeo Tom

The tree is printed in sorted order.

It is very easy to implement this print method. We start with a recursive helper method:

```
private static void print(Node parent)
{
    if (parent == null) { return; }
    print(parent.left);
    System.out.print(parent.data + " ");
    print(parent.right);
}
```

To print the entire tree, start this recursive printing process at the root:

```
public void print()
{
    print(root);
}
```

This visitation scheme is called *inorder traversal* (visit the left subtree, the root, the right subtree). There are two related traversal schemes, called *preorder traversal* and *postorder traversal*, which we discuss in the next section.

## 17.4.2 Preorder and Postorder Traversals

We distinguish between preorder, inorder, and postorder traversal.

In Section 17.4.1, we visited a binary tree in order: first the left subtree, then the root, then the right subtree. By modifying the visitation rules, we obtain other traversals.

In preorder traversal, we visit the root *before* visiting the subtrees, and in postorder traversal, we visit the root *after* the subtrees.

Preorder(n)

Visit n.

For each child c of n

    Preorder(c).

Postorder(n)

For each child c of n

    Postorder(c).

Visit n.



When visiting all nodes of a tree, one needs to choose a traversal order.

These two visitation schemes will not print a binary search tree in sorted order. However, they are important in other applications. Here is an example.

In Section 17.2, you saw trees for arithmetic expressions. Their leaves store numbers, and their interior nodes store operators. The expression trees describe the order in which the operators are applied.

Let's apply postorder traversal to the expression trees in Figure 6 on page 767. The first tree yields

3 4 + 5 \*

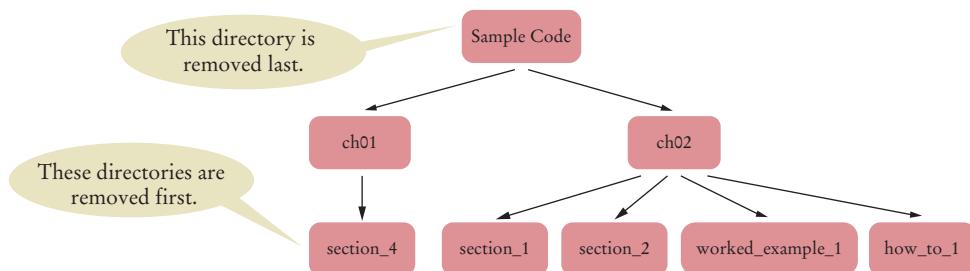
whereas the second tree yields

3 4 5 \* +

Postorder traversal of an expression tree yields the instructions for evaluating the expression on a stack-based calculator.

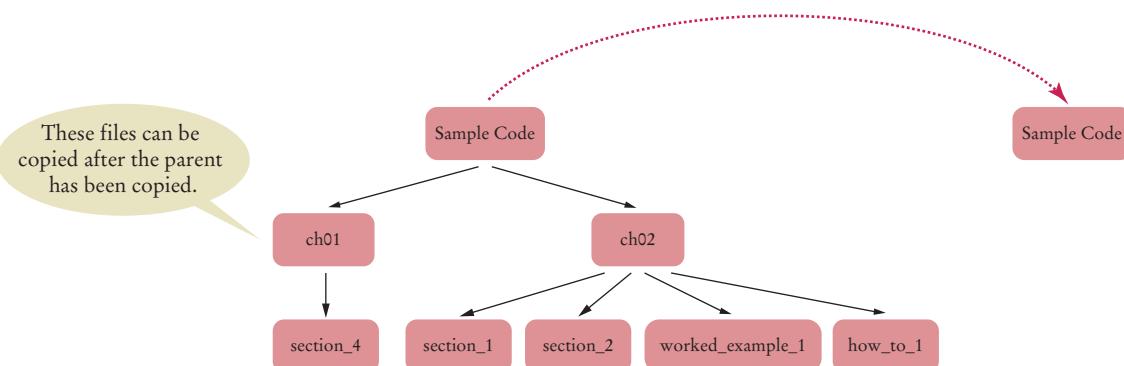
You can interpret the traversal result as an expression in “reverse Polish notation” (see Special Topic 15.2), or equivalently, instructions for a stack-based calculator (see Section 15.6.2).

Here is another example of the importance of traversal order. Consider a directory tree such as the following:



Consider the task of removing all directories from such a tree, with the restriction that you can only remove a directory when it contains no other directories. In this case, you use a postorder traversal.

Conversely, if you want to copy the directory tree, you start copying the root, because you need a target directory into which to place the children. This calls for preorder traversal.



Note that pre- and postorder traversal can be defined for *any* trees, not just binary trees (see the sample code for this section). However, inorder traversal makes sense only for binary trees.

### 17.4.3 The Visitor Pattern

In the preceding sections, we simply printed each tree node that we visited. Often, we want to process the nodes in some other way. To make visitation more generic, we define an interface type

```

public interface Visitor
{
    void visit(Object data);
}
  
```

The preorder method receives an object of some class that implements this interface type, and calls its visit method:

```
private static void preorder(Node n, Visitor v)
{
    if (n == null) { return; }
    v.visit(n.data);
    for (Node c : n.children) { preorder(c, v); }
}

public void preorder(Visitor v) { preorder(root, v); }
```

Methods for postorder and, for a binary tree, inorder traversals can be implemented in the same way.

Let's say we want to count short names (with at most five letters). The following visitor will do the job. We'll make it into an inner class of the method that uses it.

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    BinarySearchTree bst = . . .;

    class ShortNameCounter implements Visitor
    {
        public int counter = 0;
        public void visit(Object data)
        {
            if (data.toString().length() <= 5) { counter++; }
        }
    }

    ShortNameCounter v = new ShortNameCounter();
    bst.inorder(v);
    System.out.println("Short names: " + v.counter);
}
```

Here, the visitor object accumulates the count. After the visit is complete, we can obtain the result. Because the class is an inner class, we don't worry about making the counter private.

#### 17.4.4 Depth-First and Breadth-First Search

The traversals in the preceding sections are expressed using recursion. If you want to process the nodes of a tree, you supply a visitor, which is applied to all nodes. Sometimes, it is useful to use an iterative approach instead. Then you can stop processing nodes when a goal has been met.

To visit the nodes of a tree iteratively, we replace the recursive calls with a stack that keeps track of the children that need to be visited. Here is the algorithm:

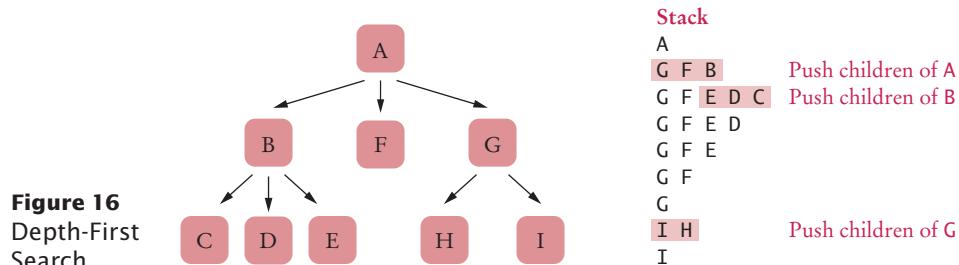
- Push the root node on a stack.**
- While the stack is not empty**
  - Pop the stack; let  $n$  be the popped node.**
  - Process  $n$ .**
  - Push the children of  $n$  on the stack, starting with the last one.**



*In a depth-first search, one moves as quickly as possible to the deepest nodes of the tree.*

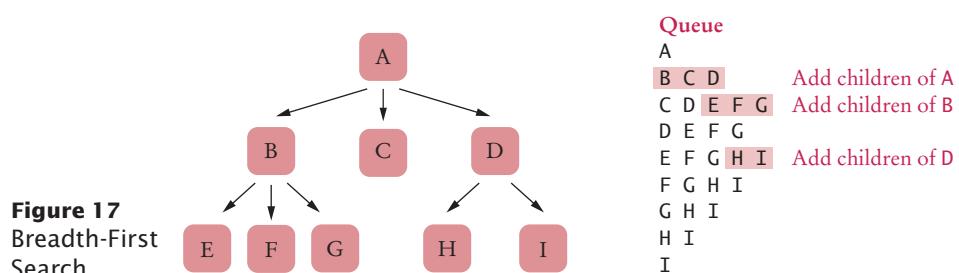
Depth-first search uses a stack to track the nodes that it still needs to visit.

This algorithm is called *depth-first search* because it goes deeply into the tree and then backtracks when it reaches the leaves (see Figure 16). Note that the tree can be an arbitrary tree—it need not be binary.



We push the children on the stack in right-to-left order so that the visit starts with the leftmost path. In this way, the nodes are visited in preorder. If the leftmost child had been pushed first, we would still have a depth-first search, just in a less intuitive order.

If we replace the stack with a queue, the visitation order changes. Instead of going deeply into the tree, we first visit all nodes at the same level before going on to the next level. This is called *breadth-first search* (Figure 17).



For this algorithm, we modify the `Visitor` interface of Section 17.4.3. The `visit` method now returns a flag indicating whether the traversal should continue. For example, if you want to visit the first ten nodes, you should provide an implementation of the `Visitor` interface whose `visit` method returns false when it has visited the tenth node.

Here is an implementation of the breadth-first algorithm:

```
public interface Visitor
{
    boolean visit(Object data);
}

public void breadthFirst(Visitor v)
{
    if (root == null) { return; }
    Queue<Node> q = new LinkedList<Node>();
    q.add(root);
    boolean more = true;
    while (more && q.size() > 0)
    {
        Node n = q.remove();
        more = v.visit(n.data);
    }
}
```

```

        if (more)
        {
            for (Node c : n.children) { q.add(c); }
        }
    }
}

```

For depth-first search, replace the queue with a stack (Exercise E17.9).

### 17.4.5 Tree Iterators

The Java collection library uses iterators to process elements of a tree, like this:

```

TreeSet<String> t = . . .
Iterator<String> iter = t.iterator();
String first = iter.next();
String second = iter.next();

```

It is easy to implement such an iterator with depth-first or breadth-first search. Make the stack or queue into an instance variable of the iterator object. The next method executes one iteration of the loop that you saw in the last section.

```

class BreadthFirstIterator
{
    private Queue<Node> q;
    public BreadthFirstIterator(Node root)
    {
        q = new LinkedList<Node>();
        if (root != null) { q.add(root); }
    }
    public boolean hasNext() { return q.size() > 0; }
    public Object next()
    {
        Node n = q.remove();
        for (Node c : n.children) { q.add(c); }
        return n.data;
    }
}

```

Note that there is no visit method. The user of the iterator receives the node data, processes it, and decides whether to call next again.

This iterator produces the nodes in breadth-first order. For a binary search tree, one would want the nodes in sorted order instead. Exercise P17.9 shows how to implement such an iterator.

#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates preorder and breadth-first traversal in a tree.

#### SELF CHECK



19. What are the inorder traversals of the two trees in Figure 6 on page 767?
20. Are the trees in Figure 6 binary search trees?
21. Why did we have to declare the variable v in the sample program in Section 17.4.4 as ShortNameCounter and not as Visitor?
22. Consider this modification of the recursive inorder traversal. We want traversal to stop as soon as the visit method returns false for a node.

```

public static void inorder(Node n, Visitor v)
{
    if (n == 0) { return; }
    inorder(n.left, v);
    if (v.visit(n.data)) { inorder(n.right, v); }
}

```

}

Why doesn't that work?

23. In what order are the nodes in Figure 17 visited if one pushes children on the stack from left to right instead of right to left?
24. What are the first eight visited nodes in the breadth-first traversal of the tree in Figure 1?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R17.11, R17.14, E17.8.

## 17.5 Red-Black Trees

As you saw in Section 17.3, insertion and removal in a binary search tree are  $O(\log(n))$  operations *provided that the tree is balanced*. In this section, you will learn about **red-black trees**, a special kind of binary search tree that rebalances itself after each insertion or removal. With red-black trees, we can guarantee efficiency of these operations. In fact, the Java Collections framework uses red-black trees to implement tree sets and tree maps.

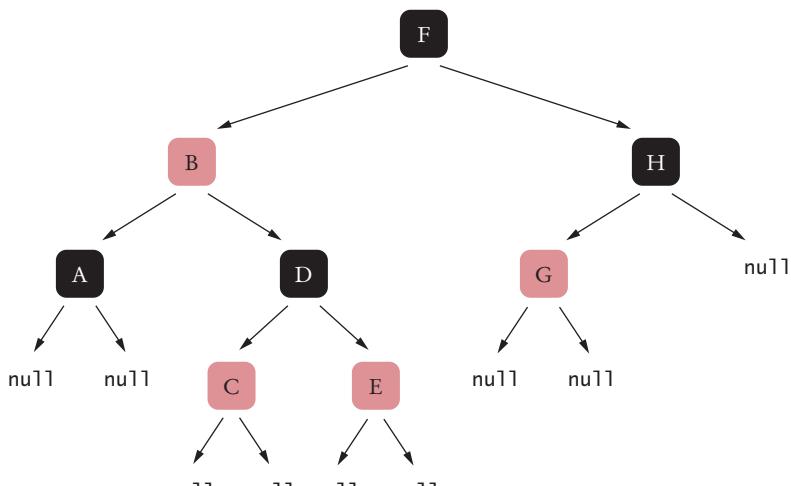
### 17.5.1 Basic Properties of Red-Black Trees

In a red-black tree, node coloring rules ensure that the tree is balanced.

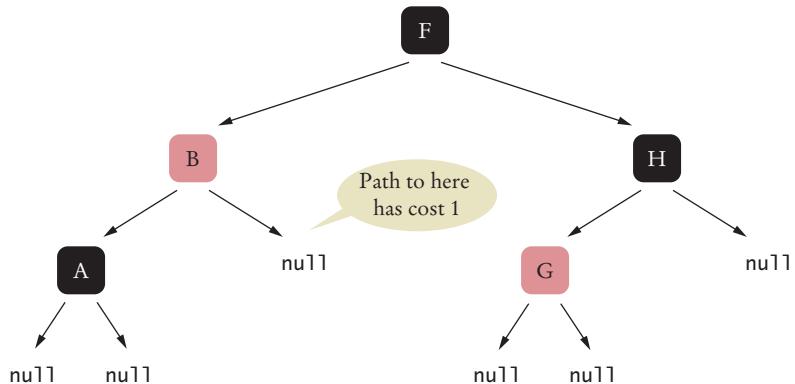
A red-black tree is a binary search tree with the following additional properties:

- Every node is colored red or black.
- The root is black.
- A red node cannot have a red child (the “no double reds” rule).
- All paths from the root to a `null` have the same number of black nodes (the “equal exit cost” rule).

Of course, the nodes aren’t actually colored. Each node simply has a flag to indicate whether it is considered red or black. (The choice of these colors is traditional; one could have equally well used some other attributes. Perhaps, in an alternate universe, students learn about chocolate-vanilla trees.)



**Figure 18**  
A Red-Black Tree



**Figure 19** A Tree that Violates the “Equal Exit Cost” Rule

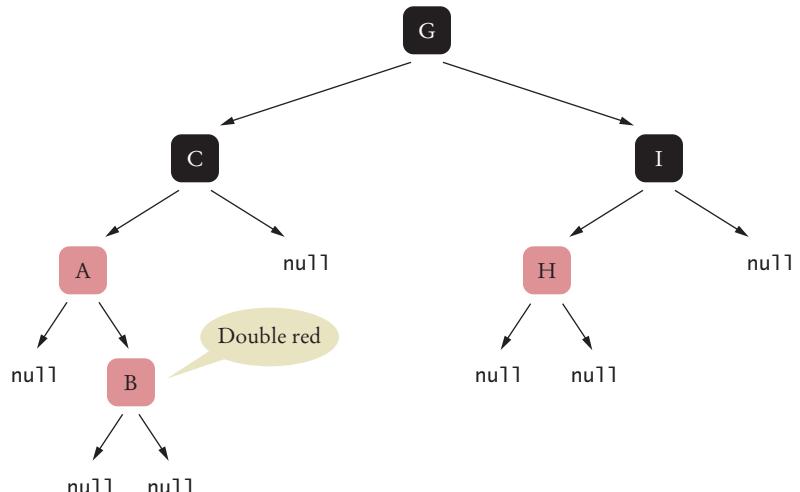
Instead of thinking of the colors, imagine each node to be a toll booth. As you travel from the root to one of the null references (an exit), you have to pay \$1 at each black toll booth, but the red toll booths are free. The “equal exit cost” rule says that the cost of the trip is the same, no matter which exit you choose.

Figure 18 shows an example of a red-black tree, and Figures 19 and 20 show examples of trees that violate the “equal exit cost” and “no double reds” rules.

Note that the “equal exit cost” rule does not just apply to paths that end in a leaf, but to any path from the root to a node with one or two empty children. For example, in Figure 19, the path F–B violates the equal exit cost, yet B is not a leaf.



*Think of each node of a red-black tree as a toll booth. The total toll to each exit is the same.*



**Figure 20** A Tree that Violates the “No Double Red” Rule

The “equal exit cost” rule eliminates highly unbalanced trees. You can’t have null references high up in the tree. In other words, the nodes that aren’t near the leaves need to have two children.

The “no double reds” rule gives some flexibility to add nodes without having to restructure the tree all the time. Some paths can be a bit longer than others—by alternating red and black nodes—but none can be longer than twice the black height.

The cost of traveling on a path from a given node to a null (that is, the number of black nodes on the path), is called the *black height* of the node. The cost of traveling from the root to a null is called the black height of the tree.

A tree with given black height  $bh$  can’t be too sparse—it must have at least  $2^{bh} - 1$  nodes (see Exercise R17.18). Or, if we turn this relationship around,

$$2^{bh} - 1 \leq n$$

$$2^{bh} \leq n + 1$$

$$bh \leq \log(n + 1)$$

The “no double reds” rule says that the total height  $h$  of a tree is at most twice the black height:

$$h \leq 2 \cdot bh \leq 2 \cdot \log(n + 1)$$

Therefore, traveling from the root to a null is  $O(\log(n))$ .

### 17.5.2 Insertion

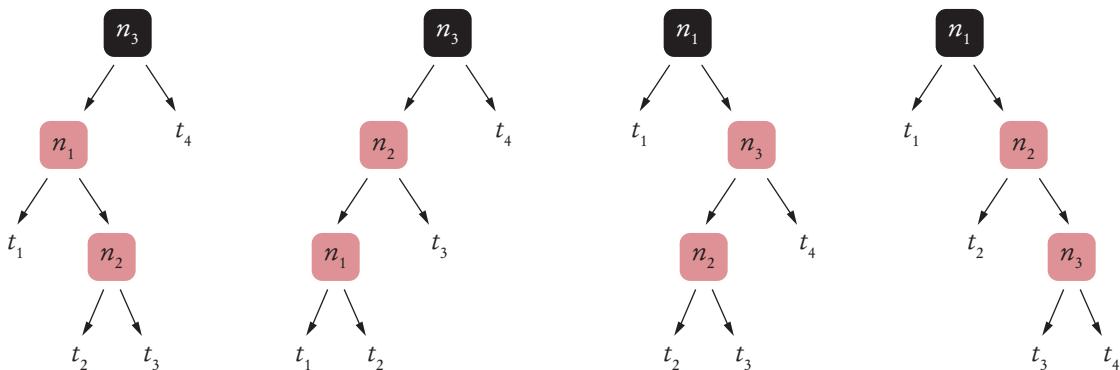
To insert a new node into a red-black tree, first insert it as you would into a regular binary search tree (see Section 17.3.2). Note that the new node is a leaf.

If it is the first node of the tree, it must be black. Otherwise, color it red. If its parent is black, we still have a red-black tree, and we are done.

However, if the parent is also red, we have a “double red” and need to fix it. Because the rest of the tree is a proper red-black tree, we know that the grandparent is black.

There are four possible configurations of a “double red”, shown in Figure 21.

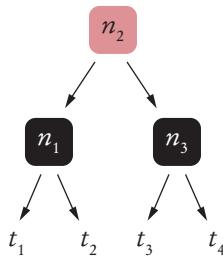
Of course, our tree is a binary search tree, and we will now take advantage of that fact. In each tree of Figure 21, we labeled the smallest, middle, and largest of the three nodes as  $n_1$ ,  $n_2$ , and  $n_3$ . We also labeled their children in sorted order, starting with  $t_1$ . To fix the “double red”, rearrange the three nodes as shown in Figure 22, keeping their data values, but updating their left and right references.



**Figure 21** The Four Possible Configurations of a “Double Red”

To rebalance a red-black tree after inserting an element, fix all double-red violations.

**Figure 22**  
Fixing the “Double Red”  
Violation



Because the fix preserves the sort order, the result is a binary search tree. The fix does not change the number of black nodes on a path. Therefore, it preserves the “equal exit cost” rule.

If the parent of  $n_2$  is black, we get a red-black tree, and we are done. If that parent is red, we have another “double red”, but it is one level closer to the root. In that case, fix the double-red violation of  $n_2$  and its parent. You may have to continue fixing double-red violations, moving closer to the root each time. If the red parent is the root, simply turn it black. This increments all path costs, preserving the “equal exit cost” rule.

Worked Example 17.2 has an implementation of this algorithm.

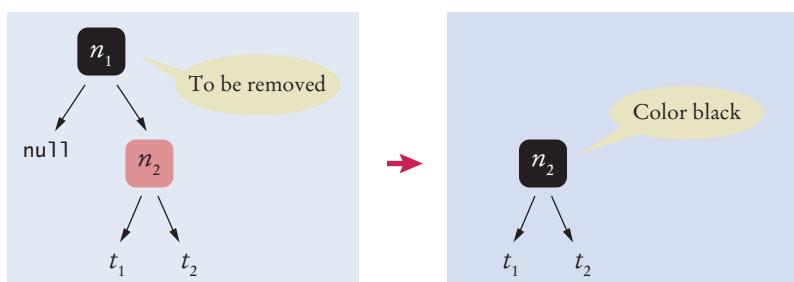
We can determine the efficiency with more precision than we were able to in Section 17.5.1. To find the insertion location requires at most  $h$  steps, where  $h$  is the height of the tree. To fix the “double red” violations takes at most  $h / 2$  steps. (Look carefully at Figures 21 and 22 to see that each fix pushes the violation up *two* nodes. If the top node of each subtree in Figure 21 has height  $t$ , then the nodes of the double-red violation have heights  $t + 1$  and  $t + 2$ . In Figure 22, the top node also has height  $t$ . If there is a double-red violation, it is between that node and its parent at height  $t - 1$ .) We know from Section 17.5.1 that  $h = O(\log(n))$ . Therefore, insertion into a red-black tree is guaranteed to be  $O(\log(n))$ .

### 17.5.3 Removal

To remove a node from a red-black tree, you first use the removal algorithm for binary search trees (Section 17.3.3). Note that in that algorithm, the removed node has at most one child. We never remove a node with two children; instead, we fill it with the value of another node with at most one child and remove that node.

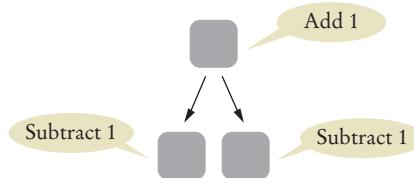
Two cases are easy. First, if the node to be removed is red, there is no problem with the removal—the resulting tree is still a red-black tree.

Next, assume that the node to be removed has a child. Because of the “equal exit cost” rule, the child must be red. Simply remove the parent and color the child black.



The troublesome case is the removal of a black leaf. We can't just remove it because the exit cost to the `null` replacing it would be too low. Instead, we'll first turn it into a red node.

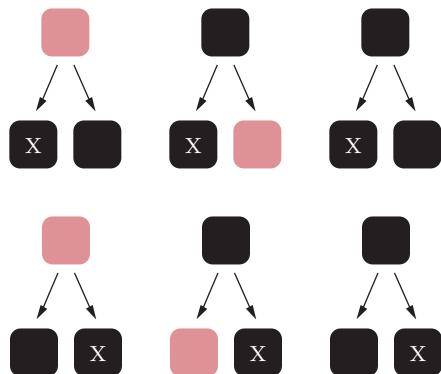
To turn a black node into a red one, we will temporarily “bubble up” the costs, raising the cost of the parent by 1 and lowering the cost of the children by 1.



This process leaves all path costs unchanged, and it turns the black leaf into a red one which we can safely remove.

Now consider a black leaf that is to be removed. Because of the equal-exit rule, it must have a sibling. The sibling and the parent can be black or red, but they can't both be red. The leaf to be removed can be to the left or to the right. The figure at right shows all possible cases.

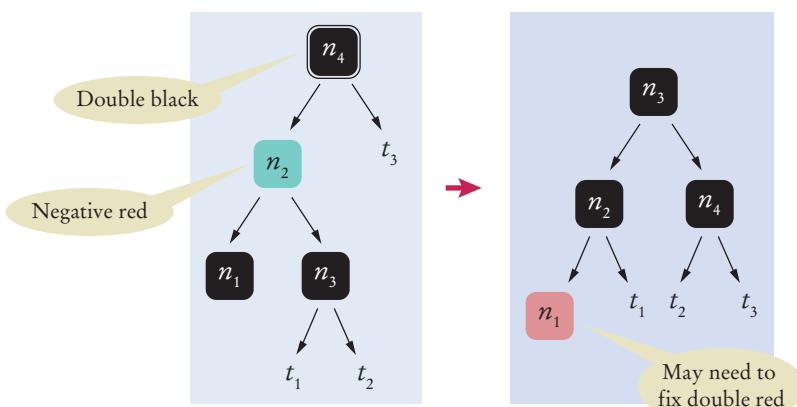
In the first column, bubbling up will work perfectly—it simply turns the red node into a black one and the black ones into red ones. One of the red ones is removed. The other may cause a double-red violation with one of its children, which we fix if necessary.



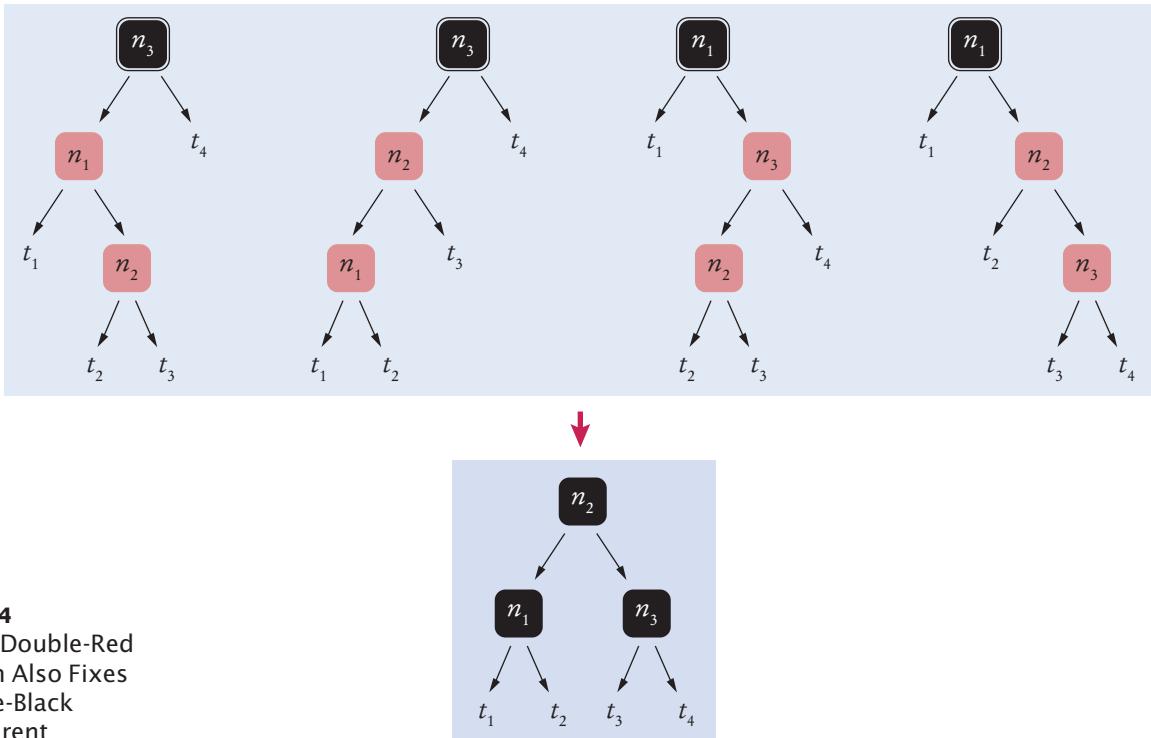
But in the other cases, a new problem arises. Adding 1 to a black parent yields a price of 2, which we call *double-black*. Subtracting 1 from a red child yields a *negative-red* node with a price of -1. These are not valid nodes in a red-black tree, and we need to eliminate them.

A negative-red node is always below a double-black one, and the pair can be eliminated by the transformation shown in Figure 23.

Before removing a node in a red-black tree, turn it red and fix any double-black and double-red violations.



**Figure 23** Eliminating a Negative-Red Node with a Double-Black Parent

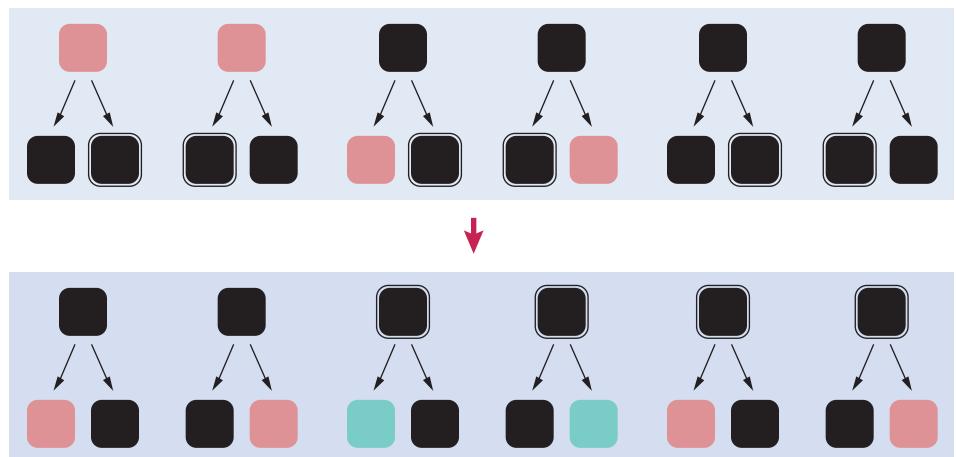


**Figure 24**  
Fixing a Double-Red  
Violation Also Fixes  
a Double-Black  
Grandparent

Sometimes, the creation of a double-black node also causes a double-red violation below. We can fix the double-red violation as in the preceding section, but now we color the middle node black instead of red—see Figure 24.

To see that this transformation is valid, imagine a trip through one of the node sequences in Figure 24 from the top node to one of the trees below. The price of that portion of the trip is 2 for each tree, both before and after the transformation.

Sometimes, neither of the two transformations applies, and then we need to “bubble up” again, which pushes the double-black node closer to the root. Figure 25 shows the possible cases.



**Figure 25**  
Bubbling Up a  
Double-Black Node

Adding or removing an element in a red-black tree is an  $O(\log(n))$  operation.

If the double-black node reaches the root, we can replace it with a regular black node. This reduces the cost of all paths by 1 and preserves the “equal exit cost” rule.

See Worked Example 17.2 for an implementation of node removal.

Let us now determine the efficiency of this process. Removing a node from a binary search tree requires  $O(h)$  steps, where  $h$  is the height of the tree. The double-black node may bubble up, perhaps all the way to the root. Bubbling up will happen at most  $h$  times, and its cost is constant—it only involves changing the costs of three nodes. If we generate a negative red, we remove it (as shown in Figure 23), and the bubbling stops. We may have to fix one double-red violation, which takes  $O(h)$  steps. It is also possible that bubbling creates a double-red violation, but its fix will absorb the double-black node, and bubbling also stops. The entire process takes  $O(h)$  steps. Since  $h = O(\log(n))$ , removal from a red-black tree is also guaranteed to be  $O(\log(n))$ .

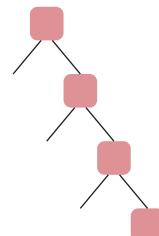
**Table 3** Efficiency of Red-Black Tree Operations

Find an element.	$O(\log(n))$
Add an element.	$O(\log(n))$
Remove an element.	$O(\log(n))$

**SELF CHECK**



- 25. Consider the extreme example of a tree with only right children and at least three nodes. Why can't this be a red-black tree?
- 26. What are the shapes and colorings of all possible red-black trees that have four nodes?
- 27. Why does Figure 21 show all possible configurations of a double-red violation?
- 28. When inserting an element, can there ever be a triple-red violation in Figure 21? That is, can you have a red node with two red children? (For example, in the first tree, can  $t_1$  have a red root?)
- 29. When removing an element, show that it is possible to have a triple-red violation in Figure 23.
- 30. What happens to a triple-red violation when the double-red fix is applied?



**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R17.18, R17.20, E17.11.



**WORKED EXAMPLE 17.2**

**Implementing a Red-Black Tree**

Learn how to implement a red-black tree as described in Section 17.5. Go to [www.wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://www.wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 17.2.

## 17.6 Heaps

In this section, we discuss a tree structure that is particularly suited for implementing a priority queue from which the smallest element can be removed efficiently. (Priority queues were introduced in Section 15.5.3.)

A heap is an almost completely filled binary tree in which the value of any node is less than or equal to the values of its descendants.

A **heap** (or, for greater clarity, *min-heap*) is a binary tree with two properties:

1. A heap is *almost completely filled*: all nodes are filled in, except the last level which may have some nodes missing toward the right (see Figure 26).
2. All nodes of the tree fulfill the *heap property*: the node value is at most as large as the values of all descendants (see Figure 27 on page 794).

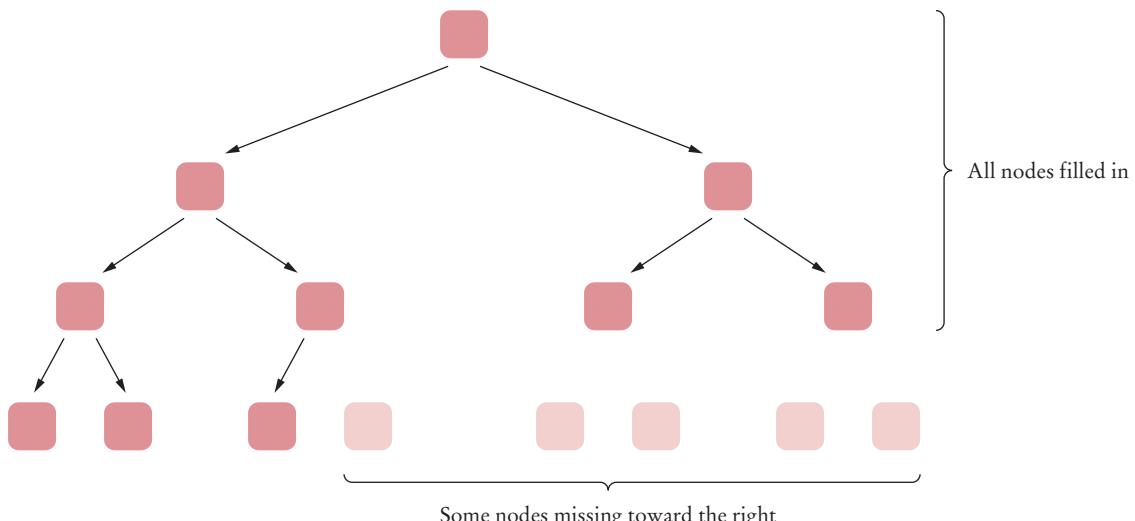
In particular, because the root fulfills the heap property, its value is the minimum of all values in the tree.

A heap is superficially similar to a binary search tree, but there are two important differences:

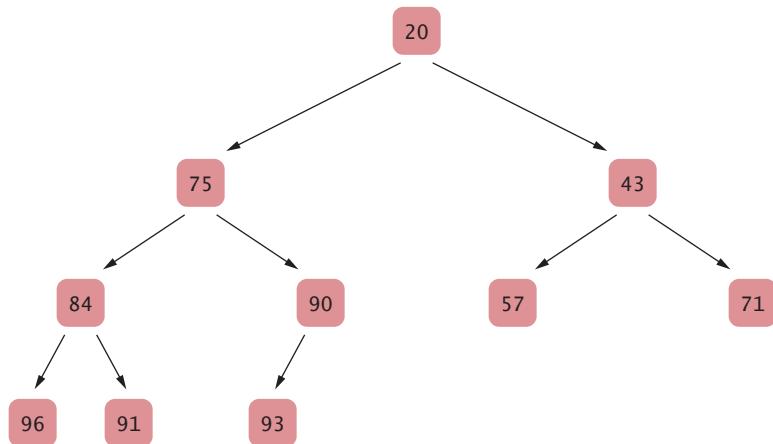
1. The shape of a heap is very regular. Binary search trees can have arbitrary shapes.
2. In a heap, the left and right subtrees both store elements that are larger than the root element. In contrast, in a binary search tree, smaller elements are stored in the left subtree and larger elements are stored in the right subtree.



*In an almost complete tree, all layers but one are completely filled.*

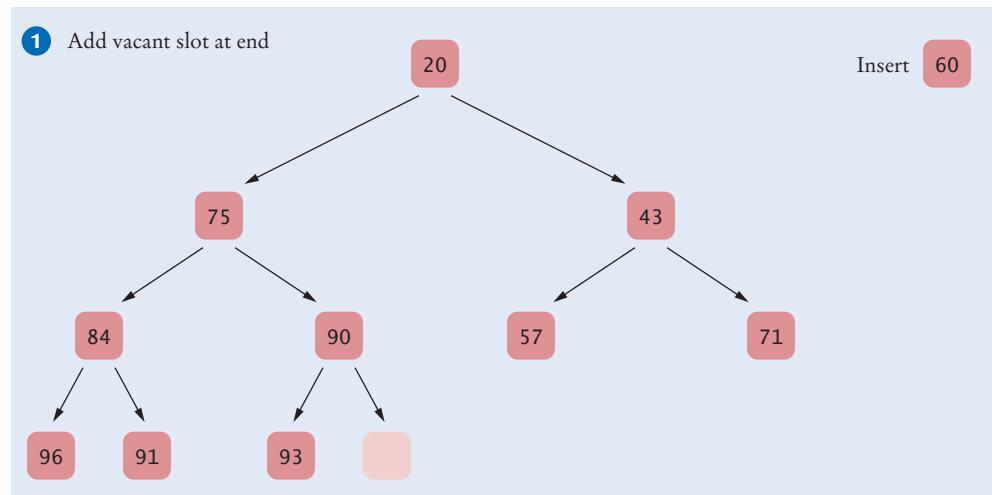


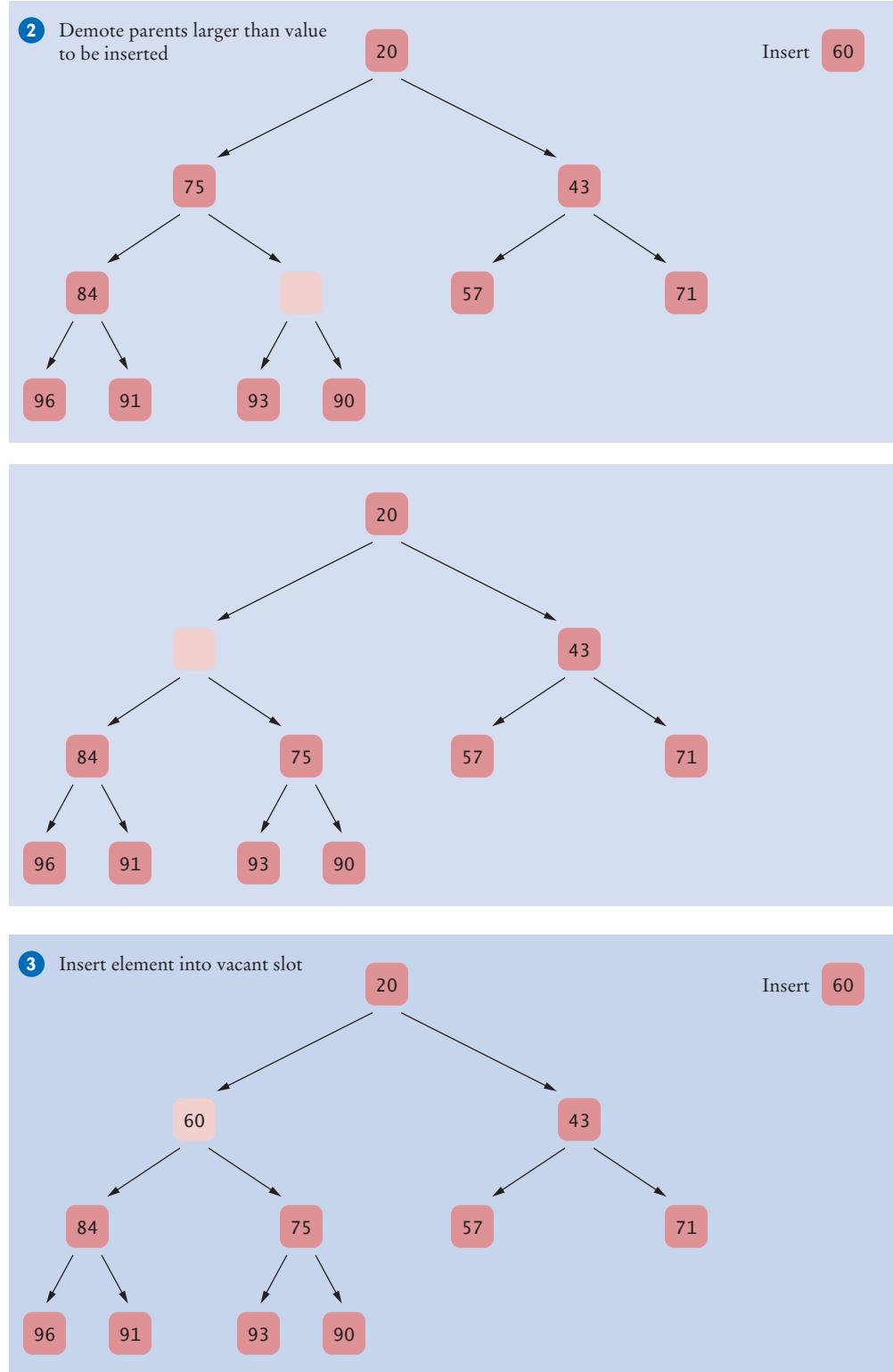
**Figure 26** An Almost Completely Filled Tree

**Figure 27** A Heap

Suppose you have a heap and want to insert a new element. After insertion, the heap property should again be fulfilled. The following algorithm carries out the insertion (see Figure 28).

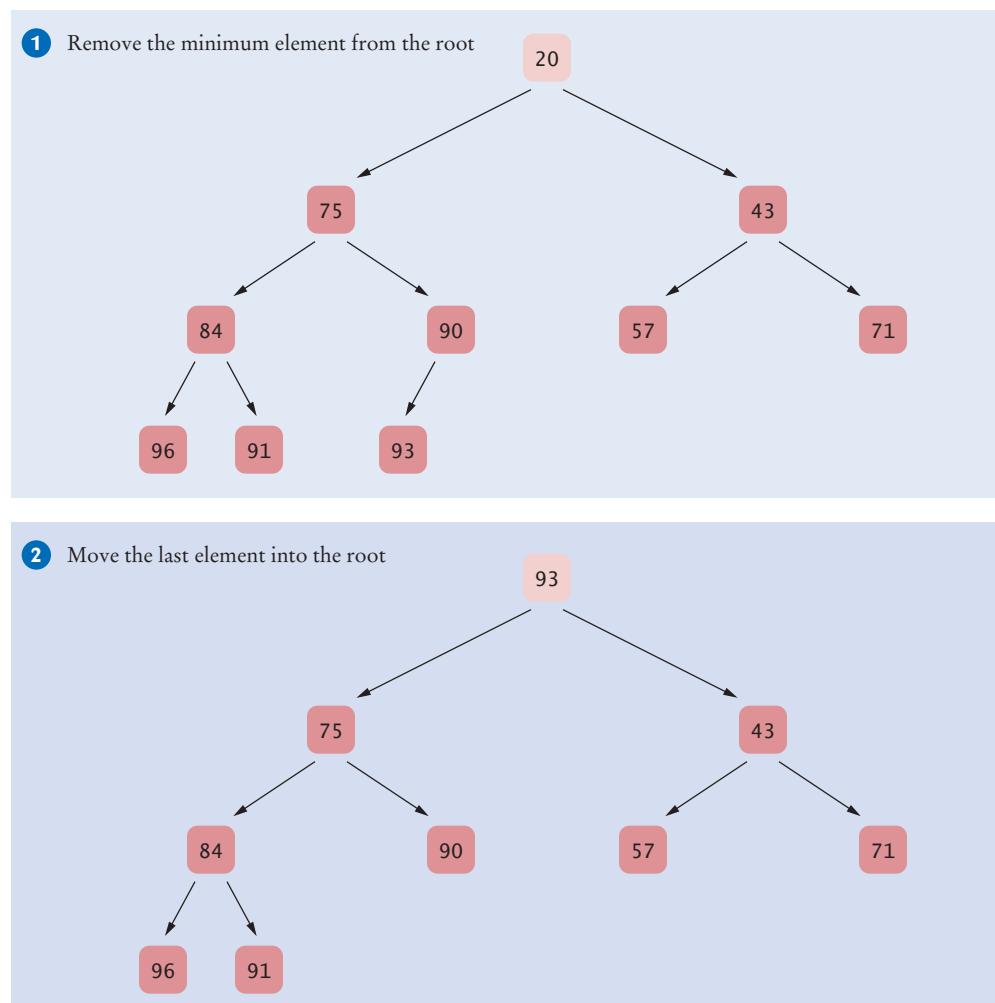
1. First, add a vacant slot to the end of the tree.
2. Next, demote the parent of the empty slot if it is larger than the element to be inserted. That is, move the parent value into the vacant slot, and move the vacant slot up. Repeat this demotion as long as the parent of the vacant slot is larger than the element to be inserted.
3. At this point, either the vacant slot is at the root, or the parent of the vacant slot is smaller than the element to be inserted. Insert the element into the vacant slot.

**Figure 28** Inserting an Element into a Heap

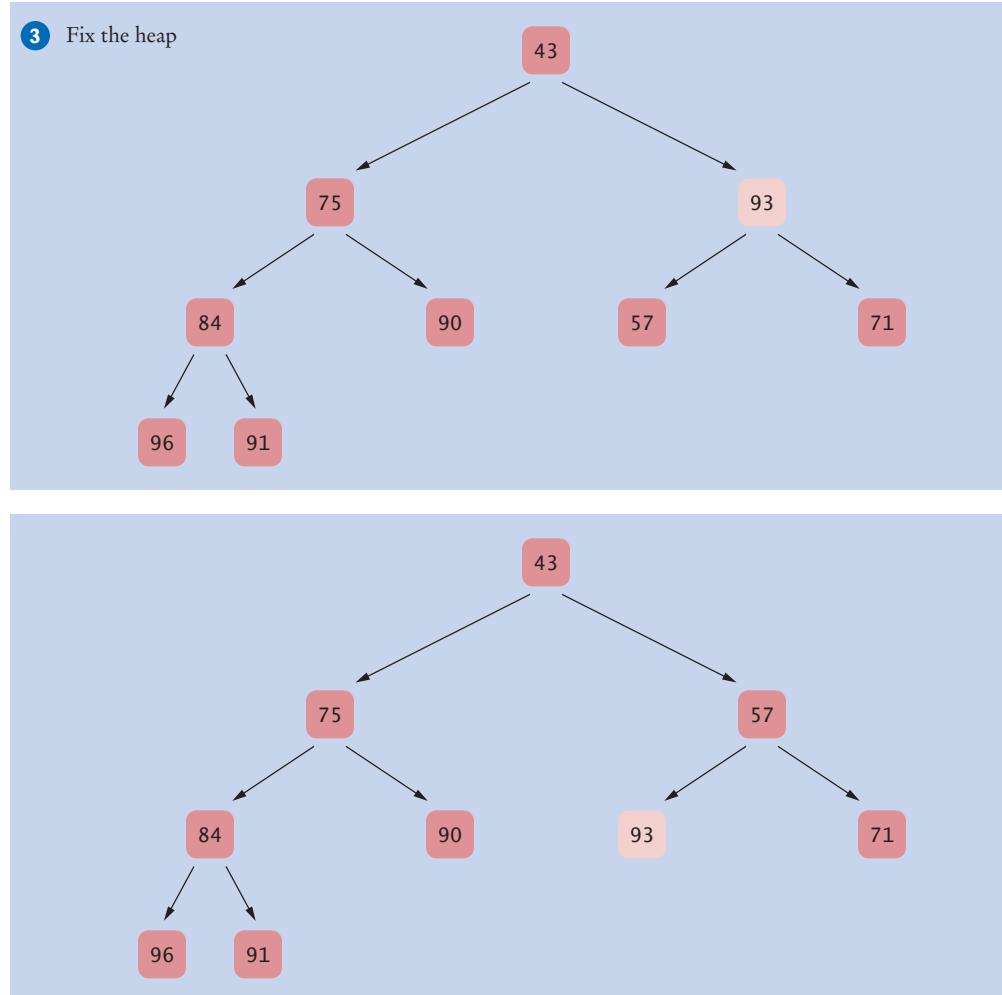
**Figure 28 (continued)** Inserting an Element into a Heap

We will not consider an algorithm for removing an arbitrary node from a heap. The only node that we will remove is the root node, which contains the minimum of all of the values in the heap. Figure 29 shows the algorithm in action.

1. Extract the root node value.
2. Move the value of the last node of the heap into the root node, and remove the last node. Now the heap property may be violated for the root node, because one or both of its children may be smaller.
3. Promote the smaller child of the root node. Now the root node again fulfills the heap property. Repeat this process with the demoted child. That is, promote the smaller of its children. Continue until the demoted child has no smaller children. The heap property is now fulfilled again. This process is called “fixing the heap”.



**Figure 29** Removing the Minimum Value from a Heap



**Figure 29 (continued)** Removing the Minimum Value from a Heap

Inserting and removing heap elements is very efficient. The reason lies in the balanced shape of a heap. The insertion and removal operations visit at most  $h$  nodes, where  $h$  is the height of the tree. A heap of height  $h$  contains at least  $2^{h-1}$  elements, but less than  $2^h$  elements. In other words, if  $n$  is the number of elements, then

$$2^{h-1} \leq n < 2^h$$

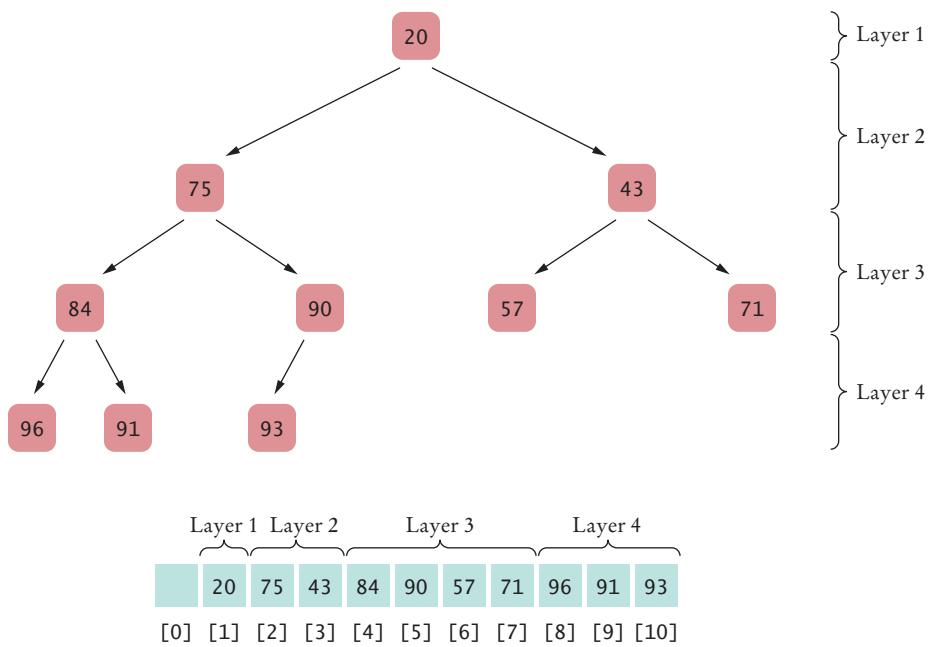
or

$$h - 1 \leq \log_2(n) < h$$

Inserting or removing a heap element is an  $O(\log(n))$  operation.

This argument shows that the insertion and removal operations in a heap with  $n$  elements take  $O(\log(n))$  steps.

Contrast this finding with the situation of a binary search tree. When a binary search tree is unbalanced, it can degenerate into a linked list, so that in the worst case insertion and removal are  $O(n)$  operations.

**Figure 30** Storing a Heap in an Array

The regular layout of a heap makes it possible to store heap nodes efficiently in an array.

Heaps have another major advantage. Because of the regular layout of the heap nodes, it is easy to store the node values in an array or array list. First store the first layer, then the second, and so on (see Figure 30). For convenience, we leave the 0 element of the array empty. Then the child nodes of the node with index  $i$  have index  $2 \cdot i$  and  $2 \cdot i + 1$ , and the parent node of the node with index  $i$  has index  $i/2$ . For example, as you can see in Figure 30, the children of the node with index 4 are the nodes with index values 8 and 9, and the parent is the node with index 2.

Storing the heap values in an array may not be intuitive, but it is very efficient. There is no need to allocate individual nodes or to store the links to the child nodes. Instead, child and parent positions can be determined by very simple computations.

The program at the end of this section contains an implementation of a heap. For greater clarity, the computation of the parent and child index positions is carried out in methods `getParentIndex`, `getLeftChildIndex`, and `getRightChildIndex`. For greater efficiency, the method calls could be avoided by using expressions `index / 2`, `2 * index`, and `2 * index + 1` directly.

In this section, we have organized our heaps such that the smallest element is stored in the root. It is also possible to store the largest element in the root, simply by reversing all comparisons in the heap-building algorithm. If there is a possibility of misunderstanding, it is best to refer to the data structures as min-heap or max-heap.

The test program demonstrates how to use a min-heap as a priority queue.

### section\_6/MinHeap.java

```

1 import java.util.*;
2
3 /**
4  * This class implements a heap.
5 */

```

```

6  public class MinHeap
7  {
8      private ArrayList<Comparable> elements;
9
10     /**
11      Constructs an empty heap.
12     */
13     public MinHeap()
14     {
15         elements = new ArrayList<Comparable>();
16         elements.add(null);
17     }
18
19     /**
20      Adds a new element to this heap.
21      @param newElement the element to add
22     */
23     public void add(Comparable newElement)
24     {
25         // Add a new leaf
26         elements.add(null);
27         int index = elements.size() - 1;
28
29         // Demote parents that are larger than the new element
30         while (index > 1
31                && getParent(index).compareTo(newElement) > 0)
32         {
33             elements.set(index, getParent(index));
34             index = getParentIndex(index);
35         }
36
37         // Store the new element in the vacant slot
38         elements.set(index, newElement);
39     }
40
41     /**
42      Gets the minimum element stored in this heap.
43      @return the minimum element
44     */
45     public Comparable peek()
46     {
47         return elements.get(1);
48     }
49
50     /**
51      Removes the minimum element from this heap.
52      @return the minimum element
53     */
54     public Comparable remove()
55     {
56         Comparable minimum = elements.get(1);
57
58         // Remove last element
59         int lastIndex = elements.size() - 1;
60         Comparable last = elements.remove(lastIndex);
61
62         if (lastIndex > 1)
63         {
64             elements.set(1, last);
65             fixHeap();
66         }
67     }
68
69     /**
70      Ensures the heap property is maintained.
71     */
72     private void fixHeap()
73     {
74         for (int i = 1; i < elements.size(); i++)
75         {
76             Comparable current = elements.get(i);
77             Comparable parent = getParent(i);
78
79             if (current.compareTo(parent) < 0)
80             {
81                 Comparable temp = elements.get(i);
82                 elements.set(i, parent);
83                 elements.set(getParentIndex(i), temp);
84             }
85         }
86     }
87
88     /**
89      Returns the parent of the element at index.
90      @param index the index of the element
91      @return the parent element
92     */
93     private Comparable getParent(int index)
94     {
95         return elements.get((index - 1) / 2);
96     }
97
98     /**
99      Returns the index of the parent of the element at index.
100     @param index the index of the element
101     @return the parent index
102    */
103    private int getParentIndex(int index)
104    {
105        return (index - 1) / 2;
106    }
107
108    /**
109     * Prints the elements of the heap to the console.
110     */
111    public void print()
112    {
113        System.out.println(elements);
114    }
115}

```

```

66     }
67
68     return minimum;
69 }
70
71 /**
72   Turns the tree back into a heap, provided only the root
73   node violates the heap condition.
74 */
75 private void fixHeap()
76 {
77     Comparable root = elements.get(1);
78
79     int lastIndex = elements.size() - 1;
80     // Promote children of removed root while they are smaller than last
81
82     int index = 1;
83     boolean more = true;
84     while (more)
85     {
86         int childIndex = getLeftChildIndex(index);
87         if (childIndex <= lastIndex)
88         {
89             // Get smaller child
90
91             // Get left child first
92             Comparable child = getLeftChild(index);
93
94             // Use right child instead if it is smaller
95             if (getRightChildIndex(index) <= lastIndex
96                 && getRightChild(index).compareTo(child) < 0)
97             {
98                 childIndex = getRightChildIndex(index);
99                 child = getRightChild(index);
100            }
101
102             // Check if larger child is smaller than root
103             if (child.compareTo(root) < 0)
104             {
105                 // Promote child
106                 elements.set(index, child);
107                 index = childIndex;
108             }
109             else
110             {
111                 // Root is smaller than both children
112                 more = false;
113             }
114         }
115         else
116         {
117             // No children
118             more = false;
119         }
120     }
121
122     // Store root element in vacant slot
123     elements.set(index, root);
124 }
125

```

```

126 /**
127     Checks whether this heap is empty.
128 */
129 public boolean empty()
130 {
131     return elements.size() == 1;
132 }
133
134 /**
135     Returns the index of the left child.
136     @param index the index of a node in this heap
137     @return the index of the left child of the given node
138 */
139 private static int getLeftChildIndex(int index)
140 {
141     return 2 * index;
142 }
143
144 /**
145     Returns the index of the right child.
146     @param index the index of a node in this heap
147     @return the index of the right child of the given node
148 */
149 private static int getRightChildIndex(int index)
150 {
151     return 2 * index + 1;
152 }
153
154 /**
155     Returns the index of the parent.
156     @param index the index of a node in this heap
157     @return the index of the parent of the given node
158 */
159 private static int getParentIndex(int index)
160 {
161     return index / 2;
162 }
163
164 /**
165     Returns the value of the left child.
166     @param index the index of a node in this heap
167     @return the value of the left child of the given node
168 */
169 private Comparable getLeftChild(int index)
170 {
171     return elements.get(2 * index);
172 }
173
174 /**
175     Returns the value of the right child.
176     @param index the index of a node in this heap
177     @return the value of the right child of the given node
178 */
179 private Comparable getRightChild(int index)
180 {
181     return elements.get(2 * index + 1);
182 }
183
184 /**
185     Returns the value of the parent.

```

```

186     @param index the index of a node in this heap
187     @return the value of the parent of the given node
188 */
189     private Comparable getParent(int index)
190     {
191         return elements.get(index / 2);
192     }
193 }
```

**section\_6/WorkOrder.java**

```

1 /**
2      This class encapsulates a work order with a priority.
3 */
4 public class WorkOrder implements Comparable
5 {
6     private int priority;
7     private String description;
8
9     /**
10      Constructs a work order with a given priority and description.
11      @param aPriority the priority of this work order
12      @param aDescription the description of this work order
13 */
14     public WorkOrder(int aPriority, String aDescription)
15     {
16         priority = aPriority;
17         description = aDescription;
18     }
19
20    public String toString()
21    {
22        return "priority=" + priority + ", description=" + description;
23    }
24
25    public int compareTo(Object otherObject)
26    {
27        WorkOrder other = (WorkOrder) otherObject;
28        if (priority < other.priority) { return -1; }
29        if (priority > other.priority) { return 1; }
30        return 0;
31    }
32 }
```

**section\_6/HeapDemo.java**

```

1 /**
2      This program demonstrates the use of a heap as a priority queue.
3 */
4 public class HeapDemo
5 {
6     public static void main(String[] args)
7     {
8         MinHeap q = new MinHeap();
9         q.add(new WorkOrder(3, "Shampoo carpets"));
10        q.add(new WorkOrder(7, "Empty trash"));
11        q.add(new WorkOrder(8, "Water plants"));
12        q.add(new WorkOrder(10, "Remove pencil sharpener shavings"));
13        q.add(new WorkOrder(6, "Replace light bulb"));
14        q.add(new WorkOrder(1, "Fix broken sink"));
```

```

15     q.add(new WorkOrder(9, "Clean coffee maker"));
16     q.add(new WorkOrder(2, "Order cleaning supplies"));
17
18     while (!q.empty())
19     {
20         System.out.println(q.remove());
21     }
22 }
23 }
```

### Program Run

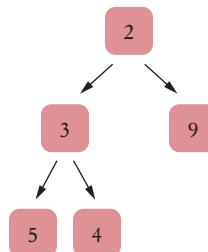
```

priority=1, description=Fix broken sink
priority=2, description=Order cleaning supplies
priority=3, description=Shampoo carpets
priority=6, description=Replace light bulb
priority=7, description=Empty trash
priority=8, description=Water plants
priority=9, description=Clean coffee maker
priority=10, description=Remove pencil sharpener shavings
```

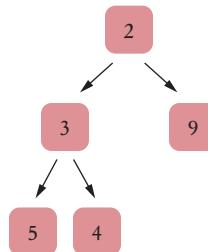


#### SELF CHECK

31. The software that controls the events in a user interface keeps the events in a data structure. Whenever an event such as a mouse move or repaint request occurs, the event is added. Events are retrieved according to their importance. What abstract data type is appropriate for this application?
32. In an almost-complete tree with 100 nodes, how many nodes are missing in the lowest level?
33. If you traverse a heap in preorder, will the nodes be in sorted order?
34. What is the heap that results from inserting 1 into the following?



35. What is the result of removing the minimum from the following?



**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R17.24, R17.25, E17.12.

## 17.7 The Heapsort Algorithm

The heapsort algorithm is based on inserting elements into a heap and removing them in sorted order.

Heapsort is an  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm.

Heaps are not only useful for implementing priority queues, they also give rise to an efficient sorting algorithm, heapsort. In its simplest form, the **heapsort algorithm** works as follows. First insert all elements to be sorted into the heap, then keep extracting the minimum.

This algorithm is an  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm: each insertion and removal is  $O(\log(n))$ , and these steps are repeated  $n$  times, once for each element in the sequence that is to be sorted.

The algorithm can be made a bit more efficient. Rather than inserting the elements one at a time, we will start with a sequence of values in an array. Of course, that array does not represent a heap. We will use the procedure of “fixing the heap” that you encountered in the preceding section as part of the element removal algorithm. “Fixing the heap” operates on a binary tree whose child trees are heaps but whose root value may not be smaller than the descendants. The procedure turns the tree into a heap, by repeatedly promoting the smallest child value, moving the root value to its proper location.

Of course, we cannot simply apply this procedure to the initial sequence of unsorted values—the child trees of the root are not likely to be heaps. But we can first fix small subtrees into heaps, then fix larger trees. Because trees of size 1 are automatically heaps, we can begin the fixing procedure with the subtrees whose roots are located in the next-to-last level of the tree.

The sorting algorithm uses a generalized `fixHeap` method that fixes a subtree:

```
public static void fixHeap(int[] a, int rootIndex, int lastIndex)
```

The subtree is specified by the index of its root and of its last node.

The `fixHeap` method needs to be invoked on all subtrees whose roots are in the next-to-last level. Then the subtrees whose roots are in the next level above are fixed, and so on. Finally, the fixup is applied to the root node, and the tree is turned into a heap (see Figure 31).

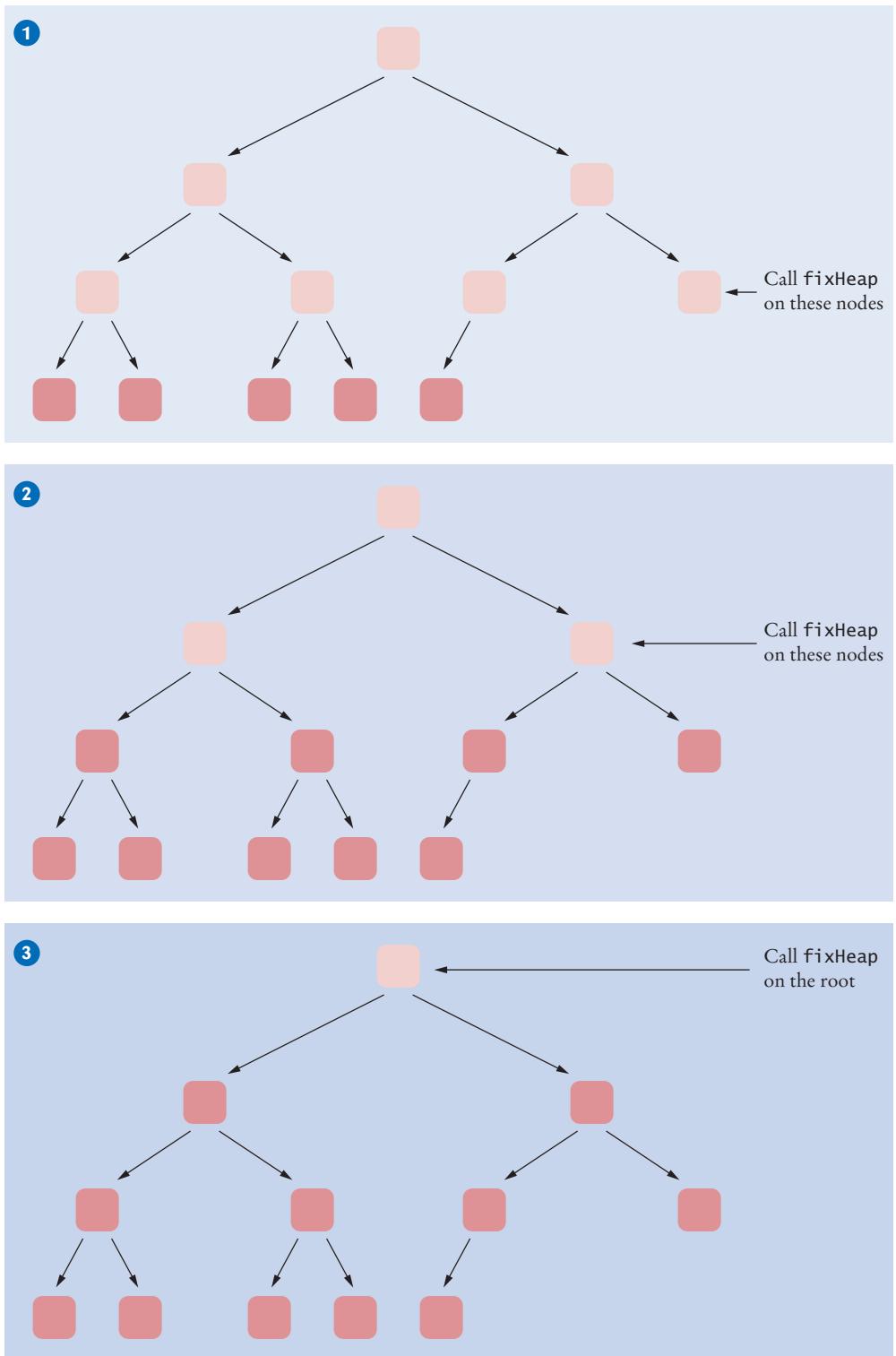
That repetition can be programmed easily. Start with the *last* node on the next-to-lowest level and work toward the left. Then go to the next higher level. The node index values then simply run backward from the index of the last node to the index of the root.

```
int n = a.length - 1;
for (int i = (n - 1) / 2; i >= 0; i--)
{
    fixHeap(a, i, n);
}
```

It can be shown that this procedure turns an arbitrary array into a heap in  $O(n)$  steps.

Note that the loop ends with index 0. When working with a given array, we don’t have the luxury of skipping the 0 entry. We consider the 0 entry the root and adjust the formulas for computing the child and parent index values.

After the array has been turned into a heap, we repeatedly remove the root element. Recall from the preceding section that removing the root element is achieved by placing the last element of the tree in the root and calling the `fixHeap` method. Because we call the  $O(\log(n))$  `fixHeap` method  $n$  times, this process requires  $O(n \log(n))$  steps.

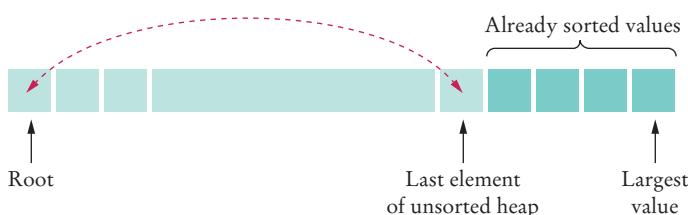


**Figure 31** Turning a Tree into a Heap

Rather than moving the root element into a separate array, we can *swap* the root element with the last element of the tree and then reduce the tree size. Thus, the removed root ends up in the last position of the array, which is no longer needed by the heap. In this way, we can use the same array both to hold the heap (which gets shorter with each step) and the sorted sequence (which gets longer with each step).

```
while (n > 0)
{
    ArrayUtil.swap(a, 0, n);
    n--;
    fixHeap(a, 0, n);
}
```

There is just a minor inconvenience. When we use a min-heap, the sorted sequence is accumulated in reverse order, with the smallest element at the end of the array. We could reverse the sequence after sorting is complete. However, it is easier to use a max-heap rather than a min-heap in the heapsort algorithm. With this modification, the largest value is placed at the end of the array after the first step. After the next step, the next-largest value is swapped from the heap root to the second position from the end, and so on (see Figure 32).



**Figure 32** Using Heapsort to Sort an Array

The following class implements the heapsort algorithm:

### section\_7/HeapSorter.java

```
1  /**
2   * The sort method of this class sorts an array, using the heap
3   * sort algorithm.
4  */
5  public class HeapSorter
6  {
7      /**
8       * Sorts an array, using selection sort.
9       * @param a the array to sort
10      */
11     public static void sort(int[] a)
12     {
13         int n = a.length - 1;
14         for (int i = (n - 1) / 2; i >= 0; i--)
15         {
16             fixHeap(a, i, n);
17         }
18         while (n > 0)
19         {
```

```

20         ArrayUtil.swap(a, 0, n);
21         n--;
22         fixHeap(a, 0, n);
23     }
24 }
25
26 /**
27 Ensures the heap property for a subtree, provided its
28 children already fulfill the heap property.
29 @param a the array to sort
30 @param rootIndex the index of the subtree to be fixed
31 @param lastIndex the last valid index of the tree that
32 contains the subtree to be fixed
33 */
34 private static void fixHeap(int[] a, int rootIndex, int lastIndex)
35 {
36     // Remove root
37     int rootValue = a[rootIndex];
38
39     // Promote children while they are larger than the root
40
41     int index = rootIndex;
42     boolean more = true;
43     while (more)
44     {
45         int childIndex = getLeftChildIndex(index);
46         if (childIndex <= lastIndex)
47         {
48             // Use right child instead if it is larger
49             int rightChildIndex = getRightChildIndex(index);
50             if (rightChildIndex <= lastIndex
51                 && a[rightChildIndex] > a[childIndex])
52             {
53                 childIndex = rightChildIndex;
54             }
55
56             if (a[childIndex] > rootValue)
57             {
58                 // Promote child
59                 a[index] = a[childIndex];
60                 index = childIndex;
61             }
62             else
63             {
64                 // Root value is larger than both children
65                 more = false;
66             }
67         }
68         else
69         {
70             // No children
71             more = false;
72         }
73     }
74
75     // Store root value in vacant slot
76     a[index] = rootValue;
77 }
78

```

```

79     /**
80      Returns the index of the left child.
81      @param index the index of a node in this heap
82      @return the index of the left child of the given node
83   */
84   private static int getLeftChildIndex(int index)
85   {
86     return 2 * index + 1;
87   }
88
89   /**
90      Returns the index of the right child.
91      @param index the index of a node in this heap
92      @return the index of the right child of the given node
93   */
94   private static int getRightChildIndex(int index)
95   {
96     return 2 * index + 2;
97   }
98 }
```

**SELF CHECK**

36. Which algorithm requires less storage, heapsort or merge sort?
37. Why are the computations of the left child index and the right child index in the HeapSorter different than in MinHeap?
38. What is the result of calling `HeapSorter.fixHeap(a, 0, 4)` where `a` contains `1 4 9 5 3`?
39. Suppose after turning the array into a heap, it is `9 4 5 1 3`. What happens in the first iteration of the `while` loop in the `sort` method?
40. Does heapsort sort an array that is already sorted in  $O(n)$  time?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R17.28, E17.13.

**CHAPTER SUMMARY****Describe and implement general trees.**

- A tree is composed of nodes, each of which can have child nodes.
- The root is the node with no parent. A leaf is a node with no children.
- A tree class uses a node class to represent nodes and has an instance variable for the root node.
- Many tree properties are computed with recursive methods.

**Describe binary trees and their applications.**

- A binary tree consists of nodes, each of which has at most two child nodes.
- In a Huffman tree, the left and right turns on the paths to the leaves describe binary encodings.
- An expression tree shows the order of evaluation in an arithmetic expression.
- In a balanced tree, all paths from the root to the leaves have approximately the same length.

**Explain the implementation of a binary search tree and its performance characteristics.**

- All nodes in a binary search tree fulfill the property that the descendants to the left have smaller data values than the node data value, and the descendants to the right have larger data values.
- To insert a value into a binary search tree, keep comparing the value with the node data and follow the nodes to the left or right, until reaching a `null` node.
- When removing a node with only one child from a binary search tree, the child replaces the node to be removed.
- When removing a node with two children from a binary search tree, replace it with the smallest node of the right subtree.
- In a balanced tree, all paths from the root to the leaves have about the same length.
- If a binary search tree is balanced, then adding, locating, or removing an element takes  $O(\log(n))$  time.

**Describe preorder, inorder, and postorder tree traversal.**

- To visit all elements in a tree, visit the root and recursively visit the subtrees.
- We distinguish between preorder, inorder, and postorder traversal.
- Postorder traversal of an expression tree yields the instructions for evaluating the expression on a stack-based calculator.
- Depth-first search uses a stack to track the nodes that it still needs to visit.
- Breadth-first search first visits all nodes on the same level before visiting the children.

**Describe how red-black trees provide guaranteed  $O(\log(n))$  operations.**

- In a red-black tree, node coloring rules ensure that the tree is balanced.
- To rebalance a red-black tree after inserting an element, fix all double-red violations.
- Before removing a node in a red-black tree, turn it red and fix any double-black and double-red violations.
- Adding or removing an element in a red-black tree is an  $O(\log(n))$  operation.

**Describe the heap data structure and the efficiency of its operations.**

- A heap is an almost completely filled tree in which the value of any node is less than or equal to the values of its descendants.
- Inserting or removing a heap element is an  $O(\log(n))$  operation.
- The regular layout of a heap makes it possible to store heap nodes efficiently in an array.

**Describe the heapsort algorithm and its run-time performance.**

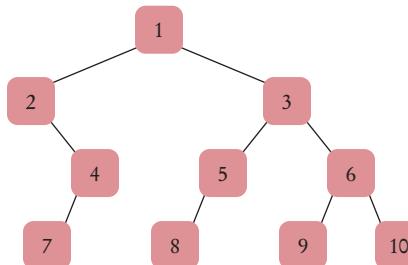
- The heapsort algorithm is based on inserting elements into a heap and removing them in sorted order.
- Heapsort is an  $O(n \log(n))$  algorithm.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

- R17.1 What are all possible shapes of trees of height  $h$  with one leaf? Of height 2 with  $k$  leaves?
- R17.2 Describe a recursive algorithm for finding the maximum number of siblings in a tree.
- R17.3 Describe a recursive algorithm for finding the total path length of a tree. The total path length is the sum of the lengths of all paths from the root to the leaves. (The length of a path is the number of nodes on the path.) What is the efficiency of your algorithm?
- R17.4 Show that a binary tree with  $l$  leaves has at least  $l - 1$  interior nodes, and exactly  $l - 1$  interior nodes if all of them have two children.
- R17.5 What is the difference between a binary tree and a binary search tree? Give examples of each.
- R17.6 What is the difference between a balanced tree and an unbalanced tree? Give examples of each.
- R17.7 The following elements are inserted into a binary search tree. Make a drawing that shows the resulting tree after each insertion.

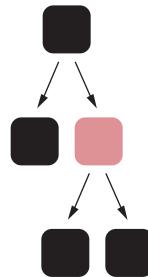
Adam  
Eve  
Romeo  
Juliet  
Tom  
Diana  
Harry

- R17.8 Insert the elements of Exercise R17.7 in opposite order. Then determine how the `BinarySearchTree.print` method from Section 17.4 prints out both the tree from Exercise R17.7 and this tree. Explain how the printouts are related.
- R17.9 Consider the following tree. In which order are the nodes printed by the `BinarySearchTree.print` method? The numbers identify the nodes. The data stored in the nodes is not shown.



- R17.10 Design an algorithm for finding the  $k$ th element (in sort order) of a binary search tree. How efficient is your algorithm?
- R17.11 Design an  $O(\log(n))$  algorithm for finding the  $k$ th element in a binary search tree, provided that each node has an instance variable containing the size of the subtree. Also describe how these instance variables can be maintained by the insertion and removal operations without affecting their big-Oh efficiency.

- R17.12** Design an algorithm for deciding whether two binary trees have the same shape. What is the running time of your algorithm?
- R17.13** Insert the following eleven words into a binary search tree:  
Mary had a little lamb. Its fleece was white as snow.  
Draw the resulting tree.
- R17.14** What is the result of printing the tree from Exercise R17.13 using preorder, inorder, and postorder traversals?
- R17.15** Locate nodes with no children, one child, and two children in the tree of Exercise R17.13. For each of them, show the tree of size 10 that is obtained after removing the node.
- R17.16** Repeat Exercise R17.13 for a red-black tree.
- R17.17** Repeat Exercise R17.15 for a red-black tree.
- R17.18** Show that a red-black tree with black height  $bh$  has at least  $2^{bh} - 1$  nodes. *Hint:* Look at the root. A black child has black height  $bh - 1$ . A red child must have two black children of black height  $bh - 1$ .



- R17.19** Let  $rbts(bh)$  be the number of red-black trees with black height  $bh$ . Give a recursive formula for  $rbts(bh)$  in terms of  $rbts(bh - 1)$ . How many red-black trees have heights 1, 2, and 3? *Hint:* Look at the hint for Exercise R17.18.
- R17.20** What is the maximum number of nodes in a red-black tree with black height  $bh$ ?
- R17.21** Show that any red-black tree must have fewer interior red nodes than it has black nodes.
- R17.22** Show that the “black root” rule for red-black trees is not essential. That is, if one allows trees with a red root, insertion and deletion still occur in  $O(\log(n))$  time.
- R17.23** Many textbooks use “dummy nodes”—black nodes with two `null` children—instead of regular `null` references in red-black trees. In this representation, all non-dummy nodes of a red-black tree have two children. How does this simplify the description of the removal algorithm?
- R17.24** Could a priority queue be implemented efficiently as a binary search tree? Give a detailed argument for your answer.
- R17.25** Will preorder, inorder, or postorder traversal print a heap in sorted order? Why or why not?
- R17.26** Prove that a heap of height  $h$  contains at least  $2^{h-1}$  elements but less than  $2^h$  elements.

**■■ R17.27** Suppose the heap nodes are stored in an array, starting with index 1. Prove that the child nodes of the heap node with index  $i$  have index  $2 \cdot i$  and  $2 \cdot i + 1$ , and the parent node of the heap node with index  $i$  has index  $i/2$ .

**■■ R17.28** Simulate the heapsort algorithm manually to sort the array

11 27 8 14 45 6 24 81 29 33

Show all steps.

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E17.1** Write a method that counts the number of all leaves in a tree.
- **E17.2** Add a method `countNodesWithOneChild` to the `BinaryTree` class.
- **E17.3** Add a method `swapChildren` that swaps all left and right children to the `BinaryTree` class.
- **E17.4** Implement the animal guessing game described in Section 17.2.1. Start with the tree in Figure 4, but present the leaves as “Is it a(n) X?” If it wasn’t, ask the user what the animal was, and ask for a question that is true for that animal but false for X. For example,

```
Is it a mammal? Y
Does it have stripes? N
Is it a pig? N
I give up. What is it? A hamster
Please give me a question that is true for a hamster and false for a pig.
Is it small and cuddly?
```

In this way, the program learns additional facts.

- **E17.5** Reimplement the `addNode` method of the `Node` class in `BinarySearchTree` as a static method of the `BinarySearchTree` class:

```
private static Node addNode(Node parent, Node newNode)
```

If `parent` is `null`, return `newNode`. Otherwise, recursively add `newNode` to `parent` and return `parent`. Your implementation should replace the three `null` checks in the `add` and original `addNode` methods with just one `null` check.

- **E17.6** Write a method of the `BinarySearchTree` class

```
Comparable smallest()
```

that returns the smallest element of a tree. You will also need to add a method to the `Node` class.

- **E17.7** Add methods

```
void preorder(Visitor v)
void inorder(Visitor v)
void postorder(Visitor v)
```

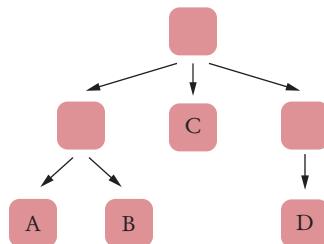
to the `BinaryTree` class of Section 17.2.

- **E17.8** Using a visitor, compute the average value of the elements in a binary tree filled with `Integer` objects.

- **E17.9** Add a method `void depthFirst(Visitor v)` to the `Tree` class of Section 17.4. Keep visiting until the `visit` method returns `false`.
- **E17.10** Implement an `inorder` method for the `BinaryTree` class of Section 17.2 so that it stops visiting when the `visit` method returns `false`. (*Hint:* Have `inorder` return `false` when `visit` returns `false`.)
- **E17.11** Write a method for the `RedBlackTree` class of Worked Example 17.2 that checks that the tree fulfills the rules for a red-black tree.
- **E17.12** Modify the implementation of the `MinHeap` class so that the parent and child index positions and elements are computed directly, without calling helper methods.
- **E17.13** Time the results of heapsort and merge sort. Which algorithm behaves better in practice?

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- **P17.1** A general tree (in which each node can have arbitrarily many children) can be implemented as a binary tree in this way: For each node with  $n$  children, use a chain of  $n$  binary nodes. Each `left` reference points to a child and each `right` reference points to the next node in the chain. Using the binary tree implementation of Section 17.2, implement a tree class with the same interface as the one in Section 17.1.
- **P17.2** A general tree in which all non-leaf nodes have `null` data can be implemented as a list of lists. For example, the tree



is the list `[[A, B], C, [D]]`.

Using the list implementation from Section 16.1, implement a tree class with the same interface as the one in Section 17.1. *Hint:* Use `n instanceof List` to check whether a list element `n` is a subtree or a leaf.

- **P17.3** Continue Exercise E17.4 and write the tree to a file when the program exits. Load the file when the program starts again.
- **P17.4** Change the `BinarySearchTree.print` method to print the tree as a tree shape. You can print the tree sideways. Extra credit if you instead display the tree with the root node centered on the top.
- **P17.5** In the `BinarySearchTree` class, modify the `remove` method so that a node with two children is replaced by the largest child of the left subtree.
- **P17.6** Reimplement the `remove` method in the `RedBlackTree` class of Worked Example 17.2 so that the node is first removed using the binary search tree removal algorithm, and the tree is rebalanced after removal.

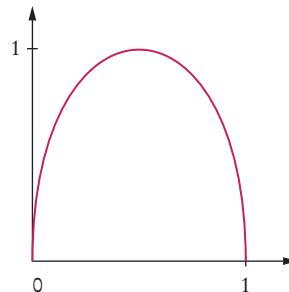
**••• P17.7** The ID3 algorithm describes how to build a decision tree for a given set of sample facts. The tree asks the most important questions first. We have a set of criteria (such as “Is it a mammal?”) and an objective that we want to decide (such as “Can it swim?”). Each fact has a value for each criterion and the objective. Here is a set of five facts about animals. (Each row is a fact.) There are four criteria and one objective (the columns of the table). For simplicity, we assume that the values of the criteria and objective are binary (Y or N).

Is it a mammal?	Does it have fur?	Does it have a tail?	Does it lay eggs?	Can it swim?
N	N	Y	Y	N
N	N	N	Y	Y
N	N	Y	Y	Y
Y	N	Y	N	Y
Y	Y	Y	N	N

We now need several definitions. Given any probability value  $p$  between 0 and 1, its uncertainty is

$$U(p) = -p \log_2(p) - (1-p)\log_2(1-p)$$

If  $p$  is 0 or 1, the outcome is certain, and the uncertainty  $U(p)$  is 0. If  $p = 1/2$ , then the outcome is completely uncertain and  $U(p) = 1$ .



Let  $n$  be the number of facts and  $n(c=Y)$  be the number of facts for which the criterion  $c$  has the value Y. Then the uncertainty  $U(c,o)$  that  $c$  contributes to the outcome  $o$  is the weighted average of two uncertainties:

$$U(c,o) = \frac{n(c=Y)}{n} \cdot U\left(\frac{n(c=Y, o=Y)}{n(c=Y)}\right) + \frac{n(c=N)}{n} \cdot U\left(\frac{n(c=N, o=Y)}{n(c=N)}\right)$$

Find the criterion  $c$  that minimizes the uncertainty  $U(c,o)$ . That question becomes the root of your tree. Recursively, repeat for the subsets of the facts for which  $c$  is Y (in the left subtree) and N (in the right subtree). If it happens that the objective is constant, then you have a leaf with an answer, and the recursion stops.

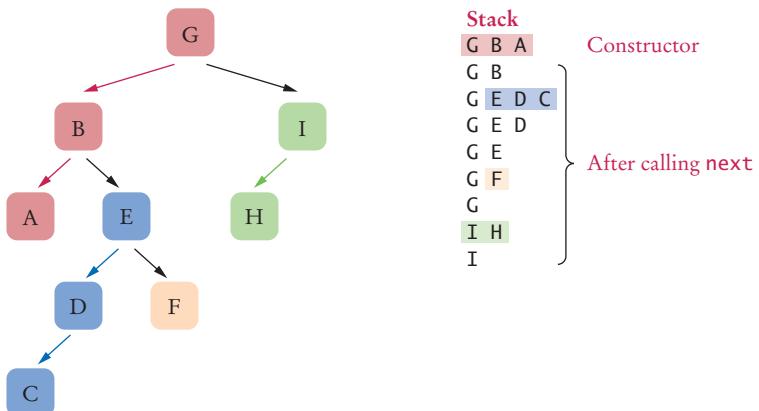
In our example, we have

Two out of five are mammals.	One of those two swims.	Three out of five aren't mammals.	Two of those three swim.
Is it a mammal?	$\frac{2}{5} \cdot U\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) + \frac{3}{5} \cdot U\left(\frac{2}{3}\right) = 0.95$		
Does it have fur?	$\frac{1}{5} \cdot U\left(\frac{0}{1}\right) + \frac{4}{5} \cdot U\left(\frac{3}{4}\right) = 0.65$		
Does it have a tail?	$\frac{4}{5} \cdot U\left(\frac{2}{4}\right) + \frac{1}{5} \cdot U\left(\frac{1}{1}\right) = 0.8$		
Does it lay eggs?	$\frac{3}{5} \cdot U\left(\frac{2}{3}\right) + \frac{2}{5} \cdot U\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = 0.95$		

Therefore, we choose “Does it have fur?” as our first criterion.

In the left subtree, look at the animals with fur. There is only one, a non-swimmer, so you can declare “It doesn’t swim.” For the right subtree, you now have four facts (the animals without fur) and three criteria. Repeat the process.

- P17.8 Modify the expression evaluator from Section 13.5 to produce an expression tree. (Note that the resulting tree is a binary tree but not a binary search tree.) Then use postorder traversal to evaluate the expression, using a stack for the intermediate results.
- P17.9 Implement an iterator for the `BinarySearchTree` class that visits the nodes in sorted order. Hint: In the constructor, keep pushing left nodes on a stack until you reach `null`. In each call to `next`, deliver the top of the stack as the visited node, but first push the left nodes in its right subtree.



- P17.10 Implement an iterator for the `RedBlackTree` class in Worked Example 17.2 that visits the nodes in sorted order. Hint: Take advantage of the parent links.
- P17.11 Modify the implementation of the `MinHeap` class so that the 0 element of the array is not wasted.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

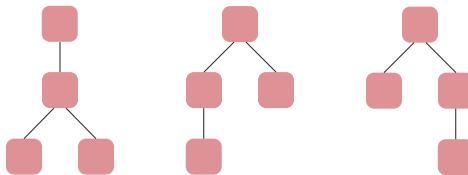
1. There are four paths:

Anne  
Anne, Peter  
Anne, Zara  
Anne, Peter, Savannah

2. There are three subtrees with three nodes—they have roots Charles, Andrew, and Edward.

- 3.

- 4.



5. If  $n$  is a leaf, the leaf count is 1.

Otherwise

Let  $c_1 \dots c_n$  be the children of  $n$ .  
The leaf count is  $\text{leafCount}(c_1) + \dots + \text{leafCount}(c_n)$ .

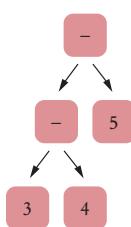
6. Tree t1 = new Tree("Anne");  
Tree t2 = new Tree("Peter");  
t1.addSubtree(t2);  
Tree t3 = new Tree("Zara");  
t1.addSubtree(t3);  
Tree t4 = new Tree("Savannah");  
t2.addSubtree(t4);

7. It is not. However, it calls a recursive method—the size method of the Node class.

8. A=10, L=0000, O=001, H=0001, therefore ALOHA = 100000001000110.

9. In the root.

- 10.



11. Figure 4: 6 leaves, 5 interior nodes.

Figure 5: 13 leaves, 12 interior nodes.

Figure 6: 3 leaves, 2 interior nodes.

You might guess from these data that the number of leaves always equals the

number of interior nodes + 1. That is true if all interior nodes have two children, but it is false otherwise—consider this tree whose root only has one child.



12. public class BinaryTree

```
{
    ...
    public int height()
    {
        if (root == null) { return 0; }
        else { return root.height(); }
    }

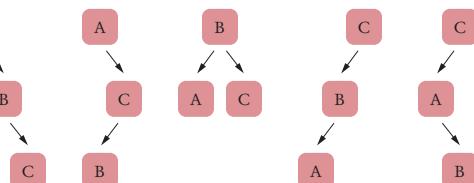
    class Node
    {
        ...
        public int height()
        {
            int leftHeight = 0;
            if (left != null)
            {
                leftHeight = left.height();
            }
            int rightHeight = 0;
            if (right != null)
            {
                rightHeight = right.height();
            }
            return 1 + Math.max(
                leftHeight, rightHeight);
        }
    }
}
```

This solution requires three `null` checks; the solution in Section 17.2.3 only requires one.

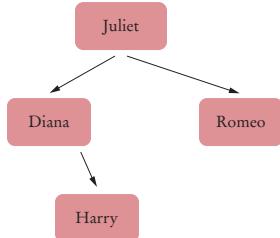
13. In a tree, each node can have any number of children. In a binary tree, a node has at most two children. In a balanced binary tree, all nodes have approximately as many descendants to the left as to the right.

14. Yes—because the binary search condition holds for all nodes of the tree, it holds for all nodes of the subtrees.

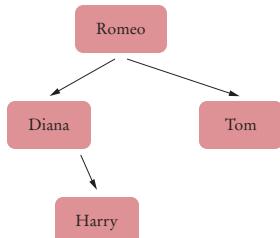
- 15.



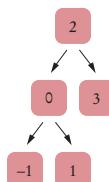
- 16.** For example, Sarah. Any string between Romeo and Tom will do.
- 17.** “Tom” has a single child. That child replaces “Tom” in the parent “Juliet”.



- 18.** “Juliet” has two children. We look for the smallest child in the right subtree, “Romeo”. The data replaces “Juliet”, and the node is removed from its parent “Tom”.



- 19.** For both trees, the inorder traversal is  $3 + 4 * 5$ .
- 20.** No—for example, consider the children of `+`. Even without looking up the Unicode values for `3`, `4`, and `+`, it is obvious that `+` isn’t between `3` and `4`.
- 21.** Because we need to call `v.counter` in order to retrieve the result.
- 22.** When the method returns to its caller, the caller can continue traversing the tree. For example, suppose the tree is

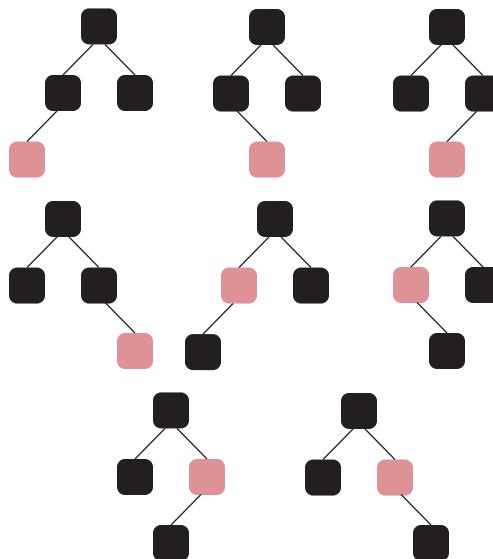


Let’s assume that we want to stop visiting as soon as we encounter a zero, so `visit` returns false when it receives a zero. We first call `inorder` on the node containing 2. That calls `inorder` on the node containing 0, which

calls `inorder` on the node containing `-1`. Then `visit` is called on 0, returning false. Therefore, `inorder` is not called on the node containing 1, and the `inorder` call on the node containing 0 is finished, returning to the `inorder` call on the root node. Now `visit` is called on 2, returning true, and the visitation continues, even though it shouldn’t. See Exercise E17.10 for a fix.

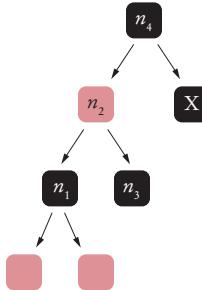
- 23.** AGIHFBEDC
- 24.** That’s the royal family tree, the first tree in the chapter: George V, Edward VIII, George VI, Mary, Henry, George, John, Elizabeth II.
- 25.** The root must be black, and the second or third node must also be black, because of the “no double reds” rule. The left `null` of the root has black height 1, but the `null` child of the next black node has black height 2.

- 26.**

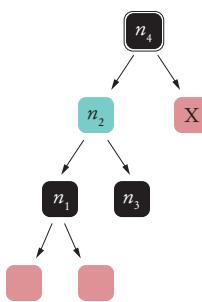


- 27.** The top red node can be the left or right child of the black parent, and the bottom red node can be the left or right child of its (red) parent, yielding four configurations.
- 28.** No. Look at the first tree. At the beginning,  $n_2$  must have been the inserted node. Because the tree was a valid red-black tree before insertion,  $t_1$  couldn’t have had a red root. Now consider the step after one double-red removal. The parent of  $n_2$  in Figure 22 may be red, but then  $n_2$  can’t have a red sibling—otherwise the tree would not have been a red-black tree.

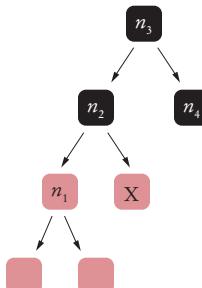
29. Consider this scenario, where X is the black leaf to be removed.



Bubble up:



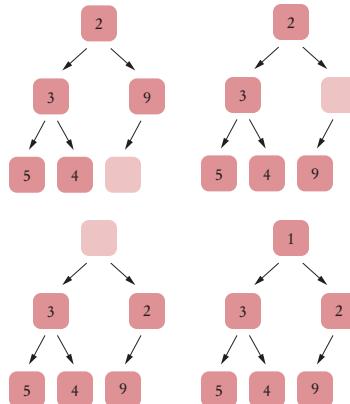
Fix the negative-red:



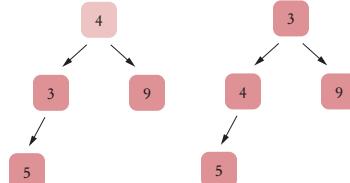
30. It goes away. Suppose the sibling of the red grandchild in Figure 21 is also red. That means that one of the  $t_i$  has a red root. However, all of them become children of the black  $n_1$  and  $n_3$  in Figure 22.

31. A priority queue is appropriate because we want to get the important events first, even if they have been inserted later.
32. 27. The next power of 2 greater than 100 is 128, and a completely filled tree has 127 nodes.
33. Generally not. For example, the heap in Figure 30 in preorder is 20 75 84 90 96 91 93 43 57 71.

- 34.



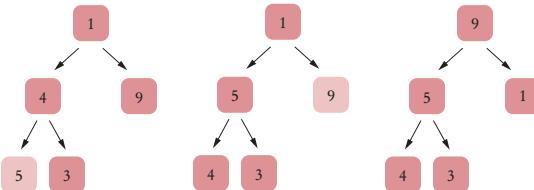
- 35.



36. Heapsort requires less storage because it doesn't need an auxiliary array.

37. The MinHeap wastes the 0 entry to make the formulas more intuitive. When sorting an array, we don't want to waste the 0 entry, so we adjust the formulas instead.

38. In tree form, that is



Remember, it's a max-heap!

39. The 9 is swapped with 3, and the heap is fixed up again, yielding  
5 4 3 1 | 9

40. Unfortunately not. The largest element is removed first, and it must be moved to the root, requiring  $O(\log(n))$  steps. The second-largest element is still toward the end of the array, again requiring  $O(\log(n))$  steps, and so on.

# GENERIC CLASSES

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To understand the objective of generic programming
- To implement generic classes and methods
- To explain the execution of generic methods in the virtual machine
- To describe the limitations of generic programming in Java



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### 18.1 GENERIC CLASSES AND TYPE PARAMETERS 820

### 18.2 IMPLEMENTING GENERIC TYPES 821

*Syntax 18.1:* Declaring a Generic Class 822

### 18.3 GENERIC METHODS 825

*Syntax 18.2:* Declaring a Generic Method 826

### 18.4 CONSTRAINING TYPE PARAMETERS 827

*Common Error 18.1:* Genericity and Inheritance 829

*Common Error 18.2:* The Array Store Exception 829

*Special Topic 18.1:* Wildcard Types 830

### 18.5 TYPE ERASURE 831

*Common Error 18.3:* Using Generic Types in a Static Context 834

*Special Topic 18.2:* Reflection 834

*Worked Example 18.1:* Making a Generic Binary Search Tree Class 



In the supermarket, a generic product can be sourced from multiple suppliers. In computer science, generic programming involves the design and implementation of data structures and algorithms that work for multiple types. You have already seen the generic `ArrayList` class that can be used to collect elements of arbitrary types. In this chapter, you will learn how to implement your own generic classes and methods.

## 18.1 Generic Classes and Type Parameters

**Generic programming** is the creation of programming constructs that can be used with many different types. For example, the Java library programmers who implemented the `ArrayList` class used the technique of generic programming. As a result, you can form array lists that collect elements of different types, such as `ArrayList<String>`, `ArrayList<BankAccount>`, and so on.

The `LinkedList` class that we implemented in Section 16.1 is also an example of generic programming—you can store objects of any class inside a `LinkedList`. That `LinkedList` class achieves genericity by using *inheritance*. It uses references of type `Object` and is therefore capable of storing objects of any class. For example, you can add elements of type `String` because the `String` class extends `Object`. In contrast, the `ArrayList` and `LinkedList` classes from the standard Java library are **generic classes**. Each of these classes has a **type parameter** for specifying the type of its elements. For example, an `ArrayList<String>` stores `String` elements.

When declaring a generic class, you supply a variable for each type parameter. For example, the standard library declares the class `ArrayList<E>`, where `E` is the **type variable** that denotes the element type. You use the same variable in the declaration of the methods, whenever you need to refer to that type. For example, the `ArrayList<E>` class declares methods

```
public void add(E element)
public E get(int index)
```

You could use another name, such as `ElementType`, instead of `E`. However, it is customary to use short, uppercase names for type variables.

In order to use a generic class, you need to *instantiate* the type parameter, that is, supply an actual type. You can supply any class or interface type, for example

```
ArrayList<BankAccount>
ArrayList<Measurable>
```

However, you cannot substitute any of the eight primitive types for a type parameter. It would be an error to declare an `ArrayList<double>`. Use the corresponding wrapper class instead, such as `ArrayList<Double>`.

When you instantiate a generic class, the type that you supply replaces all occurrences of the type variable in the declaration of the class. For example, the `add` method for `ArrayList<BankAccount>` has the type variable `E` replaced with the type `BankAccount`:

```
public void add(BankAccount element)
```

Contrast that with the `add` method of the `LinkedList` class in Chapter 16:

```
public void add(Object element)
```

In Java, generic programming can be achieved with inheritance or with type parameters.

A generic class has one or more type parameters.

Type parameters can be instantiated with class or interface types.

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download programs that demonstrate safety problems when using collections without type parameters.

Type parameters make generic code safer and easier to read.

**SELF CHECK**

The add method of the generic `ArrayList` class is safer. It is impossible to add a `String` object into an `ArrayList<BankAccount>`, but you can accidentally add a `String` into a `LinkedList` that is intended to hold bank accounts:

```
ArrayList<BankAccount> accounts1 = new ArrayList<BankAccount>();
LinkedList accounts2 = new LinkedList(); // Should hold BankAccount objects
accounts1.add("my savings"); // Compile-time error
accounts2.addFirst("my savings"); // Not detected at compile time
```

The latter will result in a class cast exception when some other part of the code retrieves the string, believing it to be a bank account:

```
BankAccount account = (BankAccount) accounts2.getFirst(); // Run-time error
```

Code that uses the generic `ArrayList` class is also easier to read. When you spot an `ArrayList<BankAccount>`, you know right away that it must contain bank accounts. When you see a `LinkedList`, you have to study the code to find out what it contains.

In Chapters 16 and 17, we used inheritance to implement generic linked lists, hash tables, and binary trees, because you were already familiar with the concept of inheritance. Using type parameters requires new syntax and additional techniques—those are the topic of this chapter.

1. The standard library provides a class `HashMap<K, V>` with key type `K` and value type `V`. Declare a hash map that maps strings to integers.
2. The binary search tree class in Chapter 17 is an example of generic programming because you can use it with any classes that implement the `Comparable` interface. Does it achieve generativity through inheritance or type parameters?
3. Does the following code contain an error? If so, is it a compile-time or run-time error?

```
ArrayList<Integer> a = new ArrayList<Integer>();
String s = a.get(0);
```

4. Does the following code contain an error? If so, is it a compile-time or run-time error?

```
ArrayList<Double> a = new ArrayList<Double>();
a.add(3);
```

5. Does the following code contain an error? If so, is it a compile-time or run-time error?

```
LinkedList a = new LinkedList();
a.addFirst("3.14");
double x = (Double) a.removeFirst();
```

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R18.4, R18.5, R18.6.

## 18.2 Implementing Generic Types

In this section, you will learn how to implement your own generic classes. We will write a very simple generic class that stores *pairs* of objects, each of which can have an arbitrary type. For example,

```
Pair<String, Integer> result = new Pair<String, Integer>("Harry Morgan", 1729);
```

## Syntax 18.1 Declaring a Generic Class

**Syntax**

```
modifier class GenericClassName<TypeVariable1, TypeVariable2, . . .>
{
    instance variables
    constructors
    methods
}
```

**A method with a variable return type**

```
Supply a variable for each type parameter.
```

```
public class Pair<T, S>
{
    private T first;           Instance variables with a variable data type
    private S second;
    . . .
    public T getFirst() { return first; }
    . . .
}
```

The `getFirst` and `getSecond` methods retrieve the first and second values of the pair:

```
String name = result.getFirst();
Integer number = result.getSecond();
```

This class can be useful when you implement a method that computes two values at the same time. A method cannot simultaneously return a `String` and an `Integer`, but it can return a single object of type `Pair<String, Integer>`.

The generic `Pair` class requires two type parameters, one for the type of the first element and one for the type of the second element.

We need to choose variables for the type parameters. It is considered good form to use short uppercase names for type variables, such as those in the following table:

Type Variable	Meaning
E	Element type in a collection
K	Key type in a map
V	Value type in a map
T	General type
S, U	Additional general types

Type variables of a generic class follow the class name and are enclosed in angle brackets.

You place the type variables for a generic class after the class name, enclosed in angle brackets (< and >):

```
public class Pair<T, S>
```

When you declare the instance variables and methods of the `Pair` class, use the variable `T` for the first element type and `S` for the second element type:

```
public class Pair<T, S>
{
```

```

private T first;
private S second;

public Pair(T firstElement, S secondElement)
{
    first = firstElement;
    second = secondElement;
}
public T getFirst() { return first; }
public S getSecond() { return second; }
}

```

Use type parameters for the types of generic instance variables, method parameter variables, and return values.

Some people find it simpler to start out with a regular class, choosing some actual types instead of the type parameters. For example,

```

public class Pair // Here we start out with a pair of String and Integer values
{
    private String first;
    private Integer second;

    public Pair(String firstElement, Integer secondElement)
    {
        first = firstElement;
        second = secondElement;
    }

    public String getFirst() { return first; }
    public Integer getSecond() { return second; }
}

```

Now it is an easy matter to replace all `String` types with the type variable `T` and all `Integer` types with the type variable `S`.

This completes the declaration of the generic `Pair` class. It is ready to use whenever you need to form a pair of two objects of arbitrary types.

The following sample program shows how to make use of a `Pair` for returning two values from a method.

### **section\_2/Pair.java**

```

1  /**
2   * This class collects a pair of elements of different types.
3   */
4  public class Pair<T, S>
5  {
6      private T first;
7      private S second;
8
9      /**
10      * Constructs a pair containing two given elements.
11      * @param firstElement the first element
12      * @param secondElement the second element
13      */
14      public Pair(T firstElement, S secondElement)
15      {
16          first = firstElement;
17          second = secondElement;
18      }
19

```

```

20  /**
21   * Gets the first element of this pair.
22   * @return the first element
23  */
24  public T getFirst() { return first; }
25
26  /**
27   * Gets the second element of this pair.
28   * @return the second element
29  */
30  public S getSecond() { return second; }
31
32  public String toString() { return "(" + first + ", " + second + ")"; }
33 }

```

### section\_2/PairDemo.java

```

1  public class PairDemo
2  {
3      public static void main(String[] args)
4      {
5          String[] names = { "Tom", "Diana", "Harry" };
6          Pair<String, Integer> result = firstContaining(names, "a");
7          System.out.println(result.getFirst());
8          System.out.println("Expected: Diana");
9          System.out.println(result.getSecond());
10         System.out.println("Expected: 1");
11     }
12
13     /**
14      * Gets the first String containing a given string, together
15      * with its index.
16      * @param strings an array of strings
17      * @param sub a string
18      * @return a pair (strings[i], i) where strings[i] is the first
19      * strings[i] containing str, or a pair (null, -1) if there is no
20      * match.
21     */
22     public static Pair<String, Integer> firstContaining(
23         String[] strings, String sub)
24     {
25         for (int i = 0; i < strings.length; i++)
26         {
27             if (strings[i].contains(sub))
28             {
29                 return new Pair<String, Integer>(strings[i], i);
30             }
31         }
32         return new Pair<String, Integer>(null, -1);
33     }
34 }

```

### Program Run

```

Diana
Expected: Diana
1
Expected: 1

```

**SELF CHECK**

6. How would you use the generic `Pair` class to construct a pair of strings "Hello" and "World"?
7. How would you use the generic `Pair` class to construct a pair containing "Hello" and 1729?
8. What is the difference between an `ArrayList<Pair<String, Integer>>` and a `Pair<ArrayList<String>, Integer>`?
9. Write a method `roots` with a `Double` parameter variable `x` that returns both the positive and negative square root of `x` if `x ≥ 0` or `null` otherwise.
10. How would you implement a class `Triple` that collects three values of arbitrary types?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E18.1, E18.2, E18.6.

## 18.3 Generic Methods

A generic method is a method with a type parameter.

A **generic method** is a method with a type parameter. Such a method can occur in a class that in itself is not generic. You can think of it as a template for a set of methods that differ only by one or more types. For example, we may want to declare a method that can print an array of any type:

```
public class ArrayUtil
{
    /**
     * Prints all elements in an array.
     * @param a the array to print
     */
    public static <T> void print(T[] a)
    {
        . .
    }
    . .
}
```

As described in the previous section, it is often easier to see how to implement a generic method by starting with a concrete example. This method prints the elements in an array of *strings*:

```
public class ArrayUtil
{
    public static void print(String[] a)
    {
        for (String e : a)
        {
            System.out.print(e + " ");
        }
        System.out.println();
    }
    . .
}
```

## Syntax 18.2 Declaring a Generic Method

**Syntax**

```
modifiers <TypeVariable1, TypeVariable2, . . .> returnType methodName(parameters)
{
    body
}
```

Supply the type variable before the return type.

```
public static <E> String toString(ArrayList<E> a)
{
    String result = "";
    for (E e : a)
    {
        result = result + e + " ";
    }
    return result;
}
```

Local variable with a  
variable data type

Supply the type parameters of a generic method between the modifiers and the method return type.

In order to make the method into a generic method, replace `String` with a type variable, say `E`, to denote the element type of the array. Add a type parameter list, enclosed in angle brackets, between the modifiers (`public static`) and the return type (`void`):

```
public static <E> void print(E[] a)
{
    for (E e : a)
    {
        System.out.print(e + " ");
    }
    System.out.println();
}
```

When calling a generic method, you need not instantiate the type parameters.

When you call the generic method, you need not specify which type to use for the type parameter. (In this regard, generic methods differ from generic classes.) Simply call the method with appropriate arguments, and the compiler will match up the type parameters with the argument types. For example, consider this method call:

```
Rectangle[] rectangles = . . .;
ArrayUtil.print(rectangles);
```

The type of the `rectangles` argument is `Rectangle[]`, and the type of the parameter variable is `E[]`. The compiler deduces that `E` is `Rectangle`.

This particular generic method is a static method in an ordinary class. You can also declare generic methods that are not static. You can even have generic methods in generic classes.

As with generic classes, you cannot replace type parameters with primitive types. The generic `print` method can print arrays of any type *except* the eight primitive types. For example, you cannot use the generic `print` method to print an array of type `int[]`. That is not a major problem. Simply implement a `print(int[] a)` method in addition to the generic `print` method.

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**  
Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program with a generic method for printing an array of objects and a non-generic method for printing an array of integers.

### SELF CHECK



11. Exactly what does the generic `print` method print when you pass an array of `BankAccount` objects containing two bank accounts with zero balances?
12. Is the `getFirst` method of the `Pair` class a generic method?

- 13.** Consider this `fill` method:

```
public static <T> void fill(List<T> lst, T value)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < lst.size(); i++) { lst.set(i, value); }
```

If you have an array list

```
ArrayList<String> a = new ArrayList<String>(10);
how do you fill it with ten "*"?
```

- 14.** What happens if you pass 42 instead of "\*" to the `fill` method?

- 15.** Consider this `fill` method:

```
public static <T> fill(T[] arr, T value)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < arr.length; i++) { arr[i] = value; }
```

What happens when you execute the following statements?

```
String[] a = new String[10];
fill(a, 42);
```

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E18.3, E18.14.

## 18.4 Constraining Type Parameters

Type parameters  
can be constrained  
with bounds.

It is often necessary to specify what types can be used in a generic class or method. Consider a generic method that finds the average of the values in an array list of objects. How can you compute averages when you know nothing about the element type? You need to have a mechanism for measuring the elements. In Section 10.1, we designed an interface for that purpose:

```
public interface Measurable
{
    double getMeasure();
}
```



*You can place restrictions on the type parameters of generic classes and methods.*

We can constrain the type of the elements, requiring that the type implement the `Measurable` type. In Java, this is achieved by adding the clause `extends Measurable` after the type parameter:

```
public static <E extends Measurable> double average(ArrayList<E> objects)
```

This means, “`E` or one of its superclasses extends or implements `Measurable`”. In this situation, we say that `E` is a subtype of the `Measurable` type.

Here is the complete average method:

```
public static <E extends Measurable> double average(ArrayList<E> objects)
{
    if (objects.size() == 0) { return 0; }
    double sum = 0;
    for (E obj : objects)
    {
```

```

        sum = sum + obj.getMeasure();
    }
    return sum / objects.size();
}

```

Note the call `obj.getMeasure()`. The variable `obj` has type `E`, and `E` is a subtype of `Measurable`. Therefore, we know that it is legal to apply the `getMeasure` method to `obj`.

If the `BankAccount` class implements the `Measurable` interface, then you can call the `average` method with an array list of `BankAccount` objects. But you cannot compute the average of an array list of strings because the `String` class does not implement the `Measurable` interface.

Now consider the task of finding the minimum in an array list. We can return the element with the smallest measure (see Self Check 17). However, the `Measurable` interface was created for this book and is not widely used. Instead, we will use the `Comparable` interface type that many classes implement. The `Comparable` interface is itself a generic type. The type parameter specifies the type of the parameter variable of the `compareTo` method:

```

public interface Comparable<T>
{
    int compareTo(T other);
}

```

For example, `String` implements `Comparable<String>`. You can compare strings with other strings, but not with objects of different classes.

If the array list has elements of type `E`, then we want to require that `E` implements `Comparable<E>`. Here is the method:

```

public static <E extends Comparable<E>> E min(ArrayList<E> objects)
{
    E smallest = objects.get(0);
    for (int i = 1; i < objects.size(); i++)
    {
        E obj = objects.get(i);
        if (obj.compareTo(smallest) < 0)
        {
            smallest = obj;
        }
    }
    return smallest;
}

```

Because of the type constraint, we know that `obj` has a method

```
int compareTo(E other)
```

Therefore, the call

```
obj.compareTo(smallest)
```

is valid.

Very occasionally, you need to supply two or more type bounds. Then you separate them with the `&` character, for example

```
<E extends Comparable<E> & Measurable>
```

The `extends` reserved word, when applied to type parameters, actually means “extends or implements”. The bounds can be either classes or interfaces, and the type parameter can be replaced with a class or interface type.

#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates a constraint on a type parameter.

**SELF CHECK**

- 16.** How would you constrain the type parameter for a generic `BinarySearchTree` class?
- 17.** Modify the `min` method to compute the minimum of an array list of elements that implements the `Measurable` interface.
- 18.** Could we have declared the `min` method of Self Check 17 without type parameters, like this?  

```
public static Measurable min(ArrayList<Measurable> a)
```
- 19.** Could we have declared the `min` method of Self Check 17 without type parameters for arrays, like this?  

```
public static Measurable min(Measurable[] a)
```
- 20.** How would you implement the generic `average` method for arrays?
- 21.** Is it necessary to use a generic `average` method for arrays of measurable objects?

**Practice It**

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E18.4, E18.15.

**Common Error 18.1****Genericity and Inheritance**

If `SavingsAccount` is a subclass of `BankAccount`, is `ArrayList<SavingsAccount>` a subclass of `ArrayList<BankAccount>`? Perhaps surprisingly, it is not. Inheritance of type parameters does not lead to inheritance of generic classes. There is no relationship between `ArrayList<SavingsAccount>` and `ArrayList<BankAccount>`.

This restriction is necessary for type checking. Without the restriction, it would be possible to add objects of unrelated types to a collection. Suppose it was possible to assign an `ArrayList<SavingsAccount>` object to a variable of type `ArrayList<BankAccount>`:

```
ArrayList<SavingsAccount> savingsAccounts = new ArrayList<SavingsAccount>();
ArrayList<BankAccount> bankAccounts = savingsAccounts;
    // Not legal, but suppose it was
BankAccount harrysChecking = new CheckingAccount();
    // CheckingAccount is another subclass of BankAccount
bankAccounts.add(harrysChecking); // OK—can add BankAccount object
```

But `bankAccounts` and `savingsAccounts` refer to the same array list! If the assignment was legal, we would be able to add a `CheckingAccount` into an `ArrayList<SavingsAccount>`.

In many situations, this limitation can be overcome by using wildcards—see Special Topic 18.1.

**Common Error 18.2****The Array Store Exception**

In Common Error 18.1, you saw that one cannot assign a subclass list to a superclass list. For example, an `ArrayList<SavingsAccount>` cannot be used where an `ArrayList<BankAccount>` is expected.

This is surprising, because you *can* perform the equivalent assignment with arrays. For example,

```
SavingsAccount[] savingsAccounts = new SavingsAccount[10];
BankAccount bankAccounts = savingsAccounts; // Legal
```

But there was a reason the assignment wasn't legal for array lists—it would have allowed storing a `CheckingAccount` into `savingsAccounts`.

Let's try that with arrays:

```
BankAccount harrysChecking = new CheckingAccount();
bankAccounts[0] = harrysChecking; // Throws ArrayStoreException
```

This code compiles. The object `harrysChecking` is a `CheckingAccount` and hence a `BankAccount`. But `bankAccounts` and `savingsAccounts` are references to the same array—an array of type `SavingsAccount[]`. When the program runs, that array refuses to store a `CheckingAccount`, and throws an `ArrayStoreException`.

Both `ArrayList` and arrays avoid the type error, but they do it in different ways. The `ArrayList` class avoids it at compile time, and arrays avoid it at run time. Generally, we prefer a compile-time error notification, but the cost is steep, as you can see from Special Topic 18.1. It is a lot of work to tell the compiler precisely which conversions should be permitted.

### Special Topic 18.1



### Wildcard Types

It is often necessary to formulate subtle constraints on type parameters. Wildcard types were invented for this purpose. There are three kinds of wildcard types:

Name	Syntax	Meaning
Wildcard with lower bound	? extends B	Any subtype of B
Wildcard with upper bound	? super B	Any supertype of B
Unbounded wildcard	?	Any type

A wildcard type is a type that can remain unknown. For example, we can declare the following method in the `LinkedList<E>` class:

```
public void addAll(LinkedList<? extends E> other)
{
    ListIterator<E> iter = other.listIterator();
    while (iter.hasNext())
    {
        add(iter.next());
    }
}
```

The method adds all elements of `other` to the end of the linked list.

The `addAll` method doesn't require a specific type for the element type of `other`. Instead, it allows you to use any type that is a subtype of `E`. For example, you can use `addAll` to add a `LinkedList<SavingsAccount>` to a `LinkedList<BankAccount>`.

To see a wildcard with a super bound, have another look at the `min` method:

```
public static <E extends Comparable<E>> E min(ArrayList<E> objects)
```

However, this bound is too restrictive. Suppose the `BankAccount` class implements `Comparable<BankAccount>`. Then the subclass `SavingsAccount` also implements `Comparable<BankAccount>` and *not* `Comparable<SavingsAccount>`. If you want to use the `min` method with a `SavingsAccount` array list, then the type parameter of the `Comparable` interface should be *any supertype* of the array list's element type:

```
public static <E extends Comparable<? super E>> E min(ArrayList<E> objects)
```

Here is an example of an unbounded wildcard. The `Collections` class declares a method

```
public static void reverse(List<?> list)
```

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that demonstrates the need for wildcards.

You can think of that declaration as a shorthand for

```
public static <T> void reverse(List<T> list)
```

Common Error 18.2 compares this limitation with the seemingly more permissive behavior of arrays in Java.

## 18.5 Type Erasure

The virtual machine erases type parameters, replacing them with their bounds or `Object`.

Because generic types are a fairly recent addition to the Java language, the virtual machine that executes Java programs does not work with generic classes or methods. Instead, type parameters are “erased”, that is, they are replaced with ordinary Java types. Each type parameter is replaced with its bound, or with `Object` if it is not bounded.

For example, the generic class `Pair<T, S>` turns into the following raw class:

```
public class Pair
{
    private Object first;
    private Object second;

    public Pair(Object firstElement, Object secondElement)
    {
        first = firstElement;
        second = secondElement;
    }
    public Object getFirst() { return first; }
    public Object getSecond() { return second; }
}
```

As you can see, the type parameters `T` and `S` have been replaced by `Object`. The result is an ordinary class.

The same process is applied to generic methods. Consider this method:

```
public static <E extends Measurable> E min(E[] objects)
{
    E smallest = objects[0];
    for (int i = 1; i < objects.length; i++)
    {
        E obj = objects[i];
        if (obj.getMeasure() < smallest.getMeasure())
        {
            smallest = obj;
        }
    }
    return smallest;
}
```

*In the Java virtual machine, generic types are erased.*



When erasing the type parameter, it is replaced with its bound, the `Measurable` interface:

```
public static Measurable min(Measurable[] objects)
{
    Measurable smallest = objects[0];
    for (int i = 1; i < objects.length; i++)
    {
        Measurable obj = objects[i];
        if (obj.getMeasure() < smallest.getMeasure())
        {
            smallest = obj;
        }
    }
    return smallest;
}
```

You cannot construct objects or arrays of a generic type.

Knowing about type erasure helps you understand the limitations of Java generics. For example, you cannot construct new objects of a generic type. The following method, which tries to fill an array with copies of default objects, would be wrong:

```
public static <E> void fillWithDefaults(E[] a)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
    {
        a[i] = new E(); // ERROR
    }
}
```

To see why this is a problem, carry out the type erasure process, as if you were the compiler:

```
public static void fillWithDefaults(Object[] a)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
    {
        a[i] = new Object(); // Not useful
    }
}
```

Of course, if you start out with a `Rectangle[]` array, you don't want it to be filled with `Object` instances. But that's what the code would do after erasing types.

In situations such as this one, the compiler will report an error. You then need to come up with another mechanism for solving your problem. In this particular example, you can supply a default object:

```
public static <E> void fill(E[] a, E defaultValue)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
    {
        a[i] = defaultValue;
    }
}
```

Similarly, you cannot construct an array of a generic type:

```
public class Stack<E>
{
    private E[] elements;
    ...
    public Stack()
    {
        elements = new E[MAX_SIZE]; // Error
    }
}
```

```

        }
    }
}
```

Because the array construction expression `new E[]` would be erased to `new Object[]`, the compiler disallows it. A remedy is to use an array list instead:

```

public class Stack<E>
{
    private ArrayList<E> elements;
    .
    .
    public Stack()
    {
        elements = new ArrayList<E>(); // Ok
    }
    .
}
```

Another solution is to use an array of objects and provide a cast when reading elements from the array:

```

public class Stack<E>
{
    private Object[] elements;
    private int currentSize;
    .
    .
    public Stack()
    {
        elements = new Object[MAX_SIZE]; // Ok
    }
    .
    .
    public E pop()
    {
        size--;
        return (E) elements[currentSize];
    }
}
```

The cast `(E)` generates a warning because it cannot be checked at run time.

These limitations are frankly awkward. It is hoped that a future version of Java will no longer erase types so that the current restrictions due to erasure can be lifted.



#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download a program that shows how to implement a generic stack as an array of objects.

#### SELF CHECK



22. Suppose we want to eliminate the type bound in the `min` method of Section 18.5, by declaring the parameter variable as an array of `Comparable<E>` objects. Why doesn't this work?
23. What is the erasure of the `print` method in Section 18.3?
24. Could the `Stack` example be implemented as follows?

```

public class Stack<E>
{
    private E[] elements;
    .
    .
    public Stack()
    {
        elements = (E[]) new Object[MAX_SIZE];
    }
    .
}
```

- 25.** The `ArrayList<E>` class has a method

```
Object[] toArray()
```

Why doesn't the method return an `E[]`?

- 26.** The `ArrayList<E>` class has a second method

```
E[] toArray(E[] a)
```

Why can this method return an array of type `E[]`? (*Hint:* Special Topic 18.2.)

- 27.** Why can't the method

```
static <T> T[] copyOf(T[] original, int newLength)
```

be implemented without reflection?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R18.11, R18.14, E18.17.

### Common Error 18.3



#### Using Generic Types in a Static Context

You cannot use type parameters to declare static variables, static methods, or static inner classes. For example, the following would be illegal:

```
public class LinkedList<E>
{
    private static E defaultValue; // ERROR
    .
    .
    public static List<E> replicate(E value, int n) { . . . } // ERROR
    private static class Node { public E data; public Node next; } // ERROR
}
```

In the case of static variables, this restriction is very sensible. After the generic types are erased, there is only a single variable `LinkedList.defaultValue`, whereas the static variable declaration gives the false impression that there is a separate variable for each `LinkedList<E>`.

For static methods and inner classes, there is an easy workaround; simply add a type parameter:

```
public class LinkedList<E>
{
    .
    .
    public static <T> List<T> replicate(T value, int n) { . . . } // OK
    private static class Node<T> { public T data; public Node<T> next; } // OK
}
```

### Special Topic 18.2



#### Reflection

As you have seen, type erasure makes it impossible for a generic method to construct a generic array. There is an advanced technique called *reflection* that you can sometimes use to overcome this limitation. Reflection lets you work with classes in a running program.

In Java, the virtual machine keeps a `Class` object for each class that has been loaded. That object has information about each class, as well as methods to construct new objects of the class.

Given an object, you can get its class object by calling `getClass`:

```
Class objsClass = obj.getClass();
```

You can then make a new instance of that class by calling the `newInstance` method:

```
Object newObj = objsClass.newInstance();
```

This method throws an exception if it cannot access a constructor with no arguments.

Given an array, you can get the type of the elements this way:

```
Class arrayClass = array.getClass();
Class elementClass = arrayClass.getComponentType();
```

If you want to create a new array, use the `Array.newInstance` method:

```
Object[] newArray = Array.newInstance(elementClass, length);
```

Using these methods, you can implement the `fillWithDefaults` method:

```
public static <E> void fillWithDefaults(E[] a)
{
    Class arrayClass = a.getClass();
    Class elementClass = arrayClass.getComponentType();
    try
    {
        for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
        {
            a[i] = elementClass.newInstance();
        }
    }
    catch (...) { . . . }
}
```

Note that we must ask for the element type of `a`. It does no good asking for `a[0].getClass`. The array might have length 0, or `a[0]` might be `null`, or `a[0]` might be an instance of a subclass of `E`.

Here is another example. The `Arrays` class implements a method

```
static <T> T[] copyOf(T[] original, int newLength)
```

That method can't simply call

```
T[] result = new T[newLength]; // Error
```

Instead, it must construct a new array with the same element type as the original:

```
Class arrayClass = original.getClass();
Class elementClass = arrayClass.getComponentType();
T[] newArray = (T[]) Array.newInstance(elementClass, newLength);
```

For this technique to work, you must have an element or array of the desired type. You couldn't use it to build a `Stack<E>` that uses an `E[]` array because the stack starts out empty.



## WORKED EXAMPLE 18.1

### Making a Generic Binary Search Tree Class

Learn how to turn the binary search tree class from Chapter 17 into a generic `BinarySearchTree<E>` class that stores elements of type `E`. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 18.1.

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### Describe generic classes and type parameters.



- In Java, generic programming can be achieved with inheritance or with type parameters.
- A generic class has one or more type parameters.
- Type parameters can be instantiated with class or interface types.
- Type parameters make generic code safer and easier to read.

### Implement generic classes and interfaces.

- Type variables of a generic class follow the class name and are enclosed in angle brackets.
- Use type parameters for the types of generic instance variables, method parameter variables, and return values.

### Implement generic methods.

- A generic method is a method with a type parameter.
- Supply the type parameters of a generic method between the modifiers and the method return type.
- When calling a generic method, you need not instantiate the type parameters.

### Specify constraints on type parameters.



- Type parameters can be constrained with bounds.

### Recognize how erasure of type parameters places limitations on generic programming in Java.



- The virtual machine erases type parameters, replacing them with their bounds or Objects.
- You cannot construct objects or arrays of a generic type.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

- **R18.1** What is a type parameter?
- **R18.2** What is the difference between a generic class and an ordinary class?
- **R18.3** What is the difference between a generic class and a generic method?
- **R18.4** Find an example of a non-static generic method in the standard Java library.

- R18.5** Find four examples of a generic class with two type parameters in the standard Java library.
- R18.6** Find an example of a generic class in the standard library that is not a collection class.
- R18.7** Why is a bound required for the type parameter *T* in the following method?  
`<T extends Comparable> int binarySearch(T[] a, T key)`
- R18.8** Why is a bound not required for the type parameter *E* in the `HashSet<E>` class?
- R18.9** What is an `ArrayList<Pair<T, T>>`?
- R18.10** Explain the type bounds of the following method of the `Collections` class.  
`public static <T extends Comparable<? super T>> void sort(List<T> a)`  
 Why doesn't `T extends Comparable` or `T extends Comparable<T>` suffice?
- R18.11** What happens when you pass an `ArrayList<String>` to a method with an `ArrayList` parameter variable? Try it out and explain.
- R18.12** What happens when you pass an `ArrayList<String>` to a method with an `ArrayList` parameter variable, and the method stores an object of type `BankAccount` into the array list? Try it out and explain.
- R18.13** What is the result of the following test?  
`ArrayList<BankAccount> accounts = new ArrayList<BankAccount>();  
if (accounts instanceof ArrayList<String>) . . .`  
 Try it out and explain.
- R18.14** The `ArrayList<E>` class in the standard Java library must manage an array of objects of type *E*, yet it is not legal to construct a generic array of type `E[]` in Java. Locate the implementation of the `ArrayList` class in the library source code that is a part of the JDK. Explain how this problem is overcome.

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- E18.1** Modify the generic `Pair` class so that both values have the same type.
- E18.2** Add a method `swap` to the `Pair` class of Exercise E18.1 that swaps the first and second elements of the pair.
- E18.3** Implement a static generic method `PairUtil.swap` whose argument is a `Pair` object, using the generic class declared in Section 18.2. The method should return a new pair, with the first and second element swapped.
- E18.4** Implement a generic version of the binary search algorithm.
- E18.5** Implement a generic version of the selection sort algorithm.
- E18.6** Implement a generic version of the merge sort algorithm. Your program should compile without warnings.
- E18.7** Implement a generic version of the `LinkedList` class of Chapter 16.
- E18.8** Turn the `HashSet` implementation of Chapter 16 into a generic class. Use an array list instead of an array to store the buckets.

- E18.9 Provide suitable hashCode and equals methods for the Pair class of Section 18.2 and implement a HashMap class, using a HashSet<Pair<K, V>>.
- E18.10 Implement a generic version of the permutation generator in Section 13.4. Generate all permutations of a List<E>.
- E18.11 Write a generic static method print that prints the elements of any object that implements the Iterable<E> interface. The elements should be separated by commas. Place your method into an appropriate utility class.
- E18.12 Turn the MinHeap class of Chapter 17 into a generic class. As with the TreeSet class of the standard library, allow a Comparator to compare elements. If no comparator is supplied, assume that the element type implements the Comparable interface.
- E18.13 Make the Measurer interface from Chapter 10 into a generic class. Provide a static method T max(T[] values, Measurer<T> meas).
- E18.14 Provide a static method void append(ArrayList<T> a, ArrayList<T> b) that appends the elements of b to a.
- E18.15 Modify the method of Exercise E18.14 so that the second array list can contain elements of a subclass. For example, if people is an ArrayList<Person> and students is an ArrayList<Student>, then append(people, students) should compile but append(students, people) should not.
- E18.16 Modify the method of Exercise E18.14 so that it leaves the first array list unchanged and returns a new array list containing the elements of both array lists.
- E18.17 Modify the method of Exercise E18.16 so that it receives and returns arrays, not array lists. Hint: Arrays.copyOf.
- E18.18 Provide a static method that reverses the elements of a generic array list.
- E18.19 Provide a static method that returns the reverse of a generic array list, without modifying the original list.
- E18.20 Provide a static method that checks whether a generic array list is a palindrome; that is, whether the values at index i and n - 1 - i are equal to each other, where n is the size of the array list.
- E18.21 Provide a static method that checks whether the elements of a generic array list are in increasing order. The elements must be comparable.

### PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- P18.1 Write a static generic method PairUtil.minmax that computes the minimum and maximum elements of an array of type T and returns a pair containing the minimum and maximum value. Require that the array elements implement the Measurable interface of Chapter 10.
- P18.2 Repeat Exercise P18.1, but require that the array elements implement the Comparable interface.
- P18.3 Repeat Exercise P18.2, but refine the bound of the type parameter to extend the generic Comparable type.

- P18.4** Make the `Measurable` interface from Chapter 10 into a generic class. Provide a static method that returns the largest element of an `ArrayList<T>`, provided that the elements are instances of `Measurable<T>`. Be sure to return a value of type `T`.
- P18.5** Enhance Exercise P18.4 so that the elements of the `ArrayList<T>` can implement `Measurable<U>` for appropriate types `U`.

### ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. `HashMap<String, Integer>`
2. It uses inheritance.
3. This is a compile-time error. You cannot assign the `Integer` expression `a.get(0)` to a string.
4. This is a compile-time error. The compiler won't convert 3 to a `Double`. *Remedy:* Call `a.add(3.0)`.
5. This is a run-time error. `a.removeFirst()` yields a `String` that cannot be converted into a `Double`. *Remedy:* Call `a.addFirst(3.14)`;
6. `new Pair<String, String>"Hello", "World")`
7. `new Pair<String, Integer>"Hello", 1729)`
8. An `ArrayList<Pair<String, Integer>>` contains multiple pairs, for example `[(Tom, 1), (Harry, 3)]`. A `Pair<ArrayList<String>, Integer>` contains a list of strings and a single integer, such as `([Tom, Harry], 1)`.
9.

```
public static Pair<Double, Double> roots(
    Double x)
{
    if (x >= 0)
    {
        double r = Math.sqrt(x);
        return new Pair<Double, Double>(r, -r);
    }
    else { return null; }
}
```
10. You have three type parameters: `Triple<T, S, U>`. Add an instance variable `U` `third`, a constructor argument for initializing it, and a method `U getThird()` for returning it.
11. The output depends on the implementation of the `toString` method in the `BankAccount` class.
12. No—the method has no type parameters. It is an ordinary method in a generic class.
13. `fill(a, "")`
14. You get a compile-time error. An `integer` cannot be converted to a `string`.
15. You get a run-time error. Unfortunately, the call compiles, with `T = Object`. This choice is justified because a `String[]` array is convertible to an `Object[]` array, and 42 becomes new `Integer(42)`, which is convertible to an `Object`. But when the program tries to store an `Integer` in the `String[]` array, an exception is thrown.
16.

```
public class BinarySearchTree<E
    extends Comparable<E>>
or, if you read Special Topic 18.1,
public class BinarySearchTree<E
    extends Comparable<? super E>>
```
17.

```
public static <E extends Measurable> E min(
    ArrayList<E> objects)
{
    E smallest = objects.get(0);
    for (int i = 1; i < objects.size(); i++)
    {
        E obj = objects.get(i);
        if (obj.getMeasure()
            < smallest.getMeasure())
        {
            smallest = obj;
        }
    }
    return smallest;
}
```
18. No. As described in Common Error 18.1, you cannot convert an `ArrayList<BankAccount>` to an `ArrayList<Measurable>`, even if `BankAccount` implements `Measurable`.
19. Yes, but this method would not be as useful. Suppose `accounts` is an array of `BankAccount` objects. With this method, `min(accounts)` would return a result of type `Measurable`, whereas the generic method yields a `BankAccount`.

**20.** `public static <E extends Measurable>  
 double average(E[] objects)  
{  
 if (objects.length == 0) { return 0; }  
 double sum = 0;  
 for (E obj : objects)  
 {  
 sum = sum + obj.getMeasure();  
 }  
 return sum / objects.length;  
}`

**21.** No. You can define

```
public static double average(  
    Measurable[] objects)  
{  
    if (objects.length == 0) { return 0; }  
    double sum = 0;  
    for (Measurable obj : objects)  
    {  
        sum = sum + obj.getMeasure();  
    }  
    return sum / objects.length;  
}
```

For example, if `BankAccount` implements `Measurable`, a `BankAccount[]` array is convertible to a `Measurable[]` array. Contrast with Self Check 19, where the return type was a generic type. Here, the return type is `double`, and there is no need for using generic types.

**22.** `public static <E> Comparable<E> min(  
 Comparable<E>[] objects)`

is an error. You cannot have an array of a generic type.

**23.** `public static void print(Object[] a)  
{  
 for (Object e : a)  
 {  
 System.out.print(e + " ");  
 }  
 System.out.println();  
}`

**24.** This code compiles (with a warning), but it is a poor technique. In the future, if type erasure no longer happens, the code will be wrong. The cast from `Object[]` to `String[]` will cause a class cast exception.

**25.** Internally, `ArrayList` uses an `Object[]` array. Because of type erasure, it can't make an `E[]` array. The best it can do is make a copy of its internal `Object[]` array.

**26.** It can use reflection to discover the element type of the parameter `a`, and then construct another array with that element type (or just call the `Arrays.copyOf` method).

**27.** The method needs to construct a new array of type `T`. However, that is not possible in Java without reflection.

# GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACES



## CHAPTER GOALS

- To use layout managers to arrange user-interface components in a container
- To use text components to capture and display text in a graphical application
- To become familiar with common user-interface components, such as radio buttons, check boxes, and menus
- To browse the Java documentation effectively

## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### **19.1 LAYOUT MANAGEMENT** 842

*Common Error 19.1:* By Default, Components Have Zero Width and Height 845

*Special Topic 19.1:* Adding the main Method to the Frame Class 846

### **19.2 PROCESSING TEXT INPUT** 846

### **19.3 CHOICES** 852

*How To 19.1:* Laying Out a User Interface 859

*Worked Example 19.1:* Programming a Working Calculator 

*Programming Tip 19.1:* Use a GUI Builder 862

### **19.4 MENUS** 863

### **19.5 EXPLORING THE SWING DOCUMENTATION** 869



The graphical applications with which you are familiar have many visual gadgets for information entry: text fields, buttons, scroll bars, menus, and so on. In this chapter, you will learn how to create programs that use the most common user-interface components in the Java Swing toolkit. We also show you how to effectively use the documentation for Swing components, so you can make use of additional components in your applications.

## 19.1 Layout Management

Up to now, you have had limited control over the layout of user-interface components. You learned how to add components to a panel, and the panel arranged the components from left to right. In this section, you will see how to achieve more sophisticated arrangements.

### 19.1.1 Using Layout Managers

User-interface components are arranged by placing them inside containers. Containers can be placed inside larger containers.

Each container has a layout manager that directs the arrangement of its components.

Three useful layout managers are the border layout, flow layout, and grid layout.

In Java, you build up user interfaces by adding components into containers such as **panels**. Each container has its own **layout manager**, which determines how components are laid out.

By default, a JPanel uses a **flow layout**. A flow layout simply arranges its components from left to right and starts a new row when there is no more room in the current row.

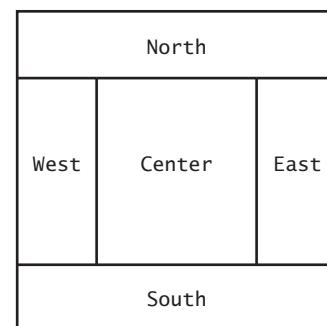
Another commonly used layout manager is the **border layout**. The border layout groups components into five areas: center, north, south, west, and east (see Figure 1). Each area can hold a single component, or it can be empty.

The border layout is the default layout manager for a frame (or, more technically, the frame's content pane). But you can also use the border layout in a panel:

```
panel.setLayout(new BorderLayout());
```



A layout manager arranges user-interface components.



**Figure 1**  
Components Expand to Fill Space in the Border Layout

**Figure 2**  
The Grid Layout

7	8	9
4	5	6
1	2	3
0	.	CE

When adding a component to a container with the border layout, specify the NORTH, SOUTH, WEST, EAST, or CENTER position.

The content pane of a frame has a border layout by default. A panel has a flow layout by default.

Now the panel is controlled by a border layout, not the flow layout. When adding a component, you specify the position, like this:

```
panel.add(component, BorderLayout.NORTH);
```

The **grid layout** manager arranges components in a grid with a fixed number of rows and columns. All components are resized so that they all have the same width and height. Like the border layout, it also expands each component to fill the entire allotted area. (If that is not desirable, you need to place each component inside a panel.) Figure 2 shows a number pad panel that uses a grid layout. To create a grid layout, you supply the number of rows and columns in the constructor, then add the components, row by row, left to right:

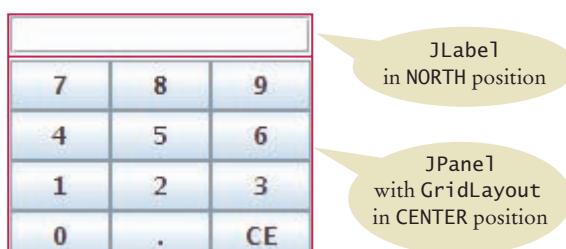
```
JPanel buttonPanel = new JPanel();
buttonPanel.setLayout(new GridLayout(4, 3));
buttonPanel.add(button7);
buttonPanel.add(button8);
buttonPanel.add(button9);
buttonPanel.add(button4);
.
.
```

## 19.1.2 Achieving Complex Layouts

Sometimes you want to have a tabular arrangement of components where columns have different sizes or one component spans multiple columns. A more complex layout manager called the *grid bag layout* can handle these situations. The grid bag layout is quite complex to use, however, and we do not cover it in this book. Java 6 introduced a *group layout* that is designed for use by interactive tools—see Programming Tip 19.1 on page 862.

Fortunately, you can create acceptable-looking layouts in nearly all situations by nesting panels. You give each panel an appropriate layout manager. Panels don't have visible borders, so you can use as many panels as you need to organize your components. Figure 3 shows an example. The keypad buttons are contained in a panel with grid layout. That panel is itself contained in a larger panel with border layout. The label is in the northern position of the larger panel.

**Figure 3**  
Nesting Panels



**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download the code for a calculator's user interface.

The following code produces the arrangement in Figure 3:

```
 JPanel keypadPanel = new JPanel();
 keypadPanel.setLayout(new BorderLayout());
 buttonPanel = new JPanel();
 buttonPanel.setLayout(new GridLayout(4, 3));
 buttonPanel.add(button7);
 buttonPanel.add(button8);
 // ...
 keypadPanel.add(buttonPanel, BorderLayout.CENTER);
 JLabel display = new JLabel("0");
 keypadPanel.add(display, BorderLayout.NORTH);
```

### 19.1.3 Using Inheritance to Customize Frames

As you add more user-interface components to a frame, the frame can get quite complex. Your programs will become easier to understand when you use inheritance for complex frames.

To do so, design a subclass of `JFrame`. Store the components as instance variables. Initialize them in the constructor of your subclass. This approach makes it easy to add helper methods for organizing your code.

It is also a good idea to set the frame size in the frame constructor. The frame usually has a better idea of the preferred size than the program displaying it.

For example,

```
public class FilledFrame extends JFrame
{
    // Use instance variables for components
    private JButton button;
    private JLabel label;

    private static final int FRAME_WIDTH = 300;
    private static final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 100;

    public FilledFrame()
    {
        // Now we can use a helper method
        createComponents();

        // It is a good idea to set the size in the frame constructor
        setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
    }

    private void createComponents()
    {
        button = new JButton("Click me!");
        label = new JLabel("Hello, World!");
        JPanel panel = new JPanel();
        panel.add(button);
        panel.add(label);
        add(panel);
    }
}
```

Of course, we still need a class with a `main` method:

```
public class FilledFrameViewer2
{
```

**FULL CODE EXAMPLE**

Go to [wiley.com/go/javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download the complete FilledFrame program.

**SELF CHECK**

```
public static void main(String[] args)
{
    JFrame frame = new FilledFrame();
    frame.setTitle("A frame with two components");
    frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
    frame.setVisible(true);
}
```

1. What happens if you place two buttons in the northern position of a border layout? Try it out with a small program.
2. How do you add two buttons to the northern position of a frame so that they are shown next to each other?
3. How can you stack three buttons one above the other?
4. What happens when you place one button in the northern position of a border layout and another in the center position? Try it out with a small program if you aren't sure.
5. Some calculators have a double-wide 0 button, as shown below. How can you achieve that?

7	8	9
4	5	6
1	2	3
0		.

6. Why does the `FilledFrameViewer2` class declare the `frame` variable to have class `JFrame`, not `FilledFrame`?
7. How many Java source files are required by the application in Section 19.1.3 when we use inheritance to declare the frame class?
8. Why does the `createComponents` method of `FilledFrame` call `add(panel)`, whereas the `main` method of `FilledFrameViewer` calls `frame.add(panel)`?

**Practice It**

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R19.1, R19.3, E19.1.

**Common Error 19.1****By Default, Components Have Zero Width and Height**

You must be careful when you add a painted component, such as a component displaying a car, to a panel. You add the component in the same way as a button or label:

```
panel.add(button);
panel.add(label);
panel.add(carComponent);
```

However, the default size for a component is 0 by 0 pixels, and the car component will not be visible. The remedy is to call the `setPreferredSize` method, like this:

```
carComponent.setPreferredSize(new Dimension(CAR_COMPONENT_WIDTH, CAR_COMPONENT_HEIGHT));
```

This is an issue only for painted components. Buttons, labels, and so on know how to compute their preferred size.

## Special Topic 19.1

**Adding the main Method to the Frame Class**

Have another look at the `FilledFrame` and `FilledFrameViewer2` classes. Some programmers prefer to combine these two classes, by adding the `main` method to the frame class:

```
public class FilledFrame extends JFrame
{
    ...
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        JFrame frame = new FilledFrame();
        frame.setTitle("A frame with two components");
        frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
        frame.setVisible(true);
    }

    public FilledFrame()
    {
        createComponents();
        setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
    }
    ...
}
```

This is a convenient shortcut that you will find in many programs, but it does not separate the responsibilities between the frame class and the program.

## 19.2 Processing Text Input

We continue our discussion with graphical user interfaces that accept text input. Of course, a graphical application can receive text input by calling the `ShowInputDialog` method of the `JOptionPane` class, but popping up a separate dialog box for each input is not a natural user interface. Most graphical programs collect text input through *text components* (see Figures 4 and 6). In the following two sections, you will learn how to add text components to a graphical application, and how to read what the user types into them.

### 19.2.1 Text Fields

Use a `JTextField` component for reading a single line of input. Place a `JLabel` next to each text field.

The `JTextField` class provides a **text field** for reading a single line of text. When you construct a text field, you need to supply the width—the approximate number of characters that you expect the user to type:

```
final int FIELD_WIDTH = 10;
rateField = new JTextField(FIELD_WIDTH);
```

Users can type additional characters, but then a part of the contents of the field becomes invisible.

You will want to label each text field so that the user knows what to type into it. Construct a `JLabel` object for each label:

```
JLabel rateLabel = new JLabel("Interest Rate: ");
```

**Figure 4**  
An Application  
with a Text Field



You want to give the user an opportunity to enter all information into the text field before processing it. Therefore, you should supply a button that the user can press to indicate that the input is ready for processing.

When that button is clicked, its `actionPerformed` method should read the user input from each text field, using the `getText` method of the `JTextField` class. The `getText` method returns a `String` object. In our sample program, we turn the string into a number, using the `Double.parseDouble` method. After updating the account, we show the balance in another label.

```
class AddInterestListener implements ActionListener
{
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        double rate = Double.parseDouble(rateField.getText());
        double interest = balance * rate / 100;
        balance = balance + interest;
        resultLabel.setText("Balance: " + balance);
    }
}
```

The following application is a useful prototype for a graphical user-interface front end for arbitrary calculations. You can easily modify it for your own needs. Place input components into the frame. In the `actionPerformed` method, carry out the needed calculations. Display the result in a label.

### section\_2\_1/InvestmentFrame2.java

```
1 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
2 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
3 import javax.swing.JButton;
4 import javax.swing.JFrame;
5 import javax.swing.JLabel;
6 import javax.swing.JPanel;
7 import javax.swing.JTextField;
8
9 /**
10  * A frame that shows the growth of an investment with variable interest.
11 */
12 public class InvestmentFrame2 extends JFrame
13 {
14     private static final int FRAME_WIDTH = 450;
15     private static final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 100;
16
17     private static final double DEFAULT_RATE = 5;
18     private static final double INITIAL_BALANCE = 1000;
19
20     private JLabel rateLabel;
21     private JTextField rateField;
22     private JButton button;
```

```
23     private JLabel resultLabel;
24     private double balance;
25
26     public InvestmentFrame2()
27     {
28         balance = INITIAL_BALANCE;
29
30         resultLabel = new JLabel("Balance: " + balance);
31
32         createTextField();
33         createButton();
34         createPanel();
35
36         setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
37     }
38
39     private void createTextField()
40     {
41         rateLabel = new JLabel("Interest Rate: ");
42
43         final int FIELD_WIDTH = 10;
44         rateField = new JTextField(FIELD_WIDTH);
45         rateField.setText("" + DEFAULT_RATE);
46     }
47
48     /**
49      * Adds interest to the balance and updates the display.
50     */
51     class AddInterestListener implements ActionListener
52     {
53         public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
54         {
55             double rate = Double.parseDouble(rateField.getText());
56             double interest = balance * rate / 100;
57             balance = balance + interest;
58             resultLabel.setText("Balance: " + balance);
59         }
60     }
61
62     private void createButton()
63     {
64         button = new JButton("Add Interest");
65
66         ActionListener listener = new AddInterestListener();
67         button.addActionListener(listener);
68     }
69
70     private void createPanel()
71     {
72         JPanel panel = new JPanel();
73         panel.add(rateLabel);
74         panel.add(rateField);
75         panel.add(button);
76         panel.add(resultLabel);
77         add(panel);
78     }
79 }
```

## 19.2.2 Text Areas

Use a `JTextArea` to show multiple lines of text.

In the preceding section, you saw how to construct text fields. A text field holds a single line of text. To display multiple lines of text, use the `JTextArea` class. When constructing a text area, you can specify the number of rows and columns:

```
final int ROWS = 10; // Lines of text
final int COLUMNS = 30; // Characters in each row
JTextArea textArea = new JTextArea(ROWS, COLUMNS);
```

Use the `setText` method to set the text of a text field or text area. The `append` method adds text to the end of a text area. Use newline characters to separate lines, like this:

```
textArea.append(balance + "\n");
```

If you want to use a text field or text area for display purposes only, call the `setEditable` method like this

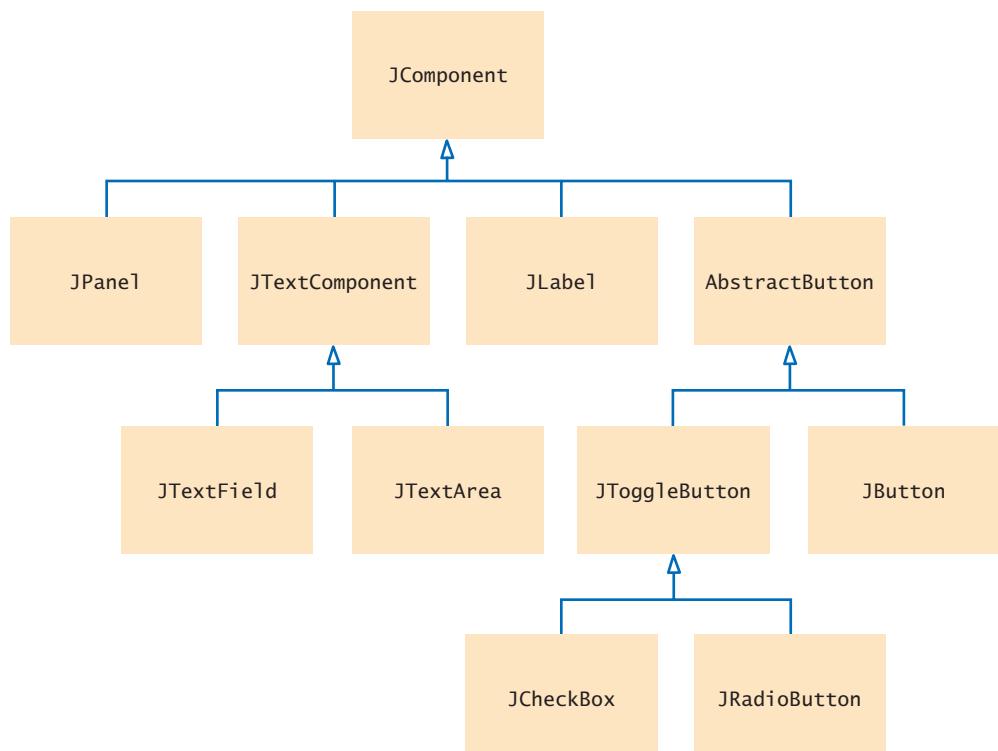
```
textArea.setEditable(false);
```

Now the user can no longer edit the contents of the field, but your program can still call `setText` and `append` to change it.

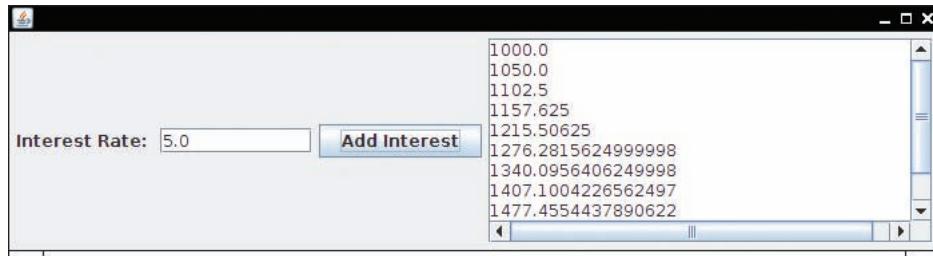
As shown in Figure 5, the `JTextField` and `JTextArea` classes are subclasses of the class `JTextComponent`. The methods `setText` and `setEditable` are declared in the `JTextComponent` class and inherited by `JTextField` and `JTextArea`. However, the `append` method is declared in the `JTextArea` class.



You can use a text area for reading or displaying multi-line text.



**Figure 5**  
A Part of the  
Hierarchy of Swing  
User-Interface  
Components



**Figure 6** The Investment Application with a Text Area inside Scroll Bars

You can add scroll bars to any component with a JScrollPane.

To add scroll bars to a text area, use a JScrollPane, like this:

```
JTextArea textArea = new JTextArea(ROWS, COLUMNS);
JScrollPane scrollPane = new JScrollPane(textArea);
```

Then add the scroll pane to the panel. Figure 6 shows the result.

The following sample program puts these concepts together. A user can enter numbers into the interest rate text field and then click on the “Add Interest” button. The interest rate is applied, and the updated balance is appended to the text area. The text area has scroll bars and is not editable.

This program is similar to the previous investment viewer program, but it keeps track of all the bank balances, not just the last one.

### section\_2\_2/InvestmentFrame3.java

```

1 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
2 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
3 import javax.swing.JButton;
4 import javax.swing.JFrame;
5 import javax.swing.JLabel;
6 import javax.swing.JPanel;
7 import javax.swing.JScrollPane;
8 import javax.swing.JTextArea;
9 import javax.swing.JTextField;
10
11 /**
12  * A frame that shows the growth of an investment with variable interest,
13  * using a text area.
14 */
15 public class InvestmentFrame3 extends JFrame
16 {
17     private static final int FRAME_WIDTH = 400;
18     private static final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 250;
19
20     private static final int AREA_ROWS = 10;
21     private static final int AREA_COLUMNS = 30;
22
23     private static final double DEFAULT_RATE = 5;
24     private static final double INITIAL_BALANCE = 1000;
25
26     private JLabel rateLabel;
27     private JTextField rateField;
28     private JButton button;
29     private JTextArea resultArea;
30     private double balance;
31 }
```

```

32     public InvestmentFrame3()
33     {
34         balance = INITIAL_BALANCE;
35         resultArea = new JTextArea(AREA_ROWS, AREA_COLUMNS);
36         resultArea.setText(balance + "\n");
37         resultArea.setEditable(false);
38
39         createTextField();
40         createButton();
41         createPanel();
42
43         setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
44     }
45
46     private void createTextField()
47     {
48         rateLabel = new JLabel("Interest Rate: ");
49
50         final int FIELD_WIDTH = 10;
51         rateField = new JTextField(FIELD_WIDTH);
52         rateField.setText("") + DEFAULT_RATE);
53     }
54
55     class AddInterestListener implements ActionListener
56     {
57         public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
58         {
59             double rate = Double.parseDouble(rateField.getText());
60             double interest = balance * rate / 100;
61             balance = balance + interest;
62             resultArea.append(balance + "\n");
63         }
64     }
65
66     private void createButton()
67     {
68         button = new JButton("Add Interest");
69
70         ActionListener listener = new AddInterestListener();
71         button.addActionListener(listener);
72     }
73
74     private void createPanel()
75     {
76         JPanel panel = new JPanel();
77         panel.add(rateLabel);
78         panel.add(rateField);
79         panel.add(button);
80         JScrollPane scrollPane = new JScrollPane(resultArea);
81         panel.add(scrollPane);
82         add(panel);
83     }
84 }
```

**SELF CHECK**

9. What happens if you omit the first `JLabel` object in the program of Section 19.2.1?
10. If a text field holds an integer, what expression do you use to read its contents?

11. What is the difference between a text field and a text area?
12. Why did the `InvestmentFrame3` program call `resultArea.setEditable(false)`?
13. How would you modify the `InvestmentFrame3` program if you didn't want to use scroll bars?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R19.20, E19.10, E19.11.

## 19.3 Choices

In the following sections, you will see how to present a finite set of choices to the user. Which Swing component you use depends on whether the choices are mutually exclusive or not, and on the amount of space you have for displaying the choices.

### 19.3.1 Radio Buttons

For a small set of mutually exclusive choices, use a group of radio buttons or a combo box.

Add radio buttons to a `ButtonGroup` so that only one button in the group is selected at any time.

If the choices are mutually exclusive, use a set of **radio buttons**. In a radio button set, only one button can be selected at a time. When the user selects another button in the same set, the previously selected button is automatically turned off. (These buttons are called radio buttons because they work like the station selector buttons on a car radio: If you select a new station, the old station is automatically deselected.) For example, in Figure 7, the font sizes are mutually exclusive. You can select small, medium, or large, but not a combination of them.

To create a set of radio buttons, first create each button individually, then add all buttons in the set to a `ButtonGroup` object:

```
JRadioButton smallButton = new JRadioButton("Small");
JRadioButton mediumButton = new JRadioButton("Medium");
JRadioButton largeButton = new JRadioButton("Large");

ButtonGroup group = new ButtonGroup();
group.add(smallButton);
group.add(mediumButton);
group.add(largeButton);
```



*In an old fashioned radio, pushing down one station button released the others.*

Note that the button group does *not* place the buttons close to each other in the container. The purpose of the button group is simply to find out which buttons to turn off when one of them is turned on. It is still your job to arrange the buttons on the screen.

The `isSelected` method is called to find out whether a button is currently selected or not. For example,

```
if (largeButton.isSelected()) { size = LARGE_SIZE; }
```

Unfortunately, there is no convenient way of finding out which button in a group is currently selected. You have to call `isSelected` on each button. Because users will expect one radio button in a radio button group to be selected, call `setSelected(true)` on the default radio button before making the enclosing frame visible.



**Figure 7** A Combo Box, Check Boxes, and Radio Buttons

You can place a border around a panel to group its contents visually.

If you have multiple button groups, it is a good idea to group them together visually. It is a good idea to use a panel for each set of radio buttons, but the panels themselves are invisible. You can add a *border* to a panel to make it visible. In Figure 7, for example, the panels containing the Size radio buttons and Style check boxes have borders.

There are a large number of border types. We will show only a couple of variations and leave it to the border enthusiasts to look up the others in the Swing documentation. The *EtchedBorder* class yields a border with a three-dimensional, etched effect. You can add a border to any component, but most commonly you apply it to a panel:

```
JPanel panel = new JPanel();
panel.setBorder(new EtchedBorder());
```

If you want to add a title to the border (as in Figure 7), you need to construct a *TitledBorder*. You make a titled border by supplying a basic border and then the title you want. Here is a typical example:

```
panel.setBorder(new TitledBorder(new EtchedBorder(), "Size"));
```

### 19.3.2 Check Boxes

For a binary choice, use a check box.

A **check box** is a user-interface component with two states: checked and unchecked. You use a group of check boxes when one selection does not exclude another. For example, the choices for “Bold” and “Italic” in Figure 7 are not exclusive. You can choose either, both, or neither. Therefore, they are implemented as a set of separate check boxes. Radio buttons and check boxes have different visual appearances. Radio buttons are round and have a black dot when selected. Check boxes are square and have a check mark when selected.

You construct a check box by providing the name in the constructor:

```
JCheckBox italicCheckBox = new JCheckBox("Italic");
```

Because check box settings do not exclude each other, you do not place a set of check boxes inside a button group.

As with radio buttons, you use the `isSelected` method to find out whether a check box is currently checked or not.

### 19.3.3 Combo Boxes

For a large set of choices, use a combo box.

If you have a large number of choices, you don't want to make a set of radio buttons because that would take up a lot of space. Instead, you can use a **combo box**. This component is called a combo box because it is a combination of a list and a text field. The text field displays the name of the current selection. When you click on the arrow to the right of the text field of a combo box, a list of selections drops down, and you can choose one of the items in the list (see Figure 8).



**Figure 8** An Open Combo Box

If the combo box is *editable*, you can also type in your own selection. To make a combo box editable, call the `setEditable` method.

You add strings to a combo box with the `addItem` method.

```
JComboBox facenameCombo = new JComboBox();
facenameCombo.addItem("Serif");
facenameCombo.addItem("SansSerif");
...

```

You get the item that the user has selected by calling the `getSelectedItem` method. However, because combo boxes can store other objects in addition to strings, the `getSelectedItem` method has return type `Object`. Hence, in our example, you must cast the returned value back to `String`:

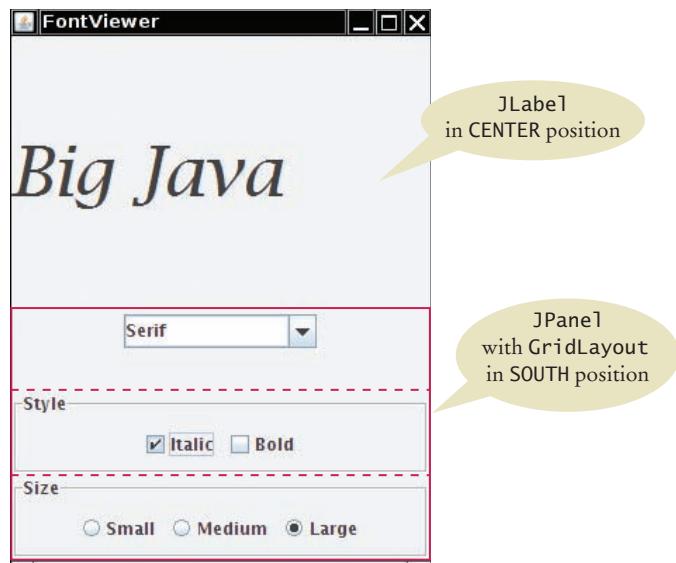
```
String selectedString = (String) facenameCombo.getSelectedItem();
```

You can select an item for the user with the `setSelectedItem` method.

Radio buttons, check boxes, and combo boxes generate an `ActionEvent` whenever the user selects an item. In the following program, we don't care which component was clicked—all components notify the same listener object. Whenever the user clicks on any one of them, we simply ask each component for its current content, using the `isSelected` and `getSelectedItem` methods. We then redraw the label with the new font.

Figure 9 shows how the components are arranged in the frame.

Radio buttons, check boxes, and combo boxes generate action events, just as buttons do.



**Figure 9** The Components of the FontFrame

### section\_3/FontViewer.java

```

1 import javax.swing.JFrame;
2
3 /**
4  * This program allows the user to view font effects.
5 */
6 public class FontViewer
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10         JFrame frame = new FontFrame();
11         frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
12         frame.setTitle("FontViewer");
13         frame.setVisible(true);
14     }
15 }
```

### section\_3/FontFrame.java

```

1 import java.awt.BorderLayout;
2 import java.awt.Font;
3 import java.awt.GridLayout;
4 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
5 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
6 import javax.swing.ButtonGroup;
7 import javax.swing.JButton;
8 import javax.swing.JCheckBox;
9 import javax.swing.JComboBox;
10 import javax.swing.JFrame;
11 import javax.swing.JLabel;
12 import javax.swing.JPanel;
13 import javax.swing.JRadioButton;
14 import javax.swing.border.EtchedBorder;
```

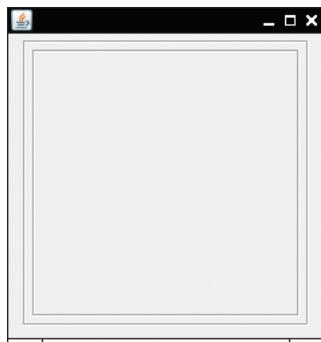
```
15 import javax.swing.border.TitledBorder;
16 /**
17  * This frame contains a text sample and a control panel
18  * to change the font of the text.
19  */
20 public class FontFrame extends JFrame
21 {
22     private static final int FRAME_WIDTH = 300;
23     private static final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 400;
24
25     private JLabel label;
26     private JCheckBox italicCheckBox;
27     private JCheckBox boldCheckBox;
28     private JRadioButton smallButton;
29     private JRadioButton mediumButton;
30     private JRadioButton largeButton;
31     private JComboBox facenameCombo;
32     private ActionListener listener;
33
34
35     /**
36      * Constructs the frame.
37     */
38     public FontFrame()
39     {
40         // Construct text sample
41         label = new JLabel("Big Java");
42         add(label, BorderLayout.CENTER);
43
44         // This listener is shared among all components
45         listener = new ChoiceListener();
46
47         createControlPanel();
48         setLabelFont();
49         setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
50     }
51
52     class ChoiceListener implements ActionListener
53     {
54         public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
55         {
56             setLabelFont();
57         }
58     }
59
60
61     /**
62      * Creates the control panel to change the font.
63     */
64     public void createControlPanel()
65     {
66         JPanel facenamePanel = createComboBox();
67         JPanel sizeGroupPanel = createCheckboxes();
68         JPanel styleGroupPanel = createRadioButtons();
69
70         // Line up component panels
71
72         JPanel controlPanel = new JPanel();
73         controlPanel.setLayout(new GridLayout(3, 1));
74         controlPanel.add(facenamePanel);
```

```
75     controlPanel.add(styleGroupPanel);
76
77     // Add panels to content pane
78
79     add(controlPanel, BorderLayout.SOUTH);
80 }
81
82 /**
83  * Creates the combo box with the font style choices.
84  * @return the panel containing the combo box
85 */
86 public JPanel createComboBox()
87 {
88     facenameCombo = new JComboBox();
89     facenameCombo.addItem("Serif");
90     facenameCombo.addItem("SansSerif");
91     facenameCombo.addItem("Monospaced");
92     facenameCombo.setEditable(true);
93     facenameCombo.addActionListener(listener);
94
95     JPanel panel = new JPanel();
96     panel.add(facenameCombo);
97     return panel;
98 }
99
100 /**
101 * Creates the check boxes for selecting bold and italic styles.
102 * @return the panel containing the check boxes
103 */
104 public JPanel createCheckBoxes()
105 {
106     italicCheckBox = new JCheckBox("Italic");
107     italicCheckBox.addActionListener(listener);
108
109     boldCheckBox = new JCheckBox("Bold");
110     boldCheckBox.addActionListener(listener);
111
112     JPanel panel = new JPanel();
113     panel.add(italicCheckBox);
114     panel.add(boldCheckBox);
115     panel.setBorder(new TitledBorder(new EtchedBorder(), "Style"));
116
117     return panel;
118 }
119
120 /**
121 * Creates the radio buttons to select the font size.
122 * @return the panel containing the radio buttons
123 */
124 public JPanel createRadioButtons()
125 {
126     smallButton = new JRadioButton("Small");
127     smallButton.addActionListener(listener);
128
129     mediumButton = new JRadioButton("Medium");
130     mediumButton.addActionListener(listener);
131
132     largeButton = new JRadioButton("Large");
133     largeButton.addActionListener(listener);
134     largeButton.setSelected(true);
```

```
135 // Add radio buttons to button group
136
137
138     ButtonGroup group = new ButtonGroup();
139     group.add(smallButton);
140     group.add(mediumButton);
141     group.add(largeButton);
142
143     JPanel panel = new JPanel();
144     panel.add(smallButton);
145     panel.add(mediumButton);
146     panel.add(largeButton);
147     panel.setBorder(new TitledBorder(new EtchedBorder(), "Size"));
148
149     return panel;
150 }
151
152 /**
153     Gets user choice for font name, style, and size
154     and sets the font of the text sample.
155 */
156 public void setLabelFont()
157 {
158     // Get font name
159     String facename = (String) facenameCombo.getSelectedItem();
160
161     // Get font style
162
163     int style = 0;
164     if (italicCheckBox.isSelected())
165     {
166         style = style + Font.ITALIC;
167     }
168     if (boldCheckBox.isSelected())
169     {
170         style = style + Font.BOLD;
171     }
172
173     // Get font size
174
175     int size = 0;
176
177     final int SMALL_SIZE = 24;
178     final int MEDIUM_SIZE = 36;
179     final int LARGE_SIZE = 48;
180
181     if (smallButton.isSelected()) { size = SMALL_SIZE; }
182     else if (mediumButton.isSelected()) { size = MEDIUM_SIZE; }
183     else if (largeButton.isSelected()) { size = LARGE_SIZE; }
184
185     // Set font of text field
186
187     label.setFont(new Font(facename, style, size));
188     label.repaint();
189 }
190 }
```

**SELF CHECK**

- 14.** What is the advantage of a JComboBox over a set of radio buttons? What is the disadvantage?
- 15.** What happens when you put two check boxes into a button group? Try it out if you are not sure.
- 16.** How can you nest two etched borders, like this?



- 17.** Why do all user-interface components in the FontFrame class share the same listener?
- 18.** Why was the combo box placed inside a panel? What would have happened if it had been added directly to the control panel?
- 19.** How could the following user interface be improved?

**Bold**  Yes  No

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R19.11, E19.3, E19.4.

**HOW TO 19.1****Laying Out a User Interface**

A graphical user interface is made up of components such as buttons and text fields. The Swing library uses containers and layout managers to arrange these components. This How To explains how to group components into containers and how to pick the right layout managers.

**Step 1**

Make a sketch of your desired component layout.

Draw all the buttons, labels, text fields, and borders on a sheet of paper. Graph paper works best.

Here is an example—a user interface for ordering pizza. The user interface contains

- Three radio buttons
- Two check boxes
- A label: “Your Price:”
- A text field
- A border

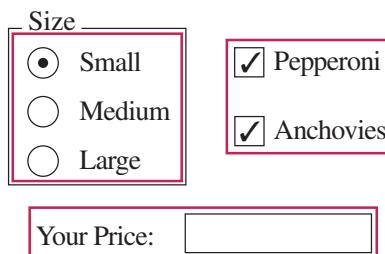
Size	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Small	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pepperoni
	<input type="radio"/> Medium	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Anchovies
	<input type="radio"/> Large	

Your Price:

**Step 2** Find groupings of adjacent components with the same layout.

Usually, the component arrangement is complex enough that you need to use several panels, each with its own layout manager. Start by looking at adjacent components that are arranged top to bottom or left to right. If several components are surrounded by a border, they should be grouped together.

Here are the groupings from the pizza user interface:

**Step 3** Identify layouts for each group.

When components are arranged horizontally, choose a flow layout. When components are arranged vertically, use a grid layout with one column.

In the pizza user interface example, you would choose

- A (3, 1) grid layout for the radio buttons
- A (2, 1) grid layout for the check boxes
- A flow layout for the label and text field

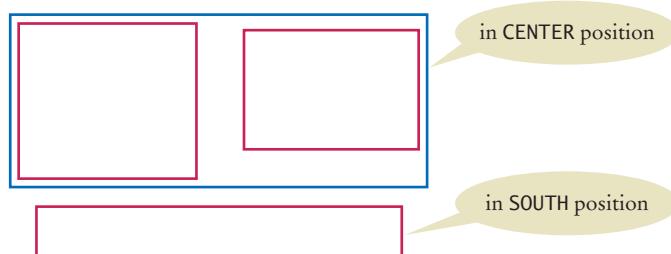
**Step 4** Group the groups together.

Look at each group as one blob, and group the blobs together into larger groups, just as you grouped the components in the preceding step. If you note one large blob surrounded by smaller blobs, you can group them together in a border layout.

You may have to repeat the grouping again if you have a very complex user interface. You are done if you have arranged all groups in a single container.

For example, the three component groups of the pizza user interface can be arranged as:

- A group containing the first two component groups, placed in the center of a container with a border layout.
- The third component group, in the southern area of that container.



In this step, you may run into a couple of complications. The group “blobs” tend to vary in size more than the individual components. If you place them inside a grid layout, the grid layout forces them all to be the same size. Also, you occasionally would like a component from

one group to line up with a component from another group, but there is no way for you to communicate that intent to the layout managers.

These problems can be overcome by using more sophisticated layout managers or implementing a custom layout manager. However, those techniques are beyond the scope of this book. Sometimes, you may want to start over with Step 1, using a component layout that is easier to manage. Or you can decide to live with minor imperfections of the layout. Don't worry about achieving the perfect layout—after all, you are learning programming, not user-interface design.

### Step 5 Write the code to generate the layout.

This step is straightforward but potentially tedious, especially if you have a large number of components.

Start by constructing the components. Then construct a panel for each component group and set its layout manager if it is not a flow layout (the default for panels). Add a border to the panel if required. Finally, add the components to their panels. Continue in this fashion until you reach the outermost containers, which you add to the frame.

Here is an outline of the code required for the pizza user interface:

```
JPanel radioButtonPanel = new JPanel();
radioButtonPanel.setLayout(new GridLayout(3, 1));
radioButtonPanel.setBorder(new TitledBorder(new EtchedBorder(), "Size"));
radioButtonPanel.add(smallButton);
radioButtonPanel.add(mediumButton);
radioButtonPanel.add(largeButton);

JPanel checkBoxPanel = new JPanel();
checkBoxPanel.setLayout(new GridLayout(2, 1));
checkBoxPanel.add(pepperoniButton);
checkBoxPanel.add(anchoviesButton);

JPanel pricePanel = new JPanel(); // Uses FlowLayout by default
pricePanel.add(new JLabel("Your Price: "));
pricePanel.add(priceTextField);

JPanel centerPanel = new JPanel(); // Uses FlowLayout
centerPanel.add(radioButtonPanel);
centerPanel.add(checkBoxPanel);

// Frame uses BorderLayout by default
add(centerPanel, BorderLayout.CENTER);
add(pricePanel, BorderLayout.SOUTH);
```



### WORKED EXAMPLE 19.1

### Programming a Working Calculator

Learn how to implement arithmetic and scientific operations for a calculator. The sample program in Section 19.1 showed how to lay out the buttons for a simple calculator, and we use that program as a starting point. Go to [wiley.com/go/javaexamples](http://wiley.com/go/javaexamples) and download Worked Example 19.1.



## Programming Tip 19.1

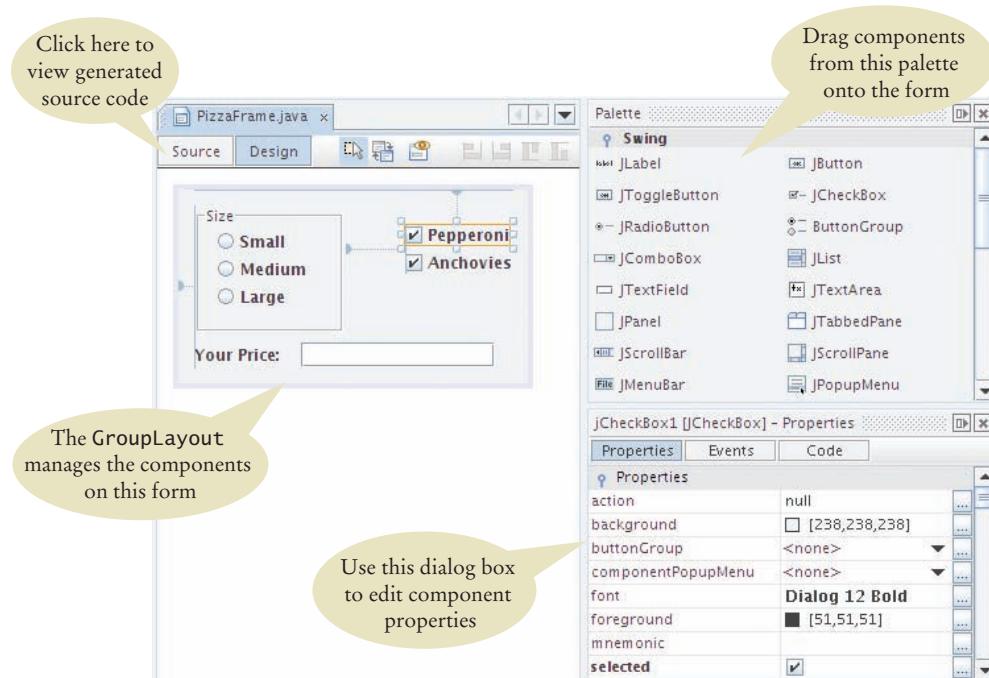
**Use a GUI Builder**

As you have seen, implementing even a simple graphical user interface in Java is quite tedious. You have to write a lot of code for constructing components, using layout managers, and providing event handlers. Most of the code is repetitive.

A GUI builder takes away much of the tedium. Most GUI builders help you in three ways:

- You drag and drop components onto a panel. The GUI builder writes the layout management code for you.
- You customize components with a dialog box, setting properties such as fonts, colors, text, and so on. The GUI builder writes the customization code for you.
- You provide event handlers by picking the event to process and providing just the code snippet for the listener method. The GUI builder writes the boilerplate code for attaching a listener object.

Java 6 introduced `GridLayout`, a powerful layout manager that was specifically designed to be used by GUI builders. The free NetBeans development environment, available from <http://netbeans.org>, makes use of this layout manager—see Figure 10.



**Figure 10** A GUI Builder

If you need to build a complex user interface, you will find that learning to use a GUI builder is a very worthwhile investment. You will spend less time writing boring code, and you will have more fun designing your user interface and focusing on the functionality of your program.

## 19.4 Menus

A frame contains a menu bar. The menu bar contains menus. A menu contains submenus and menu items.

Anyone who has ever used a graphical user interface is familiar with pull-down menus (see Figure 11). At the top of the frame is a *menu bar* that contains the top-level menus. Each menu is a collection of *menu items* and *submenus*.

The sample program for this section builds up a small but typical menu and traps the action events from the menu items. The program allows the user to specify the font for a label by selecting a face name, font size, and font style. In Java it is easy to create these menus.

You add the menu bar to the frame:

```
public class MyFrame extends JFrame
{
    public MyFrame()
    {
        JMenuBar menuBar = new JMenuBar();
        setJMenuBar(menuBar);
        . .
    }
    . .
}
```

Menus are then added to the menu bar:

```
JMenu fileMenu = new JMenu("File");
JMenu fontMenu = new JMenu("Font");
menuBar.add(fileMenu);
menuBar.add(fontMenu);
```

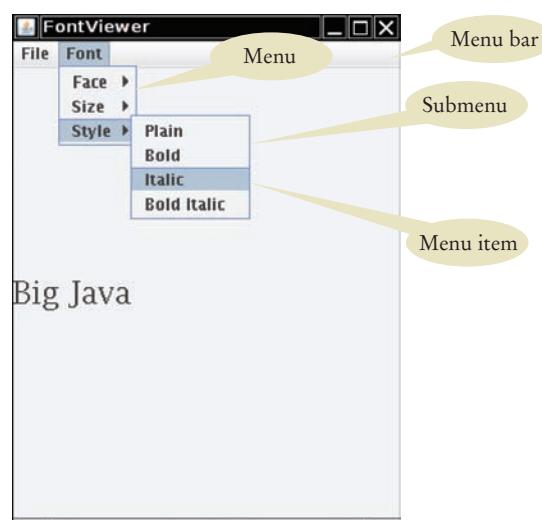
You add menu items and submenus with the add method:

```
JMenuItem exitItem = new JMenuItem("Exit");
fileMenu.add(exitItem);

JMenu styleMenu = new JMenu("Style");
fontMenu.add(styleMenu); // A submenu
```



A menu provides a list of available choices.



**Figure 11**  
Pull-Down Menus

Menu items generate action events.

A menu item has no further submenus. When the user selects a menu item, the menu item sends an action event. Therefore, you want to add a listener to each menu item:

```
ActionListener listener = new ExitItemListener();
exitItem.addActionListener(listener);
```

You add action listeners only to menu items, not to menus or the menu bar. When the user clicks on a menu name and a submenu opens, no action event is sent.

To keep the program readable, it is a good idea to use a separate method for each menu or set of related menus. For example,

```
public JMenu createFaceMenu()
{
    JMenu menu = new JMenu("Face");
    menu.add(createFaceItem("Serif"));
    menu.add(createFaceItem("SansSerif"));
    menu.add(createFaceItem("Monospaced"));
    return menu;
}
```

Now consider the `createFaceItem` method. It has a string parameter variable for the name of the font face. When the item is selected, its action listener needs to

1. Set the current face name to the menu item text.
2. Make a new font from the current face, size, and style, and apply it to the label.

We have three menu items, one for each supported face name. Each of them needs to set a different name in the first step. Of course, we can make three listener classes `SerifListener`, `SansSerifListener`, and `MonospacedListener`, but that is not very elegant. After all, the actions only vary by a single string. We can store that string inside the listener class and then make three objects of the same listener class:

```
class FaceItemListener implements ActionListener
{
    private String name;

    public FaceItemListener(String newName) { name = newName; }

    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        faceName = name; // Sets an instance variable of the frame class
        setLabelFont();
    }
}
```

Now we can install a listener object with the appropriate name:

```
public JMenuItem createFaceItem(String name)
{
    JMenuItem item = new JMenuItem(name);
    ActionListener listener = new FaceItemListener(name);
    item.addActionListener(listener);
    return item;
}
```

This approach is still a bit tedious. We can do better by using a local inner class inside the `createFaceItem` method (see Section 10.5). Then the `actionPerformed` method can access the `name` parameter variable directly. However, we need to observe a technical rule. Because `name` is a local variable, it must be declared as `final` to be accessible from an inner class method.

```

public JMenuItem createFaceItem(final String name)
// Final variables can be accessed from an inner class method
{
    class FaceItemListener implements ActionListener // A local inner class
    {
        public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
        {
            facename = name; // Accesses the local variable name
            setLabelFont();
        }
    }

    JMenuItem item = new JMenuItem(name);
    ActionListener listener = new FaceItemListener();
    item.addActionListener(listener);
    return item;
}

```

The same strategy is used for the `createSizeItem` and `createStyleItem` methods.

### section\_4/FontViewer2.java

```

1 import javax.swing.JFrame;
2
3 /**
4     This program uses a menu to display font effects.
5 */
6 public class FontViewer2
7 {
8     public static void main(String[] args)
9     {
10        JFrame frame = new FontFrame2();
11        frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
12        frame.setTitle("FontViewer");
13        frame.setVisible(true);
14    }
15 }

```

### section\_4/FontFrame2.java

```

1 import java.awt.BorderLayout;
2 import java.awt.Font;
3 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
4 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
5 import javax.swing.JFrame;
6 import javax.swing.JLabel;
7 import javax.swing.JMenu;
8 import javax.swing.JMenuBar;
9 import javax.swing.JMenuItem;
10
11 /**
12     This frame has a menu with commands to change the font
13     of a text sample.
14 */
15 public class FontFrame2 extends JFrame
16 {
17     private static final int FRAME_WIDTH = 300;
18     private static final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 400;
19
20     private JLabel label;
21     private String facename;

```

```
22     private int fontstyle;
23     private int fontsize;
24
25     /**
26      Constructs the frame.
27     */
28     public FontFrame2()
29     {
30         // Construct text sample
31         label = new JLabel("Big Java");
32         add(label, BorderLayout.CENTER);
33
34         // Construct menu
35         JMenuBar menuBar = new JMenuBar();
36         setJMenuBar(menuBar);
37         menuBar.add(createFileMenu());
38         menuBar.add(createFontMenu());
39
40         facename = "Serif";
41         fontsize = 24;
42         fontstyle = Font.PLAIN;
43
44         setLabelFont();
45         setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
46     }
47
48     class ExitItemListener implements ActionListener
49     {
50         public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
51         {
52             System.exit(0);
53         }
54     }
55
56     /**
57      Creates the File menu.
58      @return the menu
59     */
60     public JMenu createFileMenu()
61     {
62         JMenu menu = new JMenu("File");
63         JMenuItem exitItem = new JMenuItem("Exit");
64         ActionListener listener = new ExitItemListener();
65         exitItem.addActionListener(listener);
66         menu.add(exitItem);
67         return menu;
68     }
69
70     /**
71      Creates the Font submenu.
72      @return the menu
73     */
74     public JMenu createFontMenu()
75     {
76         JMenu menu = new JMenu("Font");
77         menu.add(createFaceMenu());
78         menu.add(createSizeMenu());
79         menu.add(createStyleMenu());
80         return menu;
81     }
```

```
82 /**
83  * Creates the Face submenu.
84  * @return the menu
85 */
86 public JMenu createFaceMenu()
87 {
88     JMenu menu = new JMenu("Face");
89     menu.add(createFaceItem("Serif"));
90     menu.add(createFaceItem("SansSerif"));
91     menu.add(createFaceItem("Monospaced"));
92     return menu;
93 }
94
95 /**
96  * Creates the Size submenu.
97  * @return the menu
98 */
99 public JMenu createSizeMenu()
100 {
101     JMenu menu = new JMenu("Size");
102     menu.add(createSizeItem("Smaller", -1));
103     menu.add(createSizeItem("Larger", 1));
104     return menu;
105 }
106
107 /**
108  * Creates the Style submenu.
109  * @return the menu
110 */
111 public JMenu createStyleMenu()
112 {
113     JMenu menu = new JMenu("Style");
114     menu.add(createStyleItem("Plain", Font.PLAIN));
115     menu.add(createStyleItem("Bold", Font.BOLD));
116     menu.add(createStyleItem("Italic", Font.ITALIC));
117     menu.add(createStyleItem("Bold Italic", Font.BOLD
118         + Font.ITALIC));
119     return menu;
120 }
121
122 /**
123  * Creates a menu item to change the font face and set its action listener.
124  * @param name the name of the font face
125  * @return the menu item
126 */
127 public JMenuItem createFaceItem(final String name)
128 {
129     class FaceItemListener implements ActionListener
130     {
131         public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
132         {
133             facename = name;
134             setLabelFont();
135         }
136     }
137
138     JMenuItem item = new JMenuItem(name);
139     ActionListener listener = new FaceItemListener();
140     item.addActionListener(listener);
141 }
```

```
142         return item;
143     }
144
145 /**
146     Creates a menu item to change the font size
147     and set its action listener.
148     @param name the name of the menu item
149     @param increment the amount by which to change the size
150     @return the menu item
151 */
152 public JMenuItem createSizeItem(String name, final int increment)
153 {
154     class SizeItemListener implements ActionListener
155     {
156         public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
157         {
158             fontsize = fontsize + increment;
159             setLabelFont();
160         }
161     }
162
163     JMenuItem item = new JMenuItem(name);
164     ActionListener listener = new SizeItemListener();
165     item.addActionListener(listener);
166     return item;
167 }
168
169 /**
170     Creates a menu item to change the font style
171     and set its action listener.
172     @param name the name of the menu item
173     @param style the new font style
174     @return the menu item
175 */
176 public JMenuItem createStyleItem(String name, final int style)
177 {
178     class StyleItemListener implements ActionListener
179     {
180         public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
181         {
182             fontstyle = style;
183             setLabelFont();
184         }
185     }
186
187     JMenuItem item = new JMenuItem(name);
188     ActionListener listener = new StyleItemListener();
189     item.addActionListener(listener);
190     return item;
191 }
192
193 /**
194     Sets the font of the text sample.
195 */
196 public void setLabelFont()
197 {
198     Font f = new Font(facename, fontstyle, fontsize);
199     label.setFont(f);
200 }
```

**SELF CHECK**

- 20.** Why do `JMenu` objects not generate action events?
- 21.** Can you add a menu item directly to the menu bar? Try it out. What happens?
- 22.** Why is the `increment` parameter variable in the `createSizeItem` method declared as `final`?
- 23.** Why can't the `createFaceItem` method simply set the `faceName` instance variable, like this:

```
class FaceItemListener implements ActionListener
{
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        setLabelFont();
    }
}

public JMenuItem createFaceItem(String name)
{
    JMenuItem item = new JMenuItem(name);
    faceName = name;
    ActionListener listener = new FaceItemListener();
    item.addActionListener(listener);
    return item;
}
```

- 24.** In this program, the font specification (name, size, and style) is stored in instance variables. Why was this not necessary in the program of the previous section?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R19.12, E19.6, E19.7.

## 19.5 Exploring the Swing Documentation

You should learn to navigate the API documentation to find out more about user-interface components.

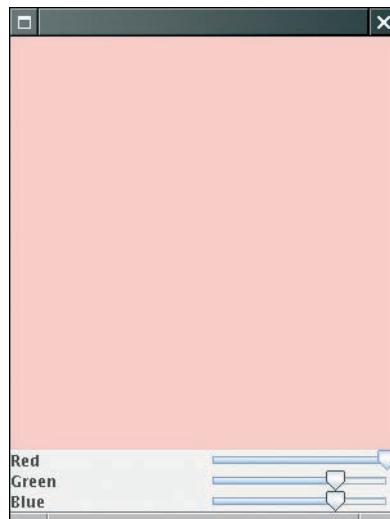
In the preceding sections, you saw the basic properties of the most common user-interface components. We purposefully omitted many options and variations to simplify the discussion. You can go a long way by using only the simplest properties of these components. If you want to implement a more sophisticated effect, you can look inside the Swing documentation. You may find the documentation intimidating at first glance, though. The purpose of this section is to show you how you can use the documentation to your advantage without being overwhelmed.

As an example, consider a program for mixing colors by specifying the red, green, and blue values. How can you specify the colors? Of course, you could supply three text fields, but sliders would be more convenient for users of your program (see Figure 12).



*In order to use the Swing library effectively, you need to study the API documentation.*

**Figure 12**  
A Color Viewer with Sliders



The Swing user-interface toolkit has a large set of user-interface components. How do you know if there is a slider? You can buy a book that illustrates all Swing components. Or you can run the sample application included in the Java Development Kit that shows off all Swing components (see Figure 13). Or you can look at the names of all of the classes that start with `J` and decide that `JSlider` may be a good candidate.

Next, you need to ask yourself a few questions:

- How do I construct a `JSlider`?
- How can I get notified when the user has moved it?
- How can I tell to which value the user has set it?

When you look at the documentation of the `JSlider` class, you will probably not be happy. There are over 50 methods in the `JSlider` class and over 250 inherited methods, and some of the method descriptions look downright scary, such as the one in Figure 14. Apparently some folks out there are concerned about the `valueIsAdjusting` property, whatever that may be, and the designers of this class felt it necessary to supply a method to tweak that property. Until you too feel that need, your best bet is to ignore this method. As the author of an introductory book, it pains me to tell you to ignore certain facts. But the truth of the matter is that the Java library is so large and complex that nobody understands it in its entirety, not even the designers of Java themselves. You need to develop the ability to separate fundamental concepts from ephemeral minutiae. For example, it is important that you understand the concept of event handling. Once you understand the concept, you can ask the question, “What event does the slider send when the user moves it?” But it is not important that you memorize how to set tick marks or that you know how to implement a slider with a custom look and feel.

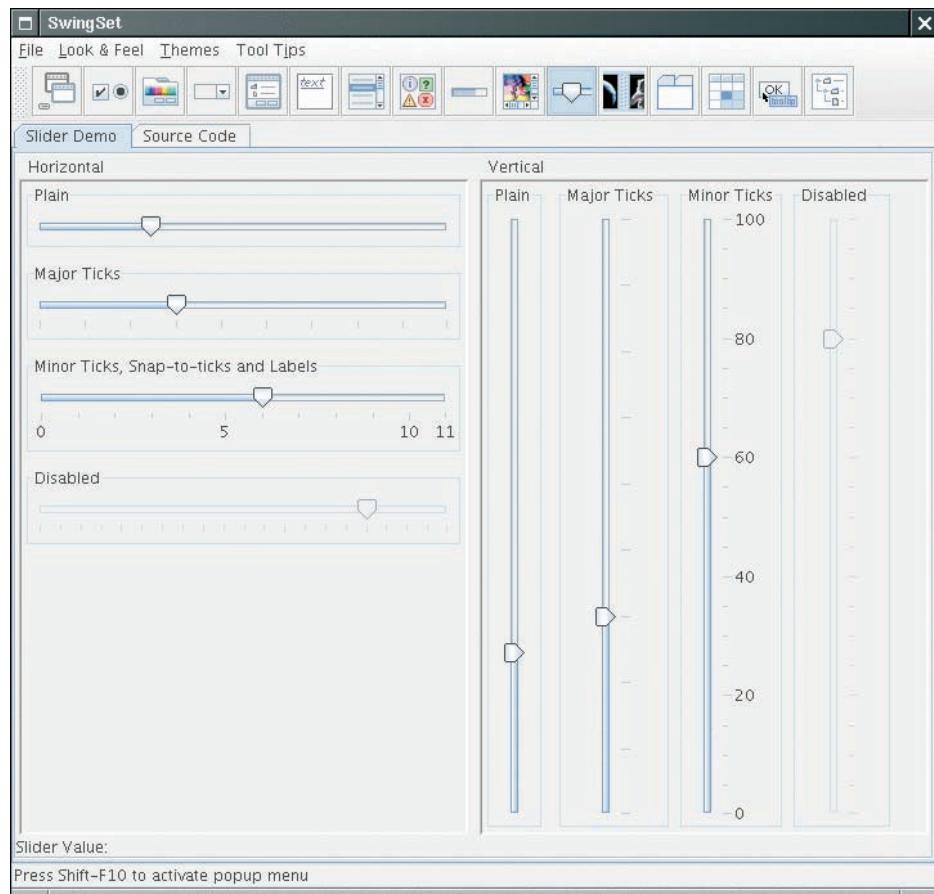
Let’s go back to our fundamental questions. In Java 6, there are six constructors for the `JSlider` class. You want to learn about one or two of them. You must strike a balance somewhere between the trivial and the bizarre. Consider

```
public JSlider()
```

Creates a horizontal slider with the range 0 to 100 and an initial value of 50.

Maybe that is good enough for now, but what if you want another range or initial value? It seems too limited.

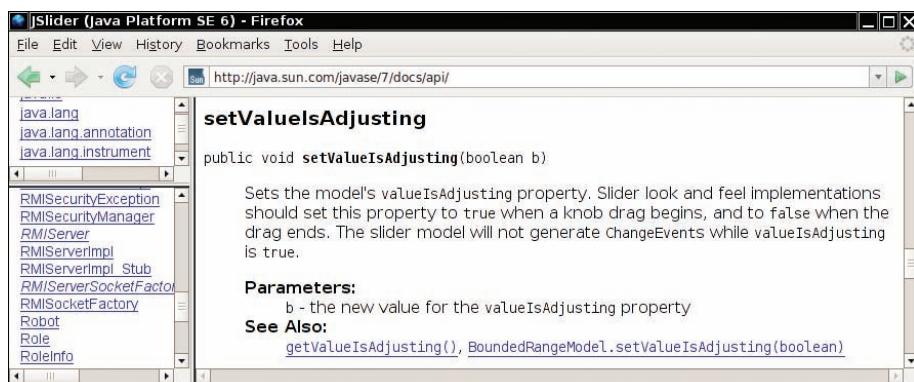
**Figure 13**  
The SwingSet Demo



On the other side of the spectrum, there is

```
public JSlider(BoundedRangeModel brm)
Creates a horizontal slider using the specified BoundedRangeModel.
```

Whoa! What is that? You can click on the `BoundedRangeModel` link to get a long explanation of this class. This appears to be some internal mechanism for the Swing implementors. Let's try to avoid this constructor if we can.



**Figure 14** A Mysterious Method Description from the API Documentation

Looking further, we find

```
public JSlider(int min, int max, int value)
    Creates a horizontal slider using the specified min, max, and value.
```

This sounds general enough to be useful and simple enough to be usable. You might want to stash away the fact that you can have vertical sliders as well.

Next, you want to know what events a slider generates. There is no `addActionListener` method. That makes sense. Adjusting a slider seems different from clicking a button, and Swing uses a different event type for these events. There is a method

```
public void addChangeListener(ChangeListener l)
```

Click on the `ChangeListener` link to find out more about this interface. It has a single method

```
void stateChanged(ChangeEvent e)
```

Apparently, that method is called whenever the user moves the slider. What is a `ChangeEvent`? Once again, click on the link, to find out that this event class has *no* methods of its own, but it inherits the `getSource` method from its superclass `EventObject`. The `getSource` method tells us which component generated this event, but we don't need that information—we know that the event came from the slider.

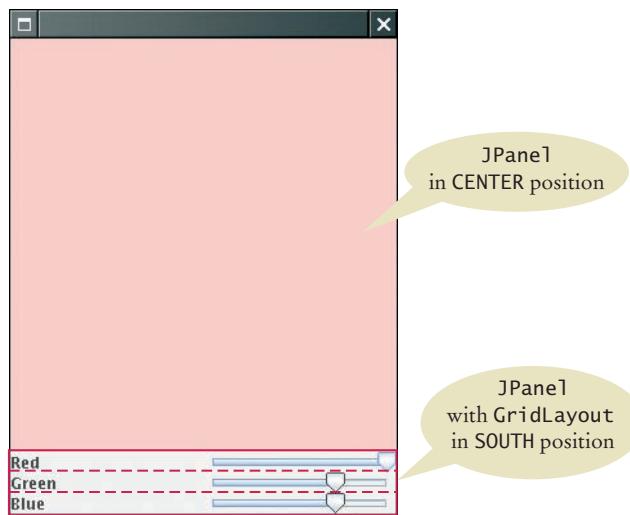
Now let's make a plan: Add a change event listener to each slider. When the slider is changed, the `stateChanged` method is called. Find out the new value of the slider. Recompute the color value and repaint the color panel. That way, the color panel is continually repainted as the user moves one of the sliders.

To compute the color value, you will still need to get the current value of the slider. Look at all the methods that start with `get`. Sure enough, you find

```
public int getValue()
    Returns the slider's value.
```

Now you know everything you need to write the program. The program uses one new Swing component and one event listener of a new type. After having mastered the basics, you may want to explore the capabilities of the component further, for example by adding tick marks—see Exercise E19.12.

Figure 15 shows how the components are arranged in the frame.



**Figure 15**  
The Components of the  
Color Viewer Frame

**section\_5/ColorViewer.java**

```

1 import javax.swing.JFrame;
2
3 public class ColorViewer
4 {
5     public static void main(String[] args)
6     {
7         JFrame frame = new ColorFrame();
8         frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
9         frame.setVisible(true);
10    }
11 }
```

**section\_5/ColorFrame.java**

```

1 import java.awt.BorderLayout;
2 import java.awt.Color;
3 import java.awt.GridLayout;
4 import javax.swing.JFrame;
5 import javax.swing.JLabel;
6 import javax.swing.JPanel;
7 import javax.swing.JSlider;
8 import javax.swing.event.ChangeListener;
9 import javax.swing.event.ChangeEvent;
10
11 public class ColorFrame extends JFrame
12 {
13     private static final int FRAME_WIDTH = 300;
14     private static final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 400;
15
16     private JPanel colorPanel;
17     private JSlider redSlider;
18     private JSlider greenSlider;
19     private JSlider blueSlider;
20
21     public ColorFrame()
22     {
23         colorPanel = new JPanel();
24
25         add(colorPanel, BorderLayout.CENTER);
26         createControlPanel();
27         setSampleColor();
28         setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
29     }
30
31     class ColorListener implements ChangeListener
32     {
33         public void stateChanged(ChangeEvent event)
34         {
35             setSampleColor();
36         }
37     }
38
39     public void createControlPanel()
40     {
41         ChangeListener listener = new ColorListener();
42
43         redSlider = new JSlider(0, 255, 255);
44         redSlider.addChangeListener(listener);
```

```

45     greenSlider = new JSlider(0, 255, 175);
46     greenSlider.addChangeListener(listener);
47
48     blueSlider = new JSlider(0, 255, 175);
49     blueSlider.addChangeListener(listener);
50
51     JPanel controlPanel = new JPanel();
52     controlPanel.setLayout(new GridLayout(3, 2));
53
54     controlPanel.add(new JLabel("Red"));
55     controlPanel.add(redSlider);
56
57     controlPanel.add(new JLabel("Green"));
58     controlPanel.add(greenSlider);
59
60     controlPanel.add(new JLabel("Blue"));
61     controlPanel.add(blueSlider);
62
63     add(controlPanel, BorderLayout.SOUTH);
64 }
65
66
67 /**
68  * Reads the slider values and sets the panel to
69  * the selected color.
70 */
71 public void setSampleColor()
72 {
73     // Read slider values
74
75     int red = redSlider.getValue();
76     int green = greenSlider.getValue();
77     int blue = blueSlider.getValue();
78
79     // Set panel background to selected color
80
81     colorPanel.setBackground(new Color(red, green, blue));
82     colorPanel.repaint();
83 }
84 }
```

**SELF CHECK**

- 25.** Suppose you want to allow users to pick a color from a color dialog box. Which class would you use? Look in the API documentation.
- 26.** Why does a slider emit change events and not action events?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R19.14, E19.2, E19.12.

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### Learn how to arrange multiple components in a container.



- User-interface components are arranged by placing them inside containers. Containers can be placed inside larger containers.
- Each container has a layout manager that directs the arrangement of its components.
- Three useful layout managers are the border layout, flow layout, and grid layout.
- When adding a component to a container with the border layout, specify the NORTH, SOUTH, WEST, EAST, or CENTER position.
- The content pane of a frame has a border layout by default. A panel has a flow layout by default.

### Use text components for reading text input.



- Use a JTextField component for reading a single line of input. Place a JLabel next to each text field.
- Use a JTextArea to show multiple lines of text.
- You can add scroll bars to any component with a JScrollPane.

### Select among the Swing components for presenting choices to the user.



- For a small set of mutually exclusive choices, use a group of radio buttons or a combo box.
- Add radio buttons to a ButtonGroup so that only one button in the group is selected at any time.
- You can place a border around a panel to group its contents visually.
- For a binary choice, use a check box.
- For a large set of choices, use a combo box.
- Radio buttons, check boxes, and combo boxes generate action events, just as buttons do.

### Implement menus in a Swing program.

- A frame contains a menu bar. The menu bar contains menus. A menu contains submenus and menu items.
- Menu items generate action events.



### Use the Swing documentation.



- You should learn to navigate the API documentation to find out more about user-interface components.

## STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER

java.awt.BorderLayout	javax.swing.JComponent
CENTER	setBorder
EAST	setFocusable
NORTH	setFont
SOUTH	javax.swing.JFrame
WEST	setJMenuBar
java.awt.Component	javax.swing.JMenu
setPreferredSize	add
java.awt.Container	javax.swing.JMenuBar
setLayout	add
java.awtFlowLayout	javax.swing.JMenuItem
java.awt.Font	javax.swing.JRadioButton
BOLD	javax.swing.JSlider
ITALIC	addChangeListener
java.awt.GridLayout	getValue
javax.swing.AbstractButton	javax.swing.JTextArea
isSelected	append
setSelected	javax.swing.JTextField
javax.swing.ButtonGroup	javax.swing.text.JTextComponent
add	getText
javax.swing.JCheckBox	isEditable
javax.swing.JComboBox	setEditable
addItem	setText
getSelectedItem	javax.swing.border.EtchedBorder
isEditable	javax.swing.border.TitledBorder
setEditable	javax.swing.event.ChangeEvent
setSelectedItem	javax.swing.event.ChangeListener
	stateChanged

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

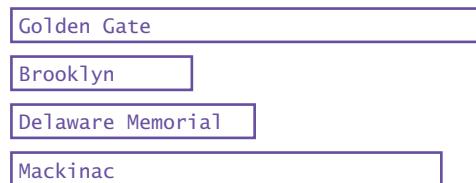
- **R19.1** Can you use a flow layout for the components in a frame? If yes, how?
- **R19.2** What is the advantage of a layout manager over telling the container “place this component at position  $(x, y)$ ”?
- **R19.3** What happens when you place a single button into the CENTER area of a container that uses a border layout? Try it out by writing a small sample program if you aren’t sure of the answer.
- **R19.4** What happens if you place multiple buttons directly into the SOUTH area, without using a panel? Try it out by writing a small sample program if you aren’t sure of the answer.
- **R19.5** What happens when you add a button to a container that uses a border layout and omit the position? Try it out and explain.
- **R19.6** What happens when you try to add a button to another button? Try it out and explain.
- **R19.7** The ColorFrame in Section 19.5 uses a grid layout manager. Explain a drawback of the grid that is apparent from Figure 15. What could you do to overcome this drawback?
- ■ **R19.8** What is the difference between the grid layout and the grid bag layout?

- **R19.9** Can you add icons to check boxes, radio buttons, and combo boxes? Browse the Java documentation to find out. Then write a small test program to verify your findings.
- **R19.10** What is the difference between radio buttons and check boxes?
- **R19.11** Why do you need a button group for radio buttons but not for check boxes?
- **R19.12** What is the difference between a menu bar, a menu, and a menu item?
- **R19.13** When browsing through the Java documentation for more information about sliders, we ignored the `JSlider` constructor with no arguments. Why? Would it have worked in our sample program?
- **R19.14** How do you construct a vertical slider? Consult the Swing documentation for an answer.
- **R19.15** Why doesn't a `JComboBox` send out change events?
- **R19.16** What component would you use to show a set of choices, as in a combo box, but so that several items are visible at the same time? Run the Swing demo application or look at a book with Swing example programs to find the answer.
- **R19.17** How many Swing user-interface components are there? Look at the Java documentation to get an approximate answer.
- **R19.18** How many methods does the `JProgressBar` component have? Be sure to count inherited methods. Look at the Java documentation.
- **R19.19** Is it a requirement to use inheritance for frames, as described in Section 19.1.3? (*Hint:* Consider Special Topic 19.1.)
- **R19.20** What is the difference between a label, a text field, and a text area?
- **R19.21** Name a method that is declared in `JTextArea`, a method that `JTextArea` inherits from `JTextComponent`, and a method that `JTextArea` inherits from `JComponent`.
- **R19.22** Why did the program in Section 19.2.2 use a text area and not a label to show how the interest accumulates? How could you have achieved a similar effect with an array of labels?

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E19.1** Write an application with three buttons labeled "Red", "Green", and "Blue" that changes the background color of a panel in the center of the frame to red, green, or blue.
- **E19.2** Add icons to the buttons of Exercise E19.1. Use a `JButton` constructor with an `Icon` argument and supply an `ImageIcon`.
- **E19.3** Write an application with three radio buttons labeled "Red", "Green", and "Blue" that changes the background color of a panel in the center of the frame to red, green, or blue.
- **E19.4** Write an application with three check boxes labeled "Red", "Green", and "Blue" that adds a red, green, or blue component to the background color of a panel in the center of the frame. This application can display a total of eight color combinations.

- **E19.5** Write an application with a combo box containing three items labeled “Red”, “Green”, and “Blue” that change the background color of a panel in the center of the frame to red, green, or blue.
- **E19.6** Write an application with a Color menu and menu items labeled “Red”, “Green”, and “Blue” that change the background color of a panel in the center of the frame to red, green, or blue.
- **E19.7** Write a program that displays a number of rectangles at random positions. Supply menu items “Fewer” and “More” that generate fewer or more random rectangles. Each time the user selects “Fewer”, the count should be halved. Each time the user clicks on “More”, the count should be doubled.
- **E19.8** Enhance the font viewer program to allow the user to select different font faces. Research the API documentation to find out how to find the available fonts on the user’s system.
- **E19.9** Write a program that lets users design charts such as the following:



Use appropriate components to ask for the length, label, and color, then apply them when the user clicks an “Add Item” button.

- **E19.10** Write a graphical application simulating a bank account. Supply text fields and buttons for depositing and withdrawing money, and for displaying the current balance in a label.
- **E19.11** Write a graphical application describing an earthquake, as in Section 5.3. Supply a text field and button for entering the strength of the earthquake. Display the earthquake description in a label.
- **E19.12** Modify the slider test program in Section 19.5 to add a set of tick marks to each slider that show the exact slider position.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- **P19.1** Modify the program of Exercise E19.7 to replace the buttons with a slider to generate more or fewer random rectangles.
- **P19.2** Write a graphical application for computing statistics of a data set. Supply a text field and button for adding floating-point values, and display the current minimum, maximum, and average in a label.
- **P19.3** Write an application with three labeled text fields, one each for the initial amount of a savings account, the annual interest rate, and the number of years. Add a button “Calculate” and a read-only text area to display the balance of the savings account after the end of each year.

- P19.4** In the application from Exercise P19.3, replace the text area with a bar chart that shows the balance after the end of each year.
- Business P19.5** Write a program with a graphical interface that allows the user to convert an amount of money between U.S. dollars (USD), euros (EUR), and British pounds (GBP). The user interface should have the following elements: a text box to enter the amount to be converted, two combo boxes to allow the user to select the currencies, a button to make the conversion, and a label to show the result. Display a warning if the user does not choose different currencies. Use the following conversion rates:
- 1 EUR is equal to 1.42 USD.
  - 1 GBP is equal to 1.64 USD.
  - 1 GBP is equal to 1.13 EUR.
- Business P19.6** Write a program with a graphical interface that implements a login window with text fields for the user name and password. When the login is successful, hide the login window and open a new window with a welcome message. Follow these rules for validating the password:
1. The user name is not case sensitive.
  2. The password is case sensitive.
  3. The user has three opportunities to enter valid credentials.
- Otherwise, display an error message and terminate the program. When the program starts, read the file `users.txt`. Each line in that file contains a username and password, separated by a space. You should make a `users.txt` file for testing your program.
- Business P19.7** In Exercise P19.6, the password is shown as it is typed. Browse the Swing documentation to find an appropriate component for entering a password. Improve the solution of Exercise P19.6 by using this component instead of a text field. Each time the user types a letter, show a ■ character.

### ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. Only the second one is displayed.
2. First add them to a panel, then add the panel to the north end of a frame.
3. Place them inside a panel with a `GridLayout` that has three rows and one column.
4. The button in the north stretches horizontally to fill the width of the frame. The height of the northern area is the normal height. The center button fills the remainder of the window.
5. To get the double-wide button, put it in the south of a panel with border layout whose center has a  $3 \times 2$  grid layout with the keys 7, 8, 4, 5, 1, 2. Put that panel in the west of another border layout panel whose eastern area has a  $4 \times 1$  grid layout with the remaining keys.
6. There was no need to invoke any methods that are specific to `FilledFrame`. It is always a good idea to use the most general type when declaring a variable.
7. Two: `FilledFrameViewer2`, `FilledFrame`.
8. It's an instance method of `FilledFrame`, so the frame is the implicit parameter.
9. Then the text field is not labeled, and the user will not know its purpose.
10. `Integer.parseInt(textField.getText())`
11. A text field holds a single line of text; a text area holds multiple lines.
12. The text area is intended to display the program output. It does not collect user input.

13. Don't construct a `JScrollPane` but add the `resultArea` object directly to the panel.
14. If you have many options, a set of radio buttons takes up a large area. A combo box can show many options without using up much space. But the user cannot see the options as easily.
15. If one of them is checked, the other one is unchecked. You should use radio buttons if that is the behavior you want.
16. You can't nest borders, but you can nest panels with borders:

```
JPanel p1 = new JPanel();
p1.setBorder(new EtchedBorder());
JPanel p2 = new JPanel();
p2.setBorder(new EtchedBorder());
p1.add(p2);
```
17. When any of the component settings is changed, the program simply queries all of them and updates the label.
18. To keep it from growing too large. It would have grown to the same width and height as the two panels below it.
19. Instead of using radio buttons with two choices, use a checkbox.

20. When you open a menu, you have not yet made a selection. Only `JMenuItem` objects correspond to selections.
21. Yes, you can—`JMenuItem` is a subclass of `JMenu`. The item shows up on the menu bar. When you click on it, its listener is called. But the behavior feels unnatural for a menu bar and is likely to confuse users.
22. The parameter variable is accessed in a method of an inner class.
23. Then the `faceName` variable is set when the menu item is added to the menu, not when the user selects the menu.
24. In the previous program, the user-interface components effectively served as storage for the font specification. Their current settings were used to construct the font. But a menu doesn't save settings; it just generates an action.
25. `JColorChooser`.
26. Action events describe one-time changes, such as button clicks. Change events describe continuous changes.

# 20

# STREAMS AND BINARY INPUT/ OUTPUT

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To become familiar with text and binary file formats
- To learn about encryption
- To understand when to use sequential and random file access
- To read and write objects using serialization

## CHAPTER CONTENTS

**20.1 READERS, WRITERS, AND STREAMS** 882

**20.2 BINARY INPUT AND OUTPUT** 883  
*Common Error 20.1: Negative byte Values* 887

**20.3 RANDOM ACCESS** 887

**20.4 OBJECT STREAMS** 893  
*How To 20.1: Choosing a File Format* 896





In this chapter you will learn more about how to write Java programs that interact with files and other sources of bytes and characters. You will learn about reading and writing text and binary data, and the differences between sequential and random access to data in a file. As an application of file processing, you will study a program that encrypts and decrypts data stored in a binary format. Finally, you will see how you can use object serialization to save and load complex objects with very little effort.

## 20.1 Readers, Writers, and Streams

There are two fundamentally different ways to store data: in *text* format or *binary* format. In text format, data items are represented in human-readable form, as a sequence of *characters*. For example, in text form, the integer 12,345 is stored as the sequence of five characters:

'1' '2' '3' '4' '5'

In binary form, data items are represented in **bytes**. A byte is composed of 8 **bits** and can denote one of 256 values ( $256 = 2^8$ ). For example, in binary format, the integer 12,345 is stored as a sequence of four bytes:

0 0 48 57

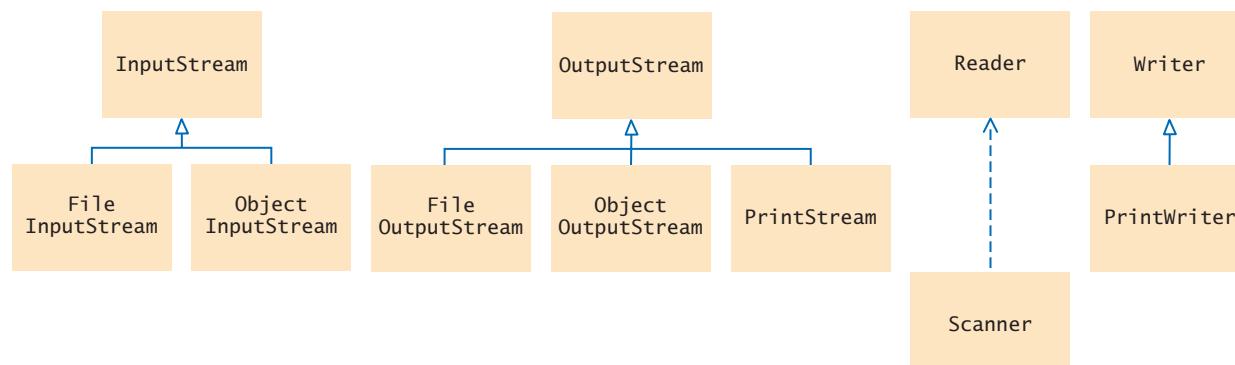
(because  $12,345 = 48 \cdot 256 + 57$ ).

The Java library provides two sets of classes for handling input and output. **Streams** handle binary data. **Readers** and **writers** handle data in text form. Figure 1 shows a part of the hierarchy of the Java classes for input and output.

Text input and output are more convenient for humans, because it is easier to produce input (just use a text editor) and it is easier to check that output is correct (just look at the output file in an editor). However, binary storage is more compact and more efficient.

The Reader and Writer classes were designed to process information in text form. You have already used the PrintWriter class in Chapter 11. However, for reading text,

Streams access sequences of bytes.  
Readers and writers access sequences of characters.



**Figure 1** Java Classes for Input and Output

the Scanner class is more convenient than the Reader class. Internally, the Scanner class makes use of readers to read characters.

If you store information in binary form, as a sequence of bytes, use the `InputStream` and `OutputStream` classes and their subclasses.

Why use two sets of classes? Characters are made up of bytes, but there is some variation in how each character is represented. For example, the character 'é' is encoded as a single byte with value 223 in the ISO-8859-1 encoding that has been commonly used in North America and Western Europe. However, in the UTF-8 encoding that is capable of encoding all Unicode characters, the character is represented by two bytes, 195 and 169. In the UTF-16 encoding, another encoding for Unicode, the same character is encoded as 0 223.

The Reader and Writer classes have the responsibility of converting between bytes and characters. By default, these classes use the character encoding of the computer executing the program. You can specify a different encoding in the constructor of the Scanner or PrintWriter, like this:

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(input, "UTF-8");
    // Input can be a File or InputStream
PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(output, "UTF-8");
    // Output can be a File or OutputStream
```

Unfortunately, there is no way of automatically determining the character encoding that is used in a particular text. You need to know which character encoding was used when the text was written. If you only exchange data with users from the same country, then you can use the default encoding of your computer. Otherwise, it is a good idea to use the UTF-8 encoding.

You learned in Chapter 11 how to process text files. In the remainder of this chapter, we will focus on binary files.

### SELF CHECK



- Suppose you need to read an image file that contains color values for each pixel in the image. Will you use a Reader or an `InputStream`?
- Special Topic 11.1 introduced the `openStream` method of the `URL` class, which returns an `InputStream`:

```
URL locator = new URL("http://bigjava.com/index.html");
InputStream in = locator.openStream();
```

Why doesn't the `URL` class provide a Reader instead?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R20.1, R20.2, R20.4.

## 20.2 Binary Input and Output

Use `FileInputStream` and `FileOutputStream` classes to read and write binary data from and to disk files.

In this section, you will learn how to process binary data. To read binary data from a disk file, you create a `FileInputStream` object:

```
InputStream inputStream = new FileInputStream("input.bin");
```

Similarly, you use `FileOutputStream` objects to write data to a disk file in binary form:

```
OutputStream outputStream = new FileOutputStream("output.bin");
```

The `InputStream` class has a method, `read`, to read a single byte at a time. (The `FileInputStream` class overrides this method to read the bytes from a disk file.) The

The `InputStream.read` method returns an integer, either `-1` to indicate end of input, or a byte between `0` and `255`.

The `OutputStream.write` method writes a single byte.

`InputStream.read` method returns an `int`, not a byte, so that it can signal either that a byte has been read or that the end of input has been reached. It returns the byte read as an integer between `0` and `255` or, when it is at the end of the input, it returns `-1`.

You should test the return value. Only process the input when it is not `-1`:

```
InputStream in = . . .;
int next = in.read();
if (next != -1)
{
    Process next // A value between 0 and 255
}
```

The `OutputStream` class has a `write` method to write a single byte. The parameter variable of the `write` method has type `int`, but only the lowest eight bits of the argument are written to the stream:

```
OutputStream out = . . .;
int value = . . .; // Should be between 0 and 255
out.write(value);
```

When you are done writing to the file, you should close it:

```
out.close();
```

These basic methods are the only input and output methods that the input and output stream classes provide. The Java stream package is built on the principle that each class should have a very focused responsibility. The job of an input stream is to get bytes, not to analyze them. If you want to read numbers, strings, or other objects, you have to combine the class with other classes whose responsibility is to group individual bytes or characters together into numbers, strings, and objects. You will see an example of those classes in Section 20.4.

As an application of a task that involves reading and writing individual bytes, we will implement an encryption program. The program scrambles the bytes in a file so that the file is unreadable except to those who know the decryption method and the secret keyword. We will use the Caesar cipher that you saw in Section 11.3, but now we will encode all bytes. The person performing any encryption chooses an *encryption key*; here the key is a number between `1` and `255` that indicates the shift to be used in encrypting each byte. (Julius Caesar used a key of `3`, replacing A with D, B with E, and so on—see Figure 2).

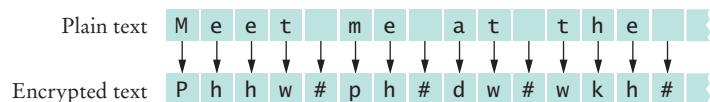
To decrypt, simply use the negative of the encryption key. For example, to decrypt a message encoded with a key of `3`, use a key of `-3`.

In this program we read each value separately, encrypt it, and write the encrypted value:

```
int next = in.read();
if (next == -1)
{
    done = true;
}
else
{
    int encrypted = encrypt(next);
    out.write(encrypted);
}
```

In a more complex encryption program, you would read a block of bytes, encrypt the block, and write it out.

**Figure 2**  
The Caesar Cipher



Try out the program on a file of your choice. You will find that the encrypted file is unreadable. In fact, because the newline characters are transformed, you may not be able to read the encrypted file in a text editor. To decrypt, simply run the program again and supply the negative of the encryption key.

### section\_2/CaesarCipher.java

```

1 import java.io.InputStream;
2 import java.io.OutputStream;
3 import java.io.IOException;
4
5 /**
6     This class encrypts files using the Caesar cipher.
7     For decryption, use an encryptor whose key is the
8     negative of the encryption key.
9 */
10 public class CaesarCipher
11 {
12     private int key;
13
14     /**
15         Constructs a cipher object with a given key.
16         @param aKey the encryption key
17     */
18     public CaesarCipher(int aKey)
19     {
20         key = aKey;
21     }
22
23     /**
24         Encrypts the contents of a stream.
25         @param in the input stream
26         @param out the output stream
27     */
28     public void encryptStream(InputStream in, OutputStream out)
29             throws IOException
30     {
31         boolean done = false;
32         while (!done)
33         {
34             int next = in.read();
35             if (next == -1)
36             {
37                 done = true;
38             }
39             else
40             {
41                 int encrypted = encrypt(next);
42                 out.write(encrypted);
43             }
44         }
45     }
46 }
```

```

47  /**
48   * Encrypts a value.
49   * @param b the value to encrypt (between 0 and 255)
50   * @return the encrypted value
51  */
52  public int encrypt(int b)
53  {
54      return (b + key) % 256;
55  }
56 }
```

### section\_2/CaesarEncryptor.java

```

1 import java.io.File;
2 import java.io.FileInputStream;
3 import java.io.FileOutputStream;
4 import java.io.InputStream;
5 import java.io.IOException;
6 import java.io.OutputStream;
7 import java.util.Scanner;
8
9 /**
10  * This program encrypts a file, using the Caesar cipher.
11 */
12 public class CaesarEncryptor
13 {
14     public static void main(String[] args)
15     {
16         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
17         try
18         {
19             System.out.print("Input file: ");
20             String inFile = in.nextLine();
21             System.out.print("Output file: ");
22             String outFile = in.nextLine();
23             System.out.print("Encryption key: ");
24             int key = in.nextInt();
25
26             InputStream inStream = new FileInputStream(inFile);
27             OutputStream outStream = new FileOutputStream(outFile);
28
29             CaesarCipher cipher = new CaesarCipher(key);
30             cipher.encryptStream(inStream, outStream);
31
32             inStream.close();
33             outStream.close();
34         }
35         catch (IOException exception)
36         {
37             System.out.println("Error processing file: " + exception);
38         }
39     }
40 }
```

#### SELF CHECK



3. Why does the `read` method of the `InputStream` class return an `int` and not a `byte`?
4. Decrypt the following message: Khoor/#Zruog\$.

5. Can you use the sample program from this section to encrypt a binary file, for example, an image file?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R20.6, E20.1, P20.1.

### Common Error 20.1



#### Negative byte Values

The `read` method of the `InputStream` class returns `-1` or the byte that was read, a value between `0` and `255`. It is tempting to place this value into a variable of type `byte`, but that turns out not to be a good idea.

```
int next = in.read();
if (next != -1)
{
    byte input = (byte) next; // Not recommended
    ...
}
```

In Java, the `byte` type is a *signed* type. There are 256 values of the `byte` type, from `-128` to `127`. When converting an `int` value between `128` and `255` to a `byte`, the result is a negative value. This can be inconvenient. For example, consider this test:

```
int next = in.read();
byte input = (byte) next;
if (input == 'é') . . .
```

The condition is never true, even if `next` is equal to the Unicode value for the '`é`' character. That Unicode value happens to be `233`, but a single byte is always a value between `-128` and `127`.

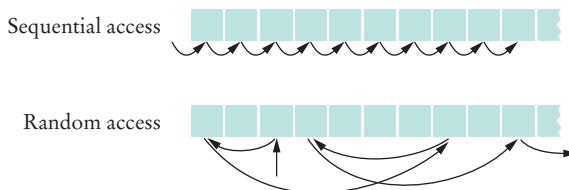
The remedy is to work with `int` values. Don't use the `byte` type.

## 20.3 Random Access

Reading a file sequentially from beginning to end can be inefficient. In this section, you will learn how to directly access arbitrary locations in a file. Consider a file that contains a set of bank accounts. We want to change the balances of some of the accounts. We could read all account data into an array list, update the information that has changed, and save the data out again. But if the data set in the file is very large, we may end up doing a lot of reading and writing just to update a handful of records. It would be better if we could locate the changed information in the file and simply replace it.

In sequential file access, a file is processed one byte at a time.

This is quite different from the file access you programmed in Chapter 11, where you read from a file, starting at the beginning and reading the entire contents until you reached the end. That access pattern is called **sequential access**. Now we would like to access specific locations in a file and change only those locations. This access pattern is called **random access** (see Figure 3). There is nothing "random" about random access—the term simply means that you can read and modify any byte stored at any location in the file.

**Figure 3** Sequential and Random Access

Random access allows access at arbitrary locations in the file, without first reading the bytes preceding the access location.

Only disk files support random access; the `System.in` and `System.out` streams, which are attached to the keyboard and the terminal window, do not. Each disk file has a special **file pointer** position. Normally, the file pointer is at the end of the file, and any output is appended to the end. However, if you move the file pointer to the middle of the file and write to the file, the output overwrites what is already there. The next read command starts reading input at the file pointer location. You can move the file pointer just beyond the last byte currently in the file but no further.

In Java, you use a `RandomAccessFile` object to access a file and move a file pointer. To open a random access file, you supply a file name and a string to specify the *open mode*. You can open a file either for reading only ("r") or for reading and writing ("rw"). For example, the following command opens the file `bank.dat` for both reading and writing:

```
RandomAccessFile f = new RandomAccessFile("bank.dat", "rw");
```

The method call

```
f.seek(position);
```

moves the file pointer to the given position, counted from the beginning of the file. The first byte of a file has position 0. To find out the current position of the file pointer (counted from the beginning of the file), use

```
long position = f.getFilePointer();
```

Because files can be very large, the file pointer values are `long` integers. To determine the number of bytes in a file, use the `length` method:

```
long fileLength = f.length();
```

In the example program at the end of this section, we use a random access file to store a set of bank accounts, each of which has an account number and a current balance. The test program lets you pick an account and deposit money into it.

If you want to manipulate a data set in a file, you have to pay special attention to the formatting of the data. Suppose you just store the data as text. Say account 1001 has a balance of \$900, and account 1015 has a balance of 0.

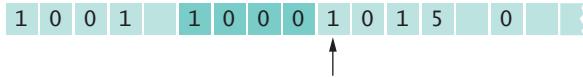
1	0	0	1	9	0	0	1	0	1	5	0
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

We want to deposit \$100 into account 1001. Suppose we move the file pointer to the first character of the old value:

1	0	0	1	9	0	0	1	0	1	5	0
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

A file pointer is a position in a random access file. Because files can be very large, the file pointer is of type `long`.

If we now simply write out the new value, the result is



That is not working too well. The update is overwriting the space that separates the values.

In order to be able to update values in a file, you must give each value a *fixed size* that is sufficiently large. As a result, every record in the file has the same size. This has another advantage: It is then easy to skip quickly to, say, the 50th record, without having to read the first 49 records in. Just set the file pointer to  $49 \times$  the record size.

When storing numbers in a file with fixed record sizes, it is easier to access them in binary form, rather than text form. For that reason, the `RandomAccessFile` class stores binary data. The `readInt` and `writeInt` methods read and write integers as four-byte quantities. The `readDouble` and `writeDouble` methods process double-precision floating-point numbers as eight-byte quantities.

```
double x = f.readDouble();
f.writeDouble(x);
```

If we save the account number as an integer and the balance as a `double` value, then each bank account record consists of 12 bytes: 4 bytes for the integer and 8 bytes for the double-precision floating-point value.

Now that we have determined the file layout, we can implement our random access file methods. In the program at the end of this section, we use a `BankData` class to translate between the random access file format and bank account objects. The `size` method determines the total number of accounts by dividing the file length by the size of a record.

```
public int size() throws IOException
{
    return (int) (file.length() / RECORD_SIZE);
}
```

To read the `n`th account in the file, the `read` method positions the file pointer to the offset `n * RECORD_SIZE`, then reads the data, and constructs a bank account object:

```
public BankAccount read(int n) throws IOException
{
    file.seek(n * RECORD_SIZE);
    int accountNumber = file.readInt();
    double balance = file.readDouble();
    return new BankAccount(accountNumber, balance);
}
```

Writing an account works the same way:

```
public void write(int n, BankAccount account) throws IOException
{
    file.seek(n * RECORD_SIZE);
    file.writeInt(account.getAccountNumber());
    file.writeDouble(account.getBalance());
}
```

The test program asks the user to enter an account number and an amount to deposit. If the account does not currently exist, it is created. The money is deposited, and then

The `RandomAccessFile` class reads and writes numbers in binary form.

the user can choose to continue or quit. The bank data are saved and reloaded when the program is run again.

### section\_3/BankSimulator.java

```
1 import java.io.IOException;
2 import java.util.Scanner;
3
4 /**
5     This program demonstrates random access. You can access
6     existing accounts and deposit money, or create new accounts.
7     The accounts are saved in a random access file.
8 */
9 public class BankSimulator
10 {
11     public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException
12     {
13         Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
14         BankData data = new BankData();
15         try
16         {
17             data.open("bank.dat");
18
19             boolean done = false;
20             while (!done)
21             {
22                 System.out.print("Account number: ");
23                 int accountNumber = in.nextInt();
24                 System.out.print("Amount to deposit: ");
25                 double amount = in.nextDouble();
26
27                 int position = data.find(accountNumber);
28                 BankAccount account;
29                 if (position >= 0)
30                 {
31                     account = data.read(position);
32                     account.deposit(amount);
33                     System.out.println("New balance: " + account.getBalance());
34                 }
35                 else // Add account
36                 {
37                     account = new BankAccount(accountNumber, amount);
38                     position = data.size();
39                     System.out.println("Adding new account.");
40                 }
41                 data.write(position, account);
42
43                 System.out.print("Done? (Y/N) ");
44                 String input = in.next();
45                 if (input.equalsIgnoreCase("Y")) { done = true; }
46             }
47         }
48         finally
49         {
50             data.close();
51         }
52     }
53 }
```

**section\_3/BankData.java**

```

1  import java.io.IOException;
2  import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
3
4  /**
5   * This class is a conduit to a random access file
6   * containing bank account records.
7  */
8  public class BankData
9  {
10     private RandomAccessFile file;
11
12     public static final int INT_SIZE = 4;
13     public static final int DOUBLE_SIZE = 8;
14     public static final int RECORD_SIZE = INT_SIZE + DOUBLE_SIZE;
15
16     /**
17      Constructs a BankData object that is not associated with a file.
18     */
19     public BankData()
20     {
21         file = null;
22     }
23
24     /**
25      Opens the data file.
26      @param filename the name of the file containing bank
27      account information
28     */
29     public void open(String filename)
30             throws IOException
31     {
32         if (file != null) { file.close(); }
33         file = new RandomAccessFile(filename, "rw");
34     }
35
36     /**
37      Gets the number of accounts in the file.
38      @return the number of accounts
39     */
40     public int size()
41             throws IOException
42     {
43         return (int) (file.length() / RECORD_SIZE);
44     }
45
46     /**
47      Closes the data file.
48     */
49     public void close()
50             throws IOException
51     {
52         if (file != null) { file.close(); }
53         file = null;
54     }
55
56     /**
57      Reads a bank account record.

```

```

58     @param n the index of the account in the data file
59     @return a bank account object initialized with the file data
60 */
61     public BankAccount read(int n)
62         throws IOException
63     {
64         file.seek(n * RECORD_SIZE);
65         int accountNumber = file.readInt();
66         double balance = file.readDouble();
67         return new BankAccount(accountNumber, balance);
68     }
69
70 /**
71     Finds the position of a bank account with a given number.
72     @param accountNumber the number to find
73     @return the position of the account with the given number,
74             or -1 if there is no such account
75 */
76     public int find(int accountNumber)
77         throws IOException
78     {
79         for (int i = 0; i < size(); i++)
80         {
81             file.seek(i * RECORD_SIZE);
82             int a = file.readInt();
83             if (a == accountNumber) { return i; }
84             // Found a match
85         }
86         return -1; // No match in the entire file
87     }
88
89 /**
90     Writes a bank account record to the data file.
91     @param n the index of the account in the data file
92     @param account the account to write
93 */
94     public void write(int n, BankAccount account)
95         throws IOException
96     {
97         file.seek(n * RECORD_SIZE);
98         file.writeInt(account.getAccountNumber());
99         file.writeDouble(account.getBalance());
100    }
101 }
```

### Program Run

```

Account number: 1001
Amount to deposit: 100
Adding new account.
Done? (Y/N) N
Account number: 1018
Amount to deposit: 200
Adding new account.
Done? (Y/N) N
Account number: 1001
Amount to deposit: 1000
New balance: 1100.0
Done? (Y/N) Y
```



6. Why doesn't `System.out` support random access?
7. What is the advantage of the binary format for storing numbers? What is the disadvantage?

### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R20.12, R20.13, E20.2, E20.3.

## 20.4 Object Streams

In the program in Section 20.3 you read `BankAccount` objects by reading each input value separately. Actually, there is an easier way. The `ObjectOutputStream` class can save entire objects out to disk, and the `ObjectInputStream` class can read them back in. Objects are saved in binary format; hence, you use streams and not writers.

For example, you can write a `BankAccount` object to a file as follows:

```
BankAccount b = . . .;
ObjectOutputStream out = new ObjectOutputStream(
    new FileOutputStream("bank.dat"));
out.writeObject(b);
```

Use object streams to save and restore all instance variables of an object automatically.

The object output stream automatically saves all instance variables of the object to the stream. When reading the object back in, you use the `readObject` method of the `ObjectInputStream` class. That method returns an `Object` reference, so you need to remember the types of the objects that you saved and use a cast:

```
ObjectInputStream in = new ObjectInputStream(
    new FileInputStream("bank.dat"));
BankAccount b = (BankAccount) in.readObject();
```

The `readObject` method can throw a `ClassNotFoundException`—it is a checked exception, so you need to catch or declare it.

You can do even better than that, though. You can store a whole bunch of objects in an array list or array, or inside another object, and then save that object:

```
ArrayList<BankAccount> a = new ArrayList<BankAccount>();
// Now add many BankAccount objects into a
out.writeObject(a);
```

With one instruction, you can save the array list and *all the objects that it references*. You can read all of them back with one instruction:

```
ArrayList<BankAccount> a = (ArrayList<BankAccount>) in.readObject();
```

Of course, if the `Bank` class contains an `ArrayList` of bank accounts, then you can simply save and restore a `Bank` object. Then its array list, and all the `BankAccount` objects that it contains, are automatically saved and restored as well. The sample program at the end of this section uses this approach.

This is a truly amazing capability that is highly recommended.

To place objects of a particular class into an object stream, the class must implement the `Serializable` interface. That interface has no methods, so there is no effort involved in implementing it:

```
class BankAccount implements Serializable
{
    . . .
}
```

Objects saved to an object stream must belong to classes that implement the `Serializable` interface.

The process of saving objects to a stream is called **serialization** because each object is assigned a serial number on the stream. If the same object is saved twice, only the serial number is written out the second time. When the objects are read back in, duplicate serial numbers are restored as references to the same object.

Following is a sample program that puts serialization to work. The Bank class manages a collection of bank accounts. Both the Bank and BankAccount classes implement the Serializable interface. Run the program several times. Whenever the program exits, it saves the Bank object (and all bank account objects that the bank contains) into a file bank.dat. When the program starts again, the file is loaded, and the changes from the preceding program run are automatically reflected. However, if the file is missing (either because the program is running for the first time, or because the file was erased), then the program starts with a new bank.

### section\_4/Bank.java

```

1 import java.io.Serializable;
2 import java.util.ArrayList;
3
4 /**
5      This bank contains a collection of bank accounts.
6 */
7 public class Bank implements Serializable
8 {
9     private ArrayList<BankAccount> accounts;
10
11    /**
12     Constructs a bank with no bank accounts.
13     */
14    public Bank()
15    {
16        accounts = new ArrayList<BankAccount>();
17    }
18
19    /**
20     Adds an account to this bank.
21     @param a the account to add
22     */
23    public void addAccount(BankAccount a)
24    {
25        accounts.add(a);
26    }
27
28    /**
29     Finds a bank account with a given number.
30     @param accountNumber the number to find
31     @return the account with the given number, or null if there
32     is no such account
33     */
34    public BankAccount find(int accountNumber)
35    {
36        for (BankAccount a : accounts)
37        {
38            if (a.getAccountNumber() == accountNumber) // Found a match
39            {
40                return a;
41            }
42        }
43    }
44    return null; // No match in the entire array list
45 }
```

```

44 }
45 }

```

### section\_4/SerialDemo.java

```

1 import java.io.File;
2 import java.io.IOException;
3 import java.io.FileInputStream;
4 import java.io.FileOutputStream;
5 import java.io.ObjectInputStream;
6 import java.io.ObjectOutputStream;
7
8 /**
9  * This program demonstrates serialization of a Bank object.
10 * If a file with serialized data exists, then it is loaded.
11 * Otherwise the program starts with a new bank.
12 * Bank accounts are added to the bank. Then the bank
13 * object is saved.
14 */
15 public class SerialDemo
16 {
17     public static void main(String[] args)
18         throws IOException, ClassNotFoundException
19     {
20         Bank firstBankOfJava;
21
22         File f = new File("bank.dat");
23         if (f.exists())
24         {
25             ObjectInputStream in = new ObjectInputStream(
26                 new FileInputStream(f));
27             firstBankOfJava = (Bank) in.readObject();
28             in.close();
29         }
30     else
31     {
32         firstBankOfJava = new Bank();
33         firstBankOfJava.addAccount(new BankAccount(1001, 20000));
34         firstBankOfJava.addAccount(new BankAccount(1015, 10000));
35     }
36
37     // Deposit some money
38     BankAccount a = firstBankOfJava.find(1001);
39     a.deposit(100);
40     System.out.println(a.getAccountNumber() + ":" + a.getBalance());
41     a = firstBankOfJava.find(1015);
42     System.out.println(a.getAccountNumber() + ":" + a.getBalance());
43
44     ObjectOutputStream out = new ObjectOutputStream(
45         new FileOutputStream(f));
46     out.writeObject(firstBankOfJava);
47     out.close();
48 }
49 }

```

### Program Run

```

1001:20100.0
1015:10000.0

```

**Second Program Run**

```
1001:20200.0
1015:10000.0
```

**SELF CHECK**

8. Why is it easier to save an object with an `ObjectOutputStream` than a `RandomAccessFile`?
9. What do you have to do to the `Country` class from Section 10.1 so that its objects can be saved in an `ObjectOutputStream`?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R20.8, R20.9, E20.4.

**HOW TO 20.1****Choosing a File Format**

Many programs allow users to save their work in files. Program users can later load those files and continue working on the data, or send the files to other users. When you develop such a program, you need to decide how to store the data.

This How To shows you how to choose the appropriate mechanisms for saving and loading your program's data.

**Step 1** Select a data format.

The most important questions you need to ask yourself concern the format to use for saving your data:

- Does your program manipulate text, such as plain text files? If so, use readers and writers.
- Does your program update portions of a file? Then use random access.
- Does your program read or write individual bytes of binary data, such as image files or encrypted data? Then use streams.
- Does your program save and restore objects? Then use object streams.

**Step 2** Use scanners and writers if you are processing text.

Use a scanner to read the input.

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(new File("input.txt"));
```

Then use the familiar methods `next`, `nextInt`, and so on. See Chapter 11 for details.

To write output, turn the file output stream into a `PrintWriter`:

```
PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter("output.txt");
```

Then use the familiar `print` and `println` methods:

```
out.println(text);
```

**Step 3** Use the `RandomAccessFile` class if you need random access.

The `RandomAccessFile` class has methods for moving a file pointer to an arbitrary position:

```
file.seek(position);
```

You can then read or write individual bytes, characters, binary integers, and binary floating-point numbers.

#### Step 4 Use streams if you are processing bytes.

Use this loop to process input one byte at a time:

```
InputStream in = new FileInputStream("input.bin");
boolean done = false;
while (!done)
{
    int next = in.read();
    if (next == -1)
    {
        done = true;
    }
    else
    {
        Process next. // next is between 0 and 255
    }
}
```

Similarly, write the output one byte at a time:

```
OutputStream out = new FileOutputStream("output.bin");
.
.
while (. . .)
{
    int b = . . .; // b is between 0 and 255
    out.write(b);
}
out.close();
```

Use binary streams only if you are ready to process the input one byte at a time. This makes sense for encryption/decryption or processing the pixels in an image. In other situations, binary streams are not appropriate.

#### Step 5 Use object streams if you are processing objects.

First go through your classes and tag them with `implements Serializable`. You don't need to add any additional methods.

Also go to the online API documentation to check that the library classes that you are using implement the `Serializable` interface. Fortunately, many of them do. In particular, `String` and `ArrayList` are serializable.

Next, put all the objects you want to save into a class (or an array or array list—but why not make another class containing that?).

Saving all program data is a trivial operation:

```
ProgramData data = . . .;
ObjectOutputStream out = new ObjectOutputStream(new FileOutputStream("program.dat"));
out.writeObject(data);
out.close();
```

Similarly, to restore the program data, you use an `ObjectInputStream` and call

```
ProgramData data = (ProgramData) in.readObject();
```

The `readObject` method can throw a `ClassNotFoundException`. You must catch or declare that exception.

**CHAPTER SUMMARY****Describe the Java class hierarchy for handling input and output.**

- Streams access sequences of bytes. Readers and writers access sequences of characters.

**Write programs that carry out input and output of binary data.**

- Use `FileInputStream` and `FileOutputStream` classes to read and write binary data from and to disk files.
- The `InputStream.read` method returns an integer, either `-1` to indicate end of input, or a byte between `0` and `255`.
- The `OutputStream.write` method writes a single byte.

**Describe random access and use the `RandomAccessFile` class.**

- In sequential file access, a file is processed one byte at a time.
- Random access allows access at arbitrary locations in the file, without first reading the bytes preceding the access location.
- A file pointer is a position in a random access file. Because files can be very large, the file pointer is of type `long`.
- The `RandomAccessFile` class reads and writes numbers in binary form.

**Use object streams to automatically read and write entire objects.**

- Use object streams to save and restore all instance variables of an object automatically.
- Objects saved to an object stream must belong to classes that implement the `Serializable` interface.

**STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER**

`java.io.FileInputStream`  
`java.io.FileOutputStream`  
`java.io.InputStream`  
  `close`  
  `read`  
`java.io.ObjectInputStream`  
  `readObject`  
`java.io.ObjectOutputStream`  
  `writeObject`  
`java.io.OutputStream`  
  `close`  
  `write`

`java.io.RandomAccessFile`  
  `getFilePointer`  
  `length`  
  `readChar`  
  `readDouble`  
  `readInt`  
  `seek`  
  `writeChar`  
  `writeChars`  
  `writeDouble`  
  `writeInt`  
`java.io.Serializable`

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

- **R20.1** What is the difference between a stream and a reader?
- **R20.2** Write a few lines of text to a new `PrintWriter("output1.txt", "UTF-8")` and the same text to a new `PrintWriter("output2.txt", "UTF-16")`. How do the output files differ?
- **R20.3** How can you open a file for both reading and writing in Java?
- **R20.4** What happens if you try to write to a file reader?
- **R20.5** What happens if you try to write to a random access file that you opened only for reading? Try it out if you don't know.
- **R20.6** How can you break the Caesar cipher? That is, how can you read a document that was encrypted with the Caesar cipher, even though you don't know the key?
- **R20.7** What happens if you try to save an object that is not serializable in an object stream? Try it out and report your results.
- **R20.8** Of the classes in the `java.lang` and `java.io` packages that you have encountered in this book, which implement the `Serializable` interface?
- **R20.9** Why is it better to save an entire `ArrayList` to an object stream instead of programming a loop that writes each element?
- **R20.10** What is the difference between sequential access and random access?
- **R20.11** What is the file pointer in a file? How do you move it? How do you tell the current position? Why is it a long integer?
- **R20.12** How do you move the file pointer to the first byte of a file? To the last byte? To the exact middle of the file?
- **R20.13** What happens if you try to move the file pointer past the end of a file? Try it out and report your result.
- **R20.14** Can you move the file pointer of `System.in`?

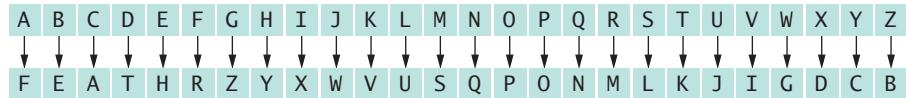
## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E20.1** Write a program that opens a binary file and prints all ASCII characters from that file, that is, all bytes with values between 32 and 126. Print a new line after every 64 characters. What happens when you use your program with word processor documents? With Java class files?
- **E20.2** Modify the `BankSimulator` program so that it is possible to delete an account. To delete a record from the data file, fill the record with zeroes.
- **E20.3** The data file in Exercise E20.2 may end up with many deleted records that take up space. Write a program that compacts such a file, moving all active records to the beginning and shortening the file length. *Hint:* Use the `setLength` method of the `RandomAccessFile` class to truncate the file length. Look up the method's behavior in the API documentation.

- E20.4 Enhance the `SerialDemo` program to demonstrate that it can save and restore a bank that contains a mixture of savings and checking accounts.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- P20.1 *Random monoalphabet cipher.* The Caesar cipher, which shifts all letters by a fixed amount, is far too easy to crack. Here is a better idea. For the key, don't use numbers but words. Suppose the key word is FEATHER. Then first remove duplicate letters, yielding FEATHR, and append the other letters of the alphabet in reverse order. Now encrypt the letters as follows:



Write a program that encrypts or decrypts a file using this cipher. The key word is specified with the `-k` command line option. The `-d` command line option specifies decryption. For example,

```
java Encryptor -d -k FEATHER encrypt.txt output.txt
```

decrypts a file using the keyword FEATHER. It is an error not to supply a keyword.

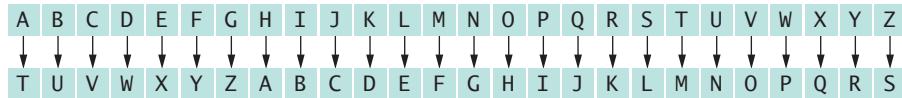
- P20.2 *Letter frequencies.* If you encrypt a file using the cipher of Exercise P20.1, it will have all of its letters jumbled up, and will look as if there is no hope of decrypting it without knowing the keyword. Guessing the keyword seems hopeless, too. There are just too many possible keywords. However, someone who is trained in decryption will be able to break this cipher in no time at all. The average letter frequencies of English letters are well known. The most common letter is E, which occurs about 13 percent of the time. Here are the average frequencies of English letters:

A	8%	H	4%	O	7%	V	1%
B	<1%	I	7%	P	3%	W	2%
C	3%	J	<1%	Q	<1%	X	<1%
D	4%	K	<1%	R	8%	Y	2%
E	13%	L	4%	S	6%	Z	<1%
F	3%	M	3%	T	9%		
G	2%	N	8%	U	3%		

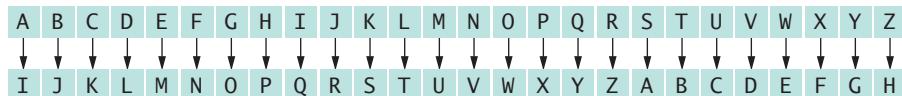
Write a program that reads an input file and prints the letter frequencies in that file. Such a tool will help a code breaker. If the most frequent letters in an encrypted file are H and K, then there is an excellent chance that they are the encryptions of E and T.

- P20.3 *Vigenère cipher.* The trouble with a monoalphabetic cipher is that it can be easily broken by frequency analysis. The so-called Vigenère cipher overcomes this problem by encoding a letter into one of several cipher letters, depending on its position

in the input document. Choose a keyword, for example TIGER. Then encode the first letter of the input text like this:



That is, the encoded alphabet is just the regular alphabet shifted to start at T, the first letter of the keyword TIGER. The second letter is encrypted according to this map:



The third, fourth, and fifth letters in the input text are encrypted using the alphabet sequences beginning with characters G, E, and R. Because the key is only five letters long, the sixth letter of the input text is encrypted in the same way as the first.

Write a program that encrypts or decrypts an input text using this cipher. Use command line arguments as in Exercise P20.1.

- ■ **P20.4** *Playfair cipher.* Another way of thwarting a simple letter frequency analysis of an encrypted text is to encrypt pairs of letters together. A simple scheme to do this is the Playfair cipher. You pick a keyword and remove duplicate letters from it. Then you fill the keyword, and the remaining letters of the alphabet, into a  $5 \times 5$  square. (Because there are only 25 squares, I and J are considered the same letter.) Here is such an arrangement with the keyword PLAYFAIR:

```
P L A Y F
I R B C D
E G H K M
N O Q S T
U V W X Z
```

To encrypt a letter pair, say AT, look at the rectangle with corners A and T:

```
P L A Y F
I R B C D
E G H K M
N O Q S T
U V W X Z
```

The encoding of this pair is formed by looking at the other two corners of the rectangle—in this case, FO. If both letters happen to be in the same row or column, such as GO, simply swap the two letters. Decryption is done in the same way.

Write a program that encrypts or decrypts an input text using this cipher. Use command line arguments as in Exercise P20.1.

- ■ ■ **Business P20.5** Write a program that manipulates a database of product records. Records are stored in a binary file. Each record consists of these items:

- Product name: 30 characters at two bytes each = 60 bytes
- Price: one `double` = 8 bytes
- Quantity: one `int` = 8 bytes

The program should allow the user to add a record, find a record that matches a product name, and change the price and quantity of a product by a given amount.

- **Graphics P20.6** Implement a graphical user interface for the BankSimulator program in Section 20.3.
- **Graphics P20.7** Write a graphical application in which the user clicks on a panel to add shapes (rectangles, ellipses, cars, etc.) at the mouse click location. The shapes are stored in an array list. When the user selects File->Save from the menu, save the selection of shapes in a file. When the user selects File->Open, load in a file. Use serialization.
- **P20.8** Write a toolkit that helps a cryptographer decrypt a file that was encrypted using a monoalphabet cipher. A monoalphabet cipher encrypts each character separately. Examples are the Caesar cipher and the cipher in Exercise P20.1. Analyze the letter frequencies as in Exercise P20.2. Use brute force to try all Caesar cipher keys, and check the output against a dictionary file. Allow the cryptographer to enter some substitutions and show the resulting text, with the unknown characters represented as ?. Try out your toolkit by decrypting files that you get from your classmates.

### ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. Image data is stored in a binary format—try loading an image file into a text editor, and you won't see much text. Therefore, you should use an `InputStream`.
2. For HTML files, a reader would be useful. But URLs can also point to binary files, such as <http://horstmann.com/bigjava/duke.gif>.
3. It returns a special value of -1 to indicate that no more input is available. If the return type had been `byte`, no special value would have been available that is distinguished from a legal data value.
4. It is "Hello, World!", encrypted with a key of 3.
5. Yes—the program uses streams and encrypts each byte.
6. Suppose you print something, and then you call `seek(0)`, and print again to the same location. It would be difficult to reflect that behavior in the console window.
7. Advantage: The numbers use a fixed amount of storage space, making it possible to change their values without affecting surrounding data. Disadvantage: You cannot read a binary file with a text editor.
8. You can save the entire object with a single `writeObject` call. With a `RandomAccessFile`, you have to save each instance variable separately.
9. Add `implements Serializable` to the class definition.

# 21

# MULTITHREADING

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To understand how multiple threads can execute in parallel
- To learn to implement threads
- To understand race conditions and deadlocks
- To avoid corruption of shared objects by using locks and conditions
- To use threads for programming animations



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### 21.1 RUNNING THREADS W904

*Programming Tip 21.1:* Use the Runnable Interface W908

*Special Topic 21.1:* Thread Pools W908

### 21.2 TERMINATING THREADS W909

*Programming Tip 21.2:* Check for Thread Interruptions in the run Method of a Thread W911

### 21.3 RACE CONDITIONS W911

### 21.4 SYNCHRONIZING OBJECT ACCESS W917

### 21.5 AVOIDING DEADLOCKS W919

*Common Error 21.1:* Calling await Without Calling signalAll W924

*Common Error 21.2:* Calling signalAll Without Locking the Object W925

*Special Topic 21.2:* Object Locks and Synchronized Methods W925

*Special Topic 21.3:* The Java Memory Model W926

### 21.6 APPLICATION: ALGORITHM ANIMATION W926



It is often useful for a program to carry out two or more tasks at the same time. For example, a web browser can load multiple images on a web page at the same time. Or an animation program can show moving figures, with separate tasks computing the positions of each separate figure. In this chapter, you will see how to implement this behavior by running tasks in multiple threads, and how you can ensure that the tasks access shared data in a controlled fashion.

## 21.1 Running Threads

A thread is a program unit that is executed concurrently with other parts of the program.

A **thread** is a program unit that is executed independently of other parts of the program. The Java virtual machine executes each thread for a short amount of time and then switches to another thread. This gives the illusion of executing the threads in parallel to each other. Actually, if a computer has multiple central processing units (CPUs), then some of the threads *can* run in parallel, one on each processor.

Running a thread is simple in Java—follow these steps:

1. Write a class that implements the `Runnable` interface. That interface has a single method called `run`:

```
public interface Runnable
{
    void run();
}
```

2. Place the code for your task into the `run` method of your class:

```
public class MyRunnable implements Runnable
{
    public void run()
    {
        Task statements
        ...
    }
}
```

3. Create an object of your subclass:

```
Runnable r = new MyRunnable();
```

4. Construct a `Thread` object from the `Runnable` object:

```
Thread t = new Thread(r);
```

5. Call the `start` method to start the thread:

```
t.start();
```

The `start` method of the `Thread` class starts a new thread that executes the `run` method of the associated `Runnable` object.

Let's look at a concrete example. We want to print ten greetings of "Hello, World!", one greeting every second. We add a time stamp to each greeting to see when it is printed.

```
Fri Dec 28 23:12:03 PST 2012 Hello, World!
Fri Dec 28 23:12:04 PST 2012 Hello, World!
Fri Dec 28 23:12:05 PST 2012 Hello, World!
Fri Dec 28 23:12:06 PST 2012 Hello, World!
Fri Dec 28 23:12:07 PST 2012 Hello, World!
Fri Dec 28 23:12:08 PST 2012 Hello, World!
```

```
Fri Dec 28 23:12:09 PST 2012 Hello, World!
Fri Dec 28 23:12:10 PST 2012 Hello, World!
Fri Dec 28 23:12:11 PST 2012 Hello, World!
Fri Dec 28 23:12:12 PST 2012 Hello, World!
```

Using the instructions for creating a thread, define a class that implements the `Runnable` interface:

```
public class GreetingRunnable implements Runnable
{
    private String greeting;

    public GreetingRunnable(String aGreeting)
    {
        greeting = aGreeting;
    }

    public void run()
    {
        Task statements
        . . .
    }
}
```

The `run` method should loop ten times through the following task actions:

- Print a time stamp.
- Print the greeting.
- Wait a second.

Get the time stamp by constructing an object of the `java.util.Date` class. The `Date` constructor without arguments produces a date that is set to the current date and time.

```
Date now = new Date();
System.out.println(now + " " + greeting);
```

To wait a second, we use the static `sleep` method of the `Thread` class. The call

```
Thread.sleep(milliseconds)
```

puts the current thread to sleep for a given number of milliseconds. In our case, it should sleep for 1,000 milliseconds, or one second.

There is, however, one technical problem. Putting a thread to sleep is potentially risky—a thread might sleep for so long that it is no longer useful and should be terminated. As you will see in Section 21.2, to terminate a thread, you interrupt it. When a sleeping thread is interrupted, an `InterruptedException` is generated. You need to catch that exception in your `run` method and terminate the thread.

The simplest way to handle thread interruptions is to give your `run` method the following form:

```
public void run()
{
    try
    {
        Task statements
    }
    catch (InterruptedException exception)
    {
    }
    Clean up, if necessary.
}
```

The `sleep` method puts the current thread to sleep for a given number of milliseconds.

When a thread is interrupted, the most common response is to terminate the `run` method.

We follow that structure in our example. Here is the complete code for our runnable class:

### section\_1/GreetingRunnable.java

```

1  import java.util.Date;
2
3  /**
4   * A runnable that repeatedly prints a greeting.
5   */
6  public class GreetingRunnable implements Runnable
7  {
8      private static final int REPETITIONS = 10;
9      private static final int DELAY = 1000;
10
11     private String greeting;
12
13     /**
14      Constructs the runnable object.
15      @param aGreeting the greeting to display
16     */
17     public GreetingRunnable(String aGreeting)
18     {
19         greeting = aGreeting;
20     }
21
22     public void run()
23     {
24         try
25         {
26             for (int i = 1; i <= REPETITIONS; i++)
27             {
28                 Date now = new Date();
29                 System.out.println(now + " " + greeting);
30                 Thread.sleep(DELAY);
31             }
32         }
33         catch (InterruptedException exception)
34         {
35         }
36     }
37 }
```

To start a thread, first construct an object of the runnable class.

```
Runnable r = new GreetingRunnable("Hello, World!");
```

Then construct a thread and call the start method.

```
Thread t = new Thread(r);
t.start();
```

Now a new thread is started, executing the code in the `run` method of your runnable class in parallel with any other threads in your program.

In the `GreetingThreadRunner` program, we start two threads: one that prints “Hello” and one that prints “Goodbye”.

### section\_1/GreetingThreadRunner.java

```

1  /**
2   * This program runs two greeting threads in parallel.
3  */
4  public class GreetingThreadRunner
5  {
6      public static void main(String[] args)
7      {
8          GreetingRunnable r1 = new GreetingRunnable("Hello");
9          GreetingRunnable r2 = new GreetingRunnable("Goodbye");
10         Thread t1 = new Thread(r1);
11         Thread t2 = new Thread(r2);
12         t1.start();
13         t2.start();
14     }
15 }
```

### Program Run

```

Fri Dec 28 12:04:46 PST 2012 Hello
Fri Dec 28 12:04:46 PST 2012 Goodbye
Fri Dec 28 12:04:47 PST 2012 Hello
Fri Dec 28 12:04:47 PST 2012 Goodbye
Fri Dec 28 12:04:48 PST 2012 Hello
Fri Dec 28 12:04:48 PST 2012 Goodbye
Fri Dec 28 12:04:49 PST 2012 Hello
Fri Dec 28 12:04:49 PST 2012 Goodbye
Fri Dec 28 12:04:50 PST 2012 Hello
Fri Dec 28 12:04:50 PST 2012 Goodbye
Fri Dec 28 12:04:51 PST 2012 Hello
Fri Dec 28 12:04:51 PST 2012 Goodbye
Fri Dec 28 12:04:52 PST 2012 Goodbye
Fri Dec 28 12:04:52 PST 2012 Hello
Fri Dec 28 12:04:53 PST 2012 Hello
Fri Dec 28 12:04:53 PST 2012 Goodbye
Fri Dec 28 12:04:54 PST 2012 Hello
Fri Dec 28 12:04:54 PST 2012 Goodbye
Fri Dec 28 12:04:55 PST 2012 Goodbye
Fri Dec 28 12:04:55 PST 2012 Hello
```

The thread scheduler runs each thread for a short amount of time, called a time slice.

Because both threads are running in parallel, the two message sets are interleaved. However, if you look closely, you will find that the two threads aren't *exactly* interleaved. Sometimes, the second thread seems to jump ahead of the first thread. This shows an important characteristic of threads. The thread scheduler gives no guarantee about the order in which threads are executed. Each thread runs for a short amount of time, called a **time slice**. Then the scheduler activates another thread. However, there will always be slight variations in running times, especially when calling operating system services (such as input and output). Thus, you should expect that the order in which each thread gains control is somewhat random.

**SELF CHECK**

1. What happens if you change the call to the `sleep` method in the `run` method to `Thread.sleep(1)`?
2. What would be the result of the program if the `main` method called
 

```
r1.run();
r2.run();
```

 instead of starting threads?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R21.2, R21.3, E21.7.

**Programming Tip 21.1****Use the Runnable Interface**

In Java, you can define the task statements of a thread in two ways. As you have seen already, you can place the statements into the `run` method of a class that implements the `Runnable` interface. Then you use an object of that class to construct a `Thread` object. You can also form a subclass of the `Thread` class, and place the task statements into the `run` method of your subclass:

```
public class MyThread extends Thread
{
    public void run()
    {
        Task statements
        ...
    }
}
```

Then you construct an object of the subclass and call the `start` method:

```
Thread t = new MyThread();
t.start();
```

This approach is marginally easier than using a `Runnable`, and it also seems quite intuitive. However, if a program needs a large number of threads, or if a program executes in a resource-constrained device, such as a cell phone, it can be quite expensive to construct a separate thread for each task. Special Topic 21.1 shows how to use a *thread pool* to overcome this problem. A thread pool uses a small number of threads to execute a larger number of runnables.

The `Runnable` interface is designed to encapsulate the concept of a sequence of statements that can run in parallel with other tasks, without equating it with the concept of a thread, a potentially expensive resource that is managed by the operating system.

**Special Topic 21.1****Thread Pools**

A program that creates a huge number of short-lived threads can be inefficient. Threads are managed by the operating system, and there is a cost for creating threads. Each thread requires memory, and thread creation takes time. This cost can be reduced by using a *thread pool*. A thread pool creates a number of threads and keeps them alive. When you add a `Runnable` object to the thread pool, the next idle thread executes its `run` method.

For example, the following statements submit two runnables to a thread pool:

```
Runnable r1 = new GreetingRunnable("Hello");
Runnable r2 = new GreetingRunnable("Goodbye");
ExecutorService pool = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(MAX_THREADS);
pool.execute(r1);
pool.execute(r2);
```

If many runnables are submitted for execution, then the pool may not have enough threads available. In that case, some runnables are placed in a queue until a thread is idle. As a result, the cost of creating threads is minimized. However, the runnables that are run by a particular thread are executed sequentially, not in parallel.

Thread pools are particularly important for server programs, such as database and web servers, that repeatedly execute requests from multiple clients. Rather than spawning a new thread for each request, the requests are implemented as runnable objects and submitted to a thread pool.

## 21.2 Terminating Threads

A thread terminates when its run method terminates.

When the `run` method of a thread has finished executing, the thread terminates. This is the normal way of terminating a thread—implement the `run` method so that it returns when it determines that no more work needs to be done.

However, sometimes you need to terminate a running thread. For example, you may have several threads trying to find a solution to a problem. As soon as the first one has succeeded, you may want to terminate the other ones. In the initial release of the Java library, the `Thread` class had a `stop` method to terminate a thread. However, that method is now *deprecated*—computer scientists have found that stopping a thread can lead to dangerous situations when multiple threads share objects. (We will discuss access to shared objects in Section 21.3.) Instead of simply stopping a thread, you should notify the thread that it should be terminated. The thread needs to cooperate, by releasing any resources that it is currently using and doing any other required cleanup. In other words, a thread should be in charge of terminating itself.

To notify a thread that it should clean up and terminate, you use the `interrupt` method.

```
t.interrupt();
```

The run method can check whether its thread has been interrupted by calling the `interrupted` method.

This method does not actually cause the thread to terminate—it merely sets a boolean variable in the thread data structure.

The `run` method can check whether that flag has been set, by calling the static `interrupted` method. In that case, it should do any necessary cleanup and exit. For example, the `run` method of the `GreetingRunnable` could check for interruptions at the beginning of each loop iteration:

```
public void run()
{
    for (int i = 1; i <= REPETITIONS && !Thread.interrupted(); i++)
    {
        Do work.
    }
    Clean up.
}
```

However, if a thread is sleeping, it can't execute code that checks for interruptions. Therefore, the `sleep` method is terminated with an `InterruptedException` whenever a sleeping thread is interrupted. The `sleep` method also throws an `InterruptedException` when it is called in a thread that is already interrupted. If your `run` method calls `sleep` in each loop iteration, simply use the `InterruptedException` to find out whether the

thread is terminated. The easiest way to do that is to surround the entire work portion of the `run` method with a `try` block, like this:

```
public void run()
{
    try
    {
        for (int i = 1; i <= REPETITIONS; i++)
        {
            Do work.
            Sleep.
        }
    }
    catch (InterruptedException exception)
    {
    }
    Clean up.
}
```

Strictly speaking, there is nothing in the Java language specification that says that a thread must terminate when it is interrupted. It is entirely up to the thread what it does when it is interrupted. Interrupting is a general mechanism for getting the thread's attention, even when it is sleeping. However, in this chapter, we will always terminate a thread that is being interrupted.

### SELF CHECK



3. Suppose a web browser uses multiple threads to load the images on a web page. Why should these threads be terminated when the user hits the “Back” button?
4. Consider the following runnable.

```
public class MyRunnable implements Runnable
{
    public void run()
    {
        try
        {
            System.out.println(1);
            Thread.sleep(1000);
            System.out.println(2);
        }
        catch (InterruptedException exception)
        {
            System.out.println(3);
        }
        System.out.println(4);
    }
}
```

Suppose a thread with this runnable is started and immediately interrupted:

```
Thread t = new Thread(new MyRunnable());
t.start();
t.interrupt();
```

What output is produced?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R21.4, R21.5, R21.6.

## Programming Tip 21.2

**Check for Thread Interruptions in the run Method of a Thread**

By convention, a thread should terminate itself (or at least act in some other well-defined way) when it is interrupted. You should implement your threads to follow this convention.

To do so, put the thread action inside a try block that catches the `InterruptedException`. That exception occurs when your thread is interrupted while it is not running, for example inside a call to `sleep`. When you catch the exception, do any required cleanup and exit the `run` method.

Some programmers don't understand the purpose of the `InterruptedException` and muzzle it by placing only the call to `sleep` inside a try block:

```
public void run()
{
    while (...)
    {
        ...
        try
        {
            Thread.sleep(delay);
        }
        catch (InterruptedException exception) {} // DON'T
        ...
    }
}
```

Don't do that. If you do, users of your thread class can't get your thread's attention by interrupting it. It is just as easy to place the entire thread action inside a single try block. Then interrupting the thread terminates the thread action.

```
public void run()
{
    try
    {
        while (...)
        {
            ...
            Thread.sleep(delay);
            ...
        }
        catch (InterruptedException exception) {} // OK
    }
}
```

## 21.3 Race Conditions

When threads share access to a common object, they can conflict with each other. To demonstrate the problems that can arise, we will investigate a sample program in which multiple threads manipulate a bank account.

We construct a bank account that starts out with a zero balance. We create two sets of threads:

- Each thread in the first set repeatedly deposits \$100.
- Each thread in the second set repeatedly withdraws \$100.

Here is the `run` method of the `DepositRunnable` class:

```
public void run()
{
    try
    {
        for (int i = 1; i <= count; i++)
        {
            account.deposit(amount);
            Thread.sleep(DELAY);
        }
    }
    catch (InterruptedException exception)
    {
    }
}
```

The `WithdrawRunnable` class is similar—it withdraws money instead.

The `deposit` and `withdraw` methods of the `BankAccount` class have been modified to print messages that show what is happening. For example, here is the code for the `deposit` method:

```
public void deposit(double amount)
{
    System.out.print("Depositing " + amount);
    double newBalance = balance + amount;
    System.out.println(", new balance is " + newBalance);
    balance = newBalance;
}
```

You can find the complete source code at the end of this section.

Normally, the program output looks somewhat like this:

```
Depositing 100.0, new balance is 100.0
Withdrawing 100.0, new balance is 0.0
Depositing 100.0, new balance is 100.0
Depositing 100.0, new balance is 200.0
Withdrawing 100.0, new balance is 100.0
...
Withdrawing 100.0, new balance is 0.0
```

In the end, the balance should be zero. However, when you run this program repeatedly, you may sometimes notice messed-up output, like this:

```
Depositing 100.0Withdrawing 100.0, new balance is 100.0
, new balance is -100.0
```

And if you look at the last line of the output, you will notice that the final balance is not always zero. Clearly, something problematic is happening. You may have to try the program several times to see this effect.

Here is a scenario that explains how a problem can occur.

1. A deposit thread executes the lines

```
System.out.print("Depositing " + amount);
double newBalance = balance + amount;
```

in the `deposit` method of the `BankAccount` class. The value of the `balance` variable is still 0, and the value of the `newBalance` local variable is 100.

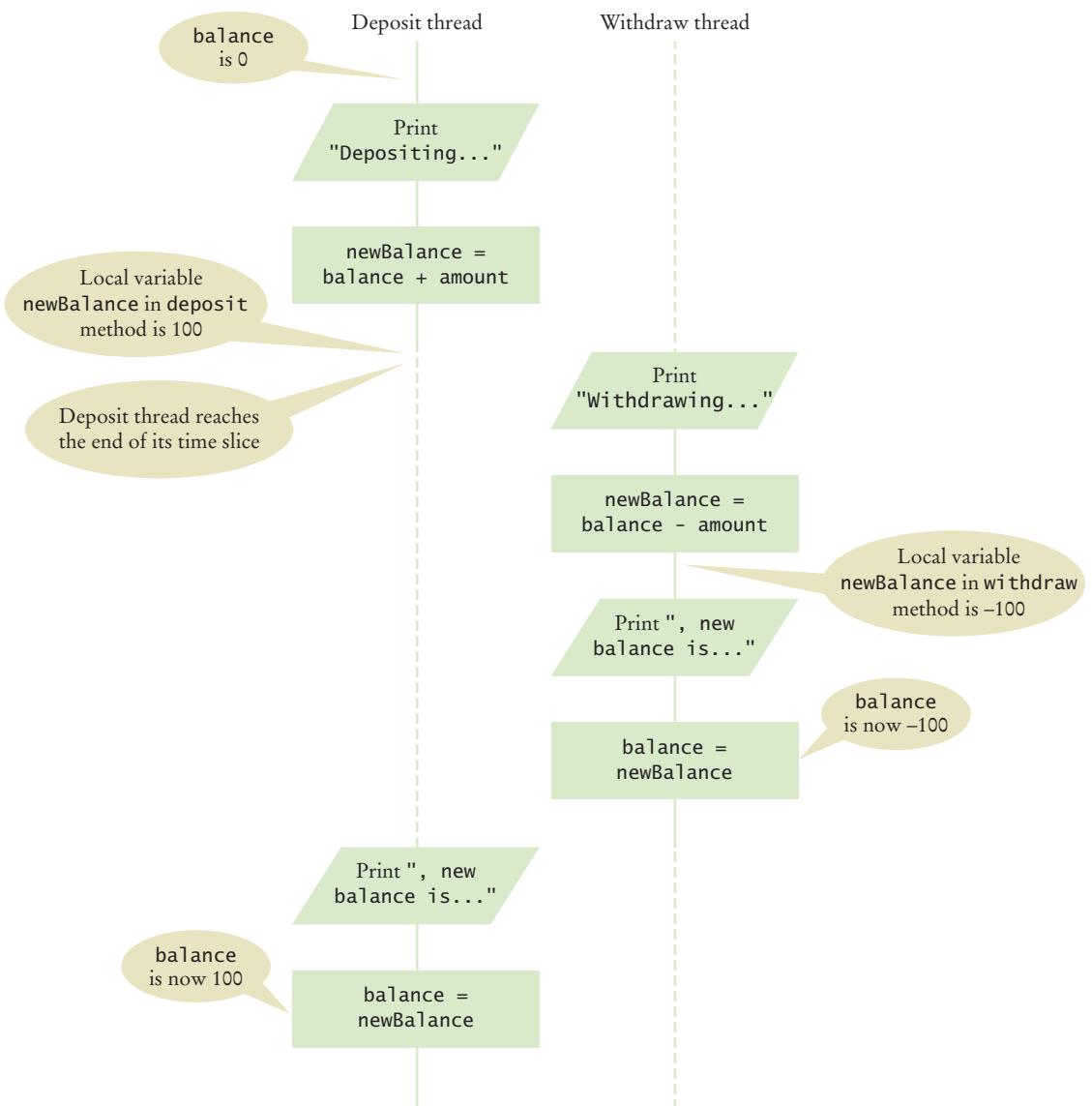
2. Immediately afterward, the deposit thread reaches the end of its time slice, and the second thread gains control.

3. A withdraw thread calls the `withdraw` method, which prints a message and withdraws \$100 from the `balance` variable. It is now -100.
4. The withdraw thread goes to sleep.
5. The deposit thread regains control and picks up where it was interrupted. It now executes the lines

```
System.out.println(", new balance is " + newBalance);
balance = newBalance;
```

The value of `balance` is now 100 (see Figure 1).

Thus, not only are the messages interleaved, but the balance is wrong. The balance after a withdrawal and deposit should again be 0, not 100. Because the `deposit` method



**Figure 1** Corrupting the Contents of the `balance` Variable

A race condition occurs if the effect of multiple threads on shared data depends on the order in which the threads are scheduled.

was interrupted, it used the *old* balance (before the withdrawal) to compute the value of its local `newBalance` variable. Later, when it was activated again, it used that `newBalance` value to overwrite the changed `balance` variable.

As you can see, each thread has its own local variables, but all threads share access to the `balance` instance variable. That shared access creates a problem. This problem is often called a **race condition**. All threads, in their race to complete their respective tasks, manipulate a shared variable, and the end result depends on which of them happens to win the race.

You might argue that the reason for this problem is that we made it too easy to interrupt the balance computation. Suppose the code for the `deposit` method is reorganized like this:

```
public void deposit(double amount)
{
    balance = balance + amount;
    System.out.print("Depositing " + amount
        + ", new balance is " + balance);
}
```

Suppose further that you make the same change in the `withdraw` method. If you run the resulting program, everything seems to be fine.

However, that is a *dangerous illusion*. The problem hasn't gone away; it has become much less frequent, and, therefore, more difficult to observe. It is still possible for the `deposit` method to reach the end of its time slice after it has computed the right-hand-side value

`balance + amount`

but before it performs the assignment

`balance = the right-hand-side value`

When the method regains control, it finally carries out the assignment, putting the wrong value into the `balance` variable.

### section\_3/BankAccountThreadRunner.java

```
1  /**
2   * This program runs threads that deposit and withdraw
3   * money from the same bank account.
4  */
5  public class BankAccountThreadRunner
6  {
7      public static void main(String[] args)
8      {
9          BankAccount account = new BankAccount();
10         final double AMOUNT = 100;
11         final int REPETITIONS = 100;
12         final int THREADS = 100;
13
14         for (int i = 1; i <= THREADS; i++)
15         {
16             DepositRunnable d = new DepositRunnable(
17                 account, AMOUNT, REPETITIONS);
18             WithdrawRunnable w = new WithdrawRunnable(
19                 account, AMOUNT, REPETITIONS);
20
21             Thread dt = new Thread(d);
22             Thread wt = new Thread(w);
23
24             dt.start();
25             wt.start();
26
27             try {
28                 dt.join();
29                 wt.join();
30             } catch (InterruptedException e) {
31                 e.printStackTrace();
32             }
33         }
34     }
35 }
```

```

23         dt.start();
24         wt.start();
25     }
26 }
27 }
28 }
```

**section\_3/DepositRunnable.java**

```

1  /**
2   * A deposit runnable makes periodic deposits to a bank account.
3   */
4  public class DepositRunnable implements Runnable
5  {
6      private static final int DELAY = 1;
7      private BankAccount account;
8      private double amount;
9      private int count;
10
11 /**
12  * Constructs a deposit runnable.
13  * @param anAccount the account into which to deposit money
14  * @param anAmount the amount to deposit in each repetition
15  * @param aCount the number of repetitions
16  */
17 public DepositRunnable(BankAccount anAccount, double anAmount,
18                      int aCount)
19 {
20     account = anAccount;
21     amount = anAmount;
22     count = aCount;
23 }
24
25 public void run()
26 {
27     try
28     {
29         for (int i = 1; i <= count; i++)
30         {
31             account.deposit(amount);
32             Thread.sleep(DELAY);
33         }
34     }
35     catch (InterruptedException exception) {}
36 }
37 }
```

**section\_3/WithdrawRunnable.java**

```

1  /**
2   * A withdraw runnable makes periodic withdrawals from a bank account.
3   */
4  public class WithdrawRunnable implements Runnable
5  {
6      private static final int DELAY = 1;
7      private BankAccount account;
8      private double amount;
9      private int count;
10 }
```

## W916 Chapter 21 Multithreading

```
11  /**
12   * Constructs a withdraw runnable.
13   * @param anAccount the account from which to withdraw money
14   * @param anAmount the amount to withdraw in each repetition
15   * @param aCount the number of repetitions
16  */
17  public WithdrawRunnable(BankAccount anAccount, double anAmount,
18                        int aCount)
19  {
20      account = anAccount;
21      amount = anAmount;
22      count = aCount;
23  }
24
25  public void run()
26  {
27      try
28      {
29          for (int i = 1; i <= count; i++)
30          {
31              account.withdraw(amount);
32              Thread.sleep(DELAY);
33          }
34      }
35      catch (InterruptedException exception) {}
36  }
37 }
```

### section\_3/BankAccount.java

```
1  /**
2   * A bank account has a balance that can be changed by
3   * deposits and withdrawals.
4  */
5  public class BankAccount
6  {
7      private double balance;
8
9      /**
10       * Constructs a bank account with a zero balance.
11      */
12      public BankAccount()
13      {
14          balance = 0;
15      }
16
17      /**
18       * Deposits money into the bank account.
19       * @param amount the amount to deposit
20      */
21      public void deposit(double amount)
22      {
23          System.out.print("Depositing " + amount);
24          double newBalance = balance + amount;
25          System.out.println(", new balance is " + newBalance);
26          balance = newBalance;
27      }
28 }
```

```

29  /**
30   * Withdraws money from the bank account.
31   * @param amount the amount to withdraw
32 */
33 public void withdraw(double amount)
34 {
35     System.out.print("Withdrawning " + amount);
36     double newBalance = balance - amount;
37     System.out.println(", new balance is " + newBalance);
38     balance = newBalance;
39 }
40
41 /**
42   * Gets the current balance of the bank account.
43   * @return the current balance
44 */
45 public double getBalance()
46 {
47     return balance;
48 }
49

```

### Program Run

```

Depositing 100.0, new balance is 100.0
Withdrawning 100.0, new balance is 0.0
Depositing 100.0, new balance is 100.0
Withdrawning 100.0, new balance is 0.0
...
Withdrawning 100.0, new balance is 400.0
Depositing 100.0, new balance is 500.0
Withdrawning 100.0, new balance is 400.0
Withdrawning 100.0, new balance is 300.0

```

#### SELF CHECK



5. Give a scenario in which a race condition causes the bank balance to be  $-100$  after one iteration of a deposit thread and a withdraw thread.
6. Suppose two threads simultaneously insert objects into a linked list. Using the implementation in Chapter 16, explain how the list can be damaged in the process.

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R21.8, R21.9, E21.1.

## 21.4 Synchronizing Object Access

To solve problems such as the one that you observed in the preceding section, use a **lock object**. The lock object is used to control the threads that want to manipulate a shared resource.

The Java library defines a `Lock` interface and several classes that implement this interface. The `ReentrantLock` class is the most commonly used lock class, and the only one that we cover in this book. (`Locks` are a feature added in Java version 5.0. Earlier versions of Java have a lower-level facility for thread synchronization—see Special Topic 21.2).

Typically, a lock object is added to a class whose methods access shared resources, like this:

```
public class BankAccount
{
    private Lock balanceChangeLock;
    .
    .
    public BankAccount()
    {
        balanceChangeLock = new ReentrantLock();
        .
        .
    }
}
```

All code that manipulates the shared resource is surrounded by calls to lock and unlock the lock object:

```
balanceChangeLock.lock();
Manipulate the shared resource.
balanceChangeLock.unlock();
```

However, this sequence of statements has a potential flaw. If the code between the calls to `lock` and `unlock` throws an exception, the call to `unlock` never happens. This is a serious problem. After an exception, the current thread continues to hold the lock, and no other thread can acquire it. To overcome this problem, place the call to `unlock` into a `finally` clause:

```
balanceChangeLock.lock();
try
{
    Manipulate the shared resource.
}
finally
{
    balanceChangeLock.unlock();
}
```

For example, here is the code for the `deposit` method:

```
public void deposit(double amount)
{
    balanceChangeLock.lock();
    try
    {
        System.out.print("Depositing " + amount);
        double newBalance = balance + amount;
        System.out.println(", new balance is " + newBalance);
        balance = newBalance;
    }
    finally
    {
        balanceChangeLock.unlock();
    }
}
```

By calling the `lock` method, a thread acquires a Lock object. Then no other thread can acquire the lock until the first thread releases the lock.

When a thread calls the `lock` method, it *owns the lock* until it calls the `unlock` method. If a thread calls `lock` while another thread owns the lock, the first thread is temporarily deactivated. The thread scheduler periodically reactivates such a thread so that it can again try to acquire the lock. If the lock is still unavailable, the thread is again deactivated. Eventually, when the lock is available because the original thread unlocked it, the waiting thread can acquire the lock.

**Figure 2**  
Visualizing Object Locks



One way to visualize this behavior is to imagine that the lock object is the lock of an old-fashioned telephone booth and the threads are people wanting to make telephone calls (see Figure 2). The telephone booth can accommodate only one person at a time. If the booth is empty, then the first person wanting to make a call goes inside and closes the door. If another person wants to make a call and finds the booth occupied, then the second person needs to wait until the first person leaves the booth. If multiple people want to gain access to the telephone booth, they all wait outside. They don't necessarily form an orderly queue; a randomly chosen person may gain access when the telephone booth becomes available again.

With the `ReentrantLock` class, a thread can call the `lock` method on a lock object that it already owns. This can happen if one method calls another, and both start by locking the same object. The thread gives up ownership if the `unlock` method has been called as often as the `lock` method.

By surrounding the code in both the `deposit` and `withdraw` methods with `lock` and `unlock` calls, we ensure that our program will always run correctly. Only one thread at a time can execute either method on a given object. Whenever a thread acquires the lock, it is guaranteed to execute the method to completion before the other thread gets a chance to modify the balance of the same bank account object.

### SELF CHECK



7. If you construct two `BankAccount` objects, how many lock objects are created?
8. What happens if we omit the call `unlock` at the end of the `deposit` method?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E21.2, E21.6, E21.8.

## 21.5 Avoiding Deadlocks

You can use lock objects to ensure that shared data are in a consistent state when several threads access them. However, locks can lead to another problem. It can happen that one thread acquires a lock and then waits for another thread to do some essential work. If that other thread is currently waiting to acquire the same lock, then

A deadlock occurs if no thread can proceed because each thread is waiting for another to do some work first.

neither of the two threads can proceed. Such a situation is called a **deadlock** or **deadly embrace**. Let's look at an example.

Suppose we want to disallow negative bank balances in our program. Here's a naive way of doing that. In the `run` method of the `WithdrawRunnable` class, we can check the balance before withdrawing money:

```
if (account.getBalance() >= amount)
{
    account.withdraw(amount);
}
```

This works if there is only a single thread running that withdraws money. But suppose we have multiple threads that withdraw money. Then the time slice of the current thread may expire after the check `account.getBalance() >= amount` passes, but before the `withdraw` method is called. If, in the interim, another thread withdraws more money, then the test was useless, and we still have a negative balance.

Clearly, the test should be moved inside the `withdraw` method. That ensures that the test for sufficient funds and the actual withdrawal cannot be separated. Thus, the `withdraw` method could look like this:

```
public void withdraw(double amount)
{
    balanceChangeLock.lock();
    try
    {
        while (balance < amount)
        {
            Wait for the balance to grow.
        }
        .
        .
    }
    finally
    {
        balanceChangeLock.unlock();
    }
}
```

But how can we wait for the balance to grow? We can't simply call `sleep` inside the `withdraw` method. If a thread sleeps after acquiring a lock, it blocks all other threads that want to use the same lock. In particular, no other thread can successfully execute the `deposit` method. Other threads will call `deposit`, but they will simply be blocked until the `withdraw` method exits. But the `withdraw` method doesn't exit until it has funds available. This is the deadlock situation that we mentioned earlier.

To overcome this problem, we use a **condition object**. Condition objects allow a thread to temporarily release a lock, so that another thread can proceed, and to regain the lock at a later time.

In the telephone booth analogy, suppose that the coin reservoir of the telephone is completely filled, so that no further calls can be made until a service technician removes the coins. You don't want the person in the booth to go to sleep with the door closed. Instead, think of the person leaving the booth temporarily. That gives another person (hopefully a service technician) a chance to enter the booth.

Each condition object belongs to a specific lock object. You obtain a condition object with the `newCondition` method of the `Lock` interface. For example,

```
public class BankAccount
{
```

```

private Lock balanceChangeLock;
private Condition sufficientFundsCondition;
.
.
public BankAccount()
{
    balanceChangeLock = new ReentrantLock();
    sufficientFundsCondition = balanceChangeLock.newCondition();
    .
}
}

```

It is customary to give the condition object a name that describes the condition that you want to test (such as “sufficient funds”). You need to implement an appropriate test. For as long as the test is not fulfilled, call the `await` method on the condition object:

```

public void withdraw(double amount)
{
    balanceChangeLock.lock();
    try
    {
        while (balance < amount)
        {
            sufficientFundsCondition.await();
        }
        .
    }
    finally
    {
        balanceChangeLock.unlock();
    }
}

```

Calling `await` on a condition object makes the current thread wait and allows another thread to acquire the lock object.

When a thread calls `await`, it is not simply deactivated in the same way as a thread that reaches the end of its time slice. Instead, it is in a blocked state, and it will not be activated by the thread scheduler until it is unblocked. To unblock, another thread must execute the `signalAll` method *on the same condition object*. The `signalAll` method unblocks all threads waiting on the condition. They can then compete with all other threads that are waiting for the lock object. Eventually, one of them will gain access to the lock, and it will exit from the `await` method.

In our situation, the `deposit` method calls `signalAll`:

```

public void deposit(double amount)
{
    balanceChangeLock.lock();
    try
    {
        .
        sufficientFundsCondition.signalAll();
    }
    finally
    {
        balanceChangeLock.unlock();
    }
}

```

The call to `signalAll` notifies the waiting threads that sufficient funds *may be* available, and that it is worth testing the loop condition again.

A waiting thread is blocked until another thread calls signalAll or signal on the condition object for which the thread is waiting.

In the telephone booth analogy, the thread calling await corresponds to the person who enters the booth and finds that the phone doesn't work. That person then leaves the booth and waits outside, depressed, doing absolutely nothing, even as other people enter and leave the booth. The person knows it is pointless to try again. At some point, a service technician enters the booth, empties the coin reservoir, and shouts a signal. Now all the waiting people stop being depressed and again compete for the telephone booth.

There is also a signal method, which randomly picks just one thread that is waiting on the object and unblocks it. The signal method can be more efficient, but it is useful only if you know that *every* waiting thread can actually proceed. In general, you don't know that, and signal can lead to deadlocks. For that reason, we recommend that you always call signalAll.

The await method can throw an InterruptedException. The withdraw method propagates that exception, because it has no way of knowing what the thread that calls the withdraw method wants to do if it is interrupted.

With the calls to await and signalAll in the withdraw and deposit methods, we can launch any number of withdrawal and deposit threads without a deadlock. If you run the sample program, you will note that all transactions are carried out without ever reaching a negative balance.

### section\_5/BankAccount.java

```

1 import java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition;
2 import java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock;
3 import java.util.concurrent.locks.ReentrantLock;
4
5 /**
6     A bank account has a balance that can be changed by
7     deposits and withdrawals.
8 */
9 public class BankAccount
10 {
11     private double balance;
12     private Lock balanceChangeLock;
13     private Condition sufficientFundsCondition;
14
15     /**
16         Constructs a bank account with a zero balance.
17     */
18     public BankAccount()
19     {
20         balance = 0;
21         balanceChangeLock = new ReentrantLock();
22         sufficientFundsCondition = balanceChangeLock.newCondition();
23     }
24
25     /**
26         Deposits money into the bank account.
27         @param amount the amount to deposit
28     */
29     public void deposit(double amount)
30     {
31         balanceChangeLock.lock();
32         try
33         {

```

```

34     System.out.print("Depositing " + amount);
35     double newBalance = balance + amount;
36     System.out.println(", new balance is " + newBalance);
37     balance = newBalance;
38     sufficientFundsCondition.signalAll();
39 }
40 finally
41 {
42     balanceChangeLock.unlock();
43 }
44 }

45 /**
46     Withdraws money from the bank account.
47     @param amount the amount to withdraw
48 */
49 public void withdraw(double amount)
50     throws InterruptedException
51 {
52     balanceChangeLock.lock();
53     try
54     {
55         while (balance < amount)
56         {
57             sufficientFundsCondition.await();
58         }
59         System.out.print("Withdrawing " + amount);
60         double newBalance = balance - amount;
61         System.out.println(", new balance is " + newBalance);
62         balance = newBalance;
63     }
64     finally
65     {
66         balanceChangeLock.unlock();
67     }
68 }

69 }

70 /**
71     Gets the current balance of the bank account.
72     @return the current balance
73 */
74 public double getBalance()
75 {
76     return balance;
77 }
78 }

79 }

```

### section\_5/BankAccountThreadRunner.java

```

1  /**
2   * This program runs threads that deposit and withdraw
3   * money from the same bank account.
4   */
5  public class BankAccountThreadRunner
6  {
7      public static void main(String[] args)
8      {
9          BankAccount account = new BankAccount();
10         final double AMOUNT = 100;

```

```

11     final int REPETITIONS = 100;
12     final int THREADS = 100;
13
14     for (int i = 1; i <= THREADS; i++)
15     {
16         DepositRunnable d = new DepositRunnable(
17             account, AMOUNT, REPETITIONS);
18         WithdrawRunnable w = new WithdrawRunnable(
19             account, AMOUNT, REPETITIONS);
20
21         Thread dt = new Thread(d);
22         Thread wt = new Thread(w);
23
24         dt.start();
25         wt.start();
26     }
27 }
28 }
```

**Program Run**

```

Depositing 100.0, new balance is 100.0
Withdrawing 100.0, new balance is 0.0
Depositing 100.0, new balance is 100.0
Depositing 100.0, new balance is 200.0
.
.
.
Withdrawing 100.0, new balance is 100.0
Depositing 100.0, new balance is 200.0
Withdrawing 100.0, new balance is 100.0
Withdrawing 100.0, new balance is 0.0
```

**SELF CHECK**

9. What is the essential difference between calling `sleep` and `await`?
10. Why is the `sufficientFundsCondition` object an instance variable of the `BankAccount` class and not a local variable of the `withdraw` and `deposit` methods?

**Practice It**

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R21.12, E21.3, E21.4, E21.5.

**Common Error 21.1****Calling await Without Calling signalAll**

It is intuitively clear when to call `await`. If a thread finds out that it can't do its job, it has to wait. But once a thread has called `await`, it temporarily gives up all hope and doesn't try again until some other thread calls `signalAll` on the condition object for which the thread is waiting. In the telephone booth analogy, if the service technician who empties the coin reservoir doesn't notify the waiting people, they'll wait forever.

A common error is to have threads call `await` without matching calls to `signalAll` by other threads. Whenever you call `await`, ask yourself which call to `signalAll` will signal your waiting thread.

**Common Error 21.2****Calling signalAll Without Locking the Object**

The thread that calls `signalAll` must own the lock that belongs to the condition object on which `signalAll` is called. Otherwise, an `IllegalMonitorStateException` is thrown.

In the telephone booth analogy, the service technician must shout the signal while *inside* the telephone booth after emptying the coin reservoir.

In practice, this should not be a problem. Remember that `signalAll` is called by a thread that has just changed the state of some shared data in a way that may benefit waiting threads. That change should be protected by a lock in any case. As long as you use a lock to protect all access to shared data, and you are in the habit of calling `signalAll` after every beneficial change, you won't run into problems. But if you use `signalAll` in a haphazard way, you may encounter the `IllegalMonitorStateException`.

**Special Topic 21.2****Object Locks and Synchronized Methods**

The `Lock` and `Condition` classes were added in Java version 5.0. They overcome limitations of the thread synchronization mechanism in earlier Java versions. In this note, we discuss that classic mechanism.

*Every* Java object has one built-in lock and one built-in condition variable. The lock works in the same way as a `ReentrantLock` object. However, to acquire the lock, you call a **synchronized method**.

You simply tag all methods that contain thread-sensitive code (such as the `deposit` and `withdraw` methods of the `BankAccount` class) with the `synchronized` reserved word.

```
public class BankAccount
{
    public synchronized void deposit(double amount)
    {
        System.out.print("Depositing " + amount);
        double newBalance = balance + amount;
        System.out.println(", new balance is " + newBalance);
        balance = newBalance;
    }

    public synchronized void withdraw(double amount)
    {
        . .
    }
    . .
}
```

When a thread calls a `synchronized` method on a `BankAccount` object, it owns that object's lock until it returns from the method and thereby unlocks the object. When an object is locked by one thread, no other thread can enter a `synchronized` method for that object. When another thread makes a call to a `synchronized` method for that object, the calling thread is automatically deactivated and needs to wait until the first thread has unlocked the object again.

In other words, the `synchronized` reserved word automatically implements the `lock/try/finally/unlock` idiom for the built-in lock.

The object lock has a single condition variable that you manipulate with the `wait`, `notifyAll`, and `notify` methods of the `Object` class. If you call `x.wait()`, the current thread is added to the

set of threads that is waiting for the condition of the object `x`. Most commonly, you will call `wait()`, which makes the current thread wait on this. For example,

```
public synchronized void withdraw(double amount)
    throws InterruptedException
{
    while (balance < amount)
    {
        wait();
    }
    ...
}
```

The call `notifyAll()` unblocks all threads that are waiting for this:

```
public synchronized void deposit(double amount)
{
    ...
    notifyAll();
}
```

This classic mechanism is undeniably simpler than using explicit locks and condition variables. However, there are limitations. Each object lock has one condition variable, and you can't test whether another thread holds the lock. If these limitations are not a problem, by all means, go ahead and use the `synchronized` reserved word. If you need more control over threads, the `Lock` and `Condition` interfaces give you additional flexibility.

### Special Topic 21.3



#### The Java Memory Model

In a computer with multiple CPUs, you have to be particularly careful when multiple threads access shared data. Because modern processors are quite a bit faster than RAM memory, each CPU has its own *memory cache* that stores copies of frequently used memory locations. If a thread changes shared data, another thread may not see the change until both processor caches are synchronized. The same effect can happen even on a computer with a single CPU—occasionally, memory values are cached in CPU registers.

The Java language specification contains a set of rules, called the *memory model*, that describes under which circumstances the virtual machine must ensure that changes to shared data are visible in other threads. One of the rules states the following:

- If a thread changes shared data and then releases a lock, and another thread acquires the same lock and reads the same data, then it is guaranteed to see the changed data.

However, if the first thread does not release a lock, then the virtual machine is not required to write cached data back to memory. Similarly, if the second thread does not acquire the lock, the virtual machine is not required to refresh its cache from memory.

Thus, you should always use locks or synchronized methods when you access data that is shared among multiple threads, even if you are not concerned about race conditions.

## 21.6 Application: Algorithm Animation

One popular use for thread programming is animation. A program that displays an animation shows different objects moving or changing in some way as time progresses. This is often achieved by launching one or more threads that compute how parts of the animation change.

You can use the Swing `Timer` class for simple animations without having to do any thread programming—see Exercise 3 Graphics P21.10 for an example. However, more advanced animations are best implemented with threads.

In this section you will see a particular kind of animation, namely the visualization of the steps of an algorithm. Algorithm animation is an excellent technique for gaining a better understanding of how an algorithm works. Many algorithms can be animated—type “Java algorithm animation” into your favorite web search engine, and you’ll find lots of links to web pages with animations of various algorithms.

Use a separate thread for running the algorithm that is being animated.

All algorithm animations have a similar structure. The algorithm runs in a separate thread that periodically updates an image of the current state of the algorithm and then pauses so that the user can view the image. After a short amount of time, the algorithm thread wakes up again and runs to the next point of interest in the algorithm. It then updates the image and pauses again. This sequence is repeated until the algorithm has finished.

Let’s take the selection sort algorithm of Chapter 14 as an example. That algorithm sorts an array of values. It first finds the smallest element, by inspecting all elements in the array, and bringing the smallest element to the leftmost position. It then finds the smallest element among the remaining elements and brings it into the second position. It keeps going in that way. As the algorithm progresses, the sorted part of the array grows.

How can you visualize this algorithm? It is useful to show the part of the array that is already sorted in a different color. Also, we want to show how each step of the algorithm inspects another element in the unsorted part. That demonstrates why the selection sort algorithm is so slow—it first inspects all elements of the array, then all but one, and so on. If the array has  $n$  elements, the algorithm inspects

$$n + (n - 1) + (n - 2) + \dots = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2}$$

or  $O(n^2)$  elements. To demonstrate that, we mark the currently visited element in red.

Thus, the algorithm state is described by three items:

- The array of values
- The size of the already sorted area
- The currently marked element

We add this state to the `SelectionSorter` class.

```
public class SelectionSorter
{
    // This array is being sorted
    private int[] a;
    // These instance variables are needed for drawing
    private int markedPosition = -1;
    private int alreadySorted = -1;
    ...
}
```

The array that is being sorted is now an instance variable, and we will change the `sort` method from a static method to an instance method.

This state is accessed by two threads: the thread that sorts the array and the thread that paints the frame. We use a lock to synchronize access to the shared state.

The algorithm state needs to be safely accessed by the algorithm and painting threads.

## W928 Chapter 21 Multithreading

Finally, we add a component instance variable to the algorithm class and augment the constructor to set it. That instance variable is needed for repainting the component and finding out the dimensions of the component when drawing the algorithm state.

```
public class SelectionSorter
{
    private JComponent component;
    ...
    public SelectionSorter(int[] anArray, JComponent aComponent)
    {
        a = anArray;
        sortStateLock = new ReentrantLock();
        component = aComponent;
    }
}
```

At each point of interest, the algorithm needs to pause so that the user can admire the graphical output. We supply the pause method shown below, and call it at various places in the algorithm. The pause method repaints the component and sleeps for a small delay that is proportional to the number of steps involved.

```
public void pause(int steps) throws InterruptedException
{
    component.repaint();
    Thread.sleep(steps * DELAY);
}
```

We add a draw method to the algorithm class that can draw the current state of the data structure, with the items of special interest highlighted. The draw method is specific to the particular algorithm. This draw method draws the array elements as a sequence of sticks in different colors. The already sorted portion is blue, the marked position is red, and the remainder is black (see Figure 3).

```
public void draw(Graphics g)
{
    sortStateLock.lock();
    try
    {
        int deltaX = component.getWidth() / a.length;
        for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
        {
            if (i == markedPosition)
            {
                g.setColor(Color.RED);
            }
            else if (i <= alreadySorted)
            {
                g.setColor(Color.BLUE);
            }
            else
            {
                g.setColor(Color.BLACK);
            }
            g.drawLine(i * deltaX, 0, i * deltaX, a[i]);
        }
    }
    finally
    {
        sortStateLock.unlock();
    }
}
```



**Figure 3** A Step in the Animation of the Selection Sort Algorithm

You need to update the special positions as the algorithm progresses and pause the animation whenever something interesting happens. The pause should be proportional to the number of steps that are being executed. For a sorting algorithm, pause one unit for each visited array element.

Here is the `minimumPosition` method from Chapter 14:

```
public static int minimumPosition(int[] a, int from)
{
    int minPos = from;
    for (int i = from + 1; i < a.length; i++)
    {
        if (a[i] < a[minPos]) { minPos = i; }
    }
    return minPos;
}
```

After each iteration of the `for` loop, update the marked position of the algorithm state; then pause the program. To measure the cost of each step fairly, pause for two units of time, because two array elements were inspected. Because we need to access the marked position and call the `pause` method, we need to change the method to an instance method:

```
private int minimumPosition(int from)
    throws InterruptedException
{
    int minPos = from;
    for (int i = from + 1; i < a.length; i++)
    {
        sortStateLock.lock();
        try
        {
            if (a[i] < a[minPos]) { minPos = i; }
            // For animation
            markedPosition = i;
        }
        finally
        {
            sortStateLock.unlock();
        }
    }
    return minPos;
}
```

```

        }
        finally
        {
            sortStateLock.unlock();
        }
        pause(2);
    }
    return minPos;
}

```

The sort method is augmented in the same way. You will find the code at the end of this section. This concludes the modification of the algorithm class. Let us now turn to the component class.

The component's paintComponent method calls the draw method of the algorithm object.

```

public class SelectionSortComponent extends JComponent
{
    private SelectionSorter sorter;
    .
    .
    public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
    {
        sorter.draw(g);
    }
}

```

The SelectionSortComponent constructor constructs a SelectionSorter object, which supplies a new array and the this reference to the component that displays the sorted values:

```

public SelectionSortComponent()
{
    int[] values = ArrayUtil.randomIntArray(30, 300);
    sorter = new SelectionSorter(values, this);
}

```

The startAnimation method constructs a thread that calls the sorter's sort method:

```

public void startAnimation()
{
    class AnimationRunnable implements Runnable
    {
        public void run()
        {
            try
            {
                sorter.sort();
            }
            catch (InterruptedException exception)
            {
            }
        }
    }

    Runnable r = new AnimationRunnable();
    Thread t = new Thread(r);
    t.start();
}

```

The class for the viewer program that displays the animation is at the end of this example. Run the program and the animation starts.

Exercise P21.8 asks you to animate the merge sort algorithm of Chapter 14. If you do that exercise, then start both programs and run them in parallel to see which algorithm is faster. Actually, you may find the result surprising. If you build fair delays into the merge sort animation to account for the copying from and to the temporary array, you will find that it doesn't perform all that well for small arrays. But if you increase the array size, then the advantage of the merge sort algorithm becomes clear.

### section\_6/SelectionSortViewer.java

```

1 import java.awt.BorderLayout;
2 import javax.swing.JButton;
3 import javax.swing.JFrame;
4
5 public class SelectionSortViewer
6 {
7     public static void main(String[] args)
8     {
9         JFrame frame = new JFrame();
10
11         final int FRAME_WIDTH = 300;
12         final int FRAME_HEIGHT = 400;
13
14         frame.setSize(FRAME_WIDTH, FRAME_HEIGHT);
15         frame.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
16
17         final SelectionSortComponent component
18             = new SelectionSortComponent();
19         frame.add(component, BorderLayout.CENTER);
20
21         frame.setVisible(true);
22         component.startAnimation();
23     }
24 }
```

### section\_6/SelectionSortComponent.java

```

1 import java.awt.Graphics;
2 import javax.swing.JComponent;
3
4 /**
5  * A component that displays the current state of the selection sort algorithm.
6 */
7 public class SelectionSortComponent extends JComponent
8 {
9     private SelectionSorter sorter;
10
11 /**
12  * Constructs the component.
13 */
14 public SelectionSortComponent()
15 {
16     int[] values = ArrayUtil.randomIntArray(30, 300);
17     sorter = new SelectionSorter(values, this);
18 }
19
20 public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
21 {
22     sorter.draw(g);
23 }
```

```

23     }
24
25     /**
26      Starts a new animation thread.
27     */
28     public void startAnimation()
29     {
30         class AnimationRunnable implements Runnable
31         {
32             public void run()
33             {
34                 try
35                 {
36                     sorter.sort();
37                 }
38                 catch (InterruptedException exception)
39                 {
40                 }
41             }
42         }
43
44         Runnable r = new AnimationRunnable();
45         Thread t = new Thread(r);
46         t.start();
47     }
48 }
```

**section\_6/SelectionSorter.java**

```

1  import java.awt.Color;
2  import java.awt.Graphics;
3  import java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock;
4  import java.util.concurrent.locks.ReentrantLock;
5  import javax.swing.JComponent;
6
7  /**
8   * This class sorts an array, using the selection sort algorithm.
9  */
10 public class SelectionSorter
11 {
12     // This array is being sorted
13     private int[] a;
14     // These instance variables are needed for drawing
15     private int markedPosition = -1;
16     private int alreadySorted = -1;
17
18     private Lock sortStateLock;
19
20     // The component is repainted when the animation is paused
21     private JComponent component;
22
23     private static final int DELAY = 100;
24
25     /**
26      Constructs a selection sorter.
27      @param anArray the array to sort
28      @param aComponent the component to be repainted when the animation
29      pauses
30     */
```

```

31  public SelectionSorter(int[] anArray, JComponent aComponent)
32  {
33      a = anArray;
34      sortStateLock = new ReentrantLock();
35      component = aComponent;
36  }
37
38  /**
39   * Sorts the array managed by this selection sorter.
40  */
41  public void sort()
42      throws InterruptedException
43  {
44      for (int i = 0; i < a.length - 1; i++)
45      {
46          int minPos = minimumPosition(i);
47          sortStateLock.lock();
48          try
49          {
50              ArrayUtil.swap(a, minPos, i);
51              // For animation
52              alreadySorted = i;
53          }
54          finally
55          {
56              sortStateLock.unlock();
57          }
58          pause(2);
59      }
60  }
61
62  /**
63   * Finds the smallest element in a tail range of the array.
64   * @param from the first position in a to compare
65   * @return the position of the smallest element in the
66   * range a[from] . . . a[a.length - 1]
67  */
68  private int minimumPosition(int from)
69      throws InterruptedException
70  {
71      int minPos = from;
72      for (int i = from + 1; i < a.length; i++)
73      {
74          sortStateLock.lock();
75          try
76          {
77              if (a[i] < a[minPos]) { minPos = i; }
78              // For animation
79              markedPosition = i;
80          }
81          finally
82          {
83              sortStateLock.unlock();
84          }
85          pause(2);
86      }
87      return minPos;
88  }
89

```

```

90  /**
91   * Draws the current state of the sorting algorithm.
92   * @param g the graphics context
93  */
94  public void draw(Graphics g)
95  {
96      sortStateLock.lock();
97      try
98      {
99          int deltaX = component.getWidth() / a.length;
100         for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
101         {
102             if (i == markedPosition)
103             {
104                 g.setColor(Color.RED);
105             }
106             else if (i <= alreadySorted)
107             {
108                 g.setColor(Color.BLUE);
109             }
110             else
111             {
112                 g.setColor(Color.BLACK);
113             }
114             g.drawLine(i * deltaX, 0, i * deltaX, a[i]);
115         }
116     }
117     finally
118     {
119         sortStateLock.unlock();
120     }
121 }
122
123 /**
124  * Pauses the animation.
125  * @param steps the number of steps to pause
126  */
127 public void pause(int steps)
128     throws InterruptedException
129 {
130     component.repaint();
131     Thread.sleep(steps * DELAY);
132 }
133 }
```

**SELF CHECK**

11. Why is the `draw` method added to the `SelectionSorter` class and not the `SelectionSortComponent` class?
12. Would the animation still work if the `startAnimation` method simply called `sorter.sort()` instead of spawning a thread that calls that method?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R21.14, P21.5, P21.7.

**CHAPTER SUMMARY****Describe how multiple threads execute concurrently.**

- A thread is a program unit that is executed concurrently with other parts of the program.
- The `start` method of the `Thread` class starts a new thread that executes the `run` method of the associated `Runnable` object.
- The `sleep` method puts the current thread to sleep for a given number of milliseconds.
- When a thread is interrupted, the most common response is to terminate the `run` method.
- The thread scheduler runs each thread for a short amount of time, called a time slice.

**Choose appropriate mechanisms for terminating threads.**

- A thread terminates when its `run` method terminates.
- The `run` method can check whether its thread has been interrupted by calling the `interrupted` method.

**Recognize the causes and effects of race conditions.**

- A race condition occurs if the effect of multiple threads on shared data depends on the order in which the threads are scheduled.

**Use locks to control access to resources that are shared by multiple threads.**

- By calling the `lock` method, a thread acquires a `Lock` object. Then no other thread can acquire the lock until the first thread releases the lock.

**Explain how deadlocks occur and how they can be avoided with condition objects.**

- A deadlock occurs if no thread can proceed because each thread is waiting for another to do some work first.
- Calling `await` on a condition object makes the current thread wait and allows another thread to acquire the lock object.
- A waiting thread is blocked until another thread calls `signalAll` or `signal` on the condition object for which the thread is waiting.

**Use multiple threads to display an animation of an algorithm.**

- Use a separate thread for running the algorithm that is being animated.
- The algorithm state needs to be safely accessed by the algorithm and painting threads.

## STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER

<code>java.lang.InterruptedException</code>	<code>java.util.Date</code>
<code>java.lang.Object</code>	<code>java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition</code>
<code>notify</code>	<code>await</code>
<code>notifyAll</code>	<code>signal</code>
<code>wait</code>	<code>signalAll</code>
<code>java.lang.Runnable</code>	<code>java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock</code>
<code>run</code>	<code>lock</code>
<code>java.lang.Thread</code>	<code>newCondition</code>
<code>interrupted</code>	<code>unlock</code>
<code>sleep</code>	
<code>start</code>	<code>java.util.concurrent.locks.ReentrantLock</code>

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

- **R21.1** Run a program with the following instructions:

```
GreetingRunnable r1 = new GreetingRunnable("Hello");
GreetingRunnable r2 = new GreetingRunnable("Goodbye");
r1.run();
r2.run();
```

Note that the threads don't run in parallel. Explain.

- **R21.2** In the program of Section 21.1, is it possible that both threads are sleeping at the same time? Is it possible that neither of the two threads is sleeping at a particular time? Explain.
- **R21.3** In Java, a graphical user interface program has more than one thread. Explain how you can prove that.
- **R21.4** Why is the `stop` method for stopping a thread deprecated? How do you terminate a thread?
  - **R21.5** Give an example of why you would want to terminate a thread.
  - **R21.6** Suppose you surround each call to the `sleep` method with a `try/catch` block to catch an `InterruptedException` and ignore it. What problem do you create?
  - **R21.7** What is a race condition? How can you avoid it?
  - **R21.8** Consider the `ArrayList` implementation from Section 16.2. Describe two different scenarios in which race conditions can corrupt the data structure.
  - **R21.9** Consider a stack that is implemented as a linked list, as in Section 16.3.1. Describe two different scenarios in which race conditions can corrupt the data structure.
  - **R21.10** Consider a queue that is implemented as a circular array, as in Section 16.3.4. Describe two different scenarios in which race conditions can corrupt the data structure.
  - **R21.11** What is a deadlock? How can you avoid it?

- **R21.12** What is the difference between a thread that sleeps by calling `sleep` and a thread that waits by calling `await`?
- **R21.13** What happens when a thread calls `await` and no other thread calls `signalAll` or `signal`?
- **R21.14** In the algorithm animation program of Section 21.6, we do not use any conditions. Why not?

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E21.1** Write a program in which multiple threads add and remove elements from a `java.util.LinkedList`. Demonstrate that the list is being corrupted.
- **E21.2** Implement a stack as a linked list in which the `push`, `pop`, and `isEmpty` methods can be safely accessed from multiple threads.
- **E21.3** Implement a `Queue` class whose `add` and `remove` methods are synchronized. Supply one thread, called the producer, which keeps inserting strings into the queue as long as there are fewer than 10 elements in it. When the queue gets too full, the thread waits. As sample strings, simply use time stamps `new Date().toString()`. Supply a second thread, called the consumer, that keeps removing and printing strings from the queue as long as the queue is not empty. When the queue is empty, the thread waits. Both the consumer and producer threads should run for 100 iterations.
- **E21.4** Enhance the program of Exercise E21.3 by supplying a variable number of producer and consumer threads. Prompt the program user for the numbers.
- **E21.5** Reimplement Exercise E21.4 by using the `ArrayBlockingQueue` class from the standard library.
- **E21.6** Modify the `ArrayList` implementation of Section 16.2 so that all methods can be safely accessed from multiple threads.
- **E21.7** Write a program `WordCount` that counts the words in one or more files. Start a new thread for each file. For example, if you call
 

```
java WordCount report.txt address.txt Homework.java
```

 then the program might print
 

```
address.txt: 1052
Homework.java: 445
report.txt: 2099
```
- **E21.8** Enhance the program of Exercise E21.7 so that the last active thread also prints a combined count. Use locks to protect the combined word count and a counter of active threads.
- **E21.9** Add a condition to the `deposit` method of the `BankAccount` class in Section 21.5, restricting deposits to \$100,000 (the insurance limit of the U.S. government). The method should block until sufficient money has been withdrawn by another thread. Test your program with a large number of deposit threads.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- P21.1** Write a program `Find` that searches all files specified on the command line and prints out all lines containing a reserved word. Start a new thread for each file. For example, if you call

```
java Find Buff report.txt address.txt Homework.java
```

then the program might print

```
report.txt: Buffet style lunch will be available at the
address.txt: Buffet, Warren|11801 Trenton Court|Dallas|TX
Homework.java: BufferedReader in;
address.txt: Walters, Winnie|59 Timothy Circle|Buffalo|MI
```

- P21.2** Implement the merge sort algorithm of Chapter 14 by spawning a new thread for each smaller `MergeSorter`. *Hint:* Use the `join` method of the `Thread` class to wait for the spawned threads to finish. Look up the method's behavior in the API documentation.

- Graphics P21.3** Write a program that shows two cars moving across a window. Use a separate thread for each car.

- Graphics P21.4** Modify Exercise P21.3 so that the cars change direction when they hit an edge of the window.

- Graphics P21.5** Enhance the `SelectionSorter` of Section 21.6 so that the current minimum is painted in yellow.

- Graphics P21.6** Enhance the `SelectionSortViewer` of Section 21.6 so that the sorting only starts when the user clicks a “Start” button.

- Graphics P21.7** Instead of using a thread and a pause method, use the `Timer` class introduced in Chapter 19 to animate an algorithm. Whenever the timer sends out an action event, run the algorithm to the next step and display the state. That requires a more extensive recoding of the algorithm. You need to implement a `runToNextStep` method that is capable of running the algorithm one step at a time. Add sufficient instance variables to the algorithm to remember where the last step left off. For example, in the case of the selection sort algorithm, if you know the values of `alreadySorted` and `markedPosition`, you can determine the next step.

- Graphics P21.8** Implement an animation of the merge sort algorithm of Chapter 14. Reimplement the algorithm so that the recursive calls sort the elements inside a subrange of the original array, rather than in their own arrays:

```
public void mergeSort(int from, int to)
{
    if (from == to) { return; }
    int mid = (from + to) / 2;
    mergeSort(from, mid);
    mergeSort(mid + 1, to);
    merge(from, mid, to);
}
```

The `merge` method merges the sorted ranges `a[from] . . . a[mid]` and `a[mid + 1] . . . a[to]`. Merge the ranges into a temporary array, then copy back the temporary array into the combined range.

Pause in the `merge` method whenever you inspect an array element. Color the range `a[from] . . . a[to]` in blue and the currently inspected element in red.

**■■■ Graphics P21.9** Enhance Exercise P21.8 so that it shows two frames, one for a merge sorter and one for a selection sorter. They should both sort arrays with the same values.

**■■■ Graphics P21.10** Reorganize the code of the sorting animation in Section 21.6 so that it can be used for generic animations. Provide a class `Animated` with abstract methods

```
public void run()
public void draw(Graphics g, int width, int height)
```

and concrete methods

```
public void lock()
public void unlock(int steps)
public void setComponent(JComponent component)
```

so that the `SelectionSorter` can be implemented as

```
public class SelectionSorter extends Animated
{
    private int[] a;
    private int markedPosition = -1;
    private int alreadySorted = -1;

    public SelectionSorter(int[] anArray) { a = anArray; }

    public void run()
    {
        for (int i = 0; i < a.length - 1; i++)
        {
            int minPos = minimumPosition(i);
            lock();
            ArrayUtil.swap(a, minPos, i);
            alreadySorted = i;
            unlock(2);
        }
    }

    private int minimumPosition(int from)
    {
        int minPos = from;
        for (int i = from + 1; i < a.length; i++)
        {
            lock();
            if (a[i] < a[minPos]) { minPos = i; }
            markedPosition = i;
            unlock(2);
        }
        return minPos;
    }

    public void draw(Graphics g, int width, int height)
    {
        int deltaX = width / a.length;
        for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
        {
            if (i == markedPosition) { g.setColor(Color.RED); }
            else if (i <= alreadySorted) { g.setColor(Color.BLUE); }
            else { g.setColor(Color.BLACK); }
            g.drawLine(i * deltaX, 0, i * deltaX, a[i]);
        }
    }
}
```

}

The remaining classes should be independent of any particular animation.

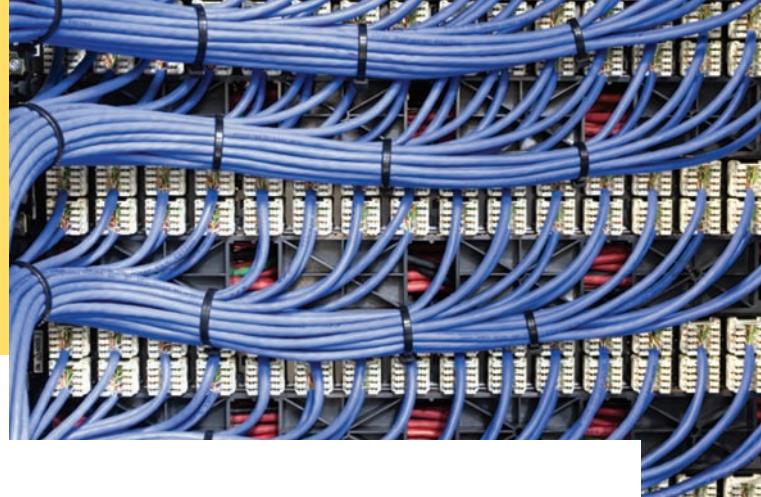
## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. The messages are printed about one millisecond apart.
  2. The first call to `run` would print ten “Hello” messages, and then the second call to `run` would print ten “Goodbye” messages.
  3. If the user hits the “Back” button, the current web page is no longer displayed, and it makes no sense to expend network resources to fetch additional image data.
  4. The `run` method prints the values 1, 3, and 4. The call to `interrupt` merely sets the interruption flag, but the `sleep` method immediately throws an `InterruptedException`.
  5. There are many possible scenarios. Here is one:
    - a. The first thread loses control after the first `print` statement.
    - b. The second thread loses control just before the assignment `balance = newBalance`.
    - c. The first thread completes the `deposit` method.
    - d. The second thread completes the `withdraw` method.
  6. One thread calls `addFirst` and is preempted just before executing the assignment `first = newNode`. Then the next thread calls `addFirst`, using the old value of `first`. Then the first thread completes the process, setting `first` to its new node. As a result, the links are not in sequence.
  7. Two, one for each bank account object. Each lock protects a separate `balance` variable.
  8. When a thread calls `deposit`, it continues to own the lock, and any other thread trying to deposit or withdraw money in the same bank account is blocked forever.
  9. A sleeping thread is reactivated when the sleep delay has passed. A waiting thread is only reactivated if another thread has called `signalAll` or `signal`.
  10. The calls to `await` and `signal`/`signalAll` must be made to the same object.
  11. The `draw` method uses the array `values` and the values that keep track of the algorithm’s progress. These values are available only in the `SelectionSorter` class.
  12. Yes, provided you only show a single frame. If you modify the `SelectionSortViewer` program to show two frames, you want the sorters to run in parallel.

# INTERNET NETWORKING

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To understand the concept of sockets
- To send and receive data through sockets
- To implement network clients and servers
- To communicate with web servers and server-side applications through the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

**22.1 THE INTERNET PROTOCOL** W942

**22.2 APPLICATION LEVEL  
PROTOCOLS** W944

**22.3 A CLIENT PROGRAM** W947

**22.4 A SERVER PROGRAM** W950

*How To 22.1:* Designing Client/Server  
Programs W957

**22.5 URL CONNECTIONS** W958

*Programming Tip 22.1:* Use High-Level  
Libraries W961



You probably have quite a bit of experience with the Internet, the global network that links together millions of computers. In particular, you use the Internet whenever you browse the World Wide Web. Note that the Internet is not the same as the “Web”. The World Wide Web is only one of many services offered over the Internet. E-mail, another popular service, also uses the Internet, but its implementation differs from that of the Web. In this chapter, you will see what goes on “under the hood” when you send an e-mail message or when you retrieve a web page from a remote server. You will also learn how to write programs that fetch data from sites across the Internet and how to write server programs that can serve information to other programs.

## 22.1 The Internet Protocol

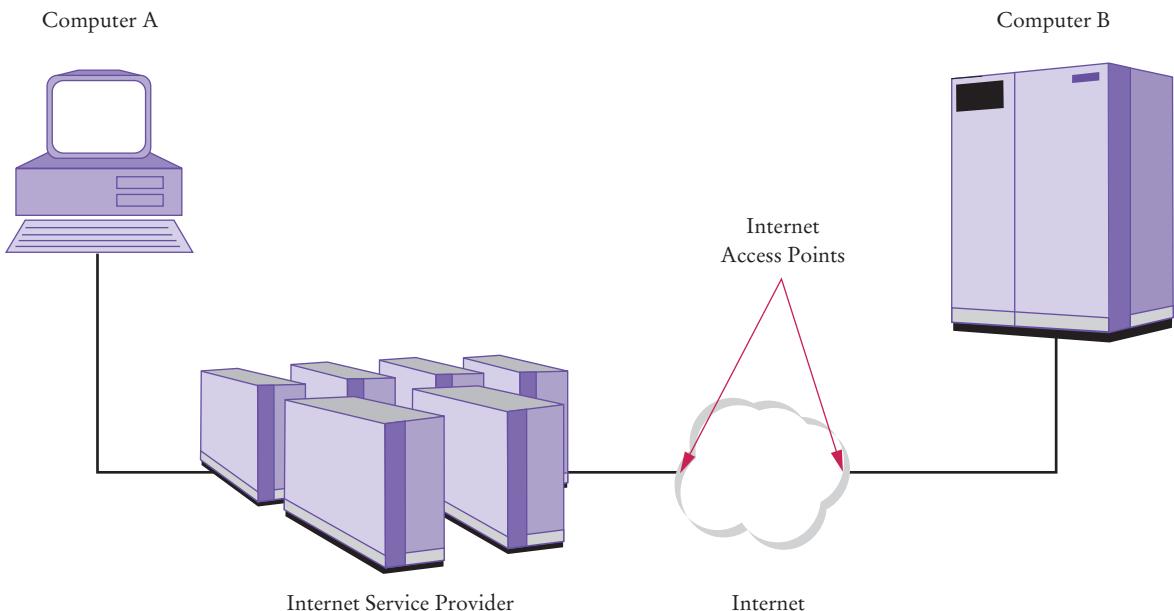
The *Internet* is a worldwide collection of networks, routing equipment, and computers using a common set of protocols to define how each party will interact with each other.

Computers can be connected with each other through a variety of physical media. In a computer lab, for example, computers are connected by network cabling. Electrical impulses representing information flow across the cables. If you use a DSL modem to connect your computer to the Internet, the signals travel across a regular telephone wire, encoded as tones. On a wireless network, signals are sent by transmitting a modulated radio frequency. The physical characteristics of these transmissions differ widely, but they ultimately consist of sending and receiving streams of zeroes and ones along the network connection.

These zeroes and ones represent two kinds of information: *application data*, the data that one computer actually wants to send to another, and *network protocol data*, the data that describe how to reach the intended recipient and how to check for errors and data loss in the transmission. The protocol data follow certain rules set forth by the Internet Protocol Suite, also called TCP/IP, after the two most important protocols in the suite. These protocols have become the basis for connecting computers around the world over the Internet. We will discuss TCP and IP in this chapter.

Suppose that a computer A wants to send data to a computer B, both on the Internet. The computers aren’t connected directly with a cable, as they could be if both were on the same local area network. Instead, A may be someone’s home computer and connected to an *Internet service provider (ISP)*, which is in turn connected to an *Internet access point*; B might be a computer on a local area network belonging to a large firm that has an Internet access point of its own, which may be half a world away from A. The *Internet* itself, finally, is a complex collection of pathways on which a message can travel from one Internet access point to, eventually, any other Internet access point (see Figure 1). Those connections carry millions of messages, not just the data that A is sending to B.

For the data to arrive at its destination, it must be marked with a *destination address*. In IP, addresses are denoted by sequences of four numbers, each one byte (that is, between 0 and 255); for example, 130.65.86.66. (Because there aren’t enough four-byte addresses for all devices that would like to connect to the Internet, these addresses have been extended to sixteen bytes. For simplicity, we use the classic four-byte addresses in this chapter.) In order to send data, A needs to know the Internet



**Figure 1** Two Computers Communicating Across the Internet

address of B and include it in the protocol portion when sending the data across the Internet. The routing software that is distributed across the Internet can then deliver the data to B.

Of course, addresses such as 130.65.86.66 are not easy to remember. You would not be happy if you had to use number sequences every time you sent e-mail or requested information from a web server. On the Internet, computers can have so-called *domain names* that are easier to remember, such as `cs.sjsu.edu` or `horstmann.com`. A special service called the *Domain Name System (DNS)* translates between domain names and Internet addresses. Thus, if computer A wants to have information from `horstmann.com`, it first asks the DNS to translate this domain name into a numeric Internet address; then it includes the numeric address with the request.

One interesting aspect of IP is that it breaks large chunks of data up into more manageable *packets*. Each packet is delivered separately, and different packets that are part of the same transmission can take different routes through the Internet. Packets are numbered, and the recipient reassembles them in the correct order.

The Internet Protocol is used when attempting to deliver data from one computer to another across the Internet. If some data get lost or garbled in the process, IP has safeguards built in to make sure that the recipient is aware of that unfortunate fact and doesn't rely on incomplete data. However, IP has no provision for retrying an incomplete transmission. That is the job of a higher-level protocol, the *Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)*. This protocol attempts reliable delivery of data, with retries if there are failures, and it notifies the sender whether or not the attempt succeeded. Most, but not all, Internet programs use TCP for reliable delivery. (Exceptions are “streaming media” services, which bypass the slower TCP for the highest possible throughput and tolerate occasional information loss. However, the most popular Internet services—the World Wide Web and e-mail—use TCP.) TCP is independent of the Internet Protocol; it could in principle be used with another lower-level network protocol.

TCP/IP is the abbreviation for *Transmission Control Protocol and Internet Protocol*, the pair of communication protocols designed to establish reliable transmission of data between two computers on the Internet.

A TCP connection requires the Internet addresses and port numbers of both end points.

However, in practice, TCP over IP (often called TCP/IP) is the most commonly used combination. We will focus on TCP/IP networking in this chapter.

A computer that is connected to the Internet may have programs for many different purposes. For example, a computer may run both a web server program and a mail server program. When data are sent to that computer, they need to be marked so that they can be forwarded to the appropriate program. TCP uses *port numbers* for this purpose. A port number is an integer between 0 and 65,535. The sending computer must know the port number of the receiving program and include it with the transmitted data. Some applications use “well-known” port numbers. For example, by convention, web servers use port 80, whereas mail servers running the Post Office Protocol (POP) use port 110. A TCP connection, therefore, requires

- The Internet address of the recipient.
- The port number of the recipient.
- The Internet address of the sender.
- The port number of the sender.

You can think of a TCP connection as a “pipe” between two computers that links the two ports together. Data flow in either direction through the pipe. In practical programming situations, you simply establish a connection and send data across it without worrying about the details of the TCP/IP mechanism. You will see how to establish such a connection in Section 22.3.

### SELF CHECK



1. What is the difference between an IP address and a domain name?
2. Why do some streaming media services not use TCP?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R22.1, R22.2, R22.3.

## 22.2 Application Level Protocols

HTTP, or *Hypertext Transfer Protocol*, is the protocol that defines communication between web browsers and web servers.

A URL, or *Uniform Resource Locator*, is a pointer to an information resource (such as a web page or an image) on the World Wide Web.

In the preceding section you saw how the TCP/IP mechanism can establish an Internet connection between two ports on two computers so that the two computers can exchange data. Each Internet application has a different *application protocol*, which describes how the data for that particular application are transmitted.

Consider, for example, HTTP: the **Hypertext Transfer Protocol**, which is used for the World Wide Web. Suppose you type a web address, called a **Uniform Resource Locator** (URL), such as `http://horstmann.com/index.html`, into the address window of your browser and ask the browser to load the page.

The browser now takes the following steps:

1. It examines the part of the URL between the double slash and the first single slash (“`horstmann.com`”), which identifies the computer to which you want to connect. Because this part of the URL contains letters, it must be a domain name rather than an Internet address, so the browser sends a request to a DNS

server to obtain the Internet address of the computer with domain name `horstmann.com`.

2. From the `http:` prefix of the URL, the browser deduces that the protocol you want to use is HTTP, which by default uses port 80.
3. It establishes a TCP/IP connection to port 80 at the Internet address it obtained in Step 1.
4. It deduces from the `/index.html` suffix that you want to see the file `/index.html`, so it sends a request, formatted as an HTTP command, through the connection that was established in Step 3. The request looks like this:

```
GET /index.html HTTP/1.1
Host: horstmann.com
blank line
```

(The host is needed because a web server can host multiple domains with the same Internet address.)

5. The web server running on the computer whose Internet address is the one the browser obtained in Step 1 receives the request and decodes it. It then fetches the file `/index.html` and sends it back to the browser on your computer.
6. The browser displays the contents of the file. Because it happens to be an HTML file, the browser translates the HTML tags into fonts, bullets, separator lines, and so on. If the HTML file contains images, then the browser makes more GET requests, one for each image, through the same connection, to fetch the image data. (Appendix F contains a summary of the most frequently used HTML tags.)

The Telnet program is a useful tool for establishing test connections with servers.

You can try the following experiment to see this process in action. The “Telnet” program enables a user to type characters for sending to a remote computer and view characters that the remote computer sends back. On Windows, you need to enable the Telnet program in the control panel. UNIX, Linux, and Mac OS X systems normally have Telnet preinstalled.

For this experiment, you want to start Telnet with a host of `horstmann.com` and port 80. To start the program from the command line, simply type

```
telnet horstmann.com 80
```

**Table 1** HTTP Commands

Command	Meaning
GET	Return the requested item
HEAD	Request only the header information of an item
OPTIONS	Request communications options of an item
POST	Supply input to a server-side command and return the result
PUT	Store an item on the server
DELETE	Delete an item on the server
TRACE	Trace server communication

Once the program starts, type very carefully, without making any typing errors and without pressing the backspace key,

```
GET / HTTP/1.1
Host: horstmann.com
```

Then press the Enter key twice.

The first / denotes the root page of the web server. Note that there are spaces before and after the first /, but there are no spaces in HTTP/1.1.

On Windows, you will not see what you type, so you should be extra careful when typing in the commands.

The server now sends a response to the request—see Figure 2. The response, of course, consists of the root web page that you requested. The Telnet program is not a browser and does not understand HTML tags, so it simply displays the HTML file—text, tags, and all.

The GET command is one of the commands of HTTP. Table 1 shows the other commands of the protocol. As you can see, the protocol is pretty simple.

By the way, be sure not to confuse HTML with HTTP. **HTML** is a *document format* (with commands such as `<h1>` or `<ul>`) that describes the structure of a document, including headings, bulleted lists, images, hyperlinks, and so on. **HTTP** is a *protocol* (with commands such as `GET` and `POST`) that describes the command set for web server requests. Web *browsers* know how to display HTML documents and how to issue HTTP commands. Web *servers* know nothing about HTML. They merely understand HTTP and know how to fetch the requested items. Those items may be HTML documents, GIF or JPEG images, or any other data that a web browser can display.

HTTP is just one of many application protocols in use on the Internet. Another commonly used protocol is the Post Office Protocol (POP), which is used to download received messages from e-mail servers. To *send* messages, you use yet another protocol called the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP). We don't want to go into

The HTTP GET command requests information from a web server. The web server returns the requested item, which may be a web page, an image, or other data.

```
Terminal
Fichier Edition Affichage Rechercher Terminal Aide
$ telnet horstmann.com 80
Trying 67.210.118.65...
Connected to horstmann.com.
Escape character is '^].
GET / HTTP/1.1
Host: horstmann.com

HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Date: Sun, 26 Jun 2011 01:05:27 GMT
Server: Apache/1.3.42 (Unix) Sun-ONE-ASP/4.0.2 mod_fastcgi/2.4.6 mod_log_bytes/1
.2 mod_bwlimited/1.4 mod_auth_passthrough/1.8 FrontPage/5.0.2.2635 mod_ssl/2.8.3
1 OpenSSL/0.9.7a
Last-Modified: Sun, 22 May 2011 08:11:15 GMT
ETag: "305e572-189f-4dd8c523"
Accept-Ranges: bytes
Content-Length: 6303
Content-Type: text/html

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="us-ascii"?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>
<title>Cay Horstmann's Home Page</title>
```

**Figure 2** Using Telnet to Connect to a Web Server

```
+OK San Quentin State POP server
USER harryh
+OK Password required for harryh
PASS secret
+OK harryh has 2 messages (320 octets)
STAT
+OK 2 320
RETR 1
+OK 120 octets
the message is included here
DELE 1
+OK message 1 deleted
QUIT
+OK POP server signing off
```

Black = mail client requests

Color = mail server responses

**Figure 3** A Sample POP Session

the details of these protocols, but Figure 3 gives you a flavor of the commands used by the Post Office Protocol.

Both HTTP and POP use plain text, which makes it particularly easy to test and debug client and server programs (see How To 22.1).

### SELF CHECK



3. Why don't you need to know about HTTP when you use a web browser?
4. Why is it important that you don't make typing errors when you type HTTP commands in Telnet?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R22.13, R22.14, R22.15.

## 22.3 A Client Program

In this section you will see how to write a Java program that establishes a TCP connection to a server, sends a request to the server, and prints the response.

In the terminology of TCP/IP, there is a **socket** on each side of the connection (see Figure 4). In Java, a client establishes a socket with a call

```
Socket s = new Socket(hostname, portnumber);
```

For example, to connect to the HTTP port of the server horstmann.com, you use

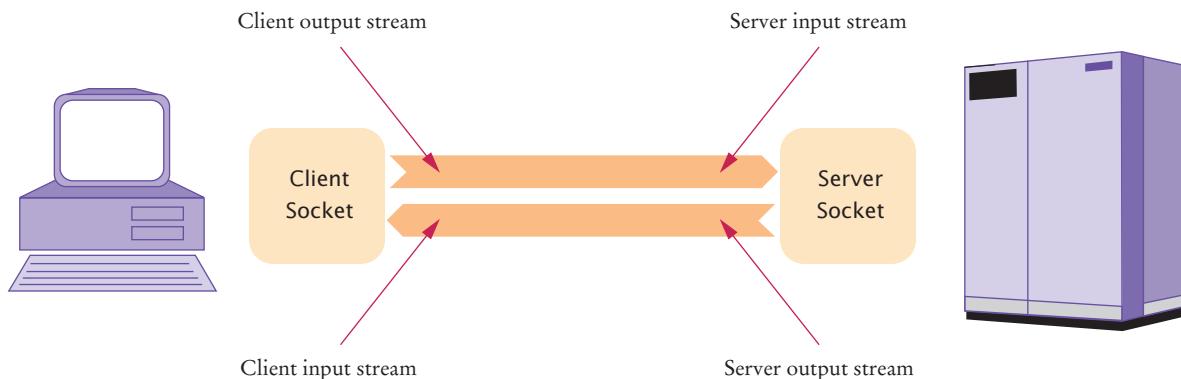
```
final int HTTP_PORT = 80;
Socket s = new Socket("horstmann.com", HTTP_PORT);
```

The socket constructor throws an UnknownHostException if it can't find the host.

Once you have a socket, you obtain its input and output streams:

```
InputStream instream = s.getInputStream();
OutputStream outstream = s.getOutputStream();
```

A socket is an object that encapsulates a TCP connection. To communicate with the other end point of the connection, use the input and output streams attached to the socket.

**Figure 4** Client and Server Sockets

When you send data to `outstream`, the socket automatically forwards it to the server. The socket catches the server’s response, and you can read the response through `instream` (see Figure 4).

When you are done communicating with the server, you should close the socket:

```
s.close();
```

In Chapter 20, you saw that the `InputStream` and `OutputStream` classes are used for reading and writing bytes. If you want to communicate with the server by sending and receiving text, you should turn the streams into scanners and writers, as follows:

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(instream);
PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(outstream);
```

A print writer *buffers* the characters that you send to it. That is, characters are not immediately sent to their destination. Instead, they are placed into an array. When the array is full, then the print writer sends all characters in the array to its destination. The advantage of buffering is increased performance—it takes some amount of time to contact the destination and send it data, and it is expensive to pay for that contact time for every character. However, when communicating with a server that responds to requests, you want to make sure that the server gets a complete request at a time. Therefore, you need to *flush* the buffer manually whenever you send a command:

```
out.print(command);
out.flush();
```

The `flush` method empties the buffer and forwards all waiting characters to the destination.

The `WebGet` program at the end of this section lets you retrieve any item from a web server. You need to specify the host and the item from the command line. For example,

```
java WebGet horstmann.com /
```

The `/` item denotes the root page of the web server that listens to port 80 of the host `horstmann.com`. Note that there is a space before the `/`.

The `WebGet` program establishes a connection to the host, sends a `GET` command to the host, and then receives input from the server until the server closes its connection.

When transmission over a socket is complete, remember to close the socket.

For text protocols, turn the socket streams into scanners and writers.

Flush the writer attached to a socket at the end of every command. Then the command is sent to the server, even if the writer’s buffer is not completely filled.

**section\_3/WebGet.java**

```

1 import java.io.InputStream;
2 import java.io.IOException;
3 import java.io.OutputStream;
4 import java.io.PrintWriter;
5 import java.net.Socket;
6 import java.util.Scanner;
7
8 /**
9  * This program demonstrates how to use a socket to communicate
10 with a web server. Supply the name of the host and the
11 resource on the command line, for example,
12 java WebGet horstmann.com index.html.
13 */
14 public class WebGet
15 {
16     public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException
17     {
18         // Get command-line arguments
19
20         String host;
21         String resource;
22
23         if (args.length == 2)
24         {
25             host = args[0];
26             resource = args[1];
27         }
28         else
29         {
30             System.out.println("Getting / from horstmann.com");
31             host = "horstmann.com";
32             resource = "/";
33         }
34
35         // Open socket
36
37         final int HTTP_PORT = 80;
38         Socket s = new Socket(host, HTTP_PORT);
39
40         // Get streams
41
42         InputStream instream = s.getInputStream();
43         OutputStream outstream = s.getOutputStream();
44
45         // Turn streams into scanners and writers
46
47         Scanner in = new Scanner(instream);
48         PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(outstream);
49
50         // Send command
51
52         String command = "GET " + resource + " HTTP/1.1\n"
53             + "Host: " + host + "\n\n";
54         out.print(command);
55         out.flush();
56
57         // Read server response
58

```

```

59     while (in.hasNextLine())
60     {
61         String input = in.nextLine();
62         System.out.println(input);
63     }
64
65     // Always close the socket at the end
66
67     s.close();
68 }
69 }
```

**Program Run**

```

Getting / from horstmann.com
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Date: Sat, 15 Sep 2012 14:15:04 GMT
Server: Apache/1.3.41 (Unix) Sun-ONE-ASP/4.0.2
...
Content-Length: 6654
Content-Type: text/html

<html>
<head><title>Cay Horstmann's Home Page</title></head>
<body>
<h1>Welcome to Cay Horstmann's Home Page</h1>
...
</body>
</html>
```

**SELF CHECK**

5. What happens if you call WebGet with a nonexistent resource, such as `wombat.html` at `horstmann.com`?
6. How do you open a socket to read e-mail from the POP server at `e-mail.sjsu.edu`?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R22.7, R22.8, E22.1, E22.2.

## 22.4 A Server Program

Now that you have seen how to write a network client, we will turn to the server side. In this section we will develop a server program that enables clients to manage a set of bank accounts in a bank.

Whenever you develop a server application, you need to specify some application-level protocol that clients can use to interact with the server. For the purpose of this example, we will create a “Simple Bank Access Protocol”. Table 2 shows the protocol format. Of course, this is just a toy protocol to show you how to implement a server.

The server program waits for clients to connect to a particular port. We choose port 8888 for this service. This number has not been preassigned to another service, so it is unlikely to be used by another server program. To listen to incoming

connections, you use a *server socket*. To construct a server socket, you need to supply the port number:

```
ServerSocket server = new ServerSocket(8888);
```

The `ServerSocket` class is used by server applications to listen for client connections.

The `accept` method of the `ServerSocket` class waits for a client connection. When a client connects, then the server program obtains a socket through which it communicates with the client:

```
Socket s = server.accept();
BankService service = new BankService(s, bank);
```

The `BankService` class carries out the service. This class implements the `Runnable` interface, and its `run` method will be executed in each thread that serves a client connection. The `run` method gets a scanner and writer from the socket in the same way as we discussed in the preceding section. Then it executes the following method:

```
public void doService() throws IOException
{
    while (true)
    {
        if (!in.hasNext()) { return; }
        String command = in.next();
        if (command.equals("QUIT")) { return; }
        executeCommand(command);
    }
}
```

The `executeCommand` method processes a single command. If the command is `DEPOSIT`, then it carries out the deposit:

```
int account = in.nextInt();
double amount = in.nextDouble();
bank.deposit(account, amount);
```

The `WITHDRAW` command is handled in the same way. After each command, the account number and new balance are sent to the client:

```
out.println(account + " " + bank.getBalance(account));
```

The `doService` method returns to the `run` method if the client closed the connection or the command equals "QUIT". Then the `run` method closes the socket and exits.

Let us go back to the point where the server socket accepts a connection and constructs the `BankService` object. At this point, we could simply call the `run` method. But then our server program would have a serious limitation: only one client could connect to it at any point in time. To overcome that limitation, server programs spawn a new thread whenever a client connects. Each thread is responsible for serving one client.

**Table 2** A Simple Bank Access Protocol

Client Request	Server Response	Description
BALANCE <i>n</i>	<i>n</i> and the balance	Get the balance of account <i>n</i>
DEPOSIT <i>n a</i>	<i>n</i> and the new balance	Deposit amount <i>a</i> into account <i>n</i>
WITHDRAW <i>n a</i>	<i>n</i> and the new balance	Withdraw amount <i>a</i> from account <i>n</i>
QUIT	None	Quit the connection

Our BankService class implements the `Runnable` interface. Therefore, the server program `BankServer` simply starts a thread with the following instructions:

```
Thread t = new Thread(service);
t.start();
```

The thread dies when the client quits or disconnects and the `run` method exits. In the meantime, the `BankServer` loops back to accept the next connection.

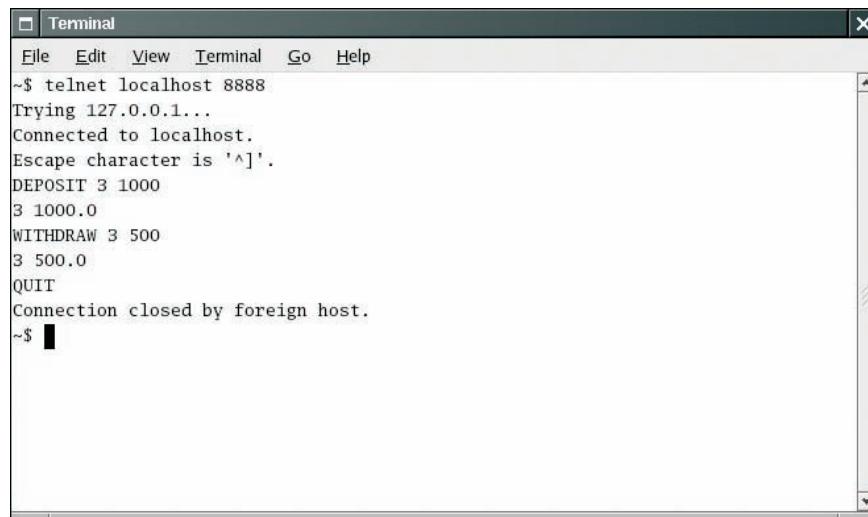
```
while (true)
{
    Socket s = server.accept();
    BankService service = new BankService(s, bank);
    Thread t = new Thread(service);
    t.start();
}
```

The server program never stops. When you are done running the server, you need to kill it. For example, if you started the server in a shell window, press `Ctrl+C`.

To try out the program, run the server. Then use Telnet to connect to `localhost`, port number 8888. Start typing commands. Here is a typical dialog (see Figure 5):

```
DEPOSIT 3 1000
3 1000.0
WITHDRAW 3 500
3 500.0
QUIT
```

Alternatively, you can use a client program that connects to the server. You will find a sample client program at the end of this section.



**Figure 5** Using the Telnet Program to Connect to the Bank Server

**section\_4/BankServer.java**

```

1 import java.io.IOException;
2 import java.net.ServerSocket;
3 import java.net.Socket;
4
5 /**
6  * A server that executes the Simple Bank Access Protocol.
7 */
8 public class BankServer
9 {
10    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException
11    {
12        final int ACCOUNTS_LENGTH = 10;
13        Bank bank = new Bank(ACCOUNTS_LENGTH);
14        final int SBAP_PORT = 8888;
15        ServerSocket server = new ServerSocket(SBAP_PORT);
16        System.out.println("Waiting for clients to connect . . . ");
17
18        while (true)
19        {
20            Socket s = server.accept();
21            System.out.println("Client connected.");
22            BankService service = new BankService(s, bank);
23            Thread t = new Thread(service);
24            t.start();
25        }
26    }
27}

```

**section\_4/BankService.java**

```

1 import java.io.InputStream;
2 import java.io.IOException;
3 import java.io.OutputStream;
4 import java.io.PrintWriter;
5 import java.net.Socket;
6 import java.util.Scanner;
7
8 /**
9  * Executes Simple Bank Access Protocol commands
10 * from a socket.
11 */
12 public class BankService implements Runnable
13 {
14     private Socket s;
15     private Scanner in;
16     private PrintWriter out;
17     private Bank bank;
18
19     /**
20      * Constructs a service object that processes commands
21      * from a socket for a bank.
22      * @param aSocket the socket
23      * @param aBank the bank
24     */
25     public BankService(Socket aSocket, Bank aBank)
26     {
27         s = aSocket;
28         bank = aBank;

```

```
29     }
30
31     public void run()
32     {
33         try
34         {
35             try
36             {
37                 in = new Scanner(s.getInputStream());
38                 out = new PrintWriter(s.getOutputStream());
39                 doService();
40             }
41             finally
42             {
43                 s.close();
44             }
45         }
46         catch (IOException exception)
47         {
48             exception.printStackTrace();
49         }
50     }
51
52     /**
53      * Executes all commands until the QUIT command or the
54      * end of input.
55     */
56     public void doService() throws IOException
57     {
58         while (true)
59         {
60             if (!in.hasNext()) { return; }
61             String command = in.next();
62             if (command.equals("QUIT")) { return; }
63             else executeCommand(command);
64         }
65     }
66
67     /**
68      * Executes a single command.
69      * @param command the command to execute
70     */
71     public void executeCommand(String command)
72     {
73         int account = in.nextInt();
74         if (command.equals("DEPOSIT"))
75         {
76             double amount = in.nextDouble();
77             bank.deposit(account, amount);
78         }
79         else if (command.equals("WITHDRAW"))
80         {
81             double amount = in.nextDouble();
82             bank.withdraw(account, amount);
83         }
84         else if (!command.equals("BALANCE"))
85         {
86             out.println("Invalid command");
87             out.flush();
88         }
     }
```

```

89     }
90     out.println(account + " " + bank.getBalance(account));
91     out.flush();
92   }
93 }
```

### section\_4/Bank.java

```

1  /**
2   * A bank consisting of multiple bank accounts.
3   */
4  public class Bank
5  {
6    private BankAccount[] accounts;
7
8    /**
9     * Constructs a bank account with a given number of accounts.
10    @param size the number of accounts
11   */
12  public Bank(int size)
13  {
14    accounts = new BankAccount[size];
15    for (int i = 0; i < accounts.length; i++)
16    {
17      accounts[i] = new BankAccount();
18    }
19  }
20
21 /**
22  * Deposits money into a bank account.
23  * @param accountNumber the account number
24  * @param amount the amount to deposit
25  */
26 public void deposit(int accountNumber, double amount)
27 {
28   BankAccount account = accounts[accountNumber];
29   account.deposit(amount);
30 }
31
32 /**
33  * Withdraws money from a bank account.
34  * @param accountNumber the account number
35  * @param amount the amount to withdraw
36  */
37 public void withdraw(int accountNumber, double amount)
38 {
39   BankAccount account = accounts[accountNumber];
40   account.withdraw(amount);
41 }
42
43 /**
44  * Gets the balance of a bank account.
45  * @param accountNumber the account number
46  * @return the account balance
47  */
48 public double getBalance(int accountNumber)
49 {
50   BankAccount account = accounts[accountNumber];
51   return account.getBalance();
```

```
52     }
53 }
```

### section\_4/BankClient.java

```
1 import java.io.InputStream;
2 import java.io.IOException;
3 import java.io.OutputStream;
4 import java.io.PrintWriter;
5 import java.net.Socket;
6 import java.util.Scanner;
7
8 /**
9      This program tests the bank server.
10 */
11 public class BankClient
12 {
13     public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException
14     {
15         final int SBAP_PORT = 8888;
16         Socket s = new Socket("localhost", SBAP_PORT);
17         InputStream instream = s.getInputStream();
18         OutputStream ostream = s.getOutputStream();
19         Scanner in = new Scanner(instream);
20         PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter(ostream);
21
22         String command = "DEPOSIT 3 1000\n";
23         System.out.print("Sending: " + command);
24         out.print(command);
25         out.flush();
26         String response = in.nextLine();
27         System.out.println("Receiving: " + response);
28
29         command = "WITHDRAW 3 500\n";
30         System.out.print("Sending: " + command);
31         out.print(command);
32         out.flush();
33         response = in.nextLine();
34         System.out.println("Receiving: " + response);
35
36         command = "QUIT\n";
37         System.out.print("Sending: " + command);
38         out.print(command);
39         out.flush();
40
41         s.close();
42     }
43 }
```

### Program Run

```
Sending: DEPOSIT 3 1000
Receiving: 3 1000.0
Sending: WITHDRAW 3 500
Receiving: 3 500.0
Sending: QUIT
```



7. Why didn't we choose port 80 for the bank server?
8. Can you read data from a server socket?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: E22.3, E22.4, P22.2.

## HOW TO 22.1



### Designing Client/Server Programs

The bank server of this section is a typical example of a client/server program. A web browser/web server is another example. This How To outlines the steps to follow when designing a client/server application.

**Step 1** Determine whether it really makes sense to implement a stand-alone server and a matching client.

Many times it makes more sense to build a web application instead. Chapter 25 discusses the construction of web applications in detail. For example, the bank application of this section could easily be turned into a web application, using an HTML form with Withdraw and Deposit buttons. However, programs for chat or peer-to-peer file sharing cannot easily be implemented as web applications.

**Step 2** Design a communication protocol.

Figure out exactly what messages the client and server send to each other and what the success and error responses are.

With each request and response, ask yourself how the *end of data* is indicated.

- Do the data fit on a single line? Then the end of the line serves as the data terminator.
- Can the data be terminated by a special line (such as a blank line after the HTTP header or a line containing a period in SMTP)?
- Does the sender of the data close the socket? That's what a web server does at the end of a GET request.
- Can the sender indicate how many bytes are contained in the request? Web browsers do that in POST requests.

Use text, not binary data, for the communication between client and server. A text-based protocol is easier to debug.

**Step 3** Implement the server program.

The server listens for socket connections and accepts them. It starts a new thread for each connection. Supply a class that implements the Runnable interface. The run method receives commands, interprets them, and sends responses back to the client.

**Step 4** Test the server with the Telnet program.

Try out all commands in the communication protocol.

**Step 5** Once the server works, write a client program.

The client program interacts with the program user, turns user requests into protocol commands, sends the commands to the server, receives the response, and displays the response for the program user.

## 22.5 URL Connections

The `URLConnection` class makes it easy to communicate with a web server without having to issue HTTP commands.

In Section 22.3, you saw how to use sockets to connect to a web server and how to retrieve information from the server by sending HTTP commands. However, because HTTP is such an important protocol, the Java library contains a `URLConnection` class, which provides convenient support for the HTTP. The `URLConnection` class takes care of the socket connection, so you don't have to fuss with sockets when you want to retrieve from a web server. As an additional benefit, the `URLConnection` class can also handle FTP, the *file transfer protocol*.

The `URLConnection` class makes it very easy to fetch a file from a web server given the file's URL as a string. First, you construct a `URL` object from the URL in the familiar format, starting with the `http` or `ftp` prefix. Then you use the `URL` object's `openConnection` method to get the `URLConnection` object itself:

```
URL u = new URL("http://horstmann.com/index.html");
URLConnection connection = u.openConnection();
```

Then you call the `getInputStream` method to obtain an input stream:

```
InputStream instream = connection.getInputStream();
```

You can turn the stream into a scanner in the usual way, and read input from the scanner.

The `URLConnection` class can give you additional useful information. To understand those capabilities, we need to have a closer look at HTTP requests and responses. You saw in Section 22.2 that the command for getting an item from the server is

```
GET item HTTP/1.1
Host: hostname
blank line
```

You may have wondered why you need to provide a blank line. This blank line is a part of the general request format. The first line of the request is a command, such as `GET` or `POST`. The command is followed by *request properties* (such as `Host:`). Some commands—in particular, the `POST` command—send input data to the server. The reason for the blank line is to denote the boundary between the request property section and the input data section.

A typical request property is `If-Modified-Since`. If you request an item with

```
GET item HTTP/1.1
Host: hostname
If-Modified-Since: date
blank line
```

the server sends the item only if it is newer than the date. Browsers use this feature to speed up redisplay of previously loaded web pages. When a web page is loaded, the browser stores it in a *cache* directory. When the user wants to see the same web page again, the browser asks the server to get a new page only if it has been modified since the date of the cached copy. If it hasn't been, the browser simply redispays the cached copy and doesn't spend time downloading another identical copy.

The `URLConnection` class has methods to set request properties. For example, you can set the `If-Modified-Since` property with the `setIfModifiedSince` method:

```
connection.setIfModifiedSince(date);
```

You need to set request properties before calling the `getInputStream` method. The `URLConnection` class then sends to the web server all the request properties that you set.

The `URLConnection` and `HttpURLConnection` classes can give you additional information about HTTP requests and responses.

Similarly, the response from the server starts with a status line followed by a set of response parameters. The response parameters are terminated by a blank line and followed by the requested data (for example, an HTML page). Here is a typical response:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Date: Tue, 28 Aug 2012 00:15:48 GMT
Server: Apache/1.3.3 (Unix)
Last-Modified: Sat, 23 Jun 2012 20:53:38 GMT
Content-Length: 4813
Content-Type: text/html
blank line
requested data
```

Normally, you don't see the response code. However, you may have run across bad links and seen a page that contained a response code 404 Not Found. (A successful response has status 200 OK.)

To retrieve the response code, you need to cast the `URLConnection` object to the `HttpURLConnection` subclass. You can retrieve the response code (such as the number 200 in this example, or the code 404 if a page was not found) and response message with the `getResponseCode` and `getResponseMessage` methods:

```
HttpURLConnection httpConnection = (HttpURLConnection) connection;
int code = httpConnection.getResponseCode(); // e.g., 404
String message = httpConnection.getResponseMessage(); // e.g., "Not found"
```

As you can see from the response example, the server sends some information about the requested data, such as the content length and the content type. You can request this information with methods from the `URLConnection` class:

```
int length = connection.getContentLength();
String type = connection.getContentType();
```

You need to call these methods after calling the `getInputStream` method.

To summarize: You don't need to use sockets to communicate with a web server, and you need not master the details of the HTTP protocol. Simply use the `URLConnection` and `HttpURLConnection` classes to obtain data from a web server, to set request properties, or to obtain response information.

The program at the end of this section puts the `URLConnection` class to work. The program fulfills the same purpose as that of Section 22.3—to retrieve a web page from a server—but it works at a higher level of abstraction. There is no longer a need to issue an explicit GET command. The `URLConnection` class takes care of that. Similarly, the parsing of the HTTP request and response headers is handled transparently to the programmer. Our sample program takes advantage of that fact. It checks whether the server response code is 200. If not, it exits. You can try that out by testing the program with a bad URL, like `http://horstmann.com/wombat.html`. Then the program prints a server response, such as 404 Not Found.

This program completes our introduction to Internet programming with Java. You have seen how to use sockets to connect client and server programs. You also saw how to use the higher-level `URLConnection` class to obtain information from web servers.

### section\_5/URLGet.java

```
1 import java.io.InputStream;
2 import java.io.IOException;
3 import java.io.OutputStream;
4 import java.io.PrintWriter;
```

```
5 import java.net.HttpURLConnection;
6 import java.net.URL;
7 import java.net.URLConnection;
8 import java.util.Scanner;
9
10 /**
11  * This program demonstrates how to use a URL connection
12  * to communicate with a web server. Supply the URL on
13  * the command line, for example
14  * java URLGet http://horstmann.com/index.html
15 */
16 public class URLGet
17 {
18     public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException
19     {
20         // Get command-line arguments
21
22         String urlString;
23         if (args.length == 1)
24         {
25             urlString = args[0];
26         }
27         else
28         {
29             urlString = "http://horstmann.com/";
30             System.out.println("Using " + urlString);
31         }
32
33         // Open connection
34
35         URL u = new URL(urlString);
36         HttpURLConnection connection = u.openConnection();
37
38         // Check if response code is HTTP_OK (200)
39
40         HttpURLConnection httpConnection
41             = (HttpURLConnection) connection;
42         int code = httpConnection.getResponseCode();
43         String message = httpConnection.getResponseMessage();
44         System.out.println(code + " " + message);
45         if (code != HttpURLConnection.HTTP_OK)
46         {
47             return;
48         }
49
50         // Read server response
51
52         InputStream instream = connection.getInputStream();
53         Scanner in = new Scanner(instream);
54
55         while (in.hasNextLine())
56         {
57             String input = in.nextLine();
58             System.out.println(input);
59         }
60     }
61 }
```

## Program Run

```
Using http://horstmann.com/
200 OK
<html>
<head><title>Cay Horstmann's Home Page</title></head>
<body>
<h1>Welcome to Cay Horstmann's Home Page</h1>
. . .
</body>
</html>
```

### SELF CHECK



9. Why is it better to use a `URLConnection` instead of a socket when reading data from a web server?
10. What happens if you use the `URLGet` program to request an image (such as <http://horstmann.com/cay-tiny.gif>)?

### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: P22.5, P22.6, P22.7.

### Programming Tip 22.1



### Use High-Level Libraries

When you communicate with a web server to obtain data, you have two choices. You can make a socket connection and send GET and POST commands to the server over the socket. Or you can use the `URLConnection` class and have it issue the commands on your behalf.

Similarly, to communicate with a mail server, you can write programs that send SMTP and POP commands, or you can learn how to use the Java mail extensions. (See <http://oracle.com/technetwork/java/javamail/index.html> for more information on the Java Mail API.)

In such a situation, you may be tempted to use the low-level approach and send commands over a socket connection. It seems simpler than learning a complex set of classes. However, that simplicity is often deceptive. Once you go beyond the simplest cases, the low-level approach usually requires hard work. For example, to send binary mail attachments, you may need to master complex data encodings. The high-level libraries have all that knowledge built in, so you don't have to reinvent the wheel.

For that reason, you should not actually use sockets to connect to web servers. Always use the `URLConnection` class instead. Why did this book teach you about sockets if you aren't expected to use them? There are two reasons. Some client programs don't communicate with web or mail servers, and you may need to use sockets when a high-level library is not available. And, just as importantly, knowing what the high-level library does under the hood helps you understand it better. For the same reason, you saw in Chapter 16 how to implement linked lists, even though you probably will never program your own lists and will just use the standard `LinkedList` class.

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### Describe the IP and TCP protocols.

- The Internet is a worldwide collection of networks, routing equipment, and computers using a common set of protocols to define how each party will interact with each other.
- TCP/IP is the abbreviation for *Transmission Control Protocol and Internet Protocol*, the pair of communication protocols designed to establish reliable transmission of data between two computers on the Internet.
- A TCP connection requires the Internet addresses and port numbers of both end points.

### Describe the HTTP protocol.

- HTTP, or *Hypertext Transfer Protocol*, is the protocol that defines communication between web browsers and web servers.
- A URL, or *Uniform Resource Locator*, is a pointer to an information resource (such as a web page or an image) on the World Wide Web.
- The Telnet program is a useful tool for establishing test connections with servers.
- The HTTP GET command requests information from a web server. The web server returns the requested item, which may be a web page, an image, or other data.

### Implement programs that use network sockets for reading data.

- A socket is an object that encapsulates a TCP connection. To communicate with the other end point of the connection, use the input and output streams attached to the socket.
- When transmission over a socket is complete, remember to close the socket.
- For text protocols, turn the socket streams into scanners and writers.
- Flush the writer attached to a socket at the end of every command. Then the command is sent to the server, even if the writer's buffer is not completely filled.

### Implement programs that serve data over a network.

- The ServerSocket class is used by server applications to listen for client connections.

### Use the URLConnection class to read data from a web server.

- The URLConnection class makes it easy to communicate with a web server without having to issue HTTP commands.
- The URLConnection and HttpURLConnection classes can give you additional information about HTTP requests and responses.

**STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER**

```
java.net.HttpURLConnection
    getResponseCode
    getResponseMessage
java.net.ServerSocket
    accept
    close
java.net.Socket
    close
    getInputStream
    getOutputStream
```

```
java.net.URL
    openConnection
java.netURLConnection
    getContentLength
    getContentType
    getInputStream
    setIfModifiedSince
```

**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

- **R22.1** What is the IP address of the computer that you are using at home? Does it have a domain name?
- **R22.2** Can a computer somewhere on the Internet establish a network connection with the computer at your home? If so, what information does the other computer need to establish the connection?
- **R22.3** What is a port number? Can the same computer receive data on two different ports?
- **R22.4** What is a server? What is a client? How many clients can connect to a server at one time?
- **R22.5** What is a socket? What is the difference between a `Socket` object and a `ServerSocket` object?
- **R22.6** Under what circumstances would an `UnknownHostException` be thrown?
- ■ **R22.7** What happens if the `Socket` constructor's second argument is not the same as the port number at which the server waits for connections?
- **R22.8** When a socket is created, which of the following Internet addresses is used?
  - The address of the computer to which you want to connect
  - The address of your computer
  - The address of your ISP
- **R22.9** What is the purpose of the `accept` method of the `ServerSocket` class?
- **R22.10** After a socket establishes a connection, which of the following mechanisms will your client program use to read data from the server computer?
  - The `Socket` will fill a buffer with bytes.
  - You will use a `Reader` obtained from the `Socket`.
  - You will use an `InputStream` obtained from the `Socket`.
- **R22.11** Why is it not common to work directly with the `InputStream` and `OutputStream` objects obtained from a `Socket` object?
- **R22.12** When a client program communicates with a server, it sometimes needs to flush the output stream. Explain why.

- **R22.13** What is the difference between HTTP and HTML?
- **R22.14** Try out the HEAD command of the HTTP protocol. What command did you use? What response did you get?
- **R22.15** Connect to a POP server that hosts your e-mail and retrieve a message. Provide a record of your session (but remove your password). If your mail server doesn't allow access on port 110, access it through SSL encryption (usually on port 995). Get a copy of the openssl utility and use the command `openssl s_client -connect server-name:995`.
- **R22.16** How can you communicate with a web server without using sockets?
- **R22.17** What is the difference between a URL instance and a URLConnection instance?
- **R22.18** What is a URL? How do you create an object of class URL? How do you connect to a URL?

### PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E22.1** Modify the WebGet program to print only the HTTP header of the returned HTML page. The HTTP header is the beginning of the response data. It consists of several lines, such as

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2013 16:10:34 GMT
Server: Apache/1.3.19 (Unix)
Cache-Control: max-age=86400
Expires: Wed, 16 Jan 2013 16:10:34 GMT
Connection: close
Content-Type: text/html
```

followed by a blank line.

- **E22.2** Modify the WebGet program to print only the *title* of the returned HTML page. An HTML page has the structure

```
<html><head><title> . . . </title></head><body> . . . </body></html>
```

For example, if you run the program by typing at the command line

```
java WebGet horstmann.com /
```

the output should be the title of the root web page at `horstmann.com`, such as Cay Horstmann's Home Page.

- **E22.3** Modify the BankServer program so that it can be terminated more elegantly. Provide another socket on port 8889 through which an administrator can log in. Support the commands LOGIN *password*, STATUS, PASSWORD *newPassword*, LOGOUT, and SHUTDOWN. The STATUS command should display the total number of clients that have logged in since the server started.
- **E22.4** Modify the BankServer program to provide complete error checking. For example, the program should check to make sure that there is enough money in the account when withdrawing. Send appropriate error reports back to the client. Enhance the protocol to be similar to HTTP, in which each server response starts with a number indicating the success or failure condition, followed by a string with response data or an error description.

- E22.5** Write a program to display the protocol, host, port, and file components of a URL.  
*Hint:* Look at the API documentation of the `URL` class.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- P22.1** Write a client application that executes an infinite loop that
- Prompts the user for a number.
  - Sends that value to the server.
  - Receives the number.
  - Displays the new number.
- Also write a server that executes an infinite loop whose body accepts a client connection, reads a number from the client, computes its square root, and writes the result to the client.
- P22.2** Implement a client-server program in which the client will print the date and time given by the server. Two classes should be implemented: `DateClient` and `DateServer`. The `DateServer` simply prints `new Date().toString()` whenever it accepts a connection and then closes the socket.
- P22.3** Write a simple web server that recognizes only the `GET` request (without the `Host:` request parameter and blank line). When a client connects to your server and sends a command, such as `GET filename HTTP/1.1`, then return a header
- ```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
```
- followed by a blank line and all lines in the file. If the file doesn't exist, return `404 Not Found` instead.
- Your server should listen to port 8080. Test your web server by starting up your web browser and loading a page, such as `localhost:8080/c:\cs1\myfile.html`.
- P22.4** Write a chat server and client program. The chat server accepts connections from clients. Whenever one of the clients sends a chat message, it is displayed for all other clients to see. Use a protocol with three commands: `LOGIN name`, `CHAT message`, and `LOGOUT`.
- P22.5** A query such as
- ```
http://aa.usno.navy.mil/cgi-bin/aa_moonphases.pl?year=2011
```
- returns a page containing the moon phases in a given year. Write a program that asks the user for a year, month, and day and then prints the phase of the moon on that day.
- P22.6** A page such as
- ```
http://www.nws.noaa.gov/view/states.php
```
- contains links to pages showing the weather reports for many cities in the fifty states. Write a program that asks the user for a state and city and then prints the weather report.
- P22.7** A page such as

[https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/countrytemplate\\_ca.html](https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/geos/countrytemplate_ca.html)

contains information about a country (here Canada, with the symbol ca—see <https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/print/textversion.html> for the country symbols). Write a program that asks the user for a country name and then prints the area and population.

### ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. An IP address is a numerical address, consisting of four or sixteen bytes. A domain name is an alphanumeric string that is associated with an IP address.
2. TCP is reliable but somewhat slow. When sending sounds or images in real time, it is acceptable if a small amount of the data is lost. But there is no point in transmitting data that is late.
3. The browser software translates your requests (typed URLs and mouse clicks on links) into HTTP commands that it sends to the appropriate web servers.
4. Some Telnet implementations send all key-strokes that you type to the server, including the backspace key. The server does not recognize a character sequence such as G W Backspace E T as a valid command.
5. The program makes a connection to the server, sends the GET request, and prints the error message that the server returns.
6. `Socket s = new Socket("e-mail.sjsu.edu", 110);`
7. Port 80 is the standard port for HTTP. If a web server is running on the same computer, then one can't open a server socket on an open port.
8. No, a server socket just waits for a connection and yields a regular `Socket` object when a client has connected. You use that `socket` object to read the data that the client sends.
9. The `URLConnection` class understands the HTTP protocol, freeing you from assembling requests and analyzing response headers.
10. The bytes that encode the images are displayed on the console, but they will appear to be random gibberish.

# RELATIONAL DATABASES

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To understand how relational databases store information
- To learn to query a database with the Structured Query Language (SQL)
- To connect to a database with Java Database Connectivity (JDBC)
- To write database programs that insert, update, and query data in a relational database



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

### **23.1 ORGANIZING DATABASE INFORMATION** W968

*Programming Tip 23.1:* Stick with the Standard W973

*Programming Tip 23.2:* Avoid Unnecessary Data Replication W974

*Programming Tip 23.3:* Don't Replicate Columns in a Table W974

*Special Topic 23.1:* Primary Keys and Indexes W975

### **23.2 QUERIES** W975

*Common Error 23.1:* Joining Tables Without Specifying a Link Condition W981

### **23.3 INSTALLING A DATABASE** W982

### **23.4 DATABASE PROGRAMMING IN JAVA** W986

*Common Error 23.2:* Constructing Queries from Arbitrary Strings W992

*Programming Tip 23.4:* Don't Hardwire Database Connection Parameters into Your Program W993

*Programming Tip 23.5:* Let the Database Do the Work W993

### **23.5 APPLICATION: ENTERING AN INVOICE** W994

*Special Topic 23.2:* Transactions W1002

*Special Topic 23.3:* Object-Relational Mapping W1003

*Worked Example 23.1:* Programming a Bank Database W1004



When you store data in a file, you want to be able to add and remove data, change data items, and find items that match certain criteria. However, if you have a lot of data, it can be difficult to carry out these operations quickly and efficiently. Because data storage is such a common task, special *database management systems* have been invented that let the programmer think in terms of the data rather than how it is stored. In this chapter, you will learn how to use SQL, the Structured Query Language, to query and update information in a relational database, and how to access database information from Java programs.

## 23.1 Organizing Database Information

### 23.1.1 Database Tables

A relational database stores information in tables. Each table column has a name and a data type.

SQL (Structured Query Language) is a command language for interacting with a database.

A relational database stores information in *tables*. Figure 1 shows a typical table. As you can see, each *row* in this table corresponds to a product. The *column headers* correspond to attributes of the product: the product code, description, and unit price. Note that all items in a particular column have the same type: product codes and descriptions are strings, unit prices are floating-point numbers. The allowable column types differ somewhat from one database to another. Table 1 shows types that are commonly available in relational databases that follow the SQL (for Structured Query Language; often pronounced “sequel”) standard.

Most relational databases follow the SQL standard. There is no relationship between SQL and Java—they are different languages. However, as you will see later in this chapter, you can use Java to send SQL commands to a database. You will see in the next section how to use SQL commands to carry out queries, but there are other SQL commands.

For example, here is the SQL command to create a table named Product:

```
CREATE TABLE Product
(
    Product_Code CHAR(7),
    Description VARCHAR(40),
    Price DECIMAL(10, 2)
)
```

**Product**

| Product_Code | Description | Price |
|--------------|-------------|-------|
| 116-064      | Toaster     | 24.95 |
| 257-535      | Hair dryer  | 29.95 |
| 643-119      | Car vacuum  | 19.99 |

**Figure 1** A Product Table in a Relational Database

**Table 1** Some Standard SQL Types and Their Corresponding Java Types

| SQL Data Type                   | Java Data Type   |
|---------------------------------|--|
| INTEGER or INT                  | int  |
| REAL                            | float  |
| DOUBLE                          | double   |
| DECIMAL( $m, n$ )               | Fixed-point decimal numbers with $m$ total digits and $n$ digits after the decimal point; similar to <code>BigDecimal</code> |
| BOOLEAN                         | boolean  |
| VARCHAR( $n$ )                  | Variable-length String of length up to $n$   |
| CHARACTER( $n$ ) or CHAR( $n$ ) | Fixed-length String of length $n$  |

Use the SQL commands `CREATE TABLE` and `INSERT INTO` to add data to a database.

Unlike Java, SQL is not case sensitive. For example, you could spell the command `create table` instead of `CREATE TABLE`. However, as a matter of convention, we will use uppercase letters for SQL keywords and mixed case for table and column names.

To insert rows into the table, use the `INSERT INTO` command. Issue one command for each row, such as

```
INSERT INTO Product
VALUES ('257-535', 'Hair dryer', 29.95)
```

SQL uses single quotes ('), not double quotes, to delimit strings. What if you have a string that contains a single quote? Rather than using an escape sequence (such as \') as in Java, you just write the single quote twice, such as

```
'Sam''s Small Appliances'
```

If you create a table and subsequently want to remove it, use the `DROP TABLE` command with the name of the table. For example,

```
DROP TABLE Test
```

### 23.1.2 Linking Tables

If you have objects whose instance variables are strings, numbers, dates, or other types that are permissible as table column types, then you can easily store them as rows in a database table. For example, consider a Java class `Customer`:

```
public class Customer
{
    private String name;
    private String address;
    private String city;
    private String state;
    private String zip;
    ...
}
```

**Customer**

| Name                   | Address         | City        | State   | Zip     |
|------------------------|-----------------|-------------|---------|---------|
| VARCHAR(40)            | VARCHAR(40)     | VARCHAR(30) | CHAR(2) | CHAR(5) |
| Sam's Small Appliances | 100 Main Street | Anytown     | CA      | 98765   |

**Figure 2** A Customer Table

It is simple to come up with a database table structure that allows you to store customers—see Figure 2.

For other objects, it is not so easy. Consider an invoice. Each invoice object contains a reference to a customer object:

```
public class Invoice
{
    private int invoiceNumber;
    private Customer theCustomer;
    ...
}
```

Because `Customer` isn't a standard SQL type, you might consider simply entering all the customer data into the invoice table—see Figure 3. However, this is not a good idea. If you look at the sample data in Figure 3, you will notice that Sam's Small Appliances had two invoices, numbers 11731 and 11733. Yet all information for the customer was *replicated* in two rows.

This replication has two problems. First, it is wasteful to store the same information multiple times. If the same customer places many orders, then the replicated information can take up a lot of space. More importantly, the replication is *dangerous*. Suppose the customer moves to a new address. Then it would be an easy mistake to update the customer information in some of the invoice records and leave the old address in place in others.

In a Java program, neither of these problems occurs. Multiple `Invoice` objects can contain references to a single shared `Customer` object.

**Invoice**

| Invoice_Number | Customer_Name          | Customer_Address | Customer_City | Customer_State | Customer_Zip | ... |
|----------------|------------------------|------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|-----|
| INTEGER        | VARCHAR(40)            | VARCHAR(40)      | VARCHAR(30)   | CHAR(2)        | CHAR(5)      | ... |
| 11731          | Sam's Small Appliances | 100 Main Street  | Anytown       | CA             | 98765        | ... |
| 11732          | Electronics Unlimited  | 1175 Liberty Ave | Pleasantville | MI             | 45066        | ... |
| 11733          | Sam's Small Appliances | 100 Main Street  | Anytown       | CA             | 98765        | ... |

**Figure 3** A Poor Design for an Invoice Table with Replicated Customer Data

| <b>Invoice</b>        |                        |                |
|-----------------------|------------------------|----------------|
| <b>Invoice_Number</b> | <b>Customer_Number</b> | <b>Payment</b> |
| INTEGER               | INTEGER                | DECIMAL(10, 2) |
| 11731                 | 3175                   | 0              |
| 11732                 | 3176                   | 249.95         |
| 11733                 | 3175                   | 0              |

| <b>Customer</b>        |                        |                  |               |              |            |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|
| <b>Customer_Number</b> | <b>Name</b>            | <b>Address</b>   | <b>City</b>   | <b>State</b> | <b>Zip</b> |
| INTEGER                | VARCHAR(40)            | VARCHAR(40)      | VARCHAR(30)   | CHAR(2)      | CHAR(5)    |
| 3175                   | Sam's Small Appliances | 100 Main Street  | Anytown       | CA           | 98765      |
| 3176                   | Electronics Unlimited  | 1175 Liberty Ave | Pleasantville | MI           | 45066      |

**Figure 4** Two Tables for Invoice and Customer Data

You should avoid rows with replicated data. Instead, distribute the data over multiple tables.

The first step in achieving the same effect in a database is to organize your data into multiple tables as in Figure 4. Dividing the columns into two tables solves the replication problem. The customer data are no longer replicated—the Invoice table contains no customer information, and the Customer table contains a single record for each customer. But how can we refer to the customer to which an invoice is issued? Notice in Figure 4 that there is now a *Customer\_Number* column in *both* the Customer table and the Invoice table. Now all invoices for Sam's Small Appliances share only the customer number. The two tables are *linked* by the *Customer\_Number* field. To find out more details about this customer, you need to use the customer number to look up the customer in the Customer table.

Note that the customer number is a *unique identifier*. We introduced the customer number because the customer name by itself may not be unique. For example, there may well be multiple Electronics Unlimited stores in various locations. Thus, the customer name alone does not uniquely identify a record (a row of data), so we cannot use the name as a link between the two tables.

In database terminology, a column (or combination of columns) that uniquely identifies a row in a table is called a **primary key**. In our Customer table, the *Customer\_Number* column is a primary key. You need a primary key if you want to establish a link from another table. For example, the Customer table needs a primary key so that you can link customers to invoices.

When a primary key is linked to another table, the matching column (or combination of columns) in that table is called a **foreign key**. For example, the *Customer\_Number* in the Invoice table is a foreign key, linked to the primary key in the Customer table. Unlike primary keys, foreign keys need not be unique. For example, in our Invoice table we have several records that have the same value for the *Customer\_Number* foreign key.

A primary key is a column (or set of columns) whose value uniquely specifies a table record.

A foreign key is a reference to a primary key in a linked table.

### 23.1.3 Implementing Multi-Valued Relationships

Each invoice is linked to exactly one customer. That is called a *single-valued* relationship. On the other hand, each invoice has many line items. (As in Chapter 12, a *line item* identifies the product, quantity, and unit price.) Thus, there is a *multi-valued* relationship between invoices and line items. In the Java class, the `LineItem` objects are stored in an array list:

```
public class Invoice
{
    private int invoiceNumber;
    private Customer theCustomer;
    private ArrayList<LineItem> items;
    private double payment;
    ...
}
```

However, in a relational database, you need to store the information in tables. Surprisingly many programmers, when faced with this situation, commit a major faux pas and replicate columns, one for each line item, as in Figure 5 below.

Clearly, this design is not satisfactory. What should we do if there are more than three line items on an invoice? Perhaps we should have 10 line items instead? But that is wasteful if the majority of invoices have only a couple of line items, and it still does not solve our problem for the occasional invoice with lots of line items.

Instead, distribute the information into two tables: one for invoices and another for line items. Link each line item back to its invoice with an `Invoice_Number` foreign key in the `LineItem` table—see Figure 6.

**Invoice**

| Invoice_Number | Customer_Number | Product_Code1 | Quantity1 | Product_Code2 | Quantity2 | Product_Code3 | Quantity3 | Payment        |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------|---------------|-----------|---------------|-----------|----------------|
| INTEGER        | INTEGER         | CHAR(7)       | INTEGER   | CHAR(7)       | INTEGER   | CHAR(7)       | INTEGER   | DECIMAL(10, 2) |
| 11731          | 3175            | 116-064       | 3         | 257-535       | 1         | 643-119       | 2         | 0              |

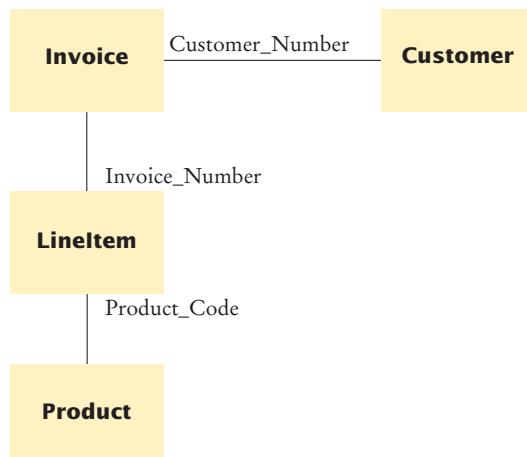
**Figure 5** A Poor Design for an Invoice Table with Replicated Columns**Invoice**

| Invoice_Number | Customer_Number | Payment        |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| INTEGER        | INTEGER         | DECIMAL(10, 2) |
| 11731          | 3175            | 0              |
| 11732          | 3176            | 249.50         |
| 11733          | 3175            | 0              |

**LineItem**

| Invoice_Number | Product_Code | Quantity |
|----------------|--------------|----------|
| INTEGER        | CHAR(7)      | INTEGER  |
| 11731          | 116-064      | 3        |
| 11731          | 257-535      | 1        |
| 11731          | 643-119      | 2        |
| 11732          | 116-064      | 10       |
| 11733          | 116-064      | 2        |
| 11733          | 643-119      | 1        |

**Figure 6** Linked Invoice and LineItem Tables Implement a Multi-Valued Relationship



**Figure 7** The Links Between the Tables in the Sample Database

Implement one-to-many relationships with linked tables, not replicated columns.

In a similar fashion, the LineItem table links to the Product table via the Product table's Product\_Code primary key. Our database now consists of four tables:

- Invoice
- Customer
- LineItem
- Product

Figure 7 shows the links between these tables. In the next section you will see how to query this database for information about invoices, customers, and products. The queries will take advantage of the links between the tables.



### SELF CHECK

1. Would a telephone number be a good primary key for a customer table?
2. In the database of Section 23.1.3, what are all the products that customer 3176 ordered?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R23.2, R23.4, R23.5.

### Programming Tip 23.1



### Stick with the Standard

The Java language is highly standardized. You will rarely find compilers that allow you to specify Java code that differs from the standard, and if they do, it is always a compiler bug. However, SQL implementations are often much more forgiving. For example, many SQL vendors allow you to use a Java-style escape sequence such as

'Sam\'s Small Appliances'

in a SQL string. The vendor probably thought that this would be “helpful” to programmers who are familiar with Java or C. (The C language uses the same escape mechanism for denoting special characters.)

However, this is an illusion. Deviating from the standard limits portability. Suppose you later want to move your database code to another vendor, perhaps to improve performance or to lower the cost of the database software. If the other vendor hasn't implemented a particular deviation, then your code will no longer work and you need to spend time fixing it.

To avoid these problems, you should stick with the standard. With SQL, you cannot rely on your database to flag all errors—some of them may be considered “helpful” extensions. That means that you need to *know* the standard and have the discipline to follow it. (See *A Guide to the SQL Standard: A User's Guide to the Standard Database Language*, by Chris J. Date and Hugh Darwen (Addison-Wesley, 1996), for more information.)

### Programming Tip 23.2



#### Avoid Unnecessary Data Replication

It is very common for beginning database designers to replicate data. When replicating data in a table, ask yourself if you can move the replicated data into a separate table and use a key, such as a code or ID number, to link the tables.

Consider this example in an Invoice table:

**Invoice**

| ... | Product_Code | Description | Price          | ... |
|-----|--------------|-------------|----------------|-----|
| ... | CHAR(7)      | VARCHAR(40) | DECIMAL(10, 2) | ... |
| ... | 116-064      | Toaster     | 24.95          | ... |
| ... | 116-064      | Toaster     | 24.95          | ... |
| ... | ...          | ...         | ...            | ... |

As you can see, some product information is replicated. Is this replication an error? It depends. The product description for the product with code 116-064 is always going to be “Toaster”. Therefore, that correspondence should be stored in an external Product table.

The product price, however, can change over time. When it does, the old invoices don't automatically use the new price. Thus, it makes sense to store the price that the customer was actually charged in an Invoice table. The current list price, however, is best stored in an external Product table.

### Programming Tip 23.3



#### Don't Replicate Columns in a Table

If you find yourself numbering columns in a table with suffixes 1, 2, and so forth (such as Quantity1, Quantity2, Quantity3), then you are probably on the wrong track. How do you know there are exactly three quantities? In that case, it's time for another table.

Add a table to hold the information for which you replicated the columns. In that table, add a column that links back to a key in the first table, such as the invoice number in our example. By using an additional table, you can implement a multi-valued relationship.

## Special Topic 23.1

**Primary Keys and Indexes**

Recall that a **primary key** is a column (or combination of columns) that uniquely identifies a row in a table. When a table has a primary key, then the database can build an *index file*: a file that stores information on how to access a row quickly when the primary key is known. Indexing can greatly increase the speed of database queries.

If the primary key is contained in a single column, then you can tag the column with the PRIMARY KEY attribute, like this:

```
CREATE TABLE Product
(
    Product_Code CHAR(7) PRIMARY KEY,
    Description VARCHAR(40),
    Price DECIMAL(10, 2)
)
```

If the primary key is contained in multiple columns, then add a PRIMARY KEY clause to the end of the CREATE TABLE command, like this:

```
CREATE TABLE LineItem
(
    Invoice_Number INTEGER,
    Product_Code CHAR(7),
    Quantity INTEGER,
    PRIMARY KEY (Invoice_Number, Product_Code)
)
```

Occasionally, one can speed queries up by building *secondary indexes*: index files that index other column sets, which are not necessarily unique. That is an advanced technique that we will not discuss here.

## 23.2 Queries

Let's assume that the tables in our database have been created and that records have been inserted. Once a database is filled with data, you will want to *query* the database for information, such as

- What are the names and addresses of all customers?
- What are the names and addresses of all customers in California?
- What are the names and addresses of all customers who bought toasters?
- What are the names and addresses of all customers with unpaid invoices?

In this section you will learn how to formulate simple and complex queries in SQL. We will use the data shown in Figure 8 for our examples.

| <b>Invoice</b>        |                        |                | <b>LineItem</b>       |                     |                 |
|-----------------------|------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| <b>Invoice_Number</b> | <b>Customer_Number</b> | <b>Payment</b> | <b>Invoice_Number</b> | <b>Product_Code</b> | <b>Quantity</b> |
| INTEGER               | INTEGER                | DECIMAL(10, 2) |                       | CHAR(7)             | INTEGER         |
| 11731                 | 3175                   | 0              | 11731                 | 116-064             | 3               |
| 11732                 | 3176                   | 249.50         | 11731                 | 257-535             | 1               |
| 11733                 | 3175                   | 0              | 11731                 | 643-119             | 2               |
|                       |                        |                | 11732                 | 116-064             | 10              |
|                       |                        |                | 11733                 | 116-064             | 2               |
|                       |                        |                | 11733                 | 643-119             | 1               |

| <b>Product</b>      |                    |                |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| <b>Product_Code</b> | <b>Description</b> | <b>Price</b>   |
| CHAR(7)             | VARCHAR(40)        | DECIMAL(10, 2) |
| 116-064             | Toaster            | 24.95          |
| 257-535             | Hair dryer         | 29.95          |
| 643-119             | Car vacuum         | 19.99          |

| <b>Customer</b>        |                        |                  |               |              |            |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|
| <b>Customer_Number</b> | <b>Name</b>            | <b>Address</b>   | <b>City</b>   | <b>State</b> | <b>Zip</b> |
| INTEGER                | VARCHAR(40)            | VARCHAR(40)      | VARCHAR(30)   | CHAR(2)      | CHAR(5)    |
| 3175                   | Sam's Small Appliances | 100 Main Street  | Anytown       | CA           | 98765      |
| 3176                   | Electronics Unlimited  | 1175 Liberty Ave | Pleasantville | MI           | 45066      |

**Figure 8** A Sample Database

### 23.2.1 Simple Queries

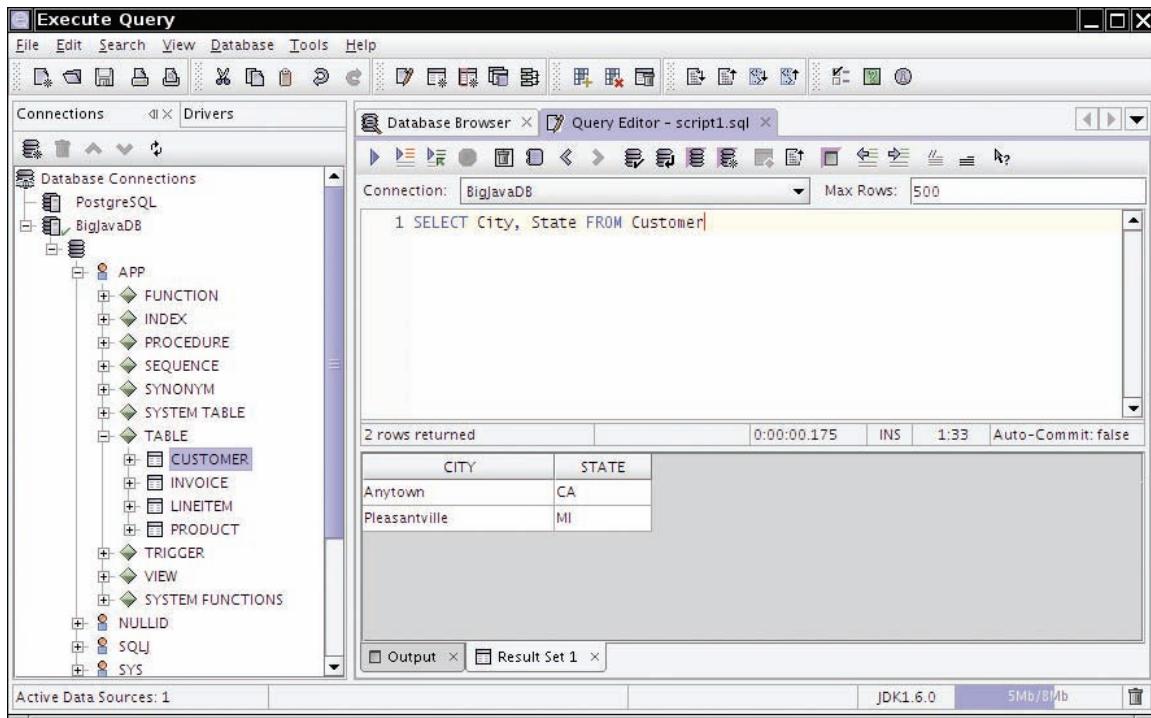
Use the SQL SELECT command to query a database.

In SQL, you use the SELECT command to issue queries. For example, the command to select all data from the Customer table is

```
SELECT * FROM Customer
```

The result is

| <b>Customer_Number</b> | <b>Name</b>            | <b>Address</b>   | <b>City</b>   | <b>State</b> | <b>Zip</b> |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------|---------------|--------------|------------|
| 3175                   | Sam's Small Appliances | 100 Main Street  | Anytown       | CA           | 98765      |
| 3176                   | Electronics Unlimited  | 1175 Liberty Ave | Pleasantville | MI           | 45066      |



**Figure 9** An Interactive SQL Tool

The outcome of the query is a *view*—a set of rows and columns that provides a “window” through which you can see some of the database data. If you select all rows and columns from a single table, of course you get a view into just that table.

Many database systems have tools that let you issue interactive SQL commands—Figure 9 shows a typical example. When you issue a SELECT command, the tool displays the resulting view. You may want to skip ahead to Section 23.3 and install a database. Or perhaps your computer lab has a database installed already. Then you can run the interactive SQL tool of your database and try out some queries.

### 23.2.2 Selecting Columns

Often, you don’t care about all columns in a table. Suppose your traveling salesperson is planning a trip to all customers. To plan the route, the salesperson wants to know the cities and states of all customers. Here is the query:

```
SELECT City, State FROM Customer
```

The result is

| City          | State |
|---------------|-------|
| Anytown       | CA    |
| Pleasantville | MI    |

As you can see, the syntax for selecting columns is straightforward. Simply specify the names of the columns you want, separated by commas.

### 23.2.3 Selecting Subsets

The WHERE clause selects data that fulfill a condition.

You just saw how you can restrict a view to show selected columns. Sometimes you want to select certain rows that fit a particular criterion. For example, you may want to find all customers in California. Whenever you want to select a subset, you use the WHERE clause, followed by the condition that describes the subset. Here is an example:

```
SELECT * FROM Customer WHERE State = 'CA'
```

The result is

| Customer_Number | Name                   | Address         | City    | State | Zip   |
|-----------------|------------------------|-----------------|---------|-------|-------|
| 3175            | Sam's Small Appliances | 100 Main Street | Anytown | CA    | 98765 |

You have to be a bit careful with expressing the condition in the WHERE clause, because SQL syntax differs from the Java syntax. As you already know, in SQL you use single quotes to delimit strings, such as 'CA'. You also use a single =, not a double ==, to test for equality. To test for inequality, you use the <> operator. For example

```
SELECT * FROM Customer WHERE State <> 'CA'
```

selects all customers that are *not* in California.

You can match patterns with the LIKE operator. The right-hand side must be a string that can contain the special symbols \_ (match exactly one character) and % (match any character sequence). For example, the expression

```
Name LIKE '_o%'
```

matches all strings whose second character is an "o". Thus, "Toaster" is a match but "Crowbar" is not.

You can combine expressions with the logical connectives AND, OR, and NOT. (Do not use the Java &&, ||, and ! operators.) For example

```
SELECT *
  FROM Product
 WHERE Price < 100
   AND Description <> 'Toaster'
```

selects all products with a price less than 100 that are not toasters.

Of course, you can select both row and column subsets, such as

```
SELECT Name, City FROM Customer WHERE State = 'CA'
```

### 23.2.4 Calculations

Suppose you want to find out *how many* customers there are in California. Use the COUNT function:

```
SELECT COUNT(*) FROM Customer WHERE State = 'CA'
```

In addition to the COUNT function, there are four other functions: SUM, AVG (average), MAX, and MIN.

The \* means that you want to calculate entire records. That is appropriate only for the COUNT function. For other functions, you have to access a specific column. Put the column name inside the parentheses:

```
SELECT AVG(Price) FROM Product
```

## 23.2.5 Joins

The queries that you have seen so far all involve a single table. However, the information that you want is usually distributed over multiple tables. For example, suppose you are asked to find all invoices that include a line item for a car vacuum. From the Product table, you can issue a query to find the product code:

```
SELECT Product_Code
  FROM Product
 WHERE Description = 'Car vacuum'
```

You will find out that the car vacuum has product code 643-119. Then you can issue a second query:

```
SELECT Invoice_Number
  FROM LineItem
 WHERE Product_Code = '643-119'
```

But it makes sense to combine these two queries so that you don't have to keep track of the intermediate result. When combining queries, note that the two tables are linked by the Product\_Code field. We want to look at matching rows in both tables. In other words, we want to restrict the search to rows where

```
Product.Product_Code = LineItem.Product_Code
```

Here, the syntax

*TableName.ColumnName*

denotes the column in a particular table. Whenever a query involves multiple tables, you should specify both the table name and the column name. Thus, the combined query is

```
SELECT LineItem.Invoice_Number
  FROM Product, LineItem
 WHERE Product.Description = 'Car vacuum'
   AND Product.Product_Code = LineItem.Product_Code
```

The result is

| Invoice_Number |
|----------------|
| 11731          |
| 11733          |

A join is a query that involves multiple tables.

In this query, the FROM clause contains the names of multiple tables, separated by commas. (It doesn't matter in which order you list the tables.) Such a query is often called a **join** because it involves joining multiple tables.

You may want to know in what cities hair dryers are popular. Now you need to add the Customer table to the query—it contains the customer addresses. The customers are referenced by invoices, so you need that table as well. Here is the complete query:

```
SELECT Customer.City, Customer.State, Customer.Zip
  FROM Product, LineItem, Invoice, Customer
 WHERE Product.Description = 'Hair dryer'
   AND Product.Product_Code = LineItem.Product_Code
   AND LineItem.Invoice_Number = Invoice.Invoice_Number
   AND Invoice.Customer_Number = Customer.Customer_Number
```

The result is

| City    | State | Zip   |
|---------|-------|-------|
| Anytown | CA    | 98765 |

Whenever you formulate a query that involves multiple tables, remember to:

- List all tables that are involved in the query in the `FROM` clause.
- Use the `TableName.ColumnName` syntax to refer to column names.
- List all join conditions (`TableName1.Column1 = TableName2.Column2`) in the `WHERE` clause.

As you can see, these queries can get a bit complex. However, database management systems are very good at answering these queries (see Programming Tip 23.5 on page W993). One remarkable aspect of SQL is that you describe *what* you want, not *how* to find the answer. It is entirely up to the database management system to come up with a plan for how to find the answer to your query in the shortest number of steps.

Commercial database manufacturers take great pride in coming up with clever ways to speed up queries: query optimization strategies, caching of prior results, and so on. In this regard, SQL is a very different language from Java. SQL statements are descriptive and leave it to the database to determine how to execute them. Java statements are prescriptive—you spell out exactly the steps you want your program to carry out.

### 23.2.6 Updating and Deleting Data

The `UPDATE` and `DELETE` SQL commands modify the data in a database.

Up to now, you have been shown how to formulate increasingly complex SELECT queries. The outcome of a SELECT query is a *result set* that you can view and analyze. Two related statement types, `UPDATE` and `DELETE`, don't produce a result set. Instead, they modify the database. The `DELETE` statement is the easier of the two. It simply deletes the rows that you specify. For example, to delete all customers in California, you issue the statement

```
DELETE FROM Customer WHERE State = 'CA'
```

The `UPDATE` query allows you to update columns of all records that fulfill a certain condition. For example, here is how you can add another unit to the quantity of every line item in invoice number 11731:

```
UPDATE LineItem
  SET Quantity = Quantity + 1
 WHERE Invoice_Number = '11731'
```

You can update multiple column values by specifying multiple update expressions in the `SET` clause, separated by commas.

Both the `DELETE` and the `UPDATE` statements return a value, namely the number of rows that are deleted or updated.

### SELF CHECK



3. How do you query the names of all customers that are not from Alaska or Hawaii?
4. How do you query all invoice numbers of all customers in Hawaii?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R23.7, R23.13, R23.14.

### Common Error 23.1



#### Joining Tables Without Specifying a Link Condition

If you select data from multiple tables without a restriction, the result is somewhat surprising—you get a result set containing *all combinations* of the values, whether or not one of the combinations exists with actual data. For example, the query

```
SELECT Invoice.Invoice_Number, Customer.Name
      FROM Invoice, Customer
```

returns the result set

| Invoice.Invoice_Number | Customer.Name          |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 11731                  | Sam's Small Appliances |
| 11732                  | Sam's Small Appliances |
| 11733                  | Sam's Small Appliances |
| 11731                  | Electronics Unlimited  |
| 11732                  | Electronics Unlimited  |
| 11733                  | Electronics Unlimited  |

As you can see, the result set contains all six combinations of invoice numbers (11731, 11732, 11733) and customer names (Sam's Small Appliances and Electronics Unlimited), even though three of those combinations don't occur with real invoices. You need to supply a `WHERE` clause to restrict the set of combinations. For example, the query

```
SELECT Invoice.Invoice_Number, Customer.Name
      FROM Invoice, Customer
     WHERE Invoice.Customer_Number = Customer.Customer_Number
```

yields

| Invoice.Invoice_Number | Customer.Name          |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 11731                  | Sam's Small Appliances |
| 11732                  | Electronics Unlimited  |
| 11733                  | Sam's Small Appliances |

## 23.3 Installing a Database

A wide variety of database systems are available. Among them are

- Production-quality databases, such as Oracle, IBM DB2, Microsoft SQL Server, PostgreSQL, or MySQL.
- Lightweight Java databases, such as Apache Derby.
- Desktop databases, such as Microsoft Access.

Which one should you choose for learning database programming? That depends greatly on your available budget, computing resources, and experience with installing complex software. In a laboratory environment with a trained administrator, it makes a lot of sense to install a production-quality database. Lightweight Java databases are much easier to install and work on a variety of platforms. This makes them a good choice for the beginner. Desktop databases have limited SQL support and can be difficult to configure for Java programming.

You need a JDBC (Java Database Connectivity) driver to access a database from a Java program.

In addition to a database, you need a *JDBC driver*. The acronym JDBC stands for Java Database Connectivity, the name of the technology that enables Java programs to interact with databases. When your Java program issues SQL commands, the driver forwards them to the database and lets your program analyze the results (see Figure 10).

Different databases require different drivers, which may be supplied by either the database manufacturer or a third party. You need to locate and install the driver that matches your database.

If you work in a computing laboratory, someone will have installed a database for you, and you should ask your lab for instructions on how to use it. If you need to provide your own database, we suggest that you choose Apache Derby. It is included with the Java Development Kit. You can also download it separately from <http://db.apache.org/derby/>.

You should run a test program to check that your database is working correctly. You will find the code for the test program at the end of this section. The following section describes the implementation of the test program in detail.

If you use Apache Derby, then follow these instructions:

1. Locate the JDBC driver file `derby.jar` and copy it into the `ch23/section_3` directory of the companion code for this book.
2. Open a shell window, change to the `ch23/section_3` directory, and run

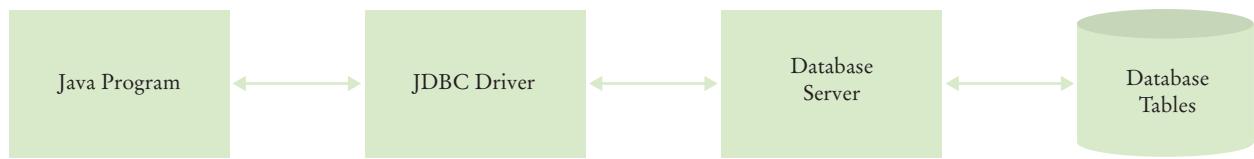
```
javac TestDB.java  
java -classpath derby.jar;. TestDB database.properties
```

If you run Linux, UNIX, or Mac OS X, use a semicolon, not a colon, as a path separator:

```
java -classpath derby.jar:;. TestDB database.properties
```

3. If you followed the test instructions precisely, you should see one line of output with the name “Romeo”. You may then skip the remainder of this section.

If you install a database other than the one included with Java, you will need to set aside some time to carry out the installation process. Detailed instructions for installing a database vary widely.

**Figure 10** JDBC Architecture

Here we give you a general sequence of steps on how to install a database and test your installation:

1. Install the database program.
2. Start the database. With most database systems (but not some of the light-weight Java database systems), you need to start the database server before you can carry out any database operations. Read the installation instructions for details.
3. Set up user accounts. This typically involves running an administration program, logging in as administrator with a default administration account, and adding user names and passwords. If you are the only user of the database, you may simply be able to use a default account. Again, details vary greatly among databases, and you should consult the documentation.
4. Run a test. Locate the program that allows you to execute interactive SQL instructions. Run the program and issue the following SQL instructions:

```

CREATE TABLE Test (Name VARCHAR(20))
INSERT INTO Test VALUES ('Romeo')
SELECT * FROM Test
DROP TABLE Test
  
```

At this point, you should get a display that shows a single row and column of the Test database, containing the string “Romeo”. If not, carefully read the documentation of your SQL tool to see how you need to enter SQL statements. For example, with some SQL tools, you need a special terminator for each SQL statement.

Next, locate the JDBC driver and run a sample Java program to verify that the installation was successful.

Here are the steps for testing the JDBC driver:

1. Every JDBC driver contains some Java code that your Java programs require to connect to the database. From the JDBC driver documentation, find the *class path* for the driver. Here is a typical example—the class path component for the Apache Derby JDBC driver that is included in the Java Development Kit.

```
c:\jdk1.7.0\db\lib\derby.jar
```

One version of the Oracle database uses a class path

```
/usr/local/oracle/jdbc/classes111b.zip
```

You will find this information in the documentation of your database system.

Make sure the JDBC driver is on the class path when you launch the Java program.

2. If your JDBC driver is not fully compliant with the JDBC4 standard, you need to know the name of the driver class. For example, the Oracle database uses

```
oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver
```

Your database documentation will have this information.

3. Find the name of the *database URL* that your driver expects. All database URLs have the format

```
jdbc:subprotocol:driver-specific data
```

The subprotocol is a code that identifies the driver manufacturer, such as `derby` or `oracle`. The driver-specific data encode the database name and the location of the database. Here are typical examples:

```
jdbc:derby:InvoiceDB;create=true
```

```
jdbc:oracle:thin:@larry.mathcs.sjsu.edu:1521:InvoiceDB
```

Again, consult your JDBC driver information for details on the format of the database URL and how to specify the database that you use.

4. In order to run the `TestDB.java` program at the end of this section, edit the file `database.properties` and supply

- The driver class name (if required).
- The database URL.
- Your database user name.
- Your database password.

With lightweight Java databases such as Apache Derby, you usually specify a blank user name and password.

5. Compile the program as

```
javac TestDB.java
```

6. Run the program as

```
java -classpath driver_class_path;. TestDB database.properties
```

In UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X, use a `:` separator in the class path:

```
java -classpath driver_class_path:. TestDB database.properties
```

If everything works correctly, you will get an output that lists all data in the `Test` table. If you followed the test instructions precisely, you will see one line of output with the name “Romeo”.

Here is the test program. We will explain the Java instructions in this program in the following section.

### **section\_3/TestDB.java**

```

1 import java.io.File
2 import java.sql.Connection;
3 import java.sql.ResultSet;
4 import java.sql.Statement;
5
6 /**
7  * Tests a database installation by creating and querying
8  * a sample table. Call this program as
9  * java -classpath driver_class_path;. TestDB propertiesFile

```

To connect to the database, you need to specify a database URL, user name, and password.

```

10 */
11 public class TestDB
12 {
13     public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception
14     {
15         if (args.length == 0)
16         {
17             System.out.println(
18                 "Usage: java -classpath driver_class_path"
19                 + File.separator
20                 + ". TestDB propertiesFile");
21             return;
22         }
23
24         SimpleDataSource.init(args[0]);
25
26         Connection conn = SimpleDataSource.getConnection();
27         try
28         {
29             Statement stat = conn.createStatement();
30
31             stat.execute("CREATE TABLE Test (Name VARCHAR(20))");
32             stat.execute("INSERT INTO Test VALUES ('Romeo')");
33
34             ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery("SELECT * FROM Test");
35             result.next();
36             System.out.println(result.getString("Name"));
37
38             stat.execute("DROP TABLE Test");
39         }
40         finally
41         {
42             conn.close();
43         }
44     }
45 }
```

### section\_3/SimpleDataSource.java

```

1 import java.sql.Connection;
2 import java.sql.DriverManager;
3 import java.sql.SQLException;
4 import java.io.FileInputStream;
5 import java.io.IOException;
6 import java.util.Properties;
7
8 /**
9  * A simple data source for getting database connections.
10 */
11 public class SimpleDataSource
12 {
13     private static String url;
14     private static String username;
15     private static String password;
16
17     /**
18      * Initializes the data source.
19      * @param fileName the name of the property file that
20      * contains the database driver, URL, username, and password
21     */
```

```

22  public static void init(String fileName)
23      throws IOException, ClassNotFoundException
24  {
25      Properties props = new Properties();
26      FileInputStream in = new FileInputStream(fileName);
27      props.load(in);
28
29      String driver = props.getProperty("jdbc.driver");
30      url = props.getProperty("jdbc.url");
31      username = props.getProperty("jdbc.username");
32      if (username == null) { username = ""; }
33      password = props.getProperty("jdbc.password");
34      if (password == null) { password = ""; }
35      if (driver != null) { Class.forName(driver); }
36  }
37
38 /**
39     Gets a connection to the database.
40     @return the database connection
41 */
42 public static Connection getConnection() throws SQLException
43 {
44     return DriverManager.getConnection(url, username, password);
45 }
46 }
```

### section\_3/database.properties (for Apache Derby)

```

jdbc.url=jdbc:derby:BigJavaDB;create=true
# With other databases, you may need to add entries such as these
# jdbc.username=admin
# jdbc.password=secret
# jdbc.driver=org.apache.derby.jdbc.EmbeddedDriver
```

#### SELF CHECK



5. After installing a database system, how can you test that it is properly installed?
6. You are starting a Java database program to use the Apache Derby database and get the following error message:

Exception in thread "main" java.sql.SQLException: No suitable driver found for  
jdbc:derby:BigJavaDB;create=true

What is the most likely cause of this error?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R23.18, R23.19, R23.20.

## 23.4 Database Programming in Java

### 23.4.1 Connecting to the Database

Use a `Connection` object to access a database from a Java program.

To connect to a database, you need an object of the `Connection` class. The following shows you how to obtain such a connection. With older versions of the JDBC standard, you first need to manually load the database driver class. Starting with JDBC4 (which is a part of Java 6), the driver is loaded automatically. If you use Java 6 or later

and a fully JDBC4 compatible driver, you can skip the loading step. Otherwise, use the following code:

```
String driver = . . .;
Class.forName(driver); // Load driver
```

Next, you ask the `DriverManager` for a connection. You need to initialize the `url`, `username`, and `password` strings with the values that apply to your database:

```
String url = . . .;
String username = . . .;
String password = . . .;
Connection conn = DriverManager.getConnection(url, username, password);
```

When you are done issuing your database commands, close the database connection by calling the `close` method:

```
conn.close();
```

This is actually a somewhat simplistic view of connection management. Two problems occur in practice. Larger programs (such as the bank example in Worked Example 23.1) need to connect to the database from many classes. You don't want to propagate the database login information to a large number of classes. Also, it is usually not feasible to use a single connection for all database requests. In particular, as you will see in Chapter 25, a container for web applications can run many simultaneous web page requests from different browsers. Each page request needs its own database connection. But because opening a database connection is quite slow and page requests come so frequently, database connections need to be pooled rather than closed and reopened. The details can be complex, and there is currently no standard implementation available.

It is always a good idea to decouple connection management from the other database code. We supply a `SimpleDataSource` class for this purpose; the implementation is at the end of Section 23.3. This class is a very simple tool for connection management. At the beginning of your program, call the static `init` method with the name of the database configuration file, for example

```
SimpleDataSource.init("database.properties");
```

The configuration file is a text file that may contain the following lines:

```
jdbc.driver= . . .
jdbc.url= . . .
jdbc.username= . . .
jdbc.password= . . .
```

The `init` method uses the `Properties` class, which is designed to make it easy to read such a file. The `Properties` class has a `load` method to read a file of key/value pairs from a stream:

```
Properties props = new Properties();
FileInputStream in = new FileInputStream(fileName);
props.load(in);
```

The `getProperty` method returns the value of a given key:

```
String driver = props.getProperty("jdbc.driver");
```

You don't actually have to think about this—the `init` method takes care of the details.

Whenever you need a connection, call

```
Connection conn = SimpleDataSource.getConnection();
```

You need to close the connection by calling

```
conn.close();
```

when you are done using it.

Real-world connection managers have slightly different methods, but the basic principle is the same.

### 23.4.2 Executing SQL Statements

A Connection object can create Statement objects that are used to execute SQL commands.

The result of a SQL query is returned in a ResultSet object.

Once you have a connection, you can use it to create Statement objects. You need Statement objects to execute SQL statements.

```
Statement stat = conn.createStatement();
```

The execute method of the Statement class executes a SQL statement. For example,

```
stat.execute("CREATE TABLE Test (Name CHAR(20));  
stat.execute("INSERT INTO Test VALUES ('Romeo')");
```

To issue a query, use the executeQuery method of the Statement class. The query result is returned as a ResultSet object. For example,

```
String query = "SELECT * FROM Test";  
ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery(query);
```

You will see in the next section how to use the ResultSet object to analyze the result of the query.

For UPDATE statements, you can use the executeUpdate method. It returns the number of rows affected by the statement:

```
String command = "UPDATE LineItem"  
    + " SET Quantity = Quantity + 1"  
    + " WHERE Invoice_Number = '11731'";  
int count = stat.executeUpdate(command);
```

If your statement has variable parts, then you should use a PreparedStatement instead:

```
String query = "SELECT * WHERE Account_Number = ?";  
PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(query);
```

The ? symbols in the query string denote variables that you fill in when you make an actual query. You call a set method for that purpose, for example

```
stat.setString(1, accountNumber);
```

The first parameter of the set methods denotes the variable position: 1 is the first ?, 2 the second, and so on. There are also methods setInt and setDouble for setting numerical variables. After you set all variables, you call executeQuery or executeUpdate.

Finally, you can use the generic execute method to execute arbitrary SQL statements. It returns a boolean value to indicate whether the SQL command yields a result set. If so, you can obtain it with the getResultSet method. Otherwise, you can get the update count with the getUpdateCount method.

```
String command = . . .;  
boolean hasResultSet = stat.execute(command);  
if (hasResultSet)  
{  
    ResultSet result = stat.getResultSet();  
    . . .  
}
```

```

else
{
    int count = stat.getUpdateCount();
    ...
}

```

You can reuse a Statement or PreparedStatement object to execute as many SQL commands as you like. However, for each statement, you should only have one active ResultSet. If your program needs to look at several result sets at the same time, then you need to create multiple Statement objects.

When you are done using a ResultSet, you should close it before issuing a new query on the same statement.

```
result.close();
```

When you are done with a Statement object, you should close it. That automatically closes the associated result set.

```
stat.close();
```

When you close a connection, it automatically closes all statements and result sets.

### 23.4.3 Analyzing Query Results

A ResultSet lets you fetch the query result, one row at a time. You iterate through the rows, and for each row, you can inspect the column values. Like the collection iterators that you saw in Chapter 15, the ResultSet class has a next method to visit the next row. However, the behavior of the next method is somewhat different. The next method does not return any data; it returns a boolean value that indicates whether more data are available. Moreover, when you first get a result set from the executeQuery method, no row data are available. You need to call next to move to the first row. This appears curious, but it makes the iteration loop simple:

```

while (result.next())
{
    Inspect column data from the current row.
}

```

If the result set is completely empty, then the first call to result.next() returns false, and the loop is never entered. Otherwise, the first call to result.next() fetches the data for the first row from the database. As you can see, the loop ends when the next method returns false, which indicates that all rows have been fetched.

Once the result set object has fetched a particular row, you can inspect its columns. Various get methods return the column value formatted as a number, string, date, and so on. In fact, for each data type, there are two get methods. One of them has an integer argument that indicates the column position. The other has a string argument for the column name. For example, you can fetch the product code as

```
String productCode = result.getString(1);
```

or

```
String productCode = result.getString("Product_Code");
```

Note that the integer index starts at one, not at zero; that is, getString(1) inspects the first column. Database column indexes are different from array subscripts.

Accessing a column by an integer index is marginally faster and perfectly acceptable if you explicitly named the desired columns in the SELECT statement, such as

```
SELECT Invoice_Number FROM Invoice WHERE Payment = 0
```

However, if you make a `SELECT *` query, it is a good idea to use a column name instead of a column index. It makes your code easier to read, and you don't have to update the code when the column layout changes.

In this example, you saw the `getString` method in action. To fetch a number, use the `getInt` and `getDouble` methods instead, for example

```
int quantity = result.getInt("Quantity");
double unitPrice = result.getDouble("Price");
```

Metadata are data about an object.  
Result set metadata describe the properties of a result set.

### 23.4.4 Result Set Metadata

When you have a result set from an unknown table, you may want to know the names of the columns. You can use the `ResultSetMetaData` class to find out about properties of a result set. Start by requesting the metadata object from the result set:

```
ResultSetMetaData metaData = result.getMetaData();
```

Then you can get the number of columns with the `getColumnCount` method. The `getColumnName` method gives you the column name for each column. Finally, the `getColumnDisplaySize` method returns the column width, which is useful if you want to print table rows and have the columns line up. Note that the indexes for these methods start with 1. For example,

```
for (int i = 1; i <= metaData.getColumnCount(); i++)
{
    String columnName = metaData.getColumnName(i);
    int columnSize = metaData getColumnDisplaySize(i);
    ...
}
```

`ExecSQL.java` is a useful sample program that puts these concepts to work. The program reads a file containing SQL statements and executes them all. When a statement has a result set, the result set is printed, using the result set metadata to determine the column count and column labels.

For example, suppose you have the following file:

#### section\_4/Product.sql

```
CREATE TABLE Product
    (Product_Code CHAR(7), Description VARCHAR(40), Price DECIMAL(10, 2))
INSERT INTO Product VALUES ('116-064', 'Toaster', 24.95)
INSERT INTO Product VALUES ('257-535', 'Hair dryer', 29.95)
INSERT INTO Product VALUES ('643-119', 'Car vacuum', 19.95)
SELECT * FROM Product
```

Run the `Exec.SQL` program as

```
java -classpath derby.jar;. ExecSQL database.properties Product.sql
```

The program executes the statements in the `Product.sql` file and prints out the result of the `SELECT` query.

You can also use the `Exec.SQL` program as an interactive testing tool. Run

```
java -classpath derby.jar;. ExecSQL database.properties
```

Then type in SQL commands at the command line. Every time you press the Enter key, the command is executed.

**section\_4/ExecSQL.java**

```

1 import java.sql.Connection;
2 import java.sql.ResultSet;
3 import java.sql.ResultSetMetaData;
4 import java.sql.Statement;
5 import java.sql.SQLException;
6 import java.io.File;
7 import java.io.IOException;
8 import java.util.Scanner;
9
10 /**
11  * Executes all SQL statements from a file or the console.
12 */
13 public class ExecSQL
14 {
15     public static void main(String[] args)
16         throws SQLException, IOException, ClassNotFoundException
17     {
18         if (args.length == 0)
19         {
20             System.out.println(
21                 "Usage: java -classpath driver_class_path"
22                 + File.separator
23                 + ". ExecSQL propertiesFile [SQLcommandFile]");
24             return;
25         }
26
27         SimpleDataSource.init(args[0]);
28
29         Scanner in;
30         if (args.length > 1)
31         {
32             in = new Scanner(new File(args[1]));
33         }
34         else
35         {
36             in = new Scanner(System.in);
37         }
38
39         Connection conn = SimpleDataSource.getConnection();
40         try
41         {
42             Statement stat = conn.createStatement();
43             while (in.hasNextLine())
44             {
45                 String line = in.nextLine();
46                 try
47                 {
48                     boolean hasResultSet = stat.execute(line);
49                     if (hasResultSet)
50                     {
51                         ResultSet result = stat.getResultSet();
52                         showResultSet(result);
53                         result.close();
54                     }
55                 }
56                 catch (SQLException ex)
57                 {
58                     System.out.println(ex);
59                 }
60             }
61         }
62     }
63 }
```

```

59         }
60     }
61 }
62 finally
63 {
64     conn.close();
65 }
66 }
67 /**
68 * Prints a result set.
69 * @param result the result set
70 */
71 public static void showResultSet(ResultSet result)
72     throws SQLException
73 {
74     ResultSetMetaData metaData = result.getMetaData();
75     int columnCount = metaData.getColumnCount();
76
77     for (int i = 1; i <= columnCount; i++)
78     {
79         if (i > 1) { System.out.print(", "); }
80         System.out.print(metaData.getColumnLabel(i));
81     }
82     System.out.println();
83
84     while (result.next())
85     {
86         for (int i = 1; i <= columnCount; i++)
87         {
88             if (i > 1) { System.out.print(", "); }
89             System.out.print(result.getString(i));
90         }
91         System.out.println();
92     }
93 }
94 }
95 }
```

**SELF CHECK**

7. Suppose you want to test whether there are any customers in Hawaii. Issue the statement  
`ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery("SELECT * FROM Customer WHERE State = 'HI'");`  
Which Boolean expression answers your question?
8. Suppose you want to know how many customers are in Hawaii. What is an efficient way to get this answer?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R23.22, E23.3, E23.5.

**Common Error 23.2****Constructing Queries from Arbitrary Strings**

Suppose you need to issue the following query with different names.

```
SELECT * FROM Customer WHERE Name = customerName
```

Many students try to construct a SELECT statement manually, like this:

```
String customerName = . . . ;
```

```
String query = "SELECT * FROM Customer WHERE Name = '" + customerName + "'";
ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery(query);
```

However, this code will fail if the name contains single quotes, such as "Sam's Small Appliances". The query string has a syntax error: a mismatched quote. More serious failures can be introduced by hackers who deliberately enter names or addresses with SQL control characters, changing the meanings of queries. These "SQL injection attacks" have been responsible for many cases of data theft. Never add a string to a query that you didn't type yourself.

The remedy is to use a `PreparedStatement` instead:

```
String query = "SELECT * FROM Customer WHERE Name = ?";
PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(query);
stat.setString(1, aName);
ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery(query);
```

The `setString` method of the `PreparedStatement` class will properly handle quotes and other special characters in the string.

#### Programming Tip 23.4



#### Don't Hardwire Database Connection Parameters into Your Program

It is considered inelegant to hardwire the database parameters into a program:

```
public class MyProg
{
    public static void main(String[] args)
    {
        // Don't do this:
        String driver = "oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver";
        String url = "jdbc:oracle:thin:@larry.mathcs.sjsu.edu:1521:InvoiceDB";
        String username = "admin";
        String password = "secret";
        ...
    }
}
```

If you want to change to a different database, you must locate these strings, update them, and recompile.

Instead, place the strings into a separate configuration file (such as `database.properties` in our sample program). The `SimpleDataSource.java` file reads in the configuration file with the database connection parameters. To connect to a different database, you simply supply a different configuration file name on the command line.

#### Programming Tip 23.5



#### Let the Database Do the Work

You now know how to issue a SQL query from a Java program and iterate through the result set. A common error that students make is to iterate through one table at a time to find a result. For example, suppose you want to find all invoices that contain car vacuums. You could use the following plan:

1. Issue the query `SELECT * FROM Product` and iterate through the result set to find the product code for a car vacuum.
2. Issue the query `SELECT * FROM LineItem` and iterate through the result set to find the line items with that product code.

However, that plan is *extremely inefficient*. Such a program does in very slow motion what a database has been designed to do quickly.

Instead, you should let the database do all the work. Give the complete query to the database:

```
SELECT LineItem.Invoice_Number
  FROM Product, LineItem
 WHERE Product.Description = 'Car vacuum'
   AND Product.Product_Code = LineItem.Product_Code
```

Then iterate through the result set to read all invoice numbers.

Beginners are often afraid of issuing complex SQL queries. However, you are throwing away a major benefit of a relational database if you don't take advantage of SQL.

## 23.5 Application: Entering an Invoice

In this section, we develop a program for entering an invoice into the database shown in Figure 8. Here is a sample program run:

```
Name: Robert Lee
Street address: 833 Lyon Street
City: San Francisco
State: CA
Zip: 94155
Product code (D=Done, L=List): L
116-064 Toaster
257-535 Hair dryer
643-119 Car vacuum
Product code (D=Done, L=List): 116-064
Quantity: 2
Product code (D=Done, L=List): 257-535
Quantity: 3
Product code (D=Done, L=List): D
Robert Lee
833 Lyon Street
San Francisco, CA 94155
2 x 116-064 Toaster
3 x 257-535 Hair dryer
```

This program puts the concepts of the preceding sections to work.

Before running the program, we assume that the Customer, Product, Invoice, and LineItem tables have been created. To do so, you can run the ExecSQL program of Section 23.4 with the following files (provided with the book's companion code):

```
Customer.sql
Product.sql
Invoice.sql
LineItem.sql
```

As in the previous programs, we use our SimpleDataSource helper class to get a database connection. Then we call newCustomer so it can prompt for the customer information.

```
SimpleDataSource.init(args[0]);
Connection conn = SimpleDataSource.getConnection();
Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
```

```

try
{
    int customerNumber = newCustomer(conn, in);
    ...
}
finally
{
    conn.close();
}

```

The `newCustomer` method prompts for the new customer information and adds it to the database. The `nextLine` method is a convenience method for prompting the user and reading a string from a `Scanner`—see the code at the end of this section.

```

private static int newCustomer(Connection conn, Scanner in)
    throws SQLException
{
    String name = nextLine(in, "Name");
    String address = nextLine(in, "Street address");
    String city = nextLine(in, "City");
    String state = nextLine(in, "State");
    String zip = nextLine(in, "Zip");
    int id = . . .;
    PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
        "INSERT INTO Customer VALUES (?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?)");
    stat.setInt(1, id);
    stat.setString(2, name);
    stat.setString(3, address);
    stat.setString(4, city);
    stat.setString(5, state);
    stat.setString(6, zip);
    stat.executeUpdate();
    stat.close();
    return id;
}

```

The method gathers the new customer data and issues an `INSERT INTO` statement to store them in the database.

But how do we provide the ID? We don't want to ask the program user to come up with IDs. They should be automatically assigned. We will query the largest ID that has been used so far, and use the next larger value as the new ID:

```

Statement stat = conn.createStatement();
ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery(
    "SELECT max(Customer_Number) FROM Customer");
result.next();
int id = result.getInt(1) + 1;

```

There is just one potential problem. If two users access the database simultaneously, it is possible that both of them create a customer with the same ID at the same time. The remedy is to place the code for adding a customer inside a transaction—see Special Topic 23.2. This is an important requirement in a database with simultaneous users. However, we will skip this step to keep the program simple.

Later, we also need to generate new IDs for invoices. We provide a method `getNewId` that works for both tables.

This completes the customer portion of the invoice entry. We now add a row for the invoice, calling the `getNewId` method to get a new invoice number.

## W996 Chapter 23 Relational Databases

```
int id = getNewId(conn, "Invoice");
PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
    "INSERT INTO Invoice VALUES (?, ?, 0)");
stat.setInt(1, id);
stat.setInt(2, customerNumber);
stat.executeUpdate();
```

Next, the user needs to enter the product codes. When a user provides a code, we will check that it is valid. That is a very simple SELECT query. We don't even look at the result set—if it has a row, we have found the product.

```
PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
    "SELECT * FROM Product WHERE Product_Code = ?");
stat.setString(1, code);
ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery();
boolean found = result.next();
```

You will find this code in the `findProduct` method.

When the user chooses to see a list of products, we issue a simple query and list the result, as shown here:

```
Statement stat = conn.createStatement();
ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery(
    "SELECT Product_Code, Description FROM Product");
while (result.next())
{
    String code = result.getString(1);
    String description = result.getString(2);
    System.out.println(code + " " + description);
}
```

Whenever the user has supplied a product code and a quantity, we add another row to the `LineItem` table. That is yet another `INSERT INTO` statement—you will find it in the `addLineItem` method below.

The following loop keeps asking for product codes and quantities:

```
boolean done = false;
while (!done)
{
    String productCode = nextLine(in, "Product code (D=Done, L=List)");
    if (productCode.equals("D")) { done = true; }
    else if (productCode.equals("L")) { listProducts(conn); }
    else if (findProduct(conn, productCode))
    {
        int quantity = nextInt(in, "Quantity");
        addLineItem(conn, id, productCode, quantity);
    }
    else { System.out.println("Invalid product code."); }
}
showInvoice(conn, id);
```

When the loop ends, we print the invoice. Here, the queries are more interesting. The `showInvoice` method has the invoice ID as a parameter. It needs to find the matching customer data by joining the `Invoice` and `Customer` tables:

```
PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
    "SELECT Customer.Name, Customer.Address, "
    + "Customer.City, Customer.State, Customer.Zip "
    + "FROM Customer, Invoice "
```

```

+ "WHERE Customer.Customer_Number = Invoice.Customer_Number "
+ "AND Invoice.Invoice_Number = ?");
stat.setInt(1, id);

```

The query result contains the customer information which we print. Then we need to get all line items and the product descriptions, again linking two tables in a query:

```

stat = conn.prepareStatement(
    "SELECT Product.Product_Code, Product.Description, LineItem.Quantity "
    + "FROM Product, LineItem "
    + "WHERE Product.Product_Code = LineItem.Product_Code "
    + "AND LineItem.Invoice_Number = ?");
stat.setInt(1, id);

```

Our program simply prints the data in a simple form, as you saw at the beginning of this section; Exercise E23.5 asks you to format it better.

Following is the complete invoice entry program.

### section\_5/InvoiceEntry.java

```

1 import java.sql.Connection;
2 import java.sql.PreparedStatement;
3 import java.sql.ResultSet;
4 import java.sql.SQLException;
5 import java.sql.Statement;
6 import java.io.IOException;
7 import java.io.File;
8 import java.util.Scanner;
9
10 /**
11  * Enters an invoice into the database.
12  * Be sure to add Customer.sql, Product.sql, Invoice.sql, and LineItem.sql
13  * to the database before running this program.
14 */
15 public class InvoiceEntry
16 {
17     public static void main(String args[])
18     {
19         if (args.length == 0)
20         {
21             System.out.println(
22                 "Usage: java -classpath driver_class_path"
23                 + File.pathSeparator
24                 + ". InvoiceEntry propertiesFile");
25             return;
26         }
27
28         try
29         {
30             SimpleDataSource.init(args[0]);
31             Connection conn = SimpleDataSource.getConnection();
32             Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
33
34             addInvoice(in, conn);
35         }
36         catch (SQLException ex)
37         {
38             System.out.println("Database error");
39             ex.printStackTrace();
40         }

```

## W998 Chapter 23 Relational Databases

```
41     catch (ClassNotFoundException ex)
42     {
43         System.out.println("Error loading database driver");
44         ex.printStackTrace();
45     }
46     catch (IOException ex)
47     {
48         System.out.println("Error loading database properties");
49         ex.printStackTrace();
50     }
51 }
52
53 public static void addInvoice(Scanner in, Connection conn)
54     throws SQLException
55 {
56     try
57     {
58         int customerNumber = newCustomer(conn, in);
59
60         int id = getNewId(conn, "Invoice");
61         PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
62             "INSERT INTO Invoice VALUES (?, ?, 0)");
63         stat.setInt(1, id);
64         stat.setInt(2, customerNumber);
65         stat.executeUpdate();
66         stat.close();
67
68         boolean done = false;
69         while (!done)
70         {
71             String productCode = nextLine(in, "Product code (D=Done, L=List)");
72             if (productCode.equals("D")) { done = true; }
73             else if (productCode.equals("L")) { listProducts(conn); }
74             else if (findProduct(conn, productCode))
75             {
76                 int quantity = nextInt(in, "Quantity");
77                 addLineItem(conn, id, productCode, quantity);
78             }
79             else { System.out.println("Invalid product code."); }
80         }
81         showInvoice(conn, id);
82     }
83     finally
84     {
85         conn.close();
86     }
87 }
88
89 /**
90  * Prompts the user for the customer information and creates a new customer.
91  * @param conn the database connection
92  * @param in the scanner
93  * @return the ID of the new customer
94 */
95 private static int newCustomer(Connection conn, Scanner in)
96     throws SQLException
97 {
98     String name = nextLine(in, "Name");
99     String address = nextLine(in, "Street address");
100    String city = nextLine(in, "City");
```

```

101     String state = nextLine(in, "State");
102     String zip = nextLine(in, "Zip");
103     int id = getNewId(conn, "Customer");
104     PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
105         "INSERT INTO Customer VALUES (?, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?)");
106     stat.setInt(1, id);
107     stat.setString(2, name);
108     stat.setString(3, address);
109     stat.setString(4, city);
110     stat.setString(5, state);
111     stat.setString(6, zip);
112     stat.executeUpdate();
113     stat.close();
114     return id;
115 }
116
117 /**
118  * Finds a product in the database.
119  * @param conn the database connection
120  * @param code the product code to search
121  * @return true if there is a product with the given code
122 */
123 private static boolean findProduct(Connection conn, String code)
124     throws SQLException
125 {
126     PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
127         "SELECT * FROM Product WHERE Product_Code = ?");
128     stat.setString(1, code);
129     ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery();
130     boolean found = result.next();
131     stat.close();
132     return found;
133 }
134
135 /**
136  * Adds a line item to the database.
137  * @param conn the database connection
138  * @param id the invoice ID
139  * @param code the product code
140  * @param quantity the quantity to order
141 */
142 private static void addLineItem(Connection conn, int id,
143     String code, int quantity) throws SQLException
144 {
145     PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
146         "INSERT INTO LineItem VALUES (?, ?, ?)");
147     stat.setInt(1, id);
148     stat.setString(2, code);
149     stat.setInt(3, quantity);
150     stat.executeUpdate();
151     stat.close();
152 }
153
154 /**
155  * Lists all products in the database.
156  * @param conn the database connection
157 */
158 private static void listProducts(Connection conn)
159     throws SQLException
160 {

```

## W1000 Chapter 23 Relational Databases

```
161     Statement stat = conn.createStatement();
162     ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery(
163         "SELECT Product_Code, Description FROM Product");
164     while (result.next())
165     {
166         String code = result.getString(1);
167         String description = result.getString(2);
168         System.out.println(code + " " + description);
169     }
170     stat.close();
171 }
172
173 /**
174  * Gets a new ID for a table. This method should be called from
175  * inside a transaction that also creates the new row with this ID.
176  * The ID field should have name table_Number and type INTEGER.
177  * @param table the table name
178  * @return a new ID that has not yet been used.
179 */
180 private static int getNewId(Connection conn, String table)
181     throws SQLException
182 {
183     Statement stat = conn.createStatement();
184     ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery(
185         "SELECT max(" + table + "_Number) FROM " + table);
186     result.next();
187     int max = result.getInt(1);
188     stat.close();
189     return max + 1;
190 }
191
192 /**
193  * Shows an invoice.
194  * @param conn the database connection
195  * @param id the invoice ID
196 */
197 private static void showInvoice(Connection conn, int id)
198     throws SQLException
199 {
200     PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
201         "SELECT Customer.Name, Customer.Address, "
202         + "Customer.City, Customer.State, Customer.Zip "
203         + "FROM Customer, Invoice "
204         + "WHERE Customer.Customer_Number = Invoice.Customer_Number "
205         + "AND Invoice.Invoice_Number = ?");
206     stat.setInt(1, id);
207     ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery();
208     result.next();
209     System.out.println(result.getString(1));
210     System.out.println(result.getString(2));
211     System.out.println(result.getString(3).trim() + ", "
212         + result.getString(4) + " " + result.getString(5));
213     stat.close();
214
215     stat = conn.prepareStatement(
216         "SELECT Product.Product_Code, Product.Description, LineItem.Quantity "
217         + "FROM Product, LineItem "
218         + "WHERE Product.Product_Code = LineItem.Product_Code "
219         + "AND LineItem.Invoice_Number = ?");
```

```

220     stat.setInt(1, id);
221
222     result = stat.executeQuery();
223     while (result.next())
224     {
225         String code = result.getString(1);
226         String description = result.getString(2).trim();
227         int qty = result.getInt(3);
228
229         System.out.println(qty + " x " + code + " " + description);
230     }
231     stat.close();
232 }
233
234 /**
235  * Prompts the user and reads a line from a scanner.
236  * @param in the scanner
237  * @param prompt the prompt
238  * @return the string that the user entered
239 */
240 private static String nextLine(Scanner in, String prompt)
241 {
242     System.out.print(prompt + ": ");
243     return in.nextLine();
244 }
245
246 /**
247  * Prompts the user and reads an integer from a scanner.
248  * @param in the scanner
249  * @param prompt the prompt
250  * @return the integer that the user entered
251 */
252 private static int nextInt(Scanner in, String prompt)
253 {
254     System.out.print(prompt + ": ");
255     int result = in.nextInt();
256     in.nextLine(); // Consume newline
257     return result;
258 }
259 }
```

This example completes this introduction to Java database programming. You have seen how you can use SQL to query and update data in a database and how the JDBC library makes it easy for you to issue SQL commands in a Java program.

### SELF CHECK



9. Why do the `InvoiceEntry` methods throw a `SQLException` instead of catching it?
10. How could one simplify the first query of the `showInvoice` method?
11. This program assumes that the customer does not pay at the time of order entry. How can the program be modified to handle payment?
12. This program does not display the amount due. How could we display it?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: P23.1, P23.2.

## Special Topic 23.2

**Transactions**

An important part of database processing is *transaction handling*. A **transaction** is a set of database updates that should either succeed in its entirety or not happen at all. For example, consider a banking application that transfers money from one account to another. This operation involves two steps: reducing the balance of one account and increasing the balance of another account. No software system is perfect, and there is always the possibility of an error. The banking application, the database program, or the network connection between them could exhibit an error right after the first part—then the money would be withdrawn from the first account but never deposited to the second account. Clearly, this would be very bad. There are many other similar situations. For example, if you change an airline reservation, you don't want to give up your old seat until the new one is confirmed.

What all these situations have in common is that there is a set of database operations that are grouped together to carry out the transaction. All operations in the group must be carried out together—a partial completion cannot be tolerated. In SQL, you use the COMMIT and ROLLBACK commands to manage transactions.

For example, to transfer money from one account to another, you issue the commands

```
UPDATE Account SET Balance = Balance - 1000
    WHERE Account_Number = '95667-2574'
UPDATE Account SET Balance = Balance + 1000
    WHERE Account_Number = '82041-1196'
COMMIT
```

The COMMIT command makes the updates permanent. Conversely, the ROLLBACK command undoes all changes up to the last COMMIT.

When you program with JDBC, by default the JDBC library automatically commits all database updates. That is convenient for simple programs, but it is not what you want for transaction processing. Thus, you should first turn the autocommit mode off:

```
Connection conn = . . .;
conn.setAutoCommit(false);
Statement stat = conn.createStatement();
```

Then issue the updates that form the transaction and call the `commit` method of the `Statement` class:

```
stat.executeUpdate(
    "UPDATE Account SET Balance = Balance - "
    + amount + " WHERE Account_Number = " + fromAccount);
stat.executeUpdate(
    "UPDATE Account SET Balance = Balance + "
    + amount + " WHERE Account_Number = " + toAccount);
conn.commit();
```

Conversely, if you encounter an error, then call the `rollback` method. This typically happens in an exception handler:

```
try
{
    . . .
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    conn.rollback();
}
```

You may wonder how a database can undo updates when a transaction is rolled back. The database actually stores your changes in a set of temporary tables. If you make queries within a transaction, the information in the temporary tables is merged with the permanent data for the purpose of computing the query result, giving you the illusion that the updates have already

taken place. When you commit the transaction, the temporary data are made permanent. When you execute a rollback, the temporary tables are simply discarded.

### Special Topic 23.3



### Object-Relational Mapping

Database tables store rows that contain strings, numbers, and other fundamental data types, but not arbitrary objects. In Section 23.1.2 and Section 23.1.3, you learned how to translate object references into database relationships. An object-relational mapper automates this process. The Java Enterprise Edition contains such a mapper. You add annotations to the Java classes that describe the relationships. The rules are simple:

- Add `@Entity` to every class that should be stored in the database.
- Each entity class needs an ID that is annotated with `@Id`.
- Relationships between classes are expressed with `@OneToOne`, `@OneToMany`, `@ManyToOne`, and `@ManyToMany`.

Here are the annotations for the invoice classes. A customer can have many invoices, but each invoice has exactly one customer. This is expressed by the `@ManyToOne` annotation. Conversely, each line item is contained in exactly one invoice, but each invoice can have many line items. This is expressed by the `@OneToMany` relationship.

```
@Entity public class Invoice
{
    @Id private int id;
    @ManyToOne private Customer theCustomer;
    @OneToMany private List<LineItem> items;
    private double payment;
    ...
}

@Entity public class LineItem
{
    @Id private int id;
    @ManyToOne private Product theProduct;
    private int quantity
    ...
}

@Entity public class Product
{
    @Id private int id;
    private String description;
    private double price;
    ...
}

@Entity public class Customer
{
    @Id private int id;
    private String name;
    private String address;
    private String city;
    private String state;
    private String zip;
    ...
}
```

The object-relational mapper processes the annotations and produces a database table layout. You don't have to worry exactly how the data are stored in the database. For example, to store a new invoice, simply build up the Java object and call

```
entityManager.persist(invoice);
```

As a result of this call, the data for the invoice and line items are automatically stored in the various database tables.

To read data from the database, you do not use SQL—after all, you do not know the exact table layout. Instead, you formulate a query in an object-oriented query language. A typical query looks like this:

```
SELECT x FROM Invoice x WHERE x.id = 11731
```

The result is a Java object of type `Invoice`. The references to the customer and line item objects have been automatically populated with the proper data from various tables.

Object-relational mapping technology is powerful and convenient. However, you still need to understand the underlying principles of relational databases in order to specify efficient mappings and queries.

## WORKED EXAMPLE 23.1 Programming a Bank Database



In this Worked Example, we will develop a complete database program. We will reimplement the ATM simulation of Chapter 12, storing the customer and account data in a database. Recall that in the simulation, every customer has a customer number, a PIN, and two bank accounts: a checking account and a savings account.

We'll store the information in two tables:

**BankCustomer**

| Customer_Number | PIN     | Checking_Account_Number | Savings_Account_Number |
|-----------------|---------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| INTEGER         | INTEGER | INTEGER                 | INTEGER                |

**Account**

| Account_Number | Balance        |
|----------------|----------------|
| INTEGER        | DECIMAL(10, 2) |

The `Bank` class now needs to connect to the database whenever it is asked to find a customer. The method that finds a customer makes a query

```
SELECT * FROM BankCustomer WHERE Customer_Number = . . .
```

It then checks that the PIN matches, and it constructs a `Customer` object. This method also turns the row-and-column information of the database into object-oriented data:

```
public Customer findCustomer(int customerNumber, int pin)
    throws SQLException
{
    Connection conn = SimpleDataSource.getConnection();
    try
    {
```

```

Customer c = null;
PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
    "SELECT * FROM BankCustomer WHERE Customer_Number = ?");
stat.setInt(1, customerNumber);

ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery();
if (result.next() && pin == result.getInt("PIN"))
{
    c = new Customer(customerNumber,
                      result.getInt("Checking_Account_Number"),
                      result.getInt("Savings_Account_Number"));
}
return c;
}
finally
{
    conn.close();
}
}

```

Note that the method throws a `SQLException`. Why don't we catch that exception and return `null` if an exception occurs? There are many potential reasons for a SQL exception, and the `Bank` class doesn't want to hide the exception details. But the `Bank` class also doesn't know anything about the user interface of the application, so it can't display information about the exception to the user. By throwing the exception to the caller, the information can reach the part of the program that interacts with the user.

The `BankAccount` class in this program is quite different from the implementation you have seen throughout the book. Now we do not store the balance of the bank account in the object; instead, we look it up from the database:

```

public double getBalance() throws SQLException
{
    Connection conn = SimpleDataSource.getConnection();
    try
    {
        double balance = 0
        PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
            "SELECT Balance FROM Account WHERE Account_Number = ?");
        stat.setInt(1, accountNumber);
        ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery();
        if (result.next())
        {
            balance = result.getDouble(1);
        }
        return balance;
    }
    finally
    {
        conn.close();
    }
}

```

The `deposit` and `withdraw` operations immediately update the database as well:

```

public void deposit(double amount)
    throws SQLException
{
    Connection conn = SimpleDataSource.getConnection();
    try
    {

```

```

        PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
            "UPDATE Account"
            + " SET Balance = Balance + ?"
            + " WHERE Account_Number = ?");
        stat.setDouble(1, amount);
        stat.setInt(2, accountNumber);
        stat.executeUpdate();
    }
    finally
    {
        conn.close();
    }
}

```

It seems somewhat inefficient to connect to the database whenever the bank balance is accessed, but it is much safer than storing it in an object. Suppose you have two instances of the ATM program running at the same time. Then it is possible that both programs modify the same bank account. If each of them copied the bank balances from the database into objects, then the modifications made by one user would not be seen by the other.

You can try out this simultaneous access yourself, simply by running two instances of the ATM simulation. Alternatively, you can modify the `main` method of the `ATMViewer` class to pop up two ATM frames.

The source code for the modified ATM application follows. The source code for the `ATM` and `ATMSimulator/ATMFrame` classes is only changed minimally, by adding code to deal with the `SQLException`. The `Customer` class is unchanged. We do not list those classes, but you will find them in the `worked_example_1` folder of this chapter's companion code.

### **worked\_example\_5/Bank.java**

```

1 import java.sql.Connection;
2 import java.sql.ResultSet;
3 import java.sql.PreparedStatement;
4 import java.sql.SQLException;
5
6 /**
7     A bank consisting of multiple bank accounts.
8 */
9 public class Bank
10 {
11     /**
12         Finds a customer with a given number and PIN.
13         @param customerNumber the customer number
14         @param pin the personal identification number
15         @return the matching customer, or null if none found
16     */
17     public Customer findCustomer(int customerNumber, int pin)
18         throws SQLException
19     {
20         Connection conn = SimpleDataSource.getConnection();
21         try
22         {
23             Customer c = null;
24             PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
25                 "SELECT * FROM BankCustomer WHERE Customer_Number = ?");
26             stat.setInt(1, customerNumber);
27
28             ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery();
29             if (result.next() && pin == result.getInt("PIN"))
30             {

```

```

31         c = new Customer(customerNumber,
32             result.getInt("Checking_Account_Number"),
33             result.getInt("Savings_Account_Number"));
34     }
35     return c;
36   }
37   finally
38   {
39     conn.close();
40   }
41 }
42 }
```

**worked\_example\_5/BankAccount.java**

```

1 import java.sql.Connection;
2 import java.sql.ResultSet;
3 import java.sql.PreparedStatement;
4 import java.sql.SQLException;
5
6 /**
7   A bank account has a balance that can be changed by
8   deposits and withdrawals.
9 */
10 public class BankAccount
11 {
12     private int accountNumber;
13
14     /**
15      Constructs a bank account with a given balance.
16      @param anAccountNumber the account number
17     */
18     public BankAccount(int anAccountNumber)
19     {
20         accountNumber = anAccountNumber;
21     }
22
23     /**
24      Deposits money into a bank account.
25      @param amount the amount to deposit
26     */
27     public void deposit(double amount)
28         throws SQLException
29     {
30         Connection conn = SimpleDataSource.getConnection();
31         try
32         {
33             PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
34                 "UPDATE Account"
35                 + " SET Balance = Balance + ?"
36                 + " WHERE Account_Number = ?");
37             stat.setDouble(1, amount);
38             stat.setInt(2, accountNumber);
39             stat.executeUpdate();
40         }
41         finally
42         {
43             conn.close();
44         }
45     }
46 }
```

```
45     }
46
47     /**
48      Withdraws money from a bank account.
49      @param amount the amount to withdraw
50     */
51     public void withdraw(double amount)
52         throws SQLException
53     {
54         Connection conn = SimpleDataSource.getConnection();
55         try
56         {
57             PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
58                 "UPDATE Account"
59                 + " SET Balance = Balance - ?"
60                 + " WHERE Account_Number = ?");
61             stat.setDouble(1, amount);
62             stat.setInt(2, accountNumber);
63             stat.executeUpdate();
64         }
65         finally
66         {
67             conn.close();
68         }
69     }
70
71     /**
72      Gets the balance of a bank account.
73      @return the account balance
74     */
75     public double getBalance()
76         throws SQLException
77     {
78         Connection conn = SimpleDataSource.getConnection();
79         try
80         {
81             double balance = 0
82             PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
83                 "SELECT Balance FROM Account WHERE Account_Number = ?");
84             stat.setInt(1, accountNumber);
85             ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery();
86             if (result.next())
87             {
88                 balance = result.getDouble(1);
89             }
90             return balance;
91         }
92         finally
93         {
94             conn.close();
95         }
96     }
97 }
```

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### Develop strategies for storing data in a database.

- A relational database stores information in tables. Each table column has a name and a data type.
- SQL (Structured Query Language) is a command language for interacting with a database.
- Use the SQL commands `CREATE TABLE` and `INSERT INTO` to add data to a database.
- You should avoid rows with replicated data. Instead, distribute the data over multiple tables.
- A primary key is a column (or set of columns) whose value uniquely specifies a table record.
- A foreign key is a reference to a primary key in a linked table.
- Implement one-to-many relationships with linked tables, not replicated columns.

### Use SQL to query and update a database.

- Use the SQL `SELECT` command to query a database.
- The `WHERE` clause selects data that fulfill a condition.
- A join is a query that involves multiple tables.
- The `UPDATE` and `DELETE` SQL commands modify the data in a database.

### Install a database system and test that you can connect to it from a Java program.

- You need a JDBC (Java Database Connectivity) driver to access a database from a Java program.
- Make sure the JDBC driver is on the class path when you launch the Java program.
- To connect to the database, you need to specify a database URL, user name, and password.

### Write Java programs that access and update database records.

- Use a `Connection` object to access a database from a Java program.
- A `Connection` object can create `Statement` objects that are used to execute SQL commands.
- The result of a SQL query is returned in a `ResultSet` object.
- Metadata are data about an object. Result set metadata describe the properties of a result set.

### Develop programs that use the JDBC library for accessing a database.

## STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER

|                                     |   |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|
| <code>java.io.File</code>           | <code>java.sql.PreparedStatement</code> | <code>java.sql.ResultSetMetaData</code> |
| <code>pathSeparator</code>          | <code>execute</code>                    | <code>getRowCount</code>                |
| <code>java.lang.Class</code>        | <code>executeQuery</code>               | <code>getColumnDisplaySize</code>       |
| <code>forName</code>                | <code>executeUpdate</code>              | <code>getColumnName</code>              |
| <code>java.sql.Connection</code>    | <code>setDouble</code>                  | <code>java.sql.SQLException</code>      |
| <code>close</code>                  | <code>setInt</code>                     | <code>java.sql.Statement</code>         |
| <code>commit</code>                 | <code>setString</code>                  | <code>close</code>                      |
| <code>createStatement</code>        | <code>java.sql.ResultSet</code>         | <code>execute</code>                    |
| <code>prepareStatement</code>       | <code>close</code>                      | <code>executeQuery</code>               |
| <code>rollback</code>               | <code>getDouble</code>                  | <code>executeUpdate</code>              |
| <code>setAutoCommit</code>          | <code>getInt</code>                     | <code>getResultSet</code>               |
| <code>java.sql.DriverManager</code> | <code>getMetaData</code>                | <code>getUpdateCount</code>             |
| <code>getConnection</code>          | <code>getString</code>                  | <code>java.util.Properties</code>       |
|                                     | <code>next</code>                       | <code>getProperty</code>                |
|                                     |   | <code>load</code>                       |

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

- **R23.1** Design a set of database tables to store people and cars. A person has a name, a unique driver license number, and an address. Every car has a unique vehicle identification number, manufacturer, type, and year. Every car has one owner, but one person can own multiple cars.
- **R23.2** Design a set of database tables to store library books and patrons. A book has an ISBN (International Standard Book Number), an author, and a title. The library may have multiple copies of each book, each with a different book ID. A patron has a name, a unique ID, and an address. A book may be checked out by at most one patron, but one patron can check out multiple books.
- **R23.3** Design a set of database tables to store sets of coins in purses. Each purse has an owner name and a unique ID. Each coin type has a unique name and a value. Each purse contains some quantity of coins of a given type.
- **R23.4** Design a set of database tables to store students, classes, professors, and classrooms. Each student takes zero or more classes. Each class has one professor, but a professor can teach multiple classes. Each class has one classroom.
- **R23.5** Give SQL commands to create a Book table, with columns for the ISBN, author, and title, and to insert all textbooks that you are using this semester.
- **R23.6** Give SQL commands to create a Car table, with columns for the vehicle identification number, manufacturer, model, and year of each car, and to insert all cars that your family members own.

Exercises R23.7–R23.17 refer to the invoice database of Section 23.2.

- **R23.7** Give a SQL query that lists all products in the invoice database of Section 23.2.
- **R23.8** Give a SQL query that lists all customers in California.
- **R23.9** Give a SQL query that lists all customers in California or Nevada.

- **R23.10** Give a SQL query that lists all customers not in Hawaii.
- **R23.11** Give a SQL query that lists all customers who have an unpaid invoice.
- **R23.12** Give a SQL query that lists all products that have been purchased by a customer in California.
- **R23.13** Give a SQL query that lists all line items that are part of invoice number 11731.
- **R23.14** Give a SQL query that computes the sum of all quantities that are part of invoice number 11731.
- **R23.15** Give a SQL query that computes the total cost of all line items in invoice number 11731.
- **R23.16** Give a SQL update statement that raises all prices by ten percent.
- **R23.17** Give a SQL statement that deletes all customers in California.
- **R23.18** Pick a database system (such as DB2, Oracle, Postgres, or SQL Server) and determine from the web documentation:
  - What JDBC driver do you need? Is it automatically discovered?
  - What is the database URL?
- **R23.19** Where is the file derby.jar located in your installation of the Java development kit?
- **R23.20** Suppose you run the command `java -classpath derby.jar;. TestDB database.properties`, as described in Section 23.3. Match the following five error messages to the error conditions they correspond to.

| Error Message  | Error Condition  |
|--|--|
| <code>Usage: java [-options] class [args...]</code>  | The suffix ; create=true was missing from the jdbc.url entry in database.properties. |
| <code>Exception in thread "main" java.sql.SQLException: No suitable driver found for jdbc:derby:BigJavaDB;create=true</code> | The database.properties file was not present in the current directory.               |
| <code>Exception in thread "main" java.lang.NoClassDefFoundError: TestDB</code>   | derby.jar and . should have been separated by a colon on this operating system.      |
| <code>Exception in thread "main" java.io.FileNotFoundException: database.properties</code>                                   | The TestDB.class file was not present in the current directory.                      |
| <code>Exception in thread "main" java.sql.SQLException: Database 'BigJavaDB' not found.</code>                               | The derby.jar file was not present in the current directory.                         |

- **R23.21** What is the difference between a Connection and a Statement?
- **R23.22** Of the SQL commands introduced in this chapter, which yield result sets, which yield an update count, and which yield neither?
- **R23.23** How is a ResultSet different from an Iterator?

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E23.1** Write a Java program that creates a Coin table with coin names and values; inserts coin types penny, nickel, dime, quarter, half dollar, and dollar; and prints out the sum of the coin values. Use SQL commands CREATE TABLE, INSERT, and SELECT SUM.
- **E23.2** Write a Java program that creates a Car table with car manufacturers, models, model years, and fuel efficiency ratings. Insert several cars. Print out the average fuel efficiency. Use SQL commands CREATE TABLE, INSERT, and SELECT AVG.
- **E23.3** Improve the ExecSQL program and make the columns of the output line up. *Hint:* Use the getColumnDisplaySize method of the ResultSetMetaData class.
- **E23.4** Modify the program in Section 23.5 so that the user has the choice of selecting an existing customer. Provide an option to search for the customer by name or zip code.
- **E23.5** Write a Java program that uses the database tables from the invoice database in Section 23.2. Prompt the user for an invoice number and print out the invoice, formatted as in Chapter 12.
- **E23.6** Write a Java program that uses the database tables from the invoice database in Section 23.2. Produce a report that lists all customers, their invoices, the amounts paid, and the unpaid balances.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- **P23.1** Write a Java program that uses a library database of books and patron data, as described in Exercise R23.2. Patrons should be able to check out and return books. Supply commands to print the books that a patron has checked out and to find who has checked out a particular book. Create and populate Patron and Book tables before running the program.
- **P23.2** Write a Java program that creates a grade book for a class. Create and populate Student and Grade tables before running the program. The program should be able to display all grades for a given student. It should allow the instructor to add a new grade (such as “Homework 4: 100”) or modify an existing grade.
- **P23.3** Write a program that assigns seats on an airplane as described in Exercise P12.6. Keep the seating information in a database.
- **P23.4** Write a program that keeps an appointment calendar in a database. An appointment includes a description, a date, the starting time, and the ending time; for example,
 

```
Dentist 2012/10/1 17:30 18:30
      CS1 class 2012/10/2 08:30 10:00
```

 Supply a user interface to add appointments, remove canceled appointments, and print out a list of appointments for a particular day.
- **P23.5** Modify the ATM simulation program of Worked Example 23.1 so that the program pops up two ATM frames. Verify that the database can be accessed simultaneously by two users.

- P23.6** Write a program that uses a database of quizzes. Each quiz has a description and one or more multiple-choice questions. Each question has one or more choices, one of which is the correct one. Use tables Quiz, Question, and Choice. The program should show the descriptions of all quizzes, allow the user to choose one, and present all questions in the chosen quiz. When the user has provided responses to all questions, show the score.
- P23.7** Enhance the program of Exercise P23.6 so that it stores the user's responses in the database. Add Student and Response tables. (User is a reserved word in SQL.)
- P23.8** Write a program that uses the database of Exercise P23.7 and prints a report showing how all students performed on all quizzes.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. The telephone number for each customer may not be unique—the same number might be shared by roommates. Even if the number were unique, however, it can change when a customer moves. In that situation, both the primary and all foreign keys would need to be updated. Therefore, a customer ID is a better choice.
2. Customer 3176 ordered ten toasters.
3. 

```
SELECT Name
      FROM Customer
     WHERE State <> 'AK' AND State <> 'HI'
```
4. 

```
SELECT Invoice.Invoice_Number
      FROM Invoice, Customer
     WHERE Invoice.Customer_Number
          = Customer.Customer_Number
        AND Customer.State = 'HI'
```
5. Connect to the database with a program that lets you execute SQL instructions. Try creating a small database table, adding a record, and selecting all records. Then drop the table again.
6. You didn't set the class path correctly. The JAR file containing the JDBC driver must be on the class path.
7. `result.next()`. If there is at least one result, then `next` returns true.
8. 

```
ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery(
    "SELECT COUNT(*) FROM Customer
     WHERE State = 'HI'");
result.next();
int count = result.getInt(1);
```

Note that the following alternative is significantly slower if there are many such customers.

```
ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery(
    "SELECT * FROM Customer
     WHERE State = 'HI'");
while (result.next()) { count++; } // Inefficient
```

9. In this program, error reporting is the responsibility of the `main` method.
10. By passing the customer number as an argument. Then the query would only involve the customer table.
11. The most convenient approach is to ask the user about the payment before entering the items. Then the payment can be added to the statement in the `addInvoice` method.
12. We can either compute it in the loop that displays the line items, or we can issue a query
 

```
SELECT SUM(Product.Price * LineItem.Quantity)
      FROM Product, LineItem
     WHERE Product.Product_Code
          = LineItem.Product_Code
        AND LineItem.Invoice_Number = ?
```



## CHAPTER GOALS

- To learn to use XML elements and attributes
- To understand the concept of an XML parser
- To read and write XML documents
- To design Document Type Definitions for XML documents



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

**24.1 XML TAGS AND DOCUMENTS W1016**

- How To 24.1:* Designing an XML Document Format W1020  
*Programming Tip 24.1:* Prefer XML Elements over Attributes W1021  
*Programming Tip 24.2:* Avoid Children with Mixed Elements and Text W1022

**24.2 PARSING XML DOCUMENTS W1023**

- Common Error 24.1:* XML Elements Describe Objects, Not Classes W1027

**24.3 CREATING XML DOCUMENTS W1028**

- How To 24.2:* Writing an XML Document W1033  
*Special Topic 24.1:* Grammars, Parsers, and Compilers W1035

**24.4 VALIDATING XML DOCUMENTS W1037**

- How To 24.3:* Writing a DTD W1044  
*Special Topic 24.2:* Schema Languages W1045  
*Special Topic 24.3:* Other XML Technologies W1046



The **Extensible Markup Language** (XML) is a popular mechanism for encoding data. Independent of any programming language, XML allows you to encode complex data in a form that the recipient can easily parse. It is simple enough that a wide variety of programs can generate XML data. XML data has a nested structure, so you can use it to describe hierarchical data sets—for example, an invoice that contains many items, each of which consists of a product and a quantity. Because the XML format is standardized, libraries for parsing the data are widely available and—as you will see in this chapter—easy to use for a programmer.

## 24.1 XML Tags and Documents

The XML format uses a mixture of text and tags to describe data. *Tags* are enclosed in angle brackets `<...>`. An *element* is a unit of information that is delimited by a start-tag and a matching end-tag. An element can contain text and other elements. For example, `<city>Sunnyvale</city>` is an element with a text child, and

```
<address>
  <street>1195 W. Fairfield Rd.</street>
  <city>Sunnyvale</city>
  <state>CA</state>
</address>
```

is an element with three child elements. In the following sections, you will see why XML is more useful than a plain text format, how it is related to HTML, and which rules you need to follow when producing an XML document.

### 24.1.1 Advantages of XML

XML allows you to encode complex data, independent of any programming language, in a form that the recipient can easily parse.

XML files are readable by computer programs and by humans.

To understand the advantages of using XML for encoding data, let's look at a typical example. We will encode product descriptions, so that they can be transferred to another computer. Your first attempt might be a naïve encoding like this:

```
Toaster
29.95
```

In contrast, here is an XML encoding of the same data:

```
<product>
  <description>Toaster</description>
  <price>29.95</price>
</product>
```

The advantage of the XML version is clear: You can look at the data and understand what they mean. Of course, this is a benefit for the programmer, not for a computer program. A computer program has no understanding of what a “price” is. As a programmer, you still need to write code to extract the price as the content of the `price` element. Nevertheless, the fact that an XML document is comprehensible by humans is a huge advantage for program development.

XML-formatted  
data files are  
resilient to change.

A second advantage of the XML version is that it is *resilient to change*. Suppose the product data change, and an additional data item is introduced to denote the manufacturer. In the naïve format, the manufacturer might be added after the price, like this:

```
Toaster
29.95
General Appliances
```

A program that can process the old format might get confused when reading a sequence of products in the new format. The program would think that the price is followed by the name of the next product. Thus, the program needs to be updated to work with both the old and new data formats. As data get more complex, programming for multiple versions of a data format can be difficult and time-consuming.

When using XML, on the other hand, it is easy to add new elements:

```
<product>
  <description>Toaster</description>
  <price>29.95</price>
  <manufacturer>General Appliances</manufacturer>
</product>
```

Now a program that processes the new data can still extract the old information in the same way—as the contents of the `description` and `price` elements. The program need not be updated, and it can tolerate different versions of the data format.

### 24.1.2 Differences Between XML and HTML

If you know HTML, you may have noticed that the XML format of the product data looked somewhat like HTML code. However, there are some differences that we will discuss in this section.

Let's start with the similarities. The XML tag pairs, such as `<price>` and `</price>` look just like HTML tag pairs, for example `<li>` and `</li>`. Both in XML and in HTML, tags are enclosed in angle brackets `<>`, and a start-tag is paired with an end-tag that starts with a slash / character.

However, web browsers are quite permissive about HTML. For example, you can omit an end-tag `</li>` and the browser will try to figure out what you mean. In XML, this is not permissible. When writing XML, pay attention to the following rules:

- You *must* pay attention to the letter case of the tags; for example, in XML `<li>` and `<LI>` are different tags that bear no relation to each other.
- Every start-tag *must* have a matching end-tag. You cannot omit tags, such as `</li>`. A tag that ends in `/>` is both a start- and end-tag:

```

```

When the parser sees the `/>`, it knows not to look for a matching end-tag.

- Finally, attribute values must be enclosed in quotes. For example,

```

```

is not acceptable. You must use

```

```

Moreover, there is an important conceptual difference between HTML and XML. HTML has one specific purpose: to describe web documents. In contrast, XML is an *extensible* syntax that can be used to specify many different kinds of data. For example, the VRML language uses the XML syntax to describe virtual reality scenes. The MathML language uses the XML syntax to describe mathematical formulas. You can use the XML syntax to describe your own data, such as product records or invoices.

XML describes the meaning of data, not how to display them.

Most people who first see XML wonder how an XML document looks inside a browser. However, that is *not* generally a useful question to ask. Most data that are encoded in XML have nothing to do with browsers. For example, it would probably not be exciting to display an XML document with nothing but product records (such as the ones in the previous section) in a browser. Instead, you will learn in this chapter how to write programs that analyze XML data. XML does not tell you how to display data; it is merely a convenient format for representing data.

### 24.1.3 The Structure of an XML Document

An XML document starts out with an XML declaration and contains elements and text.

In this section, you will see the rules for properly formatted XML. In XML, text and tags are combined into a *document*. The XML standard recommends that every XML document start with a declaration

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
```

Next, the XML document contains the actual data. The data are contained in a *root element*. For example,

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<invoice>
    more data
</invoice>
```

The invoice root element is an example of an XML element. An element has one of two forms:

```
<elementName> content </elementName>
or
<elementName/>
```

In the first case, the element has content—elements, text, or a mixture of both. A good example is a paragraph in an HTML document:

```
<p>Use XML for <strong>robust</strong> data formats.</p>
```

The p element contains

1. The text: “Use XML for ”
2. A strong child element
3. More text: “ data formats.”

An element can contain text, child elements, or both (mixed content). For data descriptions, avoid mixed content.

For XML files that contain documents in the traditional sense of the term, the mixture of text and elements is useful. The XML specification calls this type of content *mixed content*. But for files that describe data sets—such as our product data—it is better to stick with elements that contain *either* other elements or text. Content that consists only of elements is called *element content*.

An element can have *attributes*. For example, the `a` element of HTML has an `href` attribute that specifies the URL of a hyperlink:

```
<a href="http://horstmann.com"> . . . </a>
```

Elements can have attributes. Use attributes to describe how to interpret the element content.

An attribute has a name (such as `href`) and a value. In XML, the value must be enclosed in single or double quotes.

An element can have multiple attributes, for example

```

```

And, as you have already seen, an element can have both attributes and content.

```
<a href="http://horstmann.com">Cay Horstmann's web site</a>
```

Programmers often wonder whether it is better to use attributes or child elements. For example, should a product be described as

```
<product description="Toaster" price="29.95"/>
```

or

```
<product>
  <description>Toaster</description>
  <price>29.95</price>
</product>
```

The former is shorter. However, it violates the spirit of attributes. Attributes are intended to provide information *about* the element content. For example, the `price` element might have an attribute `currency` that helps interpret the element content. The content `29.95` has a different interpretation in the element

```
<price currency="USD">29.95</price>
```

than it does in the element

```
<price currency="EUR">29.95</price>
```

You have now seen the components of an XML document that are needed to use XML for encoding data. There are other XML constructs for more specialized situations—see <http://www.xml.com/xml/xml1.html> for more information. In the next section, you will see how to use Java to parse XML documents.

### SELF CHECK



1. Write XML code with a `student` element and child elements `name` and `id` that describe you.
2. What does your browser do when you load an XML file, such as the `section_2/items.xml` file that is contained in the companion code for this book?
3. Why does HTML use the `src` attribute to specify the source of an image instead of `<img>hamster.jpeg</img>`?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R24.1, R24.2, R24.3.

## HOW TO 24.1

## Designing an XML Document Format



This How To walks you through the process of designing an XML document format. You will see in Section 24.4 how to formally describe the format with a document type definition. Right now, we focus on an informal definition of the document content. The “output” of this activity is a sample document.

### Step 1

Gather the data that you must include in the XML document.

Write them on a sheet of paper. If at all possible, work from some real-life examples. For example, suppose you need to design an XML document for an invoice. A typical invoice has

- An invoice number
- A shipping address
- A billing address
- A list of items ordered

If possible, gather some actual invoices. Decide which features of the actual invoices you need to include in your XML document.

### Step 2

Analyze which data elements need to be refined.

Continue refinement until you reach data values that can be described by single strings or numbers. Make a note of all data items that you discovered during the refinement process. When done, you should have a list of data elements, some of which can be broken down further and some of which are simple enough to be described by a single string or number.

For example, the “shipping address” actually contains the customer name, street, city, state, and ZIP code.

The “list of items ordered” contains items. Each item contains a product and the quantity ordered. Each product contains the product name and price.

Thus, our list now contains

- |           |                         |               |
|-----------|-------------------------|---------------|
| • Address | • State                 | • Product     |
| • Name    | • ZIP code              | • Description |
| • Street  | • List of items ordered | • Price       |
| • City    | • Item                  | • Quantity    |

Keep breaking the data items down until each of them can be described by a single *string* or *number*. For example, an address cannot be described by a single string, but a city can be described by a single string.

### Step 3

Come up with a suitable element name that describes the entire XML document.

This element becomes the root element. For example, the invoice data would be contained in an element named `invoice`.

### Step 4

Come up with suitable element names for the top-level decomposition that you found in Step 1.

These become the children of the root element. For example, the `invoice` element has children

- `address`
- `items`

### Step 5

Repeat this process to give names to the other elements that you discovered in Step 2.

As you do this, make a comprehensive example that shows all elements at work. For the invoice problem, here is an example:

```

<invoice>
  <address>
    <name>ACME Computer Supplies Inc.</name>
    <street>1195 W. Fairfield Rd.</street>
    <city>Sunnyvale</city>
    <state>CA</state>
    <zip>94085</zip>
  </address>
  <items>
    <item>
      <product>
        <description>Ink Jet Refill Kit</description>
        <price>29.95</price>
      </product>
      <quantity>8</quantity>
    </item>
    <item>
      <product>
        <description>4-port Mini Hub</description>
        <price>19.95</price>
      </product>
      <quantity>4</quantity>
    </item>
  </items>
</invoice>

```

**Step 6** Check that the document doesn't have mixed content.

That is, make sure each element has as its children either additional elements or text, but not both. If necessary, add more child elements to wrap any text.

For example, suppose the product element looked like this:

```

<product>
  <description>Ink Jet Refill Kit</description>
  29.95
</product>

```

Perhaps someone thought it was “obvious” that the last entry was the price. However, following Programming Tip 24.2, it is best to wrap the price inside a `price` element, like this:

```

<product>
  <description>Ink Jet Refill Kit</description>
  <price>29.95</price>
</product>

```

**Programming Tip 24.1**



### Prefer XML Elements over Attributes

Attributes are shorter than elements. For example,

```
<product description="Toaster" price="29.95"/>
```

seems simpler than

```

<product>
  <description>Toaster</description>
  <price>29.95</price>
</product>

```

There is the temptation to use attributes because they are “easier to type”. But of course, you don’t type XML documents, except for testing purposes. In real-world situations, XML documents are generated by programs.

Attributes are less flexible than elements. Suppose we want to add a currency indication to the value. With elements, that's easy to do:

```
<price currency="USD">29.95</price>
```

or even

```
<price>
  <currency>USD</currency>
  <amount>29.95</amount>
</price>
```

With attributes, you are stuck—you can't refine the structure. Of course, you could use

```
<product description="Toaster" price="USD 29.95"/>
```

But then your program has to parse the string USD 29.95 and manually take it apart. That's just the kind of tedious and error-prone coding that XML is designed to avoid.

In HTML, there is a simple rule when using attributes. All strings that are not part of the displayed text are attributes. For example, consider a link.

```
<a href="http://horstmann.com">Cay Horstmann's web site</a>
```

The text inside the `a` element, Cay Horstmann's web site, is part of what the user sees on the web page, but the `href` attribute value `http://horstmann.com` is not displayed on the page.

Of course, HTML is a little different from the XML documents that you construct to describe data, such as product lists, but the same basic rule applies. Anything that's a part of your data should not be an attribute. An attribute is appropriate only if it tells something *about* the data but isn't a part of the data itself. If you find yourself engaged in metaphysical discussions to determine whether an item is part of the data or tells something about the data, make the item an element, not an attribute.

## Programming Tip 24.2



### Avoid Children with Mixed Elements and Text

The children of an element can be

1. Elements
2. Text
3. A mixture of both

In HTML, it is common to mix elements and text, for example

```
<p>Use XML for <strong>robust</strong> data formats.</p>
```

But when describing data sets, you should not mix elements and text. For example, you should not do the following:

```
<price>
  <currency>USD</currency>
  29.95
</price>
```

Instead, the children of an element should be either text

```
<price>29.95</price>
```

or elements

```
<price>
  <currency>USD</currency>
  <amount>29.95</amount>
</price>
```

There is an important reason for this design rule. As you will see later in this chapter, you can specify much stricter rules for elements that have only child elements than for elements whose children can contain mixed content.

## 24.2 Parsing XML Documents

A parser is a program that reads a document, checks whether it is syntactically correct, and takes some action as it processes the document.

A streaming parser reports the building blocks of an XML document. A tree-based parser builds a document tree.

A DocumentBuilder can read an XML document from a file, URL, or input stream. The result is a Document object, which contains a tree.

An XPath describes a node or node set, using a notation similar to that for directory paths.

To read and analyze the contents of an XML document, you need an XML **parser**. A parser is a program that reads a document, checks whether it is syntactically correct, and takes some action as it processes the document.

Two kinds of XML parsers are in common use. *Streaming parsers* read the XML input one token at a time and report what they encounter: a start-tag, text, an end-tag, and so on. In contrast, a *tree-based parser* builds a tree that represents the parsed document. Once the parser is done, you can analyze the tree.

Streaming parsers are more efficient for handling large XML documents whose tree structure would require large amounts of memory. Tree-based parsers, however, are easier to use for most applications—the **parse tree** gives you a complete overview of the data, whereas a streaming parser gives you the information in bits and pieces.

In this section, you will learn how to use a tree-based parser that produces a tree structure according to the DOM (Document Object Model) standard. The DOM standard defines interfaces and methods to analyze and modify the tree structure that represents an XML document.

In order to parse an XML document into a DOM tree, use the `DocumentBuilder` class from the `java.xml` package. To get a `DocumentBuilder` object, first call the static `newInstance` method of the `DocumentBuilderFactory` class, then call the `newDocumentBuilder` method on the factory object:

```
DocumentBuilderFactory factory = DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
DocumentBuilder builder = factory.newDocumentBuilder();
```

Once you have a `DocumentBuilder`, you can read a document. To read a document from a file, first construct a `File` object from the file name, then call the `parse` method of the `DocumentBuilder` class:

```
String fileName = . . .;
File f = new File(fileName);
Document doc = builder.parse(f);
```

If the document is located on the Internet, use a URL:

```
String urlName = . . .;
URL u = new URL(urlName);
Document doc = builder.parse(u);
```

You can also read a document from an arbitrary input stream:

```
InputStream in = . . .;
Document doc = builder.parse(in);
```

Once you have created a new document or read a document from a file, you can inspect and modify it.

The easiest method for inspecting a document is the *XPath* syntax. In the DOM standard, a node is the common superclass for all components that make up an XML document. In particular, text sequences and elements are nodes. An XPath describes a node or set of nodes, using a syntax that is similar to directory paths. For example, consider the following XPath, applied to the document in Figure 1 and Figure 2:

`/items/item[1]/quantity`

This XPath selects the quantity of the first item, that is, the value 8. (In XPath, array positions start with 1. Accessing `/items/item[0]` would be an error.)

**Figure 1**  
An XML Document

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<items>
  <item>
    <product>
      <description>Ink Jet Refill Kit</description>
      <price>29.95</price>
    </product>
    <quantity>8</quantity>
  </item>
  <item>
    <product>
      <description>4-port Mini Hub</description>
      <price>19.95</price>
    </product>
    <quantity>4</quantity>
  </item>
</items>
```

Similarly, you can get the price of the second product as

`/items/item[2]/product/price`

To get the number of items, use the XPath expression

`count(/items/item)`

In our example, the result is 2.

The total number of children can be obtained as

`count(/items/*)`

In our example, the result is again 2 because the `items` element has exactly two children.

To select attributes, use an `@` followed by the name of the attribute. For example,

`/items/item[2]/product/price/@currency`

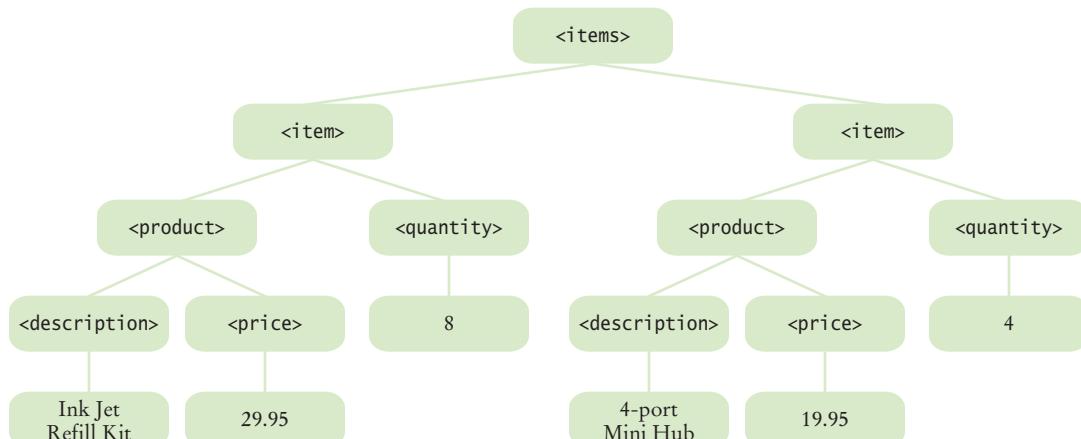
would select the `currency` attribute of the `price` element if it had one.

Finally, if you have a document with variable or unknown structure, you can find out the name of a child with an expression such as the following:

`name(/items/item[1]/*[1])`

The result is the name of the first child of the first item, or `product`.

**Figure 2**  
The Tree  
View of the  
Document



That is all you need to know about the XPath syntax to analyze simple documents. (See Table 1 for a summary.) There are many more options in the XPath syntax that we do not cover here. If you are interested, look up the specification (<http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath>) or work through the online tutorial (<http://www.zvon.org/xxl/XPathTutorial/General/examples.html>).

To evaluate an XPath expression in Java, first create an `XPath` object:

```
XPathFactory xpfactory = XPathFactory.newInstance();
XPath path = xpfactory.newXPath();
```

Then call the `evaluate` method, like this:

```
String result = path.evaluate(expression, doc)
```

Here, `expression` is an XPath expression and `doc` is the `Document` object that represents the XML document. For example, the statement

```
String result = path.evaluate("/items/item[2]/product/price", doc)
```

sets `result` to the string "19.95".

Now you have all the tools that you need to read and analyze an XML document. The example program at the end of this section puts these techniques to work. (The program uses the `LineItem` and `Product` classes from Section 12.3.) The class `ItemListParser` can parse an XML document that contains a list of product descriptions. Its `parse` method takes the file name and returns an array list of `LineItem` objects:

```
ItemListParser parser = new ItemListParser();
ArrayList<LineItem> items = parser.parse("items.xml");
```

The `ItemListParser` class translates each XML element into an object of the corresponding Java class. We first get the number of items:

```
int itemCount = Integer.parseInt(path.evaluate("count(/items/item)", doc));
```

For each item element, we gather the product data and construct a `Product` object:

```
String description = path.evaluate(
    "/items/item[" + i + "]/product/description", doc);
double price = Double.parseDouble(path.evaluate(
    "/items/item[" + i + "]/product/price", doc));
Product pr = new Product(description, price);
```

Then we construct a `LineItem` object in the same way, and add it to the `items` array list.

**Table 1** XPath Syntax Summary

Syntax Element	Purpose	Example
<code>name</code>	Matches an element	<code>item</code>
<code>/</code>	Separates elements	<code>/items/item</code>
<code>[n]</code>	Selects a value from a set	<code>/items/item[1]</code>
<code>@name</code>	Matches an attribute	<code>price/@currency</code>
<code>*</code>	Matches anything	<code>/items/*[1]</code>
<code>count</code>	Counts matches	<code>count(/items/item)</code>
<code>name</code>	The name of a match	<code>name(/items/*[1])</code>

Here is the complete source code:

### section\_2/ItemListParser.java

```

1 import java.io.File;
2 import java.io.IOException;
3 import java.util.ArrayList;
4 import javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilder;
5 import javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory;
6 import javax.xml.parsers.ParserConfigurationException;
7 import javax.xml.xpath.XPath;
8 import javax.xml.xpath.XPathExpressionException;
9 import javax.xml.xpath.XPathFactory;
10 import org.w3c.dom.Document;
11 import org.xml.sax.SAXException;
12
13 /**
14      An XML parser for item lists.
15 */
16 public class ItemListParser
17 {
18     private DocumentBuilder builder;
19     private XPath path;
20
21     /**
22      Constructs a parser that can parse item lists.
23     */
24     public ItemListParser()
25         throws ParserConfigurationException
26     {
27         DocumentBuilderFactory dbfactory
28             = DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
29         builder = dbfactory.newDocumentBuilder();
30         XPathFactory xpfactory = XPathFactory.newInstance();
31         path = xpfactory.newXPath();
32     }
33
34     /**
35      Parses an XML file containing an item list.
36      @param fileName the name of the file
37      @return an array list containing all items in the XML file
38     */
39     public ArrayList<LineItem> parse(String fileName)
40         throws SAXException, IOException, XPathExpressionException
41     {
42         File f = new File(fileName);
43         Document doc = builder.parse(f);
44
45         ArrayList<LineItem> items = new ArrayList<LineItem>();
46         int itemCount = Integer.parseInt(path.evaluate(
47             "count(/items/item)", doc));
48         for (int i = 1; i <= itemCount; i++)
49         {
50             String description = path.evaluate(
51                 "/items/item[" + i + "]/product/description", doc);
52             double price = Double.parseDouble(path.evaluate(
53                 "/items/item[" + i + "]/product/price", doc));
54             Product pr = new Product(description, price);
55             int quantity = Integer.parseInt(path.evaluate(
56                 "/items/item[" + i + "]/quantity", doc));

```

```

57     LineItem it = new LineItem(pr, quantity);
58     items.add(it);
59   }
60   return items;
61 }
62 }
```

**section\_2/ItemListParserDemo.java**

```

1 import java.util.ArrayList;
2
3 /**
4  * This program parses an XML file containing an item list.
5  * It prints out the items that are described in the XML file.
6  */
7 public class ItemListParserDemo
8 {
9   public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception
10  {
11    ItemListParser parser = new ItemListParser();
12    ArrayList<LineItem> items = parser.parse("items.xml");
13    for (LineItem anItem : items)
14    {
15      System.out.println(anItem.format());
16    }
17  }
18 }
```

**Program Run**

Ink Jet Refill Kit	29.95	8	239.6
4-port Mini Hub	19.95	4	79.8

**SELF CHECK**

4. What is the result of evaluating the XPath statement /items/item[1]/product/price in the XML document of Figure 2?
5. Which XPath statement yields the name of the root element of any XML document?

**Practice It**

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R24.10, E24.1, E24.4.

**Common Error 24.1****XML Elements Describe Objects, Not Classes**

When you convert XML documents to Java classes, you need to determine a class for each element type. A common mistake is to make a separate class for each XML element. For example, consider a slightly different invoice description, with separate shipping and billing addresses:

```

<invoice>
  <shipto>
    <name>ACME Computer Supplies Inc.</name>
    <street>1195 W. Fairfield Rd.</street>
    <city>Sunnyvale</city>
    <state>CA</state>
    <zip>94085</zip>
  </shipto>
  <billto>
```

```

<name>ACME Computer Supplies Inc.</name>
<street>P.O. Box 11098</street>
<city>Sunnyvale</city>
<state>CA</state>
<zip>94080-1098</zip>
</billto>
<items>
  ...
</items>
</invoice>

```

Should you have a class `Shipto` to match the `shipto` element and another class `Billto` to match the `billto` element? That makes no sense, because both of them have the same contents: elements that describe an address.

Instead, you should think of the XML element as the value of an instance variable and then determine an appropriate class. For example, an invoice object has instance variables

- `billto`, of type `Address`
- `shipto`, also of type `Address`

Note that you don't see the classes in the XML document. There is no notion of a class `Address` in the XML document describing an invoice. To make element classes explicit, you use an XML schema—see Special Topic 24.2 for more information.

## 24.3 Creating XML Documents

In the preceding section, you saw how to read an XML file into a `Document` object and analyze the contents of that object. In this section, you will see how to do the opposite—build up a `Document` object and then save it as an XML file. Of course, you can also generate an XML file simply as a sequence of `print` statements. However, that is not a good idea—it is easy to build an illegal XML document in this way, as when data contain special characters such as `<` or `&`.

Recall that you needed a `DocumentBuilder` object to read in an XML document. You also need such an object to create a new, empty document. Thus, to create a new document, first make a `DocumentBuilderFactory`, then a `DocumentBuilder`, and finally the empty document:

```

DocumentBuilderFactory factory = DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
DocumentBuilder builder = factory.newDocumentBuilder();
Document doc = builder.newDocument(); // An empty document

```

The `Document` interface has methods to create elements and text nodes.

A document contains two kind of nodes, elements and text nodes. The DOM standard provides interfaces for these node types, as well as a common superinterface `Node` (see Figure 3). You use the `createElement` method of the `Document` interface to create the elements that you need:

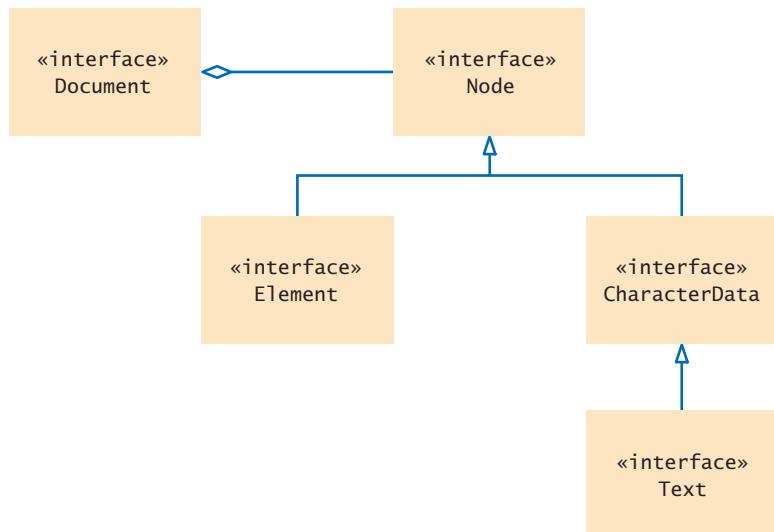
```
Element priceElement = doc.createElement("price");
```

You set element attributes with the `setAttribute` method. For example,

```
priceElement.setAttribute("currency", "USD");
```

You have to work a bit harder for inserting text. First create a text node:

```
Text textNode = doc.createTextNode("29.95");
```



**Figure 3** UML Diagram of DOM Interfaces Used in This Chapter

Then add the text node to the element:

```
priceElement.appendChild(textNode);
```

To construct the tree structure of a document, it is a good idea to use a set of helper methods. We start out with a helper method that creates an element with text:

```
private Element createTextElement(String name, String text)
{
    Text t = doc.createTextNode(text);
    Element e = doc.createElement(name);
    e.appendChild(t);
    return e;
}
```

Using this helper method, we can construct a `price` element like this:

```
Element priceElement = createTextElement("price", "29.95");
```

Next, we write a helper method to create a `product` element from a `Product` object:

```
private Element createProduct(Product p)
{
    Element e = doc.createElement("product");
    e.appendChild(createTextElement("description", p.getDescription()));
    e.appendChild(createTextElement("price", "" + p.getPrice()));
    return e;
}
```

This helper method is called from the `createItem` helper method:

```
private Element createItem(LineItem anItem)
{
    Element e = doc.createElement("item");
    e.appendChild(createProduct(anItem.getProduct()));
    e.appendChild(createTextElement("quantity", "" + anItem.getQuantity()));
    return e;
}
```

A helper method

```
private Element createItems(ArrayList<LineItem> items)
```

for the `items` element is implemented in the same way—see the program listing at the end of this section.

Now you build the document as follows:

```
ArrayList<LineItem> items = . . .;
doc = builder.newDocument();
Element root = createItems(items);
doc.appendChild(root);
```

Use an `LSSerializer`  
to write a  
DOM document.

Once you have built the document, you will want to write it to a file. The DOM standard provides the `LSSerializer` interface for this purpose. Unfortunately, the DOM standard uses very generic methods, which makes the code that is required to obtain a serializer object look like a “magic incantation”:

```
DOMImplementation impl = doc.getImplementation();
DOMImplementationLS implLS
    = (DOMImplementationLS) impl.getFeature("LS", "3.0");
LSSerializer ser = implLS.createLSSerializer();
```

Once you have the serializer object, you simply use the `writeToString` method:

```
String str = ser.writeToString(doc);
```

By default, the `LSSerializer` produces an XML document without spaces or line breaks. As a result, the output looks less pretty, but it is actually more suitable for parsing by another program because it is free from unnecessary white space.

If you want white space, you use yet another magic incantation after creating the serializer:

```
ser.getDomConfig().setParameter("format-pretty-print", true);
```

Here is an example program that shows how to build and print an XML document:

### section\_3/ItemListBuilder.java

```
1 import java.util.ArrayList;
2 import javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilder;
3 import javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory;
4 import javax.xml.parsers.ParserConfigurationException;
5 import org.w3c.dom.Document;
6 import org.w3c.dom.Element;
7 import org.w3c.dom.Text;
8
9 /**
10  * Builds a DOM document for an array list of items.
11 */
12 public class ItemListBuilder
13 {
14     private DocumentBuilder builder;
15     private Document doc;
16
17     /**
18      Constructs an item list builder.
19     */
20     public ItemListBuilder()
21         throws ParserConfigurationException
22     {
```

```

23     DocumentBuilderFactory factory
24         = DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
25     builder = factory.newDocumentBuilder();
26 }
27
28 /**
29  * Builds a DOM document for an array list of items.
30  * @param items the items
31  * @return a DOM document describing the items
32 */
33 public Document build(ArrayList<LineItem> items)
34 {
35     doc = builder.newDocument();
36     doc.appendChild(createItems(items));
37     return doc;
38 }
39
40 /**
41  * Builds a DOM element for an array list of items.
42  * @param items the items
43  * @return a DOM element describing the items
44 */
45 private Element createItems(ArrayList<LineItem> items)
46 {
47     Element e = doc.createElement("items");
48
49     for (LineItem anItem : items)
50     {
51         e.appendChild(createItem(anItem));
52     }
53
54     return e;
55 }
56
57 /**
58  * Builds a DOM element for an item.
59  * @param anItem the item
60  * @return a DOM element describing the item
61 */
62 private Element createItem(LineItem anItem)
63 {
64     Element e = doc.createElement("item");
65
66     e.appendChild(createProduct(anItem.getProduct()));
67     e.appendChild(createTextElement(
68         "quantity", "" + anItem.getQuantity()));
69
70     return e;
71 }
72
73 /**
74  * Builds a DOM element for a product.
75  * @param p the product
76  * @return a DOM element describing the product
77 */
78 private Element createProduct(Product p)
79 {
80     Element e = doc.createElement("product");
81

```

```

82     e.appendChild(createTextElement(
83         "description", p.getDescription()));
84     e.appendChild(createTextElement(
85         "price", "" + p.getPrice()));
86
87     return e;
88 }
89
90     private Element createTextElement(String name, String text)
91     {
92         Text t = doc.createTextNode(text);
93         Element e = doc.createElement(name);
94         e.appendChild(t);
95         return e;
96     }
97 }
```

**section\_3/ItemListBuilderDemo.java**

```

1 import java.util.ArrayList;
2 import org.w3c.dom.DOMImplementation;
3 import org.w3c.dom.Document;
4 import org.w3c.dom.ls.DOMImplementationLS;
5 import org.w3c.dom.ls.LSSerializer;
6
7 /**
8      This program demonstrates the item list builder. It prints the XML
9      file corresponding to a DOM document containing a list of items.
10 */
11 public class ItemListBuilderDemo
12 {
13     public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception
14     {
15         ArrayList<LineItem> items = new ArrayList<LineItem>();
16         items.add(new LineItem(new Product("Toaster", 29.95), 3));
17         items.add(new LineItem(new Product("Hair dryer", 24.95), 1));
18
19         ItemListBuilder builder = new ItemListBuilder();
20         Document doc = builder.build(items);
21         DOMImplementation impl = doc.getImplementation();
22         DOMImplementationLS implLS
23             = (DOMImplementationLS) impl.getFeature("LS", "3.0");
24         LSSerializer ser = implLS.createLSSerializer();
25         String out = ser.writeToString(doc);
26
27         System.out.println(out);
28     }
29 }
```

This program uses the `Product` and `LineItem` classes from Chapter 12. The `LineItem` class has been modified by adding `getProduct` and `getQuantity` methods.

**Program Run**

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?><items><item><product>
<description>Toaster</description><price>29.95</price></product>
<quantity>3</quantity></item><item><product><description>Hair dryer
</description><price>24.95</price></product><quantity>1</quantity>
</item></items>
```

**SELF CHECK**

6. Suppose you need to construct a `Document` object that represents an XML document other than an item list. Which methods from the `ItemListBuilder` class can you reuse?
7. How would you write a document to the file `output.xml`?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R24.12, P24.4, P24.5.

**HOW TO 24.2****Writing an XML Document**

What is the best way to write an XML document? This How To shows you how to produce a `Document` object and generate an XML document from it.

**Step 1** Provide the outline of a document builder class.

To construct the `Document` object from an object of some class, you should implement a class such as this one:

```
public class MyBuilder
{
    private DocumentBuilder builder;
    private Document doc;

    public Document build(SomeClass x) { . . . }

    . .

    private Element createElement(String name, String text)
    {
        Text t = doc.createTextNode(text);
        Element e = doc.createElement(name);
        e.appendChild(t);
        return e;
    }
}
```

**Step 2** Look at the format of the XML document that you want to create.

Consider all elements, except for those that only have text content. Find the matching Java classes. In the `ItemListBuilder` example, we ignore `quantity`, `description`, and `price` because they have text content. The remaining elements and their Java classes are

- `product` - `Product`
- `item` - `LineItem`
- `items` - `ArrayList<LineItem>`

**Step 3** For each element in Step 2, add a helper method to your builder class.

Each helper method has the form

```
private Element createElementName(ClassForElement x)
```

For example,

```
public class MyBuilder
{
    . .
    public Document build(ArrayList<LineItem> x) { . . . }
    private Element createProduct(Product x) { . . . }
    private Element createItem(LineItem x) { . . . }
    private Element createItems(ArrayList<LineItem> x) { . . . }
}
```

#### **Step 4** Implement the helper methods.

For each element, call the helper methods of its children. However, if a child has text content, call `createTextElement` instead.

For example, the `item` element has two children: `product` and `quantity`. The former has a helper method, and the latter has text content. Therefore, the `createItem` method calls `createProduct` and `createTextElement`:

```
private Element createItem(LineItem anItem)
{
    Element e = doc.createElement("item");
    e.appendChild(createProduct(anItem.getProduct()));
    e.appendChild(createTextElement("quantity", "" + anItem.getQuantity()));
    return e;
}
```

You may find it helpful to implement the helper methods “bottom up”, starting with the simplest method (such as `createProduct`) and finishing with the method for the root element (`createItems`).

#### **Step 5** Finish off your builder by writing a constructor and the `build` method.

```
public class MyBuilder
{
    public MyBuilder() throws ParserConfigurationException
    {
        DocumentBuilderFactory factory = DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
        builder = factory.newDocumentBuilder();
    }
    public Document build(ClassForRootElement x)
    {
        doc = builder.newDocument();
        doc.appendChild(createRootElementName(x));
        return doc;
    }
    . .
}
```

#### **Step 6** Use a class, such as the `LSSerializer`, to convert the `Document` to a string.

For example,

```
Invoice x = . . .;
InvoiceBuilder builder = new InvoiceBuilder();
Document doc = builder.build(x);
LSSerializer ser = . . .;
String str = ser.writeToString(doc);
```

---

## Special Topic 24.1

**Grammars, Parsers, and Compilers**

Grammars are very important in many areas of computer science to describe the structure of computer programs or data formats. To introduce the concept of a grammar, consider this set of rules for a set of simple English language sentences:

1. A sentence has a noun phrase followed by a verb and another noun phrase.
2. A noun phrase consists of an article followed by an adjective list followed by a noun.
3. An adjective list consists of an adjective or an adjective followed by an adjective list.
4. Articles are “a” and “the”.
5. Adjectives are “quick”, “brown”, “lazy”, and “hungry”.
6. Nouns are “fox”, “dog”, and “hamster”.
7. Verbs are “jumps over” and “eats”.

Here are two sentences that follow these rules:

- The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.
- The hungry hamster eats a quick brown fox.

Symbolically, these rules can be expressed by a formal grammar:

```

<sentence> ::= <noun-phrase> <verb> <noun-phrase>
<noun-phrase> ::= <article> <adjective-list> <noun>
<adjective-list> ::= <adjective> |
    <adjective> <adjective-list>
<article> ::= a | the
<adjective> ::= quick | brown | lazy | hungry
<noun> ::= fox | dog | hamster
<verb> ::= jumps over | eats
  
```

Here the symbol `::=` means “can be replaced with” and `|` separates alternate choices. For example, `<article>` can be replaced with “a” or “the”.

The grammar symbols, such as `<noun>`, happen to be enclosed in angle brackets just like XML tags, but they are different from tags. One purpose of a grammar is to produce strings that are valid according to the grammar by starting with the start symbol (`<sentence>` in this example) and applying replacement rules until the resulting string is free from symbols. See Table 2 for an example of the replacement process.

If you have a grammar and a string, such as “the hungry hamster eats a quick brown fox” or “a brown jumps over hamster quick lazy”, you can parse the sentence: that is, check whether the sentence is described by the grammar rules and, if it is, show how it can be derived from the start symbol (see Table 2). Another way to show the derivation is to construct a parse tree (see Figure 4).

**Table 2** Deriving a Sentence from a Grammar

String	Rule
<sentence>	Start
<noun-phrase> <verb> <noun-phrase>	1
<noun-phrase> eats <noun-phrase>	7
<article> <adjective-list> <noun> eats <noun-phrase>	2
the <adjective-list> <noun> eats <noun-phrase>	4

**Table 2** Deriving a Sentence from a Grammar

String	Rule
the <adjective> <noun> eats <noun-phrase>	3
the hungry <noun> eats <noun-phrase>	5
the hungry hamster eats <noun-phrase>	6
the hungry hamster eats <article> <adjective-list> <noun>	2
the hungry hamster eats a <adjective-list> <noun>	4
the hungry hamster eats a <adjective> <adjective-list> <noun>	3
the hungry hamster eats a quick <adjective-list> <noun>	5
the hungry hamster eats a quick <adjective> <noun>	3
the hungry hamster eats a quick brown <noun>	5
the hungry hamster eats a quick brown fox	6

A parser is a program that reads strings and decides whether the input conforms to the rules of a certain grammar. Some parsers—such as the DOM XML parser—build a parse tree in the process or report an error message when a parse tree cannot be constructed. Other parsers—such as the SAX XML parser—call user-specified methods whenever a part of the input was successfully parsed.

The most important use for parsers is inside compilers for programming languages. Just as our grammar can describe (some) simple English language sentences, the valid “sentences” in a programming language can be described by a grammar. The actual grammar for the Java programming language occupies about fifteen pages in *The Java Language Specification* (<http://docs.oracle.com/javase/specs/jls/se7/html/index.html>). To give a flavor of a small subset of such a grammar, here is a grammar that describes arithmetic expressions.

```

<expression> ::= <term> |
    <expression> <additive-operator> <term>
<additive-operator> ::= + | -
<term> ::= <factor> |
    <term> <multiplicative-operator> <factor>
<multiplicative-operators> ::= * | /
<factor> ::= <integer> | ( <expression> )
<integer> ::= <digits> | - <digits>
<digits> ::= <digit> | <digit> <digits>
<digit> ::= 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9

```

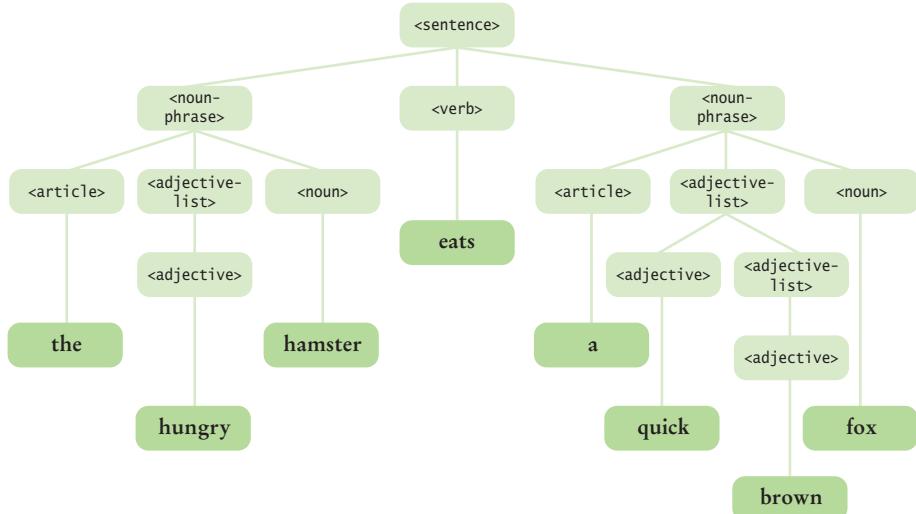
An example of a valid expression in this grammar is

-2 \* (3 + 10)

Try deriving this expression from the `<expression>` start symbol, as was done in Table 2 or Figure 4!

In a compiler, parsing the program source is the first step toward generating code that the target processor (the Java virtual machine in the case of Java) can execute. Writing a parser is a challenging and interesting task. You may at one point in your studies take a course in compiler construction, in which you learn how to write a parser and how to generate code from the parsed input. Fortunately, to use XML you don’t have to know how the parser does its job.

You simply ask the XML parser to read the XML input and then process the resulting Document tree.



**Figure 4** A Parse Tree for a Simple Sentence

## 24.4 Validating XML Documents

In this section you will learn how to specify rules for XML documents of a particular type. There are several mechanisms for this purpose. The oldest and simplest mechanism is a Document Type Definition (DTD), the topic of this section. We discuss other mechanisms in Special Topic 24.2.

### 24.4.1 Document Type Definitions

Consider a document of type `items`. Intuitively, `items` denotes a sequence of `item` elements. Each `item` element contains a product and a quantity. A product contains a description and a price. Each of these elements contains text describing the product's description, price, and quantity. The purpose of a DTD is to formalize this description.

A DTD is a sequence of rules that describes

- The valid attributes for each element type
- The valid child elements for each element type

Let us first turn to child elements. The valid child elements of an element are described by an `ELEMENT` rule:

```
<!ELEMENT items (item*)>
```

This means that an item list must contain a sequence of 0 or more `item` elements.

As you can see, the rule is delimited by `<! . . . >`, and it contains the name of the element whose children are to be constrained (`items`), followed by a description of what children are allowed.

A DTD is a sequence of rules that describes the valid child elements and attributes for each element type.

**Table 3** Replacements for Special Characters

Character	Encoding	Name
<	&lt;	Less than (left angle bracket)
>	&gt;	Greater than (right angle bracket)
&	&amp;	Ampersand
'	&apos;	Apostrophe
"	&quot;	Quotation mark

Next, let us turn to the definition of an `item` element:

```
<!ELEMENT item (product, quantity)>
```

This means that the children of an `item` element must be a `product` element, followed by a `quantity` element.

The definition for a `product` is similar:

```
<!ELEMENT product (description, price)>
```

Finally, here are the definitions of the three remaining elements:

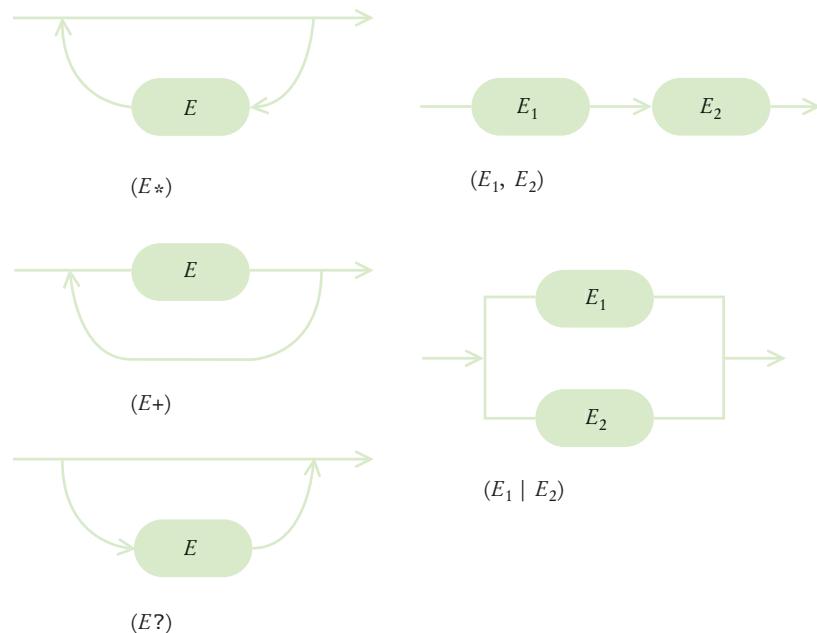
```
<!ELEMENT quantity (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT description (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT price (#PCDATA)>
```

The symbol `#PCDATA` refers to text, called “parsed character data” in XML terminology. The character data can contain any characters. However, certain characters, such as `<` and `&`, have special meaning in XML and need to be replaced if they occur in character data. Table 3 shows the replacements for special characters.

**Table 4** Regular Expressions for Element Content

Rule Description	Element Content
EMPTY	No children allowed
$(E^*)$	Any sequence of 0 or more elements $E$
$(E^+)$	Any sequence of 1 or more elements $E$
$(E?)$	Optional element $E$ (0 or 1 occurrences allowed)
$(E_1, E_2, \dots)$	Element $E_1$ , followed by $E_2, \dots$
$(E_1 \mid E_2 \mid \dots)$	Element $E_1$ or $E_2$ or ...
<code>(#PCDATA)</code>	Text only
<code>(#PCDATA \mid E_1 \mid E_2 \mid \dots)^*</code>	Any sequence of text and elements $E_1, E_2, \dots$ , in any order
ANY	Any children allowed

**Figure 5**  
DTD Regular  
Expression  
Operations



The complete DTD for an item list has six rules, one for each element type:

```
<!ELEMENT items (item*)>
<!ELEMENT item (product, quantity)>
<!ELEMENT product (description, price)>
<!ELEMENT quantity (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT description (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT price (#PCDATA)>
```

Let us have a closer look at the descriptions of the allowed children. Table 4 shows the expressions used to describe the children of an element. The `EMPTY` reserved word is self-explanatory: an element that is declared as `EMPTY` may not have any children. For example, the HTML DTD defines the `img` element to be `EMPTY`—an image has only attributes, specifying the image source, size, and placement, and no children.

More interesting child rules can be formed with the **regular expression** operations ( $*$   $+$   $?$   $,$   $|$ ). (See Table 4 and Figure 5. Also see Special Topic 11.4 for more information on regular expressions.) You have already seen the  $*$  (“0 or more”) and  $,$  (sequence) operations. The children of an `items` element are 0 or more `item` elements, and the children of an `item` are a sequence of `product` and `description` elements.

You can also combine these operations to form more complex expressions:

```
<!ELEMENT section (title, (paragraph | (image, title?))+)
```

defines an element `section` whose children are:

1. A `title` element
2. A sequence of one or more of the following:
  - `paragraph` elements
  - `image` elements followed by optional `title` elements

Thus,

```
<section>
  <title/>
  <paragraph/>
  <image/>
  <title/>
  <paragraph/>
</section>
```

is valid, but

```
<section>
  <paragraph/>
  <paragraph/>
  <title/>
</section>
```

is not—there is no starting title, and the title at the end doesn't follow an image.

You already saw the (#PCDATA) rule. It means that the children can consist of any character data. For example, in our product list DTD, the `description` element can have any character data inside.

You can also allow *mixed content*—any sequence of character data and specified elements. However, in mixed content, you have no control over the order in which the elements appear. As explained in Programming Tip 24.2, you should avoid mixed content for DTDs that describe data sets. This feature is intended for documents that contain both text and markup instructions, such as HTML pages.

Finally, you can allow an element to have children of any type—you should avoid that for DTDs that describe data sets.

You now know how to specify what children an element may have. A DTD also gives you control over the allowed attributes of an element. An attribute description looks like this:

```
<!ATTLIST Element Attribute Type Default>
```

The most useful attribute type descriptions are listed in Table 5. The `CDATA` type describes any sequence of character data. As with `#PCDATA`, certain characters, such as `<` and `&`, need to be encoded (as `&lt;`, `&amp;`; and so on). There is no practical difference between the `CDATA` and `#PCDATA` types. Simply use `CDATA` in attribute declarations and `#PCDATA` in element declarations.

Rather than allowing arbitrary attribute values, you can specify a finite number of choices. For example, you may want to restrict a currency attribute to U.S. dollar, euro, and Japanese yen. Then use the following declaration:

```
<!ATTLIST price currency (USD | EUR | JPY) #REQUIRED>
```

You can use letters, numbers, and the hyphen (-) and underscore (\_) characters for the attribute values.

**Table 5** Common Attribute Types

Type Description	Attribute Type
<code>CDATA</code>	Any character data
<code>(V<sub>1</sub>   V<sub>2</sub>   . . . )</code>	One of $V_1, V_2, \dots$

**Table 6** Attribute Defaults

Default Declaration	Explanation
#REQUIRED	Attribute is required
#IMPLIED	Attribute is optional
V	Default attribute, to be used if attribute is not specified
#FIXED V	Attribute must either be unspecified or contain this value

There are other type descriptions that are less common in practice. You can find them in the XML reference (<http://www.xml.com/xml/xml1.html>).

The attribute type description is followed by a “default” declaration. The reserved words that can appear in a “default” declaration are listed in Table 6.

For example, this attribute declaration specifies that each `price` element must have a `currency` attribute whose value is any character data:

```
<!ATTLIST price currency CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

To fulfill this declaration, each `price` element must have a `currency` attribute, such as `<price currency="USD">`. A price without a currency would not be valid.

For an optional attribute, you use the `#IMPLIED` reserved word instead:

```
<!ATTLIST price currency CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

That means that you can supply a `currency` attribute in a `price` element, or you can omit it. If you omit it, then the application that processes the XML data implicitly assumes some default currency.

A better choice would be to supply the default value explicitly:

```
<!ATTLIST price currency CDATA "USD">
```

That means that the `currency` attribute is understood to mean `USD` if the attribute is not specified. An XML parser will then report the value of `currency` as `USD` if the attribute was not specified.

Finally, you can state that an attribute can only be identical to a particular value. For example, the rule

```
<!ATTLIST price currency CDATA #FIXED "USD">
```

means that a `price` element must either not have a `currency` attribute at all (in which case the XML parser will report its value as `USD`), or specify the `currency` attribute as `USD`. Naturally, this kind of rule is not very common.

You have now seen the most common constructs for DTDs. Using these constructs, you can define your own DTDs for XML documents that describe data sets. In the next section, you will see how to specify which DTD an XML document should use, and how to have the XML parser check that a document conforms to its DTD.

#### 24.4.2 Specifying a DTD in an XML Document

When you reference a DTD with an XML document, you can instruct the parser to check that the document follows the rules of the DTD. That way, the parser can check errors in the document.

An XML document can contain its DTD or refer to a DTD that is stored elsewhere.

In the preceding section you saw how to develop a DTD for a class of XML documents. The DTD specifies the permitted elements and attributes in the document. An XML document has two ways of referencing a DTD:

1. The document may contain the DTD.
2. The document may refer to a DTD that is stored elsewhere.

A DTD is introduced with the `DOCTYPE` declaration. If the document contains its DTD, then the declaration looks like this:

```
<!DOCTYPE rootElement [ rules ]>
```

For example, an item list can include its DTD like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE items [
    <!ELEMENT items (item*)>
    <!ELEMENT item (product, quantity)>
    <!ELEMENT product (description, price)>
    <!ELEMENT quantity (#PCDATA)>
    <!ELEMENT description (#PCDATA)>
    <!ELEMENT price (#PCDATA)>
]>
<items>
    <item>
        <product>
            <description>Ink Jet Refill Kit</description>
            <price>29.95</price>
        </product>
        <quantity>8</quantity>
    </item>
    <item>
        <product>
            <description>4-port Mini Hub</description>
            <price>19.95</price>
        </product>
        <quantity>4</quantity>
    </item>
</items>
```

However, if the DTD is more complex, then it is better to store it outside the XML document. In that case, you use the `SYSTEM` reserved word inside the `DOCTYPE` declaration to indicate that the system that hosts the XML processor must locate the DTD. The `SYSTEM` reserved word is followed by the location of the DTD. For example, a `DOCTYPE` declaration might point to a local file

```
<!DOCTYPE items SYSTEM "items.dtd">
```

Alternatively, the resource might be a URL anywhere on the Web:

```
<!DOCTYPE items SYSTEM "http://www.mycompany.com/dtds/items.dtd">
```

For commonly used DTDs, the `DOCTYPE` declaration can contain a `PUBLIC` reserved word. For example,

```
<!DOCTYPE faces-config PUBLIC
    "-//Sun Microsystems, Inc.//DTD JavaServer Faces Config 1.0//EN"
    "http://java.sun.com/dtd/web-facesconfig_1_0.dtd">
```

When referencing an external DTD, you must supply a URL for locating the DTD.

A program parsing the DTD can look at the public identifier. If it is a familiar identifier, then it need not spend time retrieving the DTD from the URL.

### 24.4.3 Parsing and Validation

When your XML document has a DTD, you can request validation when parsing.

When you parse an XML file with a DTD, tell the parser to ignore white space.

When you include a DTD with an XML document, then you can tell the parser to *validate* the document. That means that the parser will check that all child elements and attributes of an element conform to the ELEMENT and ATTLIST rules in the DTD. If a document is invalid, then the parser reports an error. To turn on validation, you use the `setValidating` method of the `DocumentBuilderFactory` class before calling the `newDocumentBuilder` method:

```
DocumentBuilderFactory factory = DocumentBuilderFactory.newInstance();
factory.setValidating(true);
DocumentBuilder builder = factory.newDocumentBuilder();
Document doc = builder.parse(. . .);
```

Validation can simplify your code for processing XML documents. For example, if the DTD specifies that the child elements of each `item` element are `product` and `quantity` elements in that order, then you can rely on that fact and don't need to put tedious checks in your code.

If the parser has access to the DTD, it can make another useful improvement. By default, the parser converts all spaces in the input document to text, even if the spaces are only used to logically line up elements. As a result, the document contains text nodes that are wasteful and can be confusing when you analyze the document tree.

To make the parser ignore white space, call the `setIgnoringElementContentWhitespace` method of the `DocumentBuilderFactory` class.

```
factory.setValidating(true);
factory.setIgnoringElementContentWhitespace(true);
```

Finally, if the parser has access to the DTD, it can fill in default values for attributes. For example, suppose a DTD defines a `currency` attribute for a `price` element:

```
<!ATTLIST price currency CDATA "USD">
```

If a document contains a `price` element without a `currency` attribute, then the parser can supply the default:

```
String attributeValue = priceElement.getAttribute("currency");
// Gets "USD" if no currency specified
```

This concludes our discussion of XML. You now know enough XML to put it to work for describing data formats. Whenever you are tempted to use a “quick and dirty” file format, you should consider using XML instead. By using XML for data interchange, your programs become more professional, robust, and flexible.

#### SELF CHECK



8. How can a DTD specify that the `quantity` element in an `item` is optional?
9. How can a DTD specify that a `product` element can contain a `description` and a `price` element, in any order?
10. How can a DTD specify that the `description` element has an optional attribute `language`?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R24.13, E24.3, E24.5.

## HOW TO 24.3

## Writing a DTD



You write a DTD to describe a set of XML documents of the same type. The DTD specifies which elements contain child elements (and the order in which they may appear) and which elements contain text. It also specifies which elements may have attributes, which attributes are required, and which defaults are used for missing attributes.

These rules are for DTDs that describe program data. DTDs that describe narrative text generally have a much more complex structure.

**Step 1** Get or write a couple of sample XML documents.

For example, if you wanted to make a DTD for XML documents that describe an invoice, you could study samples such as the one in How To 24.1.

**Step 2** Make a list of all elements that can occur in the XML document.

In the invoice example, they are

- invoice
- address
- name
- street
- city
- state
- zip
- items
- item
- product
- description
- quantity

**Step 3** For each of the elements, decide whether its children are elements or text.

It is best to avoid elements whose children are a mixture of both.

In the invoice example, the following elements have element content:

- invoice
- address
- items
- item
- product

The remainder contain text.

**Step 4** For elements that contain text, the DTD rule is

```
<!ELEMENT elementName (#PCDATA)>
```

Thus, we have the following simple rules for the invoice elements that contain text:

```
<!ELEMENT name (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT street (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT city (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT state (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT zip (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT quantity (#PCDATA)>
<!ELEMENT description (#PCDATA)>
```

**Step 5** For each element that contains other elements, make a list of the possible child elements.

Here are the lists in the invoice example:

- invoice
- address
- name
- items
- street
- city
- state
- zip
- items
- item
- product
- description
- quantity
- price

**Step 6** For each of those elements, decide in which order the child elements should occur and how often they should occur.

Then form the rule

```
<!ELEMENT elementName child1 count1, child2 count2, . . .>
```

where each *count* is one of the following:

Quantity	Count
0 or 1	?
1	omit
0 or more	*
1 or more	+

In the invoice example, the *items* element can contain any number of items, so the rule is

```
<!ELEMENT items (item*)>
```

In the remaining cases, each child element occurs exactly once. That leads to the rules

```
<!ELEMENT invoice (address, items)>
<!ELEMENT address (name, street, city, state, zip)>
<!ELEMENT item (product, quantity)>
<!ELEMENT product (descripton, price)>
```

**Step 7** Decide whether any elements should have attributes.

Following Programming Tip 24.1, it is best to avoid attributes altogether or to minimize the use of attributes. Because we have no good reason to add attributes in the invoice example, our invoice is complete without attributes.

## Special Topic 24.2



### Schema Languages

Several mechanisms have been developed to deal with the limitations of DTDs. DTDs cannot express certain details about the structure of an XML document. For example, you can't force an element to contain just a number or a date—any text string is allowed for a (#PCDATA) element.

The XML Schema specification is one mechanism for overcoming these limitations. An XML schema is like a DTD in that it is a set of rules that documents of a particular type need to follow, but a schema can contain far more precise rule descriptions.

Here is just a hint of how an XML schema is specified. For each element, you specify the element name and the type. For example, this definition restricts the contents of quantity to an integer.

```
<xsd:element name="quantity" type="xsd:integer"/>
```

Note that an XML schema is itself written in XML—unlike a DTD, which uses a completely different syntax. (The *xsd:* prefix is a *name space* prefix to denote that *xsd:element* and *xsd:integer* are part of the XML Schema Definition name space. See Special Topic 24.3 for more information about name spaces.)

In XML Schema, you can define complex types, much as you define classes in Java. Here is the definition of an Address type:

```
<xsd:complexType name="Address">
  <xsd:sequence>
    <xsd:element name="name" type="xsd:string"/>
    <xsd:element name="street" type="xsd:string"/>
    <xsd:element name="city" type="xsd:string"/>
    <xsd:element name="state" type="xsd:string"/>
    <xsd:element name="zip" type="xsd:string"/>
  </xsd:sequence>
</xsd:complexType>
```

Then you can specify that an invoice should have `shipto` and `billto` instance variables that are both of type `Address`:

```
<xsd:element name="shipto" type="Address"/>
<xsd:element name="billto" type="Address"/>
```

These examples show that an XML schema can be more precise than a DTD.

The XML Schema specification has many advanced features—see the W3C web site, [www.w3.org/xml](http://www.w3.org/xml), for details. However, some programmers find that specification overly complex and instead use a competing standard called Relax NG—see [www.relaxng.org](http://www.relaxng.org). Relax NG is simpler than XML Schema, and it shares a feature with DTDs: a compact notation that is not XML.

For example, in Relax NG, you simply write

```
element quantity { xsd:integer }
```

to denote that `quantity` is an element containing an integer. The designers of Relax NG realized that XML, despite its many advantages, is not always the best notation for humans.

## Special Topic 24.3



### Other XML Technologies

This chapter covers the subset of the XML 1.0 specification that is most useful for common programming situations. Since version 1.0 of the XML specification was released, there has been a huge amount of interest in advanced XML technologies. A number of useful technologies have recently been standardized. Among them are:

- Schema Definitions
- Name Spaces
- XHTML
- XSL and Transformations

Special Topic 24.2 contains more information about schema definitions.

Name spaces were invented to ensure that many different people and organizations can develop XML documents without running into conflicts with element names. For example, if you look inside Special Topic 24.2, you will see that XML Schema definitions have element names that are prefixed with a tag `xsd:`, such as

```
<xsd:element name="city" type="xsd:string"/>
```

That way, the tag and attribute names, such as `element` and `string`, don't conflict with other names. In that regard, name spaces are similar to Java packages. However, a name space prefix such as `xsd:` is just a shortcut for the actual name space identifier, which is a much longer, unique string. For example, the full name space for XML Schema definitions is <http://www.w3.org/2000/08/XMLSchema>. Each schema definition starts out with the statement

```
<xsd:schema xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2000/08/XMLSchema">
```

which binds the `xsd` prefix to the full name space.

XHTML is the most recent recommendation of the W3C for formatting web pages. Unlike HTML, XHTML is fully XML-compliant. Once web-editing tools switch to XHTML, it will become much easier to write programs that parse web pages. The XHTML standard has been carefully designed to be backward compatible with existing browsers.

While XHTML documents are intended to be viewed by browsers, general XML documents are not designed to be viewed at all. Nevertheless, it is often desirable to *transform* an XML document into a viewable form. XSL (Extensible Stylesheet Language) was created for this purpose. A style sheet indicates how to change an XML document into an HTML document, or even a completely different format, such as PDF.

For more information on these and other emerging technologies, see the W3C web site, <http://www.w3.org/xml>.

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### **Describe the purpose of XML and the structure of an XML document.**

- XML allows you to encode complex data, independent of any programming language, in a form that the recipient can easily parse.
- XML files are readable by computer programs and by humans.
- XML-formatted data files are resilient to change.
- XML describes the meaning of data, not how to display them.
- An XML document starts out with an XML declaration and contains elements and text.
- An element can contain text, child elements, or both (mixed content). For data descriptions, avoid mixed content.
- Elements can have attributes. Use attributes to describe how to interpret the element content.

### **Use a parser and the XPath language to process an XML document.**

- A parser is a program that reads a document, checks whether it is syntactically correct, and takes some action as it processes the document.
- A streaming parser reports the building blocks of an XML document. A tree-based parser builds a document tree.
- A DocumentBuilder can read an XML document from a file, URL, or input stream. The result is a Document object, which contains a tree.
- An XPath describes a node or node set, using a notation similar to that for directory paths.

### **Write Java programs that create XML documents.**

- The Document interface has methods to create elements and text nodes.
- Use an LSSerializer to write a DOM document.

### **Explain the use of DTDs for validating XML documents.**

- A DTD is a sequence of rules that describes the valid child elements and attributes for each element type.

- An XML document can contain its DTD or refer to a DTD that is stored elsewhere.
- When referencing an external DTD, you must supply a URL for locating the DTD.
- When your XML document has a DTD, you can request validation when parsing.
- When you parse an XML file with a DTD, tell the parser to ignore white space.

### STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER

<code>javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilder</code>	<code>org.w3c.dom.DOMConfiguration</code>
<code>newDocument</code>	<code>setParameter</code>
<code>parse</code>	<code>org.w3c.dom.DOMImplementation</code>
<code>javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory</code>	<code>getFeature</code>
<code>newDocumentBuilder</code>	<code>org.w3c.dom.Element</code>
<code>newInstance</code>	<code>getAttribute</code>
<code>setIgnoringElementContentWhitespace</code>	<code>setAttribute</code>
<code>setValidating</code>	<code>org.w3c.dom.ls.DOMImplementationLS</code>
<code>javax.xml.xpath.XPath</code>	<code>createLSSerializer</code>
<code>evaluate</code>	<code>org.w3c.dom.ls.LSSerializer</code>
<code>javax.xml.xpath.XPathExpressionException</code>	<code>getDomConfig</code>
<code>javax.xml.xpath.XPathFactory</code>	<code>writeToString</code>
<code>newInstance</code>	<code>org.xml.sax.SAXException</code>
<code>newXPath</code>	
<code>org.w3c.dom.Document</code>	
<code>createElement</code>	
<code>createTextNode</code>	
<code>getImplementation</code>	

### REVIEW QUESTIONS

- **R24.1** Give some examples to show the differences between XML and HTML.
- **R24.2** Design an XML document that describes a bank account.
- **R24.3** Draw a tree view for the XML document you created in Exercise R24.2.
- **R24.4** Write the XML document that corresponds to the parse tree in Figure 2.
- **R24.5** Make an XML document describing a book, with child elements for the author name, the title, and the publication year.
- **R24.6** Add a description of the book's language to the document of Exercise R24.5. Should you use an element or an attribute?
- ■ **R24.7** What is mixed content? What problems does it cause?
- ■ **R24.8** Design an XML document that describes a purse containing three quarters, a dime, and two nickels.
- ■ **R24.9** Explain why a paint program, such as Microsoft Paint, is a WYSIWYG program that is also "what you see is all you've got".

**■■ R24.10** Consider the XML file

```
<purse>
  <coin>
    <value>0.5</value>
    <name lang="en">half dollar</name>
  </coin>
  <coin>
    <value>0.25</value>
    <name lang="en">quarter</name>
  </coin>
</purse>
```

What are the values of the following XPath expressions?

- a.** /purse/coin[1]/value
- b.** /purse/coin[2]/name
- c.** /purse/coin[2]/name/@lang
- d.** name(/purse/coin[2]/\*[1])
- e.** count(/purse/coin)
- f.** count(/purse/coin[2]/name)

**■■ R24.11** With the XML file of Exercise R24.10, give XPath expressions that yield

- a.** the value of the first coin.
- b.** the number of coins.
- c.** the name of the first child element of the first coin element.
- d.** the name of the first attribute of the first coin's name element. (The expression @\* selects the attributes of an element.)
- e.** the value of the lang attribute of the second coin's name element.

**■■■ R24.12** Harry Hopeless doesn't want to build a DOM tree to produce an XML document. Instead, he uses the following code:

```
System.out.println("<?xml version='1.0'?><items>");
for (LineItem anItem: items)
{
    Product p = anItem.getProduct();
    System.out.println("<item><product><description>" + p.getDescription()
        + "</description><price>" + p.getPrice()
        + "</price></product><quantity>" + anItem.getQuantity()
        + "<quantity></item>");
}
System.out.println("</items>");
```

What can go wrong? How can one fix the problems?

**■■ R24.13** Design a DTD that describes a bank with bank accounts.**■■ R24.14** Design a DTD that describes a library patron who has checked out a set of books. Each book has an ID number, an author, and a title. The patron has a name and telephone number.**■■ R24.15** Write the DTD file for the following XML document

```
<?xml version='1.0'?>
<productlist>
  <product>
    <name>Comtrade Tornado</name>
```

```

<price currency="USD">2495</price>
<score>60</score>
</product>
<product>
    <name>AMAX Powerstation 75</name>
    <price>2999</price>
    <score>62</score>
</product>
</productlist>

```

- R24.16 Design a DTD for invoices, as described in How To 24.3.
- R24.17 Design a DTD for simple English sentences, as described in Special Topic 24.1.
- R24.18 Design a DTD for arithmetic expressions, as described in Special Topic 24.1.

### PRACTICE EXERCISES

- E24.1 Write a program that can read XML files, such as

```

<purse>
    <coin>
        <value>0.5</value>
        <name>half dollar</name>
    </coin>
    .
    .
    .
</purse>

```

Your program should construct a `Purse` object and print the total value of the coins in the purse.

- E24.2 Building on Exercise E24.1, make the program read an XML file as described in that exercise. Then print an XML file of the form

```

<purse>
    <coins>
        <coin>
            <value>0.5</value>
            <name>half dollar</name>
        </coin>
        <quantity>3</quantity>
    </coins>
    <coins>
        <coin>
            <value>0.25</value>
            <name>quarter</name>
        </coin>
        <quantity>2</quantity>
    </coins>
</purse>

```

- E24.3 Repeat Exercise E24.1, using a DTD for validation.
- E24.4 Write a program that can read XML files, such as

```

<bank>
    <account>
        <number>3</number>
        <balance>1295.32</balance>

```

```

</account>
. . .
</bank>
```

Your program should construct a Bank object and print the total value of the balances in the accounts.

**■■ E24.5** Repeat Exercise E24.4, using a DTD for validation.

**■■ E24.6** Enhance Exercise E24.4 as follows: First read the XML file in, then add ten percent interest to all accounts, and write an XML file that contains the increased account balances.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

**■■■ P24.1** Write a DTD file that describes documents that contain information about countries: name of the country, its population, and its area. Create an XML file that has five different countries. The DTD and XML should be in different files. Write a program that uses the XML file you wrote and prints:

- The country with the largest area.
- The country with the largest population.
- The country with the largest population density (people per square kilometer).

**■■■ P24.2** Write a parser to parse invoices using the invoice structure described in How To 24.1. The parser should parse the XML file into an Invoice object and print out the invoice in the format used in Chapter 12.

**■■■ P24.3** Modify Exercise P24.2 to support separate shipping and billing addresses. Supply a modified DTD with your solution.

**■■■ P24.4** Write a document builder that turns an invoice object, as defined in Chapter 12, into an XML file of the format described in How To 24.2.

**■■■ P24.5** Modify Exercise P24.4 to support separate shipping and billing addresses.

**■ Graphics P24.6** Write a program that can read an XML document of the form

```

<rectangle>
  <x>5</x>
  <y>10</y>
  <width>20</width>
  <height>30</height>
</rectangle>
```

and draw the shape in a window.

**■ Graphics P24.7** Write a program that can read an XML document of the form

```

<ellipse>
  <x>5</x>
  <y>10</y>
  <width>20</width>
  <height>30</height>
</ellipse>
```

and draw the shape in a window.

- Graphics P24.8** Write a program that can read an XML document of the form

```
<rectangularshape shape="ellipse">
    <x>5</x>
    <y>10</y>
    <width>20</width>
    <height>30</height>
</rectangularshape>
```

Support shape attributes "rectangle", "roundrectangle", and "ellipse".

Draw the shape in a window.

- Graphics P24.9** Write a program that can read an XML document of the form

```
<polygon>
    <point>
        <x>5</x>
        <y>10</y>
    </point>
    .
    .
    .
</polygon>
```

and draw the shape in a window.

- Graphics P24.10** Write a program that can read an XML document of the form

```
<drawing>
    <rectangle>
        <x>5</x>
        <y>10</y>
        <width>20</width>
        <height>30</height>
    </rectangle>
    <line>
        <x1>5</x1>
        <y1>10</y1>
        <x2>25</x2>
        <y2>40</y2>
    </line>
    <message>
        <text>Hello, World!</text>
        <x>20</x>
        <y>30</y>
    </message>
</drawing>
```

and show the drawing in a window.

- Graphics P24.11** Repeat Exercise P24.10, using a DTD for validation.

- P24.12** Following Exercise P12.2, design an XML format for the appointments in an appointment calendar. Write a program that first reads in a file with appointments, then another file of the format

```
<commands>
    <add>
        <appointment>
        .
        .
        .
        </appointment>
    </add>
    .
    .
    .
    <remove>
```

```

<appointment>
    ...
</appointment>
</remove>
</commands>

```

Your program should process the commands and then produce an XML file that consists of the updated appointments.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

- 1.** Your answer should look similar to this:

```

<student>
    <name>James Bond</name>
    <id>007</id>
</student>

```

- 2.** Most browsers display a tree structure that indicates the nesting of the tags. Some browsers display nothing at all because they can't find any HTML tags.
- 3.** The text hamster.jpg is never displayed, so it should not be a part of the document. Instead, the src attribute tells the browser where to find the image that should be displayed.
- 4.** 29.95.
- 5.** name(/\*[1]).

- 6.** The `createTextElement` method is useful for creating other documents.

- 7.** First construct a string, as described, and then use a `PrintWriter` to save the string to a file.

- 8.** `<!ELEMENT item (product, quantity?)>`

- 9.** `<!ELEMENT product ((description, price) | (price, description))>`

- 10.** `<!ATTLIST description language CDATA #IMPLIED>`



# WEB APPLICATIONS

## CHAPTER GOALS

- To understand the web application concept
- To learn the syntactical elements of the JavaServer Faces web application framework
- To manage navigation in web applications
- To build three-tier web applications



## CHAPTER CONTENTS

**25.1 THE ARCHITECTURE OF A WEB APPLICATION** W1056

**25.2 THE ARCHITECTURE OF A JSF APPLICATION** W1058

*Special Topic 25.1:* Session State and Cookies W1063

**25.3 JAVABEANS COMPONENTS** W1064

**25.4 NAVIGATION BETWEEN PAGES** W1065

*How To 25.1:* Designing a Managed Bean W1071

**25.5 JSF COMPONENTS** W1072

**25.6 A THREE-TIER APPLICATION** W1074

*Special Topic 25.2:* AJAX W1081



Web applications for a wide variety of purposes, such as e-mail, banking, shopping, and playing games, run on servers and interact with users through a web browser. Developing web-based user interfaces is more complex and challenging than writing graphical user interfaces. Fortunately, frameworks for web programming have emerged that are roughly analogous to Java's Swing framework for user-interface programming. In this chapter, you will learn how to write web applications using the JavaServer Faces (JSF) framework.

## 25.1 The Architecture of a Web Application

The user interface of a web application is displayed in a web browser.

A **web application** is an application whose user interface is displayed in a web browser. The application program resides on the web server. The user fills out form elements and clicks on buttons and links. The user inputs are transmitted over the Internet to the server, and the server program updates the web page that the user sees (see Figure 1).

The browser sends a request to the server using a protocol called HTTP (Hyper-text transfer protocol). When a user clicks on a link, the request is very simple. The browser simply asks the server for the page with a given address, for example:

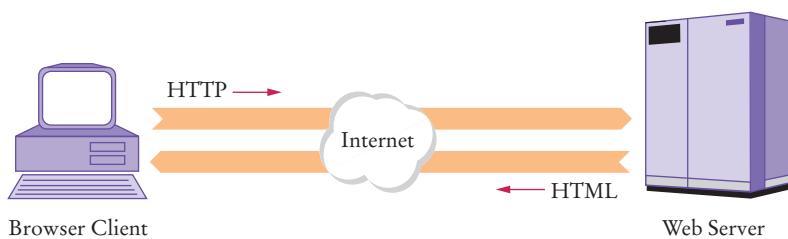
```
GET /index.html HTTP/1.1  
Host: horstmann.com
```

When the user fills data (such as a user name and password) into a form and then clicks on a button, the HTTP request includes the data that the user provided. Such a request has a slightly different format, like this:

```
POST /login.xhtml HTTP/1.1  
Host: horstmann.com  
Content-Type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded  
Content-Length: 46  
blank line  
username=jqpublic&passwd=secret&login=Log%20in
```

When a form is submitted, the names and values of the form elements are sent to the web server.

The exact syntax of the request is not important; what matters is that HTTP simply tells the server what the user requested. As a result of the request, the server sends a web page in a format called HTML (Hypertext markup language). An HTML page contains tags that describe the structure of the page: headings, bullets, links, images, input elements, and so on.



**Figure 1** The Architecture of a Web Application

For example, here is the HTML code for a simple form that prompts for a user name and password:

```
<html>
  <head>
    <title>A Simple Form</title>
  </head>
  <body>
    <form action="login.xhtml" method="POST">
      <p>
        User name:
        <input type="text" name="username" />
        Password:
        <input type="password" name="passwd" />
        <input type="submit" name="login" value="Log in"/>
      </p>
    </form>
  </body>
</html>
```

Figure 2 shows the form. Note that there are three input elements: a text field, a password field, and a submit button. (The HTML tags are summarized in Appendix J.)

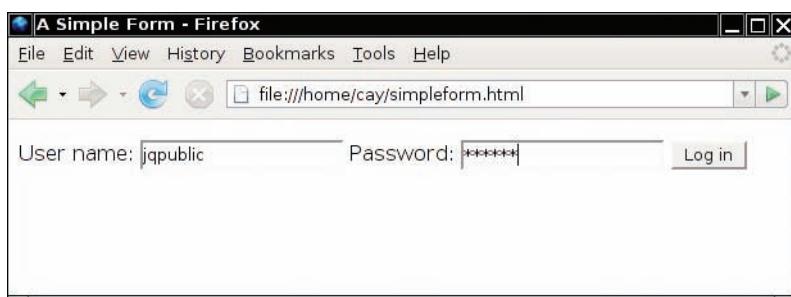
When a submit button is pressed, the form data is submitted to the server. The web server analyzes the request and sends a new HTML page to the browser. The new page might tell the user that the login was successful and ask the user to specify another action. Alternatively, the new page might tell the user that the login failed.

This simple example illustrates why it is difficult to implement a web application. Imagine what the server program has to do. At any time, it might receive a request with form data. At that point, the server program has to remember which form it has last sent to the client. It then needs to analyze the submitted data, decide what form to show next, and produce the HTML tags for that form.

There are multiple challenges. As described in Special Topic 25.1, the HTTP protocol is *stateless*—there is no memory of which form was last sent when a new request is received. Generating the HTML tags for a form is tedious. Perhaps most importantly, an application that consists of response strategies for a large number of request types is very hard to comprehend without additional structure.

In order to overcome these challenges, various web application frameworks have been developed. A web application framework hides the low-level details of analyzing HTTP and generating HTML from the application programmer. In this chapter, you will learn about the **JavaServer Faces** (JSF) framework, the web framework that is a part of the Java Enterprise Edition. You can think of JSF as “Swing for the Web”.

Upon receiving the form data, the web server sends a new web page to the browser.



**Figure 2** A Simple Form

Both Swing and JSF handle the tedious details of capturing user input and painting text fields and buttons. Swing captures mouse and keyboard events and paints pixels in a frame. JSF handles form-posting events and paints by emitting HTML code. This chapter describes JSF 2.0, an improved version of the original JSF framework, that became available in 2009.

**SELF CHECK**

1. Why are two different protocols (HTML and HTTP) required by a web application?
2. How can a web application know which user is trying to log in when the information of the sample login screen is submitted?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R25.1, R25.2.

## 25.2 The Architecture of a JSF Application

In the following sections, we give an overview of the architecture of a JSF application and show a very simple sample application.

### 25.2.1 JSF Pages

The user interface of a JSF application is described by a set of *JSF pages*. Each JSF page has the following structure:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
      xmlns:h="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html">
  <h:head>
    <title>Page title</title>
  </h:head>
  <h:body>
    <h:form>
      Page contents
    </h:form>
  </h:body>
</html>
```

A JavaServer Faces (JSF) page contains HTML and JSF tags.

You can think of this as the required “plumbing”, similar to the `public static void main` incantation that is required for every Java program. If you compare this page with the HTML page from the preceding section, you will notice that the main elements are very similar to a regular HTML page, but several elements (`head`, `body`, and `form`) are JSF tags with an `h:` prefix.

Here is a complete example of a JSF page:

#### section\_2/time/index.xhtml

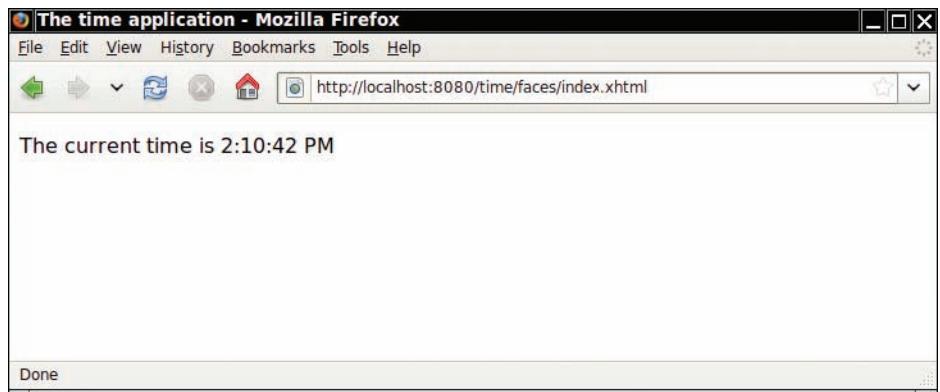
```
1  <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2  <html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
3      xmlns:h="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html">
4  <h:head>
5      <title>The time application</title>
6  </h:head>
```

```

7   <h:body>
8     <h:form>
9       <p>
10      The current time is #{timeBean.time}
11    </p>
12  </h:form>
13 </h:body>
14 </html>

```

Figure 3 shows the result of executing the program.



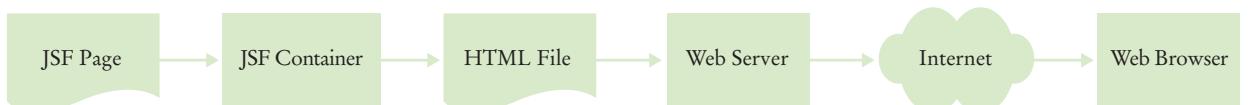
**Figure 3** Executing the time Web Application

The JSF container converts a JSF page to an HTML page, replacing all JSF tags with text and HTML tags.

The purpose of a JSF page is to *generate* an HTML page. The basic process is as follows:

- The HTML tags that are present in the JSF page (such as `title` and `p`) are retained. These are the *static* part of the page: the formatting instructions that do not change.
- The JSF tags are translated into HTML. This translation is *dynamic*: it depends on the state of Java objects that are associated with the tags. In our example, the expression `#{timeBean.time}` has been replaced by dynamically generated text, namely the current time.

Figure 4 shows the basic process. The browser requests a JSF page. The page is processed by the **JSF container**, the server-side software that implements the JSF framework. The JSF container translates all JSF tags into text and HTML tags, yielding a pure HTML page. That page is transmitted to the client browser. The browser displays the page.



**Figure 4** The JSF Container Rewrites the Requested Page

## 25.2.2 Managed Beans

A managed bean is an object that is controlled by the JSF container.

A bean with session scope is available for multiple requests by the same browser.

The expression `#{timeBean.time}` is called a **value expression**. Value expressions invoke method calls on Java objects, which are called *managed beans*.

These objects are called “managed” because they are controlled by the JSF container. The container creates a managed bean when it is first used in a value expression. The *scope* of the managed bean determines which clients can access the object and how long the object stays alive.

In this chapter, we only consider managed beans with *session scope*. A session-scoped object can be accessed by all requests from the same browser. If multiple users are simultaneously accessing a JSF application, each of them is given a separate object. This is a good default for simple web applications.

Below is the code for the `TimeBean` class. Note the following:

- You declare a session-scoped managed bean with the annotations `@ManagedBean` and `@SessionScoped`.
- The name of the bean in a value expression is the class name with the first letter changed to lowercase, e.g., `timeBean`.
- The value expression `timeBean.time` calls the `getTime` method. You will see the reason in the next section.
- The `getTime` method uses the `DateFormat` class to format the current time, producing a string such as `9:00:00 AM`.
- When deploying the application, all class files must be placed inside the `WEB-INF/classes` directory. Because many application servers also require that classes be contained in a package, we place our classes inside the `bigjava` package. For that reason, the class is contained in the `WEB-INF/classes/bigjava` directory.

### [section\\_2/time/WEB-INF/classes/bigjava/TimeBean.java](#)

```

1  package bigjava;
2
3  import java.text.DateFormat;
4  import java.util.Date;
5  import java.util.TimeZone;
6  import javax.faces.bean.ManagedBean;
7  import javax.faces.bean.SessionScoped;
8
9  @ManagedBean
10 @SessionScoped
11 public class TimeBean
12 {
13     private DateFormat timeFormatter;
14
15     /**
16      * Initializes the formatter.
17     */
18     public TimeBean()
19     {
20         timeFormatter = DateFormat.getTimeInstance();
21     }
22
23     /**
24      * Read-only time property.
25      * @return the formatted time

```

```

26     */
27     public String getTime()
28     {
29         Date time = new Date();
30         String timeString = timeFormatter.format(time);
31         return timeString;
32     }
33 }
```

The JSF technology enables the separation of presentation and business logic.

### 25.2.3 Separation of Presentation and Business Logic

We will look at value expressions and managed beans in more detail in the next section. The key observation is that every JSF application has two parts: *presentation* and *business logic*.

The term “presentation” refers to the user interface of the web application: the arrangement of the text, images, buttons, and so on. The *business logic* is the part of the application that is independent of the visual presentation. In commercial applications, it contains the rules that are used for business decisions: what products to offer, how much to charge, to whom to extend credit, and so on. In our example, we simulated the business logic with a `TimeBean` object.

JSF pages define the presentation logic. Managed beans define the business logic. Value expressions tie the two together.

The separation of presentation logic and business logic is very important when designing web applications. Some web technologies place the code for the business logic right into the web page. However, this quickly turns into a serious problem. Programmers are rarely skilled in web design (as you can see from the boring web pages in this chapter). Graphic designers don’t usually know much about programming and find it very challenging to improve web pages that contain a lot of code. JSF solves this problem. In JSF, the graphic designer only sees the elements that make up the presentation logic. It is easy to take a boring JSF page and make it pretty by adding banners, icons, and so on.

### 25.2.4 Deploying a JSF Application

To run a JSF application, you need a server with a **JSF container**. We suggest that you use the GlassFish application server, <http://glassfish.java.net>, which has, together with many other features that you can ignore, a JSF container and a convenient administration interface.

To deploy a JSF application, follow these steps:

1. Make a separate directory tree for each web application.
2. Place JSF pages (such as `index.xhtml`) into the root directory of the application’s directory tree.
3. Create a `WEB-INF` subdirectory in your application directory.
4. Place all Java classes inside a `classes` subdirectory of the `WEB-INF` directory. Note that you should place your classes into a package. Compile with

```
cd WEB-INF/classes
javac -classpath glassfish/modules/jpf-api.jar bigjava/*.java
```

5. Place the file `web.xml` (which is shown below) inside the `WEB-INF` subdirectory. Some servers need the `web.xml` file to configure the JSF container. We also turn on development mode, which gives better error messages.
6. Zip up all application files into a file with extension `.war` (Web Archive). This is easily achieved by running the `jar` command from the command line, after changing to the application directory. For example,

```
cd time
jar cvf time.war .
```

The period (.) denotes the current directory. The `jar` command creates an archive `time.war` consisting of all files in all subdirectories of the current directory.

7. Make sure the application server is started. The application server listens to web requests, typically on port 8080.
8. Deploy the application to the application server. With GlassFish, this can be achieved either through the administrative interface or simply by copying the WAR file into a special deployment directory. By default, this is the subdirectory `domains/domain1/autodeploy` inside the GlassFish installation directory.
9. Point your browser to a URL such as `http://localhost:8080/time/faces/index.xhtml`. Note the `faces` part in the URL. If you forget this part, the file will not be processed by the JSF container.

Figure 5 shows the directory structure for the application.

**Figure 5**  
The Directory  
Structure of the  
time Application



### section\_2/time/WEB-INF/web.xml

```

1  <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2  <web-app xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
3      xmlns="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/javaee"
4      xmlns:web="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/javaee/web-app_2_5.xsd"
5      xsi:schemaLocation="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/javaee
6          http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/javaee/web-app_2_5.xsd"
7      version="2.5">
8      <servlet>
9          <servlet-name>Faces Servlet</servlet-name>
10         <servlet-class>javax.faces.webapp.FacesServlet</servlet-class>
11     </servlet>
12     <servlet-mapping>
13         <servlet-name>Faces Servlet</servlet-name>
14         <url-pattern>/faces/*</url-pattern>
15     </servlet-mapping>
16     <welcome-file-list>
17         <welcome-file>faces/index.xhtml</welcome-file>
18     </welcome-file-list>
19     <context-param>
20         <param-name>javax.faces.PROJECT_STAGE</param-name>
  
```

```

21      <param-value>Development</param-value>
22    </context-param>
23  </web-app>

```

**SELF CHECK**

3. What steps are required to add the image of a clock to the time application? (The clock doesn't have to show the correct time.)
4. Does a Swing program automatically separate presentation and business logic?
5. Why does the WAR file need to be deployed to the application server?

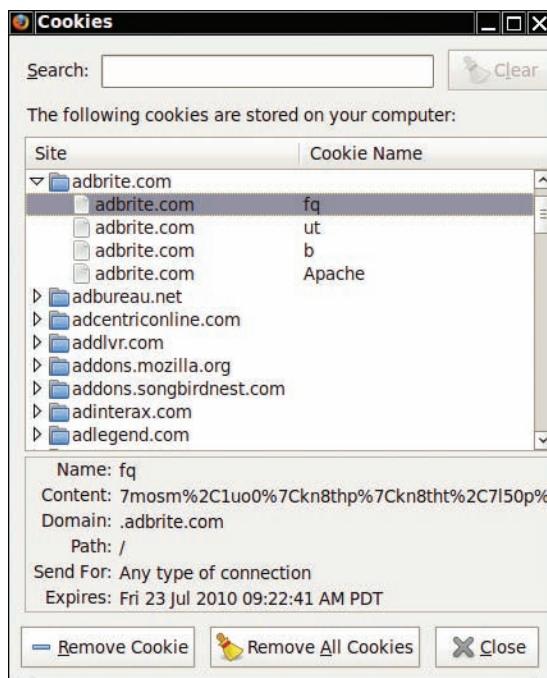
**Practice It**

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R25.1, R25.7, E25.1.

**Special Topic 25.1****Session State and Cookies**

Recall that HTTP is a *stateless* protocol. A browser sends a request to a web server. The web server sends the reply and then disconnects. This is different from other protocols, such as POP, where the mail client logs into the mail server and stays connected until it has retrieved all e-mail messages. In contrast, a browser makes a new connection to the web server for each web page, and the web server has no way of knowing that those connections originate from the same browser. This makes it difficult to implement web applications. For example, in a shopping application, it is essential to track which requests came from a particular shopper.

*Cookies* were invented to overcome this restriction. A cookie consists of a small string that the web server sends to a browser, and that the browser sends back to the same server with all further requests. That way, the server can tie the stream of requests together. The JSF container matches up the cookies with the beans that have session scope. When a browser request contains a cookie, the value expressions in the JSF page refer to the matching beans.



**Figure 6** Viewing the Cookies in a Browser

You may have heard some privacy advocates complaining about cookies. Cookies are not inherently evil. When used to establish a session or to remember login information, they can make web applications more user-friendly. But when cookies are used to track your identity while you surf the Web, there can be privacy concerns. For example, Figure 6 shows some of the cookies that my browser held on a particular day. I have no recollection of visiting the advertising sites, so it is a bit disconcerting to see that my browser communicated with them.

Some people turn off cookies, and then web applications need to use another scheme to establish a session, typically by embedding a session identifier in the request URL or in a hidden field of a form. The JSF session mechanism automatically switches to URLs with session identifiers if the client browser doesn't support cookies.

## 25.3 JavaBeans Components

Properties of a software component can be accessed without having to write Java code.

A JavaBean is a class that exposes properties through its get and set methods.

A *software component* is an entity that encapsulates functionality and can be plugged into a software system without programming. A managed bean is an example of a software component. When we added the `timeBean` object to the web application, we did not write Java code to construct the object or to call its methods.

Some programming languages have explicit support for components, but Java does not. Instead, in Java, you use a programming convention to implement components. A **JavaBean** is a Java class that follows this convention. A JavaBean exposes **properties**—values of the component that can be accessed without programming.

Just about any Java class can be a JavaBean—there are only two requirements:

- A JavaBean must have a constructor with no arguments.
- A JavaBean must have methods for accessing the component properties that follow the get/set naming convention. For example, to get or set a property named `city`, the methods must be called `getCity` and `setCity`.

In general, if the name of the property is *propertyName*, and its type is *Type*, then the associated methods must be of the form

```
public Type getPropertyname()
public void setPropertyname(Type newValue)
```

Note that the name of a property starts with a lowercase letter (such as `city`), but the corresponding methods have an uppercase letter (`getCity`). The only exception is that property names can be all capitals, such as `ID` or `URL`, with corresponding methods `getID` or `setURL`.

If a property has only a get method, then it is a *read-only* property. If it has only a set method, then it is a *write-only* property.

A JavaBean can have additional methods, but they are not connected with properties.

Here is a simple example of a bean class that formats the time for a given city, which we will further develop in the next section:

```
public class TimeZoneBean
{
    // Instance variables
    .
    .
    // Required constructor with no arguments
    public TimeZoneBean() { . . . }
```

```

// city property
public String getCity() { . . . }
public void setCity(String newValue) { . . . }

// Read-only time property
public String getTime() { . . . }

// Other methods
. . .
}

```

This bean has two properties: `city` and `time`.

You should *not* make any assumptions about the internal representation of properties in the bean class. The getter and setter methods may simply read or write an instance variable. But they may also do other work. An example is the `getTime` method from the `TimeBean` in the preceding section; it formats the current time.

When a property name is used in a value expression that is included in the JSF page, then the `get` method is involved. For example, when the string

`The current time is #{timeBean.time}`

is rendered, the JSF container calls the `getTime` method of the session's `TimeBean` instance.

When a property name is used in an `h:inputText` tag (that, is the equivalent of an HTML `input` field or a `JTextField`), the situation is more complex. Consider this example:

`<h:inputText value="#{timeZoneBean.city}" />`

When the JSF page is first displayed, the `getCity` method is called, and the current value of the `city` property is displayed. But after the user submits the page, the `setCity` method is called. It sets the `city` property to the value that the user typed into the input field.

### SELF CHECK



6. Is the `Scanner` class a JavaBean?
7. What work does the `setCity` method of the `TimeZoneBean` do?

### Practice It

Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R25.5, R25.6, E25.2.

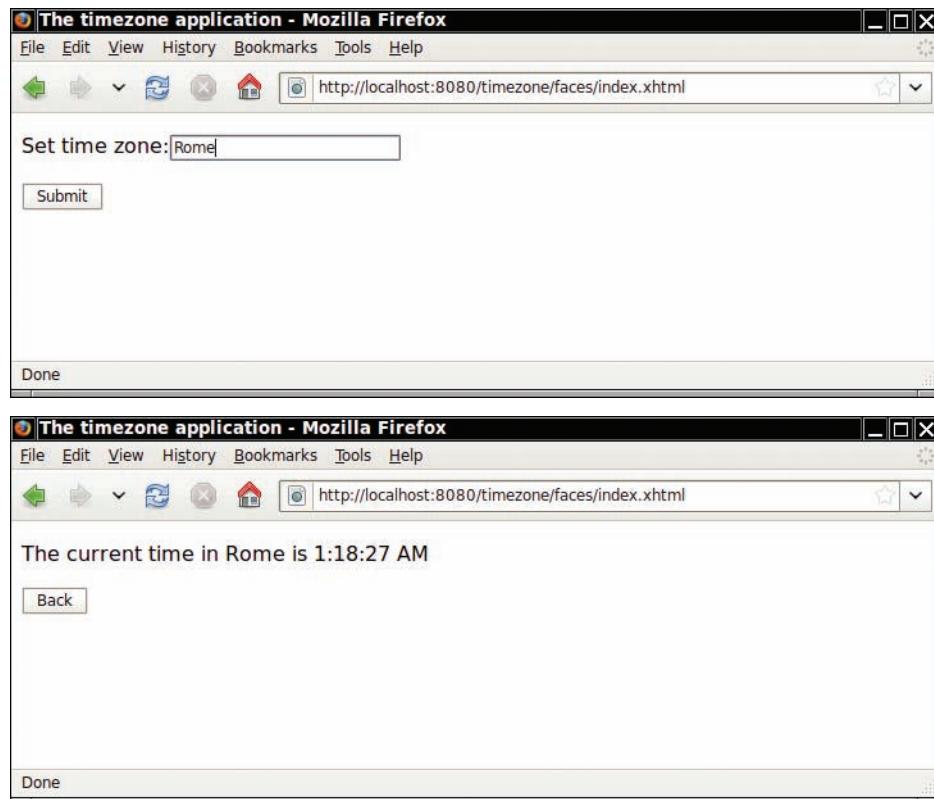
## 25.4 Navigation Between Pages

In most web applications, users will want to move between different pages. For example, a shopping application might have a login page, a page to show products for sale, and a checkout page that shows the shopping cart. In this section, you will learn how to enable users to navigate from one page to another.

Consider a sample time zone program that displays the current time. If the time computation uses the time zone *at the server location*, it will not be very useful when the user is in another time zone. Therefore, the program will prompt for the city in which the user is located. When the user clicks a submit button, the program moves to the page `next.xhtml` and display the time in the user's time zone (see Figure 7). However, if no time zone is available for the city, the program displays the page `error.xhtml`.

In the value expression of an output tag, only the property getter is called.

In the value expression of an input tag, the property setter is called when the page is submitted.



**Figure 7** The timezone Application

The outcome string of an action determines the next page that the JSF container sends to the browser.

A button yields an *outcome*, a string that determines the next page. Unless specified otherwise, the next page is the outcome string with the .xhtml extension added. For example, if the outcome string is error, the next page is error.xhtml. (It is possible to specify a different mapping from outcomes to pages, but there is no need to do so for a simple application.)

In many situations, the next page depends on the result of some computation. In our example, we need different outcomes depending on the city that the user entered. To achieve this flexibility, you specify a **method expression** as the action attribute:

```
<h:commandButton value="Submit" action="#{timeZoneBean.checkCity}"/>
```

A method expression consists of the name of a bean and the name of a method. When the form is submitted, the JSF container calls `timeZoneBean.checkCity()`. The `checkCity` method returns the outcome string:

```
public class TimeZoneBean
{
    .
    .
    public String checkCity()
    {
        zone = getTimeZone(city);
        if (zone == null) { return "error"; }
        return "next";
    }
}
```

A method expression specifies a bean and a method that should be invoked on the bean.

If the next page does not depend on a computation, then you set the `action` attribute of the button to a fixed outcome string, like this:

```
<h:commandButton value="Back" action="index"/>
```

If a button has no `action` attribute, or if the `action` outcome is `null`, then the current page is redisplayed.

We can now complete our time zone application. The Java library contains a convenient `TimeZone` class that knows about time zones across the world. A time zone is identified by a string such as "America/Los\_Angeles" or "Asia/Tokyo". The static method `getAvailableIDs` returns a string array containing all IDs:

```
String[] ids = TimeZone.getAvailableIDs();
```

There are several hundred time zone IDs. (We are using time zones in this example because the `TimeZone` class gives us an interesting data source with lots of data. Later in this chapter, you will see how to access data from a database, but of course that's more complex.)

The static `getTimeZone` method returns a `TimeZone` object for a given ID string:

```
String id = "America/Los_Angeles";
TimeZone zone = TimeZone.getTimeZone(id);
```

Once you have a `TimeZone` object, you can use it in conjunction with a `DateFormat` object to get a time string in that time zone.

```
DateFormat timeFormatter = DateFormat.getTimeInstance();
timeFormatter.setTimeZone(zone);
Date now = new Date();
// Suppose the server is in New York, and it's noon there
System.out.println(timeFormatter.format(now));
// Prints 9:00:00 AM
```

Of course, we don't expect the user to know about time zone ID strings, such as "America/Los\_Angeles". Instead, we assume that the user will simply enter the city name. The time zone bean will check whether that string, with spaces replaced by underscores, appears at the end of one of the valid time zone IDs.

Here is the code for the bean class:

#### [section\\_4/timezone/WEB-INF/classes/bigjava/TimeZoneBean.java](#)

```

1 package bigjava;
2
3 import java.text.DateFormat;
4 import java.util.Date;
5 import java.util.TimeZone;
6 import javax.faces.bean.ManagedBean;
7 import javax.faces.bean.SessionScoped;
8
9 /**
10  * This bean formats the local time of day for a given city.
11 */
12 @ManagedBean
13 @SessionScoped
14 public class TimeZoneBean
15 {
16     private DateFormat timeFormatter;
17     private String city;
18     private TimeZone zone;
19
20 }
```

```
21     Initializes the formatter.  
22     */  
23     public TimeZoneBean()  
24     {  
25         timeFormatter = DateFormat.getTimeInstance();  
26     }  
27  
28     /**  
29      Setter for city property.  
30      @param aCity the city for which to report the local time  
31     */  
32     public void setCity(String aCity)  
33     {  
34         city = aCity;  
35     }  
36  
37     /**  
38      Getter for city property.  
39      @return the city for which to report the local time  
40     */  
41     public String getCity()  
42     {  
43         return city;  
44     }  
45  
46     /**  
47      Read-only time property.  
48      @return the formatted time  
49     */  
50     public String getTime()  
51     {  
52         if (zone == null) { return "not available"; }  
53         timeFormatter.setTimeZone(zone);  
54         Date time = new Date();  
55         String timeString = timeFormatter.format(time);  
56         return timeString;  
57     }  
58  
59     /**  
60      Action for checking a city.  
61      @return "next" if time zone information is available for the city,  
62      "error" otherwise  
63     */  
64     public String checkCity()  
65     {  
66         zone = getTimeZone(city);  
67         if (zone == null) { return "error"; }  
68         return "next";  
69     }  
70  
71     /**  
72      Looks up the time zone for a city.  
73      @param aCity the city for which to find the time zone  
74      @return the time zone or null if no match is found  
75     */  
76     private static TimeZone getTimeZone(String aCity)  
77     {  
78         String[] ids = TimeZone.getAvailableIDs();  
79         for (int i = 0; i < ids.length; i++)  
80         {
```

```

81         if (timeZoneIDmatch(ids[i], aCity))
82     {
83         return TimeZone.getTimeZone(ids[i]);
84     }
85 }
86 return null;
87 }
88
89 /**
90 * Checks whether a time zone ID matches a city.
91 * @param id the time zone ID (e.g., "America/Los_Angeles")
92 * @param aCity the city to match (e.g., "Los Angeles")
93 * @return true if the ID and city match
94 */
95 private static boolean timeZoneIDmatch(String id, String aCity)
96 {
97     String idCity = id.substring(id.indexOf('/') + 1);
98     return idCity.replace('_', ' ').equals(aCity);
99 }
100 }
```

Following is the JSF page for setting the city. The `h:inputText` tag produces an input field and the `h:commandButton` tag produces a button. (We discuss its `action` attribute in the next section.) When the user clicks the button, the browser sends the form values (that is, the contents of the input field) back to the web application. The web application calls the `setCity` method on the bean because the input field has a `#{timeZoneBean.city}` value expression.

### **section\_4/timezone/index.xhtml**

```

1  <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2  <html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
3        xmlns:h="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html">
4      <h:head>
5        <title>The timezone application</title>
6      </h:head>
7      <h:body>
8        <h:form>
9          <p>
10            Set time zone:
11            <h:inputText value="#{timeZoneBean.city}" />
12          </p>
13          <p>
14            <h:commandButton value="Submit"
15                          action="#{timeZoneBean.checkCity}" />
16          </p>
17        </h:form>
18      </h:body>
19    </html>
```

The next JSF page shows the result, using two value expressions that display the `city` and `time` properties. These expressions invoke the `getCity` and `getTime` methods of the bean class.

### **section\_4/timezone/next.xhtml**

```

1  <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2  <html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
```

```

3    xmlns:h="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html">
4    <h:head>
5        <title>The timezone application</title>
6    </h:head>
7    <h:body>
8        <h:form>
9            <p>
10           The current time in #{timeZoneBean.city} is #{timeZoneBean.time}
11       </p>
12       <p>
13           <h:commandButton value="Back" action="index"/>
14       </p>
15     </h:form>
16   </h:body>
17 </html>

```

### section\_4/timezone/error.xhtml

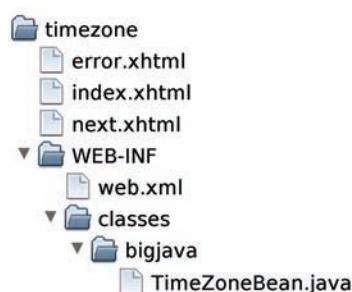
```

1  <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2  <html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
3      xmlns:h="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html">
4    <h:head>
5        <title>The timezone application</title>
6    </h:head>
7    <h:body>
8        <h:form>
9            <p>
10           Sorry, no information is available for #{timeZoneBean.city}
11       </p>
12       <p>
13           <h:commandButton value="Back" action="index"/>
14       </p>
15     </h:form>
16   </h:body>
17 </html>

```

Figure 8 shows the directory structure of the timezone application.

**Figure 8**  
The Directory Structure  
of the timezone Application



#### SELF CHECK

8. What tag would you need to add to `error.xhtml` so that the user can click on a button labeled “Help” and see `help.xhtml`?
9. Which page would be displayed if the `checkCity` method returned `null` instead of “error”?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R25.10, E25.4, E25.5.

**HOW TO 25.1****Designing a Managed Bean**

A managed bean is just a regular Java class, with these three special characteristics:

- The bean must have a constructor with no arguments.
- Methods of the form

```
Type getPropertyType()
void setPropertyType(Type x)
```

define properties that can be accessed from JSF pages.

- Methods of the form

```
String getMethodName()
```

can be used to specify command actions.

This How To provides step-by-step instructions for designing a managed bean class.

**Step 1** Decide on the responsibility of the bean.

When designing a JSF application, it is tempting to stuff all code into a single bean class. Some development environments even encourage this approach. However, from a software engineering perspective, it is best to come up with different beans for different responsibilities. For example, a shopping application might have a `UserBean` to describe the current user, a `SiteBean` to describe how the user visits the shopping site, and a `ShoppingCartBean` that holds the items that the user is purchasing.

**Step 2** Discover the properties that the bean should expose.

A property is an entity that you want to access or modify from your JSF pages. For example, a `UserBean` might have properties `firstName`, `lastName`, and `password`.

Sometimes, you have to resort to a bit of trickery. For example, consider adding an item to the shopping cart. You could use a property `items`, but it would be cumbersome to access all items in a JSF page and then set `items` to a new collection that contains one additional element. Instead, you can design a property `addedItem`. When that property is set, the `setAddedItem` method of your bean adds its value to the collection of items.

**Step 3** Settle on the type and access permissions for each property.

Properties that are only used to generate output can be read-only. Properties that are used in `h:inputText` and other input tags must have read-write access.

**Step 4** Define action methods for navigation.

Your action methods can carry out arbitrary tasks in order to react to the user inputs. The only limitation is that they don't have access to the form data. Everything that the user entered on the form must have already been set as a bean property.

The action method's return value is the name of the next page to be displayed, or `null` if you want to redisplay the current page.

**Step 5** Implement the constructor with no arguments.

The constructor initializes any instance variables that are reused whenever the bean's computation is executed. Examples are formatters, random number generators, and so on.

**Step 6** Implement the get and set methods for all properties.

Most get and set methods simply get or set an instance variable. However, you can carry out arbitrary computations in these methods if it is convenient. For example, a get method may retrieve information from a database instead of an instance variable.

**Step 7** Supply any needed helper methods.

Your bean can have methods that are not property getters and setters. For example, the `TimeZoneBean` has helper methods to look up the time zone for a city.

## 25.5 JSF Components

There are JSF components for text input, choices, buttons, and images.

The `value` attribute of an input component denotes the value that the user supplies.

In this section, you will see the most useful user-interface components that you can place on a JSF form. Table 1 shows a summary. (For a comprehensive discussion of all JSF components, see *Core JavaServer Faces*, 3rd ed., by David Geary and Cay Horstmann (Sun Microsystems Press/Prentice Hall, 2010)).

Each component has a `value` attribute that allows you to connect the component value with a bean property, for example

```
<h:inputSecret value="#{user.password}" />
```

The `h:inputTextArea` component has attributes to specify the rows of text and columns of characters, such as

```
<h:inputTextArea value="#{user.comment}" rows="10" cols="40"/>
```

**Table 1** Common JSF Components

Component	JSF Tag	Common Attributes	Example
Text Field	<code>h:inputText</code>	<code>value</code>	<input type="text" value="12345678901234567890"/>
Password Field	<code>h:inputSecret</code>	<code>value</code>	<input type="password" value="*****"/>
Text Area	<code>h:inputTextArea</code>	<code>value</code> <code>rows</code> <code>cols</code>	<input type="text" value="line one\nline two\nline three"/>
Radio Button Group	<code>h:selectOneRadio</code>	<code>value</code> <code>layout</code>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Cheese <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pickle <input checked="" type="radio"/> Mustard <input checked="" type="radio"/> Lettuce <input checked="" type="radio"/> Onions
Checkbox	<code>h:selectOneCheckbox</code>	<code>value</code>	Receive email: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Checkbox Group	<code>h:selectManyCheckbox</code>	<code>value</code> <code>layout</code>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Cheese <input type="checkbox"/> Pickle <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mustard <input type="checkbox"/> Lettuce <input type="checkbox"/> Onions
Menu	<code>h:selectOneMenu</code> <code>h:selectManyMenu</code>	<code>value</code>	
Image	<code>h:graphicImage</code>	<code>value</code>	
Submit Button	<code>h:commandButton</code>	<code>value</code> <code>action</code>	<input type="button" value="press me"/>

The radio button and checkbox groups allow you to specify horizontal or vertical layout:

```
<h:selectOneRadio value="#{burger.topping}" layout="lineDirection">
```

In European languages, `lineDirection` means horizontal and `pageDirection` means vertical. However, in some languages, lines are written top-to-bottom, and the meanings are reversed.

Button groups and menus are more complex than the other user-interface components. They require you to specify two properties:

- the collection of possible choices
- the actual choice

Use an `f:selectItems` tag to specify all choices for a component that allows selection from a list of choices.

The `value` attribute of the component specifies the actual choice to be displayed. The collection of possible choices is defined by a nested `f:selectItems` tag, like this:

```
<h:selectOneRadio value="#{creditCardBean.expirationMonth}"
    layout="pageDirection">
    <f:selectItems value="#{creditCardBean.monthChoices}" />
</h:selectOneRadio>
```

When you use the `f:selectItems` tag, you need to add the namespace declaration

```
xmlns:f="http://java.sun.com/jsf/core"
```

to the `html` tag at the top of your JSF page.

The value of the `f:selectItems` tag must have a type that can describe a list of choices. There are several types that you can use, but the easiest—and the only one that we will discuss—is a `Map`. The keys of the map are the *labels*—the strings that are displayed next to each choice. The corresponding map values are the *label values*—the values that correspond to the selection. For example, a choice map for months would map January to 1, February to 2, and so on:

```
public class CreditCardBean
{
    .
    .
    public Map<String, Integer> getMonthChoices()
    {
        Map<String, Integer> choices = new LinkedHashMap<String, Integer>();
        choices.put("January", 1);
        choices.put("February", 2);
        .
        .
        return choices;
    }
}
```

Here, we use a `LinkedHashMap` because we want to visit entries in the order in which they are inserted. This is more useful than a `HashMap`, which would visit the labels in random order or a `TreeMap`, which would visit them in alphabetical order (starting with April!).

The type of the `value` property of the component enclosing the `f:selectItems` tag must match the type of the map value. For example, `creditCardBean.expirationMonth` must be an integer, not a string. If multiple selections are allowed, the type of the `value` property must be a list or array of matching types. For example, if one could choose multiple months, a `selectManyRadio` component would have a `value` property with a type such as `int[]` or `ArrayList<Integer>`.



10. Which JSF components can be used to give a user a choice between “AM/PM” and “military” time?
11. How would you supply a set of choices for a credit card expiration year to a `h:selectOneMenu` component?

**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R25.11, E25.3, P25.2.

## 25.6 A Three-Tier Application

A three-tier application has separate tiers for presentation, business logic, and data storage.

In this chapter’s final JSF example, you will see a web application with a very common structure. In this example, we will use a database for information storage. We will enhance the time zone example by storing additional cities that are not known to the `TimeZone` class in a database. Such an application is called a **three-tier application** because it consists of three separate layers or tiers (see Figure 9):

- The presentation tier: the web browser
- The “business logic” tier: the JSF container, the JSF pages, and the JavaBeans
- The storage tier: the database

Contrast the three-tier architecture with the more traditional *client-server* or *two-tier architecture* that you saw in the database programs of Chapter 23. In that architecture, one of the tiers is the database server, which is accessed by multiple client programs on desktops. Each client program has a presentation layer—usually with a specially programmed graphical user interface—and business logic code. (See Figure 10.) When the business logic changes, a new client program must be distributed over all desktops. In contrast, in a three-tier application, the business logic resides on a server. When the logic changes, the server code is updated, but the presentation tier—the browser—remains unchanged. That is much simpler to manage than updating multiple desktops.

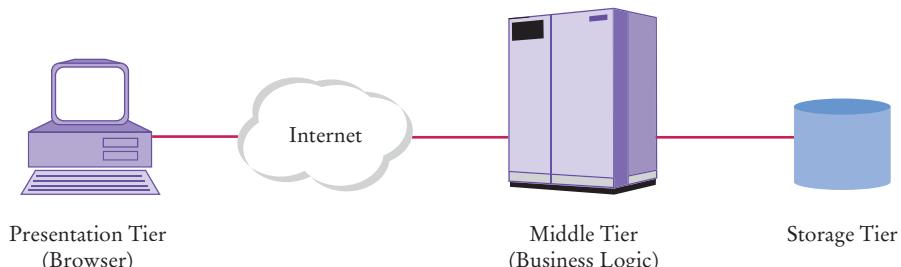
In our example, we will have a single database table, `CityZone`, with city and time zone names (see Figure 11).

### section\_6/multizone/sql/CityZone.sql

```

1 CREATE TABLE CityZone (City VARCHAR(40), Zone VARCHAR(40))
2 INSERT INTO CityZone VALUES ('San Francisco', 'America/Los_Angeles')
3 INSERT INTO CityZone VALUES ('Hamburg', 'Europe/Rome')
4 SELECT * FROM CityZone

```



**Figure 9** Three-Tier Architecture



**Figure 10** Two-Tier Client-Server Architecture

If the `TimeZoneBean` can't find the city among the standard time zone IDs, it makes a database query:

```
SELECT Zone FROM CityZone WHERE City = the requested city
```

If there is a matching entry in the database, that time zone is returned.

To query the database, the bean needs a `Connection` object. In Chapter 23, we used the static `getConnection` method of the `DriverManager` class to obtain a database connection. However, JSF containers have a better mechanism for configuring a database in one central location so that multiple web applications can access it.

The GlassFish application server includes the Derby database. It has a predefined data source with the resource name `jdbc/_default`. In your bean code, you declare an instance variable of type `DataSource` and tag it with a `@Resource` annotation, like this:

```
@Resource(name="jdbc/_default")
private DataSource source;
```

You can use the administrative interface of GlassFish to define other data sources.

When the application server loads the web application, it automatically initializes this instance variable. Whenever you need a database connection, call

```
Connection conn = source.getConnection();
try
{
    Use the connection.
}
finally
{
    conn.close();
}
```

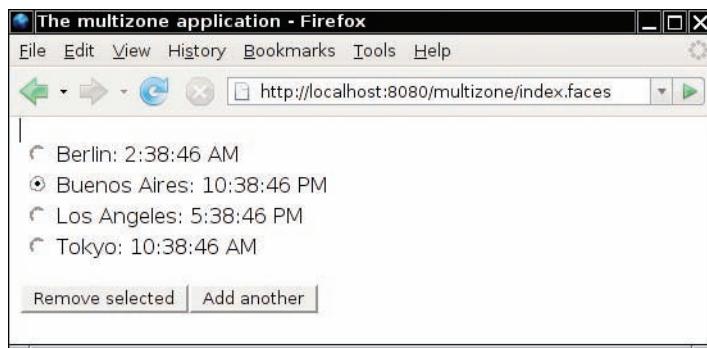
The application server provides an additional service: it *pools* database connections. When a pooled connection is closed, it is not physically terminated but instead

You define data sources in the JSF container and use resource annotations to initialize them.

### CityZone

City	Zone
San Francisco	America/Los_Angeles
Hamburg	Europe/Rome
...	...

**Figure 11** The CityZone Table

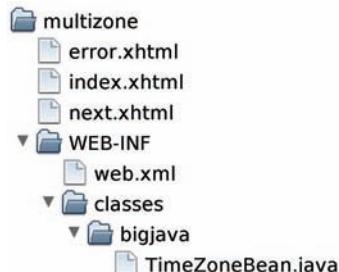
**Figure 12** The multizone Application Shows a List of Cities

returned to a queue and given out again to another caller of the `getConnection` method. Pooling avoids the overhead of creating new database connections. In a web application, it would be particularly inefficient to connect to the database with every web request. Connection pooling is completely automatic.

In order to make the application more interesting, we enhanced the `TimeZoneBean` so that it manages a list of cities. You can add cities to the list and remove a selected city (see Figure 12).

You will find the code for this web application below. Figure 13 shows the directory structure of the application.

**Figure 13**  
The Directory Structure  
of the multizone Application



You have now seen how to use the JavaServer Faces technology to build web applications. JSF takes care of low-level details so that you don't have to think about HTML forms and the HTTP protocol. Instead, you can focus on the presentation and business logic of your application.

### section\_6/multizone/index.xhtml

```

1  <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2  <html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
3      xmlns:h="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html">
4      <h:head>
5          <title>The multizone application</title>
6      </h:head>
7      <h:body>

```

```

8      <h:form>
9          <p>
10             Enter city:
11                 <h:inputText value="#{timeZoneBean.cityToAdd}" />
12             </p>
13             <p>
14                 <h:commandButton value="Submit"
15                     action="#{timeZoneBean.addCity}" />
16             </p>
17         </h:form>
18     </h:body>
19 </html>

```

### section\_6/multizone/next.xhtml

```

1  <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2  <html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
3      xmlns:f="http://java.sun.com/jsf/core"
4      xmlns:h="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html">
5      <h:head>
6          <title>The multizone application</title>
7      </h:head>
8      <h:body>
9          <h:form>
10         <p>
11             <h:selectOneRadio value="#{timeZoneBean.cityToRemove}"
12                 layout="pageDirection">
13                 <f:selectItems value="#{timeZoneBean.citiesAndTimes}" />
14             </h:selectOneRadio>
15         </p>
16         <p>
17             <h:commandButton value="Remove selected"
18                 action="#{timeZoneBean.removeCity}" />
19             <h:commandButton value="Add another" action="index" />
20         </p>
21     </h:form>
22 </h:body>
23 </html>

```

### section\_6/multizone/error.xhtml

```

1  <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2  <html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
3      xmlns:h="http://java.sun.com/jsf/html">
4      <h:head>
5          <title>The multizone application</title>
6      </h:head>
7      <h:body>
8          <h:form>
9              <p>
10                 Sorry, no information is available for #{timeZoneBean.cityToAdd}.
11             </p>
12             <p>
13                 <h:commandButton value="Back" action="index" />
14             </p>
15         </h:form>
16     </h:body>
17 </html>

```

**section\_6/multizone/WEB-INF/classes/bigjava/TimeZoneBean.java**

```
1 package bigjava;
2
3 import java.sql.Connection;
4 import java.sql.PreparedStatement;
5 import java.sql.ResultSet;
6 import java.sql.SQLException;
7 import java.text.DateFormat;
8 import java.util.ArrayList;
9 import java.util.Date;
10 import java.util.Map;
11 import java.util.TimeZone;
12 import java.util.TreeMap;
13 import java.util.logging.Logger;
14 import javax.annotation.Resource;
15 import javax.faces.bean.ManagedBean;
16 import javax.faces.bean.SessionScoped;
17 import javax.sql.DataSource;
18
19 /**
20  * This bean formats the local time of day for a given date
21  * and city.
22 */
23 @ManagedBean
24 @SessionScoped
25 public class TimeZoneBean
26 {
27     @Resource(name="jdbc/__default")
28     private DataSource source;
29
30     private DateFormat timeFormatter;
31     private ArrayList<String> cities;
32     private String cityToAdd;
33     private String cityToRemove;
34
35     /**
36      * Initializes the formatter.
37     */
38     public TimeZoneBean()
39     {
40         timeFormatter = DateFormat.getTimeInstance();
41         cities = new ArrayList<String>();
42     }
43
44     /**
45      * Setter for cityToAdd property.
46      * @param city the city to add to the list of cities
47     */
48     public void setCityToAdd(String city)
49     {
50         cityToAdd = city;
51     }
52
53     /**
54      * Getter for cityToAdd property.
55      * @return the city to add to the list of cities
56     */
57     public String getCityToAdd()
58     {
```

```

59         return cityToAdd;
60     }
61
62     /**
63      Setter for the cityToRemove property.
64      @param city the city to remove from the list of cities
65     */
66     public void setCityToRemove(String city)
67     {
68         cityToRemove = city;
69     }
70
71     /**
72      Getter for the cityToRemove property.
73      @return the city to remove from the list of cities
74     */
75     public String getCityToRemove()
76     {
77         return cityToRemove;
78     }
79
80     /**
81      Read-only citiesAndTimes property.
82      @return a map containing the cities and formatted times
83     */
84     public Map<String, String> getCitiesAndTimes()
85     {
86         Date time = new Date();
87         Map<String, String> result = new TreeMap<String, String>();
88         for (int i = 0; i < cities.size(); i++)
89         {
90             String city = cities.get(i);
91             String label = city + ": ";
92             TimeZone zone = getTimeZone(city);
93             if (zone != null)
94             {
95                 timeFormatter.setTimeZone(zone);
96                 String timeString = timeFormatter.format(time);
97                 label = label + timeString;
98             }
99             else
100             {
101                 label = label + "unavailable";
102             }
103             result.put(label, city);
104         }
105
106         return result;
107     }
108
109     /**
110      Action for adding a city.
111      @return "next" if time zone information is available for the city,
112      "error" otherwise
113     */
114     public String addCity()
115     {
116         TimeZone zone = getTimeZone(cityToAdd);
117         if (zone == null) { return "error"; }
118         cities.add(cityToAdd);

```

```
119         cityToRemove = cityToAdd;
120         cityToAdd = "";
121         return "next";
122     }
123
124     /**
125      Action for removing a city.
126      @return null if there are more cities to remove, "index" otherwise
127     */
128     public String removeCity()
129     {
130         cities.remove(cityToRemove);
131         if (cities.size() > 0) { return null; }
132         else return "index";
133     }
134
135     /**
136      Looks up the time zone for a city.
137      @param city the city for which to find the time zone
138      @return the time zone or null if no match is found
139     */
140     private TimeZone getTimeZone(String city)
141     {
142         String[] ids = TimeZone.getAvailableIDs();
143         for (int i = 0; i < ids.length; i++)
144         {
145             if (timeZoneIDmatch(ids[i], city))
146             {
147                 return TimeZone.getTimeZone(ids[i]);
148             }
149         }
150         try
151         {
152             String id = getZoneNameFromDB(city);
153             if (id != null)
154             {
155                 return TimeZone.getTimeZone(id);
156             }
157         }
158         catch (Exception ex)
159         {
160             Logger.global.info("Caught in TimeZone.getTimeZone: "
161                             + ex);
162         }
163         return null;
164     }
165
166     private String getZoneNameFromDB(String city)
167         throws SQLException
168     {
169         if (source == null)
170         {
171             Logger.global.info("No database connection");
172             return null;
173         }
174         Connection conn = source.getConnection();
175         try
176         {
```

```

177     PreparedStatement stat = conn.prepareStatement(
178         "SELECT Zone FROM CityZone WHERE City=?");
179     stat.setString(1, city);
180     ResultSet result = stat.executeQuery();
181     if (result.next()) { return result.getString(1); }
182     else { return null; }
183   }
184   finally
185   {
186     conn.close();
187   }
188 }
189
190 /**
191  * Checks whether a time zone ID matches a city.
192  * @param id the time zone ID (e.g., "America/Los_Angeles")
193  * @param city the city to match (e.g., "Los Angeles")
194  * @return true if the ID and city match
195 */
196 private static boolean timeZoneIDmatch(String id, String city)
197 {
198     String idCity = id.substring(id.indexOf('/') + 1);
199     return idCity.replace('_', ' ').equals(city);
200 }
201 }
```

**SELF CHECK**

12. Why don't we just keep a database connection as an instance variable in the `TimeZoneBean`?
13. Why does the `removeCity` method of the `TimeZoneBean` return `null` or "index", depending on the size of the `cities` instance variable?

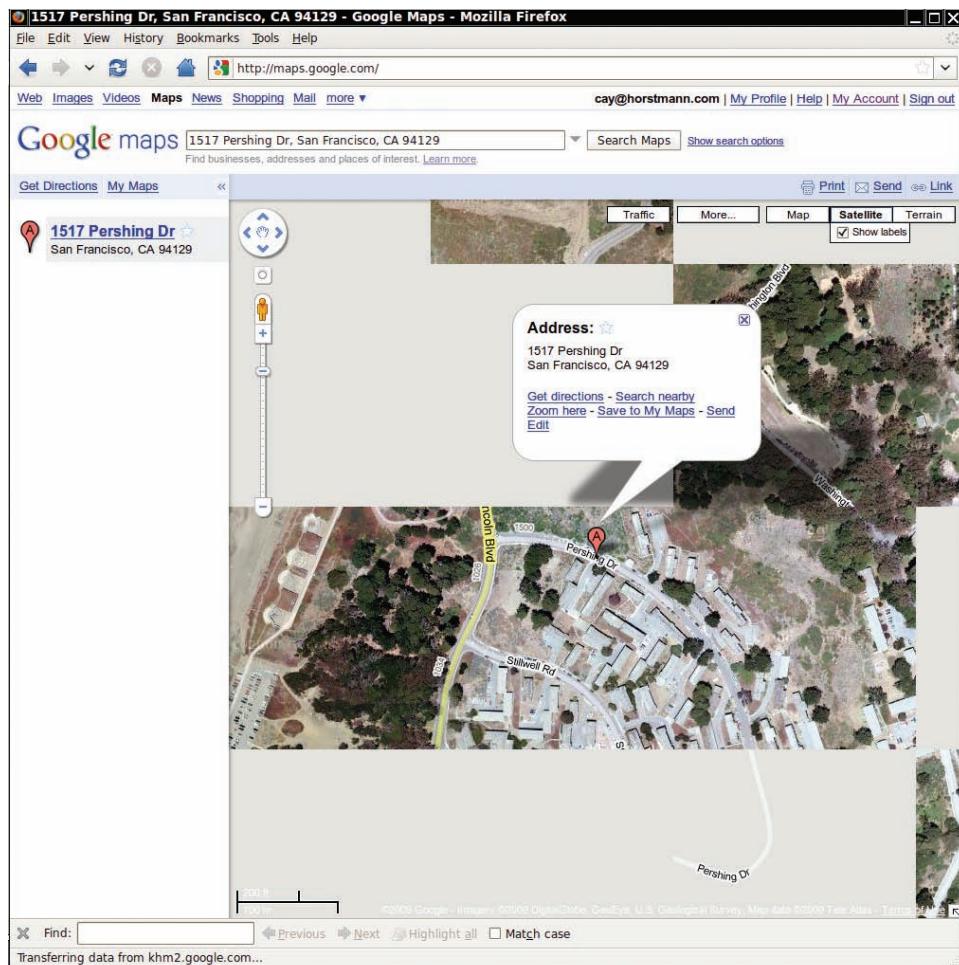
**Practice It** Now you can try these exercises at the end of the chapter: R25.12, E25.6, E25.7.

**Special Topic 25.2****AJAX**

In Section 25.1, you learned that a web application receives an HTTP request from the browser and then sends back an HTML form. The cycle repeats when the user submits the next form data. Web application designers and users dislike the “page flip”—the visual discontinuity between pages that is often accompanied by a significant delay, as the browser waits for the new form tags.

The AJAX (Asynchronous JavaScript and XML) technology, invented in 2005, aims to solve this problem. In an AJAX application, the browser does not merely display an HTML page, but it also executes code written in the JavaScript language. The JavaScript code continuously communicates with the server program and updates parts of the HTML page.

One example of an AJAX application is the Google Maps™ mapping service—see Figure 14. In a traditional map application, the user might click on a “move North” button and then wait until the browser receives the new map image and displays it in a new page. The Google Maps application uses AJAX to fetch only the needed tiles, and it fluidly rearranges the tiles in the current page, without the dreaded page flip.



**Figure 14** A Google Maps Image with Partially-Fetched Tiles

#### FULL CODE EXAMPLE

Go to [wiley.com/go/  
javacode](http://wiley.com/go/javacode) to download  
the multizone  
application code  
using AJAX.

AJAX applications are much more difficult to program than regular web applications. Frameworks are being proposed to handle these additional challenges. JSF 2 supports AJAX, giving the web application programmer the benefit of producing a pleasant user experience without having to worry about the intricate details of the JavaScript communication channel. The book's companion code contains a modification of the multizone application that uses AJAX. When you click one of the buttons, the page is updated without a page flip.

## CHAPTER SUMMARY

### **Describe the architecture of a web application.**

---

- The user interface of a web application is displayed in a web browser.
- When a form is submitted, the names and values of the form elements are sent to the web server.
- Upon receiving the form data, the web server sends a new web page to the browser.

### **Describe the architecture of a JSF application.**

---

- A JavaServer Faces (JSF) page contains HTML and JSF tags.
- The JSF container converts a JSF page to an HTML page, replacing all JSF tags with text and HTML tags.
- A managed bean is an object that is controlled by the JSF container.
- A bean with session scope is available for multiple requests by the same browser.
- The JSF technology enables the separation of presentation and business logic.

### **Explain how properties are defined in managed beans and accessed in value expressions.**

---

- Properties of a software component can be accessed without having to write Java code.
- A JavaBean is a class that exposes properties through its get and set methods.
- In the value expression of an output tag, only the property getter is called.
- In the value expression of an input tag, the property setter is called when the page is submitted.

### **Implement navigation between pages.**

---

- The outcome string of an action determines the next page that the JSF container sends to the browser.
- A method expression specifies a bean and a method that should be invoked on the bean.

### **Use common JSF components for designing a user interface.**

---

- There are JSF components for text input, choices, buttons, and images.
- The value attribute of an input component denotes the value that the user supplies.
- Use an `f:selectItems` tag to specify all choices for a component that allows selection from a list of choices.

### **Develop applications that use JSF and a database.**

---

- A three-tier application has separate tiers for presentation, business logic, and data storage.
- You define data sources in the JSF container and use resource annotations to initialize them.

## STANDARD LIBRARY ITEMS INTRODUCED IN THIS CHAPTER

java.text.DateFormat format getTimeInstance setTimeZone java.util.LinkedHashMap	java.util.TimeZone getAvailableIDs getTimeZone javax.sql.DataSource getConnection
---	---

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

- **R25.1** Most web browsers have a command to “view the source” of a web page. Load the page <http://horstmann.com> into your browser and view the source. What is the “language” used for formatting the source? What images, links, bullets, and input elements can you find?
- **R25.2** Have a closer look at the HTTP POST request on page W1056. Where is the data that the user provided? What does `login=Log%20in` mean? (The code `%20` denotes a space in the “URL encoding” scheme.)
- **R25.3** What is the difference between a JSF page and a JSF container?
- **R25.4** What is a bean?
- **R25.5** What is a bean property?
- **R25.6** Is a JButton a bean? Why or why not?
- **R25.7** What is the software engineering purpose of using beans in conjunction with JSF pages?
- ■ **R25.8** How are variables in the JSF expression language different from variables in Java programs?
- ■ **R25.9** When is a bean constructed in a JSF application? Can you have two different instances of a bean that are active at the same time?
- ■ **R25.10** How can you implement error checking in a JSF application? Explain, using a login page as an example.
- ■ **R25.11** What input elements can you place on a JSF form? What are their Swing equivalents?
- **R25.12** What is the difference between a client-server application and a three-tier application?

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

- **E25.1** Write a JSF application that reports the values of the following system properties of the web server:
    - The Java version (`java.version`)
    - The operating system name (`os.name`)
    - The operating system version (`os.version`)
- Supply a bean that uses the `getProperties` method of the `System` class.

- **E25.2** Write a JSF application that simulates two rolls of a die, producing an output such as “Rolled a 4 and a 6”. When the user reloads the page, a new pair of values should be displayed. Provide a bean that yields random numbers.
- **E25.3** Enhance Exercise E25.2 by producing a web page that shows images of the rolled dice. Find GIF images of dice with numbers 1 through 6 on the front, and generate an HTML page that references the appropriate images. *Hint:* Use the tag `<h:graphicImage value="imageURL"/>` and take advantage of the fact that you can embed a value expression into regular text, such as `"/image#{expression}.gif"`.
- **E25.4** Write a web application that allows a user to specify six lottery numbers. Generate your own combination on the server, and then print out the user’s and the server’s combinations together with a count of matches.
- **E25.5** Add error checking to Exercise E25.4. If the lottery numbers are not within the correct range, or if there are duplicates, show an appropriate message and allow the user to fix the error.
- **E25.6** Personalize the time zone application of Section 25.3. Prompt the user to log in and specify a city to be stored in a profile. The next time the user logs in, the time of their favorite city is displayed automatically. Store users, passwords, and favorite cities in a database. You need a logout button to switch users.
- **E25.7** Extend Exercise E25.6 so that a user can choose multiple cities and all cities chosen by the user are remembered on the next login.

## PROGRAMMING PROJECTS

- **P25.1** Write a web version of the ExecSQL utility of Chapter 23. Allow users to type arbitrary SQL queries into a text area. Then submit the query to the database and display the result.
- **P25.2** Produce a web front end for the ATM program in Worked Example 12.1.
- **P25.3** Produce a web front end for the appointment calendar application of Exercise P12.2.
- **P25.4** Produce a web front end for the airline reservation program of Exercise P12.6.
- **Business P25.5** Write a shopping cart application. A database contains items that can be purchased and their prices, descriptions, and available quantities. If the user wants to check out, ask for the user account. If the user does not yet have an account, create one. The user name and address should be stored with the account in the database. Display an invoice as the last step in the check out process. When the user has confirmed the purchase, update the quantities in the warehouse.
- **P25.6** Write a web-based grade book application that your instructor might use to manage student grades in this course. Your application should have one account for the instructor, and one account for each student. Instructors can enter and view grades for all students. Students can only see their own grades and their ranking within the course. Implement the features that your instructor uses for determining the course grade (such as dropping the lowest quiz score, counting homework as 30 percent of the total grade, and so on.) All information should be stored in a database.

## ANSWERS TO SELF-CHECK QUESTIONS

1. Each protocol has a specific purpose. HTML describes the appearance of a page; it would be useless for sending requests from a browser to a server. HTTP describes a request; it cannot describe the appearance of a page.
  2. The data of the POST request contain a portion `username=the name supplied by the user&password=the password supplied by the user`.
  3. Place an image file, say `clock.gif`, into the time directory, and add a tag `` to the `index.xhtml` file.
  4. No—it is possible (and sadly common) for programmers to place the business logic into the frame and component classes of the user interface.
  5. The application server knows nothing about the files on your computer. You need to hand it the WAR file with all the application's pages, code, and configuration files so that it can execute the application when it receives a web request.
  6. No. The `Scanner` class does not have a constructor with no arguments.
  7. There is no way of knowing without looking at the source code. Perhaps it simply executes a statement `city = newValue`, setting an instance variable of the bean class. But the method may also do other work, for example checking whether the city name is valid or storing the name in a database.
  8. Add the tag `<h:commandButton value="Help" action="help"/>` to `error.xhtml`.
  9. The current page would be redisplayed.
  10. `h:selectOneRadio`, `h:selectOneMenu`, or `h:selectOneCheckbox`
  11. You would need a bean with a property such as the following:
- ```
public Map<String, Integer> getYearChoices()
{
    Map<String, Integer> choices =
        new TreeMap<String, Integer>();
    choices.put("2003", 2003);
    choices.put("2004", 2004);
    ...
    return choices;
}
```
- Then supply a tag `<f:selectItems value="#{creditCard.yearChoices}" />`.
12. Then the database connection would be kept open for the entire session.
  13. As long as there are cities, the same page (`next.xhtml`) page is redisplayed. If all cities are removed, it is pointless to display the `next.xhtml` page, so the application navigates to the `index.xhtml` page.

# THE BASIC LATIN AND LATIN-1 SUBSETS OF UNICODE

This appendix lists the Unicode characters that are most commonly used for processing Western European languages. A complete listing of Unicode characters can be found at <http://unicode.org>.

**Table 1** Selected Control Characters

| Character | Code     | Decimal | Escape Sequence |
|-----------|----------|---------|-----------------|
| Tab       | '\u0009' | 9       | '\t'            |
| Newline   | '\u000A' | 10      | '\n'            |
| Return    | '\u000D' | 13      | '\r'            |
| Space     | '\u0020' | 32      |                 |

## A-2 Appendix A The Basic Latin and Latin-1 Subsets of Unicode

**Table 2 The Basic Latin (ASCII) Subset of Unicode**

| Char. | Code     | Dec. | Char. | Code     | Dec. | Char. | Code     | Dec. |
|-------|----------|------|-------|----------|------|-------|----------|------|
|       |          |      | @     | '\u0040' | 64   | `     | '\u0060' | 96   |
| !     | '\u0021' | 33   | A     | '\u0041' | 65   | a     | '\u0061' | 97   |
| "     | '\u0022' | 34   | B     | '\u0042' | 66   | b     | '\u0062' | 98   |
| #     | '\u0023' | 35   | C     | '\u0043' | 67   | c     | '\u0063' | 99   |
| \$    | '\u0024' | 36   | D     | '\u0044' | 68   | d     | '\u0064' | 100  |
| %     | '\u0025' | 37   | E     | '\u0045' | 69   | e     | '\u0065' | 101  |
| &     | '\u0026' | 38   | F     | '\u0046' | 70   | f     | '\u0066' | 102  |
| '     | '\u0027' | 39   | G     | '\u0047' | 71   | g     | '\u0067' | 103  |
| (     | '\u0028' | 40   | H     | '\u0048' | 72   | h     | '\u0068' | 104  |
| )     | '\u0029' | 41   | I     | '\u0049' | 73   | i     | '\u0069' | 105  |
| *     | '\u002A' | 42   | J     | '\u004A' | 74   | j     | '\u006A' | 106  |
| +     | '\u002B' | 43   | K     | '\u004B' | 75   | k     | '\u006B' | 107  |
| ,     | '\u002C' | 44   | L     | '\u004C' | 76   | l     | '\u006C' | 108  |
| -     | '\u002D' | 45   | M     | '\u004D' | 77   | m     | '\u006D' | 109  |
| .     | '\u002E' | 46   | N     | '\u004E' | 78   | n     | '\u006E' | 110  |
| /     | '\u002F' | 47   | O     | '\u004F' | 79   | o     | '\u006F' | 111  |
| 0     | '\u0030' | 48   | P     | '\u0050' | 80   | p     | '\u0070' | 112  |
| 1     | '\u0031' | 49   | Q     | '\u0051' | 81   | q     | '\u0071' | 113  |
| 2     | '\u0032' | 50   | R     | '\u0052' | 82   | r     | '\u0072' | 114  |
| 3     | '\u0033' | 51   | S     | '\u0053' | 83   | s     | '\u0073' | 115  |
| 4     | '\u0034' | 52   | T     | '\u0054' | 84   | t     | '\u0074' | 116  |
| 5     | '\u0035' | 53   | U     | '\u0055' | 85   | u     | '\u0075' | 117  |
| 6     | '\u0036' | 54   | V     | '\u0056' | 86   | v     | '\u0076' | 118  |
| 7     | '\u0037' | 55   | W     | '\u0057' | 87   | w     | '\u0077' | 119  |
| 8     | '\u0038' | 56   | X     | '\u0058' | 88   | x     | '\u0078' | 120  |
| 9     | '\u0039' | 57   | Y     | '\u0059' | 89   | y     | '\u0079' | 121  |
| :     | '\u003A' | 58   | Z     | '\u005A' | 90   | z     | '\u007A' | 122  |
| ;     | '\u003B' | 59   | [     | '\u005B' | 91   | {     | '\u007B' | 123  |
| <     | '\u003C' | 60   | \`    | '\u005C' | 92   |       | '\u007C' | 124  |
| =     | '\u003D' | 61   | ]     | '\u005D' | 93   | }     | '\u007D' | 125  |
| >     | '\u003E' | 62   | ^     | '\u005E' | 94   | ~     | '\u007E' | 126  |
| ?     | '\u003F' | 63   | _     | '\u005F' | 95   |       |          |      |

**Table 3** The Latin-1 Subset of Unicode

| Char. | Code     | Dec. | Char. | Code     | Dec. | Char. | Code     | Dec. |
|-------|----------|------|-------|----------|------|-------|----------|------|
|       |          |      | À     | '\u00C0' | 192  | à     | '\u00E0' | 224  |
| í     | '\u00A1' | 161  | Á     | '\u00C1' | 193  | á     | '\u00E1' | 225  |
| ¢     | '\u00A2' | 162  | Â     | '\u00C2' | 194  | â     | '\u00E2' | 226  |
| £     | '\u00A3' | 163  | Ã     | '\u00C3' | 195  | ã     | '\u00E3' | 227  |
| ¤     | '\u00A4' | 164  | Ä     | '\u00C4' | 196  | ä     | '\u00E4' | 228  |
| ¥     | '\u00A5' | 165  | Å     | '\u00C5' | 197  | å     | '\u00E5' | 229  |
| ¡     | '\u00A6' | 166  | Æ     | '\u00C6' | 198  | æ     | '\u00E6' | 230  |
| §     | '\u00A7' | 167  | Ç     | '\u00C7' | 199  | ç     | '\u00E7' | 231  |
| „     | '\u00A8' | 168  | È     | '\u00C8' | 200  | è     | '\u00E8' | 232  |
| ©     | '\u00A9' | 169  | É     | '\u00C9' | 201  | é     | '\u00E9' | 233  |
| ª     | '\u00AA' | 170  | Ê     | '\u00CA' | 202  | ê     | '\u00EA' | 234  |
| «     | '\u00AB' | 171  | Ë     | '\u00CB' | 203  | ë     | '\u00EB' | 235  |
| ¬     | '\u00AC' | 172  | Ì     | '\u00CC' | 204  | ì     | '\u00EC' | 236  |
| -     | '\u00AD' | 173  | Í     | '\u00CD' | 205  | í     | '\u00ED' | 237  |
| ®     | '\u00AE' | 174  | Î     | '\u00CE' | 206  | î     | '\u00EE' | 238  |
| -     | '\u00AF' | 175  | Ï     | '\u00CF' | 207  | ï     | '\u00EF' | 239  |
| º     | '\u00B0' | 176  | Ð     | '\u00D0' | 208  | ð     | '\u00F0' | 240  |
| ±     | '\u00B1' | 177  | Ñ     | '\u00D1' | 209  | ñ     | '\u00F1' | 241  |
| ²     | '\u00B2' | 178  | Ò     | '\u00D2' | 210  | ò     | '\u00F2' | 242  |
| ³     | '\u00B3' | 179  | Ó     | '\u00D3' | 211  | ó     | '\u00F3' | 243  |
| ›     | '\u00B4' | 180  | Ô     | '\u00D4' | 212  | ô     | '\u00F4' | 244  |
| µ     | '\u00B5' | 181  | Õ     | '\u00D5' | 213  | õ     | '\u00F5' | 245  |
| ¶     | '\u00B6' | 182  | Ö     | '\u00D6' | 214  | ö     | '\u00F6' | 246  |
| ·     | '\u00B7' | 183  | ×     | '\u00D7' | 215  | ÷     | '\u00F7' | 247  |
| ,     | '\u00B8' | 184  | Ø     | '\u00D8' | 216  | ø     | '\u00F8' | 248  |
| ¹     | '\u00B9' | 185  | Ù     | '\u00D9' | 217  | ù     | '\u00F9' | 249  |
| º     | '\u00BA' | 186  | Ú     | '\u00DA' | 218  | ú     | '\u00FA' | 250  |
| »     | '\u00BB' | 187  | Û     | '\u00DB' | 219  | û     | '\u00FB' | 251  |
| ¼     | '\u00BC' | 188  | Ü     | '\u00DC' | 220  | ü     | '\u00FC' | 252  |
| ½     | '\u00BD' | 189  | Ý     | '\u00DD' | 221  | ý     | '\u00FD' | 253  |
| ¾     | '\u00BE' | 190  | Þ     | '\u00DE' | 222  | þ     | '\u00FE' | 254  |
| ¿     | '\u00BF' | 191  | ß     | '\u00DF' | 223  | ÿ     | '\u00FF' | 255  |



# JAVA OPERATOR SUMMARY

The Java operators are listed in groups of decreasing *precedence* in the table below. The horizontal lines in the table indicate a change in operator precedence. Operators with higher precedence bind more strongly than those with lower precedence. For example,  $x + y * z$  means  $x + (y * z)$  because the  $*$  operator has higher precedence than the  $+$  operator. Looking at the table below, you can tell that  $x \&& y || z$  means  $(x \&& y) || z$  because the  $||$  operator has lower precedence.

The *associativity* of an operator indicates whether it groups left to right, or right to left. For example, the  $-$  operator binds left to right. Therefore,  $x - y - z$  means  $(x - y) - z$ . But the  $=$  operator binds right to left, and  $x = y = z$  means  $x = (y = z)$ .

| Operator            | Description                     | Associativity |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|---------------|
| .                   | Access class feature            |               |
| []                  | Array subscript                 | Left to right |
| ()                  | Function call                   |               |
| ++                  | Increment                       |               |
| --                  | Decrement                       |               |
| !                   | Boolean <i>not</i>              |               |
| $\sim$              | Bitwise <i>not</i>              |               |
| + ( <i>unary</i> )  | (Has no effect)                 | Right to left |
| - ( <i>unary</i> )  | Negative                        |               |
| ( <i>TypeName</i> ) | Cast                            |               |
| new                 | Object allocation               |               |
| *                   | Multiplication                  |               |
| /                   | Division or integer division    | Left to right |
| %                   | Integer remainder               |               |
| +                   | Addition, string concatenation  |               |
| -                   | Subtraction                     | Left to right |
| <<                  | Shift left                      |               |
| >>                  | Right shift with sign extension | Left to right |
| >>>                 | Right shift with zero extension |               |

## A-6 Appendix B Java Operator Summary

| Operator   | Description                                                                             | Associativity |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <          | Less than                                                                               | Left to right |
| <=         | Less than or equal                                                                      |               |
| >          | Greater than                                                                            |               |
| >=         | Greater than or equal                                                                   |               |
| instanceof | Tests whether an object's type is a given type or a subtype thereof                     |               |
| ==         | Equal                                                                                   | Left to right |
| !=         | Not equal                                                                               |               |
| &          | Bitwise <i>and</i>                                                                      | Left to right |
| ^          | Bitwise exclusive <i>or</i>                                                             | Left to right |
|            | Bitwise <i>or</i>                                                                       | Left to right |
| &&         | Boolean “short circuit” <i>and</i>                                                      | Left to right |
|            | Boolean “short circuit” <i>or</i>                                                       | Left to right |
| ? :        | Conditional                                                                             | Right to left |
| =          | Assignment                                                                              | Right to left |
| op=        | Assignment with binary operator ( <i>op</i> is one of +, -, *, /, &,  , ^, <<, >>, >>>) |               |

# JAVA RESERVED WORD SUMMARY

| Reserved Word | Description                                                                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| abstract      | An abstract class or method                                                                                                          |
| assert        | An assertion that a condition is fulfilled                                                                                           |
| boolean       | The Boolean type                                                                                                                     |
| break         | Breaks out of the current loop or labeled statement                                                                                  |
| byte          | The 8-bit signed integer type                                                                                                        |
| case          | A label in a switch statement                                                                                                        |
| catch         | The handler for an exception in a try block                                                                                          |
| char          | The 16-bit Unicode character type                                                                                                    |
| class         | Defines a class                                                                                                                      |
| const         | Not used                                                                                                                             |
| continue      | Skips the remainder of a loop body                                                                                                   |
| default       | The default label in a switch statement                                                                                              |
| do            | A loop whose body is executed at least once                                                                                          |
| double        | The 64-bit double-precision floating-point type                                                                                      |
| else          | The alternative clause in an if statement                                                                                            |
| enum          | An enumeration type                                                                                                                  |
| extends       | Indicates that a class is a subclass of another class                                                                                |
| final         | A value that cannot be changed after it has been initialized, a method that cannot be overridden, or a class that cannot be extended |
| finally       | A clause of a try block that is always executed                                                                                      |
| float         | The 32-bit single-precision floating-point type                                                                                      |
| for           | A loop with initialization, condition, and update expressions                                                                        |
| goto          | Not used                                                                                                                             |
| if            | A conditional branch statement                                                                                                       |
| implements    | Indicates that a class realizes an interface                                                                                         |

## A-8 Appendix C Java Reserved Word Summary

| Reserved Word | Description                                                                                                      |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| import        | Allows the use of class names without the package name                                                           |
| instanceof    | Tests whether an object's type is a given type or a subtype thereof                                              |
| int           | The 32-bit integer type                                                                                          |
| interface     | An abstract type with only abstract methods and constants                                                        |
| long          | The 64-bit integer type                                                                                          |
| native        | A method implemented in non-Java code                                                                            |
| new           | Allocates an object                                                                                              |
| package       | A collection of related classes                                                                                  |
| private       | A feature that is accessible only by methods of the same class                                                   |
| protected     | A feature that is accessible only by methods of the same class, a subclass, or another class in the same package |
| public        | A feature that is accessible by all methods                                                                      |
| return        | Returns from a method                                                                                            |
| short         | The 16-bit integer type                                                                                          |
| static        | A feature that is defined for a class, not for individual instances                                              |
| strictfp      | Uses strict rules for floating-point computations                                                                |
| super         | Invokes the superclass constructor or a superclass method                                                        |
| switch        | A selection statement                                                                                            |
| synchronized  | A block of code that is accessible to only one thread at a time                                                  |
| this          | The implicit parameter of a method; or invocation of another constructor of the same class                       |
| throw         | Throws an exception                                                                                              |
| throws        | Indicates the exceptions that a method may throw                                                                 |
| transient     | Instance variables that should not be serialized                                                                 |
| try           | A block of code with exception handlers or a finally handler                                                     |
| void          | Tags a method that doesn't return a value                                                                        |
| volatile      | A variable that may be accessed by multiple threads without synchronization                                      |
| while         | A loop statement                                                                                                 |

# THE JAVA LIBRARY

This appendix lists all classes and methods from the standard Java library that are used in this book.

In the following inheritance hierarchy, superclasses that are not used in this book are shown in gray type. Some classes implement interfaces not covered in this book; they are omitted. Classes are sorted first by package, then alphabetically within a package.

```
java.awt.Shape
java.io.Serializable
java.lang.Cloneable
java.lang.Object
    java.awt.BorderLayout implements Serializable
    java.awt.Color implements Serializable
    java.awt.Component implements Serializable
        java.awt.Container
            javax.swing.JComponent
                javax.swing.AbstractButton
                javax.swing.JButton
                javax.swing.JMenuItem
                    javax.swing.JMenu
                javax.swing.JToggleButton
                    javax.swing.JCheckBox
                    javax.swing.JRadioButton
            javax.swing.JComboBox
            javax.swing.JFileChooser
            javax.swing.JLabel
            javax.swing.JMenuBar
            javax.swing.JPanel
            javax.swing.JOptionPane
            javax.swing.JScrollPane
            javax.swing.JSlider
            javax.swing.text.JTextComponent
                javax.swing.JTextArea
                javax.swing.JTextField
        java.awt.Window
            java.awt.Frame
                javax.swing.JFrame
java.awt.Dimension2D
    java.awt.Dimension implements Cloneable, Serializable
    java.awt.FlowLayout implements Serializable
    java.awt.Font implements Serializable
    java.awt.Graphics
        java.awt.Graphics2D;
    java.awt.GridLayout implements Serializable
    java.awt.event.MouseAdapter implements MouseListener
    java.awt.geom.Line2D implements Cloneable, Shape
        java.awt.geom.Line2D.Double implements Serializable
    java.awt.geom.Point2D implements Cloneable
        java.awt.geom.Point2D.Double implements Serializable
```

## A-10 Appendix D The Java Library

```
java.awt.geom.RectangularShape implements Cloneable, Shape
    java.awt.geom.Rectangle2D
        java.awt.Rectangle implements Serializable
    java.awt.geom.Ellipse2D
        java.awt.geom.Ellipse2D.Double implements Serializable
java.io.File implements Comparable<File>, Serializable
java.io.InputStream
    java.io.FileInputStream
    java.io.ObjectInputStream
java.io.OutputStream
    java.io.FileOutputStream
    java.io.FilterOutputStream
        java.io.PrintStream
    java.io.ObjectOutputStream
java.io.RandomAccessFile
java.io.Serializable
java.io.Writer
    java.io.PrintWriter
java.lang.Boolean implements Comparable<Boolean>, Serializable
java.lang.Character implements Comparable<Character>, Serializable
java.lang.Class implements Serializable
java.lang.Math
java.lang.Number implements Serializable
    java.math.BigDecimal implements Comparable<BigDecimal>
    java.math.BigInteger implements Comparable<BigInteger>
    java.lang.Double implements Comparable<Double>
    java.lang.Integer implements Comparable<Integer>
    java.lang.String implements Comparable<String>, Serializable
java.lang.System
java.lang.Thread implements Runnable
java.lang.Throwable
    java.lang.Error
    java.lang.Exception
        java.lang.CloneNotSupportedException
        java.lang.InterruptedException
        java.io.IOException
            java.io.EOFException
            java.io.FileNotFoundException
        java.lang.RuntimeException
            java.lang.IllegalArgumentException
                java.lang.NumberFormatException
            java.lang.IllegalStateException
            java.util.NoSuchElementException
                java.util.InputMismatchException
            java.lang.NullPointerException
        java.sql.SQLException
        javax.xml.xpath.XPathException
            javax.xml.xpath.XPathExpressionException
java.net.ServerSocket
java.net.Socket
java.net.URL implements Serializable
java.netURLConnection
    java.net.HttpURLConnection
java.sql.DriverManager
java.text.Format implements Serializable
    java.text.DateFormat
java.util.AbstractCollection<E>
    java.util.AbstractList<E>
        java.util.AbstractSequentialList<E>
```

```
java.util.LinkedList<E> implements List<E>, Queue<E>, Serializable
java.util.ArrayList<E> implements List<E>, Serializable
java.util.AbstractQueue<E>
    java.util.PriorityQueue<E> implements Serializable
java.util.AbstractSet<E>
    java.util.HashSet<E> implements Serializable, Set<E>
    java.util.TreeSet<E> implements Serializable, SortedSet<E>
java.util.AbstractMap<K, V>
    java.util.HashMap<K, V> implements Map<K, V>, Serializable
        java.util.LinkedHashMap<K, V>
            java.util.TreeMap<K, V> implements Serializable, Map<K, V>
java.util.Arrays
java.util.Collections
java.util.Calendar
    java.util.GregorianCalendar
java.util.Date implements Serializable
java.util.Dictionary<K, V>
    java.util.Hashtable<K, V>
        java.util.Properties implements Serializable
java.util.EventObject implements Serializable
    java.awt.AWTEvent
        java.awt.event.ActionEvent
        java.awt.event.ComponentEvent
            java.awt.event.InputEvent
            java.awt.event.KeyEvent
            java.awt.event.MouseEvent
        javax.swing.event.ChangeEvent
java.util.Random implements Serializable
java.util.Scanner
java.util.TimeZone implements Serializable
java.util.concurrent.locks.ReentrantLock implements Lock, Serializable
java.util.logging.Level implements Serializable
java.util.logging.Logger
javax.swing.ButtonGroup implements Serializable
javax.swing.ImageIcon implements Serializable
javax.swing.KeyStroke implements Serializable
javax.swing.Timer implements Serializable
javax.swing.border.AbstractBorder implements Serializable
    javax.swing.border.EtchedBorder
    javax.swing.border.TitledBorder
javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilder
javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory
javax.xml.xpath.XPathFactory
java.lang.Comparable<T>
java.lang.Runnable
java.sql.Connection
java.sql.ResultSet
java.sql.ResultSetMetaData
java.sql.Statement
    java.sql.PreparedStatement
java.util.Collection<E>
    java.util.List<E>
    java.util.Set<E>
        java.util.SortedSet<E>
java.util.Comparator<T>
java.util.EventListener
    java.awt.event.ActionListener
    java.awt.event.KeyListener
    java.awt.eventMouseListener
    javax.swing.event.ChangeListener
```

```

java.util.Iterator<E>
    java.util.ListIterator<E>
java.util.Map<K, V>
java.util.Queue<E> extends Collection<E>
java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition
java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock
javax.xml.xpath.XPath
org.w3c.dom.DOMConfiguration
org.w3c.dom.DOMImplementation
org.w3c.dom.Node
    org.w3c.dom.CharacterData
        org.w3c.dom.Text
    org.w3c.dom.Document
        org.w3c.dom.Element
org.w3c.dom.ls.DOMImplementationLS
org.w3c.dom.ls.LSSerializer

```

In the following descriptions, the phrase “this object” (“this component”, “this container”, and so forth) means the object (component, container, and so forth) on which the method is invoked (the implicit parameter, `this`).

## Package `java.awt`

### Class `java.awt.BorderLayout`

- **`BorderLayout()`**

This constructs a border layout. A border layout has five regions for adding components, called "NORTH", "EAST", "SOUTH", "WEST", and "CENTER".

- **`static final int CENTER`**

This value identifies the center position of a border layout.

- **`static final int EAST`**

This value identifies the east position of a border layout.

- **`static final int NORTH`**

This value identifies the north position of a border layout.

- **`static final int SOUTH`**

This value identifies the south position of a border layout.

- **`static final int WEST`**

This value identifies the west position of a border layout.

### Class `java.awt.Color`

- **`Color(int red, int green, int blue)`**

This creates a color with the specified red, green, and blue values between 0 and 255.

**Parameters:**    `red` The red component

`green` The green component

`blue` The blue component

## Class `java.awt.Component`

- `void addKeyListener(KeyListener listener)`  
This method adds a key listener to the component.  
**Parameters:** `listener` The key listener to be added
- `void addMouseListener(MouseListener listener)`  
This method adds a mouse listener to the component.  
**Parameters:** `listener` The mouse listener to be added
- `int getHeight()`  
This method gets the height of this component.  
**Returns:** The height in pixels
- `int getWidth()`  
This method gets the width of this component.  
**Returns:** The width in pixels
- `void repaint()`  
This method repaints this component by scheduling a call to the `paint` method.
- `void setFocusable(boolean focusable)`  
This method controls whether or not the component can receive input focus.  
**Parameters:** `focusable` true to have focus, or false to lose focus
- `void setPreferredSize(Dimension preferredSize)`  
This method sets the preferred size of this component.
- `void setSize(int width, int height)`  
This method sets the size of this component.  
**Parameters:** `width` the component width  
              `height` the component height
- `void setVisible(boolean visible)`  
This method shows or hides the component.  
**Parameters:** `visible` true to show the component, or false to hide it

## Class `java.awt.Container`

- `void add(Component c)`
- `void add(Component c, Object position)`  
These methods add a component to the end of this container. If a position is given, the layout manager is called to position the component.  
**Parameters:** `c` The component to be added  
              `position` An object expressing position information for the layout manager
- `void setLayout(LayoutManager manager)`  
This method sets the layout manager for this container.  
**Parameters:** `manager` A layout manager

## Class `java.awt.Dimension`

- `Dimension(int width, int height)`  
This constructs a `Dimension` object with the given width and height.  
**Parameters:** `width` The width  
              `height` The height

## Class `java.awt.FlowLayout`

- `FlowLayout()`

This constructs a new flow layout. A flow layout places as many components as possible in a row, without changing their size, and starts new rows as needed.

## Class `java.awt.Font`

- `Font(String name, int style, int size)`

This constructs a font object from the specified name, style, and point size.

**Parameters:** `name` The font name, either a font face name or a logical font name, which must be one of "Dialog", "DialogInput", "Monospaced", "Serif", or "SansSerif"  
`style` One of `Font.PLAIN`, `Font.ITALIC`, `Font.BOLD`, or  
    `Font.ITALIC+Font.BOLD`  
`size` The point size of the font

## Class `java.awt.Frame`

- `void setTitle(String title)`

This method sets the frame title.

**Parameters:** `title` The title to be displayed in the border of the frame

## Class `java.awt.Graphics`

- `void drawLine(int x1, int y1, int x2, int y2)`

Draws a line between two points.

**Parameters:** `x1, y1` The starting point  
    `x2, y2` The endpoint

- `void setColor(Color c)`

This method sets the current color. After the method call, all graphics operations use this color.

**Parameters:** `c` The new drawing color

## Class `java.awt.Graphics2D`

- `void draw(Shape s)`

This method draws the outline of the given shape. Many classes—among them `Rectangle` and `Line2D.Double`—implement the `Shape` interface.

**Parameters:** `s` The shape to be drawn

- `void drawString(String s, int x, int y)`

- `void drawString(String s, float x, float y)`

These methods draw a string in the current font.

**Parameters:** `s` The string to draw  
    `x, y` The basepoint of the first character in the string

- `void fill(Shape s)`

This method draws the given shape and fills it with the current color.

**Parameters:** `s` The shape to be filled

## Class `java.awt.GridLayout`

- `GridLayout(int rows, int cols)`

This constructor creates a grid layout with the specified number of rows and columns. The components in a grid layout are arranged in a grid with equal widths and heights. One, but not both, of `rows` and `cols` can be zero, in which case any number of objects can be placed in a row or in a column, respectively.

**Parameters:** `rows` The number of rows in the grid  
`cols` The number of columns in the grid

## Class `java.awt.Rectangle`

- `Rectangle()`

This constructs a rectangle with a top-left corner at  $(0, 0)$  and width and height set to 0.

- `Rectangle(int x, int y, int width, int height)`

This constructs a rectangle with given top-left corner and size.

**Parameters:** `x, y` The top-left corner  
`width` The width  
`height` The height

- `double getHeight()`

- `double getWidth()`

These methods get the height and width of the rectangle.

- `double getX()`

- `double getY()`

These methods get the  $x$ - and  $y$ -coordinates of the top-left corner of the rectangle.

- `void grow(int dw, int dh)`

This method adjusts the width and height of this rectangle.

**Parameters:** `dw` The amount to add to the width (can be negative)  
`dh` The amount to add to the height (can be negative)

- `Rectangle intersection(Rectangle other)`

This method computes the intersection of this rectangle with the specified rectangle.

**Parameters:** `other` A rectangle

**Returns:** The largest rectangle contained in both `this` and `other`

- `void setLocation(int x, int y)`

This method moves this rectangle to a new location.

**Parameters:** `x, y` The new top-left corner

- `void setSize(int width, int height)`

This method sets the width and height of this rectangle to new values.

**Parameters:** `width` The new width

`height` The new height

- `void translate(int dx, int dy)`

This method moves this rectangle.

**Parameters:** `dx` The distance to move along the  $x$ -axis

`dy` The distance to move along the  $y$ -axis

## A-16 Appendix D The Java Library

- `Rectangle union(Rectangle other)`

This method computes the union of this rectangle with the specified rectangle. This is not the set-theoretic union but the smallest rectangle that contains both this and other.

**Parameters:** other A rectangle

**Returns:** The smallest rectangle containing both this and other

### Interface `java.awt.Shape`

The Shape interface describes shapes that can be drawn and filled by a `Graphics2D` object.

## Package `java.awt.event`

### Interface `java.awt.event.ActionListener`

- `void actionPerformed(ActionEvent e)`

The event source calls this method when an action occurs.

### Class `java.awt.event.KeyEvent`

This event is passed to the `KeyListener` methods. Use the `KeyStroke` class to obtain the key information from the key event.

### Interface `java.awt.event.KeyListener`

- `void keyPressed(KeyEvent e)`
- `void keyReleased(KeyEvent e)`

These methods are called when a key has been pressed or released.

- `void keyTyped(KeyEvent e)`

This method is called when a keystroke has been composed by pressing and releasing one or more keys.

### Class `java.awt.event.MouseEvent`

- `int getX()`

This method returns the horizontal position of the mouse as of the time the event occurred.

**Returns:** The x-position of the mouse

- `int getY()`

This method returns the vertical position of the mouse as of the time the event occurred.

**Returns:** The y-position of the mouse

### Interface `java.awt.event.MouseListener`

- `void mouseClicked(MouseEvent e)`

This method is called when the mouse has been clicked (that is, pressed and released in quick succession).

- `void mouseEntered(MouseEvent e)`  
This method is called when the mouse has entered the component to which this listener was added.
- `void mouseExited(MouseEvent e)`  
This method is called when the mouse has exited the component to which this listener was added.
- `void mousePressed(MouseEvent e)`  
This method is called when a mouse button has been pressed.
- `void mouseReleased(MouseEvent e)`  
This method is called when a mouse button has been released.

## Package java.awt.geom

### Class java.awt.geom.Ellipse2D.Double

- `Ellipse2D.Double(double x, double y, double w, double h)`  
This constructs an ellipse from the specified coordinates.  
**Parameters:**    x, y    The top-left corner of the bounding rectangle  
                   w    The width of the bounding rectangle  
                   h    The height of the bounding rectangle

### Class java.awt.geom.Line2D

- `double getX1()`
- `double getX2()`
- `double getY1()`
- `double getY2()`  
These methods get the requested coordinate of an endpoint of this line.  
**Returns:**       The x- or y-coordinate of the first or second endpoint
- `void setLine(double x1, double y1, double x2, double y2)`  
This methods sets the endpoints of this line.  
**Parameters:**    x1, y1    A new endpoint of this line  
                   x2, y2    The other new endpoint

### Class java.awt.geom.Line2D.Double

- `Line2D.Double(double x1, double y1, double x2, double y2)`  
This constructs a line from the specified coordinates.  
**Parameters:**    x1, y1    One endpoint of the line  
                   x2, y2    The other endpoint
- `Line2D.Double(Point2D p1, Point2D p2)`  
This constructs a line from the two endpoints.  
**Parameters:**    p1, p2    The endpoints of the line

## Class `java.awt.geom.Point2D`

- `double getX()`
- `double getY()`

These methods get the requested coordinates of this point.

**Returns:** The *x*- or *y*-coordinate of this point

- `void setLocation(double x, double y)`

This method sets the *x*- and *y*-coordinates of this point.

**Parameters:** *x*, *y* The new location of this point

## Class `java.awt.geom.Point2D.Double`

- `Point2D.Double(double x, double y)`

This constructs a point with the specified coordinates.

**Parameters:** *x*, *y* The coordinates of the point

## Class `java.awt.geom.RectangularShape`

- `int getHeight()`
- `int getWidth()`

These methods get the height or width of the bounding rectangle of this rectangular shape.

**Returns:** The height or width, respectively

- `double getCenterX()`
- `double getCenterY()`
- `double getMaxX()`
- `double getMaxY()`
- `double getMinX()`
- `double getMinY()`

These methods get the requested coordinate value of the corners or center of the bounding rectangle of this shape.

**Returns:** The center, maximum, or minimum *x*- and *y*-coordinates

# Package `java.io`

## Class `java.io.EOFException`

- `EOFException(String message)`

This constructs an “end of file” exception object.

**Parameters:** *message* The detail message

## Class `java.io.File`

- `File(String name)`

This constructs a `File` object that describes a file (which may or may not exist) with the given name.

**Parameters:** *name* The name of the file

- **`boolean exists()`**

This method checks whether there is a file in the local file system that matches this `File` object.

**Returns:** true if there is a matching file, false otherwise

- **`static final String pathSeparator`**

The system-dependent separator between path names. A colon (:) in Linux or Mac OS X; a semicolon (;) in Windows.

## Class `java.io.FileInputStream`

- **`FileInputStream(File f)`**

This constructs a file input stream and opens the chosen file. If the file cannot be opened for reading, a `FileNotFoundException` is thrown.

**Parameters:** f The file to be opened for reading

- **`FileInputStream(String name)`**

This constructs a file input stream and opens the named file. If the file cannot be opened for reading, a `FileNotFoundException` is thrown.

**Parameters:** name The name of the file to be opened for reading

## Class `java.io.FileNotFoundException`

This exception is thrown when a file could not be opened.

## Class `java.io.FileOutputStream`

- **`FileOutputStream(File f)`**

This constructs a file output stream and opens the chosen file. If the file cannot be opened for writing, a `FileNotFoundException` is thrown.

**Parameters:** f The file to be opened for writing

- **`FileOutputStream(String name)`**

This constructs a file output stream and opens the named file. If the file cannot be opened for writing, a `FileNotFoundException` is thrown.

**Parameters:** name The name of the file to be opened for writing

## Class `java.io.InputStream`

- **`void close()`**

This method closes this input stream (such as a `FileInputStream`) and releases any system resources associated with the stream.

- **`int read()`**

This method reads the next byte of data from this input stream.

**Returns:** The next byte of data, or -1 if the end of the stream is reached

## Class `java.io.InputStreamReader`

- **`InputStreamReader(InputStream in)`**

This constructs a reader from a specified input stream.

**Parameters:** in The stream to read from

## Class `java.io.IOException`

This type of exception is thrown when an input/output error is encountered.

## Class `java.io.ObjectInputStream`

- `ObjectInputStream(InputStream in)`

This constructs an object input stream.

**Parameters:** in The stream to read from

- `Object readObject()`

This method reads the next object from this object input stream.

**Returns:** The next object

## Class `java.io.ObjectOutputStream`

- `ObjectOutputStream(OutputStream out)`

This constructs an object output stream.

**Parameters:** out The stream to write to

- `Object writeObject(Object obj)`

This method writes the next object to this object output stream.

**Parameters:** obj The object to write

## Class `java.io.OutputStream`

- `void close()`

This method closes this output stream (such as a `FileOutputStream`) and releases any system resources associated with this stream. A closed stream cannot perform output operations and cannot be reopened.

- `void write(int b)`

This method writes the lowest byte of b to this output stream.

**Parameters:** b The integer whose lowest byte is written

## Class `java.io.PrintStream` / Class `java.io.PrintWriter`

- `PrintStream(String name)`

- `PrintWriter(String name)`

This constructs a `PrintStream` or `PrintWriter` and opens the named file. If the file cannot be opened for writing, a `FileNotFoundException` is thrown.

**Parameters:** name The name of the file to be opened for writing

- `void close()`

This method closes this stream or writer and releases any associated system resources.

- `void print(int x)`

- `void print(double x)`

- `void print(Object x)`

- `void print(String x)`

- `void println()`

- `void println(int x)`

- `void println(double x)`

- `void println(Object x)`

- `void println(String x)`

These methods print a value to this `PrintStream` or `PrintWriter`. The `println` methods print a newline after the value. Objects are printed by converting them to strings with their `toString` methods.

**Parameters:** `x` The value to be printed

- `PrintStream printf(String format, Object... values)`
- `PrintWriter printf(String format, Object... values)`

These methods print the format string to this `PrintStream` or `PrintWriter`, substituting the given values for placeholders that start with %.

**Parameters:** `format` The format string

`values` The values to be printed. You can supply any number of values

**Returns:** The implicit parameter

## Class `java.io.RandomAccessFile`

- `RandomAccessFile(String name, String mode)`

This method opens a named random access file for reading or read/write access.

**Parameters:** `name` The file name

`mode` "r" for reading or "rw" for read/write access

- `long getFilePointer()`

This method gets the current position in this file.

**Returns:** The current position for reading and writing

- `long length()`

This method gets the length of this file.

**Returns:** The file length

- `char readChar()`

- `double readDouble()`

- `int readInt()`

These methods read a value from the current position in this file.

**Returns:** The value that was read from the file

- `void seek(long position)`

This method sets the position for reading and writing in this file.

**Parameters:** `position` The new position

- `void writeChar(int x)`

- `void writeChars(String x)`

- `void writeDouble(double x)`

- `void writeInt(int x)`

These methods write a value to the current position in this file.

**Parameters:** `x` The value to be written

## Interface `java.io.Serializable`

A class should implement this interface in order to enable serialization of objects.

# Package java.lang

## Class java.lang.Boolean

- `Boolean(boolean value)`

This constructs a wrapper object for a boolean value.

**Parameters:** value The value to store in this object

- `boolean booleanValue()`

This method returns the value stored in this boolean object.

**Returns:** The Boolean value of this object

## Class java.lang.Character

- `static boolean isDigit(ch)`

This method tests whether a given character is a Unicode digit.

**Parameters:** ch The character to test

**Returns:** true if the character is a digit

- `static boolean isLetter(ch)`

This method tests whether a given character is a Unicode letter.

**Parameters:** ch The character to test

**Returns:** true if the character is a letter

- `static boolean isLowerCase(ch)`

This method tests whether a given character is a lowercase Unicode letter.

**Parameters:** ch The character to test

**Returns:** true if the character is a lowercase letter

- `static boolean isUpperCase(ch)`

This method tests whether a given character is an uppercase Unicode letter.

**Parameters:** ch The character to test

**Returns:** true if the character is an uppercase letter

## Class java.lang.Class

- `static Class forName(String className)`

This method loads a class with a given name. Loading a class initializes its static variables.

**Parameters:** className The name of the class to load

**Returns:** The type descriptor of the class

## Interface java.lang.Cloneable

A class implements this interface to indicate that the `Object.clone` method is allowed to make a shallow copy of its instance variables.

## Class java.lang.CloneNotSupportedException

This exception is thrown when a program tries to use `Object.clone` to make a shallow copy of an object of a class that does not implement the `Cloneable` interface.

## Interface java.lang.Comparable<T>

- **int compareTo(T other)**

This method compares this object with the other object.

**Parameters:** other The object to be compared

**Returns:** A negative integer if this object is less than the other, zero if they are equal, or a positive integer otherwise

## Class java.lang.Double

- **Double(double value)**

This constructs a wrapper object for a double-precision floating-point number.

**Parameters:** value The value to store in this object

- **double doubleValue()**

This method returns the floating-point value stored in this Double wrapper object.

**Returns:** The value stored in the object

- **static double parseDouble(String s)**

This method returns the floating-point number that the string represents. If the string cannot be interpreted as a number, a NumberFormatException is thrown.

**Parameters:** s The string to be parsed

**Returns:** The value represented by the string argument

## Class java.lang.Error

This is the superclass for all unchecked system errors.

## Class java.lang.IllegalArgumentException

- **IllegalArgumentException()**

This constructs an IllegalArgumentException with no detail message.

## Class java.lang.IllegalStateException

This exception is thrown if the state of an object indicates that a method cannot currently be applied.

## Class java.lang.Integer

- **Integer(int value)**

This constructs a wrapper object for an integer.

**Parameters:** value The value to store in this object

- **int intValue()**

This method returns the integer value stored in this wrapper object.

**Returns:** The value stored in the object

- **static int parseInt(String s)**

This method returns the integer that the string represents. If the string cannot be interpreted as an integer, a NumberFormatException is thrown.

**Parameters:** s The string to be parsed

**Returns:** The value represented by the string argument

## A-24 Appendix D The Java Library

- `static Integer parseInt(String s, int base)`

This method returns the integer value that the string represents in a given number system. If the string cannot be interpreted as an integer, a `NumberFormatException` is thrown.

**Parameters:** `s` The string to be parsed  
`base` The base of the number system (such as 2 or 16)

**Returns:** The value represented by the string argument

- `static String toString(int i)`

- `static String toString(int i, int base)`

This method creates a string representation of an integer in a given number system. If no base is given, a decimal representation is created.

**Parameters:** `i` An integer number  
`base` The base of the number system (such as 2 or 16)

**Returns:** A string representation of the argument in the number system

- `static final int MAX_VALUE`

This constant is the largest value of type `int`.

- `static final int MIN_VALUE`

This constant is the smallest (negative) value of type `int`.

## Class `java.lang.InterruptedException`

This exception is thrown to interrupt a thread, usually with the intention of terminating it.

## Class `java.lang.Math`

- `static double abs(double x)`

This method returns the absolute value  $|x|$ .

**Parameters:** `x` A floating-point value

**Returns:** The absolute value of the argument

- `static double acos(double x)`

This method returns the angle with the given cosine,  $\cos^{-1} x \in [0, \pi]$ .

**Parameters:** `x` A floating-point value between -1 and 1

**Returns:** The arc cosine of the argument, in radians

- `static double asin(double x)`

This method returns the angle with the given sine,  $\sin^{-1} x \in [-\pi/2, \pi/2]$ .

**Parameters:** `x` A floating-point value between -1 and 1

**Returns:** The arc sine of the argument, in radians

- `static double atan(double x)`

This method returns the angle with the given tangent,  $\tan^{-1} x (-\pi/2, \pi/2)$ .

**Parameters:** `x` A floating-point value

**Returns:** The arc tangent of the argument, in radians

- `static double atan2(double y, double x)`

This method returns the arc tangent,  $\tan^{-1} (y/x) \in (-\pi, \pi)$ . If `x` can equal zero, or if it is necessary to distinguish “northwest” from “southeast” and “northeast” from “southwest”, use this method instead of `atan(y/x)`.

**Parameters:** `y, x` Two floating-point values

**Returns:** The angle, in radians, between the points (0,0) and (x,y)

- **static double ceil(double x)**  
This method returns the smallest integer  $\geq x$  (as a double).  
**Parameters:** x A floating-point value  
**Returns:** The smallest integer greater than or equal to the argument
- **static double cos(double radians)**  
This method returns the cosine of an angle given in radians.  
**Parameters:** radians An angle, in radians  
**Returns:** The cosine of the argument
- **static double exp(double x)**  
This method returns the value  $e^x$ , where e is the base of the natural logarithms.  
**Parameters:** x A floating-point value  
**Returns:**  $e^x$
- **static double floor(double x)**  
This method returns the largest integer  $\leq x$  (as a double).  
**Parameters:** x A floating-point value  
**Returns:** The largest integer less than or equal to the argument
- **static double log(double x)**
- **static double log10(double x)**  
This method returns the natural (base e) or decimal (base 10) logarithm of x,  $\ln x$ .  
**Parameters:** x A number greater than 0.0  
**Returns:** The natural logarithm of the argument
- **static int max(int x, int y)**
- **static double max(double x, double y)**  
These methods return the larger of the given arguments.  
**Parameters:** x, y Two integers or floating-point values  
**Returns:** The maximum of the arguments
- **static int min(int x, int y)**
- **static double min(double x, double y)**  
These methods return the smaller of the given arguments.  
**Parameters:** x, y Two integers or floating-point values  
**Returns:** The minimum of the arguments
- **static double pow(double x, double y)**  
This method returns the value  $x^y$  ( $x > 0$ , or  $x = 0$  and  $y > 0$ , or  $x < 0$  and  $y$  is an integer).  
**Parameters:** x, y Two floating-point values  
**Returns:** The value of the first argument raised to the power of the second argument
- **static long round(double x)**  
This method returns the closest long integer to the argument.  
**Parameters:** x A floating-point value  
**Returns:** The argument rounded to the nearest long value
- **static double sin(double radians)**  
This method returns the sine of an angle given in radians.  
**Parameters:** radians An angle, in radians  
**Returns:** The sine of the argument

## A-26 Appendix D The Java Library

- **static double sqrt(double x)**  
This method returns the square root of  $x$ ,  $\sqrt{x}$ .  
**Parameters:**  $x$  A nonnegative floating-point value  
**Returns:** The square root of the argument
- **static double tan(double radians)**  
This method returns the tangent of an angle given in radians.  
**Parameters:** radians An angle, in radians  
**Returns:** The tangent of the argument
- **static double toDegrees(double radians)**  
This method converts radians to degrees.  
**Parameters:** radians An angle, in radians  
**Returns:** The angle in degrees
- **static double toRadians(double degrees)**  
This method converts degrees to radians.  
**Parameters:** degrees An angle, in degrees  
**Returns:** The angle in radians
- **static final double E**  
This constant is the value of  $e$ , the base of the natural logarithms.
- **static final double PI**  
This constant is the value of  $\pi$ .

### Class java.lang.NullPointerException

This exception is thrown when a program tries to use an object through a `null` reference.

### Class java.lang.NumberFormatException

This exception is thrown when a program tries to parse the numerical value of a string that is not a number.

### Class java.lang.Object

- **protected Object clone()**  
This constructs and returns a shallow copy of this object whose instance variables are copies of the instance variables of this object. If an instance variable of the object is an object reference itself, only the reference is copied, not the object itself. However, if the class does not implement the `Cloneable` interface, a `CloneNotSupportedException` is thrown. Subclasses should redefine this method to make a deep copy.  
**Returns:** A copy of this object
- **boolean equals(Object other)**  
This method tests whether `this` and the other object are equal. This method tests only whether the object references are to the same object. Subclasses should redefine this method to compare the instance variables.  
**Parameters:** other The object with which to compare  
**Returns:** true if the objects are equal, false otherwise

- `void notify()`

This method notifies one of the threads that is currently on the wait list for the lock of this object.

- `void notifyAll()`

This method notifies all of the threads that are currently on the wait list for the lock of this object.

- `String toString()`

This method returns a string representation of this object. This method produces only the class name and locations of the objects. Subclasses should redefine this method to print the instance variables.

**Returns:** A string describing this object

- `void wait()`

This method blocks the currently executing thread and puts it on the wait list for the lock of this object.

## Interface `java.lang.Runnable`

- `void run()`

This method should be overridden to define the tasks to be carried out when this runnable is executed.

## Class `java.lang.RuntimeException`

This is the superclass for all unchecked exceptions.

## Class `java.lang.String`

- `int compareTo(String other)`

This method compares this string and the other string lexicographically.

**Parameters:** `other` The other string to be compared

**Returns:** A value less than 0 if this string is lexicographically less than the other, 0 if the strings are equal, and a value greater than 0 otherwise

- `boolean equals(String other)`

- `boolean equalsIgnoreCase(String other)`

These methods test whether two strings are equal, or whether they are equal when letter case is ignored.

**Parameters:** `other` The other string to be compared

**Returns:** true if the strings are equal

- `static String format(String format, Object... values)`

This method formats the given string by substituting placeholders beginning with % with the given values.

**Parameters:** `format` The string with the placeholders

`values` The values to be substituted for the placeholders

**Returns:** The formatted string, with the placeholders replaced by the given values

- `int length()`

This method returns the length of this string.

**Returns:** The count of characters in this string

## A-28 Appendix D The Java Library

- `String replace(String match, String replacement)`

This method replaces matching substrings with a given replacement.

**Parameters:** `match` The string whose matches are to be replaced  
`replacement` The string with which matching substrings are replaced

**Returns:** A string that is identical to this string, with all matching substrings replaced by the given replacement

- `String substring(int begin)`

- `String substring(int begin, int pastEnd)`

These methods return a new string that is a substring of this string, made up of all characters starting at position `begin` and up to either position `pastEnd - 1`, if it is given, or the end of the string.

**Parameters:** `begin` The beginning index, inclusive  
`pastEnd` The ending index, exclusive

**Returns:** The specified substring

- `String toLowerCase()`

This method returns a new string that consists of all characters in this string converted to lowercase.

**Returns:** A string with all characters in this string converted to lowercase

- `String toUpperCase()`

This method returns a new string that consists of all characters in this string converted to uppercase.

**Returns:** A string with all characters in this string converted to uppercase

## Class `java.lang.System`

- `static long currentTimeMillis()`

This method returns the difference, measured in milliseconds, between the current time and midnight, Universal Time, January 1, 1970.

**Returns:** The current time in milliseconds since January 1, 1970.

- `static void exit(int status)`

This method terminates the program.

**Parameters:** `status` Exit status. A nonzero status code indicates abnormal termination

- `static final InputStream in`

This object is the “standard input” stream. Reading from this stream typically reads keyboard input.

- `static final PrintStream out`

This object is the “standard output” stream. Printing to this stream typically sends output to the console window.

## Class `java.lang.Thread`

- `boolean interrupted()`

This method tests whether another thread has called the `interrupt` method on the current thread.

**Returns:** `true` if the thread has been interrupted

- **static void sleep(int millis)**  
This method puts the calling thread to sleep.  
**Parameters:** millis The number of milliseconds to sleep
- **void start()**  
This method starts the thread and executes its run method.

## Class java.lang.Throwable

This is the superclass of exceptions and errors.

- **Throwable()**  
This constructs a Throwable with no detail message.
- **String getMessage()**  
This method gets the message that describes the exception or error.  
**Returns:** The message
- **void printStackTrace()**  
This method prints a stack trace to the “standard error” stream. The stack trace contains lists this object and all calls that were pending when it was created.

# Package java.math

## Class java.math.BigDecimal

- **BigDecimal(String value)**  
This constructs an arbitrary-precision floating-point number from the digits in the given string.  
**Parameters:** value A string representing the floating-point number
- **BigDecimal add(BigDecimal other)**
- **BigDecimal multiply(BigDecimal other)**
- **BigDecimal subtract(BigDecimal other)**  
These methods return a BigDecimal whose value is the sum, difference, product, or quotient of this number and the other.  
**Parameters:** other The other number  
**Returns:** The result of the arithmetic operation

## Class java.math.BigInteger

- **BigInteger(String value)**  
This constructs an arbitrary-precision integer from the digits in the given string.  
**Parameters:** value A string representing an arbitrary-precision integer
- **BigInteger add(BigInteger other)**
- **BigInteger divide(BigInteger other)**
- **BigInteger mod(BigInteger other)**
- **BigInteger multiply(BigInteger other)**
- **BigInteger subtract(BigInteger other)**  
These methods return a BigInteger whose value is the sum, quotient, remainder, product, or difference of this number and the other.  
**Parameters:** other The other number  
**Returns:** The result of the arithmetic operation

# Package java.net

## Class java.net.HttpURLConnection

- `int getResponseCode()`

This method gets the response status code from this connection. A value of `HTTP_OK` indicates success.

**Returns:** The HTTP response code

- `String getResponseMessage()`

This method gets the response message of this connection's HTTP request.

**Returns:** The message, such as "OK" or "File not found"

- `static int HTTP_OK`

This response code indicates a successful fulfillment of the request.

## Class java.net.ServerSocket

- `ServerSocket(int port)`

This constructs a server socket that listens to the given port.

**Parameters:** port The port number to listen to

- `Socket accept()`

This method waits for a client to connect to the port to which this server socket listens. When a connection occurs, the method returns a socket through which the server can communicate with the client.

**Returns:** The socket through which the server can communicate with the client

- `void close()`

This method closes the server socket. Clients can no longer connect.

## Class java.net.Socket

- `Socket(String host, int port)`

This constructs a socket that connects to a server.

**Parameters:** host The host name

port The port number to connect to

- `void close()`

This method closes the connection with the server.

- `InputStream getInputStream()`

This method gets the input stream through which the client can read the information that the server sends.

**Returns:** The input stream associated with this socket

- `OutputStream getOutputStream()`

This method gets the output stream through which the client can send information to the server.

**Returns:** The output stream associated with this socket

## Class java.net.URL

- `URL(String s)`

This constructs a URL object from a string containing the URL.

**Parameters:** s The URL string, such as "http://horstmann.com/index.html"

- `InputStream openStream()`

This method gets the input stream through which the client can read the information that the server sends.

**Returns:** The input stream associated with this URL

## Class java.netURLConnection

- `URLConnection(URL u)`

This constructs a URLConnection object from a URL object.

**Parameters:** u The resource to which you intend to connect

- `int getContentLength()`

This method gets the value of the content-length header of this URL connection.

**Returns:** The number of bytes in the content that the server is sending

- `String getContentType()`

This method gets the value of the content-type header of this URL connection.

**Returns:** The MIME type of the content that the server is sending, such as "text/plain" or "image/gif"

- `InputStream getInputStream()`

This method gets the input stream through which the client can read the information that the server sends.

**Returns:** The input stream associated with this URL

- `void setIfModifiedSince(Date d)`

This method instructs the connection to request that the server send data only if the content has been modified since a given date.

**Parameters:** d The modification date

# Package java.sql

## Interface java.sql.Connection

- `void close()`

This method closes the connection with the database.

- `void commit()`

This method commits all database changes since the last call to commit or rollback.

- `Statement createStatement()`

This method creates a statement object, which can be used to issue database commands.

**Returns:** A statement object

## A-32 Appendix D The Java Library

- **PreparedStatement prepareStatement(String command)**

This method creates a prepared statement for a SQL command that is issued repeatedly.

**Parameters:** command The SQL command

**Returns:** The statement object for setting parameters and executing the call

- **void rollback()**

This method abandons all database changes since the last call to commit or rollback.

- **void setAutoCommit(boolean b)**

This method sets the auto commit mode. By default, it is true. If it is set to false, then transactions are indicated with calls to commit or rollback.

**Parameters:** b The desired auto commit mode

## Class java.sql.DriverManager

- **static Connection getConnection(String url, String username, String password)**

This method obtains a connection to the database specified in the database URL.

**Parameters:** url The database URL

username The database user name

password The password for the database user

**Returns:** A connection to the database

## Interface java.sql.PreparedStatement

- **boolean execute()**

This method executes this prepared statement.

**Returns:** true if the execution yielded a result set

- **ResultSet executeQuery()**

This method executes this prepared query.

**Returns:** The query result

- **int executeUpdate()**

This method executes this prepared update command.

**Returns:** The number of records affected by the update

- **void setDouble(int index, double value)**

This method sets a floating-point parameter for a call of this prepared statement.

**Parameters:** index The parameter index (starting with 1)

value The parameter value

- **void.setInt(int index, int value)**

This method sets an integer parameter for a call of this prepared statement.

**Parameters:** index The parameter index (starting with 1)

value The parameter value

- **void.setString(int index, String value)**

This method sets a string parameter for a call of this prepared statement.

**Parameters:** index The parameter index (starting with 1)

value The parameter value

## Interface `java.sql.ResultSet`

- **`void close()`**  
This method closes the result set.
- **`double getDouble(int column)`**  
This method returns the floating-point value at the cursor row and the given column.  
**Parameters:** `column` The column index (starting with 1)  
**Returns:** The data value
- **`double getDouble(String columnName)`**  
This method returns the floating-point value at the cursor row and the given column name.  
**Parameters:** `columnName` The column name  
**Returns:** The data value
- **`int getInt(int column)`**  
This method returns the integer value at the cursor row and the given column.  
**Parameters:** `column` The column index (starting with 1)  
**Returns:** The data value
- **`int getInt(String columnName)`**  
This method returns the integer value at the cursor row and the given column name.  
**Parameters:** `columnName` The column name  
**Returns:** The data value
- **`ResultSetMetaData getMetaData()`**  
This method returns the metadata associated with this result set.  
**Returns:** The metadata
- **`String getString(int column)`**  
This method returns the value at the cursor row and the given column.  
**Parameters:** `column` The column index (starting with 1)  
**Returns:** The data value, as a string
- **`String getString(String columnName)`**  
This method returns the value at the cursor row and the given column name.  
**Parameters:** `columnName` The column name  
**Returns:** The data value, as a string
- **`boolean next()`**  
This method positions the cursor to the next row. You must call `next` once before calling any of the `get` methods to move the cursor to the first row.  
**Returns:** true if the cursor has been positioned on a row, false at the end of the result set

## Interface `java.sql.ResultSetMetaData`

- **`int getColumnCount()`**  
This method returns the number of columns of this result set.  
**Returns:** The number of columns

## A-34 Appendix D The Java Library

- `int getColumnDisplaySize(int column)`

This method returns the number of characters that should be used to display the specified column in this result set.

**Parameters:** `column` The column index (starting with 1)

**Returns:** The number of characters that should be used to display this column

- `String getColumnLabel(int column)`

This method returns the label for a column in this result set.

**Parameters:** `column` The column index (starting with 1)

**Returns:** The column label

### Class `java.sql.SQLException`

This exception is thrown when a database error occurs.

### Interface `java.sql.Statement`

- `void close()`

This method closes this statement.

- `boolean execute(String command)`

This method executes a SQL command.

**Parameters:** `command` The command to execute

**Returns:** true if the execution yielded a result set

- `ResultSet executeQuery(String command)`

This method executes a SQL query.

**Parameters:** `command` The query command to execute

**Returns:** The query result

- `int executeUpdate(String command)`

This method executes a SQL update command.

**Parameters:** `command` The update command to execute

**Returns:** The number of records affected by the update

- `ResultSet getResultSet()`

This method gets the result of the last command.

**Returns:** The query result from the last command

- `int getUpdateCount()`

This method gets the update count of the last command.

**Returns:** The number of records affected by the last command

## Package `java.text`

### Class `java.text.DateFormat`

- `String format(Date aDate)`

This method formats a date.

**Parameters:** `aDate` The date to format

**Returns:** A string containing the formatted date

- **static DateFormat getTimeInstance()**  
This method returns a formatter that formats only the time portion of a date.  
**Returns:** The formatter object
- **void setTimeZone(TimeZone zone)**  
This method sets the time zone to be used when formatting dates.  
**Parameters:** zone The time zone to use

## Package java.util

### Class java.util.ArrayList<E>

- **ArrayList()**  
This constructs an empty array list.
- **boolean add(E element)**  
This method appends an element to the end of this array list.  
**Parameters:** element The element to add  
**Returns:** true (This method returns a value because it overrides a method in the List interface.)
- **void add(int index, E element)**  
This method inserts an element into this array list at the given position.  
**Parameters:** index Insert position  
element The element to insert
- **E get(int index)**  
This method gets the element at the specified position in this array list.  
**Parameters:** index Position of the element to return  
**Returns:** The requested element
- **E remove(int index)**  
This method removes the element at the specified position in this array list and returns it.  
**Parameters:** index Position of the element to remove  
**Returns:** The removed element
- **E set(int index, E element)**  
This method replaces the element at a specified position in this array list.  
**Parameters:** index Position of element to replace  
element Element to be stored at the specified position  
**Returns:** The element previously at the specified position
- **int size()**  
This method returns the number of elements in this array list.  
**Returns:** The number of elements in this array list

## Class `java.util.Arrays`

- `static int binarySearch(Object[] a, Object key)`

This method searches the specified array for the specified object using the binary search algorithm. The array elements must implement the `Comparable` interface. The array must be sorted in ascending order.

**Parameters:** `a` The array to be searched  
`key` The value to be searched for

**Returns:** The position of the search key, if it is contained in the array; otherwise,  $-index - 1$ , where `index` is the position where the element may be inserted

- `static T[] copyOf(T[] a, int newLength)`

This method copies the elements of the array `a`, or the first `newLength` elements if `a.length > newLength`, into an array of length `newLength` and returns that array. `T` can be a primitive type, class, or interface type.

**Parameters:** `a` The array to be copied  
`key` The value to be searched for

**Returns:** The position of the search key, if it is contained in the array; otherwise,  $-index - 1$ , where `index` is the position where the element may be inserted

- `static void sort(Object[] a)`

This method sorts the specified array of objects into ascending order. Its elements must implement the `Comparable` interface.

**Parameters:** `a` The array to be sorted

- `static String toString(T[] a)`

This method creates and returns a string containing the array elements. `T` can be a primitive type, class, or interface type.

**Parameters:** `a` An array

**Returns:** A string containing a comma-separated list of string representations of the array elements, surrounded by brackets.

## Class `java.util.Calendar`

- `int get(int field)`

This method returns the value of the given field.

**Parameters:** `field` One of `Calendar.YEAR`, `Calendar.MONTH`, `Calendar.DAY_OF_MONTH`, `Calendar.HOUR`, `Calendar.MINUTE`, `Calendar.SECOND`, or `Calendar.MILLISECOND`

## Interface `java.util.Collection<E>`

- `boolean add(E element)`

This method adds an element to this collection.

**Parameters:** `element` The element to add

**Returns:** true if adding the element changes the collection

- `boolean contains(E element)`

This method tests whether an element is present in this collection.

**Parameters:** `element` The element to find

**Returns:** true if the element is contained in the collection

- **`Iterator iterator()`**

This method returns an iterator that can be used to traverse the elements of this collection.

**Returns:** An object of a class implementing the `Iterator` interface

- **`boolean remove(E element)`**

This method removes an element from this collection.

**Parameters:** `element` The element to remove

**Returns:** true if removing the element changes the collection

- **`int size()`**

This method returns the number of elements in this collection.

**Returns:** The number of elements in this collection

## Class `java.util.Collections`

- **`static <T> int binarySearch(List<T> a, T key)`**

This method searches the specified list for the specified object using the binary search algorithm. The list elements must implement the `Comparable` interface. The list must be sorted in ascending order.

**Parameters:** `a` The list to be searched

`key` The value to be searched for

**Returns:** The position of the search key, if it is contained in the list; otherwise,  $-index - 1$ , where `index` is the position where the element may be inserted

- **`static <T> void sort(List<T> a)`**

This method sorts the specified list of objects into ascending order. Its elements must implement the `Comparable` interface.

**Parameters:** `a` The list to be sorted

## Interface `java.util.Comparator<T>`

- **`int compare(T first, T second)`**

This method compares the given objects.

**Parameters:** `first, second` The objects to be compared

**Returns:** A negative integer if the first object is less than the second, zero if they are equal, or a positive integer otherwise

## Class `java.util.Date`

- **`Date()`**

This constructs an object that represents the current date and time.

## Class `java.util.EventObject`

- **`Object getSource()`**

This method returns a reference to the object on which this event initially occurred.

**Returns:** The source of this event

## Class `java.util.GregorianCalendar`

- `GregorianCalendar()`

This constructs a calendar object that represents the current date and time.

- `GregorianCalendar(int year, int month, int day)`

This constructs a calendar object that represents the start of the given date.

**Parameters:** year, month, day The given date

## Class `java.util.HashMap<K, V>`

- `HashMap<K, V>()`

This constructs an empty hash map.

## Class `java.util.HashSet<E>`

- `HashSet<E>()`

This constructs an empty hash set.

## Class `java.util.InputMismatchException`

This exception is thrown if the next available input item does not match the type of the requested item.

## Interface `java.util.Iterator<E>`

- `boolean hasNext()`

This method checks whether the iterator is past the end of the list.

**Returns:** true if the iterator is not yet past the end of the list

- `E next()`

This method moves the iterator over the next element in the linked list. This method throws an exception if the iterator is past the end of the list.

**Returns:** The object that was just skipped over

- `void remove()`

This method removes the element that was returned by the last call to next or previous. This method throws an exception if there was an add or remove operation after the last call to next or previous.

## Class `java.util.LinkedHashMap<K, V>`

- `LinkedHashMap<K, V>()`

This constructs an empty linked hash map. The iterator of a linked hash map visits the entries in the order in which they were added to the map.

## Class `java.util.LinkedList<E>`

- `void addFirst(E element)`
- `void addLast(E element)`

These methods add an element before the first or after the last element in this list.

**Parameters:** element The element to be added

- `E getFirst()`
- `E getLast()`

These methods return a reference to the specified element from this list.

**Returns:** The first or last element

- `E removeFirst()`
- `E removeLast()`

These methods remove the specified element from this list.

**Returns:** A reference to the removed element

## Interface `java.util.List<E>`

- `ListIterator<E> listIterator()`

This method gets an iterator to visit the elements in this list.

**Returns:** An iterator that points before the first element in this list

## Interface `java.util.ListIterator<E>`

Objects implementing this interface are created by the `listIterator` methods of list classes.

- `void add(E element)`

This method adds an element after the iterator position and moves the iterator after the new element.

**Parameters:** `element` The element to be added

- `boolean hasPrevious()`

This method checks whether the iterator is before the first element of the list.

**Returns:** true if the iterator is not before the first element of the list

- `E previous()`

This method moves the iterator over the previous element in the linked list. This method throws an exception if the iterator is before the first element of the list.

**Returns:** The object that was just skipped over

- `void set(E element)`

This method replaces the element that was returned by the last call to `next` or `previous`. This method throws an exception if there was an `add` or `remove` operation after the last call to `next` or `previous`.

**Parameters:** `element` The element that replaces the old list element

## Interface `java.util.Map<K, V>`

- `V get(K key)`

Gets the value associated with a key in this map.

**Parameters:** `key` The key for which to find the associated value

**Returns:** The value associated with the key, or `null` if the key is not present in the map

- `Set<K> keySet()`

This method returns all keys this map.

**Returns:** A set of all keys in this map

## A-40 Appendix D The Java Library

- `V put(K key, V value)`

This method associates a value with a key in this map.

**Parameters:** key The lookup key

value The value to associate with the key

**Returns:** The value previously associated with the key, or `null` if the key was not present in the map

- `V remove(K key)`

This method removes a key and its associated value from this map.

**Parameters:** key The lookup key

**Returns:** The value previously associated with the key, or `null` if the key was not present in the map

### Class `java.util.NoSuchElementException`

This exception is thrown if an attempt is made to retrieve a value that does not exist.

### Class `java.util.PriorityQueue<E>`

- `PriorityQueue<E>()`

This constructs an empty priority queue. The element type E must implement the Comparable interface.

- `E remove()`

This method removes the smallest element in the priority queue.

**Returns:** The removed value

### Class `java.util.Properties`

- `String getProperty(String key)`

This method gets the value associated with a key in this properties map.

**Parameters:** key The key for which to find the associated value

**Returns:** The value, or `null` if the key is not present in the map

- `void load(InputStream in)`

This method loads a set of key/value pairs into this properties map from a stream.

**Parameters:** in The stream from which to read the key/value pairs (it must be a sequence of lines of the form key=value)

### Interface `java.util.Queue<E>`

- `E peek()`

Gets the element at the head of the queue without removing it.

**Returns:** The head element or `null` if the queue is empty

### Class `java.util.Random`

- `Random()`

This constructs a new random number generator.

- `double nextDouble()`

This method returns the next pseudorandom, uniformly distributed floating-point number between 0.0 (inclusive) and 1.0 (exclusive) from this random number generator's sequence.

**Returns:** The next pseudorandom floating-point number

- `int nextInt(int n)`

This method returns the next pseudorandom, uniformly distributed integer between 0 (inclusive) and the specified value (exclusive) drawn from this random number generator's sequence.

**Parameters:** `n` Number of values to draw from

**Returns:** The next pseudorandom integer

## Class `java.util.Scanner`

- `Scanner(File in)`

- `Scanner(InputStream in)`

- `Scanner(Reader in)`

These construct a scanner that reads from the given file, input stream, or reader.

**Parameters:** `in` The file, input stream, or reader from which to read

- `void close()`

This method closes this scanner and releases any associated system resources.

- `boolean hasNext()`

- `boolean hasNextDouble()`

- `boolean hasNextInt()`

- `boolean hasNextLine()`

These methods test whether it is possible to read any non-empty string, a floating-point value, an integer, or a line, as the next item.

**Returns:** true if it is possible to read an item of the requested type, false otherwise (either because the end of the file has been reached, or because a number type was tested and the next item is not a number)

- `String next()`

- `double nextDouble()`

- `int nextInt()`

- `String nextLine()`

These methods read the next whitespace-delimited string, floating-point value, integer, or line.

**Returns:** The value that was read

- `Scanner useDelimiter(String pattern)`

Sets the pattern for the delimiters between input tokens.

**Parameters:** `pattern` A regular expression for the delimiter pattern

**Returns:** This scanner

## Interface `java.util.Set<E>`

This interface describes a collection that contains no duplicate elements.

## Class java.util.TimeZone

- `static String[] getAvailableIDs()`

This method gets the supported time zone IDs.

**Returns:** An array of ID strings

- `static TimeZone getTimeZone(String id)`

This method gets the time zone for a time zone ID.

**Parameters:** id The time zone ID, such as "America/Los\_Angeles"

**Returns:** The time zone object associated with the ID, or null if the ID is not supported

## Class java.util.TreeMap<K, V>

- `TreeMap<K, V>()`

This constructs an empty tree map. The iterator of a TreeMap visits the entries in sorted order.

## Class java.util.TreeSet<E>

- `TreeSet<E>()`

This constructs an empty tree set.

# Package java.util.concurrent.locks

## Interface java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition

- `void await()`

This method blocks the current thread until it is signalled or interrupted.

- `void signal()`

This method unblocks one thread that is waiting on this condition.

- `void signalAll()`

This method unblocks all threads that are waiting on this condition.

## Interface java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock

- `void lock()`

This method causes the current thread to acquire this lock. The thread blocks if the lock is not available.

- `Condition newCondition()`

This method creates a new condition object for this lock.

**Returns:** The condition object

- `void unlock()`

This method causes the current thread to relinquish this lock.

## Class java.util.concurrent.locks.ReentrantLock

- `ReentrantLock()`

This constructs a new reentrant lock.

## Package java.util.logging

### Class java.util.logging.Level

- **static final int INFO**  
This value indicates informational logging.
- **static final int OFF**  
This value indicates logging of no messages.

### Class java.util.logging.Logger

- **static Logger getGlobal()**  
This method gets the global logger. For Java 5 and 6, use getLogger("global") instead.  
**Returns:** The global logger that, by default, displays messages with level INFO or a higher severity on the console.
- **void info(String message)**  
This method logs an informational message.  
**Parameters:** message The message to log
- **void setLevel(Level aLevel)**  
This method sets the logging level. Logging messages with a lesser severity than the current level are ignored.  
**Parameters:** aLevel The minimum level for logging messages

## Package javax.swing

### Class javax.swing.AbstractButton

- **void addActionListener(ActionListener listener)**  
This method adds an action listener to the button.  
**Parameters:** listener The action listener to be added
- **boolean isSelected()**  
This method returns the selection state of the button.  
**Returns:** true if the button is selected
- **void setSelected(boolean state)**  
This method sets the selection state of the button. This method updates the button but does not trigger an action event.  
**Parameters:** state true to select, false to deselect

### Class javax.swing.ButtonGroup

- **void add(AbstractButton button)**  
This method adds the button to the group.  
**Parameters:** button The button to add

## Class javax.swing.ImageIcon

- `ImageIcon(String filename)`

This constructs an image icon from the specified graphics file.

**Parameters:** filename A string specifying a file name

## Class javax.swing.JButton

- `JButton(String label)`

This constructs a button with the given label.

**Parameters:** label The button label

## Class javax.swing.JCheckBox

- `JCheckBox(String text)`

This constructs a check box with the given text, which is initially deselected.

(Use the `setSelected` method to make the box selected; see the `javax.swing`.

`AbstractButton` class.)

**Parameters:** text The text displayed next to the check box

## Class javax.swing.JComboBox

- `JComboBox()`

This constructs a combo box with no items.

- `void addItem(Object item)`

This method adds an item to the item list of this combo box.

**Parameters:** item The item to add

- `Object getSelectedItem()`

This method gets the currently selected item of this combo box.

**Returns:** The currently selected item

- `boolean isEditable()`

This method checks whether the combo box is editable. An editable combo box allows the user to type into the text field of the combo box.

**Returns:** true if the combo box is editable

- `void setEditable(boolean state)`

This method is used to make the combo box editable or not.

**Parameters:** state true to make editable, false to disable editing

- `void setSelectedItem(Object item)`

This method sets the item that is shown in the display area of the combo box as selected.

**Parameters:** item The item to be displayed as selected

## Class javax.swing.JComponent

- `protected void paintComponent(Graphics g)`

Override this method to paint the surface of a component. Your method needs to call `super.paintComponent(g)`.

**Parameters:** g The graphics context used for drawing

- **void setBorder(Border b)**  
This method sets the border of this component.  
**Parameters:** b The border to surround this component
- **void setFont(Font f)**  
Sets the font used for the text in this component.  
**Parameters:** f A font

## Class javax.swing.JFileChooser

- **JFileChooser()**  
This constructs a file chooser.
- **File getSelectedFile()**  
This method gets the selected file from this file chooser.  
**Returns:** The selected file
- **int showOpenDialog(Component parent)**  
This method displays an “Open File” file chooser dialog box.  
**Parameters:** parent The parent component or null  
**Returns:** The return state of this file chooser after it has been closed by the user: either APPROVE\_OPTION or CANCEL\_OPTION. If APPROVE\_OPTION is returned, call getSelectedFile() on this file chooser to get the file
- **int showSaveDialog(Component parent)**  
This method displays a “Save File” file chooser dialog box.  
**Parameters:** parent The parent component or null  
**Returns:** The return state of the file chooser after it has been closed by the user: either APPROVE\_OPTION or CANCEL\_OPTION

## Class javax.swing.JFrame

- **void setDefaultCloseOperation(int operation)**  
This method sets the default action for closing the frame.  
**Parameters:** operation The desired close operation. Choose among DO NOTHING ON CLOSE, HIDE ON CLOSE (the default), DISPOSE ON CLOSE, or EXIT ON CLOSE
- **void setJMenuBar(JMenuBar mb)**  
This method sets the menu bar for this frame.  
**Parameters:** mb The menu bar. If mb is null, then the current menu bar is removed
- **static final int EXIT\_ON\_CLOSE**  
This value indicates that when the user closes this frame, the application is to exit.

## Class javax.swing.JLabel

- **JLabel(String text)**
- **JLabel(String text, int alignment)**  
These containers create a JLabel instance with the specified text and horizontal alignment.  
**Parameters:** text The label text to be displayed by the label  
alignment One of SwingConstants.LEFT, SwingConstants.CENTER, or SwingConstants.RIGHT

## Class javax.swing.JMenu

- `JMenu()`

This constructs a menu with no items.

- `JMenuItem add(JMenuItem menuItem)`

This method appends a menu item to the end of this menu.

**Parameters:** `menuItem` The menu item to be added

**Returns:** The menu item that was added

## Class javax.swing.JMenuBar

- `JMenuBar()`

This constructs a menu bar with no menus.

- `JMenu add(JMenu menu)`

This method appends a menu to the end of this menu bar.

**Parameters:** `menu` The menu to be added

**Returns:** The menu that was added

## Class javax.swing.JMenuItem

- `JMenuItem(String text)`

This constructs a menu item.

**Parameters:** `text` The text to appear in the menu item

## Class javax.swing.JOptionPane

- `static String showInputDialog(Object prompt)`

This method brings up a modal input dialog box, which displays a prompt and waits for the user to enter an input in a text field, preventing the user from doing anything else in this program.

**Parameters:** `prompt` The prompt to display

**Returns:** The string that the user typed

- `static void showMessageDialog(Component parent, Object message)`

This method brings up a confirmation dialog box that displays a message and waits for the user to confirm it.

**Parameters:** `parent` The parent component or `null`

`message` The message to display

## Class javax.swing.JPanel

This class is a component without decorations. It can be used as an invisible container for other components.

## Class javax.swing.JRadioButton

- `JRadioButton(String text)`

This constructs a radio button having the given text that is initially deselected. (Use the `setSelected` method to select it; see the `javax.swing.AbstractButton` class.)

**Parameters:** `text` The string displayed next to the radio button

## Class javax.swing.JScrollPane

- **JScrollPane(Component c)**

This constructs a scroll pane around the given component.

**Parameters:** c The component that is decorated with scroll bars

## Class javax.swing.JSlider

- **JSlider(int min, int max, int value)**

This constructor creates a horizontal slider using the specified minimum, maximum, and value.

**Parameters:** min The smallest possible slider value  
max The largest possible slider value  
value The initial value of the slider

- **void addChangeListener(ChangeListener listener)**

This method adds a change listener to the slider.

**Parameters:** listener The change listener to add

- **int getValue()**

This method returns the slider's value.

**Returns:** The current value of the slider

## Class javax.swing.JTextArea

- **JTextArea()**

This constructs an empty text area.

- **JTextArea(int rows, int columns)**

This constructs an empty text area with the specified number of rows and columns.

**Parameters:** rows The number of rows  
columns The number of columns

- **void append(String text)**

This method appends text to this text area.

**Parameters:** text The text to append

## Class javax.swing.JTextField

- **JTextField()**

This constructs an empty text field.

- **JTextField(int columns)**

This constructs an empty text field with the specified number of columns.

**Parameters:** columns The number of columns

## Class javax.swing.KeyStroke

- **static KeyStroke getKeyStrokeForKeyEvent(KeyEvent event)**

Gets a KeyStroke object describing the key stroke that caused the event.

**Parameters:** event The key event to be analyzed

**Returns:** A KeyStroke object. Call `toString` on this object to get a string representation such as "pressed LEFT"

## Class javax.swing.Timer

- `Timer(int millis, ActionListener listener)`

This constructs a timer that notifies an action listener whenever a time interval has elapsed.

**Parameters:**    `millis` The number of milliseconds between timer notifications  
                  `listener` The object to be notified when the time interval has elapsed

- `void start()`

This method starts the timer. Once the timer has started, it begins notifying its listener.

- `void stop()`

This method stops the timer. Once the timer has stopped, it no longer notifies its listener.

## Package javax.swing.border

### Class javax.swing.border.EtchedBorder

- `EtchedBorder()`

This constructor creates a lowered etched border.

### Class javax.swing.border.TitledBorder

- `TitledBorder(Border b, String title)`

This constructor creates a titled border that adds a title to a given border.

**Parameters:**    `b` The border to which the title is added  
                  `title` The title the border should display

## Package javax.swing.event

### Class javax.swing.event.ChangeEvent

Components such as sliders emit change events when they are manipulated by the user.

### Interface javax.swing.event.ChangeListener

- `void stateChanged(ChangeEvent e)`

This event is called when the event source has changed its state.

**Parameters:**    `e` A change event

## Package javax.swing.text

### Class javax.swing.text.JTextComponent

- `String getText()`

This method returns the text contained in this text component.

**Returns:** The text

- `boolean isEditable()`

This method checks whether this text component is editable.

**Returns:** true if the component is editable

- `void setEditable(boolean state)`

This method is used to make this text component editable or not.

**Parameters:** state true to make editable, false to disable editing

- `void setText(String text)`

This method sets the text of this text component to the specified text. If the argument is the empty string, the old text is deleted.

**Parameters:** text The new text to be set

## Package javax.xml.parsers

### Class javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilder

- `Document newDocument()`

This constructs a new document object.

**Returns:** An empty document

- `Document parse(File in)`

This method parses an XML document in a file.

**Parameters:** in The file containing the document

**Returns:** The parsed document

- `Document parse(InputStream in)`

This method parses an XML document in a stream.

**Parameters:** in The stream containing the document

**Returns:** The parsed document

### Class javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory

- `DocumentBuilder newDocumentBuilder()`

This method creates a new document builder object.

**Returns:** The document builder

- **static DocumentBuilderFactory newInstance()**  
This method creates a new document builder factory object.  
**Returns:** The document builder factory object
- **void setIgnoringElementContentWhitespace(boolean b)**  
This method sets the parsing mode for ignoring white space in element content for all document builders that are generated from this factory.  
**Parameters:** b true if white space should be ignored
- **void setValidating(boolean b)**  
This method sets the validation mode for all document builders that are generated from this factory.  
**Parameters:** b true if documents should be validated during parsing

## Package javax.xml.xpath

### Interface javax.xml.xpath.XPath

- **String evaluate(String path, Object context)**  
This method evaluates the given path expression in the given context.  
**Parameters:** path An XPath expression  
context The starting context for the evaluation, such as a document, node, or node list  
**Returns:** The result of the evaluation

### Class javax.xml.xpath.XPathExpressionException

This exception is thrown when an XPath expression cannot be evaluated.

### Class javax.xml.xpath.XPathFactory

- **static XPathFactory newInstance()**  
This method returns a factory instance that can be used to construct XPath objects.  
**Returns:** An XPathFactory instance
- **XPath newPath()**  
This method returns an XPath object that can be used to evaluate XPath expressions.  
**Returns:** An XPath object

# Package org.w3c.dom

## Interface org.w3c.dom.Document

- `Element createElement(String tagName)`

This method creates a new document element with a given tag.

**Parameters:** `tagName` The name of the XML tag

**Returns:** The created element

- `Text createTextNode(String text)`

This method creates a text node with the given text.

**Parameters:** `text` The text for the text node

**Returns:** The created text node

- `DOMImplementation getImplementation()`

This method returns the `DOMImplementation` object associated with this document.

## Interface org.w3c.dom.DOMConfiguration

- `void setParameter(String name, Object value)`

This method sets the value of a configuration parameter.

**Parameters:** `name` The name of the parameter to set

`value` The new value or `null` to unset the parameter

## Interface org.w3c.dom.DOMImplementation

- `Object getFeature(String feature, String version)`

This method gets an object that implements a specialized API (such as loading and saving of DOM trees).

**Parameters:** `feature` The feature version (such as "LS")

`version` The version number (such as "3.0")

**Returns:** The feature object

## Interface org.w3c.dom.Element

- `String getAttribute(String attributeName)`

This method returns the value of a given attribute.

**Parameters:** `attributeName` The name of the XML attribute

**Returns:** The attribute value, or the empty string "" if that attribute does not exist for this element

- `void setAttribute(String name, String value)`

This method sets the value of a given attribute.

**Parameters:** `name` The name of the XML attribute

`value` The desired value of the XML attribute

## Interface org.w3c.dom.Text

This interface describes a node that contains the textual content of an XML element.

## Package org.w3c.dom.ls

### Interface org.w3c.dom.ls.DOMImplementationLS

- `LSSerializer createLSSerializer()`

This method creates a serializer object that can be used to convert a DOM tree to a string or stream.

**Returns:** The serializer object

### Interface org.w3c.dom.ls.LSSerializer

- `DOMConfiguration getDomConfig()`

This method gets the configuration object that allows customization of the serializer behavior.

- `String writeToString(Node root)`

This method converts the DOM tree starting at the given node to a string.

**Parameters:** node The root node of the tree

**Returns:** The string representation of the tree

# JAVA SYNTAX SUMMARY

In this syntax summary, we use a monospaced font for actual Java reserved words and tokens such as `while`. An italic font denotes language constructs such as *condition* or *variable*. Items enclosed in brackets [ ] are optional. Items separated by vertical bars | are alternatives. Do not include the brackets or vertical bars in your code!

The summary reflects the parts of the Java language that were covered in this book. For a full overview of the Java syntax, see <http://download.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/api/>.

Please be careful to distinguish an ellipsis . . . from the ... token. The latter appears twice in this appendix in the “variable parameters” discussion in the “Methods” section.

## Types

A type is a primitive type or a reference type. The primitive types are

- The numeric types `int`, `long`, `short`, `char`, `byte`, `float`, `double`
- The `boolean` type

The reference types are

- Classes such as `String` or `Employee`
- Enumeration types such as `enum Sex { FEMALE, MALE }`
- Interfaces such as `Comparable`
- Array types such as `Employee[]` or `int[][]`

## Variables

Local variable declarations have the form

[`final`] `Type variableName [= initializer];`

Examples:

```
int n;
double x = 0;
String harry = "Harry Handsome";
Rectangle box = new Rectangle(5, 10, 20, 30);
int[] a = { 1, 4, 9, 16, 25 };
```

The variable name consists only of letters, numbers, and underscores. It must begin with a letter or underscore. Names are case-sensitive: `totalscore`, `TOTALSCORE`, and `totalScore` are three different variables.

The scope of a local variable extends from the point of its definition to the end of the enclosing block.

A variable that is declared as `final` can have its value set only once.  
Instance variables will be discussed under “Classes”.

## Expressions

An *expression* is a variable, a method call, or a combination of subexpressions joined by operators. Examples are:

```
x
Math.sin(x)
x + Math.sin(x)
x * (1 + Math.sin(x))
x++
x == y
x == y && (z > 0 || w > 0)
p.x
e.getSalary()
v[i]
```

Operators can be *unary*, *binary*, or *ternary*. A unary operator acts on a single expression, such as `x++`. A binary operator combines two expressions, such as `x + y`. A ternary operator combines three expressions. Java has one ternary operator, `? :` (see Special Topic 5.1).

Unary operators can be *prefix* or *postfix*. A prefix operator is written before the expression on which it operates, as in `-x`. A postfix operator is written after the expression on which it operates, such as `x++`.

Operators are ranked by *precedence* levels. Operators with a higher precedence bind more strongly than operators with a lower precedence. For example, `*` has a higher precedence than `+`, so `x + y * z` is the same as `x + (y * z)`, even though the `+` comes first.

Most operators are *left-associative*. That is, operators of the same precedence are evaluated from the left to the right. For example, `x - y + z` is interpreted as `(x - y) + z`, not `x - (y + z)`. The exceptions are the unary prefix operators and the assignment operator which are right-associative. For example, `z = y = Math.sin(x)` means the same as `z = (y = Math.sin(x))`.

Appendix B has a list of all Java operators.

## Classes

The syntax for a *class* is

```
[public] [abstract|final] class ClassName
    [extends SuperClassName]
    [implements InterfaceName1, InterfaceName2, . . .]
{
    feature1
    feature2
    . . .
}
```

Each *feature* is either a declaration of the form

*modifiers constructor|method|instance variable|class*

or an initialization block

[static] { *body* }

See the section “Constructors” for more information about initialization blocks.

Potential *modifiers* include `public`, `private`, `protected`, `static`, and `final`.

An *instance variable* declaration has the form

*Type variableName [= initializer];*

A *constructor* has the form

```
ClassName(parameter1, parameter2, . . .)
    [throws ExceptionType1, ExceptionType2, . . .]
{
    body
}
```

A *method* has the form

```
Type methodName(parameter1, parameter2, . . .)
    [throws ExceptionType1, ExceptionType2, . . .]
{
    body
}
```

An *abstract method* has the form

`abstract Type methodName(parameter1, parameter2, . . .);`

Here is an example:

```
public class Point
{
    private double x; // Instance variable
    private double y;

    public Point() // Constructor with no arguments
    {
        x = 0; y = 0;
    }

    public Point(double xx, double yy) // Constructor
    {
        x = xx; y = yy;
    }

    public double getX() // Method
    {
        return x;
    }

    public double getY() // Method
    {
        return y;
    }
}
```

A class can have both instance variables and static variables. Each object of the class has a separate copy of the instance variables. There is only a one per-class copy of the static variables.

A class that is declared as `abstract` cannot be instantiated. That is, you cannot construct objects of that class.

A class that is declared as `final` cannot be extended.

## Interfaces

The syntax for an interface is

```
[public] interface InterfaceName
    [extends InterfaceName1, InterfaceName2, . . .]
{
    feature1
    feature2
    .
}
```

Each feature has the form

*modifiers method|instance variable*

Potential modifiers are `public`, `static`, `final`. However, modifiers are never necessary because methods are automatically `public` and instance variables are automatically `public static final`.

An instance variable declaration has the form

`Type variableName = initializer;`

A method declaration has the form

`Type methodName(parameter1, parameter2, . . .);`

Here is an example:

```
public interface Measurable
{
    int CM_PER_INCH = 2.54;

    int getMeasure();
}
```

## Enumeration Types

The syntax for an enumeration type is

```
[public] enum EnumerationTypeName
{
    constant1, constant2, . . .;
    feature1
    feature2
    .
}
```

Each constant is a constant name, followed by optional construction parameters.

`constantName[parameter1, parameter2, . . .]`

The semicolon after the constants is only required if the enumeration declares additional features. An enumeration can have the same features as a class. Each feature has the form

*modifiers method|instance variable*

Potential modifiers are `public`, `static`, `final`.

Here are two examples:

```
public enum Suit { HEARTS, DIAMONDS, SPADES, CLUBS };
public enum Card
{
    TWO(2), THREE(3), FOUR(4), FIVE(5), SIX(6),
    SEVEN(7), EIGHT(8), NINE(9), TEN(10),
    JACK(10), QUEEN(10), KING(10), ACE(11);
    private int value;

    public void Card(int aValue) { value = aValue; }
    public int getValue() { return value; }
}
```

## Methods

A method definition has the form

*modifiers Type methodName(parameter<sub>1</sub>, parameter<sub>2</sub>, . . . , parameter<sub>n</sub>)*  
*[throws ExceptionType<sub>1</sub>, ExceptionType<sub>2</sub>, . . . ]*  
{i  
*body*  
}

The return type *Type* is any Java type, or the special type `void` to indicate that the method returns no value.

Each *parameter variable* has the form

`[final] Type parameterName`

A method has variable parameters if the last parameter variable has the special form

`Type... parameterName`

Such a method can be called with a sequence of values of the given type of any length. The parameter variable with the given name is an array of the given type that holds the arguments. For example, the method

```
public static double sum(double... values)
{
    double s = 0;
    for (double v : values) { s = s + v; }
    return s;
}
```

can be called as

```
double result = sum(1, -2.5, 3.14);
```

In Java, all parameters are passed by *value*. Each parameter variable is a local variable whose scope extends to the end of the method body. It is initialized with a copy of the value supplied in the call. That value may be a primitive type or a reference type. If it

is a reference type, invoking a mutator on the reference will modify the object whose reference has been passed to the method.

Changing the value of the parameter variable has no effect outside the method. Tagging the parameter variable as `final` disallows such a change altogether. This is commonly done to allow access to the parameter variable from an inner class declared in the method.

Java distinguishes between *instance* methods and *static* methods. Instance methods have a special parameter, the *implicit* parameter, supplied in the method call with the syntax

```
implicitParameterValue.methodName(parameterValue1, parameterValue2, . . .)
```

Example:

```
harry.setSalary(30000)
```

The type of the implicit parameter must be the same as the type of the class containing the method definition. A static method does not have an implicit parameter.

In the method body, the `this` variable is initialized with a copy of the implicit parameter value. Using an instance variable name without qualification means to access the instance variable of the implicit parameter. For example,

```
public void setSalary(double s)
{
    salary = s; // i.e., this.salary = s
}
```

By default, Java uses *dynamic method lookup*. The virtual machine determines the class to which the implicit parameter object belongs and invokes the method declared in that class. However, if a method is invoked on the special variable `super`, then the method declared in the superclass is invoked on `this`. For example,

```
public class MyPanel extends JPanel
{
    .
    .
    public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
    {
        super.paintComponent(g);
        // Calls JPanel.paintComponent
        .
    }
    .
}
```

The `return` statement causes a method to exit immediately. If the method type is not `void`, you must return a value. The syntax is

```
return [value];
```

For example,

```
public double getSalary()
{
    return salary;
}
```

A method can call itself. Such a method is called *recursive*:

```
public static int factorial(int n)
{
    if (n <= 1) { return 1; }
    return n * factorial(n - 1);
}
```

# Constructors

A constructor definition has the form

```
modifiers ClassName(parameter1, parameter2, . . .)
    [throws ExceptionType1, ExceptionType2, . . .]
{
    body
}
```

You invoke a constructor to allocate and construct a new object with a new expression

```
new ClassName(parameterValue1, parameterValue2, . . .)
```

A constructor can call the body of another constructor of the same class with the syntax

```
this(parameterValue1, parameterValue2, . . .)
```

For example,

```
public Employee()
{
    this("", 0);
}
```

It can call a constructor of its superclass with the syntax

```
super(parameterValue1, parameterValue2, . . .)
```

The call to this or super must be the first statement in the constructor.

Arrays are constructed with the syntax

```
new ArrayType [ = { initializer1, initializer2, . . . }]
```

For example,

```
new int[] = { 1, 4, 9, 16, 25 }
```

When an object is constructed, the following actions take place:

- All instance variables are initialized with 0, false, or null.
- The initializers and initialization blocks are executed in the order in which they are declared.
- The body of the constructor is invoked.

When a class is loaded, the following actions take place:

- All static variables are initialized with 0, false, or null.
- The initializers of static variables and static initialization blocks are executed in the order in which they are declared.

# Statements

A *statement* is one of the following:

- An expression followed by a semicolon
- A branch or loop statement
- A return statement

- A `throw` statement
- A block, that is, a group of variable declarations and statements enclosed in braces  
`{. . .}`
- A `try` block

Java has two branch statements (`if` and `switch`), three loop statements (`while`, `for`, and `do`), and two mechanisms for nonlinear control flow (`break` and `continue`).

The `if` statement has the form

```
if (condition) statement1 [else statement2]
```

If the `condition` is true, then the first `statement` is executed. Otherwise, the second `statement` is executed.

The `switch` statement has the form

```
switch (expression)
{
    group1
    group2
    .
    .
    [default:
        statement1
        statement2
        .
        .
    ]
}
```

Where each group has the form

```
case constant1:
case constant2:
.
.
statement1
statement2
.
.
```

The `expression` must be an integer, enumeration type, or string. Depending on its value, control is transferred to the first statement following the matching case label, or to the first statement following the `default` label if none of the case labels match. Execution continues with the next statement until a `break` or `return` statement is encountered, an exception is thrown, or the end of the `switch` is reached. Execution skips over any case labels.

The `while` loop has the form

```
while (condition) statement
```

The `statement` is executed while the `condition` is true.

The `for` loop has the form

```
for (initExpression|variableDeclaration;
     condition;
     updateExpression1, updateExpression2, . . .)
     statement
```

The initialization expression or the variable declaration are executed once. While the `condition` remains true, the loop `statement` and the `updateExpressions` are executed.

Examples:

```
for (i = 0; i < 10; i++)
{
    sum = sum + i;
}

for (int i = 0, j = 9; i < 10; i++, j--)
{
    a[j] = b[i];
}
```

The enhanced `for` loop has the form

```
for (Type variable : array|iterableObject)
    statement
```

When this loop traverses an array, it is equivalent to

```
for (int i = 0; i < array.length; i++)
{
    Type variable = array[i];
    statement
}
```

Otherwise, the *iterableObject* must belong to a class that implements the `Iterable` interface. Then the loop is equivalent to

```
Iterator i = iterableObject.iterator();
while (i.hasNext())
{
    Type variable = i.next();
    statement
}
```

The `do` loop has the form

```
do statement while (condition);
```

The *statement* is repeatedly executed until the *condition* is no longer true. In contrast to a `while` loop, the statement of a `do` loop is executed at least once.

The `break` statement exits the innermost enclosing `while`, `do`, `for`, or `switch` statement (not counting `if` or `block` statements).

Any statement (including `if` and `block` statements) can be tagged with a label:

```
label: statement
```

The labeled `break` statement

```
break label;
```

exits the labeled statement.

The `continue` statement skips past the end of the *statement* part of a `while`, `do`, or `for` loop. In the case of the `while` or `do` loop, the loop *condition* is executed next. In the case of the `for` loop, the *updateExpressions* are executed next.

The labeled `continue` statement

```
continue label;
```

skips past the end of the *statement* part of a `while`, `do`, or `for` loop with the matching label.

## Exceptions

The throw statement

```
throw expression;
```

abruptly terminates the current method and resumes control inside the innermost matching catch clause of a surrounding try block. The *expression* must evaluate to a reference to an object of a subclass of `Throwable`.

The try statement has the form

```
try tryBlock  
[catch (ExceptionType1 exceptionVariable1) catchBlock1  
catch (ExceptionType2 exceptionVariable2) catchBlock2  
. . .]  
[finally finallyBlock]
```

- The try statement must have at least one catch or finally clause.
- All blocks are block statements in the usual sense, that is, { . . . }-delimited statement sequences.

The statements in the *tryBlock* are executed. If one of them throws an exception object whose type is a subtype of one of the types in the catch clauses, then its *catchBlock* is executed. As soon as the catch block is entered, that exception is handled.

If the *tryBlock* exits for any reason at all (because all of its statements executed completely; because one of its statements was a `break`, `continue`, or `return` statement; or because an exception was thrown), then the *finallyBlock* is executed.

If the *finallyBlock* was entered because an exception was thrown and it itself throws another exception, then that exception masks the prior exception.

## Packages

A class can be placed in a package by putting the package declaration

```
package packageName;
```

as the first non-import declaration of the source file.

A package name has the form

```
identifier1.identifier2. . .
```

For example,

```
java.util  
com.horstmann.bigjava
```

A fully qualified name of a class is

```
packageName.ClassName
```

Classes can always be referenced by their fully qualified class names. However, this can be inconvenient. For that reason, you can reference imported classes by just their *ClassName*. All classes in the package `java.lang` and in the package of the current source file are always imported.

To import additional classes, use an `import` directive

```
import packageName.ClassName;
```

or

```
import packageName.*;
```

The second version imports all classes in the package.

## Generic Types and Methods

A generic type is declared with one or more type parameters, placed after the type name:

```
modifiers class|interface TypeName<typeParameter1, typeParameter2, . . .>
```

Similarly, a generic method is declared with one or more type parameters, placed before the method's return type:

```
modifiers <typeParameter1, typeParameter2, . . .> returnType methodName
```

Each type parameter has the form

```
typeParameterName [extends bound1 & bound2 & . . .]
```

For example,

```
public class BinarySearchTree<T extends Comparable>
public interface Comparator<T>
public <T extends Comparable & Cloneable> T cloneMin(T[] values)
```

Type parameters can be used in the definition of the generic type or method as if they were regular types. They can be replaced with any types that match the bounds. For example, the `BinarySearchTree<String>` type substitutes the `String` type for the type parameter `T`.

Type parameters can also be replaced with *wildcard types*. A wildcard type has the form

```
? [super|extends Type]
```

It denotes a specific type that is unknown at the time that it is declared. For example, `Comparable<? super Rectangle>` is a type `Comparable<S>` for a specific type `S`, which can be `Rectangle` or a supertype such as `RectangularShape` or `Shape`.

## Comments

There are three kinds of comments:

```
/* comment */
// one-line-comment
/** documentationComment */
```

The one-line comment extends to the end of the line. The other comments can span multiple lines and extend to the `*/` delimiter.

Documentation comments are further explained in Appendix F.

# TOOL SUMMARY

In this summary, we use a monospaced font for actual commands such as `javac`. An italic font denotes descriptions of tool command components such as *options*. Items enclosed in brackets [...] are optional. Items separated by vertical bars | are alternatives. Do not include the brackets or vertical bars when typing the commands.

## The Java Compiler

`javac [options] sourceFile1|@fileList1 sourceFile2|@fileList2 . . .`

A file list is a text file that contains one file name per line. For example,

### Greeting.list

```
1 Greeting.java
2 GreetingTester.java
```

Then you can compile all files with the command

`javac @Greeting.list`

The Java compiler options are summarized in Table 1.

**Table 1** Common Compiler Options

| Option                                                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-classpath locations</code><br>or<br><code>-cp locations</code> | The compiler is to look for classes on this path, overriding the CLASSPATH environment variable. If neither is specified, the current directory is used.<br>Each <i>location</i> is a directory, JAR file, or ZIP file. Locations are separated by a platform-dependent separator ( : on Unix, ; on Windows). |
| <code>-sourcepath locations</code>                                    | The compiler is to look for source files on this path. If not specified, source files are searched in the class path.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>-d directory</code>                                             | The compiler places files into the specified directory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>-g</code>                                                       | Generate debugging information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>-verbose</code>                                                 | Include information about all classes that are being compiled (useful for troubleshooting).                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>-deprecation</code>                                             | Give detailed information about the usage of deprecated messages.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>-Xlint:errorType</code>                                         | Carry out additional error checking. If you get warnings about unchecked conversions, compile with the <code>-Xlint:unchecked</code> option.                                                                                                                                                                  |

# The Java Virtual Machine Launcher

The following command loads the given class and starts its `main` method, passing it an array containing the provided command line arguments:

```
java [options] ClassName [argument1 argument2 . . . ]
```

The following command loads the main class of the given JAR file and starts its `main` method, passing it an array containing the provided command line arguments:

```
java [options] -jar jarFileName [argument1 argument2 . . . ]
```

The Java virtual machine options are summarized in Table 2.

**Table 2 Common Virtual Machine Launcher Options**

| Option                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-classpath</code> <i>locations</i><br>or<br><code>-cp</code> <i>locations</i> | Look for classes on this path, overriding the <code>CLASSPATH</code> environment variable. If neither is specified, the current directory is used.<br>Each <i>location</i> is a directory, JAR file, or ZIP file. Locations are separated by a platform-dependent separator (:<br>on Unix, ; on Windows). |
| <code>-verbose</code>                                                               | Trace class loading                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>-Dproperty=value</code>                                                       | Set a system property that you can retrieve with the <code>System.getProperties</code> method.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

# The JAR Tool

To combine one or more files into a JAR (Java Archive) file, use the command

```
jar cvf jarFile file1 file2 . . .
```

The resulting JAR file can be included in a class path.

To build a program that can be launched with `java -jar`, you must create a *manifest file*, such as

## **myprog.mf**

**1 Main-Class: com/horstmann/MyProg**

The manifest must specify the path name of the class file that launches the application, but with the `.class` extension removed. Then build the JAR file as

```
jar cvfm jarFile manifestFile file1 file2 . . .
```

You can also use JAR as a replacement for a ZIP utility, simply to compress and bundle a set of files for any purpose. Then you may want to suppress the generation of the JAR manifest, with the command

```
jar cvfM jarFile file1 file2 . . .
```

To extract the contents of a JAR file into the current directory, use

```
jar xvf jarFile
```

To see the files contained in a JAR file without extracting the files, use

```
jar tvf jarFile
```

## The javadoc Tool

To extract documentation comments (summarized in the following section), run the javadoc program:

```
javadoc [options] sourceFile1|packageName1@fileList1  
sourceFile2|packageName2@fileList2 . . .
```

Commonly used options are summarized in Table 3. See the documentation of the javac command in the first section of this appendix for an explanation of file lists.

To document all files in the current directory, use (all on one line)

```
javadoc -link http://download.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/api -d docdir *.java
```

**Table 3** Common javadoc Command Line Options

| Option                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-link URL</code>             | Link to another set of javadoc files. You should include a link to the standard library documentation, either locally or at <a href="http://download.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/api">http://download.oracle.com/javase/7/docs/api</a> .                                                      |
| <code>-d directory</code>          | Store the output in <i>directory</i> . This is a useful option, because it keeps your current directory from being cluttered up with javadoc files.                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>-classpath locations</code>  | Look for classes on the specified paths, overriding the CLASSPATH environment variable. If neither is specified, the current directory is used. Each <i>location</i> is a directory, JAR file, or ZIP file. Locations are separated by a platform-dependent separator (: Unix, ; Windows). |
| <code>-sourcepath locations</code> | Look for source files on the specified paths. If not specified, source files are searched in the class path.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>-author, -version</code>     | Include author, version information in the documentation. This information is omitted by default.                                                                                                                                                                                          |

## Documentation Comments

A documentation comment is delimited by `/**` and `*/`. You can comment

- Classes
- Methods
- Instance variables

Each comment is placed *immediately above* the feature it documents.

Each `/** . . . */` documentation comment contains introductory text followed by tagged documentation. A tag starts with an @ character, such as `@author` or `@param`. Tags are summarized in Table 4. The *first sentence* of the introductory text should be a summary statement. The javadoc utility automatically generates summary pages that extract these sentences.

You can use HTML tags such as `em` for emphasis, `code` for a monospaced font, `img` for images, `ul` for bulleted lists, and so on.

Here is a typical example. The summary sentence (in color) will be included with the method summary.

```
/***
    Withdraws money from the bank account. Increments the
    transaction count.
    @param amount the amount to withdraw
    @return the balance after the withdrawal
    @throws IllegalArgumentException if the balance is not sufficient
*/
public double withdraw(double amount)
{
    if (balance - amount < minimumBalance)
    {
        throw new IllegalArgumentException();
    }
    balance = balance - amount;
    transactions++;
    return balance;
}
```

**Table 4** Common javadoc Tags

| Tag                                                                                                                                                                                        | Description                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| @param <i>parameter explanation</i>                                                                                                                                                        | A parameter of a method. Use a separate tag for each parameter.                    |
| @return <i>explanation</i>                                                                                                                                                                 | The return value of a method.                                                      |
| @throws <i>exceptionType explanation</i>                                                                                                                                                   | An exception that a method may throw. Use a separate tag for each exception.       |
| @deprecated                                                                                                                                                                                | A feature that remains for compatibility but that should not be used for new code. |
| @see <i>packageName.ClassName</i><br>@see <i>packageName.ClassName</i><br># <i>methodName(Type<sub>1</sub>, Type<sub>2</sub>, . . .)</i><br>@see <i>packageName.ClassName#variableName</i> | A reference to a related documentation entry.                                      |
| @author                                                                                                                                                                                    | The author of a class or interface. Use a separate tag for each author.            |
| @version                                                                                                                                                                                   | The version of a class or interface.                                               |

# NUMBER SYSTEMS

## Binary Numbers

Decimal notation represents numbers as powers of 10, for example

$$1729_{\text{decimal}} = 1 \times 10^3 + 7 \times 10^2 + 2 \times 10^1 + 9 \times 10^0$$

There is no particular reason for the choice of 10, except that several historical number systems were derived from people's counting with their fingers. Other number systems, using a base of 12, 20, or 60, have been used by various cultures throughout human history. However, computers use a number system with base 2 because it is far easier to build electronic components that work with two values, which can be represented by a current being either off or on, than it would be to represent 10 different values of electrical signals. A number written in base 2 is also called a *binary* number.

For example,

$$1101_{\text{binary}} = 1 \times 2^3 + 1 \times 2^2 + 0 \times 2^1 + 1 \times 2^0 = 8 + 4 + 1 = 13$$

For digits after the “decimal” point, use negative powers of 2.

$$\begin{aligned}1.101_{\text{binary}} &= 1 \times 2^0 + 1 \times 2^{-1} + 0 \times 2^{-2} + 1 \times 2^{-3} \\&= 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{8} \\&= 1 + 0.5 + 0.125 = 1.625\end{aligned}$$

In general, to convert a binary number into its decimal equivalent, simply evaluate the powers of 2 corresponding to digits with value 1, and add them up. Table 1 shows the first powers of 2.

To convert a decimal integer into its binary equivalent, keep dividing the integer by 2, keeping track of the remainders. Stop when the number is 0. Then write the remainders as a binary number, starting with the *last* one. For example,

$$\begin{aligned}100 \div 2 &= 50 \text{ remainder } 0 \\50 \div 2 &= 25 \text{ remainder } 0 \\25 \div 2 &= 12 \text{ remainder } 1 \\12 \div 2 &= 6 \text{ remainder } 0 \\6 \div 2 &= 3 \text{ remainder } 0 \\3 \div 2 &= 1 \text{ remainder } 1 \\1 \div 2 &= 0 \text{ remainder } 1\end{aligned}$$

Therefore,  $100_{\text{decimal}} = 1100100_{\text{binary}}$ .

Conversely, to convert a fractional number less than 1 to its binary format, keep multiplying by 2. If the result is greater than 1, subtract 1. Stop when the number is 0. Then use the digits before the decimal points as the binary digits of the fractional part, starting with the *first* one. For example,

$$0.35 \cdot 2 = 0.7$$

$$0.7 \cdot 2 = 1.4$$

$$0.4 \cdot 2 = 0.8$$

$$0.8 \cdot 2 = 1.6$$

$$0.6 \cdot 2 = 1.2$$

$$0.2 \cdot 2 = 0.4$$

Here the pattern repeats. That is, the binary representation of 0.35 is 0.01 0110 0110 0110 ...

To convert any floating-point number into binary, convert the whole part and the fractional part separately.

**Table 1 Powers of Two**

| Power    | Decimal Value |
|----------|---------------|
| $2^0$    | 1             |
| $2^1$    | 2             |
| $2^2$    | 4             |
| $2^3$    | 8             |
| $2^4$    | 16            |
| $2^5$    | 32            |
| $2^6$    | 64            |
| $2^7$    | 128           |
| $2^8$    | 256           |
| $2^9$    | 512           |
| $2^{10}$ | 1,024         |
| $2^{11}$ | 2,048         |
| $2^{12}$ | 4,096         |
| $2^{13}$ | 8,192         |
| $2^{14}$ | 16,384        |
| $2^{15}$ | 32,768        |
| $2^{16}$ | 65,536        |

## Overflow and Roundoff Errors

In Java, an `int` value is an integer that is 32 bits long. When combining two such values, it is possible that the result does not fit into 32 bits. In that case, only the last 32 bits of the results are used, yielding an incorrect answer. For example,

```
int fiftyMillion = 50000000;
System.out.println(100 * fiftyMillion); // Expected: 5000000000
```

displays 705032704.

To see why this curious value is the result, one can carry out the long multiplication by hand:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 1100100 * 101111101011110000010000000 \\
 101111101011110000010000000 \\
 101111101011110000010000000 \\
 0 \\
 0 \\
 101111101011110000010000000 \\
 0 \\
 0 \\
 \hline
 1001010100000010111100100000000
 \end{array}$$

The result has 33 bits. However, you can't fit a 33-bit result into a 32-bit `int`, and the top bit is discarded. The last 32 bits are the binary representation of 705032704. (Note that the top bit is  $2^{32} = 4294967296$ , and the two values add up to 5000000000, the correct result.)

With floating-point numbers, you can encounter another type of error: roundoff error. Consider this example:

```
double price = 4.35;
double quantity = 100;
double total = price * quantity; // Should be 100 * 4.35 = 435
System.out.println(total); // Prints 434.9999999999999
```

To see why the error occurs, carry out the long multiplication:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 1100100 * 100.010110|0110|0110...
 100.010110|0110|0110...
 100.010110|0110|0110...
 0 \\
 0 \\
 100.010110|0110|0110...
 0 \\
 0 \\
 \hline
 110110010.111111...
 \end{array}$$

That is, the result is 434, followed by an infinite number of 1s. The fractional part of the product is the binary equivalent of an infinite decimal fraction 0.999999..., which is equal to 1. But the CPU can store only a finite number of 1s, and it discards some of them when converting the result to a decimal number.

## Two's Complement Integers

To represent negative integers, there are two common representations, called “signed magnitude” and “two’s complement”. Signed magnitude notation is simple: use the leftmost bit for the sign (0 = positive, 1 = negative). For example, when using 8-bit numbers,

$$-13 = 10001101_{\text{signed magnitude}}$$

However, building circuitry for adding numbers gets a bit more complicated when one has to take a sign bit into account. The two’s complement representation solves this problem. To form the two’s complement of a number,

- Flip all bits.
- Then add 1.

For example, to compute  $-13$  as an 8-bit value, first flip all bits of  $00001101$  to get  $11110010$ . Then add 1:

$$-13 = 11110011_{\text{two's complement}}$$

Now no special circuitry is required for adding two numbers. Simply follow the normal rule for addition, with a carry to the next position if the sum of the digits and the prior carry is 2 or 3. For example,

$$\begin{array}{r} & \overset{1}{1} \ 1111 \ 111 \\ +13 & 0000 \ 1101 \\ -13 & 1111 \ 0011 \\ \hline 1 & 0000 \ 0000 \end{array}$$

But only the last 8 bits count, so  $+13$  and  $-13$  add up to 0, as they should.

In particular,  $-1$  has two’s complement representation  $1111\dots1111$ , with all bits set.

The leftmost bit of a two’s complement number is 0 if the number is positive or zero, 1 if it is negative.

Two’s complement notation with a given number of bits can represent one more negative number than positive numbers. For example, the 8-bit two’s complement numbers range from  $-128$  to  $+127$ .

This phenomenon is an occasional cause for a programming error. For example, consider the following code:

```
short b = ...;
if (b < 0) { b = (byte) -b; }
```

This code does not guarantee that  $b$  is nonnegative afterwards. If  $b$  happens to be  $-128$ , then computing its negative again yields  $-128$ . (Try it out—take  $10000000$ , flip all bits, and add 1.)

# IEEE Floating-Point Numbers

The Institute for Electrical and Electronics Engineering (IEEE) defines standards for floating-point representations in the IEEE-754 standard. Figure 1 shows how single-precision (`float`) and double-precision (`double`) values are decomposed into

- A sign bit
- An exponent
- A mantissa

Floating-point numbers use scientific notation, in which a number is represented as

$$b_0.b_1b_2b_3\dots \times 2^e$$

In this representation,  $e$  is the exponent, and the digits  $b_0.b_1b_2b_3\dots$  form the mantissa. The *normalized* representation is the one where  $b_0 \neq 0$ . For example,

$$100_{\text{decimal}} = 1100100_{\text{binary}} = 1.100100_{\text{binary}} \times 2^6$$

In the binary number system, because the first bit of a normalized representation must be 1, it is not actually stored in the mantissa. Therefore, you always need to add it on to represent the actual value. For example, the mantissa 1.100100 is stored as 100100.

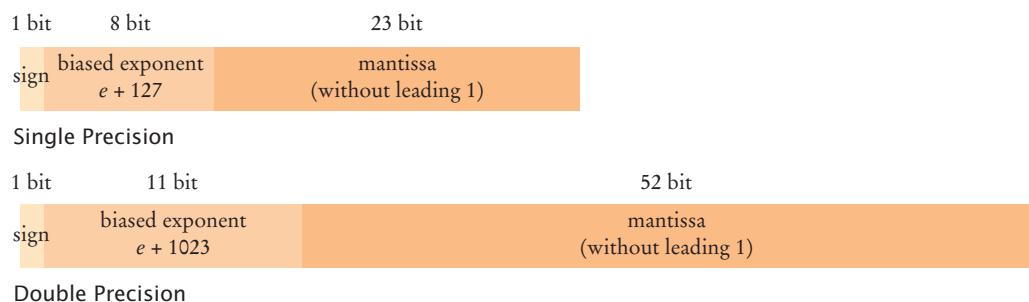
The exponent part of the IEEE representation uses neither signed magnitude nor two's complement representation. Instead, a *bias* is added to the actual exponent. The bias is 127 for single-precision numbers and 1023 for double-precision numbers. For example, the exponent  $e = 6$  would be stored as 133 in a single-precision number.

Thus,

$$100_{\text{decimal}} = 0\ 10000101\ 10010000000000000000000000000000 \text{ single-precision IEEE}$$

In addition, there are several special values. Among them are:

- *Zero*: biased exponent = 0, mantissa = 0.
- *Infinity*: biased exponent = 11...1, mantissa =  $\pm 0$ .
- *NaN* (not a number): biased exponent = 11...1, mantissa  $\neq \pm 0$ .



**Figure 1** IEEE Floating-Point Representation

# Hexadecimal Numbers

Because binary numbers can be hard to read for humans, programmers often use the hexadecimal number system, with base 16. The digits are denoted as 0, 1, ..., 9, A, B, C, D, E, F. (See Table 2.)

Four binary digits correspond to one hexadecimal digit. That makes it easy to convert between binary and hexadecimal values. For example,

$$11|1011|0001_{\text{binary}} = 3B1_{\text{hexadecimal}}$$

In Java, hexadecimal numbers are used for Unicode character values, such as \u03B1 (the Greek lowercase letter alpha). Hexadecimal integers are denoted with a 0x prefix, such as 0x3B1.

**Table 2** Hexadecimal Digits

| Hexadecimal | Decimal | Binary |
|-------------|---------|--------|
| 0           | 0       | 0000   |
| 1           | 1       | 0001   |
| 2           | 2       | 0010   |
| 3           | 3       | 0011   |
| 4           | 4       | 0100   |
| 5           | 5       | 0101   |
| 6           | 6       | 0110   |
| 7           | 7       | 0111   |
| 8           | 8       | 1000   |
| 9           | 9       | 1001   |
| A           | 10      | 1010   |
| B           | 11      | 1011   |
| C           | 12      | 1100   |
| D           | 13      | 1101   |
| E           | 14      | 1110   |
| F           | 15      | 1111   |

## Bit and Shift Operations

There are four bit operations in Java: the unary negation (`~`) and the binary *and* (`&`), *or* (`|`), and *exclusive or* (`^`), often called *xor*.

Tables 3 and 4 show the truth tables for the bit operations in Java. When a bit operation is applied to integer values, the operation is carried out on corresponding bits.

For example, suppose you want to compute  $46 \& 13$ . First convert both values to binary.  $46_{\text{decimal}} = 101110_{\text{binary}}$  (actually `000000000000000000000000101110` as a 32-bit integer), and  $13_{\text{decimal}} = 1101_{\text{binary}}$ . Now combine corresponding bits:

$$\begin{array}{r} 0 \dots 0101110 \\ \& 0 \dots 0001101 \\ \hline 0 \dots 0001100 \end{array}$$

The answer is  $1100_{\text{binary}} = 12_{\text{decimal}}$ .

You sometimes see the `|` operator being used to combine two bit patterns. For example, the symbolic constant `BOLD` is the value 1, and the symbolic constant `ITALIC` is 2. The binary *or* combination `BOLD | ITALIC` has both the bold and the italic bit set:

$$\begin{array}{r} 0 \dots 0000001 \\ | 0 \dots 0000010 \\ \hline 0 \dots 0000011 \end{array}$$

Don't confuse the `&` and `|` bit operators with the `&&` and `||` operators. The latter work only on boolean values, not on bits of numbers.

**Table 3** The Unary Negation Operation

| a | $\sim a$ |
|---|----------|
| 0 | 1        |
| 1 | 0        |

**Table 4** The Binary And, Or, and Xor Operations

| a | b | $a \& b$ | $a   b$ | $a ^ b$ |
|---|---|----------|---------|---------|
| 0 | 0 | 0        | 0       | 0       |
| 0 | 1 | 0        | 1       | 1       |
| 1 | 0 | 0        | 1       | 1       |
| 1 | 1 | 1        | 1       | 0       |

Besides the operations that work on individual bits, there are three *shift* operations that take the bit pattern of a number and shift it to the left or right by a given number of positions. There are three shift operations: left shift (`<<`), right shift with sign extension (`>>`), and right shift with zero extension (`>>>`).

The left shift moves all bits to the left, filling in zeroes in the least significant bits. Shifting to the left by  $n$  bits yields the same result as multiplication by  $2^n$ . The right shift with sign extension moves all bits to the right, propagating the sign bit. There-

fore, the result is the same as integer division by  $2^n$ , both for positive and negative values. Finally, the right shift with zero extension moves all bits to the right, filling in zeroes in the most significant bits. (See Figure 2.)

Note that the right-hand-side value of the shift operators is reduced modulo 32 (for int values) or 64 (for long values) to determine the actual number of bits to shift.

For example,  $1 \ll 35$  is the same as  $1 \ll 3$ . Actually shifting 1 by 35 bits to the left would make no sense—the result would be 0.

The expression

$1 \ll n$

yields a bit pattern in which the  $n$ th bit is set (where the 0 bit is the least significant bit).

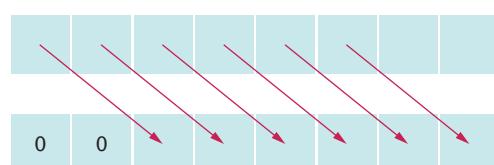
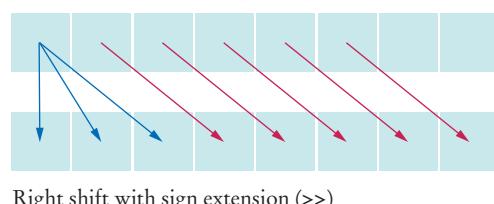
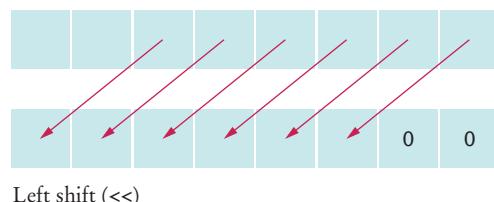
To set the  $n$ th bit of a number, carry out the operation

$x = x | 1 \ll n$

To check whether the  $n$ th bit is set, execute the test

`if ((x & 1 << n) != 0) . . .`

Note that the parentheses around the `&` are required—the `&` operator has a lower precedence than the relational operators.



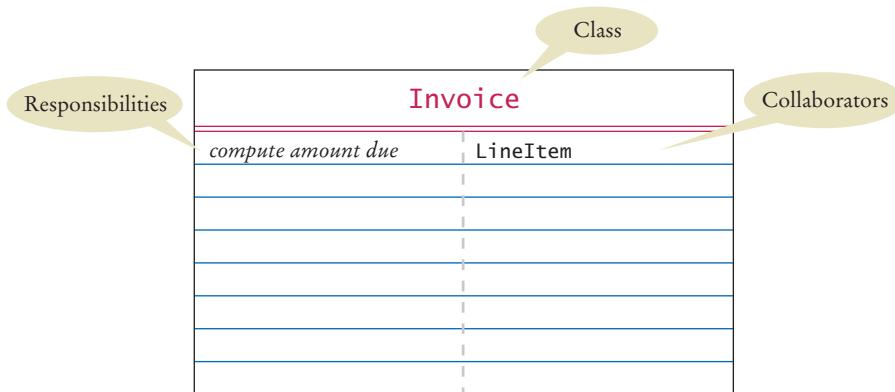
**Figure 2**  
The Shift Operations

# UML SUMMARY

In this book, we use a very restricted subset of the UML notation. This appendix lists the components of the subset.

## CRC Cards

CRC cards are used to describe in an informal fashion the responsibilities and collaborators for a class. Figure 1 shows a typical CRC card.

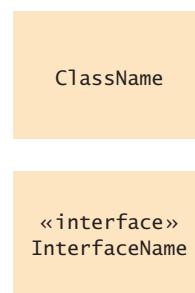


**Figure 1** Typical CRC Card

## UML Diagrams

Figure 2 shows the UML notation for classes and interfaces. You can optionally supply attributes and methods in a class diagram, as in Figure 3.

**Figure 2**  
UML Symbols for Classes  
and Interfaces



**Figure 3**  
Attributes and Methods  
in a Class Diagram

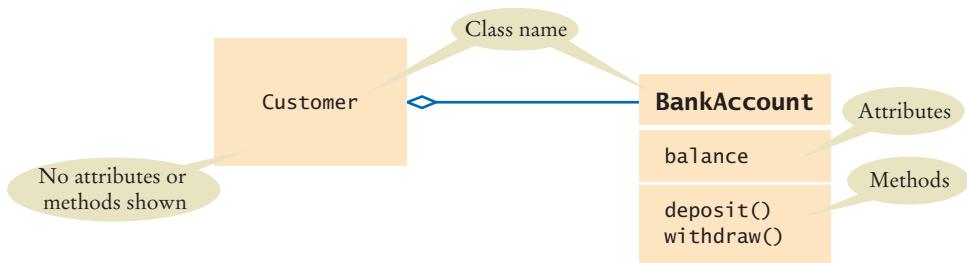


Table 1 shows the arrows used to indicate relationships between classes. Multiplicity can be indicated in a diagram, as in Figure 4.

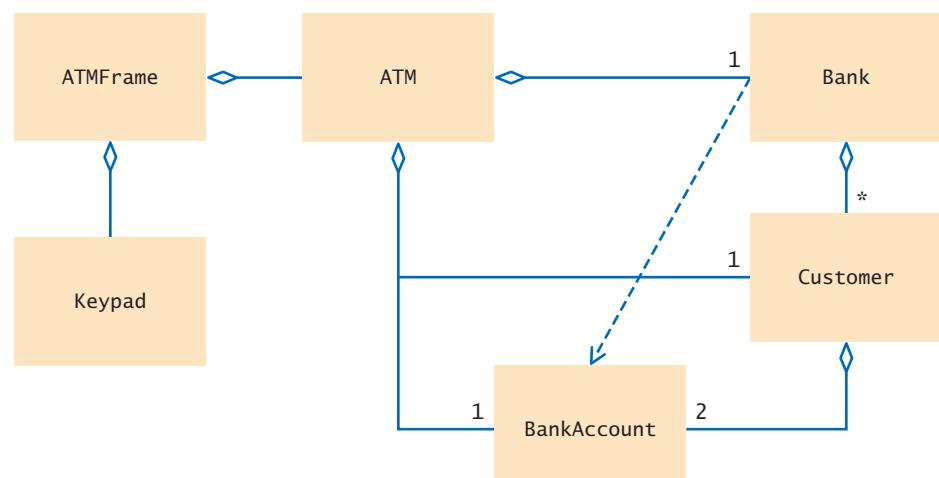
**Table 1** UML Relationship Symbols

| Relationship             | Symbol | Line Style | Arrow Tip |
|--------------------------|--------|------------|-----------|
| Inheritance              |        | Solid      | Triangle  |
| Interface Implementation |        | Dotted     | Triangle  |
| Aggregation              |        | Solid      | Diamond   |
| Dependency               |        | Dotted     | Open      |

**Figure 4**  
An Aggregation Relationship  
with Multiplicities



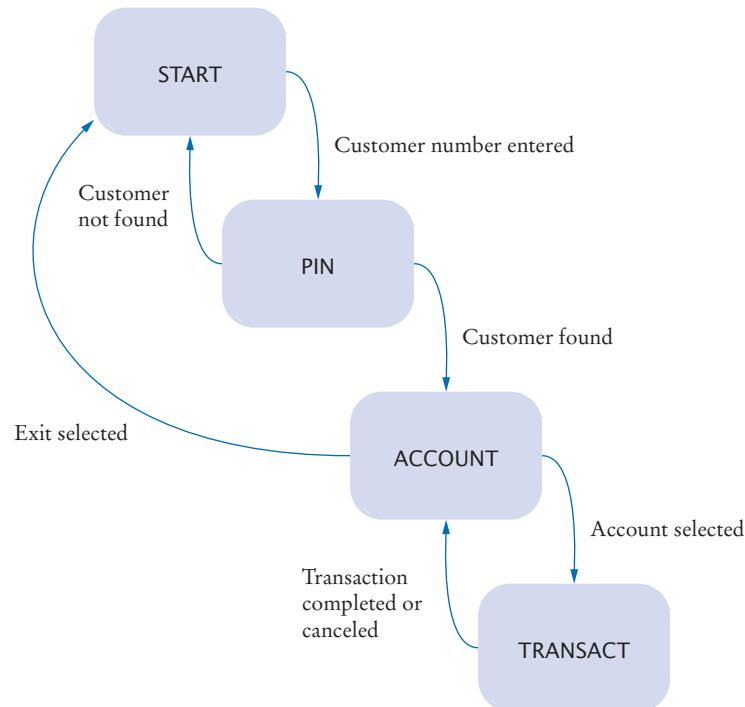
Dependencies between objects are described by a dependency diagram. Figure 5 is a typical example.



**Figure 5**  
UML Class Diagram for  
the ATM Simulation

State diagrams are used when an object goes through a discrete set of states that affects its behavior (see Figure 6).

For a complete discussion of the UML notation, see *The Unified Modeling Language User Guide*, by Booch, Rumbaugh, and Jacobson (Addison-Wesley, 2005).



**Figure 6** UML State Diagram for the ATM Class

# JAVA LANGUAGE CODING GUIDELINES

## Introduction

This coding style guide is a simplified version of one that has been used with good success both in industrial practice and for college courses.

A style guide is a set of mandatory requirements for layout and formatting. Uniform style makes it easier for you to read code from your instructor and classmates. You will really appreciate that if you do a team project. It is also easier for your instructor and your grader to grasp the essence of your programs quickly.

A style guide makes you a more productive programmer because it reduces gratuitous choice. If you don't have to make choices about trivial matters, you can spend your energy on the solution of real problems.

In these guidelines, several constructs are plainly outlawed. That doesn't mean that programmers using them are evil or incompetent. It does mean that the constructs are not essential and can be expressed just as well or even better with other language constructs.

If you already have programming experience, in Java or another language, you may be initially uncomfortable at giving up some fond habits. However, it is a sign of professionalism to set aside personal preferences in minor matters and to compromise for the benefit of your group.

These guidelines are necessarily somewhat dull. They also mention features that you may not yet have seen in class. Here are the most important highlights:

- Tabs are set every three spaces.
- Variable and method names are lowercase, with occasional uppercase characters in the middle.
- Class names start with an Uppercase letter.
- Constant names are uppercase, with an occasional UNDER\_SCORE.
- There are spaces after reserved words and surrounding binary operators.
- Braces must line up horizontally or vertically.
- No magic numbers may be used.
- Every method, except for `main` and overridden methods, must have a comment.
- At most 30 lines of code may be used per method.
- No `continue` or `break` is allowed.
- All non-final variables must be private.

Note to the instructor: Of course, many programmers and organizations have strong feelings about coding style. If this style guide is incompatible with your own preferences or with local custom, please feel free to modify it.

## Source Files

Each Java program is a collection of one or more source files. The executable program is obtained by compiling these files. Organize the material in each file as follows:

- package statement, if appropriate
- import statements
- A comment explaining the purpose of this file
- A public class
- Other classes, if appropriate

The comment explaining the purpose of this file should be in the format recognized by the javadoc utility. Start with a `/**`, and use the `@author` and `@version` tags:

```
/**  
 * Classes to manipulate widgets.  
 * Solves CS101 homework assignment #3  
 * COPYRIGHT (C) 2015 Harry Morgan. All Rights Reserved.  
 * @author Harry Morgan  
 * @version 1.01 2015-02-15  
 */
```

## Classes

Each class should be preceded by a class comment explaining the purpose of the class.

First list all public features, then all private features.

Within the public and private sections, use the following order:

1. Instance variables
2. Static variables
3. Constructors
4. Instance methods
5. Static methods
6. Inner classes

Leave a blank line after every method.

All non-final variables must be private. (However, instance variables of a private inner class may be public.) Methods and final variables can be either public or private, as appropriate.

All features must be tagged `public` or `private`. Do not use the default visibility (that is, package visibility) or the `protected` attribute.

Avoid static variables (except final ones) whenever possible. In the rare instance that you need static variables, you are permitted one static variable per class.

# Methods

Every method (except for `main`) starts with a comment in javadoc format.

```
/**
 * Convert calendar date into Julian day.
 * Note: This algorithm is from Press et al., Numerical Recipes
 * in C, 2nd ed., Cambridge University Press, 1992.
 * @param day day of the date to be converted
 * @param month month of the date to be converted
 * @param year year of the date to be converted
 * @return the Julian day number that begins at noon of the
 * given calendar date.
 */
public static int getJulianDayNumber(int day, int month, int year)
{
    ...
}
```

Parameter variable names must be explicit, especially if they are integers or Boolean:

```
public Employee remove(int d, double s)
    // Huh?
public Employee remove(int department, double severancePay)
    // OK
```

Methods must have at most 30 lines of code. The method signature, comments, blank lines, and lines containing only braces are not included in this count. This rule forces you to break up complex computations into separate methods.

# Variables and Constants

Do not define all variables at the beginning of a block:

```
{
    double xold; // Don't
    double xnew;
    boolean done;
    ...
}
```

Define each variable just before it is used for the first time:

```
{
    ...
    double xold = Integer.parseInt(input);
    boolean done = false;
    while (!done)
    {
        double xnew = (xold + a / xold) / 2;
        ...
    }
    ...
}
```

Do not define two variables on the same line:

```
int dimes = 0, nickels = 0; // Don't
```

Instead, use two separate definitions:

```
int dimes = 0; // OK
int nickels = 0;
```

In Java, constants must be defined with the reserved word `final`. If the constant is used by multiple methods, declare it as `static final`. It is a good idea to define static final variables as `private` if no other class has an interest in them.

Do not use magic numbers! A magic number is a numeric constant embedded in code, without a constant definition. Any number except -1, 0, 1, and 2 is considered magic:

```
if (p.getX() < 300) // Don't
```

Use `final` variables instead:

```
final double WINDOW_WIDTH = 300;
...
if (p.getX() < WINDOW_WIDTH) // OK
```

Even the most reasonable cosmic constant is going to change one day. You think there are 365 days per year? Your customers on Mars are going to be pretty unhappy about your silly prejudice. Make a constant

```
public static final int DAYS_PER_YEAR = 365;
```

so that you can easily produce a Martian version without trying to find all the 365s, 364s, 366s, 367s, and so on, in your code.

When declaring array variables, group the `[]` with the type, not the variable.

```
int[] values; // OK
int values[]; // Ugh—this is an ugly holdover from C
```

When using collections, use type parameters and not “raw” types.

```
ArrayList<String> names = new ArrayList<String>(); // OK
ArrayList names = new ArrayList(); // Not OK
```

## Control Flow

### Statement Bodies

Use braces to enclose the bodies of branch and loop statements, even if they contain only a single statement. For example,

```
if (x < 0)
{
    x++;
}
```

and not

```
if (x < 0)
    x++; // Not OK--no braces
```

## The for Statement

Use for loops only when a variable runs from somewhere to somewhere with some constant increment/decrement:

```
for (int i = 0; i < a.length; i++)
{
    System.out.println(a[i]);
}
```

Or, even better, use the enhanced for loop:

```
for (int e : a)
{
    System.out.println(e);
}
```

Do not use the for loop for weird constructs such as

```
for (a = a / 2; count < ITERATIONS; System.out.println(xnew)) // Don't
```

Make such a loop into a while loop. That way, the sequence of instructions is much clearer:

```
a = a / 2;
while (count < ITERATIONS) // OK
{
    ...
    System.out.println(xnew);
}
```

## Nonlinear Control Flow

Avoid the switch statement, because it is easy to fall through accidentally to an unwanted case. Use if/else instead.

Avoid the break or continue statements. Use another boolean variable to control the execution flow.

## Exceptions

Do not tag a method with an overly general exception specification:

```
Widget readWidget(Reader in) throws Exception // Bad
```

Instead, specifically declare any checked exceptions that your method may throw:

```
Widget readWidget(Reader in)
    throws IOException, MalformedWidgetException // Good
```

Do not “squelch” exceptions:

```
try
{
    double price = in.readDouble();
}
catch (Exception e)
{ } // Bad
```

Beginners often make this mistake “to keep the compiler happy”. If the current method is not appropriate for handling the exception, simply use a throws specification and let one of its callers handle it.

# Lexical Issues

## Naming Conventions

The following rules specify when to use upper- and lowercase letters in identifier names:

- All variable and method names are in lowercase (maybe with an occasional uppercase in the middle); for example, `firstPlayer`.
- All constants are in uppercase (maybe with an occasional `UNDER_SCORE`); for example, `CLOCK_RADIUS`.
- All class and interface names start with uppercase and are followed by lowercase letters (maybe with an occasional `UpperCase` letter); for example, `BankTeller`.
- Generic type variables are in uppercase, usually a single letter.

Names must be reasonably long and descriptive. Use `firstPlayer` instead of `fp`. No drppng f vwls. Local variables that are fairly routine can be short (`ch`, `i`) as long as they are really just boring holders for an input character, a loop counter, and so on. Also, do not use `ctr`, `c`, `cntr`, `cnt`, `c2` for variables in your method. Surely these variables all have specific purposes and can be named to remind the reader of them (for example, `current`, `next`, `previous`, `result`, ...). However, it is customary to use single-letter names, such as `T` or `E` for generic types.

## Indentation and White Space

Use tab stops every three columns. That means you will need to change the tab stop setting in your editor!

Use blank lines freely to separate parts of a method that are logically distinct.

Use a blank space around every binary operator:

```
x1 = (-b - Math.sqrt(b * b - 4 * a * c)) / (2 * a);
// Good
```

```
x1=(-b-Math.sqrt(b*b-4*a*c))/(2*a);
// Bad
```

Leave a blank space after (and not before) each comma or semicolon. Do not leave a space before or after a parenthesis or bracket in an expression. Leave spaces around the `( . . . )` part of an `if`, `while`, `for`, or `catch` statement.

```
if (x == 0) { y = 0; }

f(a, b[i]);
```

Every line must fit in 80 columns. If you must break a statement, add an indentation level for the continuation:

```
a[n] = .....;
+ .....;
```

Start the indented line with an operator (if possible).

## Braces

Opening and closing braces must line up, either horizontally or vertically:

```
while (i < n) { System.out.println(a[i]); i++; }

while (i < n)
{
    System.out.println(a[i]);
    i++;
}
```

Some programmers don't line up vertical braces but place the { behind the reserved word:

```
while (i < n) { // DON'T
    System.out.println(a[i]);
    i++;
}
```

Doing so makes it hard to check that the braces match.

## Unstable Layout

Some programmers take great pride in lining up certain columns in their code:

```
firstRecord = other.firstRecord;
lastRecord  = other.lastRecord;
cutoff      = other.cutoff;
```

This is undeniably neat, but the layout is not stable under change. A new variable name that is longer than the preallotted number of columns requires that you move all entries around:

```
firstRecord = other.firstRecord;
lastRecord  = other.lastRecord;
cutoff      = other.cutoff;
marginalFudgeFactor = other.marginalFudgeFactor;
```

This is just the kind of trap that makes you decide to use a short variable name like `mff` instead. Use a simple layout that is easy to maintain as your programs change.

# HTML SUMMARY

## A Brief Introduction to HTML

A web page is written in a language called HTML (Hypertext Markup Language). Like Java code, HTML code is made up of text that follows certain strict rules. When a browser reads a web page, the browser *interprets* the code and *renders* the page, displaying characters, fonts, paragraphs, tables, and images.

HTML files are made up of text and *tags* that tell the browser how to render the text. Nowadays, there are dozens of HTML tags—see Table 1 for a summary of the most important tags. Fortunately, you need only a few to get started. Most HTML tags come in pairs consisting of an opening tag and a closing tag, and each pair applies to the text between the two tags. Here is a typical example of a tag pair:

Java is an *<i>object-oriented</i>* programming language.

The tag pair *<i> </i>* directs the browser to display the text inside the tags in *italics*:

Java is an *object-oriented* programming language.

The closing tag is just like the opening tag, but it is prefixed by a slash (/). For example, bold-faced text is delimited by *<b> </b>*, and a paragraph is delimited by *<p> </p>*.

*<p><b>Java</b> is an <i>object-oriented</i> programming language.</p>*

The result is the paragraph

Java is an *object-oriented* programming language.

Another common construct is a bulleted list. For example:

Java is

- object-oriented
- safe
- platform-independent

Here is the HTML code to display it:

```
<p>Java is</p>
<ul><li>object-oriented</li>
<li>safe</li>
<li>platform-independent</li></ul>
```

Each item in the list is delimited by *<li> </li>* (for “list item”), and the whole list is surrounded by *<ul> </ul>* (for “unnumbered list”).

**Table 1** Selected HTML Tags

Tag	Meaning	Children	Commonly Used Attributes
html	HTML document	head, body	
head	Head of an HTML document	title	
title	Title of an HTML document		
body	Body of an HTML document		
h1 . . . h6	Heading level 1 . . . 6		
p	Paragraph		
ul	Unnumbered list	li	
ol	Ordered list	li	
dl	Definition list	dt, dd	
li	List item		
dt	Term to be defined		
dd	Definition data		
table	Table	tr	
tr	Table row	th, td	
th	Table header cell		
td	Table cell data		
a	Anchor		href, name
img	Image		src, width, height
pre	Preformatted text		
hr	Horizontal rule		
br	Line break		
i or em	Italic		
b or strong	Bold		
tt or code	Typewriter or code font		
s or strike	Strike through		
u	Underline		
super	Superscript		
sub	Subscript		
form	Form		action, method

**Table 1** Selected HTML Tags

Tag	Meaning	Children	Commonly Used Attributes
input	Input field		type, name, value, size, checked
select	Combo box style selector	option	name
option	Option for selection		
textarea	Multiline text area		name, rows, cols

As in Java, you can freely use white space (spaces and line breaks) in HTML code to make it easier to read. For example, you can lay out the code for a list as follows:

```
<p>Java is</p>
<ul>
<li>object-oriented</li>
<li>safe</li>
<li>platform-independent</li>
</ul>
```

The browser ignores the white space.

If you omit a tag (such as a `</li>`), most browsers will try to guess the missing tags—sometimes with differing results. It is always best to include all tags.

You can include images in your web pages with the `img` tag. In its simplest form, an image tag has the form

```

```

This code tells the browser to load and display the image that is stored in the file `hamster.jpeg`. This is a slightly different type of tag. Rather than text inside a tag pair `<img> </img>`, the `img` tag uses an attribute to specify a file name. Attributes have names and values. For example, the `src` attribute has the value `"hamster.jpeg"`. Table 2 contains commonly used attributes.

**Table 2** Selected HTML Attributes

Attribute	Description	Commonly Contained in
name	Name of form element or anchor	input, select, textarea, a
href	Hyperlink reference	a
src	Source (as of an image)	img
code	Applet code	applet
width, height	Width, height of image or applet	img, applet
rows, cols	Rows, columns of text area	textarea
type	Type of input field, such as text, password, checkbox, radio, submit, hidden	input
value	Value of input field, or label of submit button	input

Table 2 Selected HTML Attributes		
Attribute	Description	Commonly Contained in
size	Size of text field	input
checked	Check radio button or checkbox	input
action	URL of form action	form
method	GET or POST	form

It is considered polite to use several additional attributes with the `img` tag, namely the *image size* and an *alternate description*:

```

```

These additional attributes help the browser lay out the page and display a temporary description while gathering the data for the image (or if the browser cannot display images, such as a voice browser for blind users). Users with slow network connections really appreciate this extra effort.

Because there is no closing `</img>` tag, we put a slash / before the closing `>`. This is not a requirement of HTML, but it is a requirement of the emerging XHTML standard, the XML-based successor to HTML. See [www.w3c.org/TR/xhtml1](http://www.w3c.org/TR/xhtml1) for more information on XHTML.

The most important tag on a web page is the `<a> </a>` tag pair, which makes the enclosed text into a *link* to another file. The links between web pages are what makes the Web into, well, a web. The browser displays a link in a special way (for example, underlined text in blue color). Here is the code for a typical link:

```
<a href="http://horstmann.com">Cay Horstmann</a> is the author of this book.
```

When the viewer of the web page clicks on the words **Cay Horstmann**, the browser loads the web page located at `horstmann.com`. (The value of the `href` attribute is a *Universal Resource Locator* (URL), which tells the browser where to go. The prefix `http:`, for *Hypertext Transfer Protocol*, tells the browser to fetch the file as a web page. Other protocols allow different actions, such as `ftp:` to download a file, `mailto:` to send e-mail to a user, and `file:` to view a local HTML file.)

Table 3 Selected HTML Entities		
Entity	Description	Appearance
<code>&amp;lt;</code>	Less than	<
<code>&amp;gt;</code>	Greater than	>
<code>&amp;amp;</code>	Ampersand	&
<code>&amp;quot;</code>	Quotation mark	"
<code>&amp;nbsp;</code>	Nonbreaking space	
<code>&amp;copy;</code>	Copyright symbol	©

You have noticed that tags are enclosed in angle brackets (less-than and greater-than signs). What if you want to show an angle bracket on a web page? HTML provides the notations &lt; and &gt; to produce the < and > symbols, respectively. Other codes of this kind produce symbols such as accented letters. The & (ampersand) symbol introduces these codes; to get that symbol itself, use &amp;. See Table 3 for a summary.

You may already have created web pages with a web editor that works like a word processor, giving you a WYSIWYG (what you see is what you get) view of your web page. But the tags are still there, and you can see them when you load the HTML file into a text editor. If you are comfortable using a WYSIWYG web editor, you don't need to memorize HTML tags at all. But many programmers and professional web designers prefer to work directly with the tags at least some of the time, because it gives them more control over their pages.

# GLOSSARY

**Abstract class** A class that cannot be instantiated.

**Abstract data type** A specification of the fundamental operations that characterize a data type, without supplying an implementation.

**Abstract method** A method with a name, parameter variable types, and return type but without an implementation.

**Access specifier** A reserved word that indicates the accessibility of a feature, such as `private` or `public`.

**Accessor method** A method that accesses an object but does not change it.

**Aggregation** The *has-a* relationship between classes.

**Algorithm** An unambiguous, executable, and terminating specification of a way to solve a problem.

**Anonymous class** A class that does not have a name.

**Anonymous object** An object that is not stored in a named variable.

**API (Application Programming Interface)** A code library for building programs.

**API Documentation** Information about each class in the Java library.

**Applet** A graphical Java program that executes inside a web browser or applet viewer.

**Argument** A value supplied in a method call, or one of the values combined by an operator.

**Array** A collection of values of the same type stored in contiguous memory locations, each of which can be accessed by an integer index.

**ArrayList** A Java class that implements a dynamically-growable array of objects.

**Assertion** A claim that a certain condition holds in a particular program location.

**Assignment** Placing a new value into a variable.

**Association** A relationship between classes in which one can navigate from objects of one class to objects of the other class, usually by following object references.

**Asymmetric bounds** Bounds that include the starting index but not the ending index.

**Attribute** A named property that an object is responsible for maintaining.

**Auto-boxing** Automatically converting a primitive type value into a wrapper type object.

**Balanced tree** A tree in which each subtree has the property that the number of descendants to the left is approximately the same as the number of descendants to the right.

**Big-Oh notation** The notation  $g(n) = O(f(n))$ , which denotes that the function  $g$  grows at a rate that is bounded by the growth rate of the function  $f$  with respect to  $n$ . For example,  $10n^2 + 100n - 1000 = O(n^2)$ .

**Binary file** A file in which values are stored in their binary representation and cannot be read as text.

**Binary operator** An operator that takes two arguments, for example `+` in  $x + y$ .

**Binary search** A fast algorithm for finding a value in a sorted array. It narrows the search down to half of the array in every step.

## G-2 Glossary

**Binary search tree** A binary tree in which *each* subtree has the property that all left descendants are smaller than the value stored in the root, and all right descendants are larger.

**Binary tree** A tree in which each node has at most two child nodes.

**Bit** Binary digit; the smallest unit of information, having two possible values: 0 and 1. A data element consisting of  $n$  bits has  $2^n$  possible values.

**Black-box testing** Testing a method without knowing its implementation.

**Block** A group of statements bracketed by {}.

**Body** All statements of a method or block.

**Boolean operator** An operator that can be applied to Boolean values. Java has three Boolean operators: &&, ||, and !.

**Boolean type** A type with two possible values: true and false.

**Border layout** A layout management scheme in which components are placed into the center or one of the four borders of their container.

**Boundary test case** A test case involving values that are at the outer boundary of the set of legal values. For example, if a method is expected to work for all nonnegative integers, then 0 is a boundary test case.

**Bounds error** Trying to access an array element that is outside the legal range.

**break statement** A statement that terminates a loop or switch statement.

**Breakpoint** A point in a program, specified in a debugger, at which the debugger stops executing the program and lets the user inspect the program state.

**Buffer** A temporary storage location for holding values that have been produced (for example, characters typed by the user) and are waiting to be consumed (for example, read a line at a time).

**Bug** A programming error.

**Byte** A number made up of eight bits. Essentially all currently manufactured computers use a byte as the smallest unit of storage in memory.

**Bytecode** Instructions for the Java virtual machine.

**Call stack** The ordered set of all methods that currently have been called but not yet terminated, starting with the current method and ending with main.

**Callback** A mechanism for specifying a block of code so it can be executed at a later time.

**Case sensitive** Distinguishing upper- and lowercase characters.

**Cast** Explicitly converting a value from one type to a different type. For example, the cast from a floating-point number  $x$  to an integer is expressed in Java by the cast notation (int)  $x$ .

**catch clause** A part of a try block that is executed when a matching exception is thrown by any statement in the try block.

**Central processing unit (CPU)** The part of a computer that executes the machine instructions.

**Character** A single letter, digit, or symbol.

**Check box** A user-interface component that can be used for a binary selection.

**Checked exception** An exception that the compiler checks. All checked exceptions must be declared or caught.

**Class** A programmer-defined data type.

**Client** A computer program or system that issues requests to a server and processes the server responses.

**Code coverage** A measure of the amount of source code that has been executed during testing.

**Cohesive** A class is cohesive if its features support a single abstraction.

**Collection** A data structure that provides a mechanism for adding, removing, and locating elements.

**Collaborator** A class on which another class depends.

**Combo box** A user-interface component that combines a text field with a drop-down list of selections.

**Command line** The line the user types to start a program in DOS or UNIX or a command window in Windows. It consists of the program name followed by any necessary arguments.

**Comment** An explanation to help the human reader understand a section of a program; ignored by the compiler.

**Compiler** A program that translates code in a high-level language (such as Java) to machine instructions (such as bytecode for the Java virtual machine).

**Compile-time error** An error that is detected when a program is compiled.

**Component** See **User-interface component**

**Composition** An aggregation relationship where the aggregated objects do not have an existence independent of the containing object.

**Computer program** A sequence of instructions that is executed by a computer.

**Concatenation** Placing one string after another to form a new string.

**Concrete class** A class that can be instantiated.

**Condition object** An object that manages threads that currently cannot proceed.

**Console program** A Java program that does not have a graphical window. A console program reads input from the keyboard and writes output to the terminal screen.

**Constant** A value that cannot be changed by a program. In Java, constants are defined with the reserved word `final`.

**Constructor** A sequence of statements for initializing a newly instantiated object.

**Construction** Setting a newly allocated object to an initial state.

**Container** A user-interface component that can hold other components and present them together to the user. Also, a data structure, such as a list, that can hold a collection of objects and present them individually to a program.

**Content pane** The part of a Swing frame that holds the user-interface components of the frame.

**Coupling** The degree to which classes are related to each other by dependency.

**CRC card** An index card representing a class that lists its responsibilities and collaborating classes.

**De Morgan's Law** A law about logical operations that describes how to negate expressions formed with *and* and *or* operations.

**Deadlock** A state in which no thread can proceed because each thread is waiting for another to do some work first.

## G-4 Glossary

**Deadly embrace** A set of blocked threads, each of which could only be unblocked by the action of other threads in the set.

**Debugger** A program that lets a user run another program one or a few steps at a time, stop execution, and inspect the variables in order to analyze it for bugs.

**Dependency** The *uses* relationship between classes, in which one class needs services provided by another class.

**Directory** A structure on a disk that can hold files or other directories; also called a folder.

**Documentation comment** A comment in a source file that can be automatically extracted into the program documentation by a program such as javadoc.

**Dot notation** The notation *object.method(arguments)* or *object.variable* used to invoke a method or access a variable.

**Doubly-linked list** A linked list in which each link has a reference to both its predecessor and successor links.

**DTD (Document Type Definition)** A sequence of rules that describes the legal child elements and attributes for each element type in an SGML or XML document.

**Dynamic method lookup** Selecting a method to be invoked at run time. In Java, dynamic method lookup considers the class of the implicit parameter object to select the appropriate method.

**Editor** A program for writing and modifying text files.

**Embedded system** The processor, software, and supporting circuitry that is included in a device other than a computer.

**Encapsulation** The hiding of implementation details.

**Enumeration type** A type with a finite number of values, each of which has its own symbolic name.

**Escape character** A character in text that is not taken literally but has a special meaning when combined with the character or characters that follow it. The \ character is an escape character in Java strings.

**Escape sequence** A sequence of characters that starts with an escape character, such as \n or \".

**Event** See **User-interface event**

**Event class** A class that contains information about an event, such as its source.

**Event adapter** A class that implements an event listener interface by defining all methods to do nothing.

**Event handler** A method that is executed when an event occurs.

**Event listener** An object that is notified by an event source when an event occurs.

**Event source** An object that can notify other classes of events.

**Exception** A class that signals a condition that prevents the program from continuing normally. When such a condition occurs, an object of the exception class is thrown.

**Exception handler** A sequence of statements that is given control when an exception of a particular type has been thrown and caught.

**Explicit parameter** A parameter of a method other than the object on which the method is invoked.

**Expression** A syntactical construct that is made up of constants, variables, method calls, and the operators combining them.

**Extension** The last part of a file name, which specifies the file type. For example, the extension .java denotes a Java file.

**Fibonacci numbers** The sequence of numbers 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, . . . , in which every term is the sum of its two predecessors.

**File** A sequence of bytes that is stored on disk.

**File pointer** The position within a random-access file of the next byte to be read or written. It can be moved so as to access any byte in the file.

**finally clause** A part of a try block that is executed no matter how the try block is exited.

**Flag** See **Boolean type**

**Floating-point number** A number that can have a fractional part.

**Flow layout** A layout management scheme in which components are laid out left to right.

**Flushing a stream** Sending all characters that are still held in a buffer to their destination.

**Folder** See **Directory**

**Font** A set of character shapes in a particular style and size.

**Foreign key** A reference to a primary key in a linked table.

**Frame** A window with a border and a title bar.

**Garbage collection** Automatic reclamation of memory occupied by objects that are no longer referenced.

**Generic class** A class with one or more type parameters.

**Generic method** A method with one or more type parameters.

**Generic programming** Providing program components that can be reused in a wide variety of situations.

**Grammar** A set of rules that specifies which sequences of tokens are legal for a particular document set.

**Graphics context** A class through which a programmer can cause shapes to appear on a window or off-screen bitmap.

**grep** The “global regular expression print” search program, useful for finding all strings matching a pattern in a set of files.

**Grid layout** A layout management scheme in which components are placed into a two-dimensional grid.

**GUI (Graphical User Interface)** A user interface in which the user supplies inputs through graphical components such as buttons, menus, and text fields.

**Hard disk** A device that stores information on rotating platters with magnetic coating.

**Hardware** The physical equipment for a computer or another device.

**Hash code** A value that is computed by a hash function.

**Hash collision** Two different objects for which a hash function computes identical values.

**Hash function** A function that computes an integer value from an object in such a way that different objects are likely to yield different values.

**Hash table** A data structure in which elements are mapped to array positions according to their hash function values.

**Hashing** Applying a hash function to a set of objects.

## G-6 Glossary

**Heap** A balanced binary tree that is used for implementing sorting algorithms and priority queues.

**Heapsort algorithm** A sorting algorithm that inserts the values to be sorted into a heap.

**High-level programming language** A programming language that provides an abstract view of a computer and allows programmers to focus on their problem domain.

**HTML (Hypertext Markup Language)** The language in which web pages are described.

**HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol)** The protocol that defines communication between web browsers and web servers.

**IDE (Integrated Development Environment)** A programming environment that includes an editor, compiler, and debugger.

**Immutable class** A class without a mutator method.

**Implementing an interface** Implementing a class that defines all methods specified in the interface.

**Implicit parameter** The object on which a method is invoked. For example, in the call `x.f(y)`, the object `x` is the implicit parameter of the method `f`.

**Importing a class or package** Indicating the intention of referring to a class, or all classes in a package, by the simple name rather than the qualified name.

**Inheritance** The *is-a* relationship between a more general superclass and a more specialized subclass.

**Initialize** Set a variable to a well-defined value when it is created.

**Inner class** A class that is defined inside another class.

**Instance method** A method with an implicit parameter; that is, a method that is invoked on an instance of a class.

**Instance of a class** An object whose type is that class.

**Instance variable** A variable defined in a class for which every object of the class has its own value.

**Instantiation of a class** Construction of an object of that class.

**Integer** A number that cannot have a fractional part.

**Integer division** Taking the quotient of two integers and discarding the remainder. In Java the `/` symbol denotes integer division if both arguments are integers. For example, `11/4` is `2`, not `2.75`.

**Interface type** A type with no instance variables, only abstract methods and constants.

**Internet** A worldwide collection of networks, routing equipment, and computers using a common set of protocols that define how participants interact with each other.

**Iterator** An object that can inspect all elements in a container such as a linked list.

**JavaBean** A class with a no-argument constructor that exposes properties through its `get` and `set` methods.

**javadoc** The documentation generator in the Java SDK. It extracts documentation comments from Java source files and produces a set of linked HTML files.

**JavaServer Faces (JSF)** A framework for developing web applications that aids in the separation of user interface and program logic.

**JDBC (Java Database Connectivity)** The technology that enables a Java program to interact with relational databases.

**JDK** The Java software development kit that contains the Java compiler and related development tools.

**Join** A database query that involves multiple tables.

**JSF container** A program that executes JSF applications.

**Layout manager** A class that arranges user-interface components inside a container.

**Lexicographic ordering** Ordering strings in the same order as in a dictionary, by skipping all matching characters and comparing the first non-matching characters of both strings. For example, “orbit” comes before “orchid” in lexicographic ordering. Note that in Java, unlike a dictionary, the ordering is case sensitive: Z comes before a.

**Library** A set of precompiled classes that can be included in programs.

**Linear search** Searching a container (such as an array or list) for an object by inspecting each element in turn.

**Linked list** A data structure that can hold an arbitrary number of objects, each of which is stored in a link object, which contains a pointer to the next link.

**Literal** A notation for a fixed value in a program, such as -2, 3.14, 6.02214115E23, "Harry", or 'H'.

**Local variable** A variable whose scope is a block.

**Lock** A data structure to regulate the scheduling of multiple threads. Once a thread has acquired a lock, other threads that also wish to acquire it must wait until the first thread relinquishes it.

**Lock object** An object that allows a single thread to execute a section of a program.

**Logging** Sending messages that trace the progress of a program to a file or window.

**Logical operator** See **Boolean operator**.

**Logic error** An error in a syntactically correct program that causes it to act differently from its specification. (A form of run-time error.)

**Loop** A sequence of instructions that is executed repeatedly.

**Loop and a half** A loop whose termination decision is neither at the beginning nor at the end.

**Machine code** Instructions that can be executed directly by the CPU.

**Magic number** A number that appears in a program without explanation.

**main method** The method that is first called when a Java application executes.

**Managed bean** A JavaBean that is managed by a JSF container.

**Map** A data structure that keeps associations between key and value objects.

**Markup** Information about data that is added as humanly readable instructions. An example is the tagging of HTML documents with elements such as <h1> or <b>.

**Memory location** A value that specifies the location of data in computer memory.

**Merge sort** A sorting algorithm that first sorts two halves of a data structure and then merges the sorted subarrays together.

**Metadata** Data that describe properties of a data set.

**Method** A sequence of statements that has a name, may have parameter variables, and may return a value. A method can be invoked any number of times, with different values for its parameter variables.

## G-8 Glossary

**Method expression** In JSF, an expression describing a bean and a method that is to be applied to the bean at a later time.

**Mixed content** In XML, a markup element that contains both text and other elements.

**Modifier** A reserved word that indicates the accessibility of a feature, such as private or public.

**Modulus** The % operator that computes the remainder of an integer division.

**Mock object** An object that is used during program testing, replacing another object and providing similar behavior. Usually, the mock object is simpler to implement or provides better support for testing.

**Mutator method** A method that changes the state of an object.

**Mutual recursion** Cooperating methods that call each other.

**Name clash** Accidentally using the same name to denote two program features in a way that cannot be resolved by the compiler.

**Navigation rule** In JSF, a rule that describes when to move from one web page to another.

**Nested loop** A loop that is contained in another loop.

**Networks** An interconnected system of computers and other devices.

**new operator** An operator that allocates new objects.

**Newline** The '\n' character, which indicates the end of a line.

**No-argument constructor** A constructor that takes no arguments.

**Null reference** A reference that does not refer to any object.

**Number literal** A fixed value in a program this is explicitly written as a number, such as -2 or 6.02214115E23.

**Object** A value of a class type.

**Object-oriented programming** Designing a program by discovering objects, their properties, and their relationships.

**Object reference** A value that denotes the location of an object in memory. In Java, a variable whose type is a class contains a reference to an object of that class.

**Off-by-one error** A common programming error in which a value is one larger or smaller than it should be.

**Opening a file** Preparing a file for reading or writing.

**Operating system** The software that launches application programs and provides services (such as a file system) for those programs.

**Operator** A symbol denoting a mathematical or logical operation, such as + or &&.

**Operator associativity** The rule that governs in which order operators of the same precedence are executed. For example, in Java the - operator is left-associative because a - b - c is interpreted as (a - b) - c, and = is right-associative because a = b = c is interpreted as a = (b = c).

**Operator precedence** The rule that governs which operator is evaluated first. For example, in Java the && operator has a higher precedence than the || operator. Hence a || b && c is interpreted as a || (b && c). (See Appendix B.)

**Overloading** Giving more than one meaning to a method name.

**Overriding** Redefining a method in a subclass.

**Package** A collection of related classes. The `import` statement is used to access one or more classes in a package.

**Panel** A user-interface component with no visual appearance. It can be used to group other components.

**Parallel arrays** Arrays of the same length, in which corresponding elements are logically related.

**Parameter passing** Specifying expressions to be arguments for a method when it is called.

**Parameter variable** A variable of a method that is initialized with a value when the method is called.

**Parse tree** A tree structure that shows how a string conforms to the rules of a grammar.

**Parser** A program that reads a document, checks whether it is syntactically correct, and takes some action as it processes the document.

**Partially filled array** An array that is not filled to capacity, together with a companion variable that indicates the number of elements actually stored.

**Permutation** A rearrangement of a set of values.

**Polymorphism** Selecting a method among several methods that have the same name on the basis of the actual types of the implicit parameters.

**Postfix operator** A unary operator that is written after its argument.

**Prefix operator** A unary operator that is written before its argument.

**Prepared statement** A SQL statement with a precomputed query strategy.

**Primary key** A column (or combination of columns) whose value uniquely specifies a table record.

**Primitive type** In Java, a number type or `boolean`.

**Priority queue** An abstract data type that enables efficient insertion of elements and efficient removal of the smallest element.

**Programming** The act of designing and implementing computer programs.

**Project** A collection of source files and their dependencies.

**Prompt** A string that tells the user to provide input.

**Property** A named value that is managed by a component.

**Pseudocode** A high-level description of the actions of a program or algorithm, using a mixture of English and informal programming language syntax.

**Pseudorandom number** A number that appears to be random but is generated by a mathematical formula.

**Public interface** The features (methods, variables, and nested types) of a class that are accessible to all clients.

**Queue** A collection of items with “first in, first out” retrieval.

**Quicksort** A generally fast sorting algorithm that picks an element, called the pivot, partitions the sequence into the elements smaller than the pivot and those larger than the pivot, and then recursively sorts the subsequences.

**Race condition** A condition in which the effect of multiple threads on shared data depends on the order in which the threads are scheduled.

**Radio button** A user-interface component that can be used for selecting one of several options.

## G-10 Glossary

**Random access** The ability to access any value directly without having to read the values preceding it.

**Reader** In the Java input/output library, a class from which to read characters.

**Recursion** A method for computing a result by decomposing the inputs into simpler values and applying the same method to them.

**Recursive method** A method that can call itself with simpler values. It must handle the simplest values without calling itself.

**Red-black tree** A kind of binary search tree that rebalances itself after each insertion and removal.

**Redirection** Linking the input or output of a program to a file instead of the keyboard or display.

**Reference** See **Object reference**

**Regression testing** Keeping old test cases and testing every revision of a program against them.

**Regular expression** A string that defines a set of matching strings according to their content. Each part of a regular expression can be a specific required character; one of a set of permitted characters such as [abc], which can be a range such as [a-z]; any character not in a set of forbidden characters, such as [^0-9]; a repetition of one or more matches, such as [0-9]+, or zero or more, such as [ACGT]; one of a set of alternatives, such as and|et|und; or various other possibilities. For example, “[A-Za-z][0-9]” matches “Cloud9” or “007” but not “Jack”.

**Relational database** A data repository that stores information in tables and retrieves data as the result of queries that are formulated in terms of table relationships.

**Relational operator** An operator that compares two values, yielding a Boolean result.

**Reserved word** A word that has a special meaning in a programming language and therefore cannot be used as a name by the programmer.

**Return value** The value returned by a method through a return statement.

**Reverse Polish notation** A style of writing expressions in which the operators are written following the operands, such as 2 3 4 \* + for  $2 + 3 \cdot 4$ .

**Roundoff error** An error introduced by the fact that the computer can store only a finite number of digits of a floating-point number.

**Runnable thread** A thread that can proceed provided it is given a time slice to do work.

**Run-time error** An error in a syntactically correct program that causes it to act differently from its specification.

**Run-time stack** The data structure that stores the local variables of all called methods as a program runs.

**Scope** The part of a program in which a variable is defined.

**Secondary storage** Storage that persists without electricity, e.g., a hard disk.

**Selection sort** A sorting algorithm in which the smallest element is repeatedly found and removed until no elements remain.

**Sentinel** A value in input that is not to be used as an actual input value but to signal the end of input.

**Sequential access** Accessing values one after another without skipping over any of them.

**Sequential search** See **Linear search**

**Serialization** The process of saving an object, and all the objects that it references, to a stream.

**Set** An unordered collection that allows efficient addition, location, and removal of elements.

**Shadowing** Hiding a variable by defining another one with the same name.

**Shallow copy** Copying only the reference to an object.

**Shell script** A file that contains commands for running programs and manipulating files. Typing the name of the shell script file on the command line causes those commands to be executed.

**Shell window** A window for interacting with an operating system through textual commands.

**Short-circuit evaluation** Evaluating only a part of an expression if the remainder cannot change the result.

**Side effect** An effect of a method other than returning a value.

**Sign bit** The bit of a binary number that indicates whether the number is positive or negative.

**Socket** An object that encapsulates a TCP/IP connection. To communicate with the other endpoint of the connection, you use the input and output streams attached to the socket.

**Software** The intangible instructions and data that are necessary for operating a computer or another device.

**Source code** Instructions in a programming language that need to be translated before execution on a computer.

**Source file** A file containing instructions in a programming language such as Java.

**SQL (Structured Query Language)** A command language for interacting with a database.

**Stack** A data structure with “last-in, first-out” retrieval. Elements can be added and removed only at one position, called the top of the stack.

**Stack trace** A printout of the call stack, listing all currently pending method calls.

**State** The current value of an object, which is determined by the cumulative action of all methods that were invoked on it.

**State diagram** A diagram that depicts state transitions and their causes.

**Statement** A syntactical unit in a program. In Java a statement is either a simple statement, a compound statement, or a block.

**Static method** A method with no implicit parameter.

**Static variable** A variable defined in a class that has only one value for the whole class, and which can be accessed and changed by any method of that class.

**Stored procedure** A database procedure that is executed in the database kernel.

**Stream** An abstraction for a sequence of bytes from which data can be read or to which data can be written.

**String** A sequence of characters.

**Subclass** A class that inherits variables and methods from a superclass but may also add instance variables, add methods, or redefine methods.

**Substitution principle** The principle that a subclass object can be used in place of any superclass object.

**Superclass** A general class from which a more specialized class (a subclass) inherits.

## G-12 Glossary

**Swing** A Java toolkit for implementing graphical user interfaces.

**Symmetric bounds** Bounds that include the starting index and the ending index.

**Synchronized block** A block of code that is controlled by a lock. To start execution, a thread must acquire the lock. Upon completion, it relinquishes the lock.

**Synchronized method** A method that is controlled by a lock. In order to execute the method, the calling thread must acquire the lock.

**Syntax** Rules that define how to form instructions in a particular programming language.

**Syntax diagram** A graphical representation of grammar rules.

**Syntax error** An instruction that does not follow the programming language rules and is rejected by the compiler. (A form of compile-time error.)

**Tab character** The '\t' character, which advances the next character on the line to the next one of a set of fixed positions known as tab stops.

**TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol)** The pair of communication protocols that is used to establish reliable transmission of data between two computers on the Internet.

**Ternary operator** An operator with three arguments. Java has one ternary operator, a ? b : c.

**Test suite** A set of test cases for a program.

**Text field** A user-interface component that allows a user to provide text input.

**Text file** A file in which values are stored in their text representation.

**Thread** A program unit that is executed independently of other parts of the program.

**Three-tier application** An application that is composed of separate tiers for presentation logic, business logic, and data storage.

**Throw an exception** Indicate an abnormal condition by terminating the normal control flow of a program and transferring control to a matching catch clause.

**throws clause** Indicates the types of the checked exceptions that a method may throw.

**Time slice** A small amount of time used when scheduling threads. Each thread is given a small amount of time (a slice) in which to do its work, then control is given to another thread.

**Token** A sequence of consecutive characters from an input source that belongs together for the purpose of analyzing the input. For example, a token can be a sequence of characters other than white space.

**Trace message** A message that is printed during a program run for debugging purposes.

**Transaction** A set of database operations that should either succeed in their entirety, or not happen at all.

**Tree** A data structure consisting of nodes, each of which has a list of child nodes, and one of which is distinguished as the root node.

**try block** A block of statements that contains exception processing clauses. A try block contains at least one catch or finally clause.

**Turing machine** A very simple model of computation that is used in theoretical computer science to explore computability of problems.

**Two-dimensional array** A tabular arrangement of elements in which an element is specified by a row and a column index.

**Type** A named set of values and the operations that can be carried out with them.

**Type parameter** A parameter in a generic class or method that can be replaced with an actual type.

**Type variable** A variable in the declaration of a generic type that can be instantiated with a type.

**Unary operator** An operator with one argument.

**Unchecked exception** An exception that the compiler doesn't check.

**Unicode** A standard code that assigns code values consisting of two bytes to characters used in scripts around the world. Java stores all characters as their Unicode values.

**Unified Modeling Language (UML)** A notation for specifying, visualizing, constructing, and documenting the artifacts of software systems.

**Uninitialized variable** A variable that has not been set to a particular value. In Java, using an uninitialized local variable is a syntax error.

**Unit testing** Testing a method by itself, isolated from the remainder of the program.

**URL (Uniform Resource Locator)** A pointer to an information resource (such as a web page or an image) on the World Wide Web.

**User-interface component** A building block for a graphical user interface, such as a button or a text field. User-interface components are used to present information to the user and allow the user to enter information to the program.

**User-interface event** A notification to a program that a user action such as a key press, mouse move, or menu selection has occurred.

**Value expression** In JSF, an expression describing a bean and a property that is to be accessed at a later time.

**Variable** A symbol in a program that identifies a storage location that can hold different values.

**Virtual machine** A program that simulates a CPU that can be implemented efficiently on a variety of actual machines. A given program in Java bytecode can be executed by any Java virtual machine, regardless of which CPU is used to run the virtual machine itself.

**void** A reserved word indicating no type or an unknown type.

**Walkthrough** A step-by-step manual simulation of a computer program.

**Web application** An application that executes on a web server and whose user interface is displayed in a web browser.

**White-box testing** Testing methods by taking their implementations into account, in contrast to black-box testing; for example, by selecting boundary test cases and ensuring that all branches of the code are covered by some test case.

**White space** Any sequence of only space, tab, and newline characters.

**Wrapper class** A class that contains a primitive type value, such as Integer.

**Writer** In the Java input/output library, a class to which characters are to be sent.

**XML (Extensible Markup Language)** A simple format for structured data in which the structure is indicated by markup instructions.



# INDEX

- ;(semicolon)  
  ending if statements, 184–185  
  ending method statements, 12  
  omitting, 14
- + (plus sign)  
  addition operator, 38  
  concatenation operator, 157
- ++ (plus signs), increment, 140
- . (dot), name syntax, 403–404
- ( ) (parentheses), in arithmetic operations, 139, 144–145
- { } (braces)  
  coding guidelines, A-85  
  enclosing blocks of code, 205–206  
  lining up code, 184
- & (ampersand), binary *and*, A-74
- && (ampersands), *and* operator, 213–214, 216, 217
- \* (asterisk), multiplication operator, 38, 139
- \ (backslash), escape sequence, 158, 517
- ^ (caret), exclusive *or*, A-74
- \$ (dollar sign), in variable names, 39
- = (equal sign), assignment operator, 40–41
- == (equal signs), relational operator  
  comparing object references, 190  
  comparing strings, 189, 192–193  
  syntax, 187  
  testing for null, 191
- ! (exclamation point), *not* operator, 215
- != (exclamation point, equal),  
  relational operator, 187t
- > (greater than), relational operator, 187t
- >= (greater than, equal), relational operator, 187t
- < (less than), relational operator, 187t
- <= (less than, equal), relational operator, 187t
- (minus sign), subtraction operator, 38
- (minus signs), decrement, 140
- % (percent sign), modulus, 140–141
- " (quotation marks), string  
  delimiters, 12
- \_ (underscore), in variable names, 39
- | (vertical bar), binary *or*, A-74
- || (vertical bars), *or* operator, 213–214, 216, 217
- <> (brackets), diamond syntax, 356
- / (slash), division operator, 38, 139
- // (slashes), comment delimiter, 40
- /\*...\*/ (slash asterisk...), comment delimiters, 40
- /\*\* ... \*/ (slash, asterisks...), comment indicator, 90
- ~ (tilde), unary negation operator, A-74
- A**
- abs method, `java.lang.Math` class, 142t, A-24
- Abstract classes, 441–442
- Abstract data types, 735
- accept method, `java.net.ServerSocket` class, A-30
- Access specifiers, 83
- Accessor methods, 50–51, 383–384
- acos method, `java.lang.Math` class, A-24
- actionPerformed method, `java.awt.event.ActionListener` interface, 491, 493, 847–848, A-16
- Actor classes, 380
- add method  
  `java.awt.Container` class, A-13  
  `java.math.BigDecimal` class, 138, A-29  
  `java.math.BigInteger` class, 138, A-29  
  `java.util.ArrayList<E>` class, 348, A-35  
  `java.util.Collection<E>` interface, A-36  
  `java.util.ListIterator<E>` interface, 678, 722–723, A-39  
  `java.util.Queue<E>` interface, 693
- javax.swing.ButtonGroup class, A-43
- javax.swing.JMenu class, A-45
- javax.swing.JMenuBar class, A-46
- addActionListener method, `javawt.swing.AbstractButton` class, 486–492, A-43
- addChangeListener method, `javawt.swing.JSlider` class, 872–874, A-47
- addFirst method, `java.util.LinkedList<E>` class, 676, 717–718, A-38
- addItem method, `javax.swing.JComboBox` class, A-44
- addKeyListener method, `java.awt.Component` class, 501, A-13
- addLast method, `java.util.LinkedList<E>` class, 676, 724–725, A-38
- addMouseListener method, `java.awt.Component` class, 497, A-13
- addNode method, `Node` class, 774
- Address.java class, 579–580
- Adleman, Leonard, 533
- Aggregation, 564–565, 568–569
- Algebraic expressions  
  evaluating with stacks, 697–700  
  full code example, 700  
  precedence, 698
- Algorithms. *See also* Loops,  
  common algorithms.  
  characteristics of, 17  
  combining and adapting, 331–336  
  definition, 17  
  developing, 336–339  
  evolving into programs, 19–20  
  example, 18  
  executable, 17  
  full code examples, 333, 339  
  pseudocode for, 19–20  
  reusing, 331–336  
  terminating, 17  
  for tiling a floor, 22–23  
  unambiguous, 17
- Altair 8800, 406

## I-2 Index

- American National Standards Institute (ANSI), 680
- Ampersand (&), binary *and*, A-74
- Ampersands (&&), *and* operator, 213–214, 216, 217
- Analytical Engine, 652
- Ancestors, 763
- Andreesen, Marc, 454
- Anonymous classes, 482–483
- ANSI (American National Standards Institute), 680
- API documentation, 52–55. *See also* Swing documentation.
- append method, javax.swing.JTextArea class, 849–851, A-47
- Apple II, 406
- Applets, definition, 6
- Application development, examples. *See* “Hello, World” program; Printing invoices (sample program).
- Application programming interface (API), 52–55
- AreaMeasurer.java class, 480
- Arguments
- definition, 13
  - method, 44–45
  - object construction, 49
- Ariane rocket incident, 544
- Arithmetic operations. *See also* Data types; specific operations.
- combining with assignment, 145
  - computation overflow, 133
  - hand tracing, 154–156
  - integer division, 140–141, 144
  - modulus, 140–141
  - powers, 141–142
  - remainders, 140–141
  - roots, 141–142
  - rounding, 133–134
  - roundoff errors, 134
  - unintended integer division, 144
- Arithmetic operators. *See also* specific operators.
- \* (asterisk), multiplication, 139
  - (minus sign), subtraction, 38
  - (minus signs), decrement, 140
  - % (percent sign), modulus, 140–141
  - + (plus sign), addition, 38
  - ++ (plus signs), increment, 140
- / (slash), division, 139
- definition, 139
- expressions, 139
- parentheses, 139, 144–145
- precedence, 139
- ARPANET, 454
- Array lists. *See also* java.util.ArrayList<E> class.
- versus* arrays, 354, 355t
  - auto-boxing, 351
  - constructor, 348
  - converting from array algorithms, 352
  - copying, 350
  - declaring, 348–349
  - definition, 347
  - diamond syntax, 356
  - enhanced for loop, 349–350
  - full code example, 353
  - generic class, 348
  - inserting elements, 352
  - iterating through, 349–350
  - overview, 348–349
  - removing matches, 352–353
  - size, determining, 356
  - syntax, 347
  - type parameter, 348
  - wrapper classes, 351, 351t
- Array lists, implementing
- adding/removing elements, 732–733
  - efficiency, 734t
  - full code example, 734
  - getting/setting elements, 731–732
  - growing the internal array, 733–735
- Array store exception, 829–830
- ArrayList constructor, A-35
- Arrays. *See also* Enumeration types.
- versus* array lists, 354, 355t
  - bounds errors, 314, 318
  - companion variable, 316
  - current size, 316
  - declaring, 312–315, 315t
  - definition, 312
  - fixed length, 315
  - full code example, 317
  - How To example, 334–336
  - implementing stacks as, 737
  - initialization, 312–314
  - iterating through, 321–322
  - length, determining, 316–317
  - matrices, 340–346
- with methods, 316
- multidimensional, 347
- of objects, 318
- overview, 312–314
- parallel, 318–319
- partially filled, 316–317
- printing, 344–345
- printing element separators, 330
- references, 315
- sequences of related values, 318
- size, determining, 356
- sorting, 331
- specifying elements of, 312–314
- syntax, 313
- underestimating data size, 331
- unfilled, 318
- uninitialized, 318
- variable row lengths, 345–346
- world population table (Worked Example), 345
- Arrays, common algorithms
- animation, 325
  - averaging elements, 323
  - converting to array lists, 352
  - copying arrays, 327–328
  - element position, finding, 324
  - element separators, 323–324
  - filling, 322
  - growing arrays, 327–328
  - inserting elements, 325
  - maximum value, finding, 323
  - minimum value, finding, 323
  - printing element separators, 330
  - reading input, 328–330
  - removing elements, 324–325
  - rolling dice (Worked Example), 336
  - searching for values, 324
  - summing elements, 323
  - swapping elements, 326
- Arrays, two-dimensional
- accessing elements, 341–342
  - accessing rows and columns, 342–343
  - animation, 343
  - declaring, 340–341
  - definition, 340
  - locating neighboring elements, 342
  - syntax, 341
- ArrayUtil.java class, 632–633
- Artificial intelligence, 221
- ASCII encoding, 518–519

- `asin` method, `java.lang.Math` class, A-24
- Assertions, 543–544
- Assignment  
 $=$  (equal sign), assignment operator, 40–41  
 changing variable values, 40–41  
 combining with arithmetic operations, 145  
*versus* declaration, 42–43  
 full code example, 41  
 syntax, 41
- Association, 568–569
- Associativity, Java operators, A-5
- Asterisk (\*), multiplication operator, 38, 139
- Asymmetric bounds, 260
- `atan` method, `java.lang.Math` class, A-24
- `atan2` method, `java.lang.Math` class, A-24
- ATM simulation (Worked Example), 581
- Attributes, UML, 567
- Augusta, Ada, 652
- Auto-boxing, 351
- Averages  
 array elements, 323  
 computing with loops, 272
- `await` method, `java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition` class, A-42
- B**
- Babbage, Charles, 652
- Backing up files, 11
- Backslash (\), escape sequence, 158, 517
- Backtracking  
 definition, 614  
 Eight Queens problem, 615–620  
 Four Queens problem, 616–620  
 full code example, 702  
 with stacks, 700–702
- Balanced trees, 768–769
- Balancing parentheses, 695
- `BankAccount.java` class, 96–97
- `BankAccountTester.java` class, 103
- `BankData.java` class, 891–892
- `Bank.java` class, 894–895
- `BankSimulator.java` class, 890
- Batch files, 358–359
- Berners-Lee, Tim, 454
- `BigDecimal` constructor, A-29
- `BigDecimal` type, 138
- `BigInteger` constructor, A-29
- `BigInteger` type, 138
- Big-Oh notation  
 analyzing selection sort performance, 637–639  
 common growth rates, 639*t*  
 definition, 638  
 measuring selection sort performance, 637–639
- Binary I/O  
 bits, 882  
 bytes, 882  
 definition, 882  
 negative byte values, 887  
 streams, 882. *See also Object streams.*
- Binary numbers, A-68–69
- Binary search trees. *See also Tree concepts.*  
 binary search property, 771–772  
 code sample, 776–779  
 definition, 771  
 efficiency, 776, 776*t*  
 generic classes (Worked Example), 835  
 inserting nodes, 772–774  
 insertion points, 774  
 removing nodes, 774–776  
 self-organizing structure, 774
- Binary searching, 649–652. *See also Heaps.*
- Binary trees. *See also Tree concepts.*  
 balanced trees, 768–769  
 decision trees, 766  
 definition, 766  
 expression trees, 767  
 full code example, 769–770  
 Huffman trees, 767, 770  
 implementing, 769–770
- `binarySearch` method  
`java.util.Arrays` class, 568–569, A-36  
`java.util.Collections` class, 568–569, A-37
- `BinarySearcher.java` class, 650–651
- `BinarySearchTree.java` class, 776–779
- Bit operations, A-74–75
- Bits, 882
- Black-box testing, 210
- Blocks of code  
 definition, 205  
 enclosing with braces, 205–206
- BlueJ environment, 56–57
- Booch, Grady, 382
- Boolean constructor, A-22
- `boolean` data type, 132*t*
- Boolean operators  
`&&` (ampersands), *and* operator, 213–214, 216, 217  
`!` (exclamation point), *not* operator, 215  
`||` (vertical bars), *or* operator, 213–214, 216, 217  
 De Morgan's Law, 217  
 full code example, 214  
 inverting conditions, 215  
 precedence, 214  
 short circuiting evaluation of, 217
- Boolean variables, in loops, 266
- `booleanValue` method, `java.lang.Boolean` class, A-22
- Border layout, 842
- `BorderLayout` constructor, 842–843, A-12
- Borders, radio buttons, 852–853
- Boundary test cases, 210–211
- Bounds errors, arrays, 314, 318
- Bounds for loops, choosing, 260
- Braces ({} )  
 coding guidelines, A-85  
 enclosing blocks of code, 205–206  
 lining up code, 184
- Brackets (<>), diamond syntax, 356
- Breadth-first search, 783–785
- break statements, 267–268
- Breakpoints, 287–289, 592–593
- Buckets, 742
- Buffer overrun attacks, 320
- Bugs, historical first, 291. *See also Debuggers; Debugging.*
- Button-press events, 491
- Buttons (user interface), 490–492
- `ButtonViewer.java` class, 487
- `byte` data type, 132*t*
- Bytes, 882

## I-4 Index

### C

Caesar cipher, 884–886  
`CaesarCipher.java` class, 885–886  
`CaesarEncryptor.java` class, 886  
Calculator program, Worked Example, 861  
`Calculator.java` class, 696–697  
Calendar programs, calculating elapsed days (Worked Example), 57  
Callbacks, 477–481  
Call-by-reference, 386–390  
Call-by-value, 386–390  
Calling methods, 34–35  
Camel case, 39  
`CarComponent.java` class, 114  
Caret (^), exclusive or, A-74  
`Car.java` class, 114–115  
Cars  
    autonomous vehicles, 221  
    drawing, 112–115  
`CarViewer.java` class, 115  
Case sensitivity  
    constants, 135  
    definition, 9  
    errors caused by, 16  
    misspelling words, 16  
    variable names, 39  
`CashRegister.java` class, 136–137  
`CashRegisterTester.java` class, 137–138  
cast operator  
    converting floating-point numbers to integer, 142–143  
full code example, 142  
syntax, 143  
Casting from interfaces to classes, 472–473  
catch clause, 536–537, 542–543  
Catching exceptions, 536–537  
`ceil` method, `java.lang.Math` class, 142t, A-25  
Central processing unit (CPU), 3  
char data type, 132t  
Character encodings, 518–519  
Character patterns. *See* Regular expressions.

Characters. *See also* Strings.  
    classifying, 520–521  
    definition, 156, 158  
    international alphabets, 163  
    reading, 520  
    reading from a string, 522  
    *versus* strings, 158–159  
    Unicode, 158–159, 163  
`charAt` method, `java.lang.String` class, 158  
Check boxes, 853–854  
Checked exceptions, 537–539  
Child nodes, 763  
`ChoiceQuestion.java` class, 433–434  
Circles, drawing, 66–67  
Circular arrays, implementing queues as, 738–740  
`CircularQueue.java` class, 739–740  
Class files, 10  
Class relationships  
    aggregation, 564–565, 568–569  
    association, 568–569  
    composition, 568–569  
    coupling, 563–564  
    dependency, 563–564  
    full code example, 565  
    “has a.” *See* Aggregation.  
    inheritance, 565–566  
    “is a.” *See* Inheritance.  
    “knows about.” *See* Dependencies.  
    multiplicities, 568–569  
    recording, sample program, 572–573  
Classes. *See also* Subclasses; Superclasses; *specific classes*.  
    abstract, 441–442  
    actors, 380  
    anonymous, 482–483  
    candidates for, 561  
    coding guidelines, A-80  
    cohesion, 381–382, 385  
    collaborators, 562  
    concrete, 441–442  
    consistency, 385  
    CRC (class-responsibility-collaboration) method, 561–563, 566–567  
    declaring, 12  
    definition, 12, 35–36  
    dependencies, 382–383, 385  
discovering, 380–381, 561–563  
for drawing shapes, 112–116  
extending. *See* Inheritance.  
final, 442  
generic. *See* Generic classes.  
identifying, 560–561  
immutable, 383–384  
importing from packages, 54  
inner, 481–482  
naming conventions, 39  
nouns as, 560  
public. *See* Public interfaces, classes.  
public interfaces, 43–44  
syntax, A-54–56  
testing, 56  
utility, 380  
Classes, common patterns  
    collecting values, 391–392  
    counters, 391  
    full code example, 394  
    managing object properties, 392  
    modeling moving objects, 393–395  
    modeling objects with distinct states, 392–393  
    summing totals, 390–391  
Classes, implementing  
    constructors, 94–95  
How To, 98–101  
instance variables, 93  
for a menu (Worked Example), 101  
methods, 95–97  
Class-responsibility-collaboration (CRC) cards. *See* CRC (class-responsibility-collaboration) cards.  
`ClickListener.java` class, 486  
`clone` method, `java.lang.Object` class, A-26  
close method  
    `java.io.InputStream` class, A-19  
    `java.io.OutputStream` class, 884–886, A-20  
    `java.io.PrintStream` class, A-20  
    `java.net.ServerSocket` class, A-30  
    `java.net.Socket` class, A-30  
    `java.sql.Connection` interface, A-31  
    `java.sql.ResultSet` class, A-33  
    `java.sql.Statement` class, A-34  
    `java.util.Scanner` class, A-41

- `close` method, `java.io.PrintWriter`
- class
  - automatic invocation, 544
  - closing text files, 515–516
  - description, A-20
- Code coverage, 210
- Coding guidelines
- { } (braces), A-85
  - classes, A-80
  - constants, A-81–82
  - control flow, A-82–83
  - for statement, A-83
  - indentation, A-84
  - methods, A-81
  - naming conventions, A-84
  - overview, A-79
  - source files, A-80
  - unstable layout, A-85
  - variables, A-81–82
  - white space, A-84
- Cohesion
- classes, 381–382, 385
  - methods, 381–382, 385
- Collaborators, 562
- Collecting values, common class patterns, 391–392
- Collections framework. *See also* Linked lists.
- choosing (How To), 688–689
  - definition, 672
  - full code example, 674
  - key/value associations. *See* Maps.
  - lists, 672–673
  - maps, 673–674, 686–688
  - priority queues, 673, 693–694
  - queues, 673, 693
  - sets, 673, 681–683
  - stacks, 673, 692
- Collisions, 690–691, 741
- Color constructor, A-12
- `ColorFrame.java` class, 873–874
- Colors, 68, 68t
- `ColorViewer.java` class, 873
- Combo boxes
- code samples, 855–858
  - definition, 854
  - overview, 854–855
- Command line arguments, 527–529
- Comments
- `/*...*/` (slash asterisk...), delimiters, 40
  - `//` (slashes), delimiter, 40
- converting to documentation. *See* javadoc program.
- definition, 40
- in documentation, A-66–67
- public interfaces to classes, 89–92
- syntax, A-63
- on variables, 40
- `commit` method, `java.sql.Connection` interface, A-31
- Companion variable, 316
- `compare` method, `java.util.Comparator<T>` interface, 661, A-37
- `compareTo` method
- comparing objects, 473–474
  - comparing strings, 189
  - `java.lang.Comparable<T>` interface, 659, A-23
  - `java.lang.String` class, A-27
  - returned values, 660
- Comparing
- adjacent values with loops, 275–276
  - floating-point numbers, 188
  - full code example, 191, 659
  - lexicographic ordering, 189
  - object contents, 190, 473–474.
- See also* `compareTo` method; `equals` method.
- object references, 190
  - rectangles, 190
  - relational operators, 186–188, 216
  - strings, 188–189, 192–193
  - testing for null, 190–191
- Compilation process, 10
- Compilers
- definition, 6
  - Java compiler, A-64
- Compile-time errors, 15
- Composition, 568–569
- Computation, limits of, 606–607
- Computation overflow, 133
- Computer programs, definition, 2. *See also* Java programs; Programming; Software.
- Computer viruses, 320
- Computers
- anatomy of, 3–5
  - common uses for, 5
  - description, 2
  - history of. *See* History of computers.
- Concatenating strings, 157
- Concrete classes, 441–442
- Conditional operators, 185
- Consistency, classes and methods, 385
- Console input, 157
- Constants
- case sensitivity, 135
  - coding guidelines, A-81–82
  - declaring, 136
  - definition, 134
  - interface types, 470
  - naming conventions, 135
  - syntax, 136
- constants reserved word, 470
- Constructing objects. *See* Object construction.
- Constructors. *See also specific constructors.*
- calling one from another, 112
  - declaring as void, 92–93
  - implementing classes, 94–95
  - versus* methods, 87
  - naming, 88
  - no-argument, 88
  - specifying, 87–88
  - specifying for public interfaces, 87–88
  - syntax, A-59
- Containers, 493, 842
- `contains` method, `java.util.Collection<E>` interface, 682, A-36
- continue statements, 267–268
- Control flow, coding guidelines, A-82–83
- Converting. *See also* cast operator.
- array lists from array algorithms, 352
  - classes to interface variables, 471
  - comments to documentation, 90–92
  - floating-point numbers to integer, 142–143
  - integers to floating-point, 142–143
  - interface variables from classes, 471
  - numbers from strings, 522–523
  - strings from objects. *See* `toString` method.

## I-6 Index

Converting (*continued*)  
  strings to integers. *See* `parseInt` method.  
  strings to numbers, 162, 522–523.  
    *See also* `parseInt` method.

Copying. *See also* `java.lang.Cloneable` interface  
  array lists, 350  
  arrays, 327–328  
  files. *See* Backing up files.  
  objects, 475–477. *See also* `clone` method.

`copyOf` method, `java.util.Arrays` class, 327–328, A-36

`cos` method, `java.lang.Math` class, 142t, A-25

Count-controlled loops, 254

`Counter.java` class, 84, 85–86

Counters  
  common class patterns, 391  
  in loops, 272–273

Counting loop iterations, 260

`CountryValue.java` class, 531–532

Coupling, 563–564

CPU (central processing unit), 3

CRC (class-responsibility-collaboration) cards. *See also* UML (Unified Modeling Language).  
  description, A-76  
  discovering classes, 570–572  
  in program design, 566–567  
  sample program, 561–563

`createElement` method, `org.w3c.dom.Document` interface, A-51

`createLSSerializer` method, `org.w3c.dom.ls.DOMImplementationLS` class, method summary, A-52

`createStatement` method, `java.sql.Connection` interface, A-31

`createTextNode` method, `org.w3c.dom.Document` interface, A-51

Credit card processing (Worked Example), 279

`currentTimeMillis` method, `java.lang.System` class, 634–636, A-28

Customer queues, simulating (Worked Example), 702

CYC project, 221

## D

Dangling `else` problem, 204–205

DARPA, 454

DARPA Urban Challenge, 221

Data format, choosing, 896–897

Data types. *See also* Arithmetic operations; *specific types*.  
  `abstract`, 735  
  `boolean`, 132t  
  `byte`, 132t  
  `char`, 132t  
  `double`, 132t, 133–134  
  `float`, 132t  
  `int`, 132t  
  `long`, 132t, 133  
  number literals, 133  
  numbers with fractions. *See* Double data type; Floating-point numbers.  
  numbers without fractions. *See* `int` type.  
  `short`, 132t  
  syntax, A-53  
  testing for, 451–453. *See also* `instanceof` operator.

`DataAnalyzer.java` class, 545–546

Databases, privacy issues, 580

`Data.java` class, 468, 480

`DataSetReader.java` class, 547–549

Date constructor, A-37

De Morgan, Augustus, 217

De Morgan's Law, 217

Debuggers  
  breakpoints, 287–289  
  definition, 286  
  inspecting variables, 287–289  
  overview, 286–289  
  single stepping, 287–289  
  stepping into/over, 288

Debugging code. *See also* Backtracking.  
  the first bug, 291  
  How To, 289–290  
  tracing recursive methods, 592–593  
  Worked Example, 291

Decision trees, 766

Decisions. *See also* Comparing; `if` statements.  
  Boolean operations, 213–218  
  conditional operators, 185

Declaring  
  array lists, 348–349  
  arrays, 312–315, 315t  
  classes, 12  
  constants, 136  
  instance variables, 82–83, 108  
  methods, 47  
  variables, 36–38, 42–43

Definite loops, 254

Denver's luggage handling system, 195

Dependencies, 382–383, 385, 563–564

Depth-first search, 783–785

Descendants, 763

Deutsch, L. Peter, 603

Dialog boxes  
  file choosing, 517–518  
  full code example, 518  
  input, 162–163  
  output, 162–163  
  `ShowInputDialog` method, javax.swing.JOptionPane class, A-46  
  `ShowMessageDialog` method, javax.swing.JOptionPane class, A-46  
  `ShowOpenDialog` method, javax.swing.JFileChooser class, A-45  
  `ShowSaveDialog` method, javax.swing.JFileChooser class, A-45

Diamond syntax, 356

`Die.java` class, 283–284

`DieSimulator.java` class, 284

Difference Engine, 652

Dijkstra, Edsger, 210

Dimension constructor, A-13

Directories. *See* Folders.

Discovering classes, 380–381, 561–563, 570–572

`divide` method, `java.math.BigInteger` class, A-29

“Division by zero” errors, 15

do loops, 262–263

Documentation  
  API (application programming interface), 52–55  
  converting comments to. *See* javadoc program.  
  methods, 573–575  
  online help, 55  
  Swing, 869–876

Dollar sign (\$), in variable names, 39

Dongles, 253  
 Dot (.), name syntax, 403–404  
**Double** constructor, A-23  
**double** data type  
 definition, 132*t*  
 for financial calculations, 134  
 overflow, 133  
 precision, 133  
**Double**-black problem, 789–792  
**doubleValue** method, `java.lang.Double` class, A-23  
**Doubly-linked lists**, 678, 730  
**Dr. Java** environment, 56  
**draw** method, `java.awt.Graphics2D` class, 64–65, A-14  
**Drawing.** *See also Graphical applications; specific shapes.*  
 a car, 112–115  
 circles, 66–67  
 colors, 68  
 on a component, 62–65  
 ellipses, 66–67  
 a face, 69–70  
 fills, 68  
 a flag (How To), 116–119  
 graphical shapes (How To), 116–119  
 lines, 67  
 rectangles, 61–65  
 shape classes, 112–116  
**drawLine** method, `java.awt.Graphics` class, A-14  
**drawString** method, `java.awt.Graphics2D` class, 67, A-14  
**Dynamic** method lookup, 438, A-58

**E**

**E** constant, `java.lang.Math` class, 135  
**Earthquake** descriptions  
 full code example, 198  
 Loma Prieta quake, 196  
 Richter scale, 196  
**ECMA** (European Computer Manufacturers Association), 680  
**Editing** pictures (Worked Example), 57  
**Editors**, definition, 8  
**Eight Queens** problem, 615–620  
**EightQueens**.`java` class, 619–620  
**Electronic voting machines**, 104

**ElevatorSimulation2**.`java` class, 219–220  
**ElevatorSimulation**.`java`, 182–183  
**Ellipse2D**.`Double` constructor, A-17  
**Ellipses**, drawing, 66–67  
**else** statements, dangling **else** problem, 204–205  
**Empty string** vs null reference, 191  
**Empty strings**, 156  
**Empty trees**, 765  
**EmptyFrameViewer**.`java` class, 62  
**Encapsulation**, instance variables, 84–86  
**Encryption**  
 algorithms, 533  
 Caesar cipher, 884–886  
**Encryption keys**, 884  
**Enhanced for loop**, 321–322, 349–350  
**ENIAC** (electronic numerical integrator and computer), 5  
**Enumeration** types, 206–207, A-56–57. *See also Arrays.*  
**EOFException** constructor, A-18  
**“Equal exit cost” rule**, 787–788  
**Equal sign (=)**, assignment operator, 40–41  
**Equal signs (==)**, relational operator  
 comparing object references, 190  
 comparing strings, 189, 192–193  
 syntax, 187*t*  
 testing for `null`, 191  
**equals** method  
 comparing objects, 450–451  
 inheritance, 454  
`java.awt.Rectangle` class, 190  
`java.lang.Object` class, A-26  
`java.lang.String` class, 188–190, A-27  
**equalsIgnoreCase** method, `java.lang.String` class, A-27  
**Erasing** type parameters, 831–833  
**Error handling**, input errors, 545–549. *See also Exception handling.*  
**Error messages**  
 logging, 212–213  
 reading exception reports, 162  
 stack trace, 162  
 trace messages, 212–213

**Errors.** *See also specific errors.*  
 arrays, 318  
 compile-time, 15  
 dangling **else** problem, 204–205  
 declaring constructors as `void`, 92  
 declaring instance variables in local variables, 108  
 “Division by zero,” 15  
 exceptions, 15  
 full code example, 15  
 ignoring parameter values, 98  
 logic, 15  
 in loops, 247–249  
 misspelling words, 16  
 roundoff, 134, 188–189  
 run-time, 15  
 syntax, 15  
 unbalanced parentheses, 144  
 uninitialized object references, 109  
 unintended integer division, 144  
 unnecessary instance variables, 108–109  
**Errors**, diagnosing, encapsulation, 85  
**ESA** (European Space Agency), 544  
**Escape sequences**, 158  
**EtchedBorder** constructor, A-48  
**European Computer Manufacturers Association** (ECMA), 680  
**evaluate** method, `javax.xml.xpath.XPath` class, method summary, A-50  
**Evaluator**.`java` class, 611–612  
**Event handling**, user interface events, 485  
**Event listeners**  
 calling listener methods, 490  
 containers as, 493  
 definition, 485  
 event source, 485  
 forgetting to attach, 493  
 inner classes for, 487–489  
**Event-controlled loops**, 254  
**Events**  
 button press, 491  
 definition, 485  
 timer, 494–496  
**Exception handlers**, 536–537  
**Exception handling.** *See also Error handling.*  
 animation, 537

## I-8 Index

Exception handling (*continued*)  
    catch clause, 536–537, 542–543  
    catching exceptions, 536–537  
    checked exceptions, 537–539  
    definition, 534  
    designing exception types, 540–541  
    exception handlers, 536–537  
    finally clause, 539–540, 542–543  
    full code example, 539  
    internal errors, 537  
    squelching exceptions, 542  
    throw early, catch late, 542  
    throwing exceptions, 534–535, 543  
    throws clause, 538–539  
    try blocks, 536–537  
    try statement, 536–537, 542–543  
    unchecked exceptions, 537

Exception reports, 162

Exceptions  
    definition, 15  
    syntax, A-62

Exclamation point, equal (!=), relational operator, 187*t*

Exclamation point (!), *not* operator, 215

Executable algorithms, 17

execute method  
    java.sql.PreparedStatement class, A-32  
    java.sql.Statement class, A-34

executeQuery method  
    java.sql.PreparedStatement class, A-32  
    java.sql.Statement class, A-34

executeUpdate method  
    java.sql.PreparedStatement class, A-32  
    java.sql.Statement class, A-34

exists method, java.io.File class, A-19

exit method, java.lang.System class, A-28

exp method, java.lang.Math class, 142*t*, A-25

Explicit parameters, 110

Expression trees, 767

ExpressionCalculator.java class, 613–614

Expressions, 139, 145, A-54

ExpressionTokenizer.java class, 612–613

Extending classes. *See* Inheritance.  
extends reserved word, 427

**F**

Face, drawing, 69–70

FaceComponent.java class, 69–70

Fibonacci sequence, 598–603

FIFO (first in, first out), 693

Fifth-Generation Project, 221

File class, 514

File constructor, A-18

File dialog boxes, 517–518

File names, as string literals, 517

File pointers, 888

FileInputStream constructor, A-19

FileNotFoundException, 515–516, 537

FileOutputStream constructor, A-19

Files  
    finding, with recursion, 596  
    overview, 10–11. *See also* Folders.  
    source, A-80

fill method, java.awt.Graphics2D class, 68, A-14

Filling arrays, 322

Fills, drawing, 68

Final classes, 442

finally clause, 539–540, 542–543

Financial calculations, data type for, 134

First kit computer, 406

First programmer, 652

Fixed length arrays, 315

Flags. *See* Boolean operators.

Flags, drawing, 116–119

float data type, 132*t*

Floating-point numbers  
    assigning to integer variables, 134  
    comparing, 188  
    converting to integer, 142–143.  
        *See also* cast operator.

description, A-72  
    mixing with integer, 139  
    precision, 133–134

floor method, java.lang.Math class, 142*t*, A-25

Flow layout, 842

Flowcharting, loops, 263

Flowcharts, 207–210. *See also* Storyboards.

FlowLayout constructor, A-14

Folders, 10. *See also* Files.

Font constructor, A-14

FontFrame2.java class, 865–868

FontFrame.java class, 855–858

FontViewer2.java class, 865

FontViewer.java class, 855

for loops, 254–259, 261

for statement, coding guidelines, A-83

Format flags, 524*t*

format method  
    java.lang.String class, A-27  
    java.text.DateFormat class, A-34

Format specifiers, 148–150, 525

Format types, 525*t*

Formatting output  
    format flags, 524*t*  
    format specifiers, 148–150, 525  
    format types, 525*t*  
    full code example, 525  
    overview, 524

forName method, java.lang.Class class, A-22

Four Queens problem, 616–620

Frame windows, 61–62, 65

Frames, customizing with inheritance, 844–845

**G**

Garbage collection, 107

Generic arrays, 834–835

Generic classes  
    array lists, 348  
    array store exception, 829–830  
    binary search tree (Worked Example), 835  
    code samples, 823–824  
    constraining type parameters, 827–828  
    full code example, 821, 828  
    implementing, 821–825  
    inheritance, 829  
    linked lists, 676  
    naming type variables, 822  
    syntax, 822  
    type parameters, 820–821

- Generic methods  
 constraining type parameters, 827–828  
 declaring, 826  
 definition, 825  
 full code example, 826, 828  
 inheritance, 829  
 overview, 825–826  
 syntax, 826
- Generic programming, 820
- Generic types, syntax, A-63
- `get` method  
`java.util.ArrayList<E>` class, 348, A-35  
`java.util.Calendar` class, A-36  
`java.util.Map<K, V>` interface, 585, A-39
- `getAttribute` method, `org.w3c.dom.Element` interface, A-51
- `getAvailable` method, `java.util.TimeZone` class, A-42
- `getCenterX` method, `java.awt.geom.RectangularShape` class, A-18
- `getCenterY` method, `java.awt.geom.RectangularShape` class, A-18
- `getColumnCount` method, `java.sql.ResultSetMetaData` class, A-33–34
- `getColumnDisplaySize` method, `java.sql.ResultSetMetaData` class, A-34
- `getColumnLabel` method, `java.sql.ResultSetMetaData` class, A-34
- `getConnection` method, `java.sql.DriverManager` class, A-32
- `getContentLength` method, `java.net.URLConnection` class, A-31
- `getContentType` method, `java.net.URLConnection` class, A-31
- `getDomConfig` method, `org.w3c.dom.ls.LSSerializer` class, A-52
- `getDouble` method, `java.sql.ResultSet` class, A-33
- `getFeature` method, `org.w3c.dom.DOMImplementation` interface, method summary, A-51
- `getFilePointer` method  
`java.io.RandomAccessFile` class, 888–892  
`java.io.RandomAccessFile` class, A-21
- `getFirst` method, `java.util.LinkedList<E>` class, 676, A-39
- `getGlobal` method, `java.util.logging.Logger` class, 213, A-43
- `getHeight` method  
`java.awt.Component` class, A-13  
`java.awt.geom.RectangularShape` class, A-18  
`java.awt.Rectangle` class, 50–51, A-15
- `getImplementation` method, `org.w3c.dom.Document` interface, A-51
- `getInputStream` method  
`java.net.Socket` class, A-30  
`java.net.URLConnection` class, A-31
- `getInt` method, `java.sql.ResultSet` class, A-33
- `getKeyStrokeForEvent` method, `javax.swing.KeyStroke` class, 500–501, A-47
- `getLast` method, `java.util.LinkedList<E>` class, 676
- `getMaxX` method, `java.awt.geom.RectangularShape` class, A-18
- `getMaxY` method, `java.awt.geom.RectangularShape` class, A-18
- `getMessage` method, `java.lang.Throwable` class, 541, A-29
- `getMetaData` method, `java.sql.ResultSet` class, A-33
- `getMinX` method, `java.awt.geom.RectangularShape` class, A-18
- `getMinY` method, `java.awt.geom.RectangularShape` class, A-18
- `getOutputStream` method, `java.net.Socket` class, A-30
- `getProperty` method, `java.util.Properties` class, A-40
- `getResponseCode` method, `java.net.HttpURLConnection` class, A-30
- `getResponseMessage` method, `java.net.HttpURLConnection` class, A-30
- `getResultSet` method, `java.sql.Statement` class, A-34
- `getSelectedFile` method, `javax.swing.JFileChooser` class, 518, A-45
- `getSelectedItem` method, `javax.swing.JComboBox` class, A-44
- `getSource` method, `java.util.EventObject` class, A-37
- `getString` method, `java.sql.ResultSet` class, A-33
- `getText` method, `javax.swing.text.JTextComponent` class, 847–848, A-49
- `getTimeInstance` method, `java.text.DateFormat` class, A-35
- `getTimeZone` method, `java.util.TimeZone` class, A-42
- `getUpdateCount` method, `java.sql.Statement` class, A-34
- `getValue` method, `javax.swing.JSlider` class, 872–874, A-47
- `getWidth` method  
`java.awt.Component` class, A-13  
`java.awt.geom.RectangularShape` class, A-18  
`java.awt.Rectangle` class, 50–51, A-15
- `getX` method  
`java.awt.event.MouseEvent` class, 498, A-16  
`java.awt.geom.Point2D` class, A-18  
`java.awt.Rectangle` class, 50–51, A-15
- `getX1` method, `java.awt.geom.Line2D` class, A-17
- `getX2` method, `java.awt.geom.Line2D` class, A-17
- `getY` method  
`java.awt.event.MouseEvent` class, 498, A-16  
`java.awt.geom.Point2D` class, A-18  
`java.awt.Rectangle` class, 50–51, A-15
- `getY1` method, `java.awt.geom.Line2D` class, A-17
- `getY2` method, `java.awt.geom.Line2D` class, A-17
- Gosling, James, 6
- Graphical applications. *See also Pictures; specific shapes.*  
 displaying components in frames, 65  
 drawing on a component, 62–65  
 frame windows, 61–62
- Greater than, equal ( $\geq$ ), relational operator, 187t
- Greater than ( $>$ ), relational operator, 187t
- GregorianCalendar constructor, A-38

## I-10 Index

grep program, 526  
Grid bag layout, 843  
Grid layout, 843  
GridLayout constructor, 843, A-15  
Grouping radio buttons, 852–853  
grow method, `java.awt.Rectangle` class, A-15  
GUI (Graphical User Interface), components. *See also* Layout management; *specific components*.  
default size, 845  
making selections. *See* Check boxes; Combo boxes; Radio buttons.  
GUI builders, 862  
Gutenberg project, 454

**H**

Halt checker, 606  
Halting problem, 606–607  
Hand tracing  
    animation, 251  
    arithmetic operations, 154–156  
    description, 203–204  
    loops, 249–253  
    objects, 105–107  
Hardware, definition, 2  
“Has-a” relationships. *See* Aggregation.  
Hash codes  
    collisions, 690–691  
    description, 690–691, 741  
    full code example, 691  
Hash functions, 690–691  
Hash tables, description, 741–742  
Hash tables, implementing  
    adding/removing elements, 743–744  
    buckets, 742  
    collisions, 741  
    efficiency, 745t  
    finding elements, 743  
    hash codes, 741  
    iterating over hash tables, 744–749  
    linear probing, 749  
    open addressing, 742, 749  
    probing sequence, 749  
    sample code, 745–749  
    separate chaining, 742

hashCode method, 681  
HashMap constructor, A-38  
HashSet constructor, A-38  
`HashSetDemo.java` class, 748–749  
`HashSet.java` class, 745–748  
hasNext method  
    `java.util.Iterator<E>` interface, 677, 682, A-38  
    `java.util.Scanner` class, A-41  
hasNextDouble method, `java.util.Scanner` class, 219, A-41  
hasNextInt method, `java.util.Scanner` class, 218–219, A-41  
hasNextLine method, `java.util.Scanner` class, A-41  
hasPrevious method, `java.util.ListIterator<E>` interface, 678, A-39  
`HeapDemo.java` class, 802–803  
Heaps. *See also* Binary search; Tree concepts.  
    adding nodes, 794–795. *See also* Heapsort algorithm.  
    definition, 793  
    removing nodes, 796–797. *See also* Heapsort algorithm.  
    sample code, 798–803  
    sorting nodes. *See* Heapsort algorithm.  
    storing in arrays, 798  
Heapsort algorithm, 804–808  
`HeapSorter.java`, 806–808  
Height of trees, 763  
“Hello, World” program  
    analyzing, 12–14  
    source code, 12  
    writing, 8–11  
`HelloPrinter.java` class, 12  
Help, online, 55. *See also* Documentation.  
Hexadecimal numbers, A-73  
High-level languages, 6  
History of computers  
    Altair 8800, 406  
    Apple II, 406  
    Babbage’s Difference Engine, 652  
    corporate monopolies, 60  
    first kit computer, 406  
    first programmer, 652  
    hardware evolution, 5  
    IBM, 60

microprocessors, 406  
Microsoft, 60  
personal computing, 406  
standardization, 680  
Turing machine, 606  
Univac Corporation, 60  
VisiCalc, 406  
Hoff, Marcian E., 406  
Houston, Frank, 359  
HTML (Hypertext Markup Language)  
    attributes, A-88–89  
    entities, A-89–90  
    overview, A-86  
    tag summary, A-87–88  
Huffman trees, 767, 770

**I**

IBM, history of computers, 60  
IEEE floating-point numbers, A-72  
IETF (Internet Engineering Task Force), 680  
if statements. *See also* switch statements.  
    animation, 196, 200  
    dangling else problem, 204–205  
    definition, 180  
    duplicate code in branches, 186  
    ending with a semicolon, 184–185  
    flowchart for, 181  
    implementing (How To), 193–195  
    input validation, 218–220  
    multiple alternatives, 196–199  
    nesting, 200–203  
    sample program, 182–183  
    syntax, 182  
`IllegalArgumentException`, 534–535, A-23  
`ImageIcon` constructor, A-44  
Immutable classes, 383–384  
implements reserved word, 466–468  
Implicit parameters, 110  
`import` directive, 398–399, 401  
Importing  
    classes from packages, 54  
    packages, 401  
`in` method, `java.lang.System` class, 147  
Income tax computation, 200–203  
Income tax rate schedule, 200t  
Indefinite loops, 254

- Indentation  
   coding guidelines, A-84  
   with tabs, 185
- `IndexOutOfBoundsException`, 537
- Infinite loops, 248
- Infinite recursion, 592
- INFO message level, 213
- `info` method, `java.util.logging.Logger` class, 213, A-43
- Information hiding. *See* Encapsulation.
- Inheritance. *See also* Polymorphism.  
   animation, 432  
   class relationships, 565–566  
   definition, 422  
   full code example, 429, 447  
   generic classes, 829  
   generic methods, 829  
   indicating, 427  
   *versus* interfaces, 469  
   purpose of, 426  
   super reserved word, 435–436
- Inheritance hierarchy  
   developing (How To), 443–447  
   Worked Example, 448
- Initialization  
   arrays, 312–314  
   static methods, 399
- Initialization, variables  
   assignment statements, 41  
   definition, 37  
   local, 107  
   static, 399
- `Initials.java` class, 160
- Inner classes  
   definition, 481  
   as event listeners, 487–489  
   instance variables, 488  
   local variables, 488  
   `Node` class, 716–717  
   overview, 481–483
- Inorder traversal, 780–781
- `Input`. *See* `java.util.Scanner` class;  
   Reading input.
- Input statements, syntax, 147
- Input validation, 218–220
- `InputStreamReader` constructor, A-19
- Insertion sort, 639–640, 661
- Instance methods, 145–146, A-58
- Instance variables  
   access specifiers, 83  
   declaring, 82–83  
   declaring in local variables, 108  
   definition, 82  
   encapsulation, 84–86  
   full code example, 85  
   implementing classes, 93  
   return values, 84  
   syntax, 83  
   type, specifying, 83  
   unnecessary, 108–109
- `instanceof` operator, 451–453
- Instantiating, interface types, 470
- `int` type, 38, 132t
- `Integer` constructor, A-23
- `Integer` division, 140–141, 144
- `Integer` values, mixing with floating-point, 139
- Integers  
   computation overflow, 133  
   converting to floating-point, 142–143  
   definition, 37
- Integrated development environment, 8–9
- Intel Corporation, 146
- Interface types  
   constants, declaring, 470  
   defining, 464–466  
   definition, 464  
   implementing, 466–468  
   *implements* reserved word, 466–468  
   instantiating, 470  
   public methods, 470
- Interface variables  
   casting from interfaces to classes, 472–473  
   converting from classes, 471  
   full code example, 473  
   invoking methods, 471–472
- Interfaces. *See also* specific interfaces.  
   for callbacks, 477–481  
   *versus* inheritance, 469  
   modifying method parameter types, 489–490  
   syntax, A-56  
   Worked Example: number sequences, 473
- Interior nodes, 763
- International alphabets, 163
- International Organization for Standardization (ISO), 680
- Internet, history of, 454
- Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)  
   standardization of computers, 680
- Internet Explorer, 454
- `intersection` method, `java.awt.Rectangle` class, A-15
- `intValue` method, `java.lang.Integer` class, A-23
- `InvestmentFrame3.java` class, 850–851
- `Investment.java` class, 245–246, 257–258
- `InvestmentRunner.java` class, 246, 258
- `InvestmentViewer1.java` class, 488–489
- `InvestmentViewer2.java` class, 492
- `Invoice.java` class, 576–578
- `InvoicePrinter.java` class, 576
- “Is-a” relationships. *See* Inheritance.
- `isDigit` method, `java.lang.Character` class, 521, A-22
- `isEditable` method  
   `javax.swing.JComboBox` class, A-44  
   `javax.swing.text.JTextComponent` class, A-49
- `isLetter` method, `java.lang.Character` class, 521, A-22
- `isLowerCase` method, `java.lang.Character` class, 521, A-22
- ISO (International Organization for Standardization), 680
- `isSelected` method, `javax.swing.AbstractButton` class, 852–853, 854, A-43
- `isUpperCase` method, `java.lang.Character` class, 521, A-22
- `isWhiteSpace` method, `java.lang.Character` class, classifying characters, 521
- `Iterator` class, 718–719
- `iterator` method, `java.util.Collection<E>` interface, A-37
- J**
- Jacobson, Ivar, 382
- JAR tool, A-65
- Java language. *See also* Applets; Programming.  
   definition, 2  
   high-level languages, 6

## I-12 Index

- Java language (*continued*)  
integrated development environment, 8–9  
platform independence, 7  
portability, 7  
versions, 7*t*
- Java library  
definition, 7. *See also* Packages.  
inheritance hierarchy, A-9–A-12
- Java operators, summary of, A-5*t*–6*t*
- Java programs. *See also* specific elements.  
class files, 10  
compilation process, 10  
compilers, 6  
getting started. *See* “Hello, World” program.  
machine code, 6  
source code, 10  
source files, 10
- Java virtual machine launcher, A-65
- java.awt package, A-12–16
- java.awt.BorderLayout class, method summary, A-12. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.Color class  
colors, specifying, 68  
method summary, A-12. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.Component class  
graphical frames, 61  
method summary, A-13. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.Container class, method summary, A-13. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.Dimension class, method summary, A-13. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.event package, A-16–17
- java.awt.event.ActionListener interface, method summary, A-16. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.event.KeyEvent class  
description, A-16  
processing keystrokes, 500–501
- java.awt.event.KeyListener interface, method summary, A-16
- java.awt.event.MouseEvent class, method summary, A-16. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.event.MouseListener interface, method summary, A-16–17. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.FlowLayout class, method summary, A-14. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.Font class, method summary, A-14. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.Frame class  
adding the main method, 846  
frame titles, 61  
method summary, A-14. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.geom package, A-17–18
- java.awt.geom.Ellipse2D.Double class  
drawing an ellipse, 66–67  
method summary, A-17. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.geom.Line2D.Double class  
drawing lines, 66–67  
method summary, A-17. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.geom.Point2D class, method summary, A-18. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.geom.Point2D.Double class  
method summary, A-18. *See also* specific methods.  
points, specifying, 67
- java.awt.geom.RectangleShape class, method summary, A-18. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.Graphics class  
coloring shapes, 68  
method summary, A-14. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.Graphics2D class  
drawing on components, 63–65  
drawing strings, 67  
filling shapes, 68  
method summary, A-14. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.GridLayout class, method summary, A-15. *See also* specific methods.
- java.awt.Rectangle class  
drawing rectangles, 48–51
- method summary, A-16–16. *See also* specific methods.
- moving rectangles, 51, 55–56  
sizing rectangles, 53–54
- java.awt.Shape interface, A-16
- javadoc program  
/\*\* ... \*/ (slash, asterisks...), comment indicator, 90  
command line options, A-66–67  
converting comments to documentation, 90–92  
documenting methods, 573–575  
full code example, 91  
overview, 92  
parameter variables, 90
- java.io package, A-18–21
- java.io.EOFException, A-18
- java.io.File class, method summary, A-18–19. *See also* java.util. Scanner class; specific methods.
- java.io.FileInputStream class, 883–886, A-19
- java.io.FileNotFoundException, A-19
- java.io.FileOutputStream class, 883–886, A-19
- java.io.InputStream class, 883, A-19
- java.io.InputStreamReader class, method summary, A-19. *See also* specific methods.
- java.io.IOException  
checked exceptions, 537–538  
reading web pages, 517  
summary, A-20
- java.io.ObjectInputStream class, 893–895, A-20
- java.io.ObjectOutputStream class, 893–895, A-20
- java.io.OutputStream class, 883, A-20
- java.io.PrintStream class, 148–150, A-20–21
- java.io.PrintWriter class  
character encoding, 519  
constructing with a string, 517  
method summary, A-20–21. *See also* specific methods.  
writing text files, 514–516
- java.io.RandomAccessFile class, 888–892, A-21
- java.io.Serializable interface, 893–895, A-21
- java.lang package, A-22–29

- java.lang.Boolean class, method summary, A-22. *See also specific methods.*
- java.lang.Character class, method summary, A-22. *See also specific methods.*
- java.lang.Class class, method summary, A-22. *See also specific methods.*
- java.lang.Cloneable interface, summary, A-22
- java.lang.CloneNotSupportedException, A-22
- java.lang.Comparable<T> interface
  - full code example, 474
  - method summary, A-23. *See also specific methods.*
  - overview, 473–477
  - parameterized, 660–661
- java.lang.Double class, 162, A-23
- java.lang.Error class, summary, A-23
- java.lang.IllegalArgumentException, 537, A-23
- java.lang.IllegalStateException, summary, A-23
- java.lang.Integer class
  - converting strings to numbers, 162
  - method summary, A-23–24. *See also specific methods.*
  - minimum/maximum values, getting, 132
- java.lang.InterruptedIOException, A-24
- java.lang.Math class, method summary, 142, A-24–26. *See also specific methods.*
- java.lang.NullPointerException, 543, A-26
- java.lang.NumberFormatException, 537, A-26
- java.lang.Object class, method summary, A-26–27. *See also specific methods.*
- java.lang.Runnable interface, method summary, A-27. *See also specific methods.*
- java.lang.RuntimeException, 537, A-27
- java.lang.String class
  - charAt method, 158
  - compareTo method, 189
  - equals method, 188–190
  - length method, 43–44, 156
  - method summary, A-27–28. *See also specific methods.*
  - replace method, 46
  - substring method, 159–160
  - toUpperCase method, 43–44
- java.lang.System class, 147, A-28
- java.lang.Thread class, method summary, A-28–29. *See also specific methods.*
- java.lang.Throwable class, method summary, A-29. *See also specific methods.*
- java.math package, A-29
- java.math.BigDecimal class
  - add method, 138
  - method summary, A-29
  - multiply method, 138
  - subtract method, 138
- java.math.BigInteger class, A-29
  - add method, 138
  - multiply method, 138
  - subtract method, 138
- java.net package, A-30–31
- java.net.HttpURLConnection class, A-30
- java.net.ServerSocket class, A-30
- java.net.Socket class, A-30
- java.net.URL class, 517, A-31
- java.net.URLConnection class, A-31
- java.sql package, A-31–34
- java.sql.Connection interface, A-31–32
- java.sql.DriverManager class, A-32
- java.sql.PreparedStatement class, A-32
- java.sql.ResultSet class, A-32–A-33
- java.sql.ResultSetMetaData class, A-33–34
- java.sql.SQLException, A-34
- java.sql.Statement class, A-34
- java.text package, A-34–35
  - java.text.DateFormat class, method summary, A-34–35
- java.util package, A-35–42
  - java.util.ArrayList<E> class
    - add method, 348
    - get method, 348
- java.util.Arrays class
  - copyOf method, 327–328
  - method summary, A-36. *See also specific methods.*
  - toStrings method, 323–324
- java.util.Calendar class, A-36
- java.util.Collection<E> interface, 674, A-36–37
- java.util.Collections class, A-37
- java.util.Comparator<T> interface, 661, A-37
- java.util.concurrent.locks package, A-42
- java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition class, A-42
- java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock class, A-42
- java.util.concurrent.locks.ReentrantLock class, A-42
- java.util.Date class, A-37
- java.util.EventObject class, A-37
- java.util.GregorianCalendar class, A-38
- java.util.HashMap<K, V> class, 690, A-38
- java.util.HashSet<E> class
  - description, 681–682
  - hash functions, 690–691
  - implementing sets, 681–682
  - interface references to, 685
- java.util.HashSet<E> class, method summary, A-38
- java.util.InputMismatchException, A-38
- java.util.Iterator<E> interface, 683, A-38
- java.util.LinkedHashMap <K, V> class, A-38
- java.util.LinkedList<E> class, A-38–39
- java.util.List<E> interface, 672, A-39
- java.util.ListIterator<E> interface, 683, A-39
- java.util.logging package, A-43

## I-14 Index

java.util.logging.Level class, A-43  
java.util.logging.Logger class  
  getGlobal method, 213  
  info method, 213  
  method summary, A-43. *See also specific methods.*  
  setLevel method, 213  
java.util.Map<K, V> interface, A-39–40  
java.util.NoSuchElementException, 537, A-40  
java.util.PriorityQueue<E> class, A-40  
java.util.Properties class, method summary, A-40  
java.util.Queue class, A-40  
java.util.QueueMap<E> interface, A-40  
java.util.Random class  
  method summary, A-40–41. *See also specific methods.*  
  nextDouble method, 283  
  nextInt method, 283  
java.util.Scanner class. *See also java.io.File class.*  
  hasNextDouble method, 219  
  hasNextInt method, 218–219  
  method summary, A-41. *See also specific methods.*  
  next method, 157  
  nextDouble method, 148  
  nextInt method, 147  
java.util.Set<E> interface, A-41  
java.util.TimeZone class, A-42  
java.util.TreeMap<K, V> class, A-42  
java.util.TreeSet<E> class  
  implementing sets, 681–682  
  interface references to, 685  
  method summary, A-42. *See also specific methods.*  
javax.swing package, A-43–48  
javax.swing.AbstractButton class, A-43  
javax.swing.border package, A-48  
javax.swing.border.EtchedBorder class, A-48  
javax.swing.border.TitledBorder class, A-48  
javax.swing.ButtonGroup class, 852–853, A-43  
javax.swing.event package, A-48  
javax.swing.event.ChangeEvent class, A-48  
javax.swing.event.ChangeListener interface, A-48  
javax.swing.ImageIcon class, A-44  
javax.swing.JButton class, 486–489, A-44  
javax.swing.JCheckBox class, A-44  
javax.swing.JComboBox class, A-44  
javax.swing.JComponent class, 63–65, A-44–45  
javax.swing.JFileChooser class, 517–518, A-45  
javax.swing.JFrame class  
  customizing frames, 844–845  
  method summary, A-45. *See also specific methods.*  
  setDefaultCloseOperation method, 61  
javax.swing.JLabel class, 490–492, A-45  
javax.swing.JMenu class, 863–868, A-45  
javax.swing.JMenuBar class, A-46  
javax.swing.JMenuItem class, 863–868, A-46  
javax.swing.JOptionPane class  
  method summary, A-46. *See also specific methods.*  
  showInputDialog method, 162  
  showMessageDialog method, 163  
javax.swing.JPanel class, 490–492, A-46  
javax.swing.JRadioButton class, A-46  
javax.swing.JScrollPane class, A-47  
javax.swing.JSlider class, 870–874, A-47  
javax.swing.JTextArea class, A-47  
javax.swing.JTextField class, A-47  
javax.swing.KeyStroke class, A-47  
javax.swing.text package, A-49  
javax.swing.text.JTextComponent class, 849–851, A-49  
javax.swing.Timer class, 494–496, A-48  
javax.xml.parsers package, A-49–50  
javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilder class, A-49  
javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory class, A-49–50  
javax.xml.xpath package, A-50  
javax.xml.xpath.XPath interface, A-50  
javax.xml.xpath.XPathException class, A-50  
JButton constructor, 490–492, A-44  
JCheckBox constructor, 854, A-44  
JComboBox constructor, A-44  
JFileChooser constructor, A-45  
JLabel constructor, A-45  
JMenu constructor, 863–868, A-46  
JMenuBar constructor, 863–868, A-46  
JMenuItem constructor, 863–868, A-46  
JRadioButton constructor, 852–853, A-46  
JScrollPane constructor, A-47  
JSlider constructor, A-47  
JTextArea constructor, 849–851, A-47  
JTextField constructor, 846–848, A-47

## K

Kahn, Bob, 454  
Keyboard input, 147–148  
keyPressed method, 504, A-16  
keyReleased method, 500–501, A-16  
keySet method, java.util.Map<K, V> interface, 687, A-39  
keyTyped method, 501, A-16  
“Knows-about” relationships. *See Dependencies.*

## L

Labels (user interface), 490  
LargestInArray class, 329–330  
Layout management  
  border layout, 842  
  complex layouts, 843–844  
  containers, 842  
  customizing frames with inheritance, 844–845  
  flow layout, 842  
  full code example, 844, 845  
  grid bag layout, 843  
  grid layout, 843  
  GUI builders, 862

- How To, 859–861  
 layout managers, 842  
 nesting panels, 843–844  
 panels, 842
- Layout managers, 842
- Leaf nodes, 763
- Lenat, Douglas, 221
- length method  
     `java.io.RandomAccessFile` class, 888–892, A-21  
     `java.lang.String` class, 43–44, 156, A-27
- Less than, equal (<=), relational operator, 187t
- Less than (<), relational operator, 187t
- Lexicographic ordering, 189
- Library. *See* Java library.
- Licklider, J.C.R., 454
- LIFO (last in, first out), 692
- Line breaks, 158
- `Line2D.Double` constructor, A-17
- Linear probing, 749
- Linear searching, 648–649
- `LinearSearcher.java` class, 648–649
- `LineItem.java` class, 578
- Lines (graphic), drawing, 67
- Lines (of text), reading, 521–522
- Linked lists. *See also* `java.util`.  
     `LinkedList<E>` class.  
         animation, 677  
         definition, 675  
         doubly linked, 678  
         implementing queues as, 737–738  
         implementing stacks as, 735–737  
         list iterators, 677–679  
         nodes, 675–676  
         sample code, 679  
         structure of, 675–676
- Linked lists, implementing  
     adding/removing elements, 717–718, 720–723  
     advancing an iterator, 719–720  
     doubly-linked lists (How To), 730  
     efficiency, 723–726, 726t  
     full code example, 729  
     inner classes, 716–717  
     Iterator class, 718–719  
     `LinkedListIterator` class, 718–719, 730
- `ListIterator` class, 718–719  
 Node class, 716–717  
 sample code, 726–730  
 setting element values, 723  
 static classes, 730
- `LinkedHashMap` constructor, A-38
- `LinkedListIterator` class, 718–719, 730
- `LinkedList.java` class, 726–729
- `LinkedListStack.java` class, 736–737
- `ListDemo.java` class, 679
- Listeners. *See* Event listeners.
- `ListIterator` class, 718–719
- `listIterator` method, `java.util`.  
     `LinkedList<E>` class, 677
- `listIterator` method, `java.util`.  
     `List<E>` interface, A-39
- `ListIterator.java`, 729–730
- Lists, definition, 672–673
- Literals, string, 156
- `load` method, `java.util.Properties` class, A-40
- Local variables  
     declaring instance variables in, 108  
     definition, 107  
     duplicate names, 206  
     full code example, 107  
     garbage collection, 107  
     initializing, 107
- `lock` method, `java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock` class, A-42
- `log` method, `java.lang.Math` class, 142t, A-25
- `log10` method, `java.lang.Math` class, 142t, A-25
- Logging messages, 212–213
- Logic errors, 15
- Loma Prieta earthquake, 196
- `long` data type, 132t, 133
- Loop and a half problem, 266–267
- `LoopFib.java` class, 601–602
- Loops  
     animation, 251, 255  
     asymmetric bounds, 260  
     Boolean variables, 266  
     bounds, choosing, 260  
     break statements, 267–268  
     common errors, 247–249  
     continue statements, 267–268
- count-controlled, 254  
 counting iterations, 260  
 credit card processing (Worked Example), 279  
 definite, 254  
 definition, 242  
 do loops, 262–263  
 enhanced for loop, 321–322  
 event-controlled, 254  
 flowcharting, 263  
 full code example, 262, 321–322  
 hand tracing, 249–253  
 improving recursion efficiency, 602–603  
 indefinite, 254  
 infinite, 248  
 loop and a half problem, 266–267  
 for loops, 254–259, 261  
 manipulating pixel images (Worked Example), 282  
 nesting, 279–282  
 off-by-one errors, 248–249  
 post-test, 262  
 pre-test, 262  
 redirecting input/output, 266  
 sentinel values, 263–266  
 while loops, 242–247  
 writing (How To), 276–279
- Loops, common algorithms  
     averages, computing, 272  
     comparing adjacent values, 275–276  
     counters, 272–273  
     finding first match, 273  
     full code example, 275  
     maximum/minimum values, finding, 274  
     prompting for first match, 274  
     totals, computing, 272
- Luggage handling system, 195
- M**
- Machine code, 6
- Magic numbers, 139
- `main` method, 12, 527–529
- Managing object properties, common class patterns, 392
- `MapDemo.java` class, 687–688
- Maps  
     animation, 686  
     definition, 673–674  
     description, 686–688
- Matrices, 340–346

## I-16 Index

- max method, `java.lang.Math` class, 142t, A-25  
Maximum value, finding in arrays, 323  
Maximum/minimum values, finding with loops, 274  
`MAX_VALUE` method, `java.lang.Integer` class, 132  
`MeasurableTester.java` class, 468  
`Measurer.java` class, 479  
`MeasurerTester.java` class, 480–481  
`Medals.java` class, 344–345  
Menu bars, 863  
Menu items, 863  
Menus  
  code sample, 865–868  
  definition, 863  
  implementing a class for, 101  
  `javax.swing.JMenu` class, 863–868, A-45  
  `javax.swing.JMenuBar` class, A-46  
  `javax.swing.JMenuItem` class, 863–868, A-46  
  overview, 863–865  
  submenus, 863  
`MergeSortDemo.java` class, 643  
`MergeSorter.java` class, 642–643  
Messages. *See* Error messages.  
Method summary, `java.lang.Math` class, 142  
Methods. *See also specific methods.*  
  accessing data without modifying.  
    *See* Accessor methods.  
  accessor, 50–51  
  arguments, 44–45, 319–320  
  call-by-reference, 386–390  
  call-by-value, 386–390  
  calling, 13, 34–35  
  coding guidelines, A-81  
  *versus* constructors, 87  
  declaring, 47  
  definition, 35  
  documenting, 573–575  
  duplicate names. *See* Overloading.  
    dynamic method lookup, A-58  
    final, 442  
    full code example, 47, 51  
    generic. *See* Generic methods.  
    implementing classes, 95–97  
    instance, 145–146, A-58  
    invoking on numbers, 145–146  
  measuring runtime, 636  
  modifying data. *See* Mutator methods.  
  mutator, 50–51  
  naming conventions, 39  
  overloading, 47  
  passing information to. *See* Parameters; `this` reference.  
  private implementation, 44  
  public interfaces, classes, 43–44, 86–87  
  return values, 45–46  
  static, 145–146, A-58  
  syntax, A-57–58  
  in UML diagrams, 567  
  verbs as, 560  
Methods, designing  
  accessors, 383–384  
  cohesion, 381–382, 385  
  consistency, 385  
  dependencies, 382–383, 385  
  mutator, 383–384  
  public interfaces, 381–382  
  side effects, 384–385  
Methods, static  
  accessing instance variables, 398  
  definition, 396–397  
  full code example, 397  
  initialization, 399  
  minimizing use of, 397–398  
  static imports, 398–399  
Microprocessors, 406  
Microsoft  
  history of computers, 60  
  product schedules, 212  
  standardization of computers, 680  
`min` method, `java.lang.Math` class, 142t, A-25  
`MinHeap.java` class, 798–802  
Min-heaps. *See* Heaps.  
Minimum value, finding, arrays, 323  
Minus sign (-), subtraction operator, 38  
Minus signs (--), decrement, 140  
`MIN_VALUE` method, `java.lang.Integer` class, 132  
Misspelling words, 16  
Mock objects, 483–484  
`mod` method, `java.math.BigInteger` class, A-29  
Modeling, 392–395  
Modulus, 140–141  
Monte Carlo method, 285–286  
`MonteCarlo.java`, 285–286  
Morris, Robert, 320  
Mosaic, 454  
`mouseClicked` method, A-16  
`mouseEntered` method, A-17  
`mouseExited` method, A-17  
`mousePressed` method, A-17  
`mouseReleased` method, A-17  
Multidimensional arrays, 347  
Multiplicities, 568–569  
`multiply` method  
  `java.math.BigDecimal` class, 138, A-29  
  `java.math.BigInteger` class, 138, A-29  
Murphy, Walter, 580  
Mutator methods, 50–51, 383–384  
Mutual recursion. *See* Recursion, mutual.  
Mycin program, 221
- ## N
- \n newline character, 158  
Name clashes, packages, 401–402  
Naming conventions  
  classes, 39  
  coding guidelines, A-84  
  constants, 135  
  constructors, 88  
  local variables, 206  
  methods, 39  
  packages, 401–402  
  type variables in generic classes, 822  
  variables, 39, 43  
Naughton, Patrick, 6  
Negative-red problem, 789–792  
Nesting  
  if statements, 200–203  
  loops, 279–282  
  panels, 843–844  
Networks, definition, 4  
`newCondition` method, `java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock` class, A-42  
`newDocument` constructor, A-49  
`newDocumentBuilder` constructor, A-49

`newInstance` method, `javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory` class, A-50  
`newXPath` method, `javax.xml.xpath.XPathFactory` class, method summary, A-50  
`next` method  
     `java.sql.ResultSet` class, A-33  
     `java.util.Iterator<E>` interface, 677, 682, A-38  
`next` method, `java.util.Scanner` class  
     consuming white space, 519–520, 523–524  
     description, A-41  
     reading strings from the console, 157  
     reading words, 519–520  
`nextDouble` method, `java.util.Random` class, 283, A-41  
`nextDouble` method, `java.util.Scanner` class  
     consuming white space, 523–524  
     description, A-41  
     reading floating-point numbers, 148  
`nextInt` method, `java.util.Random` class  
     description, A-41  
     random numbers, 283  
`nextInt` method, `java.util.Scanner` class  
     consuming white space, 523–524  
     description, A-41  
     reading input, 147  
     screening integers, 523  
`nextLine` method, `java.util.Scanner` class, 521–522, A-41  
Nicely, Thomas, 146  
“No double red” rule, 787–788, 791  
No-argument constructors, 88  
Node class, 716–717, 774  
Nodes, 675–676, 763  
`notify` method, `java.lang.Object` class, A-27  
`notifyAll` method, `java.lang.Object` class, A-27  
Nouns as classes, 560  
`null`, testing for, 190–191  
Null reference *versus* empty string, 191  
Number literals, 133

Number sequences (Worked Example), 473  
Number systems  
     binary numbers, A-68–69  
     bit operations, A-74–75  
     hexadecimal numbers, A-73  
     IEEE floating-point numbers, A-72  
     overflow errors, A-70  
     roundoff errors, A-70  
     shift operations, A-74–75  
     two's complement integers, A-71  
Number variables *versus* object variables, 58  
Numbers  
     big, 138  
     constants, 134–138  
     converting from strings, 522–523  
     data types, 132–134  
     with fractions. *See* Floating-point numbers.  
     without fractions. *See* int type.  
     invoking methods on, 145–146  
     magic, 139  
     primitive types, 132

## O

Object class. *See also* Superclasses.  
     definition, 448  
     `equals` method, 450–451  
     `instanceof` operator, 451–452  
     `toString` method, 448–449, 453  
Object construction  
     arguments, 49  
     definition, 49  
     invoking a constructor like a method, 49  
     overview, 48–50  
     syntax, 49  
Object references  
     definition, 58  
     full code example, 59  
     number variables *versus* object variables, 58  
     overview, 57–60  
     uninitialized, 109  
Object streams, 893–895  
Object variables *versus* number variables, 58  
`ObjectInputStream` constructor, A-20  
`ObjectOutputStream` constructor, A-20

Objects  
     arrays of, 318  
     comparing. *See* `equals` method.  
     definition, 34–35  
     full code example, 106  
     hand tracing, 105–107  
     testing. *See* Mock objects.  
OFF message level, 213  
Off-by-one errors, 248–249  
Online help, 55. *See also* Documentation.  
Open addressing, 742, 749  
`openStream` method, `java.net.URL` class, A-31  
Operators. *See specific operators.*  
`org.w3c.dom` package, A-51  
`org.w3c.dom.Document` interface, A-51  
`org.w3c.dom.DOMConfiguration` interface, A-51  
`org.w3c.dom.DOMImplementation` interface, A-51  
`org.w3c.dom.Element` interface, A-51  
`org.w3c.dom.ls` package, A-52  
`org.w3c.dom.ls.DOMImplementationLS` class, A-52  
`org.w3c.dom.ls.LSSerializer` class, A-52  
`org.w3c.dom.Text` interface, A-51  
out object, `System` class, 13–14, 35  
Output. *See* Writing output.  
Overflow, 133, A-70  
Overloading  
     methods, 47  
     recursive helper methods, 597  
     subclasses, accidentally, 435  
Overriding methods  
     forcing, 441–442  
     preventing, 442  
     superclass, 431, 441–442

## P

Packages. *See also* specific packages.  
     .(dot), name syntax, 403–404  
     accessing, 404  
     API documentation, 54–55  
     definition, 400  
     description, 8  
     importing, 401  
     importing classes from, 54  
Java library, 7

## I-18 Index

- Packages (*continued*)  
  name clashes, 401–402  
  naming conventions, 401–402  
  organizing classes in, 400–401  
  programming with (How To),  
    404–405  
  source files, 402–403  
  summary of, 400*t*  
  syntax, 402, A-62–63  
paintComponent method, javax.swing.JComponent class, 63–65, A-44
- PairDemo.java class, 824
- Pair.java class, 823–824
- Palindromes, 592–593, 596–598
- Panels (user interface)  
  containing buttons, 490–492  
  definition, 842  
  nesting, 843–844
- Parallel arrays, 318–319
- @param tag, 90
- Parameter variables, 90, 98
- Parameters  
  explicit, 110  
  full code example, 111  
  implicit, 110  
  this reference, 109–111
- Parent nodes, 763
- Parentheses, balancing, 695
- Parentheses (( )), in arithmetic operations, 139, 144–145
- parse method, javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilder class, A-49
- parseDouble method, java.lang.Double class  
  converting strings to numbers, 162, 522–523  
  description, A-23
- parseDouble method, java.lang.Integer class, 162
- parseInt method, java.lang.Integer class  
  converting strings to numbers, 162, 522–523  
  method summary, A-23–24
- Partially filled arrays, 316–317
- PartialSolution.java class, 617–618
- Partitioning the range, 646
- Patent, definition, 533
- Paths, 763
- peek method
- java.util.Queue class, A-40  
java.util.Queue<E> interface, 693  
java.util.Stack<E> class, 692
- Pentium floating-point bug, 146
- Percent sign (%), modulus, 140–141
- Performance estimation, array algorithms  
  full code example, 657  
  linear time, 653–654  
  logarithmic time, 656–658  
  quadratic time, 654–655  
  triangle pattern, 655–656
- Performance estimation, big-Oh notation, 637–639
- Peripheral devices, 4. *See also specific devices.*
- Permutations of strings, 603–607
- permutations.java class, 604–606
- Personal computing, 406
- PGP (Pretty Good Privacy) encryption, 533
- PI constant, java.lang.Math class, 135
- Pictures, editing (Worked Example), 57. *See also* Drawing; Graphical applications.
- Piracy, software, 253
- Pivot, 646
- Pixel images, manipulating with loops (Worked Example), 282
- Platform independence, 7
- Plus sign (+)  
  addition operator, 38  
  concatenation operator, 157
- Plus signs (++), increment, 140
- Point2D.Double constructor, A-18
- Polymorphism. *See also* Inheritance.  
  animation, 438  
  definition, 438  
  dynamic method lookup, 438, 440  
  overview, 437–438
- pop method, java.util.Stack<E> class, 692
- PopulationDensity.java class, 532
- Portability, 7
- Postorder traversal, 781–782
- Post-test loops, 262
- pow method, java.lang.Math class, 142*t*, A-25
- Powers, calculating, 141–142
- PowerTable.java class, 280–282
- Precedence  
  arithmetic operations, 139  
  Boolean operators, 214  
  Java operators, A-5
- Precision, 133–134
- Preorder traversal, 781–782
- prepareStatement method, java.sql.Connection interface, A-32
- Pre-test loops, 262
- previous method, java.util.ListIterator<E> interface, 678, A-39
- Primitive number types, 132
- Primitive types, syntax, A-53
- Print commands, full code example, 14
- print method  
  java.io.PrintStream class, 14, A-20  
  java.io.PrintWriter class, A-20
- printf method  
  java.io.PrintStream class, 148–150, A-21  
  java.io.PrintWriter class, 514–516, A-21
- Printing  
  array element separators, 330  
  arrays, 344–345  
  numerical values, 13  
  starting a new line, 14
- Printing invoices (sample program)  
  CRC cards, 570–572  
  discovering classes, 570–572  
  documenting methods, 573–575  
  implementation, 575–580  
  overview, 569  
  recording class relationships, 572–573  
  requirements gathering, 569–570  
  sample code, 576–580  
  UML diagrams, 572–573
- println method  
  java.io.PrintStream class, 14, A-21  
  java.io.PrintWriter class, 514–516, A-21
- printStackTrace method, java.lang.Throwable class, 537, A-29
- PrintStream constructor  
  java.io.PrintStream class, A-20  
  java.io.PrintWriter class, A-20

- `PrintWriter` constructor  
     `java.io.PrintStream` class, A-20  
     `java.io.PrintWriter` class, A-20
- Priority queues. *See also* Queues.  
     definition, 673  
     description, 693–694  
     full code example, 694
- PriorityQueue constructor, A-40
- Privacy issues, databases, 580
- Private method implementation, 44
- Probing sequence, 749
- Problem solving. *See* Backtracking.
- Problem statements, converting to pseudocode (How To), 151–154
- `Product`.java class, 578–579
- Program comparator, 606
- Program development, examples.  
     *See* “Hello, World” program;  
     Printing invoices.
- Programming. *See also* Applets; Java language.  
     compilers, 6  
     definition, 2  
     getting started. *See* “Hello, World” program.  
     high-level languages, 6  
     machine code, 6  
     scheduling time for, 212
- Prompting  
     for first match, with loops, 274  
     for input, 147–148
- protected access feature, 442–443
- Pseudocode  
     for algorithms, 19–20  
     writing (How To), 151–154
- Pseudorandom numbers, 284
- Public interfaces, classes  
     class declaration, 89  
     commenting, 89–92  
     constructors, specifying, 87–88  
     definition, 89  
     methods, specifying, 86–87  
     overview, 43–44  
     syntax, 89  
     uses for, 89
- Public methods, interface types, 470
- `push` method, `java.util.Stack<E>` class, 692
- `put` method, `java.util.Map<K, V>` interface, 585, A-40
- Puzzles, solving. *See* Backtracking.
- Pyramids, computing volume and surface area (Worked Example), 154
- Q**
- `Queen`.java class, 618–619
- `QuestionDemo1`.java class, 425
- `QuestionDemo2`.java class, 432–433
- `QuestionDemo3`.java class, 438–439
- `Question`.java class, 424
- Queues. *See also* Priority queues.  
     adding/removing elements, 693  
     definition, 673  
     description, 693  
     FIFO (first in, first out), 693  
     full code example, 694  
     getting head element, 693  
     of waiting customer (Worked Example), 702
- Queues, implementing  
     as circular arrays, 738–740  
     efficiency, 739t  
     as linked lists, 737–738  
     sample code, 739–740
- Quicksort, 646–647
- Quotation marks (""), string delimiters, 12
- R**
- Radiation therapy incidents, 359
- Radio buttons  
     borders, 852–853  
     definition, 852  
     grouping, 852–853
- Random access  
     code samples, 890–892  
     definition, 887  
     file pointers, 888  
     overview, 887–890
- Random constructor, A-40
- Random numbers  
     finding approximate solutions, 285–286  
     generating, 283–284  
     Monte Carlo method, 285–286  
     pseudorandom numbers, 284
- RandomAccessFile constructor, A-21
- `read` method, `java.io.InputStream` class, 884–886, 887, A-19
- `readChar` method, `java.io.RandomAccessFile` class, A-21
- `readDouble` method, `java.io.RandomAccessFile` class, 889–892
- `readDouble` method, `java.io.RandomAccessFile` class, A-21
- Reading input. *See also* `java.util.Scanner` class; Text files, reading and writing; Writing output.  
     into arrays, 328–330  
     binary. *See* Binary I/O.  
     characters, 520  
     characters from a string, 522  
     classifying characters, 520–521  
     from a console, 157  
     converting strings to numbers, 522–523  
     definition, 4  
     dialog boxes, 162–163  
     error handling, 545–549  
     full code example, 162  
     from a keyboard, 147–148  
     lines, 521–522  
     mixed input types, 523–524  
     from a prompt, 147–148  
     prompting for, 147–148  
     random access, 887–893  
     readers, 882–883  
     reading, 147–148  
     sequential access, 887  
     strings, 157  
     text. *See* Text I/O.  
     validating numbers, 523  
     white space, consuming, 519–520  
     words, 519–520
- `readInt` method, `java.io.RandomAccessFile` class, 889–892, A-21
- `readObject` method  
     `java.io.ObjectInputStream` class, A-20  
     `java.io.ObjectOutputStream` class, 893–895
- Rectangle constructor, A-15
- RectangleComponent.java class, 64–65, 494–495
- RectangleFrame.java class, 495–496
- Rectangles  
     comparing, 190  
     drawing, 61–65
- RectangleViewer.java class, 64–65, 496

## I-20 Index

- Recursion  
  backtracking, 614–620  
  changing to a loop, 602–603  
  debugging, 592–593  
  definition, 588  
  finding files (Worked Example), 596  
  full code example, 596  
  identifying a palindrome (How To), 592–593, 596–598  
  infinite, 592  
  permutations, 603–607  
  setting breakpoints, 592–593  
  tracing, 590, 592–593, 599–601  
  triangle numbers, 588–593
- Recursion, efficiency  
  changing to a loop, 602–603  
  Fibonacci sequence, 598–603  
  full code example, 603  
  trace messages, 599–601
- Recursion, mutual  
  description, 608–611  
  sample code, 611–614  
  syntax diagrams, 608  
  tokens, 609
- Recursive helper methods  
  description, 596–598  
  with duplicate names. *See Overloading.*  
  full code example, 597  
  overloading, 597
- Recursive methods, call pattern, 589–590
- RecursiveFib.java class, 598–603
- RecursiveFibTracer.java class, 599–601
- Red-black trees. *See also Tree concepts.*  
  basic properties, 786–788  
  definition, 786  
  double-black problem, 789–792  
  efficiency, 792t  
  “equal exit cost” rule, 787–788  
  implementing (How To), 792  
  inserting nodes, 788–789  
  negative-red problem, 789–792  
  “no double red” rule, 787–788, 791  
  removing nodes, 789–792
- ReentrantLock constructor, A-42
- Reference types, syntax, A-53
- Reflection, 834–835
- Regression testing, 356–358
- Regular expressions, 526
- Relational operators, 186–188, 216
- Remainders, calculating, 140–141
- remove method  
  java.util.ArrayList<E> class, 349, A-35  
  java.util.Collection<E> interface, A-37  
  java.util.Iterator<E> interface, 678, 720–721, A-38  
  java.util.Map<K, V> interface, 585, A-40  
  java.util.PriorityQueue<E> class, A-40  
  java.util.Queue<E> interface, 693
- removeFirst method, java.util.LinkedList<E> class, 676, 720–721, A-39
- removeLast method, java.util.LinkedList<E> class, A-39
- repaint method, java.awt.Component class, 495–496, A-13
- Repainting graphic components, 495–496, A-13
- replace method, java.lang.String class, 46, A-28
- Requirements, gathering, 569–570
- Reserved words, 39, A-7t–8t
- @return tag, 90
- Return values, 45–46, 84
- Reusing algorithms. *See Interface types.*
- Reverse Polish notation, 696–697, 703
- Richter scale, 196t
- Rivest, Ron, 533
- Rocket incident, 544
- rollBack method, java.sql.Connection interface, A-32
- Rolling dice (Worked Example), 336
- Root nodes, 763
- Roots, calculating, 141–142
- round method  
  definition, 142t  
  java.lang.Math class, A-25  
  rounding floating-point numbers, 142
- Rounding, 133–134
- Roundoff errors, 134, 188–189, A-70
- RSA encryption, 533
- Rumbaugh, James, 382
- run method, java.lang.Runnable interface, A-27
- Running time. *See Performance.*
- Run-time errors, 15
- Run-time stacks, 692
- S**
- Safety, Java, 7
- Scanner class  
  character encoding, 519  
  constructing with a string, 517  
  reading text files, 514–516
- Scanner constructor, A-41
- Scheduling time for programming, 212
- ScoreTester.java class, 357
- Scroll bars, 850
- Searching  
  binary, 649–652. *See also Binary search trees; Heaps.*  
  breadth-first, 783–785  
  depth-first, 783–785  
  linear, 648–649  
  sequential. *See Linear searching.*
- seek method, java.io.RandomAccessFile class, 888–892, A-21
- SelectionSortDemo.java class, 632
- SelectionSorter.java class, 631–632
- SelectionSortTimer.java class, 635
- Semicolon (:)  
  ending if statements, 184–185  
  ending method statements, 12  
  omitting, 14
- Sentinel values, 263–266
- SentinelDemo.java class, 264–265
- Separate chaining, 742
- Sequential access, 887
- Sequential search. *See Linear searching.*
- SerialDemo.java class, 895
- ServerSocket constructor, A-30
- set method  
  java.util.ArrayList<E> class, 348–349, A-35  
  java.util.Iterator<E> interface, 678

**java.util.ListIterator<E>**  
 interface, 678, 723, A-39  
**setAttribute method, org.w3c.dom.Element interface**, A-51  
**setAutoCommit method, java.sql.Connection interface**, A-32  
**setBorder method, javax.swing.JComponent class**, 853, A-45  
**setColor method, java.awt.Graphics class**, 68, A-14  
**setDefaultCloseOperation method, javax.swing.JFrame class**, 61, A-45  
**setDouble method, java.sql.PreparedStatement class**, A-32  
**setEditable method**  
   **javax.swing.JComboBox class**, A-44  
   **javax.swing.text.JTextComponent class**, 849–851, A-49  
**setFocusable method, java.awt.Component class**, 501, A-13  
**setFont method, javax.swing.JComponent class**, A-45  
**setIfModifiedSince method, java.net.URLConnection class**, A-31  
**setIgnoringElementContentWhiteSpace method, javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory class**, A-50  
**setInt method, java.sql.PreparedStatement class**, A-32  
**setJMenuBar method, javax.swing.JFrame class**, 863–868, A-45  
**setLayout method, java.awt.Container class**, 842–843, A-13  
**setLevel method, java.util.logging.Logger class**, 213, A-43  
**setLine method, java.awt.geom.Line2D class**, A-17  
**setLocation method**  
   **java.awt.geom.Point2D class**, A-18  
   **java.awt.Rectangle class**, A-15  
**setParameter method, org.w3c.dom.DOMConfiguration interface**,  
   **method summary**, A-51  
**setPreferredSize method, java.awt.Component class**, 845, A-13  
**Sets**  
   adding/removing elements, 682  
   binary search trees, 681  
**choosing an implementation**, 681–682  
**definition**, 673  
**description**, 681–683  
**hash tables**, 681  
**iterating over**, 682–683  
**listing elements**, 682–683  
**setSelected method**  
   **javax.swing.AbstractButton class**, 852–853, A-43  
   **javax.swing.JComboBox class**, A-44  
**setSize method**  
   **java.awt.Component class**, 61, A-13  
   **java.awt.Rectangle class**, 53–54, A-15  
**setString method, java.sql.PreparedStatement class**, A-32  
**setText method, javax.swing.text.JTextComponent class**, 849–851, A-49  
**setTimeZone method, java.text.DateFormat class**, A-35  
**setTitle method, java.awt.Frame class**, 61, A-14  
**setValidating method, javax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory class**, A-50  
**setVisible method, java.awt.Component class**, 61, A-13  
**Shamir, Adi**, 533  
**Shape classes**, 112–116  
**Shell scripts**, 358–359  
**Shift operations**, A-74–75  
**Shipping costs, computing (full code example)**, 209  
**Short circuiting Boolean evaluation**, 217  
**short data type**, 132t  
**showInputDialog method, javax.swing.JOptionPane class**, 162, A-46  
**showMessageDialog method, javax.swing.JOptionPane class**, 163, A-46  
**showOpenDialog method, javax.swing.JFileChooser class**, 518, A-45  
**showSaveDialog method, javax.swing.JFileChooser class**, 518, A-45  
**Sibling nodes**, 763  
**Side effects**, 384–385  
**signal method, java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition class**, A-42  
**signalAll method, java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition class**, A-42  
**Simulation programs**, 283  
**sin method, java.lang.Math class**, 142t, A-25  
**size method**  
   **java.util.ArrayList<E> class**, 348, A-35  
   **java.util.Collection<E> interface**, A-37  
**Slash, asterisks (/\*\* ... \*/), comment indicator**, 90  
**Slash (/), division operator**, 38, 139  
**Slash asterisk... /\*...\*/, comment delimiters**, 40  
**Slashes (/), comment delimiter**, 40  
**sleep method, java.lang.Thread class**, A-29  
**Socket constructor**, A-30  
**Software, definition**, 2. *See also Programming.*  
**Software piracy**, 253  
**sort method**  
   **java.util.Arrays class**, 658, 659, A-36  
   **java.util.Collections class**, 658, 659, A-37  
**Sorting algorithms**  
   **definition**, 630  
   **full code example**, 640, 647  
   **insertion sort**, 639–640  
   **insertion sort (Worked Example)**, 661  
   partitioning the range, 646  
   pivot, 646  
   quicksort, 646–647  
**Sorting algorithms, merge sort**  
   **description**, 641  
   **full code example**, 646  
   measuring performance of, 644–646  
   sample programs, 642  
**Sorting algorithms, selection sort**  
   **description**, 630–631  
   measuring performance of, 633–640  
   sample programs, 631–633, 634–636

## I-22 Index

- Sorting arrays, 331  
Source code, 10  
Source files, 10, A-80  
Spaces in  
  comparisons, 189  
  expressions, 145  
  input. *See* White space.  
  variable names, 39  
Spaghetti code, 208–209  
Speed. *See* Performance.  
`SpellCheck.java` class, 684–685  
Spelling errors, 16  
`sqrt` method, `java.lang.Math` class,  
  142t, A-26  
Stack trace, 162  
Stacks  
  algebraic expressions, 697–700  
  backtracking, 700–702  
  balancing parentheses, 695  
  definition, 673  
  description, 692  
  full code example, 694–695, 702  
  LIFO (last in, first out), 692  
  reverse Polish notation, 696–697  
  run-time, 692  
Stacks, implementing  
  as arrays, 737  
  as linked lists, 735–737  
  sample code, 736–737  
Standardization of computers, 680  
start method  
  `java.lang.Thread` class, A-29  
  `javax.swing.Timer` class, A-48  
stateChanged method, `javax.swing.event.ChangeListener` interface,  
  872–874, A-48  
Statements  
  punctuating, 12, 14  
  syntax, A-59–61  
Static classes, 730  
Static imports, 398–399  
Static methods  
  accessing instance variables, 398  
  definition, 396–397  
  full code example, 397  
  initialization, 399  
  minimizing use of, 397–398  
  overview, 145–146  
  static imports, 398–399  
  syntax, A-58  
Stepping through code, 287–289  
stop method, `javax.swing.Timer` class,  
  A-48  
Stopwatch program, 633–636  
`StopWatch.java` class, 634–635  
Storage devices, 3. *See also specific devices.*  
Storyboards, 269–271. *See also*  
  Flowcharts.  
Streams, 882  
`String` class, 35–36  
`String` type, 156  
Strings. *See also* Characters;  
  Substrings.  
  *versus* characters, 158–159  
  comparing, 188–189  
  concatenating, 157  
  converting from objects. *See*  
    `toString` method.  
  converting to integers. *See*  
    `parseInt` method.  
  converting to numbers, 522–523.  
    *See also* `parseInt` method.  
  counting positions in, 158–159  
  definition, 13, 156  
  empty, 156  
  escape sequences, 158  
  input, 157  
  joining. *See* Concatenating.  
  length, computing, 156  
  literals, 156  
  permutations, 603–607  
  reading characters from, 522  
  reading from the console, 157  
  `String` class. *See* `java.lang.String`  
    class.  
  Unicode characters, 158–159  
Subclasses. *See also* Classes;  
  Superclasses.  
  accidental overload, 435  
  calling superclass methods,  
    431–432  
  constructors, 436  
  declaration, example, 428–429  
  definition, 422  
  implementing, 426–430  
  inherited methods, 431  
  overriding superclass methods,  
    431  
  replicating instance variables, 430  
  substitution principle, 422–423  
  *versus* superclasses, 430  
Submenus, 863  
substring method, `java.lang.String`  
  class, 159–160, A-28  
Substrings. *See also* Strings.  
  extracting, 159–160  
  extracting (Worked Example),  
    195  
subtract method  
  `java.math.BigDecimal` class, 138,  
    A-29  
  `java.math.BigInteger` class, 138,  
    A-29  
Subtrees, 763  
Summing  
  array elements, 323  
  totals, common class patterns,  
    390–391  
Sun Microsystems, 680  
super reserved word, 435–436  
Superclasses. *See also* Classes; `Object`  
  class; Subclasses.  
  definition, 422  
  *versus* subclasses, 430  
  substitution principle, 422–423  
Surface area of a pyramid,  
  computing (Worked Example),  
    154  
Swapping, array elements, 326  
Swing documentation, 869–874. *See*  
  *also* API documentation.  
switch statements, 199. *See also* if  
  statements.  
Syntax errors, 15  
System class, 10, 35

## T

- Tabs, indenting code, 185  
tan method, `java.lang.Math` class,  
  142t, A-26  
Tax rates, 200t  
`TaxCalculator.java` class, 202–203  
`TaxReturn.java` class, 200–202  
TCP/IP (Transmission Control  
  Protocol/Internet Protocol),  
  454  
Teller machine simulation (Worked  
  Example), 581  
Terminating algorithms, 17  
Test cases, selecting, 210–211  
Test suites, 356  
Tester classes, 102–103

- Testing  
 black-box, 210  
 boundary cases, 210–211  
 classes, 56  
 code coverage, 210  
 for null, 190–191  
 objects. *See* Mock objects.  
 programs, 55–56  
 regression, 356–358  
 unit, 102–103  
 unit test frameworks, 407–408  
 white-box, 210
- Text areas, 849–851, A-47
- Text fields, 846–848, A-47
- Text files, reading and writing, 514–516, 530–532. *See also* Reading input; Writing output.
- Text I/O  
 code sample, 847–848, 850–851  
 multiple lines, 849–851  
 readers, 882–883  
 scroll bars, 850  
 single line, 846–848  
 text areas, 849–851  
 text fields, 846–848  
 writers, 882–883
- Therac-25 incidents, 359
- this reference, 109–111
- Throw early, catch late, 542
- throw statement, 534–535
- Throwable constructor, A-29
- Throwing exceptions, 534–535, 542, 543
- throws clause, 538–539
- Tilde (~), unary negation operator, A-74
- Tiling a floor, algorithm for, 22–23
- Timer constructor, A-48
- Timer events, 494–496
- TitledBorder constructor, A-48
- toDegrees method, java.lang.Math class, 142<sup>t</sup>, A-26
- Tokens, 609
- toLowerCase method, java.lang.String class, A-28
- toRadians method, java.lang.Math class, 142<sup>t</sup>, A-26
- toString method  
 java.lang.Integer class, A-24  
 java.lang.Object class, A-27  
 java.util.Arrays class, A-36
- toString method, java.util.Arrays class  
 inheritance, 453  
 inserting element separators, 323–324  
 overriding, 448–449
- Total.java class, 515–516
- Totals, computing with loops, 272
- toUpperCase method, java.lang.String class, 43–44, A-28
- Trace messages, 212–213
- Tracing. *See* Hand tracing.
- Tracing recursive methods, 590, 592–593, 599–601
- Transistors, 3
- translate method, java.awt.Rectangle class, 51, 55–56, A-15
- Travel time computation (Worked Example), 156
- Tree concepts. *See also* Binary search trees; Binary trees; Heaps; Red-black trees.  
 ancestors, 763  
 child nodes, 763  
 computing the size, 765  
 descendants, 763  
 empty trees, 765  
 full code example, 765  
 height, 763  
 implementing a tree, 764  
 interior nodes, 763  
 leaf nodes, 763  
 nodes, 763  
 overview, 762  
 parent nodes, 763  
 paths, 763  
 root nodes, 763  
 sibling nodes, 763  
 subtrees, 763
- Tree iterators, 785
- Tree traversal  
 breadth-first search, 783–785  
 depth-first search, 783–785  
 full code example, 785  
 inorder, 780–781  
 postorder, 781–782  
 preorder, 781–782  
 tree iterators, 785  
 visitor pattern, 782–783
- TreeMap constructor, A-42
- TreeSet constructor, A-42
- Triangle numbers, 588–593
- Triangle, java class, 590–591
- TriangleTester, java class, 591
- trim method, 522
- Trimming white space, 522
- Try blocks, 536–537
- try statement, 536–537, 542–543
- Turing, Alan, 606
- Turing machine, 606–607
- Two-dimensional arrays. *See* Arrays, two-dimensional.
- Two's complement integers, A-71
- Type parameters  
 erasing, 831–833  
 full code example, 833  
 in static context, 834
- Type parameters, constraining  
 full code example, 831  
 generic classes, 827–828  
 generic methods, 827–828  
 wildcard types, 830–831
- Type variables, naming in generic classes, 822
- Types of data. *See* Data types.
- U**
- UML (Unified Modeling Language).  
*See also* CRC (class-responsibility-collaboration) cards.  
 attributes, 567  
 definition, 382  
 diagrams, A-76–78  
 methods, 567  
 in program design (How To), 566–567  
 relationship symbols, 566<sup>t</sup>, A-77  
 sample program, 572–573  
*The Unified Modeling Language User Guide*, 569
- Unambiguous algorithms, 17
- Unchecked exceptions, 537
- Undeclared variables, 42
- Underscore (\_), in variable names, 39
- Unfilled arrays, 318
- Unicode  
 encoding, 519  
 international alphabets, 163  
 Latin and Latin-1 subsets, A-1t–3<sup>t</sup>

## I-24 Index

*The Unified Modeling Language User Guide*, 569  
Uninitialized arrays, 318  
Uninitialized variables, 42  
Unintended integer division, 144  
`union` method, `java.awt.Rectangle` class, A-16  
Unit testing, 102–103  
Univac Corporation, history of computers, 60  
`unlock` method, `java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock` class, A-42  
URL constructor, A-31  
`URLConnection` constructor, A-31  
`useDelimiter` method, `java.util.Scanner` class, 520, A-41  
User interface components. *See also specific components.*  
  buttons, 490–492  
  labels, 490  
  panels, 490–492  
  repainting, 495–496  
UTF-8 encoding, 519  
Utility classes, 380

### V

Validating numeric input, 523  
Variables. *See also* Instance variables;  
  Local variables.  
  assigning values to, 40–41  
  coding guidelines, A-81–82  
  comments, 40  
  declaration *versus* assignment, 42–43  
  declaring, 36–38  
  definition, 37  
  full code example, 41  
  initializing, 37, 41  
  inspecting during debugging, 287–289  
  in for loop headers, 261  
  naming conventions, 39, 43

object *versus* number, 58  
scope, minimizing, 205–206  
syntax, 37, A-53–54  
undeclared, 42  
uninitialized, 42  
Variables, static  
  definition, 395–396  
  full code example, 397  
  initialization, 399  
  static imports, 398–399  
Verbs as methods, 560  
Vertical bar (|), binary *or*, A-74  
Vertical bars (||), *or* operator, 213–214, 216, 217  
Virtual machine launcher, A-65  
Viruses, 320  
VisiCalc, 406  
Visitor pattern, 782–783  
void reserved word, 47, 92–93  
Volume of a pyramid, computing (Worked Example), 154  
`volume`.`java` class, 150  
Voting machines, 104

### W

W3C (World Wide Web Consortium), 680  
`wait` method, `java.lang.Object` class, A-27  
Web pages, reading, 517  
`while` loops, 242–247  
White space  
  coding guidelines, A-84  
  consuming, 519–520, 523  
  trimming, 522  
White-box testing, 210  
Wildcard types, type parameters, 830–831  
Wilkes, Maurice, 291  
Word frequency, counting (Worked Example), 689

Words, reading, 519–520  
`WorkOrder.java` class, 802  
World population table (Worked Example), 345  
World Wide Web, 454  
Wrapper classes, 351, 351*t*  
`write` method, `java.io.OutputStream` class, 884–886, A-19  
`writeChar` method, `java.io.RandomAccessFile` class, A-21  
`writeChars` method, `java.io.RandomAccessFile` class, A-21  
`writeDouble` method, `java.io.RandomAccessFile` class, 889–892, A-21  
`writeInt` method, `java.io.RandomAccessFile` class, 889–892, A-21  
`writeObject` method, `java.io.ObjectOutputStream` class, 893–895, A-19  
`writeToString` method, `org.w3c.dom.ls.LSSerializer` class, A-52  
Writing output. *See also* Reading input.  
  definition, 4  
  dialog boxes, 162–163  
  format specifiers, 148–150  
  formatting, 148–150, 524–526  
  full code example, 162  
  line breaks, 158  
  text files. *See* Text I/O.  
  writers, 882–883

### X

`XPathFactory` constructor, A-50

### Z

Zimmerman, Phil, 533

# ILLUSTRATION CREDITS

## Preface

Page iii: © Terraxplorer/iStockphoto.

## Icons

Animation icon: (camera) © james Steidl/iStockphoto; (globe) Alex Slobodkin/iStockphoto.

Common Error icon: (spider) © John Bell/iStockphoto.

Computing & Society icon: (rhinoceros) Media Bakery.

How To icon: (compass) © Steve Simzer/iStockphoto.

Paperclips: © Yvan Dube/iStockphoto.

Programming Tip icon: (toucan) Eric Isselé/iStockphoto.

Self Check icon: (stopwatch) © Nicholas Homrich/iStockphoto.

Special Topic icon: (tiger) © Eric Isselé/iStockphoto.

Worked Example icon: (globe) Alex Slobodkin/iStockphoto.

Web only icon: (globe) Alex Slobodkin/iStockphoto.

## Chapter 1

Page 1, 2: © JanPietruszka/iStockphoto.

Page 3 (top), 24: © Amorphis/iStockphoto.

Page 3 (bottom): PhotoDisc, Inc./Getty Images.

Page 5 (top): © Maurice Savage/Alamy Limited.

Page 5 (bottom): © UPPA/Photoshot.

Page 6, 24: James Sullivan/Getty Images.

Page 11, 24: © Tatiana Popova/iStockphoto.

Page 12, 24: © Amanda Rohde/iStockphoto

Page 15, 25: © Martin Carlsson/iStockphoto.

Page 17 (top): © mammamaart/iStockphoto.

Page 17 (bottom), 25: © Claudiad/iStockphoto.

Page 20: © dlewis33/iStockphoto.

Page 22: © rban/iStockphoto.

Page 30: © Skip O'Donnell/iStockphoto.

Page 31: © Don Bayley/iStockphoto.

## Chapter 2

Page 33, 34: © Lisa F. Young/iStockphoto.

Page 34 (middle), 70: © Luc Meaille/iStockphoto.

Page 35: © Steven Frame/iStockphoto.

Page 36 (top): © Peter Mukherjee/iStockphoto.

Page 36 (bottom): Javier Larrea/Age Fotostock.

Page 37, 70: © Ingenui/iStockphoto.

Page 39, 70: © GlobalP/iStockphoto.

Page 44: © Damir Cudic/iStockphoto.

Page 45, 71: © Leontura/iStockphoto.

Page 48, 71: © sinankocasian/iStockphoto.

Page 57 (top): © Constance Bannister Corp/Hulton Archive/Getty Images, Inc.

Page 57 (bottom): Cay Horstmann.

## C-2 Illustration Credits

- Page 58, 71: © Jacob Wackerhausen/iStockphoto.  
Page 60: Corbis Digital Stock.  
Page 61, 72: © Eduardo Jose Bernardino/iStockphoto.  
Page 66, 72: © Alexey Avdeev/iStockphoto.  
Page 74: © PeskyMonkey/iStockphoto.  
Page 77: © Feng Yu/iStockphoto.  
 Worked Example 2.1, WE1: © Constance Bannister Corp/Hulton Archive/  
Getty Images, Inc.  
 Worked Example 2.2, WE3, WE6: Cay Horstmann.

### Chapter 3

- Page 81, 82: © Kris Hanke/iStockphoto.  
Page 82 (bottom): © Jasmin Awad/iStockphoto.  
Page 83, 119: © Mark Evans/iStockphoto.  
Page 85, 119: © yenwen/iStockphoto.  
Page 93, 120: © migin/iStockphoto.  
Page 94: © Ann Marie Kurtz/iStockphoto.  
Page 98: © Z5006 Karlheinz Schindler Deutsche Presse Agentur/NewsCom.  
Page 101: © Mark Evans/iStockphoto.  
Page 102, 120: © Chris Fertnig/iStockphoto.  
Page 104 (left): © Peter Nguyen/iStockphoto.  
Page 104 (middle): © Lisa F. Young/iStockphoto.  
Page 107: © plusphoto/iStockphoto.  
Page 116, 120: © Punchstock.  
 Worked Example 3.1, WE1: © Mark Evans/iStockphoto.

### Chapter 4

- Page 131, 132: Eyeidea/iStockphoto.  
Page 133, 163: © Douglas Allen/iStockphoto  
Page 134: © cararterdesign/iStockphoto.  
Page 139 (top): © FinnBrandt/iStockphoto.  
Page 139 (bottom): © hocus-focus/iStockphoto.  
Page 140, 164: © Michael Flippo/iStockphoto.  
Page 144: © Croko/iStockphoto.  
Page 146: (graph) © Courtesy of Larry Hoyle, Institute for Policy & Social Research,  
University of Kansas.  
Page 147, 164: © Media Bakery.  
Page 148, 164: © Koele/iStockphoto.  
Page 149: (cans) © blackred/iStockphoto; (bottle) © travismanley/iStockphoto.  
Page 153: Photos.com/Jupiter Images.  
Page 154: © Holger Mette/iStockphoto.  
Page 156 (top): Courtesy NASA/JPL-Caltech.  
Page 156 (bottom), 164: © essxboy/iStockphoto.  
Page 158, 164: © slpix/iStockphoto.  
Page 160, 164: © Rich Legg/iStockphoto.  
Page 163 (left): © pvachier/iStockphoto.  
Page 163 (middle): © Joel Carillet/iStockphoto.  
Page 163 (right): © Saipg/iStockphoto.  
Page 167: © Media Bakery.  
Page 170: © José Luis Gutiérrez/iStockphoto.

- Page 171: © asiseeit/iStockphoto.  
 Page 173: © Captainflash/iStockphoto.  
 Page 175: © TebNad/iStockphoto.  
 Worked Example 4.1, WE1: © Holger Mette/iStockphoto.  
 Worked Example 4.2, WE5: Courtesy NASA/JPL-Caltech.

## Chapter 5

- Page 179, 180 (top): © zennie/iStockphoto.  
 Page 180: © DrGrounds/iStockphoto.  
 Page 181, 222: © Media Bakery.  
 Page 184: © Timothy Large/iStockphoto.  
 Page 185: Photo by Vincent LaRussa/John Wiley & Sons, Inc.  
 Page 186, 222: © arturbo/iStockphoto.  
 Page 189, 222: Corbis Digital Stock.  
 Page 193: © MikePanic/iStockphoto.  
 Page 195: Bob Daemmrich/Getty Images.  
 Page 196, 222: © kevinruss/iStockphoto.  
 Page 199: © travelpixpro/iStockphoto.  
 Page 200, 222: © ericsphotography/iStockphoto.  
 Page 203: © thomasd007/iStockphoto.  
 Page 205: (left) © jchamp/iStockphoto; (middle) © StevenCarrieJohnson/iStockphoto; (right) © jsmith/iStockphoto.  
 Page 209: © Ekspansio/iStockphoto.  
 Page 212: Bananastock/Media Bakery.  
 Page 213, 223: Cusp/SuperStock.  
 Page 214: © toos/iStockphoto.  
 Page 217: © YouraPechkin/iStockphoto.  
 Page 218, 223: Tetra Images/Media Bakery.  
 Page 220: © jeanma85/iStockphoto.  
 Page 221: Vaughn Youtz/Zuma Press.  
 Page 229: © rotofrank/iStockphoto.  
 Page 231: © lillisphotography/iStockphoto.  
 Page 233 (top): © Straitshooter/iStockphoto.  
 Page 233 (bottom): © Mark Evans/iStockphoto.  
 Page 234 (top): © drxy/iStockphoto.  
 Page 234 (bottom): © nano/iStockphoto  
 Page 235: © Photobuff/iStockphoto.  
 Page 236: © rotofrank/iStockphoto.  
 Page 237: Courtesy NASA/JPL-Caltech.

## Chapter 6

- Page 241, 242 (top): © photo75/iStockphoto.  
 Page 242 (middle): © AlterYourReality/iStockphoto.  
 Page 242 (bottom), 291: © mamac72/iStockphoto.  
 Page 247: © MsSponge/iStockphoto.  
 Page 248: © ohiophoto/iStockphoto.  
 Pages 250–251 (paperclip): © Yvan Dube/iStockphoto.  
 Page 253: © RapidEye/iStockphoto.  
 Page 254, 292: © Enrico Fianchini/iStockphoto.  
 Page 260: © akaplummer/iStockphoto.

## C-4 Illustration Credits

Page 263, 292: © Rhoberazzi/iStockphoto.  
Page 269: Courtesy of Martin Hardee.  
Page 273 (top), 292: © Hiob/iStockphoto.  
Page 273 (bottom): © drflet/iStockphoto.  
Page 274: © CEFutcher/iStockphoto.  
Page 275: © tingberg/iStockphoto.  
Page 276: © Stevegeer/iStockphoto.  
Page 279 (top): © MorePixels/iStockphoto.  
Page 279 (bottom), 292: © davejkahn/iStockphoto.  
Page 282: Cay Horstmann.  
Page 283, 292: © ktsimage/iStockphoto.  
Page 285: © timstarkey/iStockphoto.  
Page 291 (top): © Mark Poprocki/iStockphoto.  
Page 291 (middle): Courtesy of the Naval Surface Warfare Center, Dahlgren, VA., 1988.  
    NHHC Collection.  
Page 291 (boy, bottom): © thomasd007/iStockphoto.  
Page 299: © Anthony Rosenberg/iStockphoto.  
Page 300: © hatman12/iStockphoto.  
Page 301: © GlobalP/iStockphoto.  
Page 304 (top): © Charles Gibson/iStockphoto.  
Page 304 (bottom): © MOF/iStockphoto.  
Page 305: *Introduction to Engineering Programming: Solving Problems with Algorithms*,  
    James P. Holloway (John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 2004). Reprinted with permission of John  
    Wiley & Sons, Inc.  
Page 306 (right): © Snowleopard1/iStockphoto.  
Page 306 (left): © zig4photo/iStockphoto.  
 Worked Example 6.2, WE5: Cay Horstmann.

## Chapter 7

Page 311, 312: © traveler1116/iStockphoto.  
Page 314, 360: © Luckie8/iStockphoto.  
Page 316, 360: © AlterYourReality/iStockphoto.  
Page 321: © nullplus/iStockphoto.  
Page 323 (top): © CEFutcher/iStockphoto.  
Page 323 (bottom): © trutenka/iStockphoto.  
Page 324, 360: © yekorzh/iStockphoto.  
Page 331: © ProstoVova/iStockphoto.  
Page 334 : Thierry Dosogne/The Image Bank/Getty Images, Inc.  
Page 336 (middle): © ktsimage/iStockphoto.  
Page 336 (bottom), 360: © JenCon/iStockphoto.  
Page 337–338: (coins) © jamesbenet/iStockphoto; (dollar coins) Jorge Delgado/iStockphoto.  
Page 339: © claudio.arnese/iStockphoto.  
Page 340 (top), 361: © Trub/iStockphoto.  
Page 340 (middle): © technotr/iStockphoto.  
Page 347, 361: © digital94086/iStockphoto.  
Page 349, 361: © Danijelm/iStockphoto.  
Page 351, 361: © sandoclr/iStockphoto.  
Page 372 (top): © lepas2004/iStockphoto.  
Page 372 (bottom): © KathyMuller/iStockphoto.  
Page 374 (top): © joshblake/iStockphoto.

- Page 374 (bottom): © GordonHeeley/iStockphoto.  
 Page 375: © nicolamargaret/iStockphoto.  
 Page 377: (coins) © jamesbenet/iStockphoto; (dollar coins) Jorge Delgado/iStockphoto;  
 (paperclip) © Yvan Dube/iStockphoto.  
 Worked Example 7.1, WE1 (top): © ktsimage/iStockphoto.  
 Worked Example 7.1, WE1 (bottom): © Ryan Ruffatti/iStockphoto.

## Chapter 8

- Page 379, 380: © Ivan Stevanovic/iStockphoto.  
 Page 381, 408: © Sergey Ivanov/iStockphoto.  
 Page 384, 408: © manley099/iStockphoto.  
 Page 385, 408: AP Photo/Frank Franklin II.  
 Page 386: Frank Rosenstein/Digital Vision/Getty Images, Inc.  
 Page 391, 409: © paul prescott/iStockphoto.  
 Page 393, 409: © John Alexander/iStockphoto.  
 Page 395, 409: © Diane Diederich/iStockphoto.  
 Page 401, 404, 409: © Don Wilkie/iStockphoto  
 Page 406: Reprint Courtesy of International Business Machines Corporation, © International Business Machines Corporation.  
 Page 413: © DNY59/iStockphoto.  
 Page 415: © pixhook/iStockphoto.  
 Page 417 (top): © ThreeJays/iStockphoto.  
 Page 417 (bottom): © Maria Toutoudaki/iStockphoto.

## Chapter 9

- Page 421, 422: © Jason Hosking/Photodisc/Getty Images, Inc.  
 Page 422, 456: © Richard Stouffer/iStockphoto (vehicles);  
     © Ed Hidden/iStockphoto (motorcycle); © YinYang/iStockphoto (car);  
     © Robert Pernell/iStockphoto (truck); Media Bakery (sedan);  
     Cezary Wojtkowski/Age Fotostock America (SUV).  
 Page 423: © paul kline/iStockphoto.  
 Page 427, 456: Media Bakery.  
 Page 438, 456: © Alpophoto/iStockphoto.  
 Page 448: © Sean Locke/iStockphoto.  
 Page 450: © Ken Brown/iStockphoto.  
 Page 459: © Pali Rao/iStockphoto.  
 Worked Example 9.1, WE1: © Sean Locke/iStockphoto.

## Chapter 10

- Page 463, 464 (top): © supermimicry/iStockphoto.  
 Page 464, 502: © Oxana Oleynichenko/iStockphoto.  
 Page 466: © gregory horler/iStockphoto.  
 Page 473 (top), 503: © Andrew Rich/iStockphoto.  
 Page 473 (middle): © Norebbo/iStockphoto.  
 Page 474: © Janis Dreosti/iStockphoto.  
 Page 475: © Alex Gumerov/iStockphoto.  
 Page 478: © Dan Herrick/iStockphoto.  
 Page 481, 503: © maureenpr/iStockphoto.  
 Page 483: © Don Nichols/iStockphoto.  
 Page 485: © Seriy Tryapitsyn/iStockphoto.

## C-6 Illustration Credits

Page 491, 503: © Eduard Andras/iStockphoto.  
Page 494, 504: © jeff giniewicz/iStockphoto.  
Page 497, 504: © james Brey/iStockphoto.  
Page 501: © Dmitry Shironosov/iStockphoto.  
Page 502: Courtesy of Richard Stallman.  
Page 509: © KathyMuller/iStockphoto.  
 Worked Example 10.1, WE1: © Norebbo/iStockphoto.

### Chapter 11

Page 513, 514 (top): James King-Holmes/Bletchley Park Trust/Photo Researchers, Inc.  
Page 527, 550: © xyno/iStockphoto.  
Page 530: © Oksana Perkins/iStockphoto.  
Page 532: © Nancy Ross/iStockphoto.  
Page 533: (mobile phone) © Anna Khomulo/iStockphoto.  
Page 535, 550: © Lisa F. Young/iStockphoto.  
Page 537, 550: © Andraz Cerar/iStockphoto.  
Page 538, 550: © tillsonburg/iStockphoto.  
Page 539, 550: © archives/iStockphoto.  
Page 544: © AP/Wide World Photos.  
Page 552: © Chris Price/iStockphoto.  
Page 556: © Chris Dascher/iStockphoto.  
 Worked Example 11.1, WE1: © Nancy Ross/iStockphoto.

### Chapter 12

Page 559, 560: © Petrea Alexandru/iStockphoto.  
Page 561, 581: © Oleg Prikhodko/iStockphoto.  
Page 563: © visual7/iStockphoto.  
Page 565, 581: © bojan fatur/iStockphoto.  
Page 570: © Scott Cramer/iStockphoto.  
Page 580: © Greg Nicholas/iStockphoto  
Page 581 (top): © Mark Evans/iStockphoto.  
 Worked Example 12.1, WE1: © Mark Evans/iStockphoto.

### Chapter 13

Page 587, 588 (top): © Nicolae Popovici/iStockphoto.  
Page 588, 620: © Davis Mantel/iStockphoto.  
Page 593, 620: © Nikada/iStockphoto.  
Page 596, 620: © gerenme/iStockphoto.  
Page 598, 621: © pagadesign/iStockphoto.  
Page 603, 621: © Jeanine Groenwald/iStockphoto.  
Page 606: Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc.  
Page 614, 621: © Lanica Klein/iStockphoto.

### Chapter 14

Page 629, 630 (top): © Volkan Ersoy/iStockphoto.  
Page 630, 662: © Zone Creative/iStockphoto.  
Page 640, 662: © Kirby Hamilton/iStockphoto.  
Page 641, 662: © Rich Legg/iStockphoto.  
Page 647: © Christopher Futcher/iStockphoto.

Page 652: Topham/The Image Works.  
 Page 653–657, 662, 669 (lightbulbs): © Kraska/iStockphoto.

### **Chapter 15**

Page 671, 672: © nicholas belton/iStockphoto.  
 Page 673 (top left): © Filip Fuxa/iStockphoto.  
 Page 673 (top center), 704: © parema/iStockphoto.  
 Page 673 (top right): © Vladimir Trenin/iStockphoto.  
 Page 673 (books, bottom), 704: © david franklin/iStockphoto.  
 Page 675, 704: © andrea laurita/iStockphoto.  
 Page 680: © Denis Vorob'yev/iStockphoto.  
 Page 681, 704: © Alfredo Ragazzoni/iStockphoto.  
 Page 682, 704: © Volkan Ersoy/iStockphoto.  
 Page 688, 704: © Tom Hahn/iStockphoto.  
 Page 689: © Ermin Guttenberger/iStockphoto.  
 Page 690, 704: © one clear vision/iStockphoto.  
 Page 692 (top), 705: © John Madden/iStockphoto.  
 Page 692 (left): © budgetstockphoto/iStockphoto.  
 Page 693, 702, 705: Photodisc/Punchstock.  
 Page 695: © paul kline/iStockphoto.  
 Page 697, 705: © Jorge Delgado/iStockphoto.  
 Page 700: © Skip O'Donnell/iStockphoto.  
 Page 703 (top): Courtesy of Nigel Tout.  
 Page 708: © martin mcelligott/iStockphoto.  
 Page 710: © Luis Carlos Torres/iStockphoto.

### **Chapter 16**

Page 715, 716: © andrea laurita/iStockphoto.  
 Page 724, 750: © Kris Hanke/iStockphoto.  
 Page 733, 751: © Craig Dingle/iStockphoto.  
 Page 738, 751: © ihsanyildizli/iStockphoto.  
 Page 742, 751: © Neil Kurtzman/iStockphoto.  
 Page 753: © Philip Dyer/iStockphoto.

### **Chapter 17**

Page 761, 762: © DNY59/iStockphoto.  
 Page 762, 808: Courtesy of takato marui.  
 Page 765: © Yvette Harris/iStockphoto.  
 Page 766 (right), 808: © kali9/iStockphoto.  
 Page 766 (left): © AlbanyPictures/iStockphoto.  
 Page 768: © Emrah Turudu/iStockphoto.  
 Page 770: Charlotte and Emily Horstmann.  
 Page 781, 809: © Pawel Gaul/iStockphoto.  
 Page 783: © David Jones/iStockphoto.  
 Page 787, 809: © Virginia N/iStockphoto.  
 Page 793, 809: © Lisa Marzano/iStockphoto.

 Worked Example 17.1, WE1: Charlotte and Emily Horstmann.

### **Chapter 18**

Page 819, 820, 836: © Don Bayley/iStockphoto.  
Page 827, 836: © Mike Clark/iStockphoto.  
Page 831, 836: © VikramRaghuvanshi/iStockphoto.

### **Chapter 19**

Page 841, 842 (top): © Carlos Santa Maria/iStockphoto.  
Page 842, 875: © Felix Mockel/iStockphoto.  
Page 849, 875: © Kyoungil Jeon/iStockphoto.  
Page 852, 875: © Michele Cornelius/iStockphoto.  
Page 863, 875: © lillisphotography/iStockphoto.  
Page 869, 875: © René Mansi/iStockphoto.

### **Chapter 20**

Page 881, 882: © Claude Dagenais/iStockphoto.

### **Chapters Available on the Web**

#### **Chapter 21**

Page W903, W904: © Rubén Hidalgo/iStockphoto.  
Page W919, W935: Creatas/Punchstock.

#### **Chapter 22**

Page W941, W942: © Felix Alim/iStockphoto.

#### **Chapter 23**

Page W967, W968: © Jason Allen/iStockphoto.

#### **Chapter 24**

Page W1015, W1016: © Krzysztof Zmij/iStockphoto.

#### **Chapter 25**

Page W1055, W1056: © Philip Toy/iStockphoto.  
Page W1082: Google Earth™ mapping services screenshot © Google, Inc.  
Reprinted with permission. Imagery © 2009 DigitalGlobe, GeoEye, U.S. Geological Survey, Map data ©2009 Tele Atlas.

## Input

```
Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
// Can also use new Scanner(new File("input.txt"));

int n = in.nextInt();
double x = in.nextDouble();
String word = in.next();
String line = in.nextLine();

while (in.hasNextDouble())
{
    double x = in.nextDouble();
    Process x
}
```

## Output

```
System.out.print("Enter a value: ");
```

Use + to concatenate values.

```
System.out.println("Volume: " + volume);
```

Field width              Precision  
  \                \  
System.out.printf("%-10s %10d %10.2f", name, qty, price);  
  \                |\  
  Left-justified string    Integer    Floating-point number

```
PrintWriter out = new PrintWriter("output.txt");
```

Use print/println/printf  
to write output to file.

Remember to close output file.

## Arrays

Element type              Length  
  \                \  
Element type              /  
  /              All elements are zero.  
int[] numbers = new int[5];  
int[] squares = { 0, 1, 4, 9, 16 };  
int[][] magicSquare =  
{  
    { 16, 3, 2, 13 },  
    { 5, 10, 11, 8 },  
    { 9, 6, 7, 12 },  
    { 4, 15, 14, 1 }  
};  
  
for (int i = 0; i < numbers.length; i++)
{
 numbers[i] = i \* i;
}  
  
for (int element : numbers)
{
 Process element
}  
  
System.out.println(Arrays.toString(numbers));
// Prints [0, 1, 4, 9, 16]

## Array Lists

Element type

Initially empty

Use wrapper type,  
Integer, Double, etc.,  
for primitive types.

```
ArrayList<String> names = new ArrayList<String>();
```

Add elements to the end

```
names.add("Ann");
names.add("Cindy"); // [Ann, Cindy], names.size() is now 2
names.add(1, "Bob"); // [Ann, Bob, Cindy]
names.remove(2); // [Ann, Bob]
names.set(1, "Bill"); // [Ann, Bill]
```

```
String name = names.get(0); // Gets "Ann"
System.out.println(names); // Prints [Ann, Bill]
```

## Linked Lists, Sets, and Iterators

```
LinkedList<String> names = new LinkedList<String>();
names.add("Bob"); // Adds at end
```

```
ListIterator<String> iter = names.listIterator();
iter.add("Ann"); // Adds before current position
```

```
String name = iter.next(); // Returns "Ann"
iter.remove(); // Removes "Ann"
```

```
Set<String> names = new HashSet<String>();
names.add("Ann"); // Adds to set if not present
names.remove("Bob"); // Removes if present
```

```
Iterator<String> iter = names.iterator();
while (iter.hasNext())
{
    Process iter.next()
}
```

## Maps

Key type      Value type  
  /            /

```
Map<String, Integer> scores = new HashMap<String, Integer>();
scores.put("Bob", 10);
Integer score = scores.get("Bob");

for (String key : scores.keySet())
{
    Process key and scores.get(key)
}
```

Returns null if key not present

